

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Devoted to the Interests of the Cavalry,
to the Professional Improvement of Its
Officers and Men, and to the Advance-
ment of the Mounted Service Generally

EDITOR

Lieutenant-Colonel W. V. MORRIS, Cavalry

Copyright, 1926, by

The United States Cavalry Association

Published quarterly by the United States Cavalry Association. Editor, Lieutenant-Colonel W. V. Morris, Cavalry. Entered as second-class matter March 22, 1920, at the post-office at Baltimore, Md., under the Act of March 3, 1879. Acceptance for mailing at special rate of postage provided for in section 1103, Act of October 3, 1917, authorized May 29, 1920.

Office of Publication, Baltimore, Md. Editorial Office, Washington, D. C.

\$2.50 per year; single copy, 65c.

Foreign Postage, 25c Additional

A Selected List of Books on Cavalry and Allied Subjects

- The Desert Mounted Corps—Preston** \$4.50
The story of how the British troops, composed largely of mounted units, overcame the Turks in Palestine.
- A History of Cavalry—Denison** \$4.20
The only complete history of cavalry ever written. Analyzes all battles where cavalry played a part.
- Equitation—Bussigny** \$7.50
A system of practical exercises, carefully illustrated and explained by a master of horsemanship.
- Modern Horse Management—Timmis** \$7.50
A most beautifully illustrated book on the care, breaking and riding of horses.
- Breaking and Riding—Filleis** \$7.50
A classic of horse lore by a master with fifty years experience.
- Feeds and Feeding—Henry and Morrison** \$3.85
Complete study of kinds of forage, methods and results of feeding.
- History of the 6th Cavalry Brigade, 1914-18—Bickersteth** \$5.00
Tells the story of the 6th Cavalry Brigade in France where the cavalryman was an all-around virtuoso of fighting.
- Hints on Horsemanship—McTaggart** \$2.50
One of the most practical books on horsemanship that has appeared for some time.
- Principles of Equitation—de Souza** \$5.00
Written by a master of twenty years experience. Especially adapted to the needs of beginners.
- Official History of Australia in the War of 1914-18. Volume VII, Sinai and Palestine—Gullet** \$7.50
Describes in detail the operations participated in by the Australian and New Zealand forces as they fought from the Suez to Damascus in 1916, 17 and 18.

- | | |
|---|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> The Desert Mounted Corps | <input type="checkbox"/> Hints on Horsemanship |
| <input type="checkbox"/> A History of Cavalry | <input type="checkbox"/> Principles of Equitation |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Equitation | <input type="checkbox"/> Official History of Australia in the War of 1914-18 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Modern Horse Management | <input type="checkbox"/> History of the 6th Cavalry Brigade |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Breaking and Riding | <input type="checkbox"/> Feeds and Feeding |

CHECK IN SPACE OPPOSITE THE BOOKS WANTED

Please send the books checked above.1925

Name

Address

.....

CONTENTS FOR JANUARY, 1926

VOL. XXXV, No. 142

	Page
COMMAND	7
Brigadier General E. L. King.	
THE BRITISH ARMY MANEUVERS, 1925.....	17
Lieutenant Colonel Kenyon A. Joyce, Cavalry.	
MODERN CAVALRY AND ITS ORGANIZATION.....	29
General N. N. Golovine.	
BIG GAME HUNTING IN INDO-CHINA.....	40
Major John A. Considine, Cavalry.	
THE PRINCIPLE OF THE OFFENSIVE.....	54
Lieutenant W. F. Pride, Cavalry.	
THE CAVALRY SCHOOL TEAM IN COLORADO ENDURANCE RIDE.....	60
Captain H. N. Beeman, Veterinary Corps .	
THE FIRST CHARGE.....	75
Translated by Lieutenant Colonel Jean H. A. Day, Cav. Res.	
THE 1925 ENDURANCE RIDE.....	82
EXTRACTS FROM REPORT OF CHIEF OF CAVALRY.....	94
EDITORIAL COMMENT	97
COLONEL EZRA B. FULLER—DISCIPLINE AND LOYALTY—CHANGE OF ADDRESS —ASSOCIATION MEMBERSHIP—ANOTHER \$1,000 COMPETITION—COMMUNI- CATIONS LITERATURE—OLD ISSUES OF CAVALRY JOURNAL—REGIMENTAL ROSTERS—TRAINING REGULATIONS.	
TOPICS OF THE DAY.....	103
CAVALRY SCHOOL HORSE SHOW TEAM—THE NATIONAL RIFLE TEAM MATCH —FIELD MAPS ON CLOTH—COLORADO ENDURANCE RIDE—EARLY DAYS OF THE ASSOCIATION—PENSIONS FOR WIDOWS AND CHILDREN—CAVALRY MEDAL WINNERS IN NATIONAL MATCHES—THE CHATTANOOGA-SIXTH CAV- ALRY HORSE SHOW.	
FOREIGN MILITARY NOTES.....	114
THE NATIONAL GUARD.....	116
THE ORGANIZED RESERVES.....	120
NEW BOOKS REVIEWED.....	129
FOREIGN MILITARY JOURNALS.....	133
REGIMENTAL NOTES	138

The United States Cavalry Association

DESIGN

1. The aim and purpose of the Association shall be to disseminate knowledge of the military art and science, to promote the professional improvement of its members, and to preserve and foster the spirit, the traditions, and the solidarity of the Cavalry of the Army of the United States.

ARTICLE III of the Constitution.

Organized November 9, 1885

OFFICERS

President

Major General MALIN CRAIG, Chief of Cavalry.

Vice-President

Colonel HAMILTON S. HAWKINS, 3d Cavalry.

Secretary and Treasurer

Lieutenant Colonel W. V. MORRIS, Cavalry.

EXECUTIVE COUNCIL

Colonel W. J. GLASGOW, Cavalry.

Colonel J. H. REEVES (Cavalry), General Staff Corps.

Colonel A. C. COLAHAN, 103d Cavalry.

Colonel F. LeJ. PARKER, Cavalry.

Colonel T. A. ROBERTS, Cavalry.

Colonel W. M. CONNELL (Cavalry), General Staff Corps.

Colonel JOHN PHILIP HILL, Cavalry Reserve Corps.

Lieut. Colonel W. P. DRAPER, Cavalry Reserve Corps.

Lieut. Colonel S. R. GLEAVES, Cavalry.

MEMBERSHIP AND SUBSCRIPTION TO THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Membership shall be of three classes, which, together with the conditions of eligibility therefor, are as follows:

- (1) Active, for which all general officers of the Army of the United States and all commissioned officers of the Cavalry of the Army of the United States shall be eligible.
- (2) Associate, for which all present and former commissioned, warrant, and non-commissioned officers of honorable record of the military or naval services of the United States not included in class I shall be eligible.
- (3) Honorary.

Application for membership, showing present or former military status, should be addressed to the Secretary, U. S. Cavalry Association, 1624 H Street N. W., Washington, D. C., and be accompanied by remittance of dues for one year.

There is no initiation fee. Annual dues, payable in advance, \$2.50, which includes subscription to the Cavalry Journal, 60% thereof being so designated.

Any person or organization not eligible for membership may subscribe for the JOURNAL at the regular subscription rates of \$2.50 per year. Canadian and foreign postage, 25 cents additional.

Members and subscribers are requested to give prompt notice in advance of change of address.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Vol. XXXV

JANUARY, 1926

No. 142

Command

BY

Brigadier General EDWARD L. KING,
Commandant, The General Service Schools

*A lecture delivered to the Command and General Staff Class.

I AM going to discuss with you this morning what is usually spoken of as "Command." The word *command* is defined, as a verb, in several ways, among which are: to order with authority; to require; to be in authority; to have power or influence. These definitions fit certain conditions but do not fully satisfy the idea of command, as I conceive it, in its broadest sense. The definition carries the thought of authority or power, due in the main to superior rank. Definitions, as such, are often too narrow and restricted, and this is especially true in military definitions. As soon as a definition is formulated, it is subjected to such a barrage of explanations regarding exceptions that one quickly sees that the meaning of many words, as used in the military vocabulary, is governed to a great extent by the context or by the way the word is used. I shall not attempt to lay down a rigid definition of command, but will attempt to create a conception—something flexible, rather than a fixed, rigid rule. I shall attempt to show that a commander should have, besides his power and authority, as per the definition, certain other qualifications which enable him to maintain, by his own ability and personality, that prestige which his military rank confers upon him.

Command has a still further meaning. It carries with it not only personal and other qualities which enable a commander to maintain his prestige, size up the situation and arrive at proper and logical conclusions; but it involves also a knowledge of the workings of the several subdivisions comprising the organization, as well as ability to make the greatest possible use of this organization.

We all admire leaders, but command goes beyond that, and while including leadership as a very necessary part of command, includes also organizational, administrative, and executive capacity.

Many men who are good advisers lack the necessary qualities to reach proper decisions. Others, while making good decisions, forget that they have subordinates and try to attend to all the details themselves. Still others conceive, but fail to have necessary details worked out. These are failings which command must avoid.

COLONEL EZRA B. FULLER

In our service, in the past, much stress has been laid on general staff work. Some people have been led to believe that the staff was everything and that the commander was a man of straw. This idea was more or less prevalent in some localities during the World War. It is a condition of affairs which should not exist. Still other people say that the staff consists of several types or species of minds, each type being the commander's mind for a particular kind of work. The staff is *not* the commander's mind. If he is a real commander, he has his own mind, but uses his staff as conditions require, all in a certain systematized manner. Any proposition of building up a general staff to serve a straw-man-commander is basically wrong in the American service. It may have its proper place in other services, but not in ours. It should be remembered that general staff officers, as such, have no control or authority over troops and services. Orders which they prepare should be promulgated in the name of the commander and through the channels prescribed by him. The promulgation then assumes that the commander has exercised such supervision as he deems necessary under the circumstances. Unless the commander has previously authorized the use of his name in the promulgation of orders, a staff officer should not assume that power. Naturally circumstances will arise where it is necessary for someone to do something, and in such cases a staff officer, if present, might take the situation in hand, but this should be the exception and not the rule and will be governed by the location of the master mind. The normal procedure should be that the staff officer, knowing the wishes of the higher commander but without specific authority, may and should fully advise the local commander as to what he, the staff officer, believes are the wishes, plans, etc., of the higher commander. But the responsibility and authority rests, and should rest, with the commander on the spot. This does not mean that the general staff officer is or should be a nonentity. Far from it. It is merely a question of the location, duty, responsibility and authority of the several persons, so determined as to secure proper teamwork. The local commander has certain duties, certain responsibilities, certain authority, within his sphere of action. He is placed in his position by the higher command. His responsibility and authority should be equal, co-existent and fixed, and it is not the province or the right of the unauthorized staff officer to assume authority without responsibility. We have all seen staff officers with a modicum of sense—a plethora of gall.

In any time of stress, whether in a large or small force, in an army or a squad, the master mind will come to the front.

Proper command presupposes a condition of affairs wherein the legal commander is the master mind.

We all recognize the great value of staff work. We know it to be indispensable, but it has and must have its specific sphere. Within this sphere, using command in its broad sense, staff work is a part of command.

General staff officers, within their own limits, do and should exercise command functions. A general staff officer should possess the qualities of a commander. He is a part of the command and should make himself a part of the

commander. He may, on his own initiative, have to act for the commander, and hence he must possess the same attitude as the commander. In carrying out his duties, the staff officer is and must be bound by the limitations which are properly placed upon his authority.

A commander, in order to use his staff properly, must understand its workings, its powers and limitations, what to expect from the staff and how to use it to the best advantage. This knowledge and its use, with other qualities, constitute command.

Admitting all that may be advanced as to the value and necessity for a staff, the fundamental fact remains and must be recognized that it is the commander, who, making logical use of all available information, makes the necessary decisions. He may seek his information from various sources. He may ask for advice or not. He may consult whom he desires, but in the last analysis he is the deciding authority.

"In war, the leader alone understands the importance of certain things and he may alone of his own will and superior wisdom, conquer and overcome all difficulties."

Having arrived at his decisions, the commander gives to his chief of staff, or to his assembled staff, such directives as are necessary to enable the staff to visualize his ideas and work out the details, each in his own section, all coordinated by the chief of staff. Should the detailed study show that the decision of the commander is not possible of accomplishment, it is then necessary for the commander, with his new knowledge, to make a modified or a new decision.

The decision arrived at should be concise and positive. The directions resulting therefrom must be clear, distinct, authoritative and so worded as to contain no ambiguity nor leave the recipient in doubt as to his particular duties. These instructions should carry with them the feeling that success is unquestioned.

Command is an art. Art makes use of rules but it also transcends all rules. It is governed, however, by principles. Science is knowledge reduced to law and combined in a system. Art relates to something to be done; science to something to be known. Science is the servant of art and is inspired by it.

Command, in a large sense, may be compared to the painting of a picture wherein the commander, at the outset, with only slight or meagre knowledge of events and things, makes a mental sketch, which is his first, perhaps tentative, decision. After receiving the work of his staff, relatively exact information, he is able to complete his picture by a proper use of the staff information. This picture is his final decision. If any colors of his mental picture are faulty, or missing, or not as he had anticipated, his picture will then be faulty or changed, and he must either change his previous conception or secure other colors. As no two artists will produce exactly the same picture though using exactly the same paint, so no two commanders will produce the same results though using the same staff.

Having given a decision, the commander's mind is free to conceive other things and make further decisions as occasions arise. If events so develop that

the decision upon which the staff is working has to be changed, the commander must make the necessary changes in his decision, and the staff then must work in accordance with these changes.

A proper coordination by the commander, with cheerful cooperation of the staff is essential in a command. Authority, organization, decision, and supervision constitute command. Supervision and direction by the commander does not interfere with the subordinates' initiative if they are properly used. Their proper handling is command. At certain times, precise control or direction of the initiative of subordinates is necessary. This is particularly true when the subordinates are but little known to the commander or before full indoctrination. Precise control in the early steps of an operation may also be necessary in order that the proper and intended direction and impulses may be assured. The handling of this precise control involves the Art of Command.

It is an axiom that orders should not be projected too far into the future. But no limit should be placed on the foresightedness of a commander. It has been said that of the three things the enemy may do, he will usually choose the fourth. It is, therefore, necessary for the commander to be prepared for all conceivable contingencies. The staff must be cognizant and appreciative of all conditions in order that their work may be based on solid foundations, not on the shifting sands of ignorance or self-deceit.

With a staff well trained in the technique of the various sections, loyal to the chief and to the cause, possessed of proper teamwork, there can be no objection to considering the future. It must be done. There will be no loss of morale due to change of plans (provided it is not vacillation) on the part of the commander, and when the fourth of the three contingencies arises, the commander and his staff—the command—will face the new situation with a fixed determination to meet the new crisis with extra vigor.

It is not intended to imply that the commander has been waiting for the enemy to act. We all know that—to paraphrase—"He who waits is lost." While one may temporarily adopt a waiting attitude—to win, to annihilate, one must move. What is here meant is the various reactions by the enemy that may result from our own action.

In this—the new directive to counter the reaction of the enemy, the line of action to be taken—the *decision*—must be made by the commander. On his "say so" to go right or left, forward or back, attack, hold, or retreat, all must depend; and upon his decision as a foundation, all the work of the various sections of the staff must be based. It may not be the best, but it is bound to be better than a scattering of everything under innumerable decisions.

A football team composed of individuals of medium ability, indoctrinated in teamwork and led by a real leader, will beat a team of hastily assembled stars, all wanting to carry the ball individually and in eleven different directions. What is desired in command is this same team of stars, individually well trained, thoroughly indoctrinated in teamwork and led by a field captain whose signals (decisions) normally will be the best; but whether or not considered by all as the

very best under the circumstances, the play signalled must be pushed to the limit by all until the ball is down.

Having given the directive, the commander then has his mind clear to meet the next situation which may develop. If events so happen that a change in plans must be made, to take advantage of fleeting opportunities or to meet unforeseen reactions of the enemy, the commander's mind is the master mind to determine the line of action, to render the decisions which will govern the new movements of his command.

In the directive—the memorandum which he gives his chief of staff—the commander, assuming a competent staff, should be careful not to go so much into detail as to do the work of his staff. This staff is presumed to know how to work out these details and the members of the staff are entitled to and should be allowed the same initiative within their several spheres as the commander expects that his superiors will permit to him.

To use again the analogy of the football team, the commander is the one who gives the signal. The signal in itself tells each member of the team (the staff) what he is to do. No time is taken to tell each linesman of a team how he is to handle his man for the play called for, nor is each interferer told how to take out his man. Each player is presumed to be competent, else he would not be on the team. It should be the same with the staff.

Again, every one on a football team should at all times keep the field captain informed as to whether his opponent is hard to handle, so that plays may be intelligently selected. In the same way, staff officers should keep their chief constantly informed as to the possibilities, favorable or unfavorable, of their several sections in order that the commander may intelligently estimate the situation and arrive at reasonable, workable, sound decisions.

This is teamwork in its highest form. It is command.

Teamwork means making a workable machine out of different parts. As the members of the team vary, so must the particular methods for making the team vary; but the general principles apply in each case. The organization and proper functioning of a team involves the understanding of the Art of Command.

Personal qualifications of a commander are important and manifold. He must, first of all, have character. With this character must go many other qualities. Among these may be mentioned knowledge of his profession, with a proper amount of intelligence to enable him to utilize this knowledge. All of us have seen men who were educated beyond their intelligence, sometimes known as "bright damn fools." These are not commanders.

One of the best known sayings of the late Colonel Henderson is that "The Art of Command, whether the force be large or small, is the art of dealing with human nature." In his book, *The Science of War*, Colonel Henderson reminds us that we have to deal in war not so much with numbers and arms and maneuvers, as with human nature.

Napoleon said that he found in the study of the great campaigns not merely a record of marches and maneuvers, and the use of intrenchments, but a complete study of human nature under the conditions that exist in war; human nature af-

fectured by discipline, by fear, by need of food, by the weight of responsibility and by patriotism.

Commanders, whose daily work it is to govern men, must realize and be guided by this axiom: soldiers, when organized in companies and battalions, think and act differently than they think and act as isolated individuals. For the essential distinction between a body of soldiers and a crowd of men is that the former are trained together to act under one leader, so that the group—it may be a platoon, it may be a battalion—develops a vitality of its own and has mind and spirit separate and different from those of its members. The psychology of the platoon or battalion must no more be neglected than the psychology of the individual soldier.

"Who knows the art of impressing the imagination," said Napoleon, "knows the art of ruling." A wise commander has more power over his command as a whole than he has over the individuals composing it. For the mind of the commander acts directly on the spirit of the group, whose members are animated by a common purpose, whose collective action the commander guides towards a single end.

The collective spirit of a group is not merely the sum, or resultant, of the minds of the men composing it. Its life is far longer, its memory more retentive, its imagination more vivid. Consequently, it is more responsive to the appeals of tradition and of history, and more responsive to the guidance of its leaders. Therefore, those who would study the Art of Command must also bear in mind this second axiom, "The collective life of a group attains a far higher level, intellectually and morally, than the average of its members."

Those who pay no heed to these two axioms limit their power of command in two ways; they make no appeal to that which is most responsive in the mind of their command, and they exercise no influence over what is best and highest in the spirit of their men.

No one can dispute the importance of the Art of Command, but by inaction we imply that it is not only a subject which we cannot teach, but also that it is a subject which cannot be taught—and so, to comfort ourselves, we say that a man is either a born leader or a born fool, and that is the end of it. But that is not the whole truth. There are some men, it is true, who are born supremely gifted in this way, but many of us can only learn by our own efforts and through the experience of others, the principles of this, as of any other art.

It is said that all men, and indeed all animals, may be divided into two classes—those who instinctively seek to lead and those who by nature are content to be led. It is obvious that either by nature or by training, all officers, to be effective commanders, must belong to the former class.

Of the qualities which fit for command, none is more essential to inspire confidence than strength and vigor, and a commander, whether he leads a pack of dogs or a company of men, must not only possess vigor, but he must also show that he possesses it. A commander whose orders once given, are not invariably obeyed is soon despised by his command, because the command, like a pack of wild dogs, instinctively demands those qualities in their leader, which are needed

for the safety of the pack, or, for the well-being of the command. He may consult freely and often with his subordinates, but a decision once given there must be no further discussion. An army is happy under a strong commander, but not under a soviet committee.

If a commander has no faith in himself, he may feel perfectly sure that his doubts will be universally shared by all under him. Knowledge breeds self-confidence. If his mind is filled with doubts and hesitations, it is best for him to hide them from himself if possible, but most certainly from his men.

A loyal commander can count on loyalty in others. Although it is a fact not always remembered, a commander who is disloyal can count most surely on being the direct cause of disloyalty in others. A *disloyal commander* will infect his whole command with the same fatal spirit, for it is indeed the spirit of ruin and disaster. "When the salt has lost its savor wherewith shall it be salted?"

A sense of justice is perhaps a quality equally as important as vigor in a commander. If it be not universally felt that a spirit of justice animates all commanders, then discipline, good spirit, and real cohesion vanish. We all make mistakes at times. Soldiers forgive and excuse many mistakes in their officers. But if a command, rightly or wrongly, convicts its commander of injustice, then God help that commander in peace and in war, for most certainly his men will pardon him nothing.

A commander must be direct and simple or his men will not understand what he is driving at. *Individually*, we may tolerate and laugh at a humbug, but we do not do so *collectively*. Humbug in a leader is too great a danger to an army for the army to put up with sham. Whatever a commander says or does, let him say or do it in all sincerity. A man who has no faith in his own actions, no belief in what he preaches, may deceive some individuals, but never the collective mind of his command.

The commander must have a great supply of common sense. As I have stated previously, I was once impressed by a statement that the successful commander was a man who "had seven parts common sense and one part *dope*." The best the educational system of the Army can do for a man is to give him the *dope* with the opportunity to practice utilizing it with common sense. Only the Lord himself can supply the common sense.

There is an adage, "You can't put temper in an axe by filing the edge." We may say that the proper kind of a commander is the axe with proper temper; that is, character. Having this sort of an axe, its value may be much increased by the proper use of a file—education. Carrying the analogy still further; that use of education which produces dogmatism, bigotry, pedantry, may be compared to that use of a file which takes the edge off the best tempered axe.

General Sherman has indicated that a successful commander must be a man of action and certainly his record carries out this idea. He says, "Of course knowledge is power, we all know that; but mere knowledge is not power, it is simply possibility. Action is power and its highest manifestation is action with knowledge. 'Tis not the man who *knows* most, but the one who *does best*, that wins. Grant, and Meade, and Sheridan at the close of the war could have been

taught many lessons by your learned professors, but none of these could have guided the forces to victory as did Grant at Chattanooga, defended his position as Meade did at Gettysburg, or hurled his masses as Sheridan did at Winchester. Action guided by knowledge is what is demanded of the modern general. He must know as much of the school of the soldier as any man in the ranks; he must know what men can do, and what they cannot do; he must foresee and forereach to provide in advance the food, clothing, ammunition, and supplies of every nature and kind necessary for the maintenance of the command; and moreover, he must gain the confidence and affection of the men committed to his care."

Command carries with it the idea of personal direction. For instance, a captain commands a company; Napoleon commanded his armies. In both cases the commander was able, due to the size and position of the forces, to exercise direct and personal influence. With the larger armies and the more extended formations of the present, personal contact is not so close, nor the effects so direct. This *must* be and *can* be overcome by correct indoctrination of all ranks. The feeling of moral cohesion is more than ever needed. This feeling of solidarity can only exist on the widely extended front of a modern battlefield when men have been trained to rely on the support of their comrades and of their commanders; when they know, that to be out of sight is *not* to be out of mind.

"Close order", said General Maud'huy, "is the guarantee given by discipline in the presence of danger. The sense of moral solidarity must, in these days, take the place of close physical contact." This sense of solidarity can only be inspired by a commander who is in perfect sympathy with the men of his command—whose men are moved by the same emotions and impulses as himself. The commander, although he is the directing brain, is not *separate from*, but the *most vital part* of his own command.

Study the capacities, character, and mind of the individual; pay every heed to the private rights of the private soldier, but remember that a commander's duty is to his command as a whole. He is a useless commander who has a kind heart and no high sense of duty. Even though individuals may suffer, a commander must never hesitate to make whatever demands are needed for the collective good of his command. Soft-hearted commanders are responsible for more crime in an army and more casualties in war than are hard-hearted men.

A commander must have prestige. An officer gains prestige—or is it only the reflection of the real article?—from his rank, from his uniform, and from the power and the authority which are given him by the Regulations. But true prestige is not acquired by passing an examination or by receiving a commission. When Napoleon said he hated unlucky commanders, he expressed the feelings of all who serve under them. But continuous success is not necessary to acquire prestige. No commanders were ever more trusted by their armies than were Stonewall Jackson and Lee. A commander who demands much of his men must give much; he can only inspire confidence when he shows knowledge, respect when he proves himself just, good order when he shows himself resolute.

That commander is most skilled in the art of command, who has so trained his men that in the hours of stress and crisis they continue obedient to the impulse which bids them, regardless of themselves, do their duty by their regiment, fight for the flag, and, if need be, die for their country.

The good is the enemy of the best. Look after the morals of the company and the scamps will need to look after themselves. Create a strong collective spirit and even the most unruly men must need conform to its will.

It is instructive to consider how closely the qualities of armies corresponds with the qualities of their commanders. Dash, or elan vital, is the first quality, most of us would say, that marks the French Army; and the kindred qualities of energy and imagination are what have chiefly distinguished, and still distinguish, its commanders—Napoleon and many of his marshals, Foch and some of his principal generals.

Marshal Foch, in speaking at the War College, said it was hard to get orders executed. Training in a "common language"—indoctrination which leads to teamwork, will be a long step in the proper direction.

Besides command as exemplified in the person of the commander, and command as related to the commander and his staff with the commander as the head, the relation of the commander to his subordinate tactical commanders is important. When actions are contemplated or orders are received to carry out any designated operation, it is conceivable that the commander would discuss the affair with his chief of staff and give the latter, as the head of the staff, such directions as may be pertinent. Either before or after receiving from his staff any desired detailed information, the commander may well gather his immediate subordinate tactical commanders and also, and better still, those tactical commanders next to the immediate subordinates, and go over matters with them. No council of war is here intended, but a conference wherein the commander elaborates on formal orders, clears away fogs and otherwise assures perfect understanding and teamwork. In this way command in its usually accepted meaning may be exercised.

Naval history furnishes one of the best illustrations of this sort of action. While Lord Nelson was *en route* to the scene of the Battle of the Nile, it was his custom to assemble his captains on his flagship almost daily and with them go over the possibilities of the future, explain his ideas in principle and detail and otherwise impress his personality upon his subordinates. He thus indoctrinated his captains, and in the best possible manner, exercised command. As a result, the Battle of the Nile was fought to a successful issue *contrary to the specific plan but in strict accordance with Nelson principles*. Nelson was a *commander* and exercised command in its highest degree.

This sort of command may be further increased by frequent visits on the part of the commander to the units of his command. Instructions in the American Expeditionary Force that division commanders must know the location of battalion command posts is indicative of the ideas of the American

High Command upon this subject. In this and in other ways the commander will be able to impress his personality upon the members of his command.

Free intercourse between the commander and his next tactical subordinates should be a governing principle, carrying with it, of course, such teamwork on the part of the commander as will result in keeping his staff informed as to all developments. Details as to methods will vary with men and conditions, but the net result will be the elimination of what we may call staff interference and staff control and the aggrandizement of command in its true sense.

In an American force, it is especially true that this feature of command must be emphasized. The psychology of the American soldier—the type of person, both commissioned and enlisted personnel, of which our armies will be composed—requires this sort of command to insure the best results.

The commander must have an understanding of men, both as individuals and as a crowd, with the administrative ability to utilize this appreciation of the human elements; and to these may be added the physique necessary to maintain himself at his maximum mental limit, and such personal qualities as will enable him to maintain, on personal contact, that prestige which his position warrants him in expecting.

It may be said, and very properly, that the commander as here pictured is impossible of attainment by any one person—that a superman is shown. Indeed, Napoleon says in one of his maxims, "It is rare, and difficult, to possess, at one time, all the qualities of a great general. What is desirable is to maintain an equilibrium between his mind and abilities, and his will and courage. If courage prevails more in his composition, the general will undertake designs, the whole possibility of the attainment of which he has not thought out; on the other hand he will not dare to carry his ideas into execution, if his will or courage is inferior to his abilities." It is highly probable that few men have possessed all of the necessary qualities in a superlative degree. But this is the sort of man that is desirable as a commander. Our efforts, therefore, should be to arrive as near this goal as is possible.

Many great commanders have had with them a man who possessed the qualities that they themselves probably lacked in some degree. Napoleon and Berthier, Blücher and Gneisenau, Grant and Rawlins, Foch and Weygand, Hindenburg and Ludendorf, are a few examples.

It may be well for all of us to take careful inventory of our own qualifications and when placed in a position of command, seek for a man who possesses in a high degree the qualities we know ourselves to lack. At the headquarters of a high command, it is highly probable that there will be found men who possess one or more of such qualities as the commander may lack, and if he is frank with himself, he will search for these men and make use of them to supply the deficiencies his study of himself has shown to be lacking.

An honest evaluation of one's own qualities of others make for proper command.

The British Army Maneuvers 1925

BY

Lieutenant Colonel KENYON A. JOYCE, Cavalry

IT might be said that the British army maneuvers of this year were predicated on mobility. They were drawn throughout in order to demonstrate lessons in rapid changes of position and in ways and means for moving troops to critical points in the most expeditious way.

It naturally follows that the Cavalry played a most important role, and if we can judge by the results obtained, that arm holds a future as brilliant as its past. In fact it has been reported in the London press that an official decision based on the maneuvers announces the urgent need of more Cavalry.

Much has been said of the tactical advantages of moving infantry in motor trucks, but when we analyzed the results obtained in the various British army field exercises of this fall, we are forced to the conclusion that long columns of motor vehicles carrying infantry are far too vulnerable a target for aircraft and artillery to be utilized successfully in areas close to the enemy, if such columns are tied to roads.

For rapid concentrations in back areas where rail facilities are not available or in occasional emergencies, such as the defense of Paris in 1914, this means of placing infantry troops at a desired point may be profitable. But in any situation where the side utilizing this measure has not practically complete control of the air and a clear superiority of artillery, it would appear to be a most hazardous operation in areas other than those far removed from enemy contact.

One bomb at the head of a column and several more in its length would effectively block any truck train and put its cargo of troops on their feet probably many miles from the intended point of debarkation. This would be an easy air operation in daylight, and, by the use of flares, it probably would be feasible at night.

If we accept this premise it brings us to an appreciation of the value of troops and motor transport that can be moved off the roads when necessary. The man on the ground must still be depended upon to bring about a decision; it cannot be accomplished in the air and it cannot be accomplished by mere weight of artillery. We must, therefore, turn to the two branches that can close with the enemy, the infantry and the cavalry, and study the most effective means of getting them forward.

If any broad lesson is to be drawn from these maneuvers it is that in a war of movement the effectiveness of air power has made the cavalry more valuable today than ever on account of its ability to traverse great distances, and when necessity demands, to advance across country in formations that are least vulnerable from the air. This the cavalry can do with much less fatigue than infantry,

and if it has sufficient offensive power in the form of pack artillery, it probably will be the most effective ground agency we have in a war of rapidly changing situations. Certainly this is so until we have track vehicles of the caterpillar type available in sufficient numbers to move infantry in a tactical zone without the dependence on roads of present day motor transport.



Field Artillery Crossing a Temporary Bridge Made by the Engineers.

Coming to the maneuvers it might be well to give a brief resume of two different operations, first, a divisional exercise which took place on the 15th-16th September and in which the 1st Cavalry Division, re-enforced by an infantry brigade and one tank company, was opposed to an infantry division; and later to discuss in general the army maneuvers which took place from September 21st to 24th inclusive.

THE DIVISIONAL EXERCISE, 15th-16th SEPTEMBER

The governing idea of this exercise was that of an inferior but mobile force, Eastland, delaying the advance of a superior but less mobile force, Westland.

The exercise was intended to give the opposing Commanders an opportunity of carrying out the following:

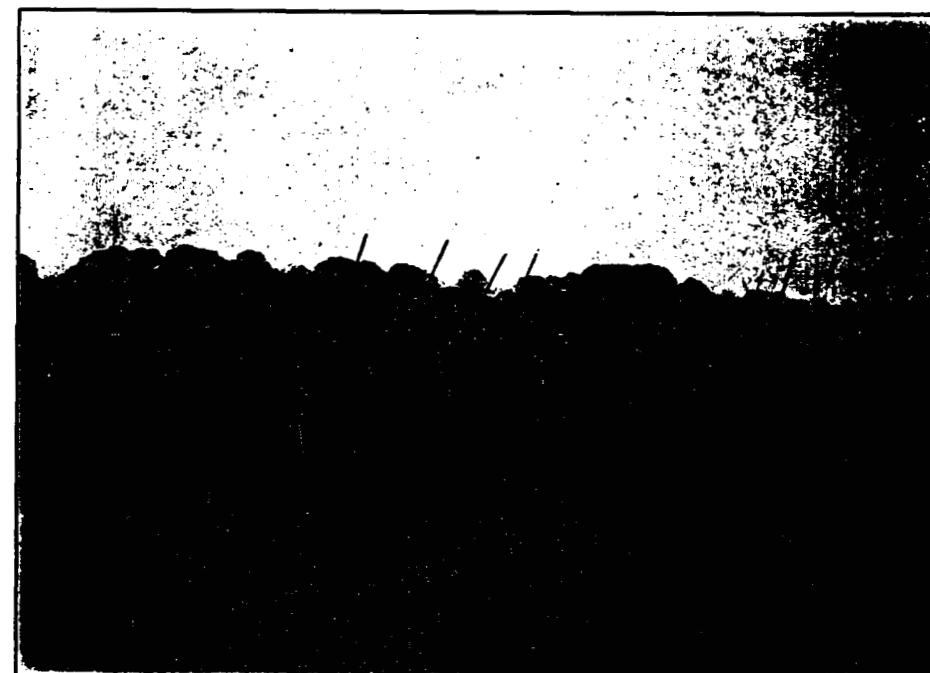
1st Cavalry Division

- (a) Reconnaissance.

- (b) Preventing an Infantry Division from crossing a river.
- (c) Slipping away during the night, leaving a small force to keep contact with and bluff the enemy.
- (d) By means of night movement to place the division in such a position, that as soon as it was daylight the enemy could be attacked in flank.
- (e) Withdrawal after attack.

3rd Division

- (a) Reconnaissance and deployment during the night to force a crossing of a river at dawn.
- (b) Reorganization after attack.



A Squadron of the 12th Lancers

- (c) Meeting an attack by cavalry on the flank before recovery from its own attack.
- (d) Reorganization to continue the movement.

As the problem was carried out by the opposing Commanders, it entailed the seizing of the River Avon along a five mile front by the Cavalry Division, its later relief on this front by an infantry brigade, and the movement of the Cavalry Division ten miles to the north during the night where a crossing of the river and an attack on the enemy's northern flank was contemplated.

On the opposing side the Infantry Commander, who had complete motor

transportation for one brigade, planned to press for the river crossings at daylight on the morning of the 16th, while he moved his motorized brigade to the north and, making a crossing of the river, attack his opponent's northern flank.

As it happened, each commander chose the same river crossing for his flank attack, and as a result the Infantry Brigade in motor trucks and the Cavalry Division met head on.

The outcome of this meeting engagement was a victory for the Cavalry Division on this field, although its withdrawal during the day would have been necessitated, because its line of communications was menaced by the successful taking of the river crossings by the balance of the Infantry Division farther to the south.

The noteworthy features of the problem from a cavalry standpoint were:

- (1) The seizing and making good of the river crossings. This was well accomplished by one brigade and not so successfully accomplished by the other brigade, due to the fact that the latter did not occupy the high ground beyond the river in time to check the infantry advance. The interesting features of this movement were the use of cover and the advance by bounds across country in formations least vulnerable to aircraft.
- (2) The withdrawal at night which was very quietly and successfully accomplished.
- (3) Bivouac arrangements for a short rest and for feeding of men and animals before the night march was started.
- (4) The night march to the river crossing in order to deliver an attack at dawn.
- (5) The meeting engagement which was particularly interesting because of the delay, diversion and premature unloading of the brigade in motor trucks when they encountered a cavalry patrol; and a later engagement between two tanks accompanying the Infantry Brigade, and four tanks accompanying the Cavalry advance guard.

The problem gave full opportunity for the utilization of the mobility of cavalry, and it exemplified the fact that in co-operation with aircraft and tanks, cavalry has even more value than it had before the day of these agencies.

THE ARMY MANEUVERS, SEPTEMBER 21st-24th

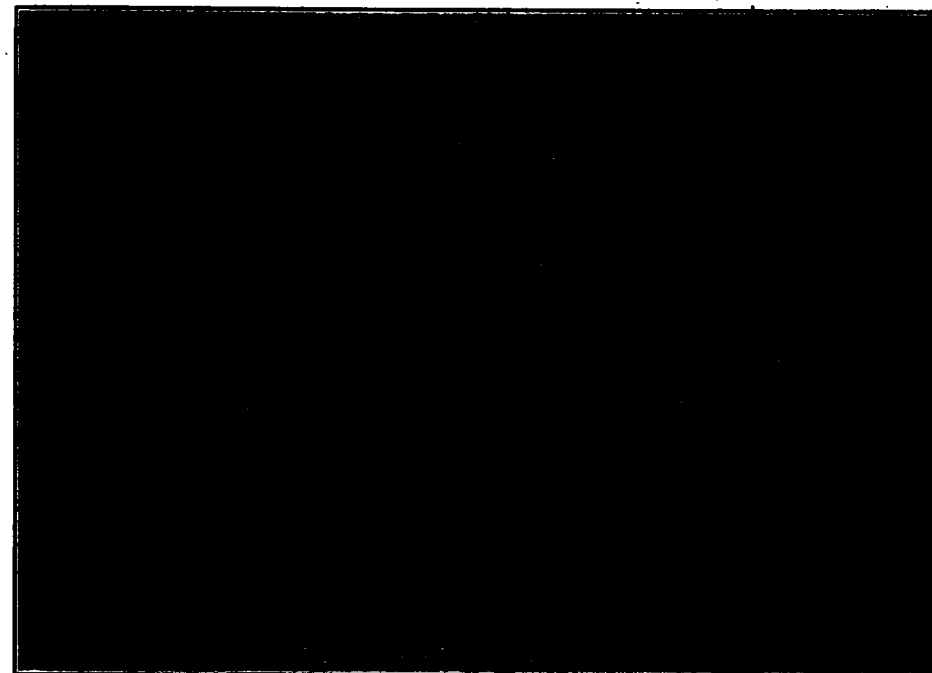
The controlling idea of the maneuver problem was much the same as in the Divisional Exercise of the 15th-16th September. It was that an inferior but mobile force, Wessex, had the mission of delaying the advance of a superior but less mobile force, Mercia.

Wessex had immediately available for the operation one Cavalry Division, an Infantry Division plus one brigade, tanks, armored cars, mechanicalized artillery and complete motor transport for an Infantry Brigade, all of which were close to the Mercian border.

Mercia had one Infantry Division close to the Wessex border, and two

Infantry Divisions, a Cavalry Brigade, tanks and armored cars a long day's march to the East.

The main purpose of the maneuvers was to enable higher commanders to determine the relation of new weapons to strategy and tactics, and to discover as far as practicable in peace time exercises, the value of mechanical agencies, such as the new tank, the armored car, the new artillery tractor and motorized infantry. It was also desired to secure added information, by practical experiments, as to the value of the Air Service in reconnaissance and offensive action against ground troops in order that a sound doctrine of co-operation between them might be evolved.



The New Mark 1 Tank. The 3 pounder gun is seen in the turret and one Vickers .303 machine gun toward the rear of the body

The first phase of the maneuvers consisted principally in an attack by the mechanicalized Infantry Brigade of the Wessex Command on the 4th Division of the Mercian force, which was close to the border. This attack was supported by two brigades of cavalry.

The operation failed to produce the result desired because the infantry in motor trucks got into difficulties, due to slippery roads, seven miles from their objective, and the troops were forced to advance this distance across country. This caused their attack to be delivered three hours and a half after the appointed time.

In the operation, however, the 2nd Cavalry Brigade advancing on the left of the infantry attack, apparently was a material factor in causing the deployment of the 2nd Mercian Division, which was marching to the support of their 4th Division.

During the night of the 1st phase the cavalry and the mechanized Infantry Brigade were withdrawn and rested.

During the greater part of the first twenty-four hours of active operations, the weather was bad. It rained almost continuously, and as everything was being



The new method of transporting pack artillery over favorable ground. Ordinarily the forward mule is hitched on in tandem.

carried out in strict accordance with war conditions there was very material discomfort on the part of men and animals.

The second phase was mostly taken up with changes of position, the Wessex Commander retiring to a stronger line and the Mercian Commander moving forward to the line of the River Test. In this forward movement he utilized his 1st Cavalry Brigade on his left.

The third phase found the Wessex Commander occupying a strong position with his Infantry Brigades, which position he intended to maintain until reinforcements arrived. Having learned of the advance of the 1st Mercian Division on the southern flank, he made dispositions to checkmate a probable turning

movement by concentrating his Cavalry Division, Horse Artillery and tanks as a mobile reserve in his right rear.

The problem developed as it was contemplated, and the close of the maneuvers found the Mercian Commander's turning movement halted by the Wessex dispositions.

In this phase an interesting enterprise occurred at dawn on September 24th. It was during the advance beyond the River Test of the 10th Hussars of the Mercian Cavalry Brigade.

The advance guard of this regiment had been halted by enemy artillery and machine guns, and was disposed along a road with its machine gunners replying to the hostile fire. Led horses were under cover in woods and behind hay-stacks.

While the regimental commander was feeling out the enemy's position with patrols and getting his information back, a Wessex tank appeared from behind a railroad embankment and came down the road at over twenty miles per hour, subjecting the temporary out-guards and their led horses to a destructive fire from its three-pounder and machine guns. Continuing on beyond the out-guards it charged into the main portion of the advance party which was concealed in a fringe of woods, and opened a destructive fire on the dismounted units and their horses. Then, still firing, it turned into a field, made a circuit back to the road, and returned to its cover back of the railroad embankment.

This sortie was over in a matter of four or five minutes and it looked to be entirely feasible under war conditions, provided cavalry units are not armed to meet such an eventuality.

If a proportion of the machine gunners in the outguards and in the advance party had had .50 caliber guns with armor piercing bullets, it is very certain the tank would have been stopped, or at least so badly damaged that it would have given up its mission before it was able to charge into the units concealed in the wood.

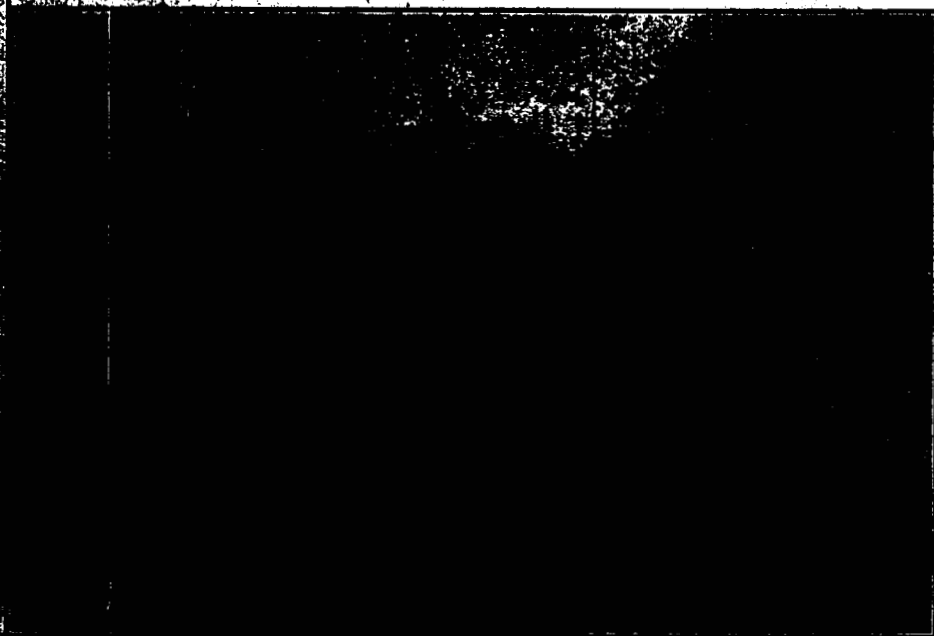
If, in addition to such armament, this regiment had been equipped with two high velocity 37 mm. or slightly larger caliber auto-loading pack guns, and one of such guns had been properly placed to command the road while the advance party was indefinitely held up, the tank could have been knocked out even though it got by the machine gunners.

Although it can be disabled and destroyed like any other fighting device, yet the tank, as the British have developed it, is undoubtedly a most formidable and useful auxiliary. It is armed with a three-pounder gun and four heavy machine guns, and has a maximum speed for short distances on roads of 28 to 30 miles per hour. It is a fairly easy target for aircraft and suitable anti-tank guns while on the road, but it is thoroughly independent of highways, and when moving across country it is a difficult target, especially for artillery and machine guns, on account of its speed and its ability to take advantage of every minor topographical feature. From what was witnessed at the maneuvers, it is a most dependable vehicle mechanically, and does less damage to roads than a heavy motor truck with solid tires.

During the various problems the tank was not employed to assist the advance of infantry, but because of its speed and mobility it was mainly employed in supporting the tanks, usually accompanying cavalry, motorized artillery and motorized infantry in flank movements. This would appear to be the role planned for the new tank, and in this capacity it appears to be a most valuable adjunct.

The most interesting features of the army maneuvers were:

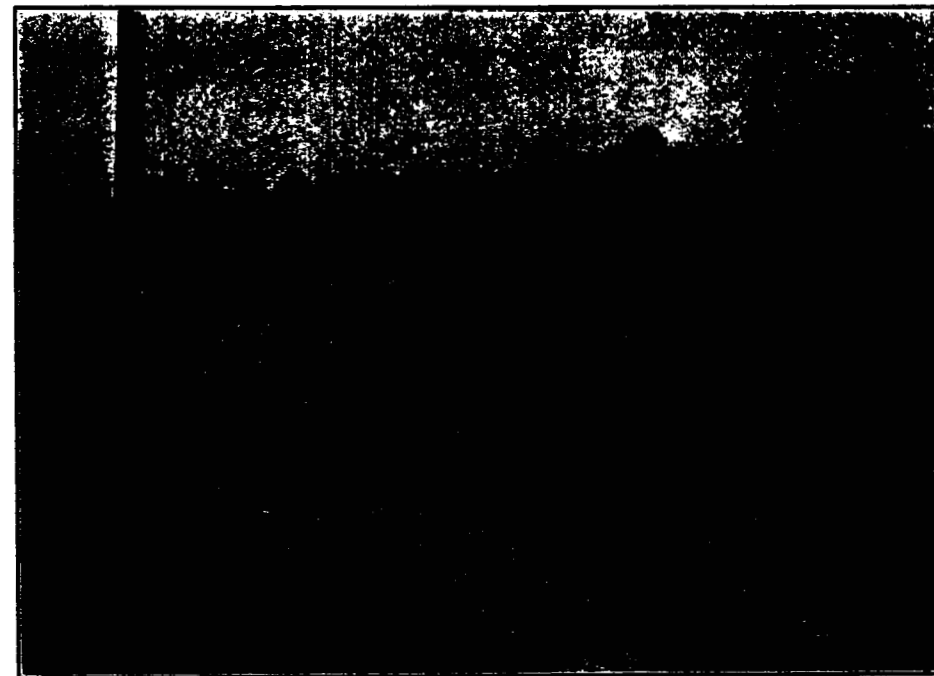
1. Indication of the doubtful value of transporting infantry units in motor trucks in a tactical zone. This is principally due to—



Close-up view of the Mark I Tank. The 3 pounder gun and the Vickers machine gun are not mounted. Two Hotchkiss .303 machine guns are seen in the turret.

- (a) The vulnerability of a sizable motor truck column to artillery attack and to air attack, both by machine gunning and by bombing.
 - (b) The mechanical limitations of this type of transport.
2. The demonstration of how a relatively small cavalry force can be instrumental in causing the deployment and delay of a much larger infantry force.
 3. The skillful way in which the Wessex force was withdrawn during the second phase, and the excellence with which the Mercian infantry marched and maneuvered.
 4. The loss of contact during the second phase by the Mercian force.

5. The excellent use of cover and camouflage by all troops while marching by day, and their provisions for secrecy at night.
6. The strategic plan of the Mercian Commander of turning the enemy southern flank in order to drive the Wessex force over a neutral boundary or cause his surrender.
7. The pivotal turning movement planned by the Mercian Commander to accomplish this, in which troops were disposed from the pivot outward



Motorized Artillery. A new type "Dragon" hauling a 4.5 howitzer.

- in accordance with their mobility in order to maintain a consistent front during the operations.
8. The formation and use of a mobile reserve by the Wessex Commander with which he effectually stopped the Mercian turning movement.
 9. Combats between opposing tanks and between a reconnoitering tank and a cavalry squadron.
 10. Air action against areas occupied by troops, artillery positions, motor truck trains, and tanks.
 11. The demonstrated necessity of adequate weapons for infantry and cavalry against low flying aircraft and tanks, and the possible necessity of all small arms ammunition being of the armor piercing type.

12. The demonstrated probable future necessity of having full tracked motor vehicles for transport, in order to be able to operate without the present dependence on roads.
13. The lack of chemical warfare problems entailing gas operations carried on both by ground troops and aircraft.

GENERAL COMMENTS

The British Army is well trained and has excellent morale. Officers and men are efficient and take a very live interest in their allotted tasks. Their



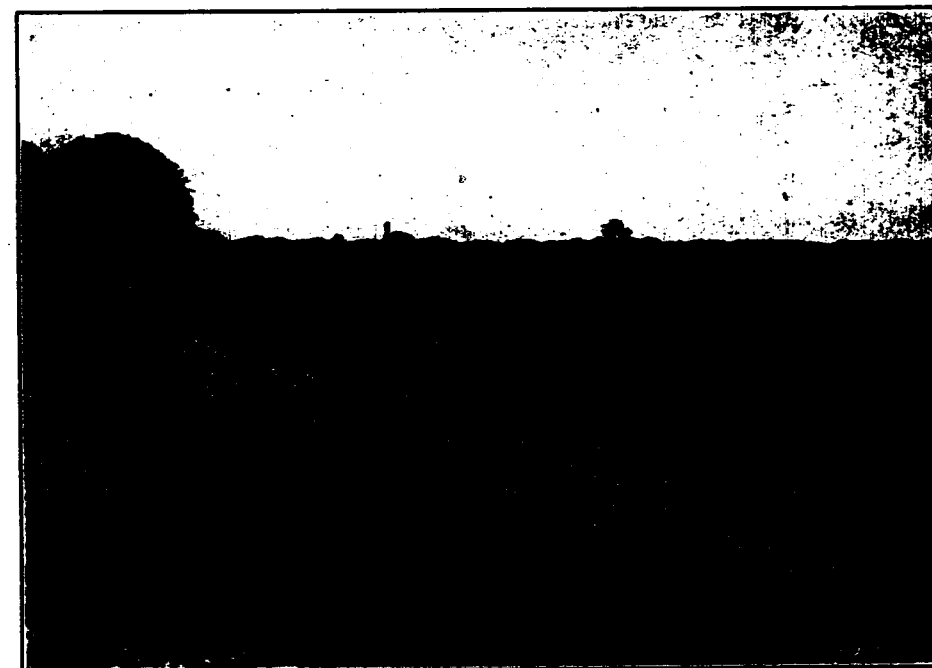
Motorised Artillery. The old type "Dragon" (Mark 1) hauling an 18 pounder

cheerfulness under adverse conditions, entailing discomfort or hardship, is traditional, and during the bad weather of these maneuvers when they were moving night and day, their morale got a good test. It seemed to make little difference to any one whether he ate or slept or had a chance to dry out, so long as the game was carried on.

All of the cavalry regiments that I observed were in very good condition. Equipment was in excellent shape and well carried, and the greatest possible care was given to horses. The latter accounted for the excellent condition of their animals in spite of the fact that they had been through various hard field exercises during the regimental, brigade and divisional training periods of the pre-

ceding two months. A striking feature of their cavalry and horse artillery is the fine type of horses both officers and men have. Their mounts are better than ours to start with and from the day a remount is purchased by the Government it is given the most meticulous care.

In regard to the armament of British Cavalry units it is interesting to note that as yet they have no .50 caliber machine guns, and the only cannon that could be used for anti-tank purposes are the Pack Artillery Howitzer and the Horse Artillery Howitzer, when they are not accompanied by a mechanized artillery unit. Needless to say, no type of howitzer is a suitable anti-tank gun.



The 14th/18th Hussars on the march

Relative to the armament of the individual, it is difficult for an American cavalryman to see the advantage of the lance carried by the Lancer Regiments, especially as the trooper also carries a saber and rifle. Again, only their officers, warrant officers, non-commissioned officers, and certain privates, such as machine gunners, etc., are armed with the pistol, which eliminates the use of this weapon as we know it in our service.

The organization for the maneuvers was most elaborate and all details were efficiently carried out. Twenty-four foreign countries had official observers present, and arrangements for them during the maneuvers could not have been improved upon. In addition to these observers the Secretary of State for War,

three Field Marshals, the Chief of the Imperial General Staff, the Air Chief Marshal, and many high ranking officers of the Army, Navy and Air Force attended the maneuvers.

As a matter of interest it may be noted that the Commander of the Wessex force was General Sir Alexander Godley, a Guardsman, who had as his Cavalry Commander, Major General T. T. Pitman, and that the Commander of the Mercian force was Lieutenant General Sir Philip Chetwode, a Cavalryman.

CONCLUSION

Summarizing, it is believed the following deductions are indicated from what was demonstrated in the Divisional Exercise described, and in the Army Maneuvers:

1. That, because of development in the air, the cavalry probably has more importance today than ever before.
2. That Cavalry training must specialize on advancing by bounds across country in formations which are least vulnerable from the air.
3. That the training of cavalry should be predicated on the role it will probably play in future, and that the time allotted to preparation for mounted action with the saber should be only in proportion to the probable opportunities for such action.
4. That tanks are a most valuable auxiliary to cavalry.
5. That cavalry must be furnished with suitable anti-tank and anti-aircraft weapons, using armor piercing, tracer projectiles.
6. That the mechanical transport with a cavalry column should be composed of full tracked or semi-tracked vehicles, in order that they may be free to operate off the roads when necessary.



Modern Cavalry and Its Organization

BY

General N. N. GOLOVINE

Translated by Colonel A. M. Nikolaieff

A WIDE divergency of opinion on the cavalry was brought about by the World War. In the military literature of France even such extreme views were expressed as the abolition of cavalry and substitution of that arm by mounted infantry.

Such opinion came as the result of a long crisis through which the cavalry had been passing in the last one hundred years, and which had reached the climax during the closing campaigns of the World War on the Western European front.

The main cause of this crisis lay in the steadily growing importance of fire action. The cavalry in the XIX century was still looked upon as the arm predestined primarily to shock tactics. Some concessions were made to the increasing value of fire action by universal adoption of the dragoon type of cavalry, but they were only concessions which could be summed up in the following words: the cavalry considered fire action rather an obstacle, than an ally.

SHOCK ACTION

At the beginning of the current century, however, the fact was realized by leading cavalrymen that the cavalry shock *en masse* had become a matter of the past. Nevertheless, during the cavalry maneuvers in France, in 1909, there could be seen cuirassier brigades with horsemen clad in cuirasses; their mission was to play a decisive part in the final encounter of the maneuvering cavalry masses. The average cavalryman still believed in the cavalry shock. This is the reason why the war, during which their expectations had not come true, caused discouragement among the broader army circles. Skepticism took the place of the former exaggerated hopes, and it drew a veil over the highly useful work which had been carried out by the cavalry on all theatres of war, especially on the Russian. But this work was not what had been expected. The results looked dull. Moreover, the cavalry, insufficiently equipped with fire arms, was often forced to stop and ask the infantry for help. But lo—when the civil war broke out in Russia there came back—so it seemed—the shocks of cavalry masses. Subsequently many Russian military writers, especially those on the side of the Bolsheviks raised their voices in eulogies, glorifying the new cavalry leaders. The solution of the cavalry crisis was found. During the World War—those writers contended—no real cavalry leaders had come up who would dare “to take a risk”; as soon as such leaders appeared the cavalry won its importance back.

Such rudimentary explanation if subjected to an analysis arouses doubts. Indeed, what a strange whim of fate. During the four years of the World War about sixty cavalry divisions were engaged on all theatres of war, and an equal

number of cavalry was employed as divisional and army corps cavalry . . . and not a single "real" cavalry leader showed up in the ranks of this largest mass of cavalry that ever existed. But no sooner did the Bolsheviks start the civil war, than cavalry leaders sprang up like mushrooms. Military history will prove how wrong such a point of view is. There were also excellent cavalry leaders whose names became known in the World War. Let us mention Kaledin, Count Keller, Novikoff.

It can not be denied, however, that at the end of the civil war in Russia, as well as in the Russo-Polish war of 1920, the cavalry played a more decisive part than in the World War.

SPECIAL CONDITIONS

The solution of our problem lies in the conditions under which the cavalry was fighting. In the World War, confronted with the opposition of regular armies, cavalry often acted like a knife which is being used to cut up a bar of iron, whereas in the Polish and civil wars it was like a knife cutting wet clay. To cut up the latter the knife needs not be tempered, it can be of poor quality and even jagged.

The lack of fighting spirit in the armies facing each other in the two wars mentioned above had another important effect. To force them to fall back and even to flee in panic, a mere threatening with envelopment was sufficient. Military history has recorded whole epochs when all military operations, owing to the poor qualities of two opposing armies, were limited to threatening each other with envelopment after which the enveloped side considered itself beaten. The possibility of an easy penetration into the enemy's rear enabled even the second rate cavalry of the Russian and Polish armies of 1920 to live up to the basic principle brought forward by the wars of the XIX and XX centuries which was to the effect that *cavalry is no longer the arm of mass shocks, it has become the arm of maneuver.*

IMPORTANCE OF FIRE ACTION

It can be taken for granted that the armies in the future wars in Europe will not show such lack of fighting qualities as that manifested in the war of 1920 by both sides. Hence it follows that the cavalry must be able not only to maneuver, but also to fight. It will have to fight in order to break through the enemy's protective screen, and also in order to overpower the enemy units covering their flanks and rear. The World War's experience showed that the crisis through which the cavalry of all the armies on the European theatre was passing consisted in that the striking power of the cavalry either was inadequate, or it was not applied by its leaders in the right way. Often cavalry brigades and even divisions could have been seen moving in close formation from one place to another by their leaders who were looking forward to using their striking power for a mass attack. Undoubtedly this out of date idea was the main reason why the Russian General Khan Nakhichevanski, who was in command of four excellent cavalry divisions in the East Prussian campaign of 1914, not only did not cooperate with the right flank of Rennenkampf's army at the fight of Stalupenen, but even left that flank uncovered at the battle of Gumbinen. Another instance:

Fieldmarshal French, the Commander-in-Chief of the British Army, holds in readiness near his headquarters, in the first encounter of 1914, a whole cavalry corps, evidently waiting for an opportunity to stop the enveloping Germans with a shock of his cavalry mass.

At the same time, when coming up against the enemy protective screen, the cavalry generally stopped and waited for the infantry to break the screen through; during this time it remained inactive and held itself ready for a mounted charge. A striking example of such tactics is offered by one of the episodes of the battle on the Marne. During this battle a rupture occurred between the German army of the right flank (von Kluck's) and its neighbor on the left (von Bulow's army). It lasted from September 6th to 13th, and the gap in three days (September 8th-10th) reached a width of about 34 miles. Having no reserves available the German command could screen the gap only with a weak cavalry curtain. Three French and one British cavalry divisions stood opposite the gap. A rare opportunity was offered them by fate. If they would have penetrated into that gap, von Kluck's army would have been confronted with a catastrophe. But the cavalry of the Allies did not take advantage of it. It saw an obstacle in the enemy's fire, but it did not see an ally in its own.

FIRE POWER

In what shall the striking power of the modern cavalry consist, if the mounted shocks have become a matter of the past? Remembering the fundamental proposition that the cavalry has become the arm of maneuver, it is easy to outline the limits of the "firing capacity" which in a modern war will give to the cavalry the necessary power to strike.

In the first place cavalry must be able to break through the screen with which every operation of an army is covered on the theatre of war.

Secondly, at the opening phase of an army battle cavalry must be able to occupy quickly advantageous points of the terrain, pushing back the enemy advanced units sent out to take possession of them.

Thirdly, it must be able to overpower enemy units assigned the task of protecting the enveloped flank and rear.

Finally, it must be strong enough to break the resistance of enemy rear-guard units engaged in holding up their main body's pursuit.

Thus, the cavalry's firing capacity can be limited to its ability to conduct a quickly developing fight of maneuver and pre-eminently a fight of encounter. It will be, therefore, right to supplement the above formula to the effect that "modern cavalry has become the arm of maneuver" with the words "and of the fight of encounter."

Under the circumstances of a fight of encounter in order to accelerate the tempo of the maneuver, it is obvious, that movements mounted will have to be carried out on an extensive scale.

CAVALRY AND MOUNTED INFANTRY

But what will be the difference—the question arises—between the cavalry and mounted infantry?

In the World War the joke was often repeated that the modern cavalry's fighting consisted of the action of mounted infantry and of infantry which was moved to its support.

Under the conditions of action against the enemy's screen, as well as in rear-guard engagements and fighting of encounter the front will not form an uninterrupted line. The centres of the fight will be isolated. In such circumstances it can easily happen that in some centres of fighting the crisis will be reached soon, and the cavalry will be confronted in certain places with an infantry the resistance of which is breaking up. Mounted infantry will not take the risk of a mounted charge. Such charge, however, under the above conditions presents the most effective of quickly acting means.

In former times the horsemen were "led" into the charge by their leaders. The individuality of the fighter was drowned in the charging masses.

At present the quickened tempo of maneuvering requires from the cavalry a dismembered formation in which every subordinate leader down to the chief of a section in formation "lava" (as foragers) will be faced with the alternative: either to dismount and consequently to slow down the maneuver, or to take a chance and continue it mounted with a view to end it with a mounted charge should such ideal opportunity come up. Modern cavalry, therefore, should be made up of horsemen whose "cavalry spirit" is even higher than it was before. Modern cavalry can no longer be "led" into a charge. Now all horsemen should vie with each other in striving to carry out the maneuver quickly and boldly and to charge the enemy mounted.

THE GERMAN VIEW

It is of interest to note that the Germans, on the ground of their experience, arrived at an identical conclusion.

General von Posek, at present Inspector General of the German cavalry and one of the most authoritative German military writers, says*: "With pain in heart we must confess that the times of mounted mass encounters have passed." It can be seen from his books that during the period, covered in his works, mounted attacks in the German cavalry were made only by individual squadrons, regiments and brigades. He states that in 1914 the German cavalry was unprepared for dismounted fighting which only gradually and at the cost of much blood became a "daily habit." "It would be, however, the greatest crime," he writes, "to turn the cavalry into mounted infantry." The latter consists of mounted riflemen whereas the modern cavalry shall consist of horsemen who are excellent shots and sit on well trained horses.

The new cavalry regulations in France and Germany, despite differences in the text, are based on the same guiding ideas which are as follows: Mounted charges no longer represent an independent act of cavalry fighting; they are only an episode on the background of a rifle and gun fight; they become possible only when advantage is taken of the unexpectedness of approach toward the

*Gen. und Ins. von Kav. M. V. Posek, "Die deutsche Kavalerie 1914 in Belgien und Frankreich." "Die deutsche Kavalerie 1915 in Litauen und Kurland."

enemy, and as a rule they will be carried out by squadrons and platoons; mounted attacks by regiments and by larger units are exceptions; they will not be made in mass formation, as was the case before, but will consist of a sequence of mounted charges carried out by squadrons separately. Despite such limitation of the mounted charges' rôle the regulations of both armies, the French and German, emphasize that squadrons and platoons shall be always ready to take advantage immediately of every opportunity to charge the enemy mounted.

THE SQUADRON

At present a squadron in the French cavalry is 150 men strong. In the German cavalry after the World War the squadrons were made stronger; there are 185 men in the new German squadron.

It seems that the German decision is right. During periods of strenuous work the number of horses melts quickly, and making good the losses in cavalry is much more difficult than in the infantry. In the Russian Army it became apparent from the very beginning of the war in 1914 that the strength of the squadron was not adequate (145 men or 4 platoons of 16 ranks).

The number of 21 ranks per platoon would seem to be the best solution. Such platoon will consist of seven sections of three ranks each. Of them two will be automatic-rifle sections (one automatic-rifle per section), one—a grenade throwing section (one grenade throwing rifle) and four—rifle sections. It is important that the automatic-rifles in cavalry, as is the case with infantry, make part of the platoon and not form a separate platoon. In this way the men of the platoon will get better acquainted with the arm which has become now the main arm in a rifle fight, and the platoons will be made more independent. Besides, when the automatic-rifle and grenade throwing sections will constitute integral parts of the platoon, the men of these sections, if not dismounted, will be looked upon as sabres and lances actively participating in the cavalry fight. The deployed formation of the platoon is its fundamental formation. In the middle of it stands the grenade throwing section, on its sides the automatic-rifle sections; these three sections form the grenade-automatic-rifle group. The four rifle sections take place two on each flank, forming two rifle groups.

The first file (in all sections) should be armed with lances. In the World War the Russian cavalry grew so fond of the lance, that in the course of the war many regiments armed with it also the second file. Arming the horsemen with lances contributes to grafting them a tendency for mounted action.

The deployed formation of a squadron consists of four platoons standing side by side. If we adopt the organization of a platoon, as proposed above, the strength of a squadron will be 205 men, including non-commissioned officers (22) and men not in the ranks (baggage, sanitary, etc.).

The firing capacity of such squadron will somewhat exceed that of the modern French squadron (150 horsemen with 8 automatic-rifles), but it will be less than the power of a German squadron (185 horsemen with 6 light machine guns).

THE REGIMENT

In the World War the cavalry regiments in France, Germany and Austria were four squadrons strong. In Russia their strength was six squadrons.

Stronger regiments in Russia were preferred for the reason that some of their squadrons often were sent on special missions, and the regiments very seldom could work in full strength. But, taking into consideration the importance of having stronger squadrons and the necessity of including in the regiment's organization special units with a view to increase its fighting strength and equip it with technical means—it becomes apparent that a regiment should not be made up of more than four squadrons of the above composition.

Among the special units which should be included into the organization of a regiment with the object of increasing its fighting strength—the big machine guns (moved on wheels) should be mentioned in the first place. The regimental machine-gun company or squadron should be divided into two platoons of two sections of two machine-guns. Thus the number of sections will be equal to the number of squadrons. Such organization is more flexible than the assignment of two big machine-guns to every squadron: the commander of the regiment will be able to concentrate the machine-guns into groups and to support the squadrons in need of more machine-guns with a machine-gun platoon or even with the whole unit.

The special units of technical nature which should be added to the organization of a cavalry regiment consist of telegraph, telephone and signal operators, motorcyclists, mounted sappers, chemical warfare experts, etc. All this technical personnel, with a view of a more effective training and better management, should be brought together and form one unit called the "technical squadron." The men of the technical squadron, not on duty in connection with their special work, should, when necessity arises, take part with rifle and sabre in the regiment's fight alongside with the squadrons "of the line." The technical squadron, however, will not be armed with automatic rifles and lances, because in it every horseman or his horse has to carry an additional weight consisting of certain parts of technical equipment.

In such a way a cavalry regiment, if the above organization is adopted, will consist:

- of four squadrons (Nos. 1-4),
- of one technical squadron (No. 5) and
- of one machine-gun squadron (No. 6).

Under modern conditions the infantry needs its "own" guns. The same holds true for dismounted cavalry. Every cavalry regiment should have its battery of four light guns. The personnel of this battery should be closely bound with its "own" regiment ("battery of such or such regiment" should be its name, and it should have the same uniform as the regiment and be trained together). At the same time, however, these "cavalry batteries" will have to be brought together for firing practice during which time they will make component parts, as before, of horse artillery groups. In case a cavalry regiment is assigned a task which calls for "cavalry guns" and the terrain is favorable for their use—the senior cavalry leader will order the regiment's battery or a part of it to accompany the regiment.

The firing capacity of the new cavalry regiment, if compared with that of modern infantry, will be equal to three-fourths of a battalion.

DIVISIONAL AND CORPS CAVALRY

Before taking up the question of cavalry units larger than a regiment it is necessary to approach the question of divisional and army corps cavalry.

If we recall the various tasks mentioned above which the cavalry may be called upon to carry out in a modern war—our attention will be drawn to the following: all of them have not a decisive importance. Before the battle the cavalry action will consist in reconnoitering, concealing the true character of our maneuver (the rôle of a screen behind which the army maneuver is carried out) and creating the most advantageous position for the engagement of the army battle. During the army battle the cavalry will concentrate its action on the flanks of the army with a view to co-operating toward the success of our outflanking maneuver and to protect the army flanks. At the end of a successful battle the cavalry must exploit the success gained by the infantry and artillery.

During the Russian civil and Russo-Polish wars, the cavalry, unlike its rôle in the previous wars, became of dominant importance. But, as mentioned before, this was the result of a special reason, viz. of the unreliability of the army which disintegrated under a mere menace to its flank and rear.

What results are brought by the "independent" action of cavalry, even in the rear of an army, if the latter is well organized, can be seen from General Mischenko's cavalry raid on Inkow, during the Russo-Japanese war. Nothing was achieved. Even if the tactical success had been greater, the raid could have embarrassed the Japanese only temporarily, without any influence on the final issue of their operations.

In a modern war the cavalry unit must cooperate with other branches of the army much more closely than before. The name "independent cavalry" which was mentioned in the military literature as far as the second part of the XIX century seems now absurd. Modern organization of larger cavalry units must not be concerned with their capability of "independent action" in a mass; it should be rather of such kind that the inclusion of cavalry units into larger army units, as the latter's part, is made easy. In this connection it should be remembered that, as the infantry division is the basic tactical unit—its interests have to be considered first, and in an army which is looking for a war of movement the infantry divisions must be provided with excellent cavalry. Owing to the fact that the cavalry problems in a modern war are of secondary importance, the increased need in cavalry of the infantry divisions can be easily met. Already before the war this was taken into consideration by the Germans who added one first class cavalry regiment to each infantry division. The military operations in East Prussia in 1914 lead to the conclusion that the divisional cavalry must be of sufficient strength (one regiment) and of excellent quality.

It becomes, therefore, clear that the dividing of the cavalry into two

kinds, as practiced in the Napoleonic times: one—of first class, under the command of best officers and mounted on best horses, and another—of second class, of inferior training and on inferior mounts, has now to be abandoned.

If every infantry division has its cavalry regiment, there will be no need to add special cavalry units to the army corps. The work of the cavalry will be much more efficient, if it is under the direct control of the infantry divisions, because a closer contact will be maintained with the vanguards which are the organs of the divisions, and not of the army corps. When the distance between our troops and the enemy is greater than a two days' march, reconnaissances will be carried out by the aviation; as to the cavalry problems of a strategic nature they will be taken up by the cavalry of the army. In an exceptional case, when the commander of the army corps will be in need of "his own" cavalry—he either can use the cavalry of the divisions of the second line, or take under his direct control a part of the cavalry of the divisions of the first line.

THE BRIGADE

A cavalry brigade should be made up of three regiments, because an army corps will normally consist of three divisions. However, this three regiment cavalry unit should be called a brigade, and not a division. As a matter of fact, the firing capacity of a three regimental combination in the cavalry, consisting of 96 automatic rifles and 24 machine-guns, is much inferior to the firing capacity of an up-to-date infantry regiment with 108 automatic rifles and 48 machine-guns (French infantry). Inasmuch as the cavalry has to solve its problems for the greatest part dismounted, it is inconsistent to give to such a small unit the name of a division which may create in other arms a wrong impression about the cavalry's strength.

A horse-artillery group made up of three batteries belonging to the cavalry regiments shall form part of the cavalry brigade. But, as some of these batteries will have to follow their regiments, it becomes necessary to have one battery more in order to place it at the disposal of the commander of the brigade. Its guns should be of the same calibre, but of a longer range. Long range is of especial importance in the cavalry. The preliminary engagement, the surprise attack by fire, the pursuit, and all the other cavalry problems can be solved best if our cavalry is outranging the foe.

Moreover, a long-range battery will be able to maintain fire liaison between different parts of the brigade, fighting on a wide front, which kind of fighting is a specific feature of cavalry action.

Thus, the horse-artillery group making part of the cavalry brigade will consist of three mounted batteries and of one mounted long-range battery, all of 3 inch guns.

When the cavalry brigade makes a part of an army corps and its three regiments are distributed among the infantry divisions as divisional cavalry—the batteries of the cavalry regiments follow their respective regiments.

As to the long-range battery, it either will be attached temporarily to one of the infantry divisions, or will stay with the army corps artillery.

THE DIVISION

Prior to the World War the strength of a cavalry division was in all armies the same, viz. 24 squadrons. The same strength remains now.

Two cavalry divisions normally formed a cavalry corps. The experience of the War has shown that cavalry corps of 48 squadrons or more are hard to manage, and that it is much more convenient for the army command to handle such a number of cavalry squadrons divided into two groups.

A cavalry division made up of two brigades of three regiments (24 squadrons) must be able to take in, as its component parts—when necessity arises—one or two cavalry brigades working as army corps cavalry. This has to be taken into account, when the question of providing the cavalry division with additional combat and technical resources is considered.

In the question of increasing the cavalry strength with additional combat resources we come up against serious difficulties. A generous supply would affect its mobility. A limit, therefore, has to be found. But the finding of a useful limit to such an addition is not an easy thing because it depends on the character of the task to be accomplished by the cavalry unit and on the topographical conditions of the terrain. For this reason all additional resources of a cavalry division have to be subdivided into two categories: (1) resources always needed by the division, and (2) resources which will be needed occasionally.

Now, let us examine them from the above point of view.

To begin with the infantry. About the middle of the World War two battalions of infantry were added to every Russian cavalry division. Our enemy even before the war formed with the same purpose the "Fuss" battalions. At the present time each of the French cavalry divisions has a battalion of cyclists ("groupe cycliste") which includes 24 automatic rifles and 6 machine-guns. In Germany it is planned to add to every cavalry division one cyclist battalion, consisting of three companies with 24 machine-guns and 2 mine-throwers, and one infantry battalion transported on motor trucks. Thus we see that both the French and German modern organizations have adopted a permanent support of a cavalry division by infantry, and that the Germans have made that support twice as strong as the French.

With a view to increase of the cavalry's firing capacity, special machine-gun units have been added to the cavalry divisions in France and Germany; in France a group of 36 armored cars carrying thirty-six machine-guns and thirty-six 37 m.m. guns makes part of a cavalry division; a German cavalry division includes (a) three mounted machine-gun sections of 12 machine guns each (36 machine-guns), and (b) a group of twelve armored cars armed with light guns and machine-guns. The German organization is more adapted to a theatre of war where the roads are not in good condition.

The experience of the civil war in Russia and of the British operations in

Mesopotamia leads to the conclusion that the armored cars, owing to their strategic mobility (a large field of action), are in the first place an auxiliary arm of the cavalry. Without cavalry their importance decreases in a considerable degree. On the other hand, when added to the cavalry they increase very much the latter's striking power.

An interesting test was made by the French ministry of war during the maneuvers of 1924. The cavalry was equipped with a great quantity of technical resources. It was intended to prove that a cavalry division provided with additional combat and technical resources could in many cases carry out a successful offensive against infantry divisions. But, in the author's opinion, the conclusion which should be drawn from those maneuvers was not to the effect that the cavalry divisions could be replaced with "mobile" divisions. More than that, the maneuvers confirmed the point of view that all the motor traction resources are only auxiliary. The "automobile" infantry is nothing else than a kind of reinforcement taking place of the dismounted cavalry on the sections of *frontal attacks*, with a view to enable the greatest part of the cavalry to move on mounted and get in the rear of the points where the enemy is offering resistance. The "automobile" artillery is important because, being in a position to concentrate quickly its guns on any section of the front, it creates for the cavalry favorable conditions for deploying its forces on a wide front. Finally, the armored cars serve as an auxiliary means in the cavalry's task of quickly destroying the obstacles put up by the enemy on the roads in order to hold up our advance; without the assistance of the armored cars the cavalry will have either to dismount, or to wait for the infantry.

CAVALRY DIVISION ARTILLERY

The artillery of a German cavalry division consists of one regiment of horse artillery made up of three groups. The first group consists of three batteries of 3 inch guns; the second of two batteries of 4 inch howitzers and one of 4 inch long-range guns. All batteries of the second group have motor traction. The third group consists of four anti-aircraft batteries—one of 37 m.m. guns and three of 3-4 inch guns; the anti-aircraft batteries are also automobile batteries. Besides, every cavalry regiment has two regimental 3 inch guns.

The French cavalry division, or, as it is called "mobile" division, has two horse-artillery groups each of three batteries with 3 inch guns. Automobile and anti-aircraft artillery are added when needed.

Let us compare the above data about the cavalry divisions' artillery, not taking into account the anti-aircraft guns, in the following table:

	French cavalry division		German cavalry division	
	batteries	guns	batteries	guns
3 inch guns.....	6	24	3	12
	—	—	—(regimental artillery) 12	
	6	24	6	24
4 inch howitzers	—	—	2	8
4 inch long range guns	—	—	1	4

It can be seen from the above table that the Germans, contrary to what they profess "The French are for the technique, we, Germans, are for the morale," are doing everything, as before, to increase wherever possible their artillery. They would like to prevent their prospective enemy from having the advantage over them in material resources. Their method, therefore, consists in sneering at the French tendency to improve and increase the material resources, which tendency they attribute to a fear inspired by the "vanquished Germans" to the "pseudo-victors." This method, naive though it may seem, has a certain chance of success. In the troubled political atmosphere of France the parties of the "left" may jump at the bait, because the material of a modern army is expensive and means an additional burden for the tax-payer. The insincerity of the German writers can be best seen from the organization of the cavalry. The above table shows that the German cavalry division is, as far as the material resources are concerned, much stronger than the French "mobile" division. The difference is even greater than that which existed before the World War between the German infantry division and army corps, on one side, and the respective French units, on the other.

CAVALRY DIVISION AIR FORCE

The French "mobile" division does not include, as its permanent part, an air squadron. The necessary aviation resources will be assigned temporarily, when they are needed, by the army, as the whole air defense is concentrated in the army headquarters.

As to the German division it is intended to include in its composition, as its integral part, an air squadron of 12 machines for reconnaissance and observation purposes.

In this connection we should like to express the opinion that the presence of a certain air force in the permanent organization of a cavalry division is absolutely necessary. The functions of this air force will be as follows:

- (1) to take part in the strategic reconnaissance,
- (2) to correct the long range artillery fire which fire is of especial importance for successful cavalry action.
- (3) to attack with machine-gun, gun and bombs the units of the enemy cavalry which were not able to hide themselves in the folds of the ground,
- (4) to protect our cavalry from the air attacks.

The above calls for including into the permanent organization of a cavalry division, either one reinforced or two air squadrons.

In connection with the tasks to be carried out, the air forces of a cavalry division may be increased by adding to them part of the aircraft resources of the army. For instance, during the pursuit of the enemy the air forces accompanying the cavalry will be very large. In that period the bombing squadrons will co-operate with the horse-artillery, and the guns and machine-guns of the aeroplanes will be of great assistance to the cavalry rifles and machine-guns.

Big Game Hunting In Indo-China

BY

Major JOHN A. CONSIDINE, Cavalry

PERHAPS a great many officers ordered to the Philippines for duty with the Twenty-sixth Cavalry do not realize that by virtue of a tour of foreign service here they are afforded an opportunity for big game shooting that otherwise would be beyond the means of the average officer. Many army hunters have dreamed of a safari to British East Africa, but never seriously contemplated an actual trip there because of the length of time necessary—about six months—as well as the enormous expense involved. Who of you military nimrods has not been thrilled by the accounts of the big game hunts of Stewart Edward White, President Roosevelt and others? Is there one of you who has not wished that he might have a better acquaintance with tigers, elephants and buffaloes than a trip to the circus and zoological gardens affords? My mission, then, is to put over to you brother cavalrymen, the hunting possibilities of French Indo-China and how you can make the trip while on foreign service in the Islands.

Having gained considerable information about the hunting in Indo-China through conversation with several French Colonial Officers in Paris in 1922, and having supplemented this by conversations with Major Courtney Hodges who had been in Indo-China in 1916, and with Mr. Squires of Manila, I set about making the necessary preparations for the actual hunt itself. To do this I carried on a correspondence with Mr. Defosse, a French guide who agreed to take me on a "safari" for tigers, elephants, buffalo, bison, etc., for a period of one month, beginning April 15th, this being about the best time for all-round shooting. Next by letter to the American Consul in Saigon, I arranged for permits for my arms and ammunition. No arrangements were made for hunting licenses as none are required. This is most fortunate as nearly all big game licenses are prohibitive in cost to us of the Army. All the above arrangements having been made, I began a careful perusal of prospective sailing dates of carabao and rice steamers from Manila to Saigon, with the result that I found a small American steamer sailing for Saigon via the Southern Islands, Borneo, Java, and the Celebes. Arrangements for my passage for the large sum of fourteen dollars having been quickly completed I found myself two weeks later in Saigon after several interesting stops en route, the most interesting being Brunei, Borneo, where I was able to shoot mouse deer and at the same time see something of the natives and the country.

ARRIVAL AT SAIGON

At Saigon I met Defosse. Tall and weatherbeaten from twenty-three years of tropical sun and torrential rains, erect of carriage and with the

elastic step of the woodsman, he looked the part of the real hunter and frontiersman, which indeed he is. Moreover my hunt with him was to show me that he was of the mold we once knew in the States when civilization pressed forward and conquered and settled our Western country under such pioneers as Daniel Boone. In addition to the fund of knowledge of the jungle and its denizens gathered from actual contact and practical experiences, Defosse has added much by a wide reading on the various animal and plant lives to be found on the Annamite frontier. Furthermore his accomplishments include fluency in English, Spanish, Italian, Annamite and Moï. In addition a quaint philosophy all his own makes him one of the best hunting companions and all round "buddies" to be out with for a month on the fringe of nowhere. I could listen for hours to his stories of hunting experiences covering a period of over twenty years—tales of the many famous hunters who have been with him, in addition to those who were not so famous, including our Stotsenburg contingent.

Through Mr. Poulet of the Standard Oil Company, who assisted me in every way, supplies were soon purchased, sent to the depot and on their way to Gia Huynh, Annam, where we were met by Louis, Defosse's son, four bullock carts, two tame buffaloes, an Annamite cook and ten Moï coolies. Here we transferred our dunnage to bull carts and were to continue on mounted to the actual hunting grounds, the Lagna Plains, some forty kilometers to the northeast.

AN INTERESTING JOURNEY

The next morning we proceeded through the jungle on old logging roads to Tang Ling, thirty kilometers away. This village, inhabited by the Chams, is most interesting. Here I saw the last remnants of a disappearing race, an island of Malay Mohammedanism in a sea of Mongolian Buddhism. Their customs are so at variance with those of surrounding Moïs and Annamites that they attract your attention at once. Defosse told me that they were once very numerous, inhabiting most of Annam, and that the many beautiful old temples now to be found in Annam were their works. However, at this time they are reduced to a few thousands and are only to be found in the vicinity where I was, and around Phanthiet. I was much impressed by their adherence to their Mohammedan religion and surprised on going to their mosque to find the crescent over a rude altar and to hear in the religious ceremony I attended the "Allah-il-Allah" of the true believer mixed up with their native language. All this is most surprising, when one considers that they have had no connection with the outside world for three hundred years. However, in passing, I might add that about half of the village has retrograded and accepted the Moï beliefs in demons and forest gods.

Early next morning we quitted Tang Ling and set out for a small Moï village fifteen kilometers away on the banks of the Lagna River. On the way a small hog deer was killed, thereby insuring fresh meat in camp. Continuing on we arrived at our destination and had a most interesting time

ferrying carts and swimming animals across the Lagna River. Most interesting indeed, because we herded several crocodiles into the water ahead of us. Defosse casually told me as we were crossing in our canoe that we could take a swim here every day and I just as casually said "Fine" but made mental reservations, having been brought up in the old army on badger fights and snipe hunting with a lantern. However, I soon found out that the Moï absolutely disregards these ugly brutes, fishing and swimming where they are



A Moï with Hog Deer

to be found. Arriving at camp in the village on the opposite shore, the afternoon was spent in making a palm leaf tent for sleeping quarters for Defosse, Louis and myself, and a grass thatched house for a kitchen. The Moï coolies billeted themselves around the village with others of their kind so that everything was shipshape by dark and all was ready for the hunt proper the following day.

A PRIMITIVE RACE

Let me digress a moment and tell something of these savages, the Moïs. They are the aborigines of Indo-China, who, when their country was con-

quered by the invasion of the yellow races from the north, retired to the jungles and mountains inland and there maintained themselves, confining their conquerors to the China Sea littoral. Gradually those tribes or families bordering on the coast Annamites have received a veneer of civilization and are no longer rated as dangerous, though they are still to be classed as savages. Indeed their name, Moï, means savage in Annamite. Farther back

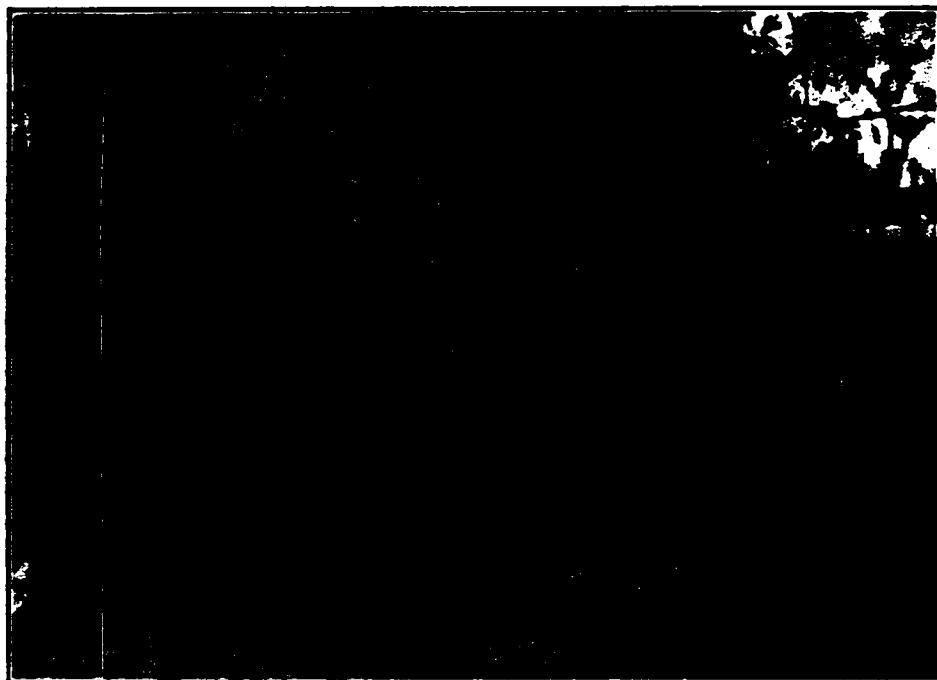


A Moï Family

in the mountains are found the "Moïs insoumis"—unsubmitted Moïs—who have little or no intercourse with civilization and who are practically left to themselves, only a very few white men having ever penetrated into their country.

Their method of living is simple. Game is plentiful and falls a prey to numerous ingenious traps or to their unerring crossbows and poisoned arrows. Fish are to be had for the taking. The jungle abounds in numerous fruits, nuts and roots that give them sustenance. All these are supplemented by dry rice planted in burnt over clearings, much as our Igorotes do in the Philippines.

The family, rather than the tribe, seems to be the unit, the women always remaining in the same village. The amorous young Moï buck in search of a wife must give up his own village for that of his wife, remaining in the house of her parents and assisting them as long as they require him. However, he sometimes leaves, but in that event he must leave the children with the mother and also keep out of bow-shot of his wife's male relatives. The



Moï Chief, Three Wives and Natural Results

illustration shows a young Moï and his wife, she being the daughter of the medicine man for that section of the country.

Polygamy is permitted but seldom indulged in on account of the overhead: to wit, excessive number of in-laws to support. Polygamous marriages are to all intents and purposes restricted to the more influential or better situated Moïs, such as headmen. The large group illustration shows the chief of the village where I camped, with his three wives and some of their twenty-two offspring. The old woman in the center, his first or No. 1 wife, rules the household. His second wife, on the extreme right, lives with the first one, while the third wife, the young one on the left, lives with the family of the

medicine man. The adornments worn by the women are silver neck rings and strings of amber beads.

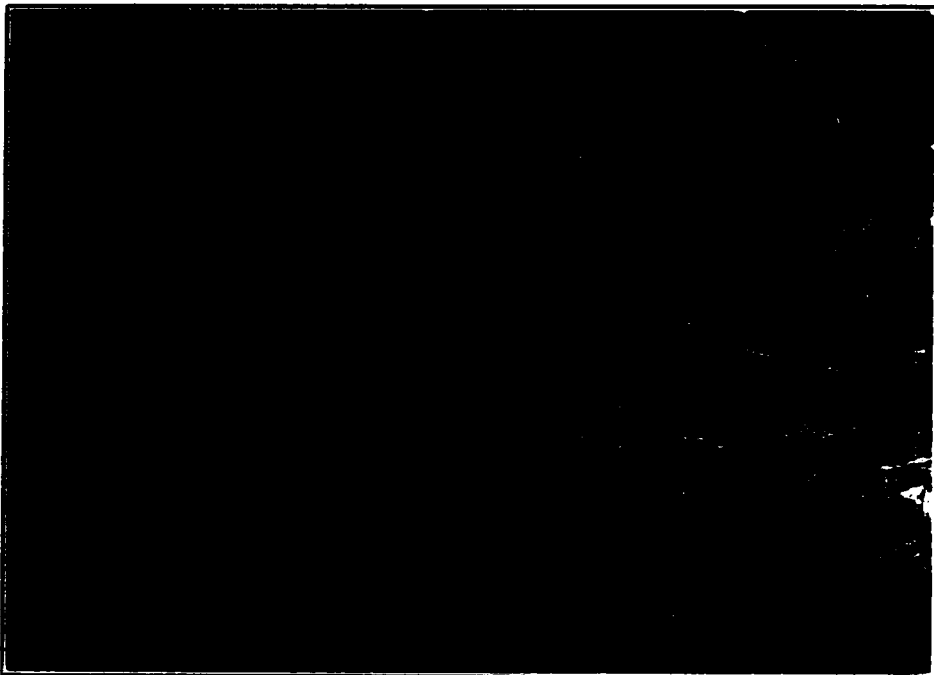
THE MEDICINE MAN

The Moï medicine man exploits the whole village, thereby saving himself the necessity of working. In the case of a sick girl, his grandchild, by the way, I saw how he operated. He built a rude altar, first having made his son-in-law, who lived with him, obtain a gallon of alcohol, six chickens and about a bushel of rice. The ceremony took place one night in front of the assembled village to the accompaniment of the tom-toms. On a low platform was placed the "spirits" and the cooked food, flanked on either side by a candle stuck in a bottle. The medicine man took a kneeling position facing the altar, and went through a number of salaams chanting in the meantime. He then informed the assembled multitude that he had obtained laiason with the God concerned and would ask him what the parents would have to do in order to cast out the evil spirits from their sick child. Placing a pot of live coals in front of him and sprinkling them with sandalwood shavings, he leaned over in the fumes and chanted in a monotone. About every five minutes he would mumble something which none of the other Moïs except his wife, could understand, but which she, with a knowing smile, would translate to the others. He did this four times, the wishes of the God being first, a house; second, an umbrella; third, a pig; and fourth a buffalo. At the fourth translation he gave a good imitation of a taint and remained stretched out for another five minutes when he came to and acted as host, passing out portions of the alcohol and food. Bear in mind that all of the articles requested would go to him as the god's earthly representative. The old rascal was clever, as an explanation of why he asked for each of the articles mentioned will show. The house he lived in was dilapidated, here was his chance to get a new one; the rainy season was approaching, hence the umbrella; the pig is a standard of currency and can be exchanged for alcohol; while he needed a replacement for a buffalo he had sold Defosse two days before. All these things the son-in-law could furnish. The house he would have to build; the umbrella he could purchase from what I paid him; the pig he had; and being a cattle thief (in fact that was the main business of the men of this village), the buffalo he could obtain by the usual means. Really not half as crude as the gold brick method we are so accustomed to.

However, let me leave the Moïs and get back to my hunting again.

In the morning Defosse went out to build a "boma" in the jungle and to set out a bait for tiger, while I with two Moïs went out to try for deer. About a mile from the Moï clearing, I struck the Lagna Plains proper and skirted along the edge of the jungle about two hundred yards out in the knee

high grass of the plains. I never dreamed there could be so many deer in one place, for in a two hours' walk I jumped over sixty and succeeded in killing two hog deer bucks, my Occidental code of hunting prohibiting my shooting does, which constituted nearly all the deer I saw. Defosse later informed me that I should shoot the does in preference to the bucks. It seems that annually many Laotian hunters come down to shoot the bucks while their



Banting Bull

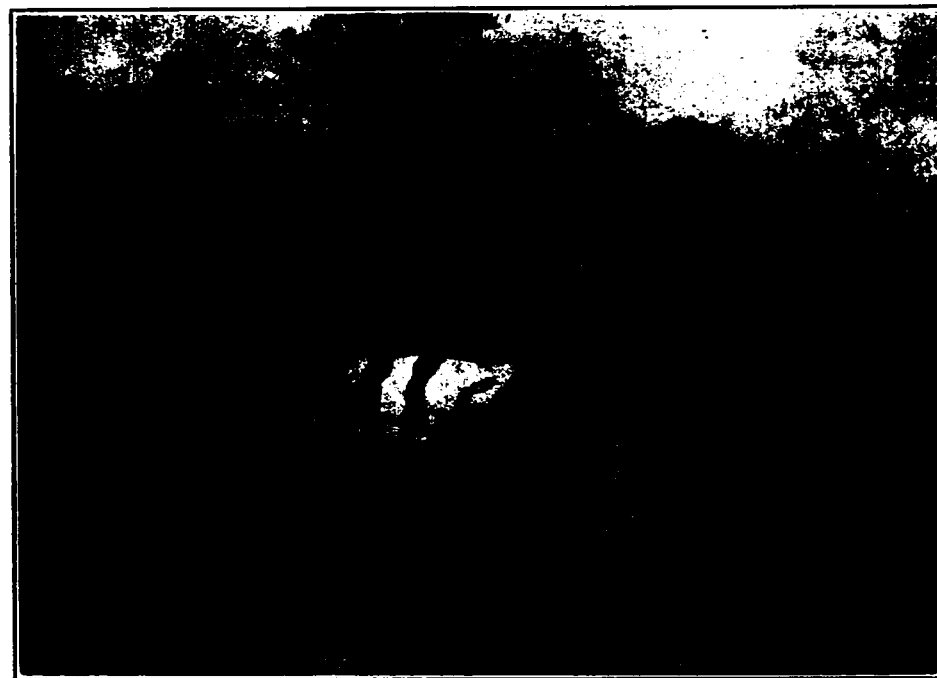
horns are in the velvet, as there is a ready market for these horns among Chinese medicine makers. It is safe to say that an average shot, if he so desired, could kill fifteen deer in a morning's shoot. These deer are a small plains deer, dressing about 40 pounds and are by far the best meat obtainable in Indo-China.

PREPARING FOR THE TIGER

However, let me get back to my story. The Mois packed the deer as you can see from the illustration and I started to return to camp where Defosse met me and told me the "boma" was built and that he would take one of the buffaloes out and kill him there for bait. About two hours after lunch we

went to the jungle and killed the buffalo about fifteen yards in front of the "boma", tying the carcass securely to a tree by a steel cable so that the tiger would not be able to drag it away.

Perhaps a short explanation of the preparation necessary to obtain a shot at tiger will not be superfluous. A likely spot, such as one near a trail junction, for tigers travel on roads and trails almost exclusively, having been selected in the jungle, the next step is to build the "boma". This consists of



A 660 Pound Tiger—Length, 10 feet, 11 inches

a small box-like structure of palm leaf grass and boughs in which the hunter conceals himself and from which he shoots by passing his rifle through a small aperture on the side toward the bait. In addition a grass and palm leaf blind is built and a trail cleared so that one can approach the bait without being seen or heard. This double system is necessary for one goes to look at his bait every morning, just as soon as he can see his sights. If the tiger is there you shoot him from the blind. If he has been there during the night, you get in the "boma", your companions tie it shut, pile boughs on the entrance and go away, leaving you to a policy of watchful waiting and hoping.

On the other hand if the bait has not been touched during the night there is no use sitting in the "boma" as tigers do not prowl around in the day time. Nevertheless, it is worth while to go to look at the bait just at dusk, though this has the disadvantage of requiring a long walk back through the jungle by torchlight. However, if you use a headlight you may get a shot at the large Indian Sambur deer which are sometimes used both for meat and as tiger bait.

The idea of the above proceeding is that having placed your bait under the trees where the birds cannot find it, its aroma will be wafted by the night breezes to where some striped cat will catch the odor and leave his deer hunting for the carrion you have set out. Defosse says that once a tiger smells a bait he is sure to come, even though he has a kill of his own, and will remain in the near vicinity. Having prepared just such a layout we returned to camp thoroughly tired out and ready for dinner.

After dinner Defosse explained the various shots I should take in order to get my tiger. They are three in number. If the tiger is facing you, shoot right between the eyes, while if he has his side exposed, shoot at the bottom of his ear or in the spot on his shoulder, called the clear spot, on account of the absence of black stripes. The illustration shows the clear spot quite plainly. He told me to wait until the tiger started to feed and watch until he kept his head still, when I should shoot. He also strongly advised the head shot as being certain, whereas the shoulder shot might entail the dangerous undertaking of following the blood trail of a wounded tiger. This I have found out by experience is "not so good", as wounded tigers usually are rather peevish and do not like to be crowded. This is one case where the old "two are company, three are a crowd" does not hold. Two are a crowd in this case and after one experience in grass twelve feet high, never again for me.

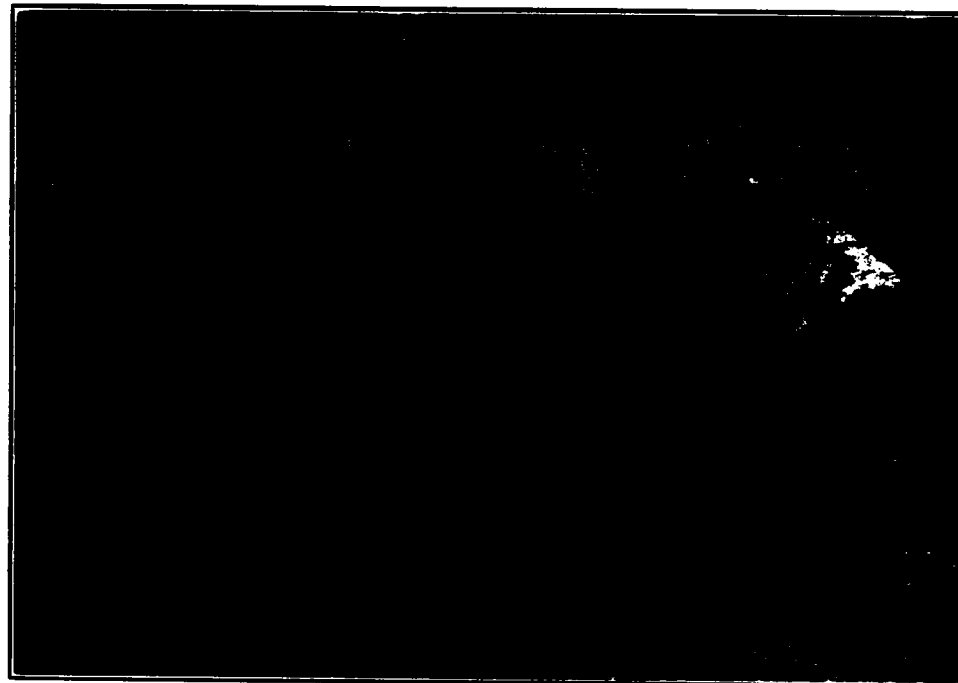
For the next few days I visited the bait every morning and finding it had not been touched, continued on to the plains in search of sladang, or Indian bison, a large humped animal much like our American bison only larger, attaining a height of seven feet or more at the hump and a weight of thirty-three hundred or more pounds. Many fresh tracks of sladang were seen but apparently they left the plains and went into the jungle before we arrived, due to our first going to the bait each morning. Hog deer we killed as we wanted, taking running shots only for the sport of it, as they were so plentiful. These deer were as nearly tame as any I ever saw. They did not know what fire-arms were and never ran over one hundred and fifty yards, often stopping every few jumps to look back at us. I have seen as many as twenty at one time and killed several each time I went after them.

A SLADANG HUNT

By this time my tiger bait was about gone, so that as things turned out one morning I was fortunate indeed. I was awakened by Defosse about three

A. M., and on going outside the tent heard on three sides of camp a continuous something like the moo of a cow but terminating in a rasping drawn out sound. Defosse informed me that these were sladang calling and that it behooved us to get our breakfast and get going.

We started out shortly thereafter for an hour's hike through the dark jungle finding our way by means of the pitch torches carried by the Moïs. When we arrived near the edge of the jungle, the calling of the sladang was



Solitary Sladang Bull

very near and very loud so that I was on edge, well knowing that this was the most dangerous of the game to be found in Indo-China.

As we approached the long grass at the edge of the jungle two dark shapes snorted and ran off. I made no effort to shoot as it was still too dark to see my sights. As I was approaching a small tree I jumped another but the same conditions existing I again did not attempt to shoot. Just as I arrived in the open I saw, about one hundred and fifty yards to my left, a herd of about twenty-five sladang. The grass being high I climbed into a small isolated tree and luckily found the limbs so arranged that I had a seat, foot rest, back rest and muzzle rest. From my elevated position I saw

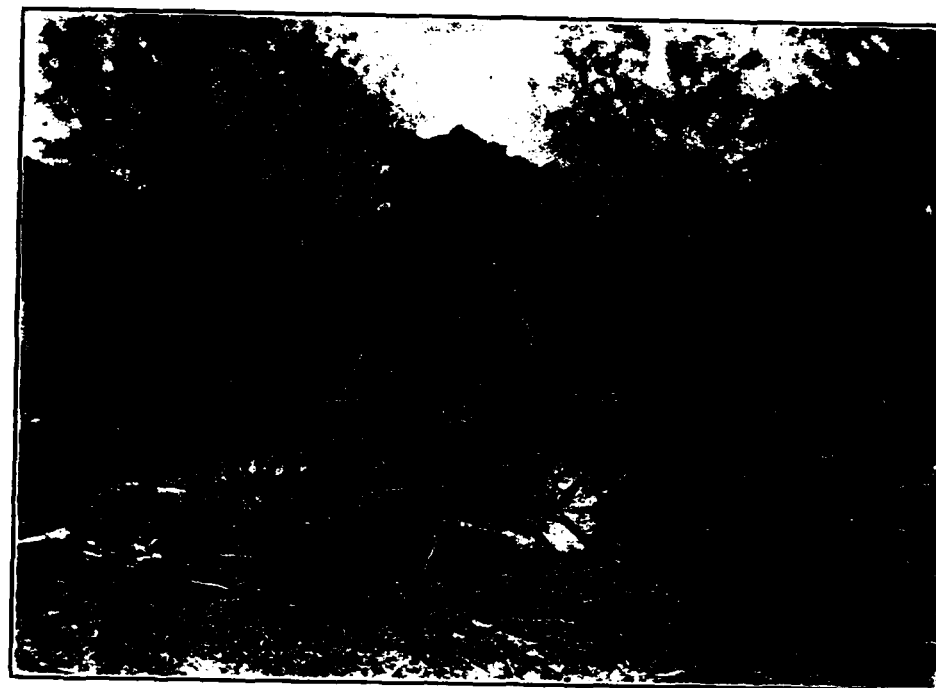
one sladang a little nearer than the others and attempted to draw a bead on it but found I could not see my sights. Defosse advised me to shoot as the herd was restless, so aligning my sights on the sky I brought my rifle down and fired, being fortunate enough to drop one, I fired two more shots at the running herd but did not hit. After a short time during which we watched the one that was down, we went up and found that my 220 grain, hard nosed Springfield bullet had broken the back of my first quarry, a sladang cow. Suddenly behind us I heard the sladang call again and only at a distance of about four hundred yards. I went back along the edge of the jungle, hoping to get a calf for a tiger bait, as Defosse had his doubts about moving the cow. As I came out to the edge of the grass, I heard two snorts and there twenty-five yards away was an enormous solitary bull pawing the ground and goring a bush, apparently ready to deny our passage in that direction. At first I thought it was an elephant, so large was this brute when viewed broadside at close range. However, I did not view him long as Defosse pulled me back into the fringe of trees at the edge of the plain. From behind a tree I fired at his left shoulder with a solid, not getting a head shot as he was still goring the bush. He raised his head slowly and looked straight in front of him with a dazed expression in his eye. I fired again, this time for his neck and he collapsed. I went up and fired into his head. By the way, this should always be done as one must be sure that his game is killed and not simply stunned. I then proceeded to put the tape on him getting the following measurements: tip of nose to root of tail, ten feet eight inches; height at withers, six feet, 4 inches; height at hump seven feet, one-half inch. Defosse estimated him at well over three thousand pounds.

After taking some pictures we returned to camp where Defosse got the Moï chief to agree, for ten piastres and the meat of the sladang bull, to drag the sladang cow into the jungle. I might mention in passing that it took thirty-two men to drag the cow four hundred yards and then it was only possible due to a heavy dew which acted as a lubricant. The next day was spent in building a "boma" and preparations for getting a tiger. Several days elapsed before a tiger touched this bait but in the meantime I had good sport on sambur, hog deer, wild boar and peacocks.

A TIGER AT LAST

At last the morning came, when arriving at the sladang bait I saw that it had been dragged out of its usual position and a third of one hind quarter had been eaten. Into the "boma" I got, while Defosse and the Moïs placed leaves on the door and went away talking, this being the approved solution to let the tiger know that it was all clear and he could come up. Now came the agonizing part. Tensed, all ears, I listened for the approach of the jungle king, not trusting the limited view I could get from the peep hole. Every time a leaf fell on the "boma," my heart skipped a beat and once when a lizard dragged himself on the dry leaves behind my back, it nearly stopped altogether. To say that I was on the "qui vive"

would hardly express it as I am sure I could have heard a mosquito call from fifty yards away. But all these heart jumps were nothing to the one I got when the deep silence of the jungle was broken by a crash like thunder in the limbs just over my head. At this point I nearly passed out, figuring the tiger surely had me. When I was able to move I parted the brush on the top of the "boma" and saw a small monkey perched in a limb over my head looking at the bait. At that moment I fully realized the meaning of "premeditated" and "malice afore-

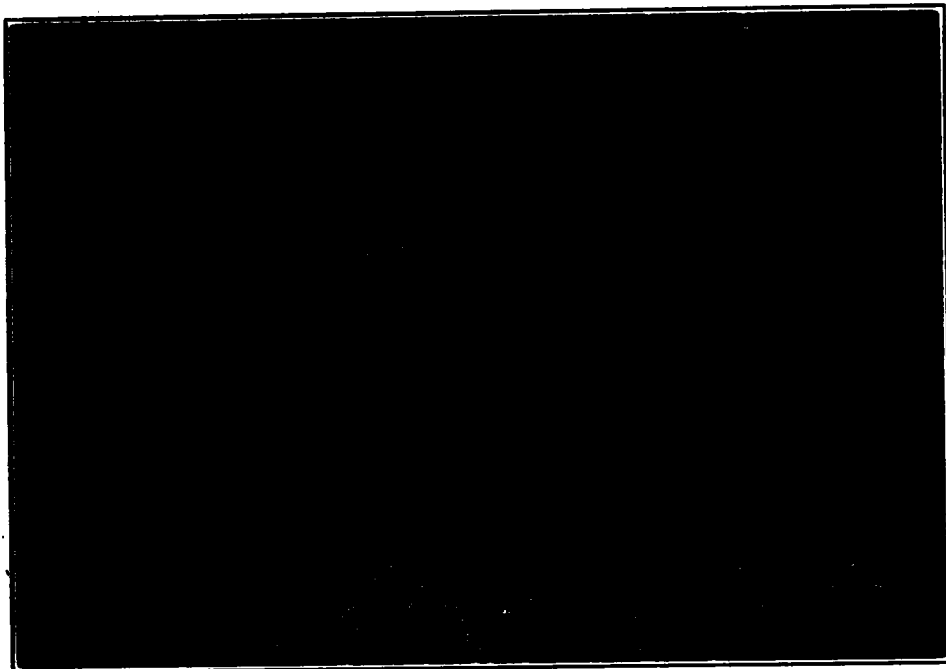


The Hunter's Reward. Weight, 600 Pounds. Length, 10 feet, 6 inches

thought" as given in the Manual of Courts Martial. However, I might add that I felt mighty relieved at the same time.

Shortly afterwards two jungle fowl came out in the small clearing near the bait and were joined later by a kind of pheasant. Next an iguana, or large lizard, about four feet long slithered over the leaves and started to partake of the bait. This interested me deeply, so that while I was intently watching his actions, eye close to the peep hole, I lost track of my mission. However, I was to be reminded of it in a most emphatic manner. Every detail is fixed on my memory. There in front of me was the lizard with an enormous piece of meat apparently stuck in his throat and which he was unable to either disgorge or swallow, a large

round swelling showing in his neck. I remember he was making a tremendous effort to swallow when all was blotted from my sight except a succession of black and orange stripes and an overpowering smell of tiger not two feet in front of my face. The tiger had come. Straight to the bait he went and stood with his forepaws on its rump, broadside to me and looking at the departing lizard. Zero hour had arrived. Carefully I passed my Springfield barrel through the peephole, caught the aperture of his ear over my front sight and pressed the



A Fallen Jungle King

trigger. He dropped to the shot, and lay still except for the snakelike movement of the tip of his tail so common to the cat family. My mission was accomplished.

Shortly thereafter we broke camp and moved to a new country where I killed four banting, a type of wild cattle of the same family as the sladang. In fact, the sladang is called the gaur, and the banting, the lesser gaur. Both these brutes furnish wonderful sport to the hunter and alone make the trip worth while.

A HUNT FOR ELEPHANT

All the time I hunted banting I saw innumerable tracks of elephants, but too old to make it worth while to follow them. One day, though, we came on spoor not two hours old and Defosse took the trail out through the tall grass into the jungle to a dry stream bed where they had dug in the sand for water. We closed

in on them and soon heard them thrashing around in the jungle and breaking limbs as they fed. Defosse called a halt, lighted his pipe so that he could have his wind direction all the time, and finally told me to follow him as he intended to make a circle, head them off and let them feed up to us. We started our detour and had gone about five hundred yards through the jungle when Defosse motioned me to come alongside at the same time pointing to my right front. All I saw was an ant hill and foliage until the ant hill moved and resolved itself into the huge stern of an elephant. I think she was surprised for she turned and came a few steps towards us bringing her massive head into full view. No time now to pick a shot, for we had to shoot and that quickly. We both fired and she sank back into a sitting position but it was only an instant before she got on her feet and lumbered towards us. The details of the next few moments are not very clear in my memory. However, I knew Defosse was firing, and I, too, was firing as fast as I could. The elephant fell again, got up, came on again and fell once more, this time on her side. While I reloaded, Defosse slipped up and fired a shot into her head on the line between her eye and ear, and she rose no more. I feel sure that she was not charging but that her first forward movement was impelled either by curiosity or by being startled and that her continued advance was pure inertia, the head shots she was receiving dazing her until her brain was pierced and she fell.

So ended my actual hunt in Indo-China. However, I do not think it would be amiss here to mention that this trip can be made from Manila for five hundred dollars, everything included. Considering passage, a month's outing, wonderful big game shooting, and a top notch guide, it is indeed cheap when compared to any other country offering the same hunting advantages.

NOTE: The author will be glad to furnish any one writing him with detailed information regarding this trip.



The Principles of War and Their Application to Small Cavalry Units

I. Principle of the Offensive

BY

Lieutenant W. F. PRIDE, Cavalry

THE dictionary tells us a principle is a "fundamental truth—a general truth—an axiom." Training Regulations 10-5, referring to the Principles of War states, "These principles are immutable. Their application varies with the situation, the fundamentals of which are time, space or distance, terrain, weather, relative strength, including the physical and disciplinary factors, such as numbers, morale, communication, supply and armament. *Their proper application constitutes the true measure of military art, and it is the duty of all officers to acquire their true meaning by study, particularly the study of history, by reflection, and by practice, not only in purely military work, but in administration and business operations.*"

We are prone to accept those statements rather perfunctorily and in casually reading Training Regulations 10-5 decide that the Principles of War are not for lieutenants and captains to appreciate and practice but are something that requires a War College graduate's education to understand. In other words, the tendency is to make a mountain out of a mole hill. As a matter of fact the Principles of War are nothing but good old fashioned horse sense and their application requires only the employment of more of that good old fashioned quality. As proof of that statement, it is not necessary to search further than the records of the War of the Rebellion. That war developed many leaders who became successful commanders with nothing more to start with in the way of preparation than a natural fund of sound common sense. Napoleon realized the necessity for physical superiority at the decisive point and stated this principle in many ways. Forrest summarized the whole thing in his famous statement about "gittin' there fust with the mostest men."

Let us accept for a moment the statement that the Principles of War are merely statements of horse sense and inquire why the War Department states that it is the duty of all officers to acquire their true meaning by study, by reflection, and by practice? There are probably several reasons. One of the most important may be the fact that the human race collectively is not composed of really keen observers. How many of us have not had the experience of passing by a familiar object daily without noticing it until some particular incident called our attention to it? The object may have been a projecting sign over a building, a monument, a building of peculiar shape or color; it makes no difference. The point is that it was so obvious we over-

looked it until something unusual occurred to call our attention to it. The same thing applies to our reading. A mere casual reading of a campaign will reveal little of value to us and that little will be quickly forgotten. It is only by reading and rereading, studying and staking out the various moves of the campaign on a map that we can really appreciate and understand it. What is more obvious than the fact that if we want something in this world we must go get it? Very plainly speaking that is a statement of the Principle of the Offensive. Yet history is replete with examples of commanders who have not observed that principle—and who have failed.

VALUE OF STUDY

In Napoleon's Maxims we find this statement on the value of study, "If I always appear prepared, it is because before entering on an undertaking I have meditated for long and have foreseen what may occur. It is not genius which reveals to me suddenly and secretly what I have to do in circumstances unexpected by other people; it is reflection; it is meditation.

The process of education might well be defined as that of training common sense. By training our common sense then, by study, by reflection and by practice in time of peace we can gradually develop it to the point where the Principles of War will become in truth, principles; to the point where they will be axiomatic. Then it is possible that in the heat of the battle, when there are a thousand conflicting and disturbing factors, this study and reflection will point to us what we have to do. Our trained common sense will respond under any and all circumstances.

The purpose of this article is to point out briefly some of the more important features of the Principle of the Offensive and to show the application of that principle to the training and conduct of small cavalry units.

IMPORTANCE OF THE OFFENSIVE

The importance of the offensive is stressed throughout all War Department publications. In Section V of Training Regulations 10-5 we find this statement, "The *object* to be attained by *training* is to *enable* the *Army* to *wage offensive warfare*. While training must cover certain phases of defensive doctrine and police doctrine, the Army must definitely understand that these are only means to the definite end—*offensive warfare*—and *every individual* in the military service must be *imbued* with the *spirit* of the *offensive*." The meat of that statement is included in the last sentence which states that every individual in the military service must be imbued with the spirit of the offensive. That does not mean generals alone but lieutenants and corporals and every individual. That being the case, and the announced policy of the War Department, it behooves every individual to understand that principle and what its observance includes under any and all circumstances.

One of the finest examples of a command that was thoroughly imbued with the spirit of the offensive may be found in the annals of our Civil War. Stonewall Jackson had the faculty of instilling that quality into his men. It is said of his division at the second Manassas (Stonewall Jackson by Hender-

son) "So long as the cold steel was left to them, and their flanks were safe, they knew that their indomitable leader expected them to hold their ground, and right gallantly they responded."

Frederick the Great recognized the value of the offensive and his cavalry presents one of the best examples in history of cavalry imbued with that spirit. In Denison's History of Cavalry we find that "Frederick not only ordered his cavalry to charge, sword in hand, but he recommended his officers always to be the first to charge; he being of the opinion that the offensive was the proper, and only principle, on which cavalry should act."

History is replete with examples of the successful employment of cavalry that has been handled offensively. It is not within the scope of this article to cite many examples; it is sufficient to state that Seidlitz, Ziethen, Murat, Stuart, Forrest, Wilson, Ashby and Allenby, all attained their successes by observance of the Principle of the Offensive.

When the writer was a student at the Cavalry School, Colonel Hamilton Hawkins, then Assistant Commandant, used to cite frequent examples of the employment of small cavalry units on the Mexican Border and in the Philippines. One of the best of those incidents concerned a Corporal Morris of the 4th Cavalry and took place in Zambales Province, P. I. Corporal Morris had been sent with a detachment of fifteen men from his troop to find a signal detachment that had become separated from the command. The corporal found the detachment, remained with it that night and started to rejoin his command next morning. On the return march his force was preceded by a point of two men. At a small bamboo bridge over a stream crossing, his point came upon a Filipino dozing in the sun, whom they promptly threw into the stream. His screams alarmed a party of two or three hundred insurrectionists hidden by grass and trees on the far side of the stream. It was necessary that Corporal Morris cross the stream at this point in order to regain his command. Some members of his detachment desired to dismount and fight on foot. Alone and isolated as they were, this course would probably have been suicidal. Corporal Morris charged across the stream and through a cut in the farther bank in column of twos killing seven of the enemy and escaped without loss to his own command. He understood the value and importance of the offensive.

APPLICATION TO SMALL UNITS

In an article published in the October, 1925, number of THE CAVALRY JOURNAL the writer referred to a mounted combat situation that was a part of a platoon competition held at The Cavalry School in June. It will be of interest here to study that situation a little more carefully. The competing platoon was assumed to be reconnoitering in hostile territory. At a certain point along the route the advance elements of the competing platoon came to a nose extending across the road. About two hundred yards farther on the road turned to the right for about two hundred yards and then left again.

From the nose the road beyond and the surrounding country were visible for some distance.

When the advance elements reached this nose they saw two mounted men with flags spaced at such a distance on the road as to represent the leading and rear elements of a hostile platoon of cavalry. Those men were moving toward the nose at a walk with the leading man about five or six hundred yards away. (Note: The advance elements of our friendly platoon were not left to make these assumptions themselves. An umpire riding with them pointed out the two mounted men and explained quickly and briefly what they represented.) Note also that the point of the Blue or friendly platoon, if it approached the nose properly, was hidden from view of the hostile platoon.

It will be of interest to study the way the average platoon reacted.

1. The points promptly dismounted and opened fire. In some cases "Enemy in sight" was signalled back to the platoon and in some it was not.
2. On hearing the firing or receiving the signal some platoon leaders left their platoons to follow at a walk while they galloped forward to make their personal reconnaissance. Others took their platoon forward promptly but wasted time issuing a long, academic order.
3. In every case a mounted attack was finally decided upon.
4. In every case the action was characterized by a very noticeable degree of slowness due to wasted time in the issuance of orders and making a personal reconnaissance.

A careful study of this one action which took place during the platoon competition and which has just been briefly described will teach us many things. For the present we will confine ourselves to the points noted above.

In teaching advance guard conduct and action it is usually the case in a meeting engagement that the advance guard does dismount as a whole or in part and forms the pivot of maneuver for the main body. But that type of action is more likely to be the result of the meeting of larger units—say units the size of a squadron or larger. The smaller the unit, the more diversified its actions will be because the small unit is more flexible, more mobile and can be controlled much more quickly and readily. But for the small unit to reap the benefits of its greater facility for maneuver, its mobility and its general handiness it must realize that it possesses those qualities and it must be practiced in exercising them.

FORM OF ORDERS

The five paragraph, formal order is splendid. It serves a very definite end. One has only to read some of the orders issued during the Revolution, The Mexican and Civil Wars in order to appreciate its advantages. But it must not be recited parrot-like at great length in all situations. In a previous article it was shown how a complete five paragraph order might be issued without a word being spoken, as for example:

Paragraph 1—Leader points to enemy.

Paragraph 2—Leader raises his pistol.

Paragraph 3—Leader signals Line.

Paragraph 4—Omitted.

Paragraph 5—Leader sticks his spurs in his horse and moves out—leading his unit.

The above order is, of course, applicable to a small unit in a hastily prepared action. The point to be emphasized, however, is that mobility and handiness should not be sacrificed for the sake of a form.

Keeping the above situation in mind let us digress a little and consider what is necessary to imbue our troops with the offensive spirit.

First and perhaps the most important aspect of the Principle of the Offensive is that which involves getting the jump on the other fellow. When two hostile forces, whose relative combat strength is equal, or nearly so, meet it is obvious that that one of them that launches its attack first will have the advantage. In such a situation there are only two alternatives; to fight or to run. In order to get the jump on the other fellow the leader must be alert and aggressive himself. He must be quick in making his reconnaissance and decision and quick in putting his decision into effect.

The second factor to consider is that it is not sufficient for the leader to decide to take the offensive and get the jump on the enemy. That is merely a mental process. For his decision to succeed every man and subordinate under him must have confidence in their leaders and in their ability to handle their weapons and cope with the enemy.

IMPORTANCE OF TRAINING

Finally, then, in order that men and subordinate leaders may have that confidence they must have practice. And that is a matter of training. The higher commanders obtain their knowledge of the value of the offensive through study. Men and subordinate leaders obtain the same knowledge, in time of peace, through constant training in small combat exercises, by drill, and by study.

Training Regulations have taken a great stride forward when they prescribe that training in combat exercises shall begin early in the recruits' instruction. That is excellent but it is not enough. In a short time the recruit becomes proficient in advancing as a skirmisher or as a forager over a familiar part of the drill field. But confront that recruit with a new situation or a new piece of terrain and he will be as green as ever. The Principle of the Offensive cannot be taught by teaching the men of a platoon to yell when they charge across the drill field or by a display of savage ferocity when they ride through the saber course. Those are aids but there are many others.

If we study the campaigns of Seidlitz, Murat, Forrest, Allenby and the accounts of the successful employment of small cavalry units we will find one common characteristic in all those leaders—Initiative. Initiative may be natural or developed. If it is natural, training will help it along the right lines and if it is not natural, training will develop it.

Let us then in our training of recruits, non-commissioned officers and our platoons and troops, display initiative. In a meeting engagement it is obvious

that the conduct of a platoon acting as advance guard for a squadron will not usually be the same as that of four men acting as advance guard for a platoon. But the platoon will not know it unless it has practice in both types of action.

It has become a principle of cavalry employment that small isolated bodies of cavalry, if they fight at all, should fight mounted, unless the mission forbids mounted action. Had the competing platoons, in the situation previously described, been habituated to that type of action the results might have been different. For example, had the points known as a result of their training, that in such a situation the platoon leader would charge, they would probably have done one of two things; either they would have remained concealed until the remainder of their platoon reached them or they would have charged the hostile point, mounted.

In order for every man to be imbued with the spirit of the Offensive it would appear that we must instill variety into our training and develop initiative by presenting constantly varied situations, by actually showing men and subordinates what they can do. This will develop confidence in themselves, their ability to handle their weapons and in their leaders. And of course for the cavalryman, bold riding is essential to this confidence. A cavalry unit which possesses those qualifications—confidence in self, in ability to handle its weapons, in its leader and in ability to ride like the devil wherever a horse can go—will have the true offensive spirit and given a fair chance will be unbeatable.



The Cavalry School Team

In the Colorado Endurance Ride

BY

Captain H. N. BEEMAN, V. C.

THE 1925 Colorado Endurance Ride contributed another praiseworthy chapter in the annals of equine endurance, and The Cavalry School horses furnished their full share of the gameness and enduring qualities exhibited in the grueling five day test. It is the purpose of this article to chronicle the part taken by the Cavalry School representatives. An attempt will be made to convey to our readers some of the lessons learned, but unfortunately the most valuable ones will have to remain deeply engraved on our own consciousness, because it would be futile to try to picture such sensations as riding a tired horse the last long miles of the last long day.

PRELIMINARY SELECTION OF HORSES

Authority to send three officers, three enlisted men, and six horses to participate in the 1925 Colorado Endurance Ride was received in the latter part of May. The officers were not selected until the first week in June, at which time we started to select our horses. Major B. T. Merchant, Director, Department of Horsemanship, gave us permission to use any horse except those going with the Horse Show Team. A list of horses known to have good breeding, serviceably sound limbs, and a record of good endurance was made first. Horses under seven years of age were not considered. The annual night ride gave us an opportunity to observe the performance of several prospects on a long ride. The others on the list were examined under the saddle for character of gaits. A tentative selection of ten horses was made as a result of these observations, and two others were added later for tryout on the road. A brief description of all horses selected for trial is as follows:

Vamp: Color, b.; sex, G.; age, 12; height, 15-3¼; weight, 1040 pounds; breeding, ½ T. B., by Ganadore. Remarks: A rather leggy, clean limbed horse with very clean gaits, and a real down the road disposition. Owned by Capt. H. N. Beeman, V. C. Put in training on March 1st, and did well in the April ride of 150 miles at the Cavalry School.

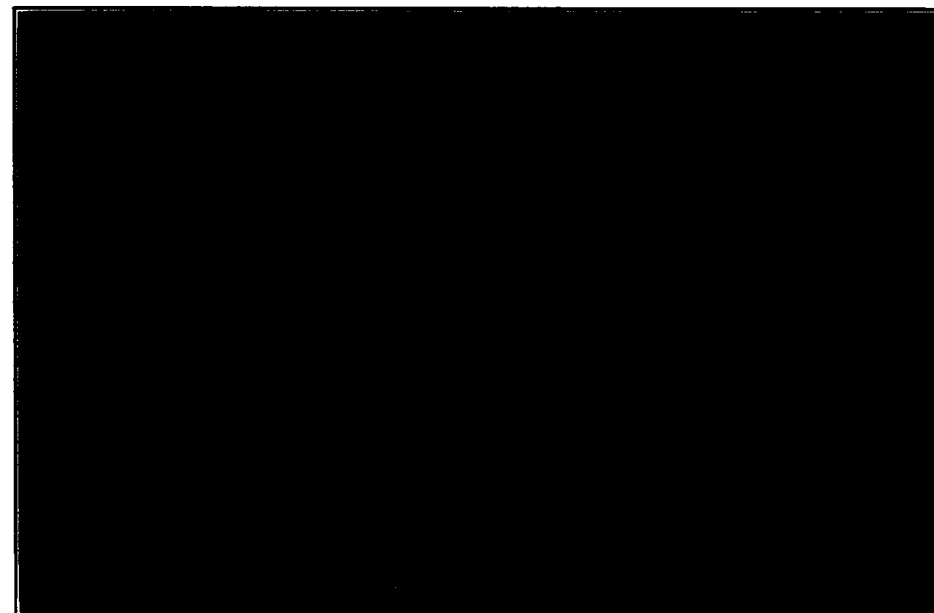
Dick Boola: Color, blk.; sex, G.; age, 11; height, 15-3½; weight, 1075 pounds; breeding, ½ T. B., by Boola Boola. Remarks: A good type of horse with very quiet disposition. Paddles a little with both front, travels wide and close to ground. Has been used as a jumper in classes for several years, and did well in several night rides.

McAlester: Color, b.; sex, G.; age, 10; height, 15-2; weight, 955 pounds; breeding, ½ T. B., by Patrick Henry. Remarks: A chunky, sturdy, good legged polo pony, which had played several years. Gaits straight and clean but travels with a short, choppy stride.

Aline: Color, blue roan; sex, M.; age, 7; height, 15-3¼; weight, 1050 pounds; breeding, ¾ T. B., by Al Block. Remarks: Travels wide but high in front and a little close behind. This mare went 230 miles in 1924 Colorado ride, and 120 miles in 1924 Eastern ride. Was withdrawn each time for lameness in front. She showed no ill effects as a result of these efforts.

Potomac: Color, ch.; sex, G.; age, 10; height, 15-2¼; weight, 990 pounds; breeding, ¾ T. B., by Tecumseh, Jr. Remarks: A good shouldered, long backed, sickle-hocked horse, which travels with good clearance in front but close behind when trotting less than 10 miles an hour. Has been used as a jumper for several years, and did well in all night rides.

Lunetta: Color, b.; sex, M.; age, 7; height, 16; weight, 985 pounds; breeding, ¾ T. B., by Dandy Rock. Remarks: A leggy, good bodied mare which travels high in front but with good clearance front and hind. Was ridden hard for past three years and did well in the night ride. Was very thin and tired when school closed.



Aline, Captain Beeman Up

Leavitt: Color, br.; sex, G.; age, 8; height, 15-3¼; weight, 1020 pounds; breeding, ½ T. B., by Black Dick. Remarks: Another leggy horse which had shown good endurance in three night rides. Travels close in front. Has a very free, easy swing to trot and canter.

Wind: Color, br.; sex, M.; age, 7; height, 15-1½; weight, 910 pounds; breeding, ½ T. B., by Son O'Wind. Remarks: A short coupled, strong mare which travels high but square. Shies very badly and has a bony growth on inside of left hock above the location of a spavin, probably due to an injury. Has been used for polo two years and went fine in the night ride.

Printon: Color, br.; sex, M.; age, 8; height, 15; weight, 850 pounds; breeding, ½ T. B., by Footprint. Remarks: A high strung little mare of fair conformation. Travels high but very squarely. Shies badly and lacks a little depth. Was ridden hard all year and did very well in the night ride.

Senor Montes: Color, dk. b.; sex, G.; age, 9; height, 15-2; weight, 975 pounds;

breeding, $\frac{1}{2}$ T. B., by Haldeman. Remarks: A beautiful little horse with very nice smooth gaits. Travels close behind. Has been used as a green polo pony during the year.

Doc Pollard: Color, lt. b.; sex, G.; age, 9; height, 15-3; weight, 1050 pounds; breeding, $\frac{1}{2}$ T. B., by Haldeman. Remarks: A nice type lightweight hunter with good gaits but a tendency to knuckle over behind. Was ridden about one hour a day for last four months.

Noraldo: Color, ch.; sex, G.; age, 9; height, 14-3 $\frac{1}{2}$; weight, 910 pounds; breeding, T. B., by Giral di. Remarks: A beautiful, close coupled, deep bodied, clean limbed little horse. Travels wide in front but close behind. Very nervous and not well broken. Was ridden a little by some who tried to break him, but had been in pasture three months.

Mr. Green: Color, ch.; sex, G.; age, 10; height, 15-3; weight, 1100 pounds; breeding, $\frac{1}{2}$ T. B., by Charcot. Remarks: A fat, sluggish, big-boned, good bodied horse with smooth gaits and good clearance. A very lazy horse on the road. Was used as a jumper for several years.

The principal things considered in the selection of these horses, besides age and breeding, were ease and rhythm of action at the trot, clearance fore and hind at all gaits, soundness, record of past performance in long rides, conformation to some extent, and the shape, size and condition of the feet. The most common fault found in all horses was a tendency to interfere behind. It is really remarkable how many good horses are so defective in their gaits as to make them unfit for such tests.

SELECTION OF RIDERS

The selection of riders was made by the Commandant, Brig. Gen. E. L. King, upon the recommendation of Major B. T. Merchant, Cav., Director, Department of Horsemanship. Captain R. W. Grow, Captain R. T. Maddocks, and the writer, having expressed a desire to participate in the ride, were fortunate enough to be named. The latter was appointed team captain and given full authority in all details. It was arranged to take Private First Class Delbert C. Harris, Veterinary Service, along as an extra rider without expense to the government. Captains Grow and Maddocks, and Private Harris rode in a three day endurance ride held at Fort Riley, in April, and I rode in the 1924 Colorado Endurance Ride. Three enlisted men from the 9th Cavalry were selected as grooms, and one as a horseshoer. Corporal Linton Young, 9th Cavalry, was placed in charge of the enlisted men.

The riders were selected mainly because of their enthusiasm and interest in the event. It was very fortunate that we all had confidence in each other and that our ideas were very much alike, because a long period of training requires loyalty and unselfishness on the part of each member, if the team is to function as a unit.

SELECTION OF EQUIPMENT

The selection of equipment was given considerable thought during the time we were selecting horses. Six field saddles of the Saumur and Rock Island type were selected after looking over the available supply. Several training saddles were also used during the training period. Each rider was given an opportunity to use each saddle and select the one best suited to him.

The leather girths were covered with sheepskin. The Cavalry Board furnished ten all wool blankets and in addition we drew eight new O. D., saddle blankets. The former were used next to the horse and the issue blankets were used on top. Each saddle was equipped with large wooden stirrups, which are similar to those on the McClellan saddle, except they have no hood. These proved to be exceptionally comfortable as they are cool, and the wide tread is restful. Single snaffle hunting bridles and hackamores were used principally, although one double bridle was taken along. The miscellaneous equipment consisted of fly sheets and hoods, horse covers for use in the latter part of September, two buckets, sponges, saddle soap, etc. A complete horseshoer's outfit and stock of shoes and nails were taken to Colorado. All the blankets and fly sheets were laundered several times before the ride started.

The equipment for carrying weight consisted of pommel pockets and canvas weight pads. The weight pads are made of heavy canvas, cut the size of a folded saddle blanket, to fit the contour of the back. Seven pockets for the lead are sewed on each lower border. The lead in these pockets is carried principally on the spring of the ribs and causes no trouble whatever with the back or withers when two blankets are used. A small amount of lead and four horseshoes were carried in the pommel pockets by two riders.

TRAINING IN GENERAL

The training began June 14th, when all the horses were collected in one stable, equipment drawn, and grooms assigned to duty with the team. The first seven weeks were spent at Fort Riley, three days were taken for the shipment to Fort Logan, Colorado, the next five and one-half weeks were spent at Fort Logan, and the last nine days at Colorado Springs.

Our mission was very clear and consisted of finishing four horses in the best time and best condition possible. The immediate mission was to condition six horses so that one was as fit to start as the other. In order to accomplish our mission, we decided on the lines of action considered necessary and then conducted the whole training with those things constantly in mind. These lines of action were as follows:

1. To have each officer ride all horses enough so he could form an opinion of the ability of each one.
2. To keep each horse in good flesh and at the same time muscle the back, loin and quarters.
3. To accustom the backs to carrying 200 pounds.
4. To accustom each horse to going quietly on the side of the road.
5. To gait each horse at four and a half to five miles per hour at the walk and ten miles per hour at the trot.
6. To grow good, solid walls on all feet.
7. To keep each horse fresh and in good spirits.
8. To study the idiosyncrasies of each animal.
9. To leave nothing undone which would add to their comfort.
10. To accept the entire responsibility of seeing that each horse

was fed, watered and groomed exactly when and how we wanted it done.

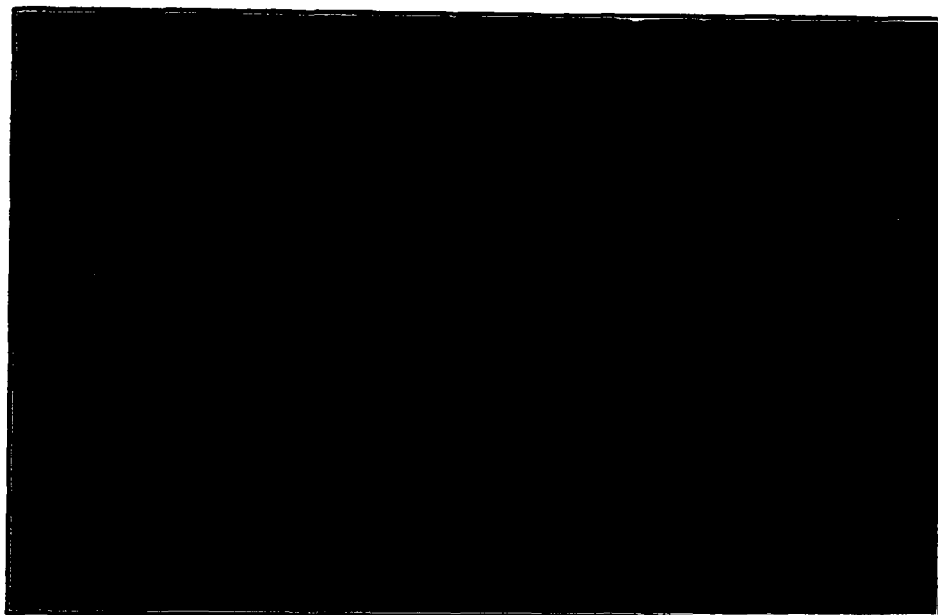
11. To select the four best horses, and find the best combination of horse and rider.

12. To leave the Endurance Ride in our horses until the ride started.

A daily schedule was instituted the first week and followed through to the end. The daily routine was as follows:

5:30 A.M.—Feed grain and hay.

7:00 A.M.—Brush off horses and saddle.



McAlester, Captain Maddocks Up

7:30 A.M.—Start daily exercise.

Return from exercise—Bandage legs, groom, remove wet bandages and hand rub legs, pack feet with clay or white rock.

11:30 A.M.—Feed grain and hay.

2:00 P.M.—Graze or lead around for 15-30 min.

4:00 P.M.—Feed grain and hay.

7:30 P.M.—Feed grain and hay.

Note. Water was kept in the stall day and night.

This system seemed to work very well and within a short time everyone became accustomed to the routine so that there was never any confusion and everyone knew what was to be done without asking. Each officer took

turn as O.D., and was present at the time of grooming, feeding and grazing. The grain for each feed was always measured by an officer, and he never left the stable without seeing that each horse had hay and water.

EXERCISE

All the horses were worked together for the first seven weeks, with a few exceptions, which were necessary. During the last few weeks, they were worked in pairs, switching horses from one pair to another. The amount of exercise was planned by the week as nearly as possible and was regulated by the weights of the horses, their condition, and the weather. Sunday was always utilized to give the horses a rest and change. The Sunday exercise consisted of about thirty minutes at the walk and gallop, and a breeze of about a half to one mile. The exercise during the first two weeks consisted of about two hours daily at five miles per hour for all horses except *Lunetta* and *Leavitt*, which got about one hour at the walk. The next two weeks we gave them an average of two hours daily at six miles per hour. *Lunetta* and *Leavitt* were given one and a half hours daily at five miles per hour, and *Norald* was worked three hours daily at six miles per hour. The fifth week found all horses ready for the same amount of work, which consisted of two and a half hours at six and a half miles per hour. About two five minute gallops were included in each day's work from now on. The sixth week was utilized to try out the doubtful ones with a long ride. *Lunetta*, *Mr. Green*, *Norald*, *Potomac*, and *Leavitt* were each ridden thirty-four miles at seven and eight-tenths miles per hour. *Dick Boola*, *McAlester*, and *Vamp* got three hours a day at seven miles per hour. The next week was started by a twenty-four mile ride in three hours and then the speed and distance was tapered down each day in preparation for shipment to Fort Logan, Colo.

During this period of training *Mr. Green* was dropped because he was not gaited fast enough. *Wind* for lameness left hind, *Printon* for small size, *Doc Pollard*, *Senor Montes*, and *Norald* for interference behind, and *Leavitt* for interference in front. *Potomac* had interfered a little behind at first but not as bad as the others. This left us *Vamp*, *Dick Boola*, *McAlester*, *Aline*, *Potomac*, and *Lunetta* to take to Colorado. All our horses had gained from ten to forty pounds in weight at this time.

The first few days in Colorado were devoted to limbering the horses up after their long freight shipment. From August 6th until August 25th we averaged about sixteen miles daily at seven to seven and a half miles per hour. Occasionally we would let down to ten miles at a slower gait for one day. On August 25th all the horses except *Potomac* were ridden fifty miles in seven and a half hours. The route selected was very difficult; and all conditions of the real ride were simulated in riding and care of animals. *Lunetta* developed a very serious case of colic that night and was dropped from training. *Vamp* began to show signs of staleness and was turned out to pasture shortly afterwards for ten days. *Potomac* was given sixty miles in nine hours on the 28th. All our horses except *Lunetta* showed no signs of fatigue during the ride nor the next day and evidenced signs of rounding into real condition.

In view of their apparent condition, the amount of exercise was cut to twelve to fourteen miles per day at six to seven miles per hour with an occasional easy day. *Vamp* came out of pasture feeling fine and was put back on the road.

The march from Fort Logan to Colorado Springs, a distance of about seventy miles, was made in two days at seven miles an hour, and we arrived there September 12th. The last week was utilized to taper off and consisted of about an hour daily on the polo field at all three gaits.

The roads selected for all training were soft and hilly. We did lots of trotting up long slopes but always walked down. Every effort was made to keep on soft turf in order to preserve the feet, and at that *Vamp* developed a bad corn and had to be shod with the quarter removed.

Potomac interfered behind at various intervals during the whole training period, and finally on the march to Colorado Springs became so bad that his chances of starting were rendered nil. He traveled very clean at all gaits except that occasionally without any apparent reason he would make a misstep and hit the fetlock a hard blow and take four or five lame steps. He often went a week without doing it and would then cut himself badly. Corrective shoeing helped some but could not overcome that in-coordinated step.

WEIGHT CARRIED

Vamp carried the full weight of 200 pounds from March 1st until May 15th, and then 170 pounds until June 14th when the others were started. Each horse carried 200 pounds four days a week until July 5th, and from then until August 1st the average weight up was about 175 pounds. During the training in Colorado, 200 pounds was carried four days a week and 170 to 180 pounds the other three days of the week. All long rides were made with full weight up. Captains Grow and Maddocks could make the weight with a field saddle and two blankets, while Harris and I had to carry from twenty to thirty pounds of lead in our weight pads.

FEEDING AND WATERING

The feeding of grain was done regularly at the same hours as indicated in a preceding paragraph. The average grain ration was fourteen pounds and the amount of roughage was governed by the quantity each horse could eat, which was from sixteen to twenty pounds. Dry bran was fed with the oats periodically and its supply was governed by the condition of the bowels. By regulating the amount of bran and grazing we kept the droppings at the desired consistency. Each horse presented individual tastes; as for example, *Vamp* wanted bran and oats mixed and moistened, *McAlester* would eat only about one and a half pounds of oats in the morning, and *Aline* and *Dick Boola* ate their grain so fast we had to pile rocks in the box to slow them up. *Potomac* was very dainty for a while and would eat grain only when no hay was around. Floating the teeth of *Potomac* and *McAlester* increased their desire for grain considerably.

Each officer took daily turn at feeding, measured each feed and then stayed to see how it was eaten. It was only by this close observation that the individual idiosyncrasies were discovered and dealt with. Hay was fed in small amounts all day. No. 2 prairie was fed at Fort Riley, and we pur-

chased a beautiful grade of wire grass, South Park mountain hay in Colorado, which the horses dearly relished.

The horses were led to water before each meal, and in addition had fresh water in buckets in the stall at all times. The officer of the day saw that these were refilled each time he went to the stable.

Each horse was grazed for fifteen to thirty minutes each afternoon unless the droppings were too loose, in which case a walk of thirty minutes was substituted. This served to furnish them with an appetizing, succulent food and also to get them out of the stall for a while.

GROOMING

After breakfast the horses were brushed off before going out for exercise. Upon return from exercise the backs were hand rubbed dry, then the front legs were bandaged with derby bandages soaked in cold water. They were then groomed with the dandy brush or hands for thirty minutes, after which the bandages were removed and the legs hand rubbed dry.

Corporal Young gradually started to groom *Vamp* by massaging with his hands and soon discarded the brush and comb. The other men, seeing how wonderful *Vamp* looked, followed suit in short time, and consequently the curry comb and brush were practically discarded the last six weeks. It is remarkable how quickly one can groom a horse with the hands alone and what a beautiful coat and clean skin are the results. During the ride we didn't have a brush or currycomb around and even the civilians were kind enough to remark how well our horses were groomed. It is doubtful if this can be done successfully at first on long haired dirty horses not receiving regular exercise. Not only did it clean the horses but it did not annoy them and of course the muscle massage was invaluable.

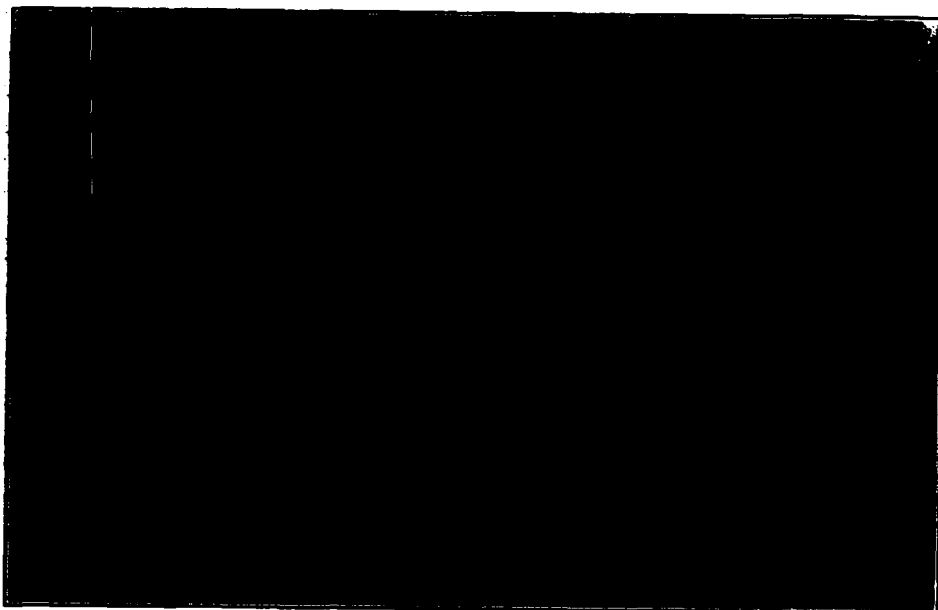
CARE OF THE FEET

The feet were packed with white rock every evening at the time of grooming and this was left in until the next morning. This packing kept the horn soft and pliable with a plentiful supply of moisture. The walls were painted with pine tar about every third day. This stayed on well and formed a protective coating which prevented sand cracks and polishing off of the periople by the sand and gravel.

SHOEING

A normal service shoe with very slightly thickened heels and a rolled toe was used exclusively throughout the period of training except in special cases where pathological shoes were necessary. *McAlester* and *Dick Boola* averaged about 275 miles with these shoes; *Vamp* averaged 300 miles with the front shoes but only wore his hind shoes 250 miles, even after we put on small caulks. *Aline* was shod at first with bar shoes in front, but as the walls grew out and showed no cracks a plain shoe was put on. She was shod behind with a three-quarter inch trailer on the outside. Her shoes lasted about 290 miles as an average. *Potomac* was shod plain in front and wore them an average of 250 miles. Many attempts at side weights, trailers, and caulks were tried on him behind to prevent interfering; a light shoe with long outside trailer on a perfectly balanced foot

worked best. The walls were allowed to grow rather long and no sole was ever removed in order to have as much good solid horn to start the ride as possible. All horses were shod about four days before the ride with shoes rolled at the toe, and swelled at the heels by turning the heels back instead of cutting them off. This thickened portion was tapered down towards the toe to the unthickened web. The hind shoes were made with thickened heels also. *Vamp* was shod with bar shoes and small caulks in front and with small heel caulks behind; *Aline* was shod with trailers behind. Every horse finished the ride with the same shoes, ex-



Dick Boola, Captain Grow Up

cept *Vamp*, who wore out one set of hind shoes in three days. The shoes were still in pretty good shape after the 300 miles.

ALTITUDE

The effect of the altitude on the horses was not noticeable to any great extent except that there would be days in the first month at Fort Logan, when some individuals would feel "loggy". We rode up towards the mountains about every day and after the first month we saw no signs of the altitude affecting any horse.

METHOD OF CARRYING DEAD WEIGHT

Captains Grow and Maddocks weighed 155 pounds stripped and consequently had to carry no weight except the saddle and two blankets. Private Harris, weighed 140, and I weighed 126 with our clothes on, so we had to make up some weight. We used two blankets and carried a slicker on the

candle. Two horseshoes and three pounds of lead were carried in eachommel pocket. The remaining weight was carried in weight pads made of canvas, in the pockets of which were placed two pound bars of lead. No lead was placed under the cinch or in the last pocket. Captain Grow took off one blanket after the first day of the ride as the saddle had pinched the withers; one blanket remedied this pinching and the withers improved each day.

RESULTS OF TRAINING

As a result of the 100 days training we had five horses in beautiful condition, except that *Potomac* had a tendency to interfere as noted before. The coats were glossy and fine and the skin loose and supple. Each horse had a good solid growth of horn with no cracks or crevices.

We had succeeded in gaiting them so that each horse would trot ten miles and walk four and a half miles an hour without urging. *Vamp* would take any gait desired and hold it. *McAlester* had a short stride and ten miles an hour was his limit. *Potomac* made sixty miles in nine hours and walked twenty-one miles out of the sixty, which shows what kind of a road horse he was. The original weight of *Vamp*, *Potomac* and *McAlester* was maintained, while that of *Aline* and *Dick Boola* was reduced a few pounds. Inasmuch as the weather would be cool we did not try to thin our horses out but rather kept them in good flesh without an excess of fat.

During the training, *Vamp* developed a large non-suppurative corn which was treated by removing the affected quarter and shoeing with no wall pressure; he went through the ride shod that way. *Lunetta* was dropped because of the bad case of colic which showed a constitutional weakness. *Potomac* interfered so much as to be a liability. *McAlester* developed scratches in July which healed quickly but left the heels denuded. *Aline* showed a slight puffiness of the right fore tendons in August but never went lame.

FINAL ASSIGNMENT OF HORSES AND RIDERS

Before leaving Fort Riley, Captains Grow and Maddocks submitted their preferences and were assigned a first horse accordingly. Grow chose *Potomac* with *Dick Boola* second, and Maddocks took *McAlester* with *Dick Boola* second. They rode these horses continually from that time on. When it was decided to discard *Potomac*, Captain Grow was given his second choice. I had fully intended to ride my own horse in the ride and put Harris on *Aline*, but after a six weeks' trial it was demonstrated that Harris could not get along with the mare and consequently I was forced to give him *Vamp* and ride her again myself. Harris and *Vamp* always got along well and the old horse would surely go down the road for him.

On Sunday morning, September 20th, all horses were weighed, measured, and carefully examined for defects and blemishes by the judges and veterinarian. They were then shown under saddle at the walk, trot and gallop.

In addition to the entries from the Cavalry School, the following horses started:

Tomahawk: Owner, U. S. Government; Rider, Sergt. Thomas Garrity.

Arrow: Owner, W. R. Brown; Rider, Erwin Ruby.

Norfleet: Owner, Henry Leonard; Rider, George Snurr.

Beulah Robbins: Owner, Ed Pring; Rider, W. C. Johns.

Ranger: Owner, Ed Pring; Rider, Ted Flynn.

Buck: Owner, Clyde Philips, Jr.; Rider, George Lacey.

Tillicum: Owner and Rider, Holden Spear.

Colorado Boy: Owner and Rider, O. E. Curtis.

Sandy: Owner and Rider, Mark W. Hersig.

Black Derring: Owner and Rider, Lt. Frank M. Lee.

THE RIDE

Three different routes were used, one the first two days, another the next two days, and a third the last day. We made a road reconnaissance before the ride and carefully planned each day's ride in advance, using a U. S. G. S. Map for reference on the road. The roads were rather sandy and soft except for some stretches of hard gravel, free from automobiles, and provided many opportunities to ride along the side on the turf.

We had previously decided to take it slow the first day and then size up the competition each successive morning and ride accordingly. However, our horses were so fresh and so many were making it in nine hours that we stepped along in the afternoon and finished in nine hours and ten minutes. We rode all four horses together every mile of the entire ride, using *Vamp* and *Dick Boola* to set the pace out in the morning and *Vamp* and *Aline* to lead back. Water in buckets was provided by the routemaster at the 15, 28, 45, and 58 mile posts each day. We took full advantages of this and walked our horses the last mile each morning and the last two to four miles each night. Consequently our horses were perfectly cool inside and out every noon and night. No attempt was made to trot up or down any appreciable grade. Most of the other horses were trotted up and down hill and often walked on level stretches. Several other horses were trotted into the noon and night halts and as a result had second sweats and were not ready to eat for some time.

The regular routine care each night consisted of massaging the backs for about fifteen minutes as soon as the horses were unsaddled, blanketing and leaving alone for the next thirty minutes to eat hay and to rest. The groom and rider then groomed, and handrubbed or cooled out the legs with cold water for an hour or longer. A pound of grain was fed forty-five to fifty minutes after getting in and a handful or so every thirty minutes thereafter until 8:00 P. M. when the remainder of seven or eight pounds was put in.

All horses started the second day in good shape, except *Black Derring*, who was withdrawn because of failure to eat that night, and so we decided to make every day in nine hours if possible. The temperature was higher this day but our horses were still fresh and eager to go. We took twenty minutes at the noon halt each day and fed one and a half pounds of oats and a little hay. Several of the other horses were only given ten to twelve minutes. We made a practice of starting ten minutes after the field and then moving up through it the first hour or so in order to look them over. *Buck* and *Beulah Robbins* began to tire badly that afternoon and *Tillicum* lathered very profusely all day. The judges thought *Dick Boola* was lame in his right hind in the afternoon but were wrong

and admitted it. He knuckled over badly behind that day and Captain Grow changed his seat somewhat and ceased posting that day, leaning well forward and using his legs to collect the horse continually. His knuckling improved daily so that he scarcely did it at all the last day.

The same horses started the third day, all seemingly intent on making minimum time again, so we pushed right out on a nine hour schedule. We made this day just as easy as the first and never even clucked to our horses. The road between the twenty and thirty mile posts was very hard but a steady rain all day kept it cool.

The fourth morning found *Beulah Robbins* left in the stall. *McAlester* began to get scratches in both front which caused him to short his stride; he had to be urged all day. *Aline* seemed tired and went very poorly for the first ten miles and then came to and went along as usual. *Buck*, *Sandy*, and *Arrow* were eliminated in the forenoon.

Aline went lame in the right fore ten miles out that night and had to be ridden in at a jog trot. All the others were in fine shape, especially *Dick Boola*, and we walked the last two miles at four and one-half miles an hour. We kept *Aline's* front legs in cold water from 3:30 P. M. until 8:00 P. M., hand-rubbing one while soaking the other. Corporal Young repeated the operation from 5:00 A. M. until 6:20 A. M. the next morning and to our great delight she came out sound the fifth morning.

We rode the last day a little differently in that faster traveling time was made and ten minutes was taken at the fifteen and forty-five mile post to cool out *Aline's* legs, and thirty minutes was taken at the noon halt. *Tomahawk* plodded along as usual and not only looked good but was ridden well by Sergeant Garrity throughout the ride.

It was easier for us to make time the last day than any other as evidenced by the fact that we walked the last four miles at a fraction under five miles an hour. *McAlester* was bothered by his scratches and *Vamp* knuckled over with the left hind and pulled the extensor tendon enough to make him lame. *Aline* and *Dick Boola* were really fresh and on the bit all day. The mare developed a dislike to walking down hill so I let her jog trot at about six miles an hour and it didn't seem to hurt in the least.

We spent a very busy evening cooling out our horses legs and feet and thoroughly massaging all exterior muscles in order to make sure, if possible, that all four would step out of the stall sound the next morning.

FINAL JUDGING

Grooms and riders were not allowed to handle their horses after 8:00 P. M. Friday night until the judges led them out the next morning and weighed and examined them on the halter. After this examination we were allowed a few minutes to groom and then showed each horse under saddle at the walk, trot and gallop. *Aline*, *Dick Boola* and *Vamp* came out sound and walked along with no signs of stiffness. *McAlester* was very stiff and reluctant to move on account of his scratches which had become rather aggravated. *Dick Boola* and *Aline* had small abrasions on the withers.

The following table shows the final results:

Horses	Time	Weight lost or gained	Time Score	Condi- tion Score	Total Score
<i>Ranger</i>	45'- 0"	+35 lbs.	40.	57.5	97.5
<i>Vamp</i>	45'-10"	+10 lbs.	38.67	58.	96.67
<i>Tomahawk</i>	45'- 6"	-25 lbs.	39.2	56.	95.2
<i>Norfleet</i>	45'- 0"	-10 lbs.	40.	52.	92.
<i>Dick Boola</i>	45'-10"	-30 lbs.	38.67	50.	88.67
<i>Aline</i>	45'-10"	- 5 lbs.	38.67	44.	82.67
<i>Tillicum</i>	46'- 1"	-55 lbs.	31.8	47.	78.8
<i>McAlester</i>	45'-10"	-30 lbs.	38.67	40.	78.67
<i>Colorado Boy</i>	45'-58"	-35 lbs.	32.27	44.	76.27

Note: ' and " indicate hours and minutes.

The awards were made at 12:00 noon and the ride was over. Several factors combined to make the ride extremely successful, the more important of which were the character of the footing, the cool weather, the carrying of 200 pounds instead of 225, and the improvement in quality and condition of all horses. Representatives of the Army started seven horses and finished six and got two of the first four places. Sergeant Thomas Garrity, 13th Cavalry trained his horse on his own initiative, rode it down to Colorado Springs at his own expense, and exhibited such sportsmanship and horsemanship as to make him deserving of a great amount of credit and praise.

We naturally were disappointed in not placing better but felt that we accomplished our mission by finishing four sound horses in ten minutes over the minimum time. I think it is the only time four horses have been ridden through a ride together without a mishap.

The National Guard was ably represented by Captain Aubrey Kief, F.A., as routemaster and Secretary, and by Sergeant Fitzpatrick as assistant routemaster. The judges and officials, especially Mr. D. Bryant Turner, were very courteous and considerate throughout the ride.

EFFECT OF RIDE ON THE RIDERS

We experienced no undue fatigue at any time and lost practically no weight. This was probably due to three things: that we had ridden all summer at a trot, that it was cool, and that our horses were in such splendid condition that they needed little if any driving.

LESSONS LEARNED

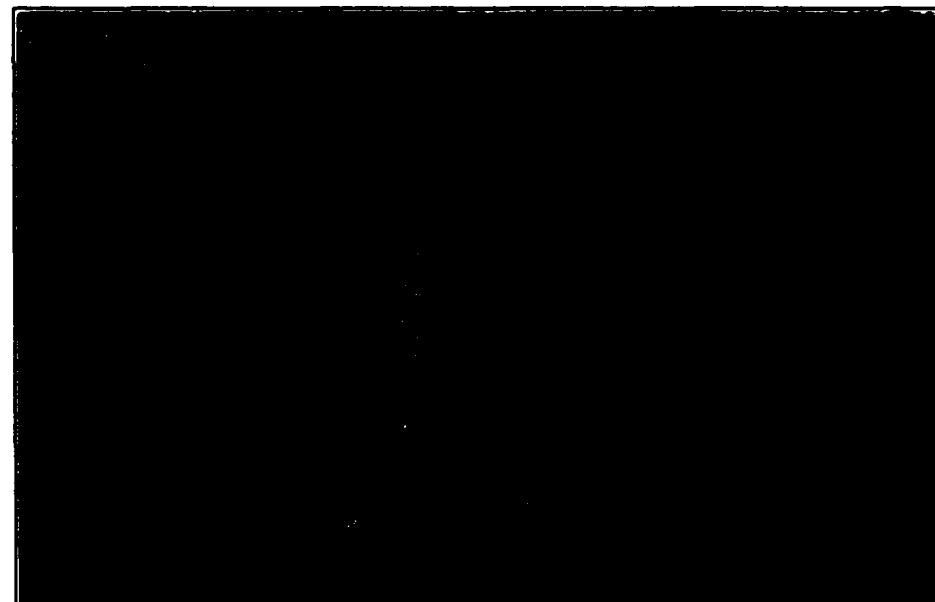
We learned some things which may be of interest to others:

It is absolutely foolish to waste any time on a horse which has a tendency to interfere. A horse must have good, solid, sound, substantial feet, absolutely straight action, a willingness to trot and walk right out, an appetite which is never satisfied, and of course be well bred and serviceably sound. A ravenous appetite is certainly no small essential.

Two methods of gaiting were observed and seemed to be equally effective.

We rode at a fast trot and did lots of walking while the cowboys trotted all day long, up and down hill, at a little trail shuffle. Their way of getting over the road certainly deserves some consideration because it appears to be a gait that requires little exertion. I am not convinced which is the best, but I did notice, however, that when *Aline* got a little tired she preferred this jog trot to any other gait, while *Vamp* with his long, full stride never could be gaited that way.

Water was never used on the legs during the day, and if used in the stable the pasterns were thoroughly dried, yet *McAlester* got scratches. This was due to sand working into the denuded skin of that region.



Vampire, Private Harris Up

Cold water and vigorous massage will keep a set of legs under a horse even after they start to go bad. Of course this will not always work but it was so successful on *Aline*, that it warrants mention.

Grooming of regularly exercised horses by hand massage is not only possible but cleans the coat and gives it a luster not possible with a brush. I don't think it would work on long shaggy coated horses not worked regularly.

The training and conditioning of horses for this test, or any other, requires the closest attention to detail by every rider. The riding is of minor significance compared to the importance of using good common horse sense in everything pertaining to the care of the horse. We posted on the diagonal best liked by the horse and made no attempt to stand in the stirrups or change

diagonals. We inclined a little more forward than taught at the School and took the jar on our thighs instead of sitting down. Horses can be gaited at four and a half to five miles an hour at the walk by persistent effort in training.

One to two pounds of grain is about all the average horse needs at the noon halt. All of our horses enjoyed some hay at noon. We fed from twenty to thirty pounds of hay at night during the ride and it was cleaned up every morning. Each horse had three buckets of water put in at 8:00 P. M. and it was always gone in the morning.

The tired horse needs support and it is surprising how a rider can gather them up and carry them along with the legs. They seem to fall apart when one relaxes and lets go. All tired horses seem to lose that nicety of coordination in the hind quarters first, and this is particularly noticeable going down hill; it required more care and effort to guide them down hill than any other time.

One of the most apparent differences in riding was that of cooling the horse out. We cooled ours out on the road and when they got in the stable were fit to be fed if we so desired. Many other contestants maintained a trot right up to the finish and consequently their horses were hot inside and required a lot of walking and rubbing to cool them out. This surely did not rest their horses any.

The greatest lesson learned was the amount of horse lore which accrued to each of us as a result of practically living with our horses for three and a half months and studying their wants and individualities. Unfortunately many of those experiences cannot be put down by one so unversed in expression as the writer, and neither can the experience of riding a tired horse be put in words.

VALUE OF THE RIDE

Participation in one of these rides is one of the greatest opportunities for acquiring some of the art of horsemanship there is today. One cannot select, train, care for, and ride a horse through the training period and test without enriching his store of horse knowledge immensely. An officer learns exactly the things he must know in order to successfully conduct horses through a campaign in the field.

It furnishes an excellent test for articles of equipment. We used experimental blankets and stirrups.

The ride demands excellent physical condition on the part of the rider and to obtain this he must ride hard and live cleanly.

These rides stimulate interest in well bred horses, demonstrate the necessity of conditioning for long marches, illustrate different methods of conditioning, teach us what are the essentials of a horse to be selected for long fast work, and afford a wonderful opportunity for individuals to enrich their knowledge of horsemanship.

The First Charge

BY

Lieutenant Colonel JEAN H. A. DAY, Cavalry Reserves

Translation of Chapter 3, "En Campagne", by Marcel Dupont

SIX o'clock of a stifling and heavy evening; the regiment is formed in squadron columns to the right and left of the main road leading from Vauchamp to Montmirail. Scarcely has the command "Dismount" been given, than the troopers, black from encrusted dust and dirt, and utterly fagged out, throw themselves upon the ground and sleep scattered about in the fields on mown hay. The officers gather in small groups and converse in order to fight against overpowering fatigue and the absolute need of sleep. Nights in the field are short ones indeed, and the bivouac which has been established at midnight, must be broken up at three the following morning.

For six hours the battle has been raging, as the enemy, hanging close upon our rear guard, has compelled that body to deploy and again engage in delaying action. So has it been each day of this never-to-be-forgotten retreat, which commenced at the Sambre and has been pushed beyond the Marne. Day after day have we been forced to fight, and as often has the enemy been repulsed, but, as certainly and surely, day after day have we been driven still further back.

My brother soldiers, you who have lived through those days of agony, shall you ever forget them? Shall you ever forget the anguish which lay heavy upon you as, day after day, as night fell, after having seen so many of your comrades fall, you were compelled to abandon into the hands of the barbarians still more of our pretty hamlets, more of our fields, orchards, gardens, vineyards? "In compliance with orders". Ah, yes, now that it is all over, we are able to appreciate how necessary were many of those sacrifices, but in those days, we did not realize it, and, not knowing, doubt came upon us. We have been through frightful days, and, for my part, nothing can ever efface from my memory the impression stamped therein of the utter moral and physical humiliation which overwhelmed us, you, my comrades, and I.

THE BIVOUAC

The regiment, worn out, sleeps. Alone, calm and phlegmatic, standing in the middle of the road, our Colonel watches. Pipe in mouth, cap tilted over his eyes, arms crossed on his sky-blue tunic, an onlooker might have taken him to be a shepherd watching over his flock. It is under such circumstances as these that a leader must overlook the lack of discipline and the utter disregard of security measures, due to the utter collapse of his men from fatigue. Human endurance has its limits, and we have freely spent our endurance without reckoning against the future, for many a day. Every lull in battle must be a period of rest. What counts most now is that your Colonel be on the alert. Therefore, sleep quietly, gallant young chasseurs; he is on guard.

As I gaze upon the troopers of my platoon who have dropped in their

tracks in front of their mounts, I ask myself how is it possible to recognize them as the former handsome cavaliers, at one time so well groomed, so spotless in their attire and appearance, those gay young French cavalymen whose very presence gave an air of gaiety to our little garrison town. But now, under their crushed headdress, their drawn and tanned faces resemble waxen masks; beards have changed their expressions, giving them the appearance of men of thirty or more. The dust and dirt of many a road and field which has been kicked up by countless hoofs, by wagons and caissons has plastered and wrinkled their features into grotesque figures. Their clothing, with make-shift patches, repaired during some halt, under the shelter of some neighboring hedge, present, in many cases, a multi-colored appearance. A few days more of this war without respite, and our uniforms will resemble those epic tatters with which Raffet clothed his war-seasoned troops of Italy or Sambre-et-Meuse. With faces upturned, mouths opened, and eyes half-shut, my chasseurs sleep the sleep of utter exhaustion almost under the feet of their horses. Poor horses, poor fine companions, formerly so active and lithe under their silky summer coats. They have followed the lot of their masters, and how many of these fine animals have already been mown down under the storm of Prussian bullets, or have been abandoned to die of fatigue or misery along the route of our forced marches? As I gaze on them, the thought comes to me that possibly some are dreaming of better times, of days in which there were no burdens to be so constantly borne, no blows to be received, no wounds to be endured. Some even stretch their necks towards the ground, but seem not to have enough strength left to pluck the sundry green blades which have sprung up amidst the wheat stalks. Anxious and worried, the query comes to me—Will our horses be able to furnish the shock-effort necessary? Will they be able to smash into the enemy with the speed sufficient and requisite for the fight, the real fight, the Cavalry charge; that fight ever possible, ever sought for, ever hoped for?

THE UHLANS

But suddenly, over the crest of a hill some eight hundred metres to our rear, there appears a horseman approaching at full gallop, waving his arm to attract our attention. It is then that a strange thing happens; no one seems to have particularly noticed him, not one word has been uttered, and yet, as if under the sting of an electric shock, the whole command is on foot, their wide-open eyes focused upon the newcomer. It is a non-commissioned officer of Artillery; his face crimson, his hair tossed, his cap pushed on the back of his head and held in place only by its chin-strap. With a brutal jerk he brings his foam-covered mount to a temporary halt: "The Colonel," he demands. "Where is your Colonel?" As one man, the squadron gives the reply. "There—on the road" "What's up? What is happening?" But already has he started off *ventre-a-terre*. We see him join the colonel, lean forward in his saddle, and from where we are, catch parts of the message he is delivering: "The Uhlans—in the woods—our guns—our teams—". And then, as if by a miracle, not one single word of command having been given, our Regiment finds itself mounted, ready, sabre in hand!

Our Colonel alone remains dismounted. With the utmost calm, and in a low quiet and measured voice, he asks for details and for explicit information from the Artillery sergeant, whose brief replies are accentuated by his gestures as he indicates certain features of his answers. Breathlessly we wait, eyes centered upon our Colonel, waiting for that order which we know he will give, for that order which will be answered by five hundred throats, by five hundred French cavalymen, mad with joy. Their chance has come. The Cavalryman's chance. The Cavalryman's hour.

At last. At last that long hoped-for hour has arrived. That hour for which we have so constantly prayed. The Cavalryman's Hour! That hour waited for since the beginning of the campaign. The Cavalry charge—that indescribable thing—that episode in the cavalryman's life which words can neither relate nor portray. The Charge, the "raison d'être" of the Cavalryman. The smash, the crash of the encounter, the slash of the keen blade; that mad gallop, sabre uplifted, the hoarse shout, that moment of madness! The charges of cavalry such as were made by our ancestors of French Cavalry, those demi-gods, Murat, Lasalle, Curely, Kellerman, and so many others. Yes, our hour has come. The Cavalryman's hour, so patiently waited for, and so constantly, heretofore, denied to us.

This famous German so-called Cavalry, who, in peace-time laid down dogmas and doctrines without end of the charge home, of the charge "à l'outrance" (to the death), what hatred and contempt has been engendered in our hearts for this so-called cavalry! We have but one wish, but one prayer; a try-out against them. Always has it been the same. Every time that we approach them, they withdraw in good order behind the protection of their infantry lines, or else draw us into some ambush under the pitiless fire of their machine guns. Are we then, at last to be given the chance of measuring our sabres against their lances?

THE ADVANCE

We have formed quietly in rear of our Colonel, who, mounted on his large sorrel, leads us at slow trot along the edges of small clumps of trees found here and there throughout the fields. In a halo of golden dust one of our platoons has gained distance to the front at full gallop in order to form the covering detachment, the advance-guard. Even our horses seem to understand what is going to happen and what is expected of them; it may be that unconsciously, we have communicated to them the enthusiasm which inspires us. I can sense the joyous anticipation of the men in rear of me. In fact, the leading rank utterly disregards that "sacro-sanct" distance of one and one-half metres which, as laid down in regulations, should always separate them from their leader while marching. Even the corporal, the centre squad-leader, actually permits his horse's shoulders to brush the haunches of *Tourne Toujours*, my good charger, pure blooded, full of life and spirits, who has so often angered me upon the field of manoeuvre at the regimental school by her devilish temper, and unruliness. *Tourne Toujours*, has ideas of precedence of her own; she starts bucking violently to convey to me her entire dis-

approval of my failure to preserve the proprieties, since I fail completely to take the necessary and very prompt measures to prevent a mere trooper's horse from approaching too close to her, an officer's charger. Of course, she is quite right; in times of peace, the trooper who would have presumed to let his mount climb all over my charger would have been well dressed down by me; but today, well, today, I just laugh up my sleeve. When the charge is sounded, *Tourne Toujours* will quickly have gained the distance in front of her platoon, to which her rank as an officer's charger entitles her; yes, and more, too.

It is a pleasure to see the expressions on the faces of the troopers of the third squadron whose platoons in column are advancing abreast of mine. Erect in their saddles, their keen eyes scrutinize the smallest folds on the terrain lying in our front, and I notice especially how tightly their hands grip the hilts of their sabres. Our Commander, Major B—, who is riding between the two squadrons is making preparatory slashes with his sabre. What a superb fight it will be. What ecstasy it will be to see the curved sabres of our chasseurs slashing through those boiled-leather *schapskas*.* Impatiently we await the command which will release the pent-up fury latent in those contracted steel-like muscles of our chasseurs.

A rider returns from the advance guard at full gallop and by help of leg and spur, feverishly ranges his horse beside that of our Colonel. He makes his report in short sentences which, however, do not reach us. The Colonel turns toward our Captain, who leans forward on his horse, all attention, sabre lowered, listening closely to the orders given him in our Colonel's quiet, measured, and concise manner. We hear the last sentence only "I support you with the remainder of the regiment." Thank God, to us, to our beloved squadron, is given the signal honor of the first mounted attack. Every man in our squadron thrills with the knowledge that to us will come all the glory. Each one resolves to accomplish deeds of bravery and daring that will astound the regiment, the Army, France! Forward—Forward—Forward!

Even now, our platoons have passed the Colonel at an easy hand gallop. Suddenly we find ourselves strangely isolated and alone in this vast country of fields which, but an instant past, we were traversing alongside of our comrades. Fields after fields of green or yellow, broken here and there by small clumps of trees. To our left, in the midst of orchards, stand the massive grey buildings of the farm "Bel Air". In our front, and at a distance of some hundreds of metres, appears the sombre line of a wood, whose base is hidden from view by an intervening fold in the ground.

Scarcely has the first platoon gained the crest of this fold than from our front comes the "rat-tat-tat" of shots. We understand at once. Again we are to be disappointed. Again we are to fail to have the joy of a try-out with the "arme blanche" against their Uhlans. Against the edge of the wood, we discern clearly some fifty skirmishers, kneeling, with rifles at ready. We know only too well those grey uniforms and those round visorless caps.

(*Note, the Schapska is a German headdress.—Translator.)

THE ENEMY

It is one of their detachments of cyclists which has crept into the wood and which quietly awaits our approach. As usual, their cavalry has retired under cover of their infantry. What does it matter though? The woods are not too dense to prevent our charging through them, and besides, the temptation to spur home the charge is too great to be resisted. The mad joy of the game thrills me, as, in my mind's eye I see those German iron-shod boots scurrying wildly through those woods in the panic of retreat. I make up my mind to accelerate their flight by directing my sabre thrusts rather low, say at the lower edge of their flying coat-tails.

Our captain has already read my—our—thoughts, for he gives the sharp command "Line March", and, in the twinkling of an eye, an advancing line, a wall, so to speak, is formed amidst the gay click of stirrup against stirrup, of scabbard against scabbard, as the gallop advances toward the wood. But suddenly a hellish belt of fire spurts from it, the entire wood crackles with a furious fusillade. How those bullets sing, whine, whistle! Behind me I hear the heavy thud upon the hard ground of falling bodies—men or horses! From my platoon a riderless horse springs madly forward. What does it matter? On—on—Forward—forward! Now we are not more than two hundred metres from them; already with spurs dug in we have taken up the extended gallop. But, in a second, a terrible anguish replaces the joyous anticipation which urged us forward to the joyous encounter. The same discouragement, the same realization of the futility of it all, the same appreciation of the useless sacrifice. Their whole front is covered by heavy high wire entanglement behind which impassable obstacle, the Prussians quietly pick us off. Calmly they shoot, as if at target practice. What shall we do? Shall we risk all and attempt a break-through in order to avenge the death of our comrades? For a second a sentiment, a wave, of horror grips the squadron. How those bullets crack, sing, whine, whistle!!

A QUICK DECISION

Our Captain, however, has acted instantly, well and as always wisely. Realizing that retreat is impossible, and that behind him are more than one hundred French lives which must be saved for better opportunities, or for more useful sacrifices for France, he has commanded and signalled "As foragers, Follow me."

Advancing in a direction oblique to that of our charge, he directs his mount towards the nearest fold in the ground; but the manoeuvre is badly executed. The men, discouraged, instead of spreading out fanwise, precipitate themselves, in their endeavor to follow him, in a compact mass, into which the steady stream of Prussian bullets is poured, and more of our horses are brought down. What an eternity these few seconds appear to be? What a miracle it is that more have not fallen. What a dread music is that of that stream of bullets being poured into us, whining, whining, zipping as if they were bees whose hive we had disturbed.

At last under shelter, following the length of a path in a fold of the ground, the squadron finally attains a small wood under whose shelter it can reform.

The foam-covered horses snort and shake themselves. The men, silent gloomy, with lips tightly compressed, seek their places in ranks in silence, and quietly rectify their alignment. In the fading light, in which all things become indistinct, my platoon sergeant calls the roll, whilst, with sorrowing eyes, I look upon the bloody results of our futile charge. And yet I have no cause to complain, I have three troopers wounded and they, far from bewailing their lot, are proud of the crimson stains which blot their tunics and hands. The troopers whose horses have been shot down now approach our position, running heavily through the field of Lucerne grass extending in front of us. Only one soldier has failed to answer his name at the roll call. Paquin, a brave youngster, an energetic, well disciplined soldier, whose unfailing good humor and cheerfulness under fire as well as when in bivouac had especially brought him to my attention. But, doubtless he will show up later. Cahard, his tent mate, assures me that Paquin's horse stumbled, and that Paquin was thrown; in fact he is almost certain that he saw him get up as soon as the charging line had passed.

AFTER THE CHARGE

"Lieutenant, Lieutenant, your horse is wounded!" I dismount at once and the tears come to my eyes as I see what my faithful companion has endured. Forgotten are all the moments of anger and impatience which the unruly temper of *Tourne Toujours* has so often forced upon me. What have they done to her? A bullet has caught her on the under side of the left thigh, and, after traversing, has, upon exit, torn open a hideous lacerated opening as large as my hand, from which her crimson blood flows freely covering her left leg down to the foot. She has been hit twice more, once in the flank, and once in the loins. Those ugly red punctures show this. But she carried me through it all, she never flinched, she never failed, she has done her duty. Now, bracing herself upon her trembling legs neck arched, nostrils distended, ears pointed, she seems to look far to the front. Is she looking death in the face. Have no doubt, *Tourne Toujours*, of the sincerity of the caress I give you, a caress such as one would give to a suffering child. Well done, *Tourne Toujours*.

PAQUIN

But I must lay aside these sad thoughts. Daylight is rapidly fading and Paquin has not yet shown up. Two of my men quickly unsaddle *Tourne Toujours* and place my saddle upon the mount of one of the men who has been wounded, while the surgeon major attends to those who are most seriously wounded and who are stretched out on the ground, while I return to see if my young chasseur is not to be found somewhere upon the ground over which we charged. "Cahard, Finet, Monniette, Valle, you four will come with me." With sheathed sabres, and advancing at slow trot, we emerge from the wood which is sheltering us. The men with me have extended to my right and left and stand in their stirrups to better scan the terrain over which we so carefully advance.

With the exception of an occasional shot, the artillery fire has died down. Night is almost upon us. Far off on the horizon, a reddish streak

still gives the vestige of a faint light. Slowly, slowly, darkness settles upon us. But still darker looms up that wood from which but a short while ago death was being spat at us. "Paquin—Paquin—Paquin" we call loudly. No reply. Carefully, alertly, we search, but the boy is not to be found, and yet we are on the very ground where the charge took place. Here and there lies the body of a horse, pathetic landmarks of where our charge took place. One, a poor little mare, whose leg has been broken, quivers pathetically, and neighs gently as if to call her stable-mate, or as if to ask us not to forsake her.

"Paquin—Paquin—Paquin?" No answer.

Well, we had better go back and join the others. War has its painful moments, those in which we must lay aside our sentiments and feelings, and forget those for whom we care, those who suffer, those who are dying, in order to concentrate our entire thoughts and devote our entire energies to our Regiment, to our Squadron, and, last, but not least, to our Platoon.

We must hurry back to the squadron. Poor Paquin will be carried on the rolls tonight as "missing." "Missing," what a serious word that is; capable of so many interpretations. It is a word that seems to leave but little hope, it is one which may cause many fears to arise, many doubts—. It is too bad. Tomorrow I shall know what happened. Doubtless some of our Zouaves will find his body in some clump of trees where he dragged himself after he was shot—through the abdomen. Yes, he is in all likelihood lying out there now, his arms are stretched out, his face upturned to the skies. So it is in war, that the life of this brave young French Cavalryman has come so abruptly to a noble end. "Mort pour la Patrie."

WITHDRAWAL

Under a superb moon, once again does the squadron silently continue its withdrawal. Those who have gone through the brunt of this war understand the full meaning of this sad hour. After a day's fighting, withdraw to your bivouacs. It is that mystic hour, when in the quiet life of peace, nature goes to sleep in the hush of the evening, when lights begin to appear in villages and in farm windows, and when, after their hard day's toil, French families sit down to their peaceful evening meal. It is a long, long time since we have known the exquisite calm of this hour. Now, at this hour one hears the constant thunder of thousands of guns, the never ending rumble of wagons, trucks, caissons, of all classes of vehicles which form, as it were, part of the very life of an army. And all this thunder, rumbling, and rattle leads toward an invisible, but nevertheless certain ending. Shrill above this chaos arises the sound of human voices. Soldiers who have lost their way, calling out for guidance, drivers urging on their straining teams. Officers giving sharp commands to prevent the intermingling of units. This is part of the aftermath of battle. This is the time when man feels most keenly mental and physical exhaustion, and when he feels most deeply in thinking of those who have died for their country.

Far off, two villages are burning, they illumine in a weird and ghostly manner here and there, bits of this spectacle. This evening seems to me to be sadder and more poignant with feeling than ever—.

The 1925 Endurance Ride

THE seventh annual Endurance Ride of 300 miles in five days was held October 19-23, 1925, at Brandon, Vermont, a thriving village picturesquely located in the Green Mountains near the scenes of the Revolutionary exploits of General Ethan Allen and his Green Mountain Boys. The Ride this year attracted, as participants and observers, the usual number of horse enthusiasts. The Judges, Major Henry Leonard, of Washington, D. C., and Colorado; Dr. W. W. Townsend, of Burlington, Vermont, and Mr. Wayne Dinsmore, of Chicago, are all well known horsemen. Mr. A. M. Harris, of Chicago, an Arab fancier, was on hand from the start of the Ride, having a special interest in it. His son, Mr. Norman W. Harris, was the rider of *El Sabok*, an Arab stallion owned by the Remount Service, but entered by Mr. Harris. Mr. A. M. Harris, by the way, won the 1919 Endurance Ride on *Ramla*.

Another widely known horseman present was Major C. A. Benton, a veteran of the Civil and Indian Wars, whose energy and physical and mental activity at seventy-nine years of age, were certainly remarkable. As Route Master, he deserved much credit for the excellent routes laid out, as well as for the arrangements made for the comfort and convenience of officials and observers. Major Benton probably knows as much about horses as any man in the country, and the facility with which he reels off the pedigree of any well-known horse that may be mentioned, is amazing.

Mr. W. R. Brown, of Berlin, New Hampshire, the well-known Arabian expert, was present during the latter part of the Ride. Mr. Brown was one of the pioneers in the Endurance Ride game, and seldom is a Ride held that he is not represented by an entry.

THE ENTRIES

While twenty-one horses were entered for the Ride, six were scratched for various reasons, and fifteen appeared for the preliminary examination on Sunday, October 18th. They were as follows:

Lillian Russell, Ch. Mare; grade Thoroughbred; 11 years; height, 15-3½; weight, 1060; owner, Captain M. S. Daniels, 3d Cavalry; rider, Private S. J. Mathe-son.

Pathfinder, Bay Geld.; Thoroughbred; 9 years; height, 15-3½; weight, 1000; owner, U. S. Remount Service; rider, Major C. L. Scott.

Pioneer, Ch. Geld.; grade Thoroughbred; 13 years; height, 15-2½; weight, 1010; owner, U. S. Remount Service; rider, Sergeant John C. Currie.

Major S, Bay Geld.; grade Morgan; 10 years; height, 16; weight, 1135; owner, Major C. L. Scott; rider, Major Frederick Herr, 3d Cavalry.

El Sabok, Ch. Stallion; Arab; 9 years; height, 15-1½; weight, 875; owner, U. S. Remount Service; rider, Norman W. Harris.

Jessie, Ch. Mare; Morgan; 9 years; height, 15-1½; weight, 1035; owner, U. S. Morgan Horse Farm; rider, Albert McAuley.

Eudora, Ch. Mare; Morgan; 14 years; height, 15-¼; weight, 985; owner, U. S. Morgan Horse Farm; rider, Julius Bottom.

Gladstone, Bay Geld.; Morgan; 12 years; height, 15-¾; weight, 955; owner, U. S. Morgan Horse Farm; rider, Charles Gordon.

Maud Hella, Bay Mare; Morgan; 12 years; height, 15-¾; weight, 955; owner, U. S. Morgan Horse Farm; rider, Rodger Russell.

Sugar Plum, Ch. Mare; Thoroughbred; 8 years; height, 15-3¼; weight, 960; owner, Captain J. H. Irving, 3d Cavalry; rider, Sergeant C. O. Cook.

Peggy, Bay Mare; grade Thoroughbred; 12 years; height, 15-2½; weight, 1010; owner, Third Cavalry; rider, Corporal Anthony Quatisky.

Lady Luck, Blk. Mare; grade Thoroughbred; 9 years; height, 16-½; weight, 1095; owner, Third Cavalry; rider, Sergeant A. E. Rathburn.



Courtesy Bureau of Animal Industry

The Judges, Dr. W. W. Townsend, Major Henry Leonard, Mr. Wayne Dinsmore

Babe, Bay Mare; grade Thoroughbred; 9 years; height, 15-2½; weight, 975; owner, Third Cavalry; rider, Sergeant Joseph Hall.

Rez Rysdyk, Golden Dun Geld.; American Saddle Bred; 7 years; height, 15-3¼; weight, 905; owner and rider, R. T. M. McCreedy.

Vanity Fair, Ch. Mare; grade Thoroughbred; 10 years; height, 15-1½; weight, 885; owner, 101st Cavalry, N. G. of New York; rider, Gilbert Wilson.

There are some veterans in this list, and none of them appeared the worse for the gruelling tests of previous years. *Pathfinder* had been ridden in four previous Rides, in all of which he had finished in the money, a most remarkable

performance. For this much credit must be given to his rider, Major C. L. Scott of the Remount Service, a former Cavalryman. For *Major S* and *Gladstone*, it was the third Ride, and the second for *Lillian Russel* and *Peggy*, the latter of whom won the Ride last year.

Much interest was centered in *Rex Rysdyk*, an American Saddle Bred horse owned and ridden by Mr. R. T. M. McCready, a prominent attorney of Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania. The conformation of *Rex*, while excellent for a saddle horse, did not appear suitable for an endurance test, and the age, fifty-eight years of Mr. McCready, his rider, led many to predict an early finish for both. But they reckoned without the systematic and thorough preparation and training that Mr. McCready had given both his mount and himself, and, not least, upon the tenacity and spirit of both man and horse.

Eudora, one of the entries from the U. S. Morgan Horse Farm, is the mother of eight colts, and *Jessie*, another, of six. It was stated that the latter had been ridden but little until she was taken up from the pasture to be prepared for the ride.

PRELIMINARY JUDGING

On Sunday the preliminary judging took place. The entries were given a thorough examination by the Judges, assisted by a Veterinarian. All were found to be in suitable condition to start the Ride, and blemishes, and minor defects were recorded. Afterward they were shown under the saddle at the walk, trot, canter, and extended gallop, and any peculiarities of gaits or method of traveling were noted and recorded. They were then weighed with the results shown in the list hereinbefore given.

THE FIRST DAY .

Before daylight on the 19th the stables were the scenes of much activity as the horses were being fed and their riders and grooms making preparations for the start.

From 6:30 to 7:00 A. M. the entries moved out, each cheered on by a group of enthusiastic spectators who had braved the chill of the early morning in order to witness the start.

Major C. L. Scott and his satellite, Sergeant Currie, on *Pathfinder* and *Pioneer*, respectively, elected to lead off, and started promptly at 6:30, followed at intervals by the others. It was observed that Private Matheson mounted on *Lillian Russell* this year, chose to bring up the rear of the procession, in contrast with his policy last year on *Peggy*, of leading the riders. Trust a good horseman to adapt his methods to his horse.

The route led over the hills past Lake Dunmore through East Middlebury and to the Morgan Horse Farm, where the noon halt was made. At the entrance of the Farm is the \$18,000 bronze statue of *Justin Morgan*, the famous progenitor of the breed, donated to the Farm by the Morgan Horse Club.

It started drizzling about ten o'clock and the riders and mounts were well soaked when they arrived here for a little refreshment and a short rest. Few of them stopped more than fifteen minutes.

The route back to Brandon was by way of Middlebury. It continued raining until about 2:00 o'clock, and while it was uncomfortable for the riders, the footing on the dirt and gravel roads was not bad.

All entries finished the sixty miles in the minimum time of nine hours, except *Vanity Fair*, who was six minutes over, and *Eudora*, who was three minutes over. *Vanity Fair* was noticeably fagged upon arrival at the stables and had a temperature of 103.4.

SECOND DAY

As was thought probable, *Vanity Fair* was withdrawn Tuesday morning. *Gladstone*, one of the Morgan entries, was also withdrawn. Nothing daunted by



Courtesy Bureau of Animal Industry

Peggy, Grade Thoroughbred, Winner of First Place

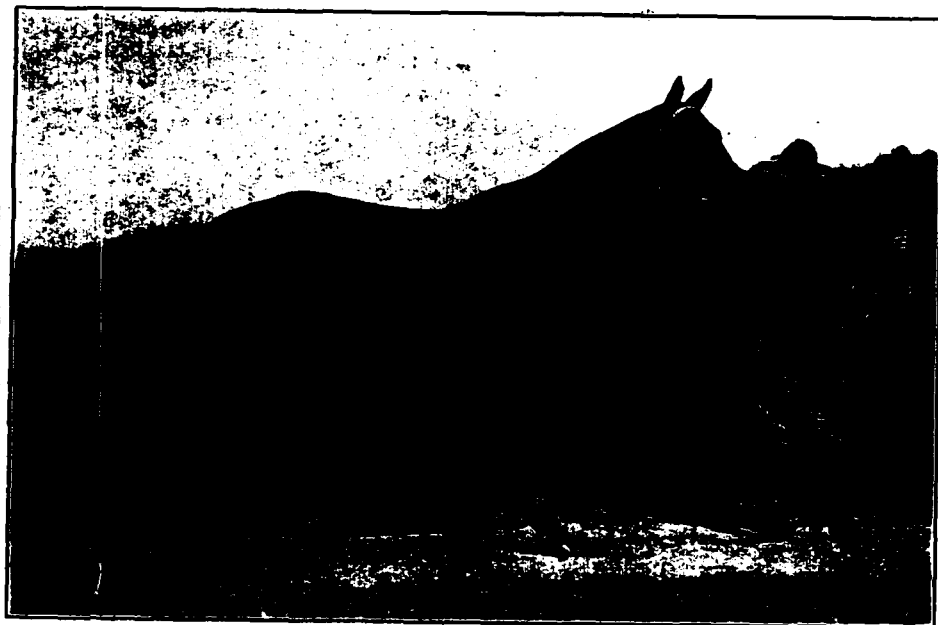
a cold wind and a leaden sky, the others started out, apparently none the worse for the previous day's experience. The route this day was to Rutland by way of Chittenden and past Meadow Lake, the noon halt being made at the Rutland Country Club. There was much up and down hill on this route but the road had dried out sufficiently after the rain to make the footing very good. The return trip to Brandon was made by way of Florence.

All entries finished in minimum time but some of them were beginning to show the effects of the grind. It was predicted that several would be withdrawn before the end of the next sixty miles.

THIRD DAY

The horses that were a little the worse for wear the previous evening were much improved and all started. Wednesday morning opened cold and raw, and later in the day there was rain, hail and snow with some wind. The route was through Sudbury and Orwell village to Shoreham where the noon halt was made at the 100 year old Congregational Church, of which the father of Levi P. Morton, former Governor of New York and Vice-President of the United States, was the pastor years ago.

Sugar Plum was favoring her right hind at the start this morning and at



Courtesy Bureau of Animal Industry
Pathfinder, Thoroughbred, Winner of Second Place

the 15-mile mark was taken out by the Judges on account of lameness. *Major S* arrived at the noon halt late and was stiff and sore when he left there. He was taken out at 38 miles on account of lameness.

The weather conditions added nothing to the joy of the riders and the followers in automobiles had their troubles also, for eight or ten cars got stuck in mud holes.

While the weather overhead was bad, the road was fair for horses and the steep ascents and descents of the previous day were missing. The riders were beginning to show the effect of the grind and it was apparent that some of them were leg weary.

FOURTH DAY

The fourth day promised to be a real test, as two mountains were to be

climbed and the peaks in the near distance were covered with snow. The route led over Rochester Mountain and Hancock. The eleven horses remaining started out briskly. *Pioneer* was slightly stiff but worked out of it. To the noon halt there was a long climb up and down, and up again to Bread Loaf Inn, which through the courtesy of President Moody of Middlebury College, which owns the property, was temporarily opened for the convenience of the competitors and observers.

A bunch of tired horses came straggling in at this point and it looked as if several would have to be taken out before the day was over. The route from here led through a picturesque gorge and by a tumbling stream. Most of the 30 miles back to Brandon was down hill and with good footing. Thanks to this all arrived at Brandon in minimum time and none of them in distress, although several showed signs of a slight lameness.

FIFTH DAY

By the next morning all had recovered from the previous day's severe test and the eleven horses still in started on the last sixty miles of their 300 mile journey. As if to make up for the previous day's ordeal, road conditions were the best of the week. The route was through beautiful rolling country with magnificent views of the Green Mountains.

The noon halt was made at the Mountain View Stock Farm, thirty-two miles from Brandon. All entries were in good shape when they arrived here, and it was evident that only an accident would prevent all eleven finishing, and so it turned out. Returning to Brandon via Orwell Village and Hyde Manor over excellent roads, the tired steeds must have known that the finish was near.

A large gallery was waiting at the stables at Brandon to witness the finish, and each of the weary riders and horses was given a hearty cheer as he crossed the finish line.

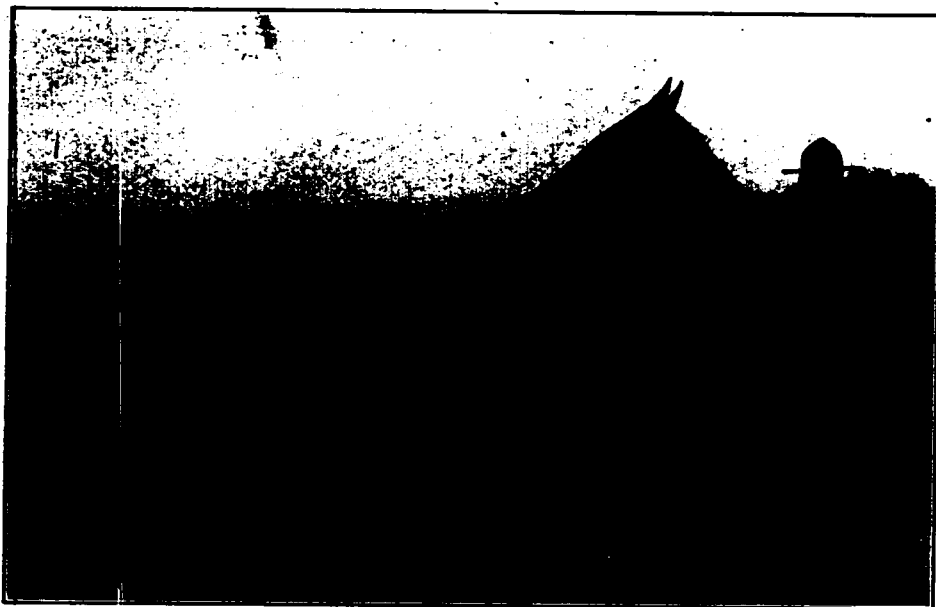
As, with the exception of *Eudora*, all of the horses finishing had made the 300 miles in the minimum time of 45 hours, it was apparent that the winners would be determined by the relative condition of the horses, the awards being made on a basis of 60% for condition and 40% for speed. There were the usual speculation and discussions with each individual demonstrating beyond doubt that his favorite was in the best condition.

As soon as the horses got in they were placed on the scales and weighed in order to determine how much weight each had lost during the five days. Following are the results, the first number being the weight at this time, and the second, the number of pounds lost: *Lillian Russell*, 1030, 30; *Pathfinder*, 955, 45; *Pioneer*, 950, 60; *El Sabok*, 820, 55; *Jessie*, 980, 45; *Eudora*, 935, 50; *Maud Hella*, 920, 35; *Peggy*, 970, 40; *Lady Luck*, 1030, 65; *Babe*, 910, 65; *Rex Rysdyk*, 835, 70.

FINAL JUDGING

The final judging began at 7:30 A. M., Saturday. No rider, groom or owner was allowed access to the horses until permission was given by the Judges subsequent to the examination on the halter, watering and feeding being done by

the guard, under the supervision of the Judges. Each horse was individually led out of his stall and carefully examined, and then led at a walk and trot past the Judges until they had formed a good idea of his condition. Some of the entries stepped along very gingerly and it was evident that there were some sore tendons and stiff muscles. They were then turned over to the riders and grooms to be prepared for showing in the ring under saddle. Prior to going in the ring, each horse was weighed again and it was found that they had gained as follows over the weight of the previous evening: *Lillian Russell*, 10; *Pathfinder*, 30;



Courtesy Bureau of Animal Industry

Lillian Russell, Grade Thoroughbred, Winner of Third Place

Pioneer, 0; *El Sabok*, 5; *Jessie*, 5; *Eudora*, 5; *Maud Hella*, 10; *Peggy*, 10; *Lady Luck*, 15; *Babe*, 5; *Rex Rysdyk*, 17.

Most of those that had showed symptoms of soreness at the early morning examination, had warmed out of it and stepped out briskly as they were individually shown at the walk, trot, canter, and extended gallop.

The announcement of the prize winners and the presentation of the trophies were made at the public Square of Brandon, where a large crowd had assembled. The prizes were presented by Dr. Paul Moody, President of Middlebury College. The results were as follows:

First, *Peggy*—speed 40, condition 58, total 98.

Second, *Pathfinder*—speed 40, condition 56, total 96.

Third, *Lillian Russell*—speed 40, condition 53, total 93.

Fourth, *Rex Rysdyk*—speed 40, condition 50, total 90.

Fifth, *Pioneer*—speed 40, condition 49, total 89.

Sixth, *Jessie*—speed 40, condition 46, total 86.

Major C. L. Scott was awarded the \$100 cash prize for showing the best horsemanship during the ride. The \$500 prize offered by the Morgan Horse Club to the rider of the horse whose score for condition was the highest at the end of the ride, without regard to place at the finish, was awarded Corporal Anthony Quatisky, the rider of *Peggy*.

In winning the Mounted Service Cup two years in succession, *Peggy* has broken the record for the Eastern Ride, as no other horse has ever won it a second time. Another win by her will place the cup in the permanent possession of the Third Cavalry.

The announcement that *Rex Rysdyk* had won fourth place, brought forth hearty applause, as he and his rider, Mr. McCready, were prime favorites on account of the gallant showing both had made.

EQUIPMENT

There was the usual variety in saddle equipment. With the exception of Sergeant Cook on *Sugar Plum*, all of the service riders used the officers' field saddle with broad tread wooden stirrups. *Sugar Plum's* conformation was such that a training saddle was necessary to avoid injury by the cantle.

The three Morgan riders used the regulation McClellan saddle, while Mr. McCready preferred a flat saddle with the regular steel, narrow tread stirrups. The wide tread wooden stirrups are undoubtedly restful to the feet and diminish the tendency to leg weariness.

Two saddle blankets were used by all, with a soft woolen one next to the horse's skin.

Service entries used a single bridoon bit which enabled the horse to drink more or less freely without his rider's being compelled to dismount and unbridle.

GAITS

As has been the case heretofore, the walk and trot were the standard gaits but on this ride several were observed galloping for short distances, especially *El Sabok*, *Rex Rysdyk*, *Pathfinder*, and *Pioneer*.

The advantage of a fast walk has been evident to Endurance riders for some time. *Peggy*, last year, with her five miles an hour gait, settled that point. Many horsemen present this year were heard to observe that she was the fastest walker they had ever seen. Private Matheson, who rode her last year, was given credit this year for increasing *Lillian Russell's* walk by a mile per hour.

FEEDING

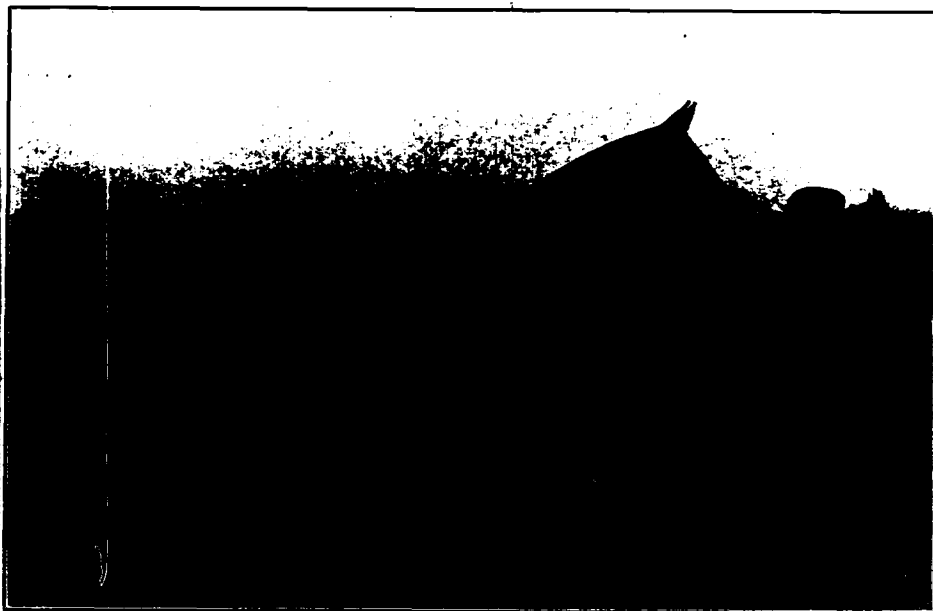
There was nothing unusual in the manner of feeding. About two pounds of grain was offered each horse at the noon halt. Some of them at times had to be coaxed to eat, while others ate ravenously. The Arab, *El Sabok*, was given hay at the noon halt.

At night after being cooled out, it was the general practice to give each horse

two or three pounds of grain, and then the balance of the evening feed several hours later. The daily allowance of grain was 14 pounds. The hay allowance was unlimited.

CONDITION

None of the entries, after a day's rest, was apparently any the worse for the strenuous week. While the ride is a severe test of endurance and is likely to bring out any weakness resulting from accident, strain or disease, any representatives of the S. P. C. A. who may have been present could have found no cause for complaint. This is due to the constant supervision by the Judges and Veterinarians who take every precaution to see that no horse is permitted to continue



Courtesy Bureau of Animal Industry
Rex Ryedyk, American Saddlebred, Winner of Fourth Place

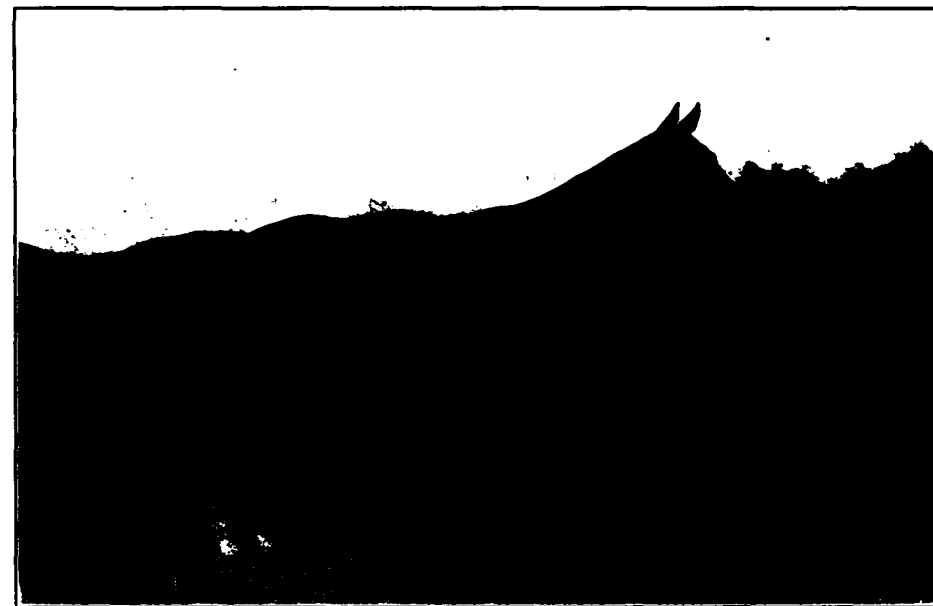
if his condition is such as to indicate a chance of injury. Temperature, respiration, and pulse were taken every evening and every morning, and at every fifteen miles, entries were halted and examined by a Judge.

There were a few cases of scratches, but none serious as was the case with several entries in last year's Ride.

An examination of the notations made in the official record book showing the results of the preliminary examination for blemishes and minor defects is interesting. Practically every entry at the start had some blemish or defect in the way of bursal enlargements, thickened joints contracted feet, filled tendons, etc., and yet eleven came through the test carrying 200 pounds, 300 miles in 45

riding hours, little the worse for the experience. This leads to the thought that perhaps those in the mounted services are sometimes prone to overestimate the seriousness of such ailments. These Rides have demonstrated that a horse which the average regimental commander might hesitate to send on a forced march, can when *properly cared for*, travel 300 miles in five days, with a load of 200 to 225 pounds, and still be fit to carry on after a day's rest.

Peggy, the wonder horse, is an illuminating example of this. Her record reads thus: Contraction both front feet; points both front feet; front tendons thickened; enlarged front fetlock joints; contracted hind feet; both hind ankles



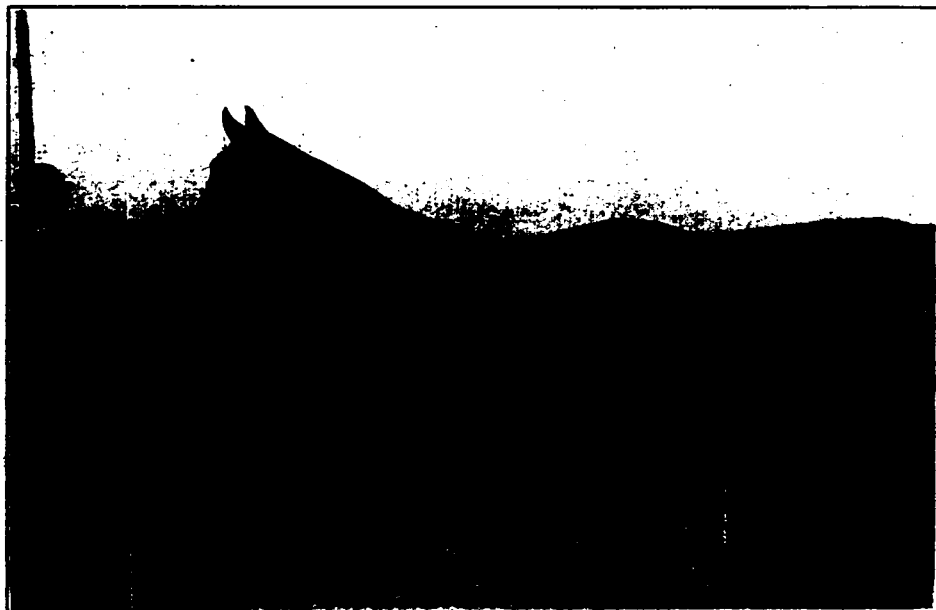
Courtesy Bureau of Animal Industry
Pioneer, Grade Thoroughbred, Winner of Fifth Place

cocked. Yet she finished the Ride with the highest score for condition, indicating that notwithstanding the handicaps shown above, she was less affected by the gruelling test than any other entry. At the early examination Saturday morning, when a number of others taken from their stalls showed a great disinclination to trot, and when they did trot, were somewhat "ouchy," *Peggy* stepped had one advantage and that was the fact that she was one of the few horses in the ride with straight gaits, without any tendency to wing, paddle or interfere.

WEIGHTS AND RIDERS

It has been observed in the past two Rides, that there is tendency, accidental or otherwise, to select as riders, men of very light weight. The advantage of this is not apparent. On the contrary, it appears to be a distinct disadvantage, up to

155 pounds, especially when 225 pounds are carried, for the difference between the weight prescribed and that of the rider, must be made up with dead weight, and this, after the equipment is added, is usually in the form of lead plates carried in various ways. It is universally admitted that a given amount of live weight is easier on a horse than the same amount of dead weight. This is evidenced by the following extract from this year's conditions: "If the stripped rider weighs 155 pounds or less, the horse carries a minimum of 200 pounds. If the stripped rider weighs more than 155 pounds, the horse carries a minimum of



Courtesy Bureau of Animal Industry
Jessie, Morgan, Winner of Sixth Place

200 pounds plus one pound dead weight for every two pounds of live weight in excess of 155 pounds."

The fact that 73 per cent of the entries starting finished the ride, 300 miles, and with one exception in minimum time, as against a heretofore high proportion of 57 per cent, was undoubtedly largely due to the reduction of the weight carried from 225 pounds to 200 pounds. Better condition may have had something to do with it, for, generally speaking, the horses were in better condition this out apparently as smoothly and briskly as she did on the start the first day. She year than they were last year.

There is a wide difference of opinion concerning this weight reduction. Many claim that it makes the Ride a race rather than an endurance test. Be that as it may, observation of the horses as they were led out of their stalls for final judg-

ing on Saturday, made it quite clear that all of them knew that they had been on a ride!

CONCLUSIONS

The object of these endurance rides has been to stimulate general interest in the breeding and use of good saddle horses of a general utility type, possessed of stamina and hardiness, and at the same time having the necessary quality to render them suitable for use in the mounted service of the United States, as well as for commercial purposes.

In particular, it has been desired:

- (a) To demonstrate the value of type, soundness, and proper selection of horses for a long, difficult ride;
- (b) To ascertain and to demonstrate the proper method of training and conditioning horses for long and severe work under the saddle;
- (c) To encourage horsemanship in long distance rides;
- (d) To ascertain and to demonstrate the best methods of caring for horses during and after long, severe work, without artificial aids of stimulants.

That the Rides have accomplished their objects cannot be denied. Observation of the results of these Rides has demonstrated to farmers and others using saddle horses that the cold blood animal does not possess the qualities requisite for a long test of endurance, and the influence of the Ride has been seen, especially in the west, in the demand by ranchers and others using saddle horses, for pure bred stallions. They have verified the contention of many in the mounted service that the more blood we can get in our remounts up to a certain point, the more likely is the Cavalry to be able to carry out its important missions in war without having horses and dismounted men left by the wayside.



Extracts from the Annual Report of the Chief of Cavalry

* * * During my tour of inspection of units of the regular establishment I was very much impressed with the apparent excellent physical condition, with an accompanying mental alertness, of all officers of all grades, contrasting greatly with my daily impression of the lower physical condition of officers on duties which necessitate a sedentary existence. From my observations I am of the opinion that the present requirements or provisions for conserving the health and strength of the detached personnel referred to above are not sufficiently comprehensive, and that the physical fitness at all times of officers on duty other than with troops should be made the subject of a War Department study.

I believe that this subject is of such vital importance in its application to cavalry officers ordered on detached service from duty with troops, that I recommend that cavalry officers be considered as on a mounted status at all times and that provision be made for the transportation and care of their private mounts when so detached. * * *

Training Films: During the past year this office, in conjunction with the Office of the Chief Signal Officer, has sent out training films showing activities at The Cavalry School, Fort Riley, Kansas, in methods of instruction in topography, care of animals, harnessing and draft, and pistol shooting.

After training suitable operators, new films showing cavalry training and other activities have been taken during the past year. Films are considered of great value for instruction purposes, and, in several instances, some of those sent out from this office have been shown by popular request in the theatres of the towns in which cavalry R. O. T. C. units are situated. * * *

Reserve Officers' Training Corps: This project is considered to be of the utmost importance in carrying out the provisions of the National Defense Act. During the year an officer from this office has visited ten of the eleven cavalry R. O. T. C. units. The Oregon Agricultural College was not visited due to the expense involved. * * *

National Guard Cavalry: Throughout the year this office has been in close liaison with the Militia Bureau in regard to organization and training of the National Guard Cavalry, and the assignment of National Guard units under mobilization plans. Excellent co-operation has existed between the Regular cavalry and the National Guard Cavalry. When the summer training camps of National Guard Cavalry have been at or near stations of the Regular cavalry, the latter has assisted in training—sometimes in the training of line troops, always in the training of specialists. Horses have been loaned, assistance has been rendered with transportation, and troops have given demonstrations.

Favorable reports have been received from the Militia Bureau in regard to cavalry officers of the Regular Army on duty as instructors with the National Guard. * * *

Organized Reserve Corps: In addition to the large number of reserve officers enrolled in the correspondence courses as previously mentioned under that heading, the following table shows the number who received training at camps or posts during the past year.

ANNUAL REPORT, CHIEF OF CAVALRY

95

Corps Area	1st Qr.	2d Qr.	3d Qr.	4th Qr.	Total
1	39	..	..	1	40
2	45	..	2	50	97
3	46	3	..	55	104
4	28	..	..	32	60
5	49	..	1	21	71
6	105	2	1	1	109
7	47	1	..	12	60
8	45	..	4	..	49
9	44	..	3	?	47

TOTAL.....637

11—Cavalry Reserves attended Special Service School.

4—Cavalry Reserves attended C. & G. S. S.

29—Cavalry Reserves were used as C. M. T. C. instructors.

3—Cavalry Reserves attended the Army War College.

Reports of inactive duty training are favorable, especially in large communities where there are sufficient officers to make it possible to organize sides in map maneuvers. This form of instruction in troop leading, as well as sand-table instruction involving tactical problems, seems to be popular and to produce good results. Care should be taken by Regular Army instructors to provide forms of instruction that require a minimum previous preparation on the part of students. * * *

The most efficient and economical method of training cavalry Reserve officers on active duty is to send cavalry Reserve officers to cavalry posts and require the Reserve officers to perform the actual duties incident to training and administration appropriate to their rank, under the supervision of Regular Army officers. During the latter part of the period of such instruction it has been found possible to turn over to the Reserve officers the entire administration and training of the appropriate units. * * *

MATERIAL AND EQUIPMENT

The efficiency of the cavalry has been furthered, during the past fiscal year, by the replacement of a large number of worn-out animals; the continued satisfactory progress in the supply of Phillips standard pack saddles, adopted July 26, 1924; and the development, adoption and supply of cavalry combat pack loads adapted to this saddle.

The replacement of unserviceable animals, by an excellent grade of remounts, has been accomplished through close co-operation with the Remount Service, Quartermaster Corps. However, on account of the number of horses of advanced age still remaining in cavalry organizations, it is imperative that a sufficient annual replacement be provided for. * * *

A constructive policy is being adhered to in all work in connection with the initiation and consideration of new articles and designs, the constant appraisal of adopted articles, the unsparing elimination of unnecessary equipment, and the consequent revision of allowance tables, with the result that weight carried is

being reduced, mobility is being increased, and maintenance expense is being reduced.

Among the particular projects considered since the last annual report is the detailed study concerning reduction in transportation, fuel, forage, etc., in the Cavalry Division. The study proposes an approximate reduction of 100,000 pounds in the amount of equipment and supplies carried by the cavalry division, thereby increasing the mobility and flexibility of organizations; it places a maximum dependence on automatic supply; and by the proposed changes in divisional transportation, increases the radius of supply under normal conditions to the maximum radius of the combat elements of the division, and assures the cavalry division a maximum independence in the execution of its missions. The reductions and changes proposed in this study are considered as a preparatory step only, and the study will continue until there remain only the absolute essentials for the maintenance of fighting efficiency.

THE CAVALRY BOARD

The Cavalry Board has continued during the year, as in the past, to be of invaluable assistance to this office in the subjects of training, armament, and equipment. During the year the board has been called upon to prepare, revise, or review thirty-three training regulations; to test approximately fifty-four different articles of equipment; and to submit studies on a number of equipment projects, including a survey of every article of equipment issued to cavalry, enumerating any defects in each and recommending steps to be taken to correct them. The efforts of the officers engaged in the work of the board, I believe, are fully shown in their achievements.

THE CAVALRY SCHOOL

The mission of The Cavalry School has been constantly kept in mind and every effort made to train competent leaders of cavalry units and to provide instructors for the Regular Army, National Guard, Organized Reserves, Reserve Officers' Training Corps, and Citizens' Military Training Corps.

The change in the advanced course from five to nine months was put into effect during the year. The change is an advantage as all subjects can be covered more thoroughly and the student has more time in which to assimilate the instruction given. Several essential subjects, formerly omitted, were added to the course.

The Advanced Course for National Guard and Reserve officers was held for the first time and is considered valuable to those officers who are not able to attend a longer course.

During the year a change has been made in the courses for enlisted men, by eliminating the stable sergeants' course and substituting therefor a saddlers' course. The course for stable sergeants should be re-established.

The schools for saddlers and horseshoers are not worked to capacity on account of the limitation placed on funds for transportation. Branches other than the cavalry should send men to take the above-mentioned courses.

Progress has been made in all departments and The Cavalry School now has well-balanced courses for every class.

The course for National Guard and Reserve officers is a distinct success and of great advantage to these components. The number of officers attending this course should be increased. * * *

Editorial Comment

COLONEL EZRA B. FULLER

THE death of Colonel Ezra B. Fuller on September 17, 1925, took from our midst one, to whom as Secretary of the Cavalry Association and Editor of the CAVALRY JOURNAL for twelve years, we owe a debt of gratitude for loyal and faithful service rendered the Association.

The following appreciation is contributed by one of his many friends:

The recent death of Colonel Ezra B. Fuller, U. S. Army, retired, and a 33rd Degree Mason, marks the passing away of another of the few remaining officers of the "Old Army", who contributed so greatly to building up the traditions, spirit, and ideals that form the backbone of our present military establishment.

After his retirement from active service in 1904, the final years of his life were passed at Fort Leavenworth, Kansas, where he endeared himself to hundreds of the officers attending the General Service Schools at that post.

He suffered a stroke of apoplexy and died a few days later on September 17, 1925, surrounded by the immediate members of his family.

The story of this venerable officer's life is a history of more than half a century of service and achievements, both military and civil, seldom equaled in the annals of our Army.

To the Army man Colonel Fuller presented a tangible, concrete expression of quiet dignity, unfailing courtesy, genial kindness, and professional ability, and during the later years of his life, a distinguished ability in the civil affairs of his country.

Colonel Fuller was born at Rockford, Illinois, October 4, 1848.

Early in the spring of 1864, Illinois and neighboring states, believing the Civil War to be nearing its close, tendered to the President a volunteer force of 85,000 "one hundred day" men, to relieve the veteran soldiers from guard duty at the forts, arsenals, and elsewhere. Though less than sixteen years of age, Ezra B. Fuller was admitted as a private in the 141st Illinois Infantry, organized as part of this volunteer force. Mustered out at the end of one hundred days, he enlisted in the famous and battle-scarred 8th Illinois Cavalry, and served with such distinction that he was promoted corporal before the termination of the war, and before he had reached the age of seventeen.

The allure of military life had taken hold of this youth of sixteen; he foresaw the part to be played by the Army in the conquest of the West, and sought an appointment to the U. S. Military Academy. Graduating with high honors in 1873, Lieutenant Fuller found what his heart yearned for: rugged duty on our Western frontier, days and weeks in the saddle, scouting and campaigning against hostile Indians. After three strenuous years in Texas and New Mexico with the 8th Cavalry, Lieutenant Fuller was transferred to the 7th Cavalry operating in Montana and the Dakotas, too late to take part in Custer's last fight at the Little Big Horn in June, 1876, but in time for the Nez Perce Expedition and other expeditions against the Sioux that followed.

His military record shows eighteen years of frontier service without a break, except for four years of duty as Assistant Professor of Natural and Experimental Philosophy at the U. S. Military Academy during the early "eighties."

At the beginning of the Spanish-American War, Captain Fuller was on duty at Clemson College, S. C., as Professor of Military Science and Tactics. He became chief mustering officer for the state of South Carolina, and later joined his regiment (the 7th Cavalry) in Cuba, for the campaign of Cuban Pacification.

His last service on the active list was at the Maryland Agricultural College, College Park, Maryland, where he had charge of the military instruction. His health had been broken through many years of strenuous service and hardships, and in May, 1904, Colonel Fuller was retired for disability in the line of duty.

As a retired officer, Colonel Fuller's career of military usefulness was by no means at an end. He served two years with the National Guard of South Carolina, and then nearly eighteen years as Librarian of Service Schools, Fort Leavenworth, Kansas; Secretary and Treasurer of the U. S. Cavalry Association, and Editor of the CAVALRY JOURNAL.

Outside of his military profession, Colonel Fuller was active in the promotion of the arts of Freemasonry. He served as Master of the Hancock Lodge at Fort Leavenworth and as presiding officer of the Chapter and Commandery in the city of Leavenworth, Kansas. Colonel Fuller has presided over the army bodies of the Scottish Rite and was the presiding officer of the Army Council and the Army Consistory.

Colonel Fuller was a very enthusiastic Mason and an indefatigable worker in its cause, and in October, 1915, he was elected to the supreme honor in Masonry—the 33rd Degree, Honorary.

DISCIPLINE AND LOYALTY

THERE are two qualities that the personnel of an efficient military organization must possess. They are discipline and loyalty. One is an acquired quality and the other an inherent virtue. Both are absolutely essential.

In view of the space devoted by the press for some weeks past to a case which bids fair to be known as the most notorious one of its kind in the history of the army, and its effect upon the public opinion regarding the agencies dedicated to the national defense, as well as upon the service itself, the paramount importance of the qualities of discipline and loyalty becomes evident.

Discipline is the quality without which an army or a navy loses its precise character. "Without discipline an army becomes a mob." This statement has been frequently made in various forms, and its truth has been demonstrated theoretically as well as practically.

It is discipline only that will save any country in an emergency. Break down discipline in its defense forces and you make that country helpless, the ready victim of any disciplined force sent against it. It is for this reason that

Army Regulations emphasize the importance of discipline and the Articles of War provide for severe penalties in cases of offenses against it.

A spirit of discipline in an officer of the Army or Navy may be justly and rightly demanded where insubordination in a civilian might be condoned, or even constitute a virtue; this is because the virtue of obedience in military life is superior to every other virtue.

Obedience to and respect for, superior authority is the *sine qua non* of every armed force in the world. In the early days of the Civil War the adoption of the policy of permitting the volunteer regiments to choose their company officers by ballot, led to results that are sure to follow when any military effort is conducted upon the theory of the Rights of Man. It was the loss of discipline in the Russian Army which brought about the fatal debacle of Russia in the World War and led inevitably to the shameful peace of Brest-Litovsk, which a disciplined and victorious Germany imposed.

The virtue of loyalty is scarcely less important than discipline. The individual who becomes a member of an organization, public or private, under certain conditions to which he subscribes, and then conducts himself in such manner as to bring discredit upon it or tend to disrupt it, is not conforming to the requirements of loyalty. The same principle applies to individual loyalty to military superiors. Without loyalty on the part of his subordinates, the most perfect plans of a commander will fail.

There have been many illustrations of lack of loyalty in civil life during the past year. Ministers who accepted the doctrine and discipline of certain churches have declared their opposition to such doctrines and discipline. While refusing to withdraw from the church, they have been occupying their pulpits and publicly expressing their disagreement with the tenets and doctrines of the church.

This tendency has also been noticeable in politics. If we believe what we read there are men elected by the votes and at the expense of one or the other of the political parties who by their words and actions, appear to be openly seeking to disrupt that party.

That the personnel of the Army and Navy is generally well disciplined and loyal to its superiors, goes without saying. That a case involving an apparent exception should cause no such comment, only demonstrates the universality of the general rule.

CHANGE OF ADDRESS

MEMBERS who change their address and forget to notify the Secretary are frequently annoyed by failure to receive the CAVALRY JOURNAL.

Return postage is guaranteed on all CAVALRY JOURNALS mailed out, and if a copy is returned undelivered, steps are taken to ascertain the correct address of the member and the copy remailed. In many cases, however, postmasters fail to return undelivered copies. In such instances the editorial office has no means of knowing that the JOURNAL is undelivered and the subscriber is naturally irritated at not receiving his copy. This would be obviated if the necessary notification of change of address is sent in promptly.

ASSOCIATION MEMBERSHIP

WE are glad to report that on December 10th, only 175 of the 1,039 officers of Regular Cavalry were not members of the Cavalry Association. The percentage of membership is 83.1, which is greater than it has ever been before. The following table gives the percentage of the officers of each regiment and machine gun squadron that were members on the above date:

1st Cavalry	68.9	10th Cavalry	72.4
2d Cavalry	74.1	11th Cavalry	93.5
3d Cavalry (less 1st Sqdn.).....	89.5	12th Cavalry (less 2d Sqdn.).....	94.4
1st Sqdn., 3d Cavalry.....	70.	2d Sqdn., 12th Cavalry.....	100.
4th Cavalry	100.	13th Cavalry	57.1
5th Cavalry	100.	14th Cavalry (less 1st Sqdn.).....	74.7
6th Cavalry	89.6	1st Sqdn., 14th Cavalry	90.
7th Cavalry	100.	26th Cavalry	77.7
8th Cavalry	90.3	1st Machine Gun Sqdn.....	63.6
9th Cavalry	84.2	2d Machine Gun Sqdn.....	81.8

The interest of the National Guard in the Cavalry Association is evidenced by the fact that 34.3 per cent of the 806 National Guard cavalry officers are members. Their leading organizations in membership compare very favorably with Regular organizations, as is seen from the following percentages:

104th Cavalry, N. G. of Pennsylvania	100.
Hdqrs. and 1st Squadron, 109th Cavalry, N. G. of Tennessee.....	100.
2d Squadron, 106th Cavalry, N. G. of Michigan	100.
105th Cavalry, N. G. of Wisconsin	89.2
1st Squadron, 106th Cavalry, N. G. of Illinois.....	84.6
Hdqrs. and 2d Squadron, 108th Cavalry, N. G. of Louisiana.....	64.
Troop A, 56th M. G. Squadron, N. G. of Texas.....	100.

From the above, it will be seen that the 104th Cavalry, National Guard of Pennsylvania, enjoys the distinction of being the only National Guard regiment with 100 per cent membership, and in that respect, ranks all but three Regular regiments.

The 158th M. G. Squadron leads the Cavalry Reserves with 73.7 per cent. Other Reserve organizations high on the list are given below with the number of members in each:

305th Cavalry	31
302nd Cavalry	24
312th Cavalry	22

ANOTHER \$1000 COMPETITION

MUCH pleased with the success of last year's \$1000 Competition in the Combat Leading of Small Cavalry Units, the Cavalry Reserve Officer who made it possible has again donated \$1000 for a similar competition to be held during 1926.

It is needless to say that the interest aroused by the last competition will not be abated. It is hoped that conditions may be such that this year a larger number of organizations may be available for the competition. However, the cutting of allotments for transportation to the absolute necessities may, as was the case last year, limit participation to the personnel at the Cavalry School.

The Cavalry Service owes a great debt of gratitude to the donor of these prizes. The competitions made possible by him will increase materially the efficiency of the leaders of small cavalry units, as in addition to the benefit derived by those preparing for and taking part in them, they will stimulate cavalry commands all over the country to stage similar competitions on a smaller scale.

COMMUNICATIONS LITERATURE

THE Cavalry has a representative at the Signal School who acts as a liaison officer. Officers who desire information or literature on the subject of Communications should write to the Cavalry Representative, The Signal School, Fort Monmouth, N. J. The Signal Corps Manuals are distributed by the Adjutant General but the Cavalry liaison officer is in a position to supply original Signal School material to interested officers, and to cite references.

OLD ISSUES OF THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

THE Military Academy Library at West Point is in need of the CAVALRY JOURNAL for July and October, 1920, to complete their files. Our supply of these numbers being exhausted we would appreciate hearing from any of our readers who can spare their copies.

REGIMENTAL ROSTERS

THE printing of the regimental rosters in connection with Regimental Notes in the October Journal met with such favor that it is proposed to do the same in the April number. Changes in assignments are not believed to warrant their publication more often than once every six months.

TRAINING REGULATIONS

FROM time to time we receive requests from members for Training Regulations pertaining to Cavalry. This leads us to believe that there is a real need for a compilation of these regulations bound in loose leaf form.

On investigation it is found that we can furnish such a compilation at a cost of \$4.75 including postage. The regulations would be those supplied by the Superintendent of Documents and bound in a Kalamazoo binder. This would enable one to insert changes and to remove regulations rendered obsolete by new issues. The high cost of the compilation is due to the binder; the cost of the separate regulations being nominal. Our profit will be sufficient only to cover actual handling costs.

It is intended to have the contents cover the following: doctrines, principles and methods (T.R. 10-5); instruction dismounted with and without arms (T.R. 50-15, 50-55); instruction mounted without arms (T.R. 50-45); instruction mounted with arms (T.R. 50-50, 50-60); instruction with the saber (T.R. 50-65); saber exercise (T.R. 50-70); instruction with machine rifle (T.R. 50-75); first aid (T.R. 112-5); personal hygiene (T.R. 113-5); guard mounting, mounted troops (T.R. 135-10); marksmanship, individual and general (150-5, 150-10); marksmanship, pistol (150-25, W.D. Doc. 1050); marksmanship, machine gun (T.R. 150-35); signal communication for all arms (T.R. 160-5); military sketching (T.R. 190-15); weapons—rifle Cal. 30, pistol Cal. 45, Browning machine gun (T.R. 320-10, 320-15, 320-35); training remounts (T.R. 360-10); cavalry rifle squad, platoon, troop, squadron, regiment (T.R. 425-25, 425-30, 425-45, 425-50, 425-55); machine rifle squad and platoon (T.R. 425-35); Cavalry, duties of machine gun personnel (T.R. 425-60); machine gun squad, platoon, troop, squadron (425-65, 425-70, 425-75, 425-80); employment of machine guns (T.R. 425-110).

From the nature of the binding officers may vary the list of contents to meet their individual requirements. Corresponding adjustments based on the actual number of training regulations desired would be made in such cases.

We would like to hear from those officers who desire a copy of the regulations gotten up as outlined. If the response is sufficient to warrant our going ahead with the proposition a stock adequate to meet the demand will be secured. In any event, however, we shall continue to obtain regulations on individual orders as heretofore. This system has the disadvantage of delay as it takes time to secure the regulations and assemble them.

General Officers Serving in the World War

DURING the World War there were 489 General Officers, i. e., Generals, Lieutenant Generals, Major Generals, and Brigadier Generals, who served in the American Army. Pennsylvania furnished the largest number, 51, with New York a close second with 46. 31 joined from the state of Ohio, 29 from Illinois, 25 from Missouri, 21 from Michigan and 20 from Massachusetts. Colorado and Delaware furnished one each, while there were none from Nevada, Montana, Idaho and Wyoming.

The average age of the General officers was 49 years. 52 were born in New York, 45 in Pennsylvania, 35 in Illinois and 29 in Ohio; the remainder being natives of the other states except 7, who were foreign born.

Topics of the Day

CAVALRY SCHOOL HORSE SHOW TEAM

THE fine record made by the Cavalry School Horse Show Team during its tour of the Eastern Shows this fall has been the subject of much favorable comment. The fine performances of the horses, the excellent riding and sportsmanship of their riders have all been creditable to the Cavalry School and to the Cavalry service.

The Team won a hundred and thirty ribbons, ten pieces of silver, a silver service, four championships and four reserve championships out of a possible of six of each.



Proctor, Captain Waters Up

Everywhere the team has met the keenest competition and has won places against horses of international reputation such as *Bally McShane* and *Little Canada*. The horses have all been developed at the Cavalry School by the officers on duty there and are all owned by the Government. In money value they are worth many times what the Government paid for them because of the intense training that they have received. Last year the average price paid for horses by the Government was one hundred sixty-six dollars and six cents (\$166.06). These horses, if sold, would bring anywhere from one to two thousand dollars each.

Places won at various shows are given below:

ROCHESTER EXPOSITION AND HORSE SHOW

Novice Heavy Weight Hunters—1st, *Bold Boy*, Captain Waters up. Jumpers (4 ft. to 4 ft. 6 in.)—4th, *Jack Snipe*, Captain Waters up. Heavy Weight Hunters—4th, *John Bunny*, Capt. Carpenter up. Jumpers (4 ft. 6 in. to 5 ft.)—1st, *Jack Snipe*, Capt. Waters up; 3d, *Dick*, Captain Pierce up. Middle Weight Hunters—2d, *Proctor*, Captain Waters up; 3d, *Babe Wartham*, Captain Ellis up. Hunt Teams—2d, *John Bunny-Jack Snipe-Moses*, Captains Waters, Carpenter and Pierce up. Officers' Chargers—1st, *Bold Boy*, Captain Carpenter up; 2d, *Proctor*, Captain Waters up; 3d, *Anita*, Captain Ellis up; 4th, *Chevy Chase*, Captain Pierce up. Hunters and



Jack Snipe, Captain Pierce Up

Jumpers—3d, *Proctor*, Captain Waters up; 4th, *Jack Snipe*, Captain Carpenter up. Pairs of Jumpers—4th, *Anita-Miss America*, Captains Ellis and Carpenter up. Pen Jump—2d, *Dick*, Captain Pierce up; 4th, *Proctor*, Captain Waters up. Hunters: The Hotel Rochester Challenge Cup—1st, *Proctor* (no ribbon), Captain Waters up; 2d, *John Bunny*, Captain Carpenter up. Teams of Three Hunters—3d, *John Bunny, Jack Snipe-Moses*; 4th, *Anita-Miss America-Black Boy*. Hunters and Jumpers: \$1000.00 Stake—2d, *Jack Snipe*, Captain Waters up; 5th, *Babe Wartham*, Captain Ellis up; 6th, *Miss America*, Captain Carpenter up. Champion Middle Weight Hunter—1st, *Proctor*, Captain Waters up. Champion Heavy Weight Hunter—Reserve, *John Bunny*, Captain Carpenter up.

INDIANAPOLIS

Jumping Class—2d, *Dick*, Captain Pierce up. Light Hunters—1st, *Anita*, Captain Ellis up; 2d, *Proctor*, Captain Waters up; 3d, *Chevy Chase*, Captain Pierce up. Open Jumping—3d, *Jack Snipe*, Captain Waters up. Heavy Weight Hunters—1st, *Bold Boy*, Captain Carpenter up; 2d, *Babe Wartham*, Captain Ellis up; 4th, *John Bunny*, Captain Waters up.

BATAVIA FAIR HORSE SHOW

Novice Jumpers—1st, *Anita*, Captain Ellis up. Novice Lightweight Hunters—4th, *Chevy Chase*, Captain Ellis up. Officers' Chargers—1st, *Proctor*, Captain Waters up; 2d, *Anita*, Captain Ellis up; 3d, *Chevy Chase*, Captain Carpenter up. Corinthian Hunters—1st, *Babe Wartham*, Captain Ellis up. Military Jumping—1st, *Raven*, Cap-



Anita, Captain Ellis Up

tain Pierce up; 2d, *Jack Snipe*, Captain Waters up; 3d, *Black Boy*, Captain Ellis up; 4th, *Babe Wartham*, Captain Carpenter up. Jumping—3d, *Jack Snipe*, Captain Waters up. Military Jumping—1st, *Miss America*, Captain Carpenter up; 2d, *Dick*, Captain Pierce up; 3d, *Anita*, Captain Ellis up; 4th, *Sandy*, Captain Waters up. Lightweight Hunters—2d, *Proctor*, Captain Waters up. Jumping—1st, *Jack Snipe*, Captain Waters up; 2d, *Miss America*, Captains Ellis and Carpenter up; 2d, *Black Boy-Raven*, Captains Pierce and Waters up. Jumping—1st, *Jack Snipe*, Captain Waters up; 3d, *Dick*, Captain Pierce up. Jumping—1st, *Miss America*, Captain Carpenter up; 2d, *Jack Snipe*, Captain Waters up. Qualified Lightweight Hunters—2d, *Proctor*, Captain Waters up; 3d, *Anita*, Captain Ellis up. Hunt Teams

—4th, *Anita-Black Boy-Miss America*, Captains Ellis, Waters and Carpenter up. Middle and Heavy Weight Hunters—2d, *Babe Wartham*, Captain Ellis up.

SYRACUSE

Open Jumping—4th, *Jack Snipe*, Captain Waters up; 2d, *Saint Paul*, Captain Pierce up. Two Novice Hunter Classes—1st, *Bold Boy*, Captain Carpenter up. Horses Suitable to become Chargers—2d, *Black Boy*, Captain Ellis up. Officers' Chargers—1st, *Proctor*, Captain Waters up; 2d, *Bold Boy*, Captain Carpenter up; 3d, *Saint Paul*,



Miss America, Captain Carpenter Up

Captain Pierce up. Officers' Jumpers—1st, *Raven*, Captain Pierce up; 2d, *Dick*, Captain Carpenter up; 3d, *Jack Snipe*, Captain Waters up. Hunters—1st, *Babe Wartham*, Captain Ellis up; 3d, *John Bunny*, Captain Carpenter up.

THE NATIONAL RIFLE TEAM MATCH

THE National Rifle Team Match for 1925 was won by the U. S. Marine Corps with a score of 2818. The U. S. Navy was second with a score of 2787, the U. S. Infantry third, with a score of 2774, and the U. S. Cavalry fourth, with a score of 2756.

The U. S. Cavalry team consisted of the following:

Lieut. Colonel Alexander H. Davidson, Cavalry, *Team Captain*.
2d Lieut. George A. Rehm, 14th Cavalry, *Team Coach*.
1st Lieut. Harry A. Fudge, Cavalry.

1st Lieut. John B. Leahy, 4th Cavalry.
1st Lieut. Sidney C. Page, 8th Cavalry.
2d Lieut. Clyde A. Burcham, 14th Cavalry.
Sergt. George W. Cobler, Hqrs. Det., 2d Squadron, 4th Cavalry.
1st Sergt. August C. Hendricks, Troop E, 12th Cavalry.
1st Sergt. Benjamin F. Longacre, Troop F, 13th Cavalry.
Sergt. Ralph H. Heidtman, Troop A, 14th Cavalry.
1st Sergt. Wade E. Fitzgerald, Hqrs. Troop, 2d Cavalry Brigade.
Sergt. Joseph F. Such, Troop G, 4th Cavalry.

Alternates:

Corpl. Joseph Yersak, Troop A, 13th Cavalry.
1st Lieut. Howard A. Boone, Cavalry.

FIELD MAPS ON CLOTH

IN the April CAVALRY JOURNAL there was published an article by Colonel W. C. Brown, U. S. A., Retired, describing methods of blue printing small scale-field maps on cloth.

The Air Service is much concerned in this matter, as their maps receive unusually rough treatment and they find map cases cumbersome and inefficient.

Several Corps Area Commanders and other officers of high rank have also been interested in this subject, while the Engineer Reproduction Plant at Washington Barracks has been experimenting with a view to developing in color on cloth, and have been successful in this even by use of a cotton cloth as cheap as twenty cents per yard.

At the Artillery School of Fire at Fort Sill maps on balloon or airplane cloth have been successfully used. This has a mesh of about the same degree of fineness as No. 180 Cambric costing sixty cents per yard, the material used in the manufacture of the home-made blue print maps described in the article above referred to.

While cloth maps are too expensive for such large scale maps as may be required for only a few days, there is no doubt but that when it is a question of small scale general maps which for so many years have been used in the West and in Mexico, these can readily be made in color at the Engineer Reproduction Plant, while the amateur will find no difficulty in making satisfactory blue print maps on cloth in the manner described in the April number.

COLORADO ENDURANCE RIDE

RANGER, half Thoroughbred, ridden by Ted Flynn and owned by Ed Pring of Colorado Springs, took first place in the fourth Colorado Endurance Ride, 300 miles in 5 days of 9 hours each. *Vamp*, half Thoroughbred and Standardbred bay gelding, owned by Captain H. N. Beeman, Veterinary Corps, stationed at the Cavalry School, took second place with Private Del Harris up. Third place went to Sgt. Thomas Garrity, Troop A, 13th Cavalry, Fort D. A. Russell,

Wyoming, who rode a Government mount, *Tomahawk*. He rode the horse down from Fort D. A. Russell—200 miles—arriving about a week before the ride. Though injured by a curb the horse was started and was so skillfully ridden as to improve every day of the ride. *Norfleet*, owned and trained by Major Henry Leonard, was ridden to fourth place by a 64-year-old cowboy, George Snurr.

The horsemanship prize (for excellence in horsemanship regardless of where the horse finishes) went to Oliver E. Curtis, who rode his horse, a half Thoroughbred gelding, *Colorado Boy*.

The scores of the winners were as follows:

	Condition	Speed Score	Total
<i>Ranger</i>	57.5	40.	97.5
<i>Vamp</i>	58.00	38.67	96.67
<i>Tomahawk</i>	56.00	39.2	95.2
<i>Norfleet</i>	52.00	40.	92.00

The following horses were entered:

Tomahawk, Bay g., ½ TB., 8 yrs., 15-3¼; Owner, U. S. Govt.; Rider, Sgt. Thomas Garity.

McAlester, Bay g., ½ TB., 10 yrs., 15-3¼; Owner, Cav. School; Rider, Capt. R. T. Maddocks.

Dick Boola, Blk. g., ½ TB., 11 yrs., 15-3¼; Owner, Cav. School; Rider, Capt. R. W. Grow.

Aline, Blue Roan Mare, ¾ TB., 7 yrs., 16; Owner, Cav. School; Rider, Capt. H. N. Beeman.

Arrow, Sorrel g., ¾ Arab, 6 yrs., 15-1; Owner, W. R. Brown; Rider, Erwin Ruby. (Withdrawn 8:30 A. M. at 15 miles by rider, 9-24.)

Norfleet, Chest. g., ¾ TB., 7 yrs., 15-1¼; Owner, Henry Leonard; Rider, George Snurr.

Beulah Robbins, Blk. m., TB., 8 yrs., 15-1¼; Owner, Ed. A. Pring; Rider, W. C. Johns. (Withdrawn 6:30 A. M., 9-24.)

Ranger, Gray g., ½ TB., 8 yrs., 15-½; Owner, Ed. A. Pring; Rider, Ted Flynn.

Buck, Brown g., ½ TB., 8 yrs., 15-½; Owner, Clyde Phillips, Jr.; Rider, Geo. Lacey. (Withdrawn at 17 miles, 9-24.)

Tillicum, Bay g., ½ TB., 9 yrs., 15-3¼; Owner, Holden Spear; Rider, Holden Spear.

Colorado Boy, Brown g., ½ TB., 9 yrs., 15-2¼; Owner, O. E. Curtis; Rider, O. E. Curtis.

Sandy, Chest. g., Cross Bred, 9 yrs., 15; Owner, Mark W. Hersig; Rider, Mark W. Hersig. (Withdrawn at 4 miles by owner, 9-25.)

Vamp, Bay m., ½ TB., 12 yrs., 15-3¼; Owner, Capt. H. N. Beeman; Rider, Pvt. Del Harris.

Black Derring, Brown g., ½ TB., 8 yrs., 15-½; Owner, Lt. Frank M. Lee; Rider, Lt. F. M. Lee. (Withdrawn by owner, 6:00 A. M., 9-22.)

Careful examinations of mounts before the rides and at the beginning and close of each day are developing many facts about horses of which ranchmen are already making use. They have observed that horses which won were well-bred horses of riding strains—principally thoroughbred; that they were of a type well suited to range work, yet could be sold as polo ponies, hunters, cavalry mounts,

officers' chargers or as three-gaited riding horses according to the way they developed. With that quickness of decision so typical of westerners they began immediately to call for good sires. These, furnished by the Army Remount Service, are principally Thoroughbred, although there are a few Arabs and Standard-breds in use.

EARLY DAYS OF THE ASSOCIATION

THE U. S. Cavalry Association was organized November 9, 1885, with Brigadier General Wesley Merritt as its first President and 1st Lieutenant O. L. Hein, 1st Cavalry, as its first Secretary. The first number of the *CAVALRY JOURNAL* was issued in March, 1888, and gives the officers of the Association as follows:

President—Brig. General Wesley Merritt, Brevet Maj. General, U. S. Army
Secretary and Treasurer—1st Lieut. O. L. Hein, 1st Cavalry

Executive Council

Brigadier General Wesley Merritt, Bvt. Maj. General, U. S. Army
Major E. V. Sumner, 5th Cavalry, Bvt. Lieut. Col., U. S. Army
Captain W. H. Rafferty, 6th Cavalry
Captain C. C. Carr, 1st Cavalry
1st Lieutenant O. L. Hein, 1st Cavalry, Sec. and Treas. (Ex-officio)

There were seven Honorary members and 182 Regular, Associate and Life members. Of these the following are still members of the Association:

(Rank and organization as of 1888) Captain Charles King, U. S. A., Captain Alexander Rodgers, 4th Cavalry, Captain F. K. Ward, 1st Cavalry, 1st Lieut. W. C. Brown, 1st Cavalry, 1st Lieut. Fred S. Foltz, 1st Cavalry, 1st Lieut. O. L. Hein, 1st Cavalry, 1st Lieut. C. H. Murray, 4th Cavalry, 2d Lieut. F. H. Beach, 6th Cavalry, 2d Lieut. G. H. Cameron, 7th Cavalry, 2d Lieut. A. C. Macomb, 5th Cavalry, 2d Lieut. P. E. Traub, 1st Cavalry, 2d Lieut. Arthur Thayer, 3d Cavalry.

The following letters written by the President of the Association to the Secretary at about this time are of interest:

Headquarters Department of the Missouri,
Fort Leavenworth, Kansas,
December 20th, 1888.

Dear Captain Hein:

I heartily congratulate you on your promotion. It will be a benefit to the service as well as advantage to you. I feel sure you will continue to take an interest in the Cavalry Association, and I believe it will continue to prosper. What you have done for it, every one knows and it owes much, very much to your management. It is with great regret that I recognize the fact that your immediate connection with the Association will for the present terminate. As long as there was a chance for your return I was opposed to your resignation, but now, I think that in justice to yourself it will be better for you to resign the secretaryship. Establish a branch by all means and keep up your interest in the Cavalry Association. If, as I hope, you are detailed on duty in Washington your capacity for good in every direction will increase. Swift and Almy have finally mailed all Journals to subscribers. Several letters were received asking what had become of the publication. One among others from King.¹

¹ General Charles King, famous Indian campaigner, and distinguished novelist.

He remarked that he noticed you had gone on leave and no Journal. However I presume he is "happy now."

Last Tuesday we had a very interesting meeting—at least it was so to me. I lectured, or gave an account of the battle of Winchester, dwelling more particularly on the cavalry part of the fight. Most of the officers attended and all seemed interested. I will submit a modification of it for publication in the Journal. It is thoroughly cavalry.

Mrs. Merritt joins me in very cordial greetings to Mrs. Hein and yourself, wishing you a happy and prosperous New Year. * * * Let me hear from you from time to time.

Your friend,

W. MERRITT.

I never see that fellow S.² but are you not mistaken as to his saying you had resigned the Secretaryship of the Association? It was the School Secretaryship as I understand it.

² Newspaper correspondent.

Headquarters Department of the Missouri,
Fort Leavenworth, Kansas,
October 18th, 1889.

My Dear Hein:

I am truly obliged to you for your letter as well as for the picture of the Emperor.² Your letter was most interesting and received by me in the camp of instruction in the Indian Territory, where I took the liberty of allowing some of our mutual friends to read it. All were much interested. * * * I hope to publish my report of operations which when done I will send you a copy. The Cavalry Association is progressing finely.

We had a Cavalry Association meeting in the field at our camp and discussed different matters of interest there. I am glad to assure you that our Cavalry Association is an assured success. I know you will be rejoiced at this and I feel sure you will write something for us. A letter for instance which while it told no state secrets,³ gave an account of military affairs in your preserves would be interesting from time to time and I know of no objection to your writing it. I wish you would. * * *

Your friend,

W. MERRITT.

³ While on duty as Military Attache in Austria Hungary.

PENSIONS FOR WIDOWS AND CHILDREN

A RECENT article in one of the country's most widely circulated daily papers stated that the widows of present day officers and soldiers dying in line of duty or as a result of injuries or illness originating in line of duty would not receive any pension.

The statement was evidently based upon the World War Veterans' Act, as amended and approved June 7, 1924, which stops the payment of compensation to widows, orphans and other dependents by the Veterans' Bureau, unless the officer or soldier was wounded or injured or contracted illness, prior to July 2, 1921, which eventually caused his death. However, co-incidental with the passage of the above act the pension laws which do not apply for World War Service and which are administered by the Pension Bureau again became effective.

The following is an official synopsis of the law:

"The widow of an officer whose death resulted from disability incurred while on active duty may be entitled to a pension from the date of his death, regardless of the date of her marriage to him or her financial condition. The rate of pension ranges from \$15 to \$30 per month, depending upon the rank of the officer, with \$2 per month for each of his children under the age of sixteen years."

	Per month
Lieutenant Colonel and all officers of higher rank.....	\$30.00
Major	25.00
Captain	20.00
First Lieutenant	17.00
Second Lieutenant and Warrant Officer.....	15.00
All enlisted men	8.00

Where the widow's husband served during the Spanish-American War, Philippine Insurrection or Boxer Rebellion, Pensions of \$20 per month are paid if pension is not claimed under the Act cited in preceeding paragraph.

The Secretary of the Army Mutual Aid Association reports that during the past three years the widow of every member who has died during that period has been granted either Pension or Compensation with two exceptions, and in those cases the officers died from disease developed after separation from the service and not incident thereto.

The Army Mutual Aid Association recommends that all officers report all illnesses suffered by them to the surgeon and even if on d. s., or leave, that written report of illnesses or a statement from civilian physician be filed officially. The Pension Bureau bases all grants of pension upon the sick and service records kept by the War Department. Statements of members of one's own family are of practically no help.

The Army Mutual further advises that all officers should keep a church or court copy of marriage certificate and birth certificates of minor children for possible use by the family to establish Pension Claim and members of the Association may file such papers in its office for possible future use.

Of all government claims which a widow makes, the pension claim is most trying to handle because of the numerous formal and technical proofs that must be submitted in exact compliance with the law and Bureau regulations. Married officers and enlisted men should do everything possible to obviate the numerous obstructions and delays which can be made to prevent or delay the granting of Pension Claims. Members of the Army Mutual Aid Association should comply with its request for marriage certificates and birth certificates of minor or invalid children. Those who are not members should arrange for the presentation of their claims by a good pension attorney or trust company.

Many widows who were legally entitled to pensions have never been granted claims because they were not cognizant of their own rights and had no friends able to care for their interests.

CAVALRY MEDAL WINNERS IN THE NATIONAL MATCHES

THE following places were won by Cavalrymen of the Regular Army in the National Matches:

National Individual Pistol Match: 6th, 1st Lt. John E. Leahy, 5th Cavalry; Bronze Medal.

National Pistol Team Match: 2d, The U. S. Cavalry Team.

Team Captain

Lt. Col. Alexander H. Davidson, Cavalry.

Alternate

2d Lt. Alexander George, 3d Cavalry.

2d Lt. George A. Rehm, 14th Cavalry.

1st Lt. John E. Leach, 5th Cavalry.

Sgt. Richard V. Wilzewski, Troop A, 11th Cavalry.

2d Lt. Clyde A. Burcham, 14th Cavalry.

1st Sgt. Ben H. Harris, Tr. B, 1st M. G. Sqdn., Cavalry.

N. R. A. 200 Yard "Any Rifle" Match: 8th, 2d Lt. George A. Rehm, 14th Cavalry; Bronze Medal.

The Wimbledon Cup Match: 3d, 1st Sgt. Wade E. Fitzgerald, 2d Cav. Brig.; Gold Medal.

.22 Caliber Slow Fire Pistol Match: 6th, 2d Lt. George A. Rehm, 14th Cavalry; Bronze Medal.

Navy Match: 2d, 1st Sgt. Wade E. Fitzgerald, 2d Cav. Brig.; Bronze Medal.

The A. E. F. Roumanian Trophy Match: 4th, The U. S. Cavalry Team.

The Infantry Match: 1st, The U. S. Cavalry Team: "Infantry Trophy" and Bronze Badges.

Members' Match: 1st, Cpl. Joseph Versak, Troop A, 13th Cavalry; Gold Medal.

THE CHATTANOOGA-SIXTH UNITED STATES CAVALRY HORSE SHOW, 1925

THIS year's edition of the Annual Chattanooga-Sixth U. S. Cavalry Horse Show, held at Fort Oglethorpe, Georgia, on Friday and Saturday, November 13th and 14th, was in every way the most interesting and successful since the institution of the event shortly after the return of the Sixth Cavalry from France. In former years, like so many Army horse shows, this one has been in reality a military tournament with no provision for the local civilian population other than as contributors of prizes and as spectators. This year it was decided to have a real horse show and to make it Chattanooga-Sixth Cavalry in fact, as well as in name. To that end the classes, conditions and prize list were arranged with the view of attracting the greatest possible number of entries by civilians of Chattanooga and vicinity and not to impress upon civilians the fact that their participation was especially desired. It was hoped that this year's show would blaze the way to making the Chattanooga-6th U. S. Cavalry Horse Show the biggest show in the South. The favorable and enthusiastic comment occasioned by the show leads one to believe that this year's objective has been gained.

Those responsible for the show this year are firm believers in the idea that a Cavalry regiment should make special efforts to encourage and induce the local civilian population to own and raise good horses, to induce increasing numbers

of civilians to join the great army of horsemen and horsewomen that has developed in this country since the war, and that such ownership can best be encouraged by providing an annual horse show where all can learn the characteristics of the best types and participate in and enjoy the camaraderie of horsemen and horsewomen the world over.

All military classes, except those for enlisted men, were open to officers of the National Guard and Organized Reserves and two classes were open only to Reserve Officers. All non-military classes were open to civilians and seven classes were open to civilians only. All classes shown were large, the open class for three gaited saddle horses and the class for three gaited saddle horses ladies to ride, each had twenty-one entries shown.

Lieut. Col. John A. Barry, of Olympic Team fame, judged all classes except the jumping for performance only and impressed everyone with his courtesy, impartiality and efficiency in the ring. His task was exacting and difficult but everyone, exhibitors and spectators alike, approved of his every choice and knew that he placed ribbons where his best judgment indicated the ribbons belonged.

A buffet luncheon was served at the Club on Saturday with the Horse Show Association acting as host to exhibitors and prominent residents of Chattanooga and vicinity. The Horse Show Ball was held Saturday night at the Officers' Hop Hall. These two events gave everyone the opportunity to talk horse and riding, and were of splendid help in carrying on the spirit of the show. The show has created great interest among local civilians who have the means to own good horses, and has greatly strengthened the cordial relations between the members of the garrison and the local civilian population.

All classes were hotly contested and in many, especially in the classes for three gaited saddle horses, Colonel Barry worked the entries around the ring again before he could make his choices and place the ribbons. In the three gaited saddle classes, *Satin Slippers*, owned and ridden by Col. R. H. Kimball; *Woodstock*, owned and ridden by Mrs. J. R. W. Diehl, and *Mowgli*, owned and ridden by Mrs. Robert Purse, Jr., were close competitors and outstanding winners. In the hunter classes, *Ky*, owned and ridden by Captain Otis Porter, *Ky, Jr.*, and *Miss Ky*, owned and ridden by Major E. W. Taulbee; *Miss Springtime*, shown by Colonel G. C. Barnhardt; *Shamrock*, owned and ridden by Major E. N. Hardy; *Jumping Joe*, owned by Mr. Jo C. Guild and ridden by Mrs. Robert Purse, Jr., and *Pearl King*, owned and ridden by Lieut. F. O. Dewey, were by far the best shown, the *Ky* family and *Miss Springtime* being wonderful types. *Ky, Ky, Jr.*, and *Miss Ky* are full brothers and sisters, respectively, eight, six and four years old. *Ky* took the blue over his brother in one class and the blue over his sister in another class. *Ky* is the horse developed and trained by Major Taulbee which has had such great success as a show horse throughout this country and in England and in France. *Ky, Jr.*, and *Miss Ky* look remarkably like their elder brother and give promise of equalling, if not of surpassing the wonderful record which *Ky* has gained in the face of the stiffest competition in the world. In the jumping classes, Mr. Scott Probasco's *Captain Blood* and Mr. Jo C. Guild's *Jumping Joe* was the outstanding successes.

Foreign Military Notes

FURNISHED BY THE MILITARY INFORMATION DIVISION, G. S.

FRANCE

Organization of French Cavalry: The French Army has five divisions of Cavalry numbered 1, 3, 4, 5 and 6. These five divisions have the following composition:

- 1 group of motorized machine-guns,
- 3 brigades of cavalry of 2 regiments and 1 troop of motorized machine-guns,
- 2 groups of horse artillery of 3 batteries each.
- 1 group of chasseur cyclists.

In addition to the organized cavalry divisions, there are five groups of non-divisional cavalry of four regiments each excepting the third group which has only three regiments of cavalry.

SPAIN

Permanent Army in Africa: The new organization of the Spanish permanent army in Morocco is as follows:

Spanish Troops

	Officers	Cont. Empl.	Enlisted	Animals
Infantry	1,201	74	41,975	6,982
Cavalry	159	12	3,523	3,858
Artillery	351	178	10,521	4,381
Engineers	196	22	7,929	1,423
Q. M. Troops.....	73	44	3,301	1,931
Medical Dept.	132	18	2,252	655
Veterinary	73			
Chaplains	33			
G. S. (Topographical, etc.)..			49	
Sea (Stevedores) Cos.....			488	
Aviation	56		415	
Total	2,274	348	70,453	19,230

Foreign Legion ("El Tercia") amounting to 252 officers and 8,048 enlisted are included in Infantry, above. 383 officers and 63 clerks, in addition to the forces indicated above are also attached to the administration of the protectorate.

Native Troops

Officers	Enlisted		Animals
	Inf.	Cav.	
450	18,876	2,180	3,871

There also exist 5 Groups of "Mehallas" or native troops commanded by Spanish officers, maintained by the Jalifa or Moorish Government. Their strength is variable.

Several "Harcas" or native fighting troops, friendly to Spain, commanded by prominent Moors or Spanish officers, and under the supervision of Spanish officers are actually co-operating in the security of the territory.

The above is the *permanent* army of Africa. It is now and has generally, been reinforced by "expeditionary" units sent from the Peninsula.

CZECHOSLOVAKIA

Remount Service: The Czechoslovak Remount Service maintains a stud farm at Hostouni in Moravia and colt farms at Mimoni and Trencin, Slovakia; a third is being started in Moravia.

The military stud farm at Hostouni, consisting of 466 hectares, has for its purpose the development of a strong, hardy, high-class cavalry horse. Besides this, the farm develops desirable breeders for the farms in Slovakia. The plan is to raise full-breed and half-breed English, Arab and Anglo-Arab horses.

The Remount has at present 7 stallions and 169 foals.

The colt farms buy three-year olds of the lighter type. Special care is given to the development of the colt through systematic exercise, training and pasturing up to four years; after which, it is turned over to the military units.

The cost of raising a four-year old on a farm is estimated at 12,000 kroner (\$365.00).

POLAND

Army Maneuvers: The first Polish Army maneuvers carried out since she gained her independence ended August 20, 1925. The general idea was "a defensive force guarding the frontier."

The first part of the maneuvers took place in Volhyna, near the town of Brody. 15,000 troops were engaged. This was mainly a Cavalry maneuver. It represented a type of open warfare, which was required by geographical conditions of the eastern borders.

The second part of the maneuvers took place in Pomerania, near Thorn. This consisted chiefly of Infantry and Artillery operations under modern conditions.

Both maneuvers were attended by General Gouraud, representing the French and General Ironside representing the British.

The Polish troops have shown during the recent maneuvers remarkable physical fitness and in the first part of the maneuvers, which lasted three days, and while tropical heat was prevailing, only 32 man out of 15,000 reported sick.

The National Guard

SERGEANT INSTRUCTORS

UNDER the drastic reductions which were made at the instance of the Director of the Budget in the subsistence for the Regular Army for the present fiscal year, the entire training system of the National Guard is threatened, through the forced relief of noncommissioned officers on duty as sergeant instructors. It is now apparent that the War Department will not have funds to pay the commutation for the noncommissioned officers now on detached service with the junior components of the Army of the United States.

The situation as to the commutation for noncommissioned officers and enlisted men become known through the inquiries that the Corps Area Commanders have made to the National Guard and colleges as to their most urgent needs for noncommissioned officers and enlisted men in maintaining their training activities.

The War Department has made a distribution of the subsistence funds among the Corps Area Commanders, who are endeavoring to work out a plan for the maintenance of as many noncommissioned officers on duty with the National Guard as the reduction in the appropriation for subsistence will permit. When enlisted men are on duty with their organizations their subsistence costs the War Department about 30 cents a day, but while they are on detached duty with the junior components of the Army of the United States they receive commutation of \$1.20 per day. While they are traveling they receive \$2.20 per day. With available funds for the current fiscal year there is not much more than sufficient subsistence allowances than will be required if all of the enlisted men were serving with the Regular Army units.

The difference between the cost of maintaining noncommissioned officers and enlisted men at their present training duty and with the Regular Army would create a deficit in the subsistence of the Army. The law authorizes the creation of a deficit in the subsistence funds of the Army, but under the present policy the War Department is not permitted to create a deficit, and the only alternative is to relieve noncommissioned officers from other duties than with the Regular Army.

Largely through the pressure brought on Congress by the National Guard an increase in the number of noncommissioned officers was authorized. The reduction in subsistence in the Regular Army in effect repeals this law, as it will deprive the National Guard and other junior components of the services of Regular noncommissioned officers. No doubt, when these institutions become advised of the effect of this reduction in the subsistence of the Regular Army, they will take the matter up with the Director of the Budget. The only relief from the situation will be through the appropriation of additional funds in a deficiency bill next session. If the Director of the Budget does not approve of it, it is understood that the National Guard will make an appeal to Congress.

102d CAVALRY—National Guard of New Jersey

Colonel Lewis B. Ballantyne, Commanding

The 102d Cavalry, New Jersey National Guard, Col. Lewis B. Ballantyne, commanding, had its annual encampment at Sea Girt, N. J., August 23. It is the first time since 1921 that the entire regiment had come together by train. In the last three years one squadron had come by train and the other on horseback, the squadrons alternating on the return trip.

Immediately after the regiment detrained the troops lined up for a mounted review before Maj. Gen. Creed C. Hammond, Chief, Militia Bureau, War Department, who was a guest of Maj. Gen. Quincy A. Gillmore, commanding the 44th Division, camp commander. The review was a creditable piece of work, especially considering the fact that the regiment had no previous assembly and had only detrained a short time previous.

104th CAVALRY—National Guard of Pennsylvania

Colonel Edward J. Stackpole, Jr., Commanding

One of the most interesting encampments in the history of the regiment was the consensus of opinion of the majority of the officers of the 104th Cavalry, Pennsylvania National Guard, who took part in the annual tour of duty August 9-22, at Colebrook, Pa. A very elaborate program of maneuvers was arranged under the direction of Brigadier General John P. Wood and carried out with the utmost care.

One of the most interesting parts of the program was the combat range work, under the leadership of Captain George H. Millholland, Cav., U. S. A., who was recently attached to the 104th as instructor to succeed Captain Otis Porter, Cav., U. S. A., whose four-year detail with the regiment has expired and who will report for duty with the 6th Cavalry at Fort Oglethorpe, Ga., September 1. Headquarters Troop, commanded by Captain Samuel E. Fitting, Cav., led the regiment with a high score of 63 hits while Troop B, Captain George C. Calbert, commanding, had almost as many.

The Service Troop acquitted themselves exceptionally well during the 1925 tour of duty. Making camp in record time as the advance detail, the troop functioned in splendid order. The band, with Acting Band Leader Heafner in charge, performed like a veteran organization.

The following order speaks for itself:

HEADQUARTERS 28TH DIVISION,
PENNSYLVANIA NATIONAL GUARD
Thirty-second and Lancaster Avenue, Philadelphia, Pa.

October 16, 1925.

General Orders, No. 7.

1. The Commanding General, 28th Division, desires to commend the officers and enlisted men of the 52nd Machine Gun Squadron, Troops B and F, 104th Cavalry, for their immediate response to the call to duty on October 6, 1925.

On the morning of October 6, 1925, the Commanding General was instructed by the Adjutant General of Pennsylvania to order to active duty sufficient units of the Pennsylvania National Guard to aid in the search for Charles H. Ames, missing air mail service pilot. This order was transmitted by telephone to Major Hugh L. Curtin, commanding officer of the 52d Machine Gun Squadron, and to the Commanding Officers of Troop B and F, 104th Cavalry, at approximately 11 A. M., October 6. At 6.10 P. M. of the same day the mobilization had been completed and the troops entrained, with the exception of Troop F, 104th Cavalry, which completed its entraining at 9.15 P. M. of that date. The detachment proceeded to Clarion, Penna., where, within 2½ hours of their arrival, under the direction of the air mail service

officers, they entered the mountains and took up the search which was continued over a period of 4 days, covering the rugged and difficult country under inclement weather conditions, sometimes on foot and sometimes mounted, but with a high order of esprit and morale.

The total strength of this force was 20 officers and 254 enlisted men, who are to be commended for the celerity, dispatch, and smoothness of their mobilization, for which no previous preparation had been made, and for their performance of the difficult duty under adverse conditions.

By Command of Major-General PRICE:

Official:
WILLIAM FISH,
Adjutant-General.

ROBERT MORRIS,
Assistant Chief of Staff.

105th CAVALRY—National Guard of Wisconsin
Colonel James J. Quill, Commanding

Troop E, 105th Cavalry, Wisconsin National Guard, Capt. John D. Alexander, Cav., commanding, won the mounted field meet that the 105th Cavalry Regiment put on at the annual field camp of instruction period at Camp Douglas, Wisc., this year. Capt. Alexander's troopers made a great effort to take the match and outdid themselves against the fiercest kind of competition. The men certainly did their splendid troop and esteemed commander, who was acting major of the 2nd Squadron during the camp, proud.

Attendance of Troop C, 105th Cavalry, Wisconsin N. G., at the annual camp of instruction, held at Camp Douglas, Wisc., this past summer was 100 per cent, and judging from remarks made since return to the home station, every man is anxious to return next year. This is due to the successful and most interesting encampment of 1925.

The ambition of the troop was realized at Camp this year, when at a regimental dinner, given on Friday, July 24th, by the "Staff" to the "Line," it was announced by the regimental commander, Colonel James J. Quill, that "C" troop was to be the "Standard Troop" of the regiment for the next year. This achievement was due to the individual efforts of every man in the troop.

110th CAVALRY—Massachusetts National Guard
Lieutenant Colonel Dana T. Gallup, Commanding

The exhibit of cavalry equipment, radio and general, at the Boston Radio Show in October created an even greater public interest this year than it did in 1924.

At the 1924 show the regiment was given a small space the opening day, and did not have any time to arrange a special exhibit. All that was possible was the erection of the tent, and the laying out and explanation to all of the pack set. So much interest was shown that the day the show closed the manager invited the regiment to furnish the military exhibit for 1925, and promised a larger space.

Again this year the SCR 127 was made the central feature of the show. The tent was erected, the complete set laid out, and one or more men from Headquarters Troop and Squadron Headquarters Detachment on duty to explain it. In addition the complete wire equipment of the regiment was laid out for display, and a telephone set up across the booth which could be used by visitors. The switchboard was operated by the man displaying the wire equipment. Through the courtesy of the Corps Area Signal Officer several other sets were also displayed which created considerable comment.

In spite of this being a radio exhibit, the thing that in many ways caught the

public fancy most was a shelter tent, with full equipment laid out for field inspection. It seemed to give the first intimation to many, even ex-service men, of what the cavalry carried and fought with.

The following commendation was made by the Adjutant General of the state:

Again this year the 110th Cavalry provided the military exhibit at the radio show, held in Mechanics Building last week.

The space allotted was somewhat larger than last year and consequently a more elaborate and interesting exhibit was possible.

An officer and several enlisted men were on duty each evening to explain the apparatus.

Apparently the most attractive single feature was the SCR 127 radio transmitting and receiving pack set.

The use and workings of this set was very ably described by the non-commissioned officers on duty and the entire exhibit was a great credit to the organization. The appearance, set-up and courteous conduct of the men on duty there was an example to the Massachusetts National Guard.

Such enterprises serve to bring the Guard before the public in a manner to inspire interest, confidence and respect for those men who give their time and energy in an unselfish manner that our Country may, in a measure, be prepared for any emergency, both of peace or war.

The 110th Cavalry Band had the honor to be selected by the Ancient and Honorable Artillery Company of Massachusetts, one of the oldest military organizations in the country, to accompany them on their Fall Field Day trip to Cuba. Because of the trip being to a foreign country, the band did not go in service uniform, but in the old red uniform of the National Lancers.

Regarding the trip, the adjutant of the company has written:

The discipline of the band throughout the trip was of the highest order, and the music rendered second to none of the many bands this organization has had accompany them on past fall field days. The Cubans, especially the officers of the Cuban Army, were especially high in their praise.

November 12 was set as the date for the annual competition for the Lancers' Cup, donated by the National Lancers to be competed for by the troops of the Massachusetts Cavalry.

The competition included close order drill by platoons, an equipment race, a pistol race, mounted wrestling by teams from each unit, jumping, and an endurance ride.

In all events team scores counted. With the exception of the platoon leaders, and one officer permitted in each jumping team, the entire competition was among the enlisted men.

The endurance ride was held the Saturday before. Special attention was given to the condition in which the horses were brought in, although time counted to a certain extent.

The Cup this year was won by Troop A, with 155 5-6 points, followed closely by Headquarters Troop with 152 3-4 points.

The same evening the winners of the Roxbury Horse Guard medal, and the Blake Medal for rifle work within the organization were also announced.

The Organized Reserves

TRAINING DIRECTIVE FOR 1926

THE following extracts from the War Department Training Directive for 1926 are of interest to Reserve Officers:

1. Regular Army:

b. The summer training camp period devoted exclusively by any unit to the training of other components *will not exceed two months*. The remainder of the year will be utilized for Regular Army training.

c. Whenever it appears desirable to conduct training of other components during the ten months of the Regular Army period, such dates should be selected that the reserve units can participate in the training of the Regular Army units with profit to themselves and without interruption of the latter's schedules.

* * * * *

3. Organized Reserves.

a. Training will be conducted in accordance with A. R. 135-10 and A. R. 140-5.

b. Unit training on active duty status for Organized Reserve units, will be conducted principally during the spring and summer months. Individual training on active duty status may be conducted at any time throughout the year. See 5c, below.

* * * * *

6. Preparation of Training Plans.

a. Funds for the preparation and maintenance of camp sites for training the various components will be allocated to corps area commanders before the end of the calendar year, 1925.

b. No additional apportionment of funds for fifteen days training for the third and fourth quarters, fiscal year 1926, will be made available.

c. Organized Reserve training funds, fiscal year 1927, will be apportioned by quarters—1st quarter, 80 per cent; 2nd quarter, 5 per cent; 3rd quarter, 0 per cent; 4th quarter, 15 per cent.

d. When it is necessary or to the interest of economy for trained personnel to attend camps outside of the corps area of origin, all costs including man-day charge for preparation and maintenance of camp sites, transportation, mileage, subsistence and pay will be borne by the corps area of origin. When such attendance has been approved by the War Department, notification of numbers to be trained, transfer of funds for payment of expenses, etc., will be arranged by direct communication between corps area commanders concerned.

Such transfer of funds will be based upon a flat rate of average cost of training at the camp or station specified plus cost of mileage or transportation. The cost of providing instructor personnel made necessary by the presence at a camp of trainees originating without the corps area, will be borne by the corps area to which the trainees pertain.

e. Final allocation of funds for training, fiscal year 1927, will be made by the War Department at the earliest opportunity.

f. Corps area preliminary plans for the conduct of training during 1926 will be prepared for approximately the same number of trainees as in 1925.

g. Chiefs of Branches will be informed, about March 1, 1926, of the number of Reserve officers under their jurisdiction who may be ordered to active duty during Fiscal Year 1927.

h. At least 75% of Reserve officers called to active duty will be given unit training (regiment, battalion, or company).

i. The number of noncombatant Reserve officers called to active duty will be held to a low percentage of total trained.

j. The Chief of Air Service is authorized to call upon corps area commanders for the recommendation of Reserve officers rated as pilots for training with one year or six months, as additional funds become available.

k. The period of training for R. O. T. C. graduates commissioned in the summer of 1926 in the Air Service, Organized Reserves, and selected for instruction at the Air Service Primary Flying School will be *six* months instead of four.

l. Reserve officers may be utilized as instructors at C. M. T. Camps in numbers, up to one per one hundred C. M. T. C. students, provided that total quota of officers, both Regular Army and Reserve Corps, with organizations shall not exceed war strength.

THE FIRST CAMP OF THE 158th M. G. SQUADRON

By

Howard S. Patterson, Major Cavalry Reserves

It was with a mixed feeling of awe and pity that I received orders to take the officer personnel of the 158th Machine Gun Squadron, over which I hold command, to Fort Ethan Allen, Vermont, for a period of fourteen days' training. The feeling of awe was caused by the fact that to go back to active duty in the Army as a Squadron Commander, after an absence of nearly six years, was such a big undertaking that I felt I would never be able to master the situation. The feeling of pity was for the other officers who were going with me to be instructed by me in the things I had either forgotten or had never known. However, it was up to me, and nothing else but leaving this earthly sphere would help me to escape, and so I went. I arrived there, stayed there two weeks, and frankly and honestly confess I should like to have remained. It is said that "anticipation is better than realization," but it was exactly the opposite in my case.

After a comfortable and enjoyable journey from Boston, we arrived on a beautiful Sunday morning at the post, which had previously had the 315th Cavalry officers for training. We knew beforehand where we were to go, and had no difficulty in finding just the spot, thanks being due to the efficient manner in which Col. Starbird and the officers of the Post had perfected arrangements. Much credit is due also to the efforts of Capt. Philip D. Sherwood, Cav. D. O. L., our first executive officer, who, although ordered to Fort Riley, travelled with us and stayed a few days to help all he could in getting us started.

After getting shaken down a bit and beginning to get the "feel" of our uniforms,

we ventured toward that well-known place, the mess hall. What a wonderful gift to be able to express in words one's feeling of gratitude and appreciation. The manner in which we were served and the quality of the food put before us are beyond description. Not being so gifted, all that can be said is that it was the best mess that any organization in training has had the pleasure of sitting down to, and, last but not least, at a cost of \$1.50 per day.

Our quarters were in the Barracks building of Hq. Bat., 7th F. A., which was absent for the summer on the target range, and we were most comfortable. One large bunk room with two single rooms furnished the necessary space for one Major in Command, one Major M. R. C. attached, one Major of the 316th Cavalry attached,



Officers of the 158th Machine Gun Squadron

three Troop Commanders, two First Lieutenants and eleven Second Lieutenants, in all—nineteen officers, comprising the total officer personnel of the Machine Gun Squadron.

Training began Monday morning bright and early when, at 6.00 A. M., we took our daily dozen in company with the officers of the 301st F. A., who were quartered in the same building with us. Our schedule followed thereafter generally as given below for one day, the principle being that all lectures and conferences came early in the morning followed by equitation, the afternoon then being reserved for work on the guns or actual firing.

5:45 A. M.	Reveille
6:00-6:15	Setting up exercises.
6:45	Breakfast
8:00-8:30	Machine gun tactics (Lecture)
8:30-9:30	Conference (M. G. Squad., Platoon and Troop Drill)

9:30-11:30	Mounted Drill and Equitation
1:30 P. M.-2:30	M. G. Stoppages and immediate action
2:30-4:30	M. G. Ground Drill

As this was the first Camp of the Machine Gun Squadron and a majority of the officers had had little or no machine gun experience, and the rest who had had some were extremely rusty, the scheme of establishing a framework of machine gun knowledge co-ordinated with that of cavalry was adopted in order to refresh everyone's memory and allow for filling in of details as time permitted.

All of the above was carried out strictly on schedule inasmuch as nothing is so tiresome as to be late for one thing and crowded for another, and this schedule fitted our needs very well indeed. No one subject was overdone to the point of being bore-some, and considering the short space of time within the two weeks we were able to cover exceptionally well the basic principles of the duty of a Machine Gun Squadron. The lectures were given by Capt. H. N. Neilson, Cav. D. O. L., and Lt. Voigt, Cav. Capt. Neilson was our executive officer, relieving Capt. Sherwood. The writer would like to suggest here that more knowledge is gained by having all lectures given by the regular army officers attached, than by the Reserve Officers, the thought not being to belittle the ability of the Reserve Officers, but to get out of the time allowed all one can. Capt. Neilson, in addition to his previous machine gun experience, being just back from ten months in the Troop Officers' and Special Machine Gun Course at the Cavalry School was able to give us the benefit of the most modern ideas and his wonderful ability to handle the subjects was invaluable to us.

The machine gun work was with the Browning machine gun and consisted of a study of the gun, nomenclature, its tactical uses and possibilities, stripping and assembling, mechanism, stoppages and immediate action, gun drill, actual firing on the 1000-inch range and, finally, of one full day on the Artillery range at long ranges. This day was spent in individual and battery firing of four guns at natural targets at unknown ranges, varying from 300 to 2200 yards with both ball cartridge and tracer ammunition. Advantage was taken of this opportunity for actual practice by the officers in estimation of ranges, target designation, giving fire orders, switching guns from one target to another, mechanical handling of guns for battery firing, and covering targets of varying depth and frontage with fire by placing individual officers in command of the battery. Demonstrations of ranging, various kinds of fire, formation of defensive bands of fire and, not least, the unbelievable invisibility of tracer ammunition from a flank in daylight, were given, fixing these things firmly in each man's mind and making him, if possible, a more enthusiastic machine gunner. Owing to the limited time no attempt was made to use the guns in indirect firing, this phase, however, being covered by lectures on the subject. It is contemplated to continue this throughout the winter at meetings in which officers will prepare certain phases of the subject so that at our next camp this work can actually be done.

The mounted work consisted of two hours each day, and was so enjoyed by all, after the first day or two, that it was with sincere regret that we had to stop. It consisted of both equitation and several delightful rides over the country around the post. Our mounts were not what one might call well-trained Cavalry mounts, but, owing to the fact that the C. M. T. C. students were using all the horses of the 1st Squadron, 3rd Cavalry, we were obliged to use the horses of the Combat Train, 7th F. A., which were more or less of the artillery type. This was the only disappointment we had, and to Cavalry Reserve Officers commanding units it is suggested that they would profit more by trying to arrange their Unit Camps at some other time than when the C. M. T. C.'s are in session. This is not meant as any criticism, but only that I feel that Reserve Officers should not be handicapped by a shortage of material to work with.

The net results of this first unit camp of the 158th Machine Gun Squadron can be summed up as follows: Former pleasant friendships renewed, new ones made, a working knowledge of our tools, the bringing to life of a paper organization into an active body of enthusiastic reserve officers who desire to go further in the pursuit of machine gun knowledge, and, last but not least, the finding of such a remarkable spirit of help and co-operation from all the Regular Army personnel.

63rd CAVALRY DIVISION

During the Fall and Winter months every effort is being made throughout the Division to put into execution an inactive duty training program which is both interesting and instructive.

In addition to the usual forms of instruction offered members of the Reserve Corps by the War Department, such as correspondence courses and details to Service Schools, these headquarters are giving practical instruction in equitation and cavalry drill, conducting special semi-monthly schools, ordered by Corps Area Headquarters, and holding target practice.

Due to the fact that Division Headquarters is located at Fort Oglethorpe, Georgia, the home station of the 6th U. S. Cavalry, the facilities are unsurpassed for Cavalry training. Also, fortunately, the Headquarters of each Cavalry Regiment of the Division is located in a city having a National Guard Cavalry unit, through the courtesy of which the Reserve Officers are enabled to take advantage of equitation and mounted drills.

Experience has shown that a large attendance for any form of instruction cannot be built up over night, it being necessary to gradually increase the attendance by varying the manner in which subjects are presented and the introduction of new ideas with a view to making the school attractive.

However, during the past two years the Division has been very successful in convincing members of the Reserve Corps that it is worth while to take advantage of the various forms of instruction offered.

The riding class which began October 5, 1925, is being held each Sunday morning at Fort Oglethorpe and for the Annual 6th Cavalry Horse Show held November 13th and 14th, this class entered two special events for Reserve Officers. One event was a saddle class being judged on performance of rider only. In this event 2nd Lieutenant Custis N. Guttenberger, Jr., FA-Res., took first place; Major J. B. Frazier, Jr., FA-Res., second place, and Mr. D. S. Latimore third place. The other event was a jumping class over a course of eight jumps three feet six inches in height; places were won by the following: 1st place—2nd Lt. William Roth, 310th Cavalry; 2nd place—Lt. Custis N. Guttenberger, Jr., 452nd F. A.; 3rd place—Major J. B. Frazier, Jr., 317th F. A.; 4th place—2nd Lt. R. C. Anderson, 463rd Field Artillery.

The Special Tactical School for National Guard and Reserve Officers is held semi-annually on the first and third Wednesday of each month from 7:30 P. M. to 9:00 P. M. The first session for the school year 1925-1926 was held on November 4, 1925, and had an attendance of 25 students.

Through the kindness of the Y. M. C. A. of Chattanooga the use of an excellent class room in their building has been secured.

The school will cover ten sessions, the first four being conferences on map reading, combat orders, etc., while the remaining six will be map problems. Instruction is given in the form of discussions and requirements rather than lectures.

During the Spring, Reserve Officers who desire, will be attached to the 6th Cavalry for range practice on the government range at Catoosa.

Firing for Reserve Officers, under proper supervision, will be held Sunday morn-

ings. Pistol firing will alternate Sundays with rifle firing. Last Spring there were eleven Reserve Officers who fired the prescribed course on an inactive duty status.

A canvass of the personnel of the division has been made to determine how many desire active duty training at Fort Oglethorpe during the Spring of 1926 and the time most convenient for the majority.

It is expected that one cavalry regiment of this division will be ordered to active duty for fifteen days during April or May, 1926.

64th CAVALRY DIVISION

The 64th Cavalry Division with headquarters in Louisville, Ky., Colonel Kirby Walker, Cavalry, Chief of Staff, has inaugurated the inactive training for 1925-26 for the Division with an enrollment of one hundred and fifteen Reserve officers in the Army Correspondence School.

On the 9th of October, the first meeting of the 6th Cavalry Division Mess was held at the Hotel Henry Watterson in Louisville, with twenty-one officers in attendance, being followed by meetings on October 23rd, November 13th and November 27th. Interesting talks were given at these meetings by Colonel Kirby Walker, Cavalry (DOL), Lt. Col. Talbot Smith, Cavalry (DOL), Captain George I. Smith, Cavalry (DOL), and Lieutenant Raymond R. Brown, Air Service (DOL). Attendance has increased with each meeting, the number present at the November 27th meeting being thirty-six.

The 64th Cavalry Division Mess is composed of Reserve officers assigned and attached to the Division who reside in Louisville. The association meets twice each month at the Hotel Henry Watterson, the first meeting at noon on the second Friday of each month for luncheon and conference, and the second meeting on the fourth Friday at 6.00 P. M., for dinner and conference.

The following Reserve officers have enrolled in the Riding Class, 64th Cavalry Division which is held on Mondays and Thursdays at the Armory, 138th Field Artillery, Louisville:

Lt. Colonel Owsley Grant	1st Lt. W. W. Downing
Lt. Colonel Joseph Burge	1st Lt. W. D. Salley
Major Henry L. Grant	1st Lt. James T. Fowlkes
Major A. W. Lissauer	1st Lt. E. C. McCallum
Major E. T. Hutchings	1st Lt. L. J. Nichols
Major W. C. Merzwiler	1st Lt. P. Gunterman
Captain Clay L. Nichols	1st Lt. E. B. Sandelands
Captain H. C. Mayberry	2nd Lt. George Burton
Captain John Snarenburger	2nd Lt. Edward Rutledge
Captain B. W. Bayless	Mr. C. H. Blanford
Captain Sidney J. Bentley	Sergeant Thomas O. Lester, E. R. C.

SIXTY-FIFTH CAVALRY DIVISION

On November 7th the 65th Cavalry Division, under the auspices of the 65th Cavalry Division Association, held its Annual Pre-Armistice Ball at the Belden-Stratford Hotel, Chicago. A reception from 7 to 8 o'clock in the evening, on the spacious Mezzanine, afforded all officers and their guests a splendid opportunity for better acquaintance. The large French doors opening to the grand ball-room swung open promptly at 8 o'clock and the Grand March began, headed by Colonel T. A. Siqueland, President of the 65th Division Association; Colonel A. C. Gillem, Chief of Staff of the Division; Colonel Robert E. Wyllie, Chief of Staff, VI Corps Area, and other officers and guests of the Division. Major General W. S. Graves, Corps Area Commander, was unable to be present on account of absence from the city and temporary duty at Washington, D. C.

The Ball-Room was beautifully decorated with National Colors, Allied Flags, Unit Guidons, flowers and foliage. On either side of the Speakers, Presiding Officers and Guests of Honor table was a large fluted column, each draped with autumn foliage, and upon which rested a large gold-bronzed American Eagle with a six-foot wingspread. A silvered horse's head statue was mounted in center of the table on a base of cut-flowers with the symbol "65th" neatly symbolized in white and green flowers.

The Second Infantry Band and a Platoon of the 14th Cavalry, stationed at Fort Sheridan, Ill., added to the military spectacle and setting. At the main entrance the 14th Cavalry formed a guard of honor, armed with sabers, and executed "present sabers" as each officer and his lady entered. The Second Infantry Band rendered a splendid musical program until 9:15, when the famous "Paul Ash" dance orchestra, directed in person by Mr. Ash, took over the musical program for the remainder of the evening. The entertainment committee added further pleasant surprises to its program by introducing during the dinner course several star vaudeville acts from the leading hotels and cabarets. This entertainment is worthy of mention since the service of the artists were voluntary, and given as a manifestation of their patriotic interest in military affairs. More than 400 were present and enjoyed a splendid evening's entertainment. The entertainment committee this year left nothing undone to assure the pleasure of the party and, through untiring efforts by each member, set a precedent in program and decorations.

For several weeks officers and several enlisted men of the Division residing in Chicago have been attending equitation classes each Sunday, at Fort Sheridan, Ill., under the instructorship of Captain C. W. Richmond, Cav.-DOL, Executive Officer and Division Adjutant. The keen interest of both Reserve officers and men in the Division has been manifested by the good attendance at these classes, cross-country rides, and an occasional practice march. On Sunday, November 29th, a practice march was made from Fort Sheridan to Diamond Lake and return, a total of thirty miles. The ground was covered with a two-inch blanket of snow and it snowed during the entire day. The inclement weather did not dampen the spirits and interest of the forty-three officers and men who participated. At Diamond Lake the column rested for an hour and were guests at the winter Lodge of Mr. and Mrs. Chester Grover, who served barbecue sandwiches and coffee which were much enjoyed by all after the invigorating march.

The officers of the Division are showing more interest in the sub-calibre rifle practice as evidenced by increased attendance at class instruction held at the Hamilton Club Rifle Range. The use of this range, through courtesy of the Hamilton Club is fully appreciated, and demonstrates the patriotic interest manifested in the 65th Cavalry Division and National Defense Program for Preparedness, by the Club Officials.

The 159th Machine Gun Squadron, with its new allocation area in Evanston, Wilmette and Winnetka, the North Shore suburbs of Chicago, is progressing with a recruiting campaign for enlisted reservists. Public officials in each of the villages have pledged support to the movement and it is expected within ninety days to procure at least fifty percent of its enlisted personnel strength.

The 319th Cavalry and 160th Machine Gun Squadron at Detroit have instituted a Troop Officers' School for the basic and troop officers' course in Army Correspondence Courses with practical instruction classes under Lieut. Colonel R. M. Barton, Cav.-DOL.

Much to the satisfaction of the Division Chief of Staff, many officers and enlisted men are taking the Army Correspondence Courses. Non-commissioned officers in many units are taking advantage of this training to prepare themselves for examination and promotion to commissioned officers.

66th CAVALRY DIVISION

For the purpose of advancing the professional knowledge of cavalry officers of the three components of the Army, of increasing the esprit de corps of cavalry personnel and of promoting the general interests of the cavalry arm a group of cavalry officers met at 6:00 P. M. on Saturday, November 14th, at the Hotel Savery, Des Moines, Iowa. After a round table dinner the following temporary officers were selected: President, Colonel H. H. Polk, 322nd Cavalry; Secretary, Captain Joseph L. Phillips, Cavalry, U. S. A.

After remarks, comments and discussions by those present it was decided to establish The Cavalry Club at Des Moines with objects as stated above.

The following committees were named: On Constitution and By-Laws, Colonel Park Findley, 113th Cavalry (Iowa National Guard); Captains Beecher, 14th Cavalry; Chaney and Miller, 322nd Cavalry. On Program, Colonels Lindsey, 14th Cavalry; Findley, 113th Cavalry; Polk, 322nd Cavalry, and Captain Phillips.

The next meeting was set for 6:00 P. M., Saturday, December 12th, at the Hotel Savery.

While it was the sense of the meeting that nothing hasty or premature be decided upon in the way of future action, hints were given of future occasions as paper-chases, hunt breakfasts, war games and horse shows. Colonel Findley offered the use of the 113th Cavalry Armory and Colonel Lindsey intimated that the resources of Fort Des Moines would be available to The Cavalry Club. "One for all and all for each" is to be the guiding motto of the Des Moines members of the "Up and At 'Em" branch of the Army of the United States, and much pleasure and profit is anticipated.

Sixteen Reserve Officers were present at the first meeting of the Reserve Officers Riding Class at the Riding Hall of Fort Des Moines, Thursday, November 12th. Twenty-three different Reserve Officers rode last year with a maximum number of fifteen present on any one occasion. Through the courtesy of the Commanding Officer, Fort Des Moines, the class has been held for two years, meeting once each week from November to May, inclusive, using horses and equipment of the 14th Cavalry, under the instruction of the Executive Officer, 322nd Cavalry.

305th CAVALRY

Colonel John C. Groome, Commanding

Equitation

The Class in Equitation started on November 4th. The class rides every Wednesday from 5:30 to 7:30 P. M.

Through the courtesy of Captain D. M. Speed, Q. M. C., the horses from the Q. M. School are used.

Through the kindness of Captain Clement Wood, Commanding the First City Troop, the regiment is authorized the use of the fine Armory of this historic troop, for its classes. The average attendance during November was 20 members.

Conferences

The first conference of the Regimental School was held at the University of Pennsylvania, Medical Laboratory, on October 21, from 5 to 7 P. M. In addition to the subjects discussed at the Conference, Cavalry marches and patrolling, the members who were present enjoyed the moving pictures "Life of Riley," which were shown. Films of these pictures were obtained from the Cavalry School, Fort Riley, Kansas.

On November 25th from 8:30 to 10:30 P. M., the second conference of the Regimental School was held at the First City Troop Armory. A map problem on Cavalry Reconnoitering Detachments was solved, each member present solving a situation appropriate to his rank. The average attendance at the conferences of the Regimental School during October and November was 17 members.

Conferences for the members of the Basic Officers Cavalry Course, Army Correspondence Course, are being held weekly at the Headquarters of the Regiment. The

Executive Officer, 305th Cavalry, is conducting these conferences with a view to stimulating active work for the 1925-26 year. The average attendance during October and November was 8 members.

Tactical Rides

No doubt the showing of the picture "Life of Riley" induced some of the officers of the 305th Cavalry with the Cavalry spirit necessary to attempt the first tactical ride on October 24th. The ride was made to Fort Washington and return, solving a continued problem on Cavalry Patrolling. An enjoyable time was had by all at Fort Washington.

On November 14th the 2nd tactical ride scheduled, was held. On this ride an advance guard problem was solved, each member present solving a situation. The average attendance at tactical rides during October and November was 14 members.

Polo

Members of the 305th Cavalry, through the courtesy of Lieut Colonel John Converse, 103rd Cav., Penna. Natl. Guard, have been invited to join the 103rd Cavalry Polo Association.

The following named officers have turned out for polo: Captains Rutan, Brogden, and Livingston; Lieutenants Bray, Town, Taylor, Mathiot, Prager, and Kirk.

Horse Shows

A number of the 305th Cavalry Officers are taking active part in the Horse Shows in Philadelphia and vicinity.

Captain William S. Brogden, Commanding Troop A," showed *Sunny Brook* in middle weight Hunter Class at Wissahickon Farms Horse Show September 25th and 26th, winning the second ribbon. Showed *Rabbit* in Green Hunter Class, winning third ribbon. At the Bryn Mawr Horse Show, September 29th to October 3rd, Captain Brogden also showed *Aurora* in saddle class. At the same show, Lieut. William McKinley Bray, Troop "E," showed his lightweight thoroughbred *Crowmey*, taking the 4th ribbon. Lieut. Bray will no doubt annex several ribbons in the coming shows with his mount.

At the recent Whiteland's Hunt meeting held at Whitford, Pa., the following officers took part in the following events:

In the class for Hunters, open to all, open jumping, over eight jumps, post rail, 1 brush, 4 feet high, Major John M. Thompson, Executive Officer, 305th Cavalry, took the blue ribbon on *Brownie* in a field of 32 entries.

In the class for Hunters (for Hunt members) over eight jumps 4 feet high, 1st Lieut. Max Livingston, Jr., acting adjutant of the regiment, took the third ribbon on the *Rabbit*. This in a field of 23.

In the Hunters in Pairs Class, 2nd Lieut. William McKinley Bray, 305th Cavalry, took second place with *Crowmey* and *Killarney*, in a field of 15.

In the Class for Hunt Teams, one horse following the other over 8 jumps 4 feet high, the 305th Cavalry team took second place. Team was composed of Miss Rebecca Stout, Major Thompson, and Major McCullough.

Owing to the bad footing during the running of the Masters Plate and the E. V. Dougherty Memorial Plate, a two mile event over post and rail and two and a half miles over a timber course, *Footprint*, ridden by Lieut. Max Livingston, and *Alert*, ridden by Major McCullough in the second, went down in the slippery going.

Hunts

Through the courtesy of 1st Lieut. Max Livingston, Jr., the Whiteland Hunts Club, Whitford, Pa., extended an invitation to members of the 305th Cavalry to hunt as guests of the Club.

During November several members of the regiment took advantage of this kind invitation and enjoyed a good run.

Major Horace B. Hare, Master of Hounds of the Radnor Hunt Club, Radnor, Pa., has kindly extended hunting privileges to members of the 305th Cavalry on Wednesdays and Fridays of each week during the hunting season.

New Books Reviewed

Leaves from a War Diary. By MAJOR GENERAL JAMES G. HARBORD. Illustrated. Dodd, Mead and Company, New York, (Price, \$5.00).

As our American leaders in the World War are one by one giving to the public their impressions of important personalities and events connected with that great struggle, one receives from each a glimpse of the War from a different viewpoint. And this work is no exception.

General Harbord makes no attempt to write a history of the A. E. F. and his book simply consists of his observations and impressions recorded from time to time without thought of future publication. The author on account of the nature of his various duties during the War is peculiarly fitted to present an entertaining and instructive picture of conditions and happenings during the period of our participation. As General Pershing's first Chief of Staff, later in command of the Marine Brigade, and of the famous Second Division, and then in command of the S. O. S. which he brought to a high state of efficiency, General Harbord had a close-up view of more varied phases of the War than perhaps any other man.

The narrative begins with the secret embarkation with General Pershing and other officers on the "Baltic" at New York. The experiences of the Commander-in-Chief and his staff in England, preliminary to going to France, and later in France where they were learning what the Allies as a result of their two years experience, had to teach, are described in a vivid and entertaining manner. The difficulties with which General Pershing had to contend in defective liaison with the War Department, the machinations of the Allies in their efforts to utilize the Americans as replacements for their own war-worn divisions, not to speak of personally conducted tours of various celebrities and commissions from the States, lead one to appreciate what a strong, forceful character he was, and the necessity for the type of a commander that he proved to be.

There are many things which make this book distinctive—the graphic account of the participation of the Second Division in the Soissons Offensive, the recital of the conditions existing in the S. O. S. and the prompt evolvment of order out of chaos, and lastly, the very frank characterization of various personages of greater or less prominence in civil and military life. It is evident that the author believes in "hewing to the line, let the chips fall where they may". At all events it certainly makes for very interesting reading, and no doubt will lead to considerable animated discussion. The book is certainly worth while.

Fifty Years of Sport. By LIEUT. COLONEL E. D. MILLER, C. B. E., D. S. O., D. L., J. P. Illustrated. E. P. Dutton and Company, New York. (Price \$6.00.)

Colonel Miller as a sportsman and a soldier is so well and favorably known on both sides of the Atlantic that the announcement of the publication of his memoirs at once aroused the interest of the polo playing, steeple chasing, hunting, shooting and pig sticking fraternity all over the world. And his book, as it appears, certainly justifies this interest.

Few, if any, sportsmen of our day have had the opportunities of Colonel Miller and the energy to engage in such diversified forms of sport. Polo players particularly will enjoy the portion of the work devoted to that game. As a polo player of international caliber and reputation, Colonel Miller has as full a knowledge and as varied an experience in the game as anyone living. His work, *Modern Polo*, is a classic on the subject.

His memoirs begin with hunting in Hertfordshire when he was of the tender age of seven years. It goes on to describe his career at a private school at Harrow and at Trinity College, Cambridge, and sport in Surrey, at Cambridge, and in Ireland. From here he went to India, and a vivid picture of his life here with the 17th Lancers,

in Egypt, and back to England. With pig sticking in Bebar, life on an indigo plantation, big game shooting in Nepal and the Kenya Colony, life for him cannot be said to have been monotonous.

He took part in the Boer War, and devotes two chapters to his experiences in it, enlivened with many good stories. Later he played polo in America, France, Belgium, and in Madrid, with the King of Spain. Then came the World War in which he served in various capacities.

Colonel Miller's activities in the sporting line naturally brought him in contact with many famous sportsmen such as Lords Beatty, Rawlinson, Shrewsbury, Harrington, the Duke of Westminster, etc., and the apt stories of these interesting characters make this book a general and entertaining record of soldiering, sport and many interesting people.

The last chapter is devoted to "Polo in America Today," and in it the author pays a fine tribute to our hospitality and our sportsmanship.

Colonel Miller's work will be a valuable addition to the library of anyone who is interested in outdoor life and sports.

Mount and Man. By LIEUT. COLONEL M. F. McTAGGART, D. S. O. With a Foreword by Viscount F. M. Allenby, G. C. B. Illustrated. Charles Scribner's Sons, New York. (Price \$5.00.)

This worthy successor to *Hints on Horsemanship* by the same author is an elaboration of the earlier work and in covering all essential features of good riding and horsemanship, discusses them from an interesting angle, namely, the relationship between the rider and his mount. With this in mind the author takes up in his opening chapter the subject of Balance and stresses throughout the book the importance of this requisite, and its related elements, length of stirrup leather and length of rein. The necessity for confidence and sympathy is also emphasized. As Colonel McTaggart puts it:—"If a rider has both balance (and thereby "hands") and confidence, he has gone far in the art of horsemanship. But to be actually first-class he must have the charming gift of sympathy."

A feature of the book is the avoidance of technicalities. It reads as smoothly and as entertainingly as a work of fiction and yet is cram full of excellent points on riding and horsemanship.

Colonel McTaggart's reputation as an accomplished horseman and horsemaster, and an expert in the theory and practice of equitation, makes this work worthy of perusal by all riders, skilled and unskilled.

Twenty-six full page illustrations by Lionel Edwards, in addition to thirty-two sketches, greatly enhance the value of the work.

The Saddle Horse. By W. G. LANGWORTHY TAYLOR. Illustrated. Henry Holt and Company, New York. (Price \$3.50.)

Many of the books on Riding and Horsemanship which have recently appeared have a character of their own, something in the mode of treatment of the subject, the basis of the treatise, the scope, etc., which sets them apart from other works on the same subjects. The book under consideration is one of these, and in the method of treatment and its scope, it is *different*. It fills a need in its field. It presents for the first time a treatise on the Saddle Horse that is written strictly for the average owner. The advice and hints for owners and riders are eminently practical.

The author, first of all, as he states, is "neither veterinarian nor riding master nor trainer", but is an amateur, and as such in some respects is better situated to give counsel to those who are also amateurs or not even yet such.

He divided his work into three main heads—Care of the Saddle Horse; Training; Riding and the completeness with which these subjects are discussed leaves little to be

said. The first covers in great detail all phases of stabling, feeding, health, grooming, exercise, lameness, shoeing, etc. Under "Training," taking as a preliminary the conformation of the horse, the author starts in with the young colt and carries him through all the steps of training to include high school work.

In this section he has taken for granted that the rider was skillful enough to train a saddle horse. In the next under "Riding", he gives directions for the teaching of the rider, and the methods described should prove most helpful to both beginners and those who have mastered the rudimentary principles.

The citations from Xenophon (435 B.C.) on the Cavalry General, on Horsemanship, and on Hunting, H. D. Dakyn's translation which introduce many of his sections, add to the interest of the book, the perusal of which is recommended to all saddle horse owners.

Makers of Naval Tradition. By CARROLL STORRS ALDEN, Ph. D., and RALPH EARLE, D. Sc. Ginn and Company, New York. (Price \$1.56.)

This book is well named for the naval heroes whose lives are briefly but entertainingly sketched had great influence on the formation of naval tradition in this country. From John Paul Jones of Revolutionary fame to Admirals George Dewey and William T. Sampson in the War with Spain, these outstanding figures made a permanent impress upon naval history and development.

Prepared primarily for the use of the cadets at the Naval Academy, the work is of much interest and value to the general reader who may enjoy the recital of the deeds of the representative personalities of our naval history.

The easy and flowing style of the authors provides a narrative which has none of the dryness of the ordinary historical work. As a text for supplementary historical reading for the student, or a profitable evening's entertainment for the general reader, this work is recommended.

Paris or the Future of War. By CAPTAIN B. H. LIDDELL HART. E. P. Dutton Company, New York. (Price \$1.00.)

In this little volume the author challenges modern military doctrine and attempts to show that the principle of making the enemy armed forces the objective in war is wrong under modern conditions. His argument is directed to the conclusion that the national objective should be the enemy's vitals; in one case essential mining areas, in another manufacturing districts, a third may be dependent on overseas trade coming into its ports. The method of evolving this doctrine is interesting. Further on we are shown the means to the objective.

The means to be employed in striking directly and immediately at the seat of opposing will and policy, are to be aircraft, tanks and gas. In the author's opinion these new weapons make the need for old style armies, composed of the orthodox arms, unnecessary. In addition to the cavalry he thus gives the death blow to infantry and field artillery. Heretofore the "arme blanche" has been the one to be placed on the scrap heap; we now have company in our proposed exile. However, the infantry is not entirely deleted, for we read, "A proportion of land marines might also be carried in this tank fleet to be used as 'landing parties' to clear fortifications and hill defenses under cover of fire from the tank fleet." Also there would be a chain of fortified bases garrisoned by heavy artillery and land marines—late infantry, established behind the tanks as they progressed. But the main dependence in future wars is to be aircraft utilizing bombs and gas to strike terror to the civil population and operate against a moral objective.

The book is interesting in that it presents how the new weapons will affect civilian peoples. It is doubtful if many converts, among those who make war a life study, will be added to the author's school of thought.

J. T. M.

Draft Transportation. By CAPTAIN CECIL M. BOYCOTT, 102d Cavalry, National Guard of New Jersey. Eighty-nine pages; 34 illustrations.

This pamphlet was written with a view to covering in one book the subject of elementary animal drawn transportation, with particular reference to the needs of service troops, companies, and batteries, and wagon companies of the National Guard.

The author divides his work into seven parts on the subject of Harness (including nomenclature, assembling and care); Harnessing and Hitching; The Escort Wagon; Teams and their Management in Draft; Regulations of the Escort Wagon Service; Animal Power; and Rail Movements. Each subject is clearly discussed in great detail.

This booklet should be very useful to members of all organizations handling animal drawn transportation.

Topographic Mapping. By MAJOR L. B. ROBERTS, Engineer Officers' Reserve Corps. The Society of American Military Engineers, Washington, D. C. (Price \$1.50.)

This book is quite different from anything heretofore printed, and fills a long-felt want of engineers. Without the technicalities or intricate formulas of the textbook, it discusses in exact detail how a topographical map is made. So clear is the explanation, that one without experience with the plane-table is able to make a reliable map.

The volume is pocket size with flexible cover, which adds to its value.

ANNUAL FOX CHASE, CZECHOSLOVAKIAN WAR COLLEGE

THE WAR COLLEGE of Czechoslovakia holds each year a Fox Chase in which all officers attending the college are required to participate. The affair is intended to ascertain the physical condition of students. The field in the last one held November 7, 1925, near Prague consisted of about eighty officers, the French Mission, the American and British Military Attaches and a large number of civilians, both men and women.

The run was over a very fine country; various obstacles were encountered such as especially prepared hurdles, ditches, etc.

On completion of the chase the Hunt went to the Steeple Chase course of the army located near Prague and there the racing took place, the riders using the same horses which they used in the hunt. The various riders were grouped into squads of about fourteen persons and were graded according to their equestrian ability.

All contestants rode at catch weights. The event was won by a Czech civilian, mounted on a Hungarian Thoroughbred, while General Mittelhauser, the French Chief of Staff in Czechoslovakia, who is fifty-eight years of age came in second. He was mounted on a very fine French Thoroughbred.

After the ride an open air lunch was served. All the prominent Government officials were present, including President Masaryk, who though seventy-six years of age, rides daily.

It is believed that an event at Washington similar to this would attract horsemen and horsewomen in and around Washington, and in addition to being of physical benefit to the officers, would serve to popularize the Army. The views on this subject of the students at the War College have not been obtained.

Foreign Military Journals

The Cavalry Journal (Great Britain) October, 1925.

In this number appears the final installment of the series by Colonel J. F. C. Fuller, D. S. O., on *The Decisive Battles of Alexander the Great*. The battle of Hydaspes in which Alexander decisively defeated and dispersed the army of Porus, the Indian Monarch, was combined with a skilful river crossing made in the face of the enemy. Alexander's army was on the right bank of the Hydaspes and on the left bank that of Porus consisting of 50,000 infantry, 3,000 cavalry, 1,000 chariots and 130 elephants.

Alexander by a series of feints and demonstrations along the banks of the river fooled Porus so many times that the latter decided that no crossing was really intended, and consequently became careless.

On the night Alexander finally decided to make the crossing, he left Craterus with the greater part of his army and 5,000 friendly Indians to openly make preparations to cross in front of his camp, while he took 8,000 horse and 6,000 foot to a point eighteen miles up the river where a point covered with trees projected out into the river opposite a wooded island.

The crossing was successful but when Porus heard of it he sent but 2,000 men to investigate. These were defeated and Alexander pushed on toward Porus' main body. Porus, instead of launching an immediate attack on Alexander's weary troops, elected to stand on the defensive, thus giving Alexander time to rest his men and make his dispositions for attack.

Alexander's horses were afraid of the elephants which covered Porus' front. He therefore made his attack on the Indian left flank (next to the river). This also facilitated the crossing by Craterus and the Greek main body. He maneuvered so as to draw the cavalry of Porus from the right to the left flank, and at the proper moment a Greek Cavalry force swung around the Indian right and rear. Porus lost 20,000 infantry and 3,000 cavalry killed, and Alexander 301.

In *Cavalry in Bush Warfare*, Captain W. K. Fraser-Tyler, M. C., late 12th Cavalry, I. A., gives an interesting description of the operations of a regiment of Indian Cavalry in the campaign against von Lettow in East Africa from September, 1917, to January, 1918.

Journal of the Royal United Service Institution (Great Britain) November, 1925.

Captain B. H. Liddell Hart, the protagonist of mechanized warfare has an article in this number on the *Army Manoeuvres, 1925*. While he holds that valuable lessons may have been learned, disappointment at the blunders made in preparation for and execution of the maneuvers, is evident. Possibly they were too cut and dried, but at all events, from Captain Hart's account there were several amazing examples of how not to do it. To quote him:

"Now for the salient fact of the second day. The Wessex force fell back without being followed; its withdrawal was apparently unknown to its enemy until there was a gap of several miles between the rival forces. Contact, accordingly, was completely lost. That afternoon part of the Mercian 4th Division attacked—and its blow landed in the air. To spectators there was inevitably a humorous element in the spectacle of this simultaneous attack and withdrawal with a No Man's Land of several miles between. Next morning a further and bigger attack was staged, and again it hit the air, for the Wessex troops had leisurely marched back a few more miles."

He makes some interesting deductions. First, that modern war conditions have made a withdrawal in face of the enemy far simpler and less hazardous than ever before; second, that the progress of air reconnaissance has not modified the cardinal tac-

tical principle of war—that, in order to strike the enemy decisively, it is required to fix or pin him down; third, that we are far too much absorbed with the idea of positions, both of taking them and occupying them.

In the *Psychology of Napoleon*, Brigadier-General C. N. Watts discusses the reasons underlying the failures of Napoleon in the latter part of his career, and particularly in the campaign of Waterloo. The gradual changes in his mentality from the time of his first campaign in Italy to the final catastrophe at Waterloo, are logically discussed.

Other articles of general interest are: *Capacity Tests and the Training of the Fighting Man*, by Captain A. L. Pemberton, M.C., R.A.; *Economic Intelligence*, by "Roussau"; *Experiences in the Caucasus and North Persia, 1914-1918*, by Brigadier-General F. G. Marsh, C.M.G., D.S.O.; and the *Spanish Foreign Legion*, by Lieutenant G. H. J. Evans, R.N.

Journal of the United Service Institution of India October, 1925.

A very timely article in view of the Air controversy in our own service is *The Royal Air Force and Army Co-operation*, by Major R. G. Cherry, M.C., R.A. His solution is to have an Army Branch of the Royal Air Force, that is, to man the existing Army Co-operation Squadrons with army pilots—chiefly gunners, or as an alternative, the reorganization of Army Co-operation Squadrons to the artillery of the divisions and corps, for which the squadrons are earmarked, the gunners to have a proportion of their officers trained as pilots.

Other articles are *The Development of Co-operation between Air Craft and Tanks*, by Squadron Leader E. J. Hodsoll, R.A.F.; *The Employment of Machine Guns in the Canadian Corps, 1914 to 1918*, by Captain J. K. Lawson; *Weather and War*, by Captain R. T. Wilkinson, A.B.E.; *The Affair at Onatia on the Sinai Front, 1916*, by Major General Sir George F. Macmunn, K.C.B., K.C.S.I., D.S.C.

Reviews by Major Harold Thompson, Cavalry

Memorial de Caballeria (Spanish) August, 1925.

In an article, entitled "Some Points of View relative to Horse-Breeding," the Marquis de Negion, well-known breeder and an authority, strongly supports the articles of Colonel Fermoso, G. S. (Cavalry), on the best type of horse for Spanish breeders. If anything he is far more severe in his strictures concerning the use of the thoroughbred for breeding purposes in the Andalusian country.

While full tribute is paid to the thoroughbred horse, to his breeding, accomplishments particularly in the racing field, and to the success of the English breeders, the writer calls this type, an artificial product, a "luxury" creation. Statistics and data continually appear. For example, and here he quotes Stavens, "In all later campaigns, the English-bred horses were substituted by Arabs (Sudan campaign) with a mortality of twelve per cent; the French in their campaigns in Africa have exclusively used Syrian and Berber horses, and again in India, the British have employed Barbs. This to me is an eloquent proof."

The type of military horse is best studied on maneuver fields and in actual campaign statistics. These can be well studied in the data afforded by the campaigns in the Crimea, in the dash for Khartoum, in the Transvaal and in Algeria, where thoroughbreds and their derivatives were largely used with great mortality. In a word, the Marquis believes that submitting the thoroughbred to the rigors of campaign, which are violently opposed to the nature of its being and origin is nothing less than a calamity. We must understand, of course, that he has constantly in mind the type and breed of service mount for the Spanish Cavalryman and its probable place of employment.

That the author of the article is strongly in favor of the system of breeding as carried on at the Yegirada Militar (both at Jerez and at Mingahores) is evident. In fact, we find this positive statement made, "The best saddle horse which can be recommended for our Remount stations is the native Spanish stallion, and its various crossings with the Arab, whatever its grade of blood."

Memorial de Caballeria (Spanish) September, 1925.

Colonel Fermoso, executive of the Military Remount Service (branch of the Cavalry Arm), begins the article "Qualities that the Cavalry Mount and the Cavalry Machine Gun Pack Horse should possess" in this issue.

The Colonel believes that his subject is a difficult one, particularly from the Spanish viewpoint, because of the fact that certain characteristics such as speed at the different gaits, physical resistance, robustness, height, weight in relation to the load to be borne and temperament are still far from the ideal. Here the breeder is particularly affected because these qualities, recognized by all as most important, are viewed from different points of view.

Referring again to the subject matter, the author claims that no nation, of first-class military importance, has reached a satisfactory status in respect to the raising of strictly Cavalry mounts. Certain national types are then discussed, briefly but in an entertaining way, the Hungarians, the German Trakehners and the French half-breeds of the Midi all being contrasted. Boiled down, these paragraphs result in declaring that these nations, generally, have tried to resolve the question by employing native mares and breeding them to the English thoroughbred, the Arab or the Anglo-Arab, in order to take advantage of their well-known characteristics.

We note that the writer's personal opinion, for the present at least, is that the German Trakehner, based on crossing Lithuanian mares (with part native and Arab blood) with half-bred English stallions, with its speed and weight is the best type of Cavalry horse existent.

The Hungarians come in for rather extended comments, as the lot of four hundred, purchased two years ago by the Remount Service, have been particularly satisfying. Digressing, the reviewer desires to add a word to this. As the Summer of 1923 saw him serving with the Cavalry Instruction Groupment (King's Hussars, at Carabanchel), in one of whose squadrons, one-half of the mounts were of Hungarian breed (Arab and thoroughbred) and whose performances were most creditable, this too, shortly after the return from a hard campaign in Morocco. The officers were very enthusiastic over the animals and were praying for more. Colonel Fermoso does not believe it is the ideal horse for the Cavalry, although paying it high tribute.

Speaking of the Arab, and we must remember that the Remount Service has two splendidly equipped stations at Jerez and at Cordoba, and functioning well at the present time, the author believes this type ideal, except for the height and weight. The latter is important from the Spanish viewpoint with their Dragoons, Chasseurs and Hussar (and Lancer) types, and the resulting weight carried. In the Chasseurs, the normal weight of rider is one hundred and fifty-two pounds, and with the equipment bringing this up to two hundred and fifty pounds, it can be seen how difficult it will be to adjust this dead weight so called to the weight of the normal pure bred Arab of about seven hundred and eighty pounds.

The remarks relative to the thoroughbred by the same writer have already been touched upon in previous reviews so no mention of them is made, except to reiterate his admiration for its spirit and its speed. For the Cavalryman in ranks it will never do, and only for the officer in garrison, not for the field.

That Spain is in less favorable condition for horse breeding than other countries is one of the contentions of the author. This due to the scanty pasturage in certain large regions, and to a certain lack of calcium carbonate and phosphoric acid in stated proportions. From further reading it is judged that the Colonel is not altogether satisfied with this latter condition at the Remount stations mentioned, a condition that another authority, Vasquez, would probably deny. As both are Cavalrymen and in the Remount Service, we may hear more later.

Taking then the situation as it exists, there must be a radical transformation in the production, by breeding, of the Spanish Cavalry mount. That the Arab is the most allied by nature to the indigeneous mare is indisputable, and if this animal or its half-bred product did not have to carry more than two hundred and fifteen pounds (rider and equipment), well and good. A second crossing along the same lines would not better the situation. For emphasis, the writer adds that he has never seen in the many horse races witnessed, any Arab-Spanish animal that shone by its speed. And for the military service, weight-carrying and speed are both essential.

It is proposed then to utilize native mares between 890 pounds and 970 pounds, with heights from 1.52 to 1.65 meters, with an index compact of around seven; cross these with the native Arab, from 880 to 970 pounds, standing from 1.54 to 1.6 meters, and an index compact of 7.4 or more, qualities which can be obtained from the animals now at the Arab Remount Station of Jerez.

Then cross the Arab-Spanish mares thus obtained with the English thoroughbred of from 990 to 1050 pounds, with a height of from 1.55 to 1.65 meters, index compact around eight. This will result in arresting the tendency to a diminution in height and in weight and give the succeeding breeds greater speed, mass and energy, given other proper conditions of special feeding and care in the early years of the colts and fillies.

Memorial de Caballeria (Spanish) October, 1925.

"The Cavalry Mount and the Cavalry Machine Gun Pack Horse, their qualities," by Colonel Feroso, Spanish Cavalry, is concluded in this article.

Reference to the Remount Station at Jerez, for Arab mares and stallions, was made in the previous number. This pertained to the belief that the soil there did not possess the requisite amount of calcium carbonate and phosphate necessary for the osseous structure of the growing colts. There seems to be some doubt as to this fact, as Colonel Jose Vazquez, Director of the Yeguada Militar at Cordoba, and a foremost authority, has published his brochure on the best breeds of horse for Andalusia, in it giving a wealth of detail as to the soil conditions at Jerez, as well as to climate and flora. As we understand Colonel Feroso's idea, the increase in weight and height of the Arab there bred, without a loss in speed, we can best accept his statements without bothering about the technical subjects involving the soil.

What the writer has to say on the Cavalry pack, is weight, that of the rider, what the Cavalry horse has to do in campaign, are interesting to all Cavalrymen, but are well known subjects and need no explanation, except to note that he believes that the proportion between the live weight and that carried should be about four to one. Lessen this and the increased gait becomes difficult if not impossible. This appears to illustrate the contention that the Cavalry mount desired should weigh between 1010 pounds and 1080 pounds, and a height of about 1.7 meters. The difficulties of encountering such animals in Spain, is quite evident.

From the table furnished, compared with similar ones taken from the French, English, Italian, Austrian and Russian services, it is evident that the Spanish Cavalry horse is on a lighter diet than the others, the writer proposing an immediate change to twelve pounds of oats and nineteen pounds of oat straw for peace time, and fourteen of each in campaign.

While the remarks about the Cavalry machine gun pack horse are brief they appear to be quite decided in tone, as though the writer were altogether convinced

of their correctness. We quote—"a horse of from 900 to 1000 pounds and of from 1.56 to 1.6 meters responds perfectly to the necessities of this service, and coupled with the conditions relative to conformation, hardihood and a galloper, we can be content." Mestizos of Breton or Percheron out of Spanish mares seem to have given excellent results up to the present.

Cavaleristisch Tijdschrift (Netherlands) April, 1925

A Patrol, by Ridder von Vessel, formerly First Lieutenant, Dragoon Regiment No. 15. During the retreat of the Austro-Hungarian armies from the River San in the fall of 1914, the writer was ordered to make a reconnaissance with a party of 10 men in the direction of Tarnow. He started from Szerzyny on the afternoon of November 11. No Russians were seen on the first day.

Early the next morning the patrol started off again and reached the heights overlooking Tarnow. The town was occupied by cavalry, at least a division strong. They had not occupied the heights around the town, and the patrol was able to observe them for some time. A report was sent back to the Austrian divisional commander.

A Russian detachment of some 200 men rode out of Tarnow toward Tuchow and returned late in the afternoon. The Austrian patrol observed their movements and sent another report to its division.

A corporal belonging to the patrol was sent into Tarnow, disguised as a peasant. The patrol spent the night in a farmhouse. All the members of the family were kept in one room, the Lieutenant sleeping just outside the door. The next morning, just as the patrol was preparing to return to the division, the corporal returned from Tarnow. He had spent two hours in the town without being molested and had found a number of batteries there.

At 10 A. M. another Russian squadron left for Tuchow and the thunder of cannon was heard to the west of Tarnow. As nothing had been heard from the division, the patrol went back to the village of Ryglie, where a detachment of 30 Austrian cavalrymen was found.

Late in the afternoon the Russians approached the village from two directions. The patrol dismounted and fired into one column as it was passing through a deep cut, causing great confusion. The Russians approaching the village from the other direction in open formation were fired upon by the rest of the Austrians and compelled to slacken speed. This gave the Austrians time to mount and gallop away. The Austrians had better horses than the Russians, and got away from the latter after some hard riding. Then they turned off the road into a forest.

They had hardly gotten under cover when a third Russian column rode past, headed toward the village. If the Austrians had waited there a few minutes longer, they would have been surrounded. This party did not discover the Austrians in hiding, and the latter were able to make their way back to Jodlowa, where a guide was found to take them to the division.

The article is accompanied by two sketches.

Straw or Moss as Bedding for Horses? by J. M. Hoogland, 2nd Class Veterinarian. In the opinion of the writer, a bed of moss litter 15 to 20 cm. thick is far preferable to straw. Even when the bedding is changed frequently, foul odors may be produced by the rotting of the straw and the horses may get straw colic from nibbling at the straw. The writer has found that horses bedded on straw are more subject to hoof diseases than those standing on moss. According to statistics collected by the German army, the cases of hoof diseases in horses standing on straw is about 30% higher than when moss is used. Examination has shown that where straw bedding is used, the temperature of the stall is about 3 degrees higher than when moss is used. The air in the stable is better when the bedding is of moss, for the latter absorbs most of the ammonia, carbonic acid and water vapor.

Regimental Notes

SECOND CAVALRY—Fort Riley, Kansas Colonel George Williams, Commanding

On September 13th Troop B which had been at Fort Leavenworth on duty with the Citizens Military Training Camp since July 20th, rejoined the Regiment by marching.

From September 16th to 23rd the regiment with Company A, Ninth Engineers and Machine Gun Troop No. 1 attached, participated in a practice march and field exercise. Daily problems were solved and the entire march was conducted under war conditions. Camps were made at White City, Council Grove, Alta Vista, Dwight, Alma, Wamego and Manhattan. All members of the regiment derived a great deal of benefit and pleasure from the trip.

On September 28th the Second Cavalry, with Company A, 9th Engineers, Machine Gun Troop No. 1, and the Sixteenth Observation Squadron attached, was inspected tactically by the Commandant. The exercises consisted of an attack on an enemy position, establishing an outpost and a night withdrawal.

On October fifth, Troop G left the post by marching for Herrington, Kansas where it put on an exhibition for a civic celebration. It returned on the tenth.

On October sixth, Troop E went to Burlington, Kansas by rail and put on an exhibition at the Coffey County Fair. After a very enjoyable stay the troop returned to the post on the tenth.

On October 26th Troop A and Band went to Abilene, Kansas and put on an exhibition at the Fall Live Stock Show. It returned on October 30th.

On November ninth, Troop F and Band left for Herrington, Kansas and Troop B left for Waukeaney, Kansas to participate in the Armistice Day celebrations held under the auspices of the American Legion at those places. Both organizations were enthusiastically received and their exhibitions were greatly appreciated.

On November 11, 1925 two teams from Headquarters Troop competed in a Pony Express race from Abilene to Fort Riley, Kansas. The winning team made the distance of 26.8 miles in the remarkable time of 1 hour and eleven minutes and fifty-five seconds.

On November 17, 1925 a night ride for the Scouts Trophy, a troop cup, was staged by Headquarters Troop. The distance covered was 46 miles over roads in vicinity of the Reservation. Twenty-four contestants took part. The ride was won by Sergeant Irely who covered the distance in 3 hours 59 minutes elapsed time, or 3 hours riding time. Sergeant Worley took second place with Corporal Boggs third and Private Steeb fourth. Nineteen contestants made all stations and all horses finished ride without injury.

The Fort Riley Football League was won by Troop F, which will receive the handsome cup presented by Ripley & Co. of Leavenworth, Kansas. Troop F defeated all troops in the league, which included Company A, 9th Engineers (Mounted), Troop G and Headquarters Troop. All games were close and enjoyed by large crowds; the final game between F and Headquarters Troops being an exceptionally close, fast and exciting game, and was won in the final minutes of play when F Troop opened up an aerial attack that gained forty yards and the winning touchdown. Fleek and Belmont starred for F Troop while Wood and Garber featured for Headquarters.

THIRD CAVALRY (Less 1st Squadron)—Fort Myer, Virginia

Colonel Hamilton S. Hawkins, Commanding

The Second Squadron, commanded by Major Adna R. Chaffee, returned to the post on August 1st, from Camp Meade, Md.

The Third Cavalry team won the low goal tournament in the War Departments

REGIMENTAL NOTES

annual Polo tournament. Major Chaffee, Captain Irving and Lieutenants Feagin, Hine, Byers, Elms and George made up the squad.

The Second Squadron, plus Headquarters and Service Troops left the post on August 2d, for the annual target practice and excellent results were accomplished, the command averaged 87 per cent.

Captain John A. Weeks, has joined the regiment after having spent nineteen months in Walter Reed General Hospital from injuries received while at the Cavalry School.

The picture entitled The Life O' Riley, taken at the Cavalry School was shown to the command at the Service Club on November 7th. In addition Johnny Hines the popular movie actor was present and added to the evening's entertainment by showing his favorite picture "The Cracker-Jack". Mr. Hines also made a short speech to the men.

A Horseshow team composed of the following officers left on November the 20th. for New York: Captains Padgett, Regnier and Allen, the following horses will be exhibited: Tango-Dance, Fire Jump, Groucho, Flash, Saplin, and Morgan. The team is under the command of Captain Vernon L. Padgett.

The Officers of the regiment are attending a school of equitation under the instruction of Colonel Hawkins, and the class is greatly enjoyed by all.

The Troops are practicing for the Friday afternoon riding hall drills. These drills are very popular among the civilians of Washington and the nearby Virginia towns.

Brigadier General S. D. Rockenbach made his annual tactical inspection of the Troops on November 12th.

The Squadron turned out on November 1st for the dedication and unveiling of the statue of General San Martin.

Both officers and men are justly proud of the showing made by the Team sent to compete in the 1925 Endurance Ride, held at Brandon, Vermont. The following horses were entered: Peggy, Babe, Lady Luck, Lillian Russell, Sugar Plum. The last two mentioned are private mounts owned by Captain M. S. Daniels and Captain J. H. Irving, respectively. The order in which they finished with riders was as follows: First, Peggy, ridden by Corporal Anthony Quatickesy; Third, Lillian Russell, ridden by Private S. J. Matheson, Lady Luck and Babe, ridden by Sergeants Rathburn and Hall, also finished the course in very good shape; Sugar Plum, ridden by Sergeant Cook, was forced out of the ride at the end of the third day on account of a case of scratches. Much credit for the excellent showing made by the team goes to Lieutenant Clovis E. Byers, Third Cavalry, as it was under his able leadership and the excellent attention and untiring efforts of the enlisted men that the team made such a creditable showing.

Armistice Day was observed by the troops. Memorial exercises were held at the Service Club for those who made the supreme sacrifice in the World War.

Major Chaffee, has the officers working new polo prospects daily in the riding hall. Judging from the new ponies and interest shown by the officers one of the fastest teams in the history of the regiment should take the field next spring.

The Officers and Ladies of the post entertained at the first hop of the season on November 24th. The affair was largely attended by Army, Navy and Marine Officers stationed in and near Washington.

FIRST SQUADRON, THIRD CAVALRY—Fort Ethan Allen, Vermont

Lieutenant Colonel F. D. Griffith, Jr., Commanding

On September 1st Troop "B," Captain Alfred J. deLorimier, Commanding, left for Middlebury, Vermont, arriving there the following day. While at Middlebury,

Troop "B", gave several exhibition drills during the Middlebury Fair. The Troop returned to the post on September 5th.

On September 5th, Troop "C," Captain Paul J. Matte, Commanding, went to Pottsville, Pa., by rail, to take part in the Schuylkill County Fair. Exhibition drills and fancy riding were given twice a day during the five days of the fair. The troop was enthusiastically received, and everything was done to make its stay a pleasant one. Quoting Mr. William Buckley, President of the Fair Association in the *Pottsville Journal*. "It was a splendid attraction, and the conduct of the boys was the finest, not a single complaint being made against any of them. From the officers down, they were all gentlemen—an honor to the uniform they wear. We certainly would be glad to have them again some day."

On September 10th, Troop "A," First Lieutenant Henry M. Alexander, Commanding, marched to Vergennes, Vermont, to participate in the unveiling ceremonies of the MacDonough Memorial Monument erected in the city park by the War Department to commemorate the building of the fleet at Vergennes, with which Commodore Thomas MacDonough won the famous naval battle at Plattsburgh, N. Y. The troop returned to the post on September 12th.

On September 8th and 9th, Colonel George D. Moore, I. G. D. Corps Area Inspector, made the annual inspection of the squadron. The annual tactical inspection was held on September 29th and 30th.

The saber qualification course was completed on November 1st.

On November 11th, the regimental saber competition was held. The competition was won by Troop "B," with a score of 2263.0. The scores of Troops C and A, were 2222.0 and 2114.5, respectively. Each troop was represented by a platoon consisting of one officer, five non-commissioned officers and twenty-two privates and privates first class; time one minute and twenty seconds.

Supplementary rifle practice, pistol mounted and pistol dismounted, were all completed during the month of November.

FOURTH CAVALRY (Less 1st Squadron)—Fort D. A. Russell, Wyo.

Colonel Osmun Latrobe, Commanding

The Regiment hiked from Fort Russell to Douglas, Wyoming, leaving Fort Russell September 9th and returning September 24th. The distance covered was about 300 miles and the Regiment stood the hike in fine shape.

While at Douglas the Regiment put on exhibitions in drills. Troop "F," under Lieutenant Hammond, put on a musical drill, while Troop "G," under Captain Godbold, put on a cavalry drill. Troop "E" under Captain Gibbon, put on an exhibition in Roman Racing and Rescue Racing. These exhibitions went off in fine shape and were greatly appreciated by every one present. The radio was set up and exhibited by Headquarters Troop under Lieutenant Cox. Civilians displayed keen interest in our Army "wireless."

We have recently received a number of recruits who are a very good type of men. They all seem to have caught the 4th Cavalry spirit and are making rapid progress in their training under Lieutenant Hodes.

We are now all hard at it on our intensive winter training and have our time well divided between our schools, drills and riding.

Recently we received two car loads of remounts which surpass in quality by far any we had received prior to that time. They are all undergoing a careful course in training and we expect a mighty fine lot of horses turned to troops after this training.

Our polo team this summer made a good showing under the leadership of Lieutenant Hodes. We have mostly young players with only one years experience, but they have developed very well during the past polo season and by next season expect to make a few killings. We played at Fort Riley, Fort Russell and Fort Meade, South Dakota. At Russell we got into the semi-finals and at Meade won the runner-up cup.

The team at the Fort Riley Tournament consisted of Lieutenant Hodes, No. 1; Captain Ball, No. 2; Lieutenant Hammond, No. 4; Captain Dobyns, No. 3; Captain Hayden, substitute.

At Fort Russell Tournament: Lieutenant Hodes, No. 1; Captain Fiske, No. 2; Captain Dobyns, No. 3; Lieutenant Hammond, No. 4; Lieutenant Neal, substitute.

At Fort Meade Tournament: Lieutenant Neal, No. 1; Captain Dobyns, No. 2; Lieutenant Hammond, No. 3; Captain Cannon, No. 4.

We were greatly handicapped by having aged horses, but with the "blood" we are getting in our remounts, we don't expect to have to worry about horse flesh next year. Our remount prospects are being trained every day in the riding hall by players, and by spring we are expecting some good ones.

During the fair at Douglas, our polo players put on exhibition games daily. Wyoming is showing a great interest in the game.

FIRST SQUADRON, FOURTH CAVALRY—Fort Meade, S. D.

Lieutenant Colonel R. W. Walker, 4th Cav., Commanding

On September 20, 1925 the squadron (less Troop A) marched to Rapid City, South Dakota, and entrained there for Chamberlain, South Dakota, where it participated in the opening of the New Bridge across the Missouri River. Each day of the celebration, the squadron, equipped with the old blue uniform, and aided by about 1000 Indians, staged "Custer's Last Fight." After the celebration the squadron returned by rail to Rapid City, South Dakota, and from there to Fort Meade by marching. In addition to the recreation afforded by this celebration, the experience gained in entraining troops was valuable training. Several commendatory letters from the citizens of Chamberlain assured us that we played a material part in the success of their celebration and congratulated the Commanding Officer on the appearance and conduct of the troops.

After the return from Chamberlain the troops turned to the much delayed completion of the target practice. About the middle of November, practice with all arms, including Supplementary Rifle Practice, was completed, with the following results:

Rifle practice (Regular season).....	Squadron percentage qualified.....	99.31%
Automatic Rifle, practice.....	Squadron percentage qualified.....	100 %
Pistol practice, dismounted.....	Squadron percentage qualified.....	91.2 %
Pistol practice, mounted.....	Squadron percentage qualified.....	98.3 %
Saber practice.....	Squadron percentage qualified.....	79.6 %
Rifle practice (Supplementary).....	Squadron percentage qualified.....	83.9 %

On Thanksgiving Day the squadron football team, under the efficient management of 1st Lt. John E. Gregg, the Captain and Coach, met and defeated Spearfish Normal College, who, prior to their defeat at the hands of the squadron, held the championship of the Black Hills, by a score of 7-0.

A very successful polo tournament was held during the period Sept. 5-12, 1925 in connection with the Meade County Fair, at Sturgis, South Dakota.

The following teams participated:

2nd Squadron, 4th Cavalry—Fort D. A. Russell, Wyoming;

Remount Station—Fort Robinson, Nebraska;

147th Field Artillery (N. G.)—Pierre, South Dakota;

1st Squadron, 4th Cavalry—Fort Meade, South Dakota.

Each team played every other team, and the games were hotly contested. Sterling Silver Goblets were awarded to the winners of first and second places; the Fort Meade team winning first place and the Fort D. A. Russell team the second.

At the present time our team is contemplating a trip to Fort Sam Houston, Texas, where it will participate in the Mid-Winter Tournament, commencing January 17, 1926.

FIFTH CAVALRY—Fort Clark, Texas

Colonel W. B. Scales, Commanding

Captain Richard L. Creed, Lieutenant Frank L. Carr, Frank G. Fraser, and Conrad

S. Babcock, Jr., have joined the regiment since our last notes.

Captain Creed comes to us from the Cavalry School and is on the staff as R-3.

Lieutenant Carr comes to us from the French Cavalry School at Saumur, France, and has already taken the lead in equitation.

Lieutenants Fraser and Babcock are graduates of the 1925 class West Point.

The years training was rounded to a close during the month of September and the first half of October. The Regiment participated in the fall maneuvers of the 1st Cavalry Brigade and the strenuous activity of the last ten days in October proved the excellent condition of the command as a whole. The annual inspection by the Corps Area Commander and the Division Commander was made on October 26, 27, 28 and 29th, with Generals Hinds and Castner present.

The 1926 training year is in full swing with this month's activities confined to individual training and schools with supplementary target season, Rifle and Pistol Practice.

The regiment excelled on points at the horse show held by the Brigade on October 31st, winning over the 1st Cavalry by several points.

Our polo string has rounded into shape and is now at Fort Bliss with the first team to participate in the Division Tournament.

We are informed that sufficient recruits are on the way to fill existing vacancies in the regiment and may be expected the first week in December.

SIXTH CAVALRY—Fort Oglethorpe, Ga. Colonel George C. Barnhardt, Commanding

During the latter part of September and the early part of October many new officers joined the regiment. Shortly after their arrival, Captain Otis Porter and 1st Lieutenant Charles M. Hurt were assigned to Troop G, Captain Ernest N. Harmon was appointed Plans and Training Officer, and Captain Herbert A. Myers, was assigned to Troop F. The remaining officers who have been assigned to the regiment but who have not yet reported are Captains Manley F. Meador, and Clarence H. Murphy, and 1st Lieutenant Hubert T. Sutton.

On October 6th, Troop A, Captain Olin C. Newell, Commanding, left the post to participate in exercises held in connection with the Atlanta Horse Show. Among the several exhibitors from the Post also making the trip were Major Edwin N. Hardy, and First Lieutenants Francis P. Tompkins, Frank O. Dewey, and Second Lieutenant Donald A. Beck. In the open jumping class, one of the feature events of the show, Lieutenant Beck won first honors, with Lieutenant Dewey a close second. In the polo pony class Lieutenant Tompkins won fourth place on "Kingfisher." Each evening of the horse show, Troop A, gave an exhibition drill which won unstinted praise and added greatly to the success of the occasion, besides winning much favorable comment for the regiment.

All members of Troop F joined in tendering a farewell banquet on the night of October 22d in honor of First Sergeant Matthew A. Briscoe, who was retired the following day after thirty years' service. Among the guests of the occasion were Colonel George C. Barnhardt, the regimental commander; Major Edgar W. Taulbee, 2d Squadron Commander; Captain Wharton G. Ingram, Post Adjutant, and Captains Ernest N. Harmon and Frank C. DeLangton. Following the dinner, appropriate speeches were made, after which Captain Herbert A. Myers, Troop Commander, in behalf of the members of Troop F, presented First Sergeant Briscoe a handsome gold watch.

The annual Chattanooga-Sixth Cavalry Horse Show, an account of which appears elsewhere, was held at Fort Oglethorpe on November 13th and 14th and proved to be the crowning event of the year. After much careful preparation under the efficient direction of Major Edgar W. Taulbee, a most elaborate program was prepared, which in itself, was most worthy of praise, and included a total value in prizes of more than \$3,000.

Many of the above were donated by individuals and some by the principal business houses of Chattanooga, so that much interest and enthusiasm was manifested concerning the results.

Among the many visitors who were at the post during the Horse Show were Major General Johnson Hagood, the Corps Area Commander; Colonel and Mrs. Thomas W., and Miss Marion Darrah, who were the guests of Colonel and Mrs. George C. Barnhardt; Lieutenant-Colonel and Mrs. John A. Barry, guests of Major Edgar W. Taulbee; Major Archibald T. Colley, guest of Captain and Mrs. Milton H. Patton; Captain and Mrs. George D. Wiltshire, guests of Major and Mrs. Edwin N. Hardy; Lieutenant and Mrs. Edward H. deSaussure, guests of Colonel and Mrs. Richard H. Kimball of Chattanooga; Mrs. William W. West of Fort Sheridan, Illinois, who was the guest of Lieutenant and Mrs. T. Q. Donaldson, Jr.

The week following the Horse Show, the regiment had its annual tactical inspection by Major Archibald T. Colley, General Staff Corps, representing the Corps Area Commander. A series of tactical exercises were solved, after which most favorable comment was made concerning their execution.

SEVENTH CAVALRY—Fort Bliss, Texas Colonel Fitzhugh Lee, Commanding

The Regiment pursued the usual schedule of training during the quarter. In September combat firing problems were conducted in which actual conditions were simulated as nearly as possible. As carried on the instruction proved interesting and beneficial. On October 21-22 the Regiment with the troops of the garrison participated in a maneuver conducted for the tactical inspection by Major Gen. Ernest Hinds, Commanding the 8th Corps Area. The maneuver involved an attack at dawn and the establishment of a bridge-head across the Rio Grande river at Courchesne bridge, northwest of El Paso. During November the Regiment held supplementary rifle practice and supplementary pistol practice, the latter ending about December 1st.

During the quarter the "Garry-Owen" Band had several pleasant tours. In August and October the band played at a fair in Roswell, New Mexico and gave two complimentary concerts at Tularosa and at Carrizozo, New Mexico, and gave several concerts at the New Mexico Chambers of Commerce Convention at Ruidoso, New Mexico. In November the band accompanied the business men of El Paso on a goodwill trade excursion to Chihuahua, Mexico, where a festival was in progress. The band participated in the El Paso Day ceremonies and received many compliments for their renditions. In recognition of their services, and as a token of appreciation, the Chambers of Commerce of Juarez, Mexico, and of El Paso, Texas, presented the band with a handsome silver loving cup. The cup was presented by Mr. Ruiz, Mexican Consul General, El Paso, and President Charles Davis, El Paso Chamber of Commerce. The cup was appropriately received by Colonel Lee.

On November 21 and 22 the Rough Riding Squad of the Regiment took part in the Military Circus held in El Paso to raise funds for the Community Chest. The Squad displayed exceptional and spectacular horsemanship which thrilled the spectators. One feature was a galloping pyramid of fifteen men on four horses, constituting, perhaps, a record for this type of stunt.

Two officers of the Regiment, Captain Delmore S. Wood and Lieutenant Carlston Burgess, were members of the crack Fort Bliss Polo Team which earned a national reputation in the recent Polo Tournament at Philadelphia, Pa. The Team scored a win over all contenders of the 12-goal class: Fort Leavenworth, Fort Oglethorpe (Army teams), Rockaway, Bryn Mawr, Midwick, Chagrin Valley and Point Judith (civilian teams). Captain Wood did exceptionally fine playing and shared the stellar role with Major H. D. Chamberlain, 8th Cavalry, captain of the Fort Bliss Team. The Regiment will have both a Junior and a Senior team to compete in the First Cavalry Division Polo Tournament to be held at Fort Bliss, December 3-10.

A few changes in personnel occurred during the quarter. Major A. M. Milton and

Second Lieutenants Thomas L. Harrold and William A. Nutter joined and the Regiment lost Lieutenant-Colonel Victor S. Foster, Lieutenant-Colonel R. B. Going, Major Vaughn W. Cooper, and Captain Randolph Russell. A few recruits were received. Another loss of a good soldier was sustained in the retirement of First Sergeant Aaron Haverstick, Troop E, who has served 13 years in the Seventh Cavalry. Sergeant Haverstick was tendered a banquet by the N.C.O. Club, 7th Cavalry, on November 27th. On the following morning the Regiment was paraded, dismounted, in his honor. During the complimentary ceremonies Sergeant Haverstick was felicitated on his retirement and congratulated on his long and creditable service by General Joseph C. Castner, Commanding 1st Cavalry Division and Colonel Fitzhugh Lee, Regimental Commander, after which he was presented a handsome gold watch by Colonel Lee on behalf of the N. C. O. Club.

On November 20th the officers and ladies of the Regiment gave a dinner at the Post Officers' Club. Covers were laid for 65. The tables were decorated with beautiful candle-sticks, chrysanthemums and autumn leaves. The whole interior of the Club was elaborately decorated with autumn leaves, flags and guidons. After the Regimental dinner the officers and ladies acted as hosts of the evening for the dance to which had been invited the officers and ladies of the Post and of William Beaumont Hospital.

The Non-commissioned Officers' Club has been busy during the quarter with dances, parties and banquets. On Thanksgiving day the Club conducted a very successful turkey shoot from which they derived much sport and some funds. The Club has also kept in force its Committee to visit the Regimental sick in the Hospital.

EIGHTH CAVALRY—Fort Bliss, Texas Colonel S. McP. Rutherford, Commanding

The first part of October was spent in training for the annual inspection of the Corps Area Commander which took place October 20th-23rd. General Hinds expressed himself as being very well pleased with the condition of the regiment. The inspection was concluded by a night maneuver by the whole division which was very successful both tactically and from a training standpoint.

November 1st-15th the supplementary rifle season was held at the Dona Ana Target Range. Troops "B" and "F" were the parent organizations in each squadron under the command of Lts. Thomson and Frierson. Lt. Thomson was in charge of the firing in which the regiment did very creditably.

Major Chamberlin, Captain of the Fort Bliss Polo Team, which won both the inter-circuit and the twelve goal championship of the United States in Philadelphia during September, returned to resume command of the 1st Squadron on November 3rd.

November 21st and 22nd a Military Circus was given in El Paso for the Community Chest. It proved to be highly successful, as large crowds turned out both days. The 8th Cavalry gave exhibitions of jumping, tent pegging and pistol firing, which were very much admired. Four officers of the 8th Cavalry, Major Chamberlin, Captain Hammond, 1st Lt. Collier and 2nd Lt. Thomson took part in the exhibition polo game which was one of the features of the circus.

From November 16th-30th supplementary pistol firing was held, both mounted and dismounted, on the range south of the aviation field. The regiments qualified a very high percentage of those fired, although the exact returns have not been published as yet.

Preparations are being made at this time for the entertainment of the members of the visiting teams from Fort Clark, Marfa and Fort Huachuca which are here for the annual division polo tournament to be held December 3rd-11th, inclusive. This tournament was postponed to this late date on account of the maneuvers held by the 1st Cavalry and 5th Cavalry during October.

Now that the Fort Bliss team has returned from Philadelphia and its final victory in the twelve goal championship, regimental polo has again taken precedence,

and the senior and junior teams are rounding into shape for the fall tournament early in December.

Practically all of the junior officers in the regiment are turning out for polo and it has resulted in the development of some very good ponies which might otherwise never have been discovered.

The senior team for the tournament will line up Lt. Collier No. 1; Capt. Hammond No. 2; Major Chamberlin No. 3; Lt. Thomson No. 4; The junior team will line up Lt. Reed No. 1; Lt. Howze No. 2; Lt. Frierson No. 3; Lt. Gardner No. 4; Lt. Bennett substitute.

Match games with other units on the post are played three times a week, and both senior and junior teams are going to make a strong fight for the cups in the coming tournament.

NINTH CAVALRY—Fort Riley, Kansas Lieutenant Colonel W. J. Scott, Commanding

During the past quarter the regiment has lost four of its old-timers through retirement:

Staff Sergeant Alexander Ayers, who retired September 10th.

Master Sergeant Charles Davis, who retired October 12th.

Sergeant William Stewart, who retired October 17th.

First Sergeant Henry Thomas, who retired November 14th.

Each one of those retiring was honored by a retirement party at the 9th Cavalry Club, and presented with a splendid present as a token of appreciation by the Regiment of their long and faithful service.

Master Sergeant Davis left for Washington, D. C., to accept a position with his former troop commander, Lincoln C. Andrews, now assistant Secretary of the Treasury and in charge of Prohibition Enforcement.

The Indoor Shooting Gallery was opened on November 1st. All men of the regiment are required to fire five shots in each position every month, and all unqualified men to qualify in each position every month.

The Ninth Cavalry Dancing Club entertained the men of the regiment and their families at a whist tournament given at the 9th Cavalry Club on October 10, 1925. Prizes were awarded and refreshments served, and music was furnished by the 9th Cavalry Orchestra.

The 9th Cavalry Band, under the leadership of First Sergeant Morris Brown has made a number of trips to nearby towns and has received some very fine write ups in the local papers on their musical ability, fine appearance and conduct. This band is one of the best in the Army, including eighteen experienced musicians of from ten to twenty years' service.

Sergeant Hansen Outley has just received notice from the State Department, Washington, D. C., that he will soon be discharged for the convenience of the Government in order to accept a commission as Captain in the Liberian Frontier Forces.

Many improvements have been made on the 9th Cavalry farm which now includes an up to date dairy, chicken farm, hog farm, and truck garden. About 40 acres of corn have just been harvested which will be largely used in fattening some of the 400 hogs for the regimental mess this winter.

A Thanksgiving Day game with the Bengal All-Stars of Kansas City, who claimed to be colored champions of the Missouri Valley, which the 9th Cavalry won by a score of 13 to 6, finished the season for our regimental football team. The team has been very successful, having played a number of games and lost only one.

Lieutenant Colonel Walter J. Scott, our regimental commander, while taking part in a hunt on Armistice Day, was seriously injured when his horse fell, and is now confined in the Post Hospital. He is doing well and hopes to be out before Christmas. In his absence Lieutenant Colonel Kerr T. Riggs has assumed command.

ELEVENTH CAVALRY—Presidio of Monterey, California
Colonel L. B. Kromer, Commanding

Colonel Leon B. Kromer arrived on September 8th and assumed command of the 11th Cavalry and Post.

On October 1st, Colonel Kromer reviewed the regiment at Moss Beach. The 11th Cavalry participated in the taking of four big moving picture features that will soon be released. Troop "B" on September 30th traveled to Culver City, Los Angeles, to participate in the filming of two features for the Metro Goldwyn Meyer Corporation. From there they marched to Camp L. J. Hearn, near San Diego, and relieved Troop "G" which had been stationed there since February 28, 1923.

On October 25th the U. S. S. Mississippi arrived in Monterey Bay to take part in the Navy Day festivities on the Monterey Peninsula. During the stay here the officers and men were entertained by the post and by the people of Monterey. The officers of the Mississippi entertained the officers and ladies of the post and the people of Monterey Peninsula on board the battleship on Navy Day. A select team from the 11th Cavalry played the football team from the ship and were defeated. The Post baseball team retaliated by defeating the ship's team. The Presidio of Monterey has the distinction of being one of the few posts of the Army that can have a battleship drop anchor in its front yard.

Armistice Day was spent in a way quite fitting the occasion. Headquarters Troop football team traveled to Hollister and played a combined High School and American Legion Team. That evening they were guests at the American Legion Ball.

On November 18th and 19th the radio sets of the regiment participated in radio communication problems with two aeroplanes from Crissy Field. The problems were very satisfactory and the Commanding Officer was very much pleased with the efficiency shown.

On November 23rd the Corps Area Inspector and assistants arrived to inspect the regiment and Post. The inspection of the regiment was held on the 24th at Moss Beach. A tactical inspection was held at Gigling Military Reservation. Three aeroplanes from Crissy Field participated in the problem, assisting the troops in locating the enemy. Radio and Panel communication were used very effectively.

Thanksgiving Day was given over to the men so as to enable them to enjoy as much as possible the elaborate meals prepared by the cooks of the regiment. Every Troop vied in trying to have the best dinner. The dining rooms were opened at twelve o'clock and the men were given until four o'clock to finish what was before them. There was more than enough to go around and the men made the best of it, many staying the full time allotted.

Although confronted simultaneously with the Corps Area Tactical Inspection, the Annual Garrison Inspection and hurried preparation for the 30th Infantry Horse Show, the Regimental Commander initiated the organization, and strongly backed the efforts of a Regimental team of officers and enlisted men to attend the Horse Show. Last year the Eleventh Cavalry had the pleasure of participating in the 30th Infantry Horse Show, at San Francisco, California, held at Ewing Field, for the purpose of raising funds to assist in sending our Army Polo Team abroad. This year the show was held at the Saint Francis Riding Academy, for the purpose of raising funds to promote polo in the 30th Infantry, a regiment well known for its interest and enthusiasm in mounted sports and pleasures.

Of the performances held on the afternoon and evening of November 27th and 28th, totalling forty-nine classes, the 11th Cavalry had entries in twenty-nine classes.

Following is a list of classes and prizes won by the team:

Novice Hunter—4th, *Jingle Hear*; Owner and Rider, Lt. Read.

Novice Polo Pony—1st, *Duchess*; Rider, Capt. Craig; Owner, Lt. Stutsman.

Best Turned Out Trooper's Mount—1st, *Jimmy*; Rider, Sgt. Mitles; Owner, U. S. Army; 3d, *Bill*; Rider, Sgt. Pearson; Owner, U. S. Army.

Walking Class—4th, *Cigarette*; Owner and Rider, Lt. Stutsman.

Triple Bar Jump—4th, A-43; Rider, Major Doak; Owner, U. S. Army.

Officers' Jumping—1st, A-19; Rider, Lt. Winchester; Owner, U. S. Army; 3d., *Cigarette*; Owner and Rider, Lt. Stutsman.

Lightweight Polo Pony—1st, *Duchess*; Rider, Capt. Craig; Owner, Lt. Stutsman.

Gentleman's Park Hack—3d, *Oke*; Owner and Rider, Capt. Craig.

Handy Hunter—1st, A-43; Rider, Major Doak; Owner, U. S. Army; 2d, A-2; Rider, Lt. Read; Owner, U. S. Army.

Best Turned Out Officers' Charger—1st, *Harangod*; Owner and Rider, Lt. Devine; 3d, *Pay Day*; Rider, Major Doak; Owner, Lt. Lipman.

Middleweight Eolo Pony—1st, *Pleite*; Owner and Rider, Lt. Devine.

Best Trained Enlisted Men's Mount—3d, *Jimmy*; Rider, Sgt. Mitles; Owner, U. S. Army; 4th, *Bill*; Rider, Pvt. Mogan; Owner, U. S. Army.

Enlisted Men's Jumping—1st, A-43; Rider, Cpl. Mays; Owner, U. S. Army; 3d, A-2; Rider, Cpl. Mays; Owner, U. S. Army; 4th, E-63; Rider, Sgt. Ross; Owner, U. S. Army.

Heavyweight Polo Pony—2d, *Oke*; Rider and Owner, Capt. Craig.

Park Hack, Open Class—2d, *Pay Day*; Rider, Major Doak; Owner, Lt. Lipman.

Three Polo Ponies, Same Owner—2d—*Oke, Anita, Pinky*; Rider and Owner, Capt. Craig.

Pair Jumping—3d, A-2, A-43; Riders, Mrs. Egan, Major Doak; Owner, U. S. Army.

Lightweight Hunters—1st, *Pay Day*; Rider, Major Doak; Owner, Lt. Lipman; 2d, *Jingle Hear*; Owner and Rider, Lt. Read.

Three-Gaited, 15-2 and over—2d, *Pay Day*; Rider, Major Doak; Owner, Lt. Lipman; 4th, *Pleite*; Owner and Rider, Lt. Devine.

Best Trained Officers' Charger—1st, *Pay Day*; Rider, Major Doak; Owner, Lt. Lipman; 2d, *Slam Lee*; Owner and Rider, Lt. Winchester.

Three-Gaited, Pair—3d, *Harangod, Pay Day*; Riders, Mrs. Doak, Major Doak; Owners, Lt. Devine, Lt. Lipman.

Champion Polo Pony—2d, *Pleite*; Owner and Rider, Lt. Devine.

Hunters, Open—2d, A-43; Rider, Major Doak; Owner, U. S. Army; 4th, *Slam Lee*; Owner and Rider, Lt. Winchester.

TWELFTH CAVALRY (Less 2d Squadron)—Fort Brown, Texas
Colonel William T. Johnston, Commanding

The past quarter was largely devoted to tactical and field training, in preparation for the Corps Area Commander's annual inspection, which occurred November 6 and 7.

The Post baseball season ended in October with a hard-contested game between Headquarters Troop and Troop B, which the former won, receiving the Athletic Association Cup for the highest league standing. Troop B was presented with a cup for second place.

The football season ended November 26th, the Post team having played and won games with various civilian teams of the Lower Rio Grande Valley. The team easily maintained its record of having remained undefeated in over two years.

Boxing bouts continue to be held once each month, with an increasing popularity among neighboring civilians. The innovation of starting each card with a wrestling bout has been introduced. It seems successful and will no doubt become more so as talent develops.

Since the Formal Tactical Inspection of the Corps Area Commander, polo has taken a more regular place in the post's activities. Even more interest than usual is being displayed, inasmuch as it is proposed to hold a Rio Grande Valley Mid-winter Polo Tournament and Horse Show in January at a time that will not interfere with the annual Southwestern Tournament. It is hoped that in addition to two teams from Fort Brown, a civilian team from Houston, a military team from Fort Sam Houston, one from Ringgold, Fort McIntosh, and a fifth composed of Mexican officers from Matamoros will participate. Increasing local civilian interest in polo seems to make the plan feasible.

Two officers and fifty-five enlisted men of this command left Fort Brown December 1st for Fort Ringgold, where they will engage in rifle practice, supplementary season.

SECOND SQUADRON, TWELFTH CAVALRY—Fort Ringgold, Texas

Lt. Col. C. O. Thomas, Jr., Commanding

This command has spent most of this quarter in field training consisting of maneuvers in the surrounding hills. Different organizations operating against the remainder of the squadron, in various problems. This training was immediately followed by the annual inspection by The Corps Area Commander who expressed himself as being well pleased with the general condition of the post and command.

The fall shooting season opened with much noise. Officers and men from Fort Ringgold cleaned their fowling pieces, dusted their rifles, fed their decoys and entered lustily in the chase of the elusive duck and deer. Every one consumed his limit; some shot it. Captain Wm. Tussey was awarded the usual medal (leather) for the first deer of the season killed by an officer of the post.

Finals of the Singles Tennis Tournament resulted in a win for Lieutenant D. P. Buckland. Lieutenant A. D. Dugan also ran.

Native Texans, we have found, have a yen for the galloping caballos. Fort Ringgold has built a half mile race track—barriers—banked turns and all. This has been constructed with voluntary labor from the enlisted men of this command, and without expense to the Government. We're all set to let 'em run and get better acquainted with our neighbors. We are also building a new jumping park, neat to look at, and stiff enough to keep out the ribbon clerks.

THIRTEENTH CAVALRY—Fort D. A. Russell

Colonel H. R. Richmond, Commanding

The Corps Area Commander, Major General Charles T. Menoher, recently made a tactical inspection of the command.

Record practice with all arms has been successfully completed. Great attention was paid to strict compliance with the Training Regulations governing such practice and scrupulous honesty in marking targets was insisted upon.

An officer's school has been inaugurated in the regiment with Major Dagley as instructor and Major Garr and Captain Shipp as the assistant instructors. The course of this school closely follows that of the Cavalry School. A N.C.O.'s school under Major Garr and Captain Gere and a specialist's school under Lieutenant Smith have also been inaugurated.

The football season in which teams of all the troops participated has just come to a successful conclusion.

Sergeant Thomas Garrity, Troop "A," won third place in the Colorado Endurance Ride on his remount *Tomahawk*. His splendid horsemanship was highly commended by many observers of the ride. Upon his return to the regiment, a regimental review was given in his honor.

First Sergeant B. F. Longacre, Troop "F," was a member of this year's Cavalry Rifle Team and won the Distinguished Marksman's Medal. He was also a firing member of the Cavalry Team which won first place in the Infantry Match. Besides being awarded the Certificate of Merit and the D.S.M., Sergeant Longacre has received seventeen medals in N.R.A. matches.

Corporal Joseph Yersak, Troop "A," won first place in the member's Match (A Gold Medal and Trophy) defeating 1100 other competitors. He was also a firing member of the Cavalry Team in the Infantry Match.

Charles Schmitz who won the D.S.C., while a private in Company "I," 9th Cavalry, recently enlisted in the regiment has been made a Sergeant in Troop "B."

FOURTEENTH CAVALRY—Fort Des Moines, Ia., and Fort Sheridan, Ill.

Colonel J. R. Lindsey, Commanding

On September 14th the 14th Cavalry (less 1st Squadron and Troop E) left Fort Des Moines, Iowa, and marched to Ak-Sar-Ben Field, Omaha, Nebraska, arriving there on September 22nd after marching a total distance of 159 miles. Of the time en route, the troops layed over one day to give an exhibition drill at the Adair County Fair, at Greenfield, Iowa. While at Ak-Sar-Ben Field the troops participated in exhibition drills, parades and various activities of both the Ak-Sar-Ben Festival and the American Legion Convention.

On October 10th, the troops left Ak-Sar-Ben Field, and made the return march in 8 days. On the return march there was no layover. Lieutenant Colonel David H. Biddle commanded the troops on the march.

Colonel Julian R. Lindsey took command of the Regiment on October 23rd.

The annual tactical and field inspection was held by Colonel Lindsey, 14th Cavalry, on November 12th, 13th, and 17th.

In the Post football competition "F" Troop is tied with Combat Train, 9th Field Artillery.

The Fort Sheridan Fall Horse Show was held on Friday, October 23rd and Saturday, October 24th. Ribbons were won as follows by the officers and enlisted men of the squadron: 6 Blue Ribbons, 6 Red Ribbons, 5 Yellow Ribbons, and 2 White Ribbons.

On October 14th Major General B. A. Poore, U. S. Army, left Fort Sheridan, Ill., to assume command of the 7th Corps Area and was escorted to the station by the 1st Squadron of the Regiment.

ESTABLISHED 1818

Brooks Brothers

CLOTHING

Gentlemen's Furnishing Goods.

MADISON AVENUE COR. FORTY-FOURTH STREET
NEW YORK

Officers' Uniforms

Agents in the United States
for the

"Woodrow" Cap

and

Messrs. Peal & Co.'s

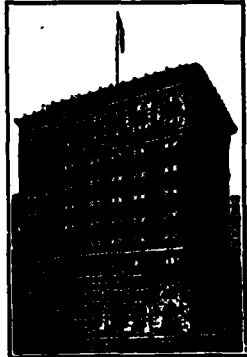
"Sam Browne" Belt

Send for Circular

BOSTON PALM BEACH NEWPORT

LITTLE BUILDING PLAZA BUILDING AUDRUM BUILDING

Tenney and Stanton 600 11 11 11 220 Broadway Avenue



BROOKS BROTHERS'
Building, convenient
to Grand Central, Subway,
and to many of the lead-
ing Hotels and Clubs

The Riggs National Bank

OF WASHINGTON, D. C.

Foreign Department

Issues Letters of Credit
Travelers' Checks, Foreign Drafts

Buys and Sells Foreign Exchange
Telegraphic Transfers

Resources Over \$40,000,000
Five Convenient Locations

Main Office, 1503 Penna. Ave.
Dupont Circle, 1913 Mass. Ave.
Park Road, 14th & Park Road

Northwest Office,
18th St. and Columbia Road
Seventh St., 7th and Eye Sts.

A British Riding Boot For the Service

Created by Master craftsmen, who are trained in the west end of London, the home of the finest riding boot makers in England,

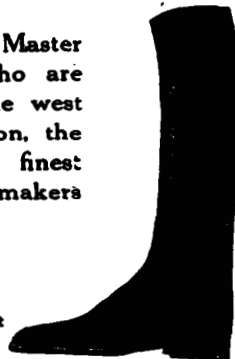
\$30.00

(by Parcel Post prepaid)

which is considerably less per pair than imported custom boots of equal merit.
Hollow trees, \$19.00.

LOUIS MARK

143 South Broad Street
Philadelphia, Pa.



X SABRES

Heavy gold plate with safety catch. Per pair.....\$1.00

Heavy gold plate with safety catch and numerals. Per pair\$1.15

These cross sabres are made up extra heavy with a safety pin and catch that will not bend out of shape the first time worn. They are heavily plated with 14K gold.

A. H. DONDERO, INC.

730 17th Street, N. W.

Washington, D. C.



THE HORSE YOU RIDE—

OR DRIVE—needs to have his shoes held firmly and securely to the hoof both for safety and comfort.

The best and surest way to obtain that result is to have his shoes put on with

CAPEWELL HORSE NAILS

Used by thousands of shoers throughout the world—found in the best shops.

Capewell Nails have half again the tensile strength of other nails. Easiest to drive and surest to hold.

For Shoeing
Cavalry and Artillery
Horses
UNEQUALLED

Capewell
Nails
Hold
Best

Made by

The Capewell Horse Nail Co.
Hartford, Conn.

LEADING HORSE NAIL MAKERS OF THE WORLD

POLO GOODS
MALLETS BALLS SADDLES
1925 Catalogue with latest Rules on Request

CHAS. MEURISSE & CO.
4821-23 COTTAGE GROVE AVE.
CHICAGO, ILL.

MEURISSE

ARABIAN SADDLE HORSES

Suitable for Riding, Driving, Cavalry
With Beauty, Gentleness, Endurance



Year	Entries	All Breeds	Distance in Miles	Test	Pounds Carried	Time Hrs. Min.	Prizes Awarded
1913	9	154	Continuous	180	30	40	1st, 3rd, 4th
1914	4	40	"	200	3	38	Stable Test
1918	2	162	"	200	31	5	Stable Test
1919	18	306	Five Days	200	51	26	1st, 3d, 4th
1920	27	306	"	245	52	47	2d, 5th
1921	17	310	"	245	49	4	1st, 3d, 5th
1922	22	300	"	225	45	20	4th
1923	23	300	"	225	45	0	1st, 6th

Winning U. S. Mounted Service Cup
Registered Gen. S. B.; Am. S. B.; Arab S. B.
At Stud Exportable duty free For Sale
MAYNESBORO ARABIAN STUD - Berlin, N. H., U. S. A.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Devoted to the Interests of the Cavalry,
to the Professional Improvement of its
Officers and Men, and to the Advance-
ment of the Mounted Service Generally

EDITOR

Lieutenant-Colonel W. V. MORRIS, Cavalry

Copyright, 1925, by

The United States Cavalry Association

Published quarterly by the United States Cavalry Association. Editor, Lieutenant-Colonel W. V. Morris, Cavalry. Entered as second-class matter March 22, 1920, at the post-office at Baltimore, Md., under the Act of March 3, 1879. Acceptance for mailing at special rate of postage provided for in section 1103, Act of October 3, 1917, authorized May 29, 1920.

Office of Publication, Baltimore, Md. Editorial Office, Washington, D. C.
\$2.50 per year; single copy, 65c. Foreign Postage, 25c Additional



PEAL & Co.
487 OXFORD ST.
LONDON,
ENGLAND.



MILITARY
POLO
HUNTING
BOOTS
SPURS
WHIPS
CROPS
KIT BAGS
&
CASES

AUTOMOBILE INSURANCE

For Officers and Warrant Officers, ACTIVE AND RETIRED, of the United States Services. Application blanks may be obtained from U. S. Cavalry Association, or

WRITE FOR PARTICULARS
(giving description of your car)

If application sent, enclose \$5.00 Membership Fee to apply on premium. Coverage at cost.

UNITED SERVICES AUTOMOBILE ASSOCIATION
(Formerly U. S. Army Auto Ins. Ass'n)
FORT SAM HOUSTON, TEXAS

HORSE-SENSE AND HORSE-MANSHIP OF TODAY

By Geoffrey Brooke, D. S. O., M. C.

Lieutenant-Colonel 16th/ 5th Lancers,
Chief Instructor, Cavalry Wing, Equitation School, Weedon.

Illustrated

Price, \$5.00

Order from the

U. S. CAVALRY ASSOCIATION

Frank J. Krupp

Successor to

Henry Schick & Co.

**Army and Navy
Uniforms**

1421 F STREET NORTHWEST
Washington, D. C.

CIVILIAN DRESS A SPECIALTY

Free Mailing Lists
Will help you increase sales
Send for FREE catalog giving complete
and prices on thousands of classified
mailing lists and prospect lists for
all business, professional, scientific,
educational, and general purposes.
99% by refund of 5¢ each
ROSS-GOULD CO. 10th St. St. Louis

Recommended

The German Cavalry in Belgium and France, 1914.

By Lieutenant-General von Poseck, Inspector General of Cavalry, German Army. Maps, index. (Price, \$4.00). The only COMPLETE story of the very IMPORTANT work of the German Cavalry at the beginning of the World War. How the Cavalry facilitated the rapid advance of the German armies, the concentration, marches, reconnaissances, initial maneuvers, MOUNTED and dismounted fights, CHARGES, services of security and information, meeting engagements, the WHOLE story told in chronological order by units and so tied up and related that one can easily follow it through on the excellent maps. Material for this book came principally from EYE-WITNESSES and is therefore doubly valuable. Read what Cavalry DID.

As to Military Training

Arranged by Major J. F. Wall, U. S. Cavalry. 267 pages. Illustrated maps. (Price, \$2.50). Compilation of IMPORTANT parts of manuals. Handy for saddle pocket. "A handy compendium of useful information well adapted to the needs of the mounted service and which any one entering upon a military career may study with great profit."—W. A. Holbrook, Major-General, U. S. A., Chief of Cavalry.

Horse-Sense and Horsemanship of Today

By Geoffrey Brooks, D. S. O. M. C., Lieutenant-Colonel 16th/5th Lancers, Chief Instructor, Cavalry Wing, Equitation School, Weedon.

Illustrated. Price \$5.00.
Commenting on this book, the London Times says:

"This book should be owned and studied carefully by all men who hunt or play polo, or take any active interest in horses." "It should be a text book for even subalterns in a Cavalry or Yeomanry Regiment, and it should also be in the possession of the officers of all the other mounted units of His Majesty's Forces." "It is easily the best work on the subject published in years."

The Journal of the United Service Institution states in part as follows:

"This book is wonderful because, from cover to cover, it is full of good meat easily digestible without a superfluous word. It is valuable, and indeed invaluable, because of its simplicity and sound advice." "The photographs are excellent and deserve careful study."

BOOK DEPARTMENT

U. S. CAVALRY ASSOCIATION

1624 H STREET N. W.

WASHINGTON, D. C.

Cavalrymen! Read This!!

YOUR Association is in the magazine business. As a dealer, the Association gets a commission you as individuals cannot get. If every Troop and officer sent their magazine orders through the Association, the profit in a year would pay for the publication of one number of the Cavalry Journal. We guarantee as low prices as can be gotten, meeting all competition.

Send ALL your magazine and book orders through YOUR Association.

SERVICE FOR THE SERVICE

A History of Cavalry

By Colonel Denison. 467 pages. Index, 11 maps. (Price, \$4.20.) The BEST constructed book on our shelves and the ONLY history of Cavalry. Every statement of fact substantiated by reference to the original source. Accurate, vivid, full of information, with pen photos of the great cavalymen of all ages. Shows the development of arms, armor, tactics, organization, the growth of the infantry and artillery along with the Cavalry and the interplay one on the other, and in this sense is a SHORT HISTORY OF WARFARE. All important battles described. SECOND EDITION. No Cavalry library complete without this book.

Horses, Saddles and Bridles

Fourth Revised Edition. Price \$2.75. By Major General William H. Carter, author of Horses of the World; History of the Sixth Cavalry; Old Army Sketches; etc.

Breaking and Riding

with Military Commentaries. By Fillis, former Encuyer-en-chef to the Central Cavalry School at St. Petersburg. 356 pages, index, 70 illustrations. New Edition. (Price, \$7.50.) Horse-lore classic by master with fifty years' horse experience. Not pupil of Baucher, Fillis improved on his method. Fillis taught principle there must always be progression: that horse must be kept up to bit; that horse must always be kept straight. Not equitation manual. Possesses instead GENIUS. Fillis' method of instruction is by relation—instruction in simplest form. Book for practical horseman. Definite, full explanation by master-horseman of how each movement is accomplished. Therein lies Fillis' value.

Equitation

By Bussigny. Photographs: 361 pages. (Price, \$7.50.) The perfectly trained horse, mounted by a perfectly trained rider, is goal of this system of PRACTICAL exercises. After 65 years' horse experience, this pupil of Baucher, an old French campaigner, gives the results of a LIFE'S OBSERVATION of the horse. Careful, DETAILED EXPLANATION and illustration. Scientific.

CONTENTS FOR APRIL, 1925

Vol. XXXIV, No. 159

	PAGE
LETTER TO U. S. CAVALRY ASSOCIATION	135
Marshal Ferdinand Foch.	
THREE CRITICAL DEFEATS OF OUR HISTORY.....	136
Captain Elbridge Colby, Infantry.	
CO-OPERATION BETWEEN CAVALRY AND AIR SERVICE.....	147
Major Leo G. Heffernan, Air Service.	
GERMAN IDEAS ON MODERN CAVALRY—Comments and Translation	155
Colonel H. S. Hawkins, 3d Cavalry.	
TRAINING OF CAVALRY RADIO SQUADS	169
Lieutenant Mortimer F. Sullivan, 2d Cavalry.	
MOBILITY, FIRE POWER AND SHOCK	178
Lieutenant Colonel Clarence Lininger, Cavalry.	
SOME TRAINING PRINCIPLES FOR NATIONAL GUARD CAVALRY.....	182
Captain Kramer Thomas, Cavalry.	
THE INTERNATIONAL POLO TOURNAMENT, MEXICO CITY.....	185
Captain Edward M. Fickett, Cavalry.	
A WORD AS TO FIELD MAPS	194
Colonel W. C. Brown, United States Army.	
THE SERVICE COAT	197
Major P. R. Davison, Cavalry.	
THE CAVALRY SCHOOL	202
Captain Robert A. Bush, Cavalry, O. R. C.	
THE BOISE IDAHO ENDURANCE RIDE	205
Captain W. R. Kidwell, V. C., 116th Cavalry, Idaho N. G.	
EDITORIAL COMMENT	208
DRESS UNIFORM—INTERNATIONAL ASPECT OF ARMY POLO—ANNUAL DUES—100 PER CENT MEMBERSHIP—THE HORSE—BULLETINS OF RESERVE CAVALRY DIVISIONS—SERVICE TO MEMBERS—NATIONAL GUARD MEMBERSHIP RECORDS—INDEX TO VOLUME XXXIII—CAVALRY FUND—CERTIFICATES OF MEMBERSHIP.	
TOPICS OF THE DAY	212
THE 1925 ENDURANCE RIDE—INFANTRY SCHOOL RECREATION CENTER—THE INTERNATIONAL MILITARY POLO CHAMPIONSHIP—PREPARATION BY ARMY TEAM—THE BRITISH TEAM—R. O. T. C. HORSE SHOW, MICHIGAN AGRICULTURAL COLLEGE—THE RASP—HOLLAND 1925—RELIEF FOR THE REEL CART.	
FOREIGN MILITARY NOTES	218
THE HORSE	219
NEW BOOKS REVIEWED	221
FOREIGN MILITARY JOURNALS	224
POLO	232
THE NATIONAL GUARD	237
THE ORGANIZED RESERVES	240
PROCEEDINGS OF THE ANNUAL MEETING OF THE U. S. CAVALRY ASSN.	242
CAVALRY SCHOOL NOTES	248
REGIMENTAL NOTES	250

Check the books you wish and give mailing address below:

Name

Address

The United States Cavalry Association

DESIGN

1. The aim and purpose of the Association shall be to disseminate knowledge of the military art and science, to promote the professional improvement of its members, and to preserve and foster the spirit, the traditions, and the solidarity of the Cavalry of the Army of the United States.

ARTICLE III of the Constitution.

Organized November 9, 1885

OFFICERS

President

Major General MALIN CRAIG, Chief of Cavalry.

Vice-President

Colonel HAMILTON S. HAWKINS, 3d Cavalry.

Secretary and Treasurer

Lieutenant Colonel W. V. MORRIS, Cavalry.

EXECUTIVE COUNCIL

Colonel W. J. GLASGOW, Cavalry.

Colonel J. H. REEVES (Cavalry), General Staff Corps.

Colonel A. C. COLAHAN, 103d Cavalry.

Colonel F. LeJ. PARKER, Cavalry.

Colonel T. A. ROBERTS, Cavalry.

Lieut. Colonel W. P. DRAPER, Cavalry Reserve Corps.

Lieut. Colonel JOHN PHILIP HILL, Cavalry Reserve Corps.

Lieut. Colonel W. M. CONNELL (Cavalry), General Staff Corps.

Lieut. Colonel S. R. GLEAVES, Cavalry.

MEMBERSHIP AND SUBSCRIPTION TO THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Membership shall be of three classes, which, together with the conditions of eligibility therefor, are as follows:

- (1) Active, for which all general officers of the Army of the United States and all commissioned officers of the Cavalry of the Army of the United States shall be eligible.
- (2) Associate, for which all present and former commissioned, warrant, and non-commissioned officers of honorable record of the military or naval services of the United States not included in class I shall be eligible.
- (3) Honorary.

Application for membership, showing present or former military status, should be addressed to the Secretary, U. S. Cavalry Association, 1624 H Street N. W., Washington, D. C., and be accompanied by remittance of dues for one year.

There is no initiation fee. Annual dues, payable in advance, \$2.50, which includes subscription to the Cavalry Journal, 60% thereof being so designated.

Any person or organization not eligible for membership may subscribe for the JOURNAL at the regular subscription rates of \$2.50 per year. Canadian and foreign postage, 25 cents additional.

Members and subscribers are requested to give prompt notice in advance of change of address.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Vol. XXXIV

APRIL, 1925

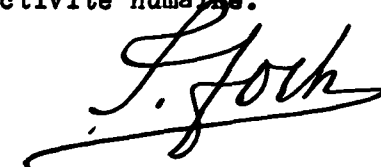
No. 139

LE MARECHAL FOCH Paris, le 24 Novembre 1924

A L'U.S. Cavalry Association,

Je partage entièrement les avis
exprimés par les Grands Chefs de l'Ar-
mee Américaine : les Généraux PERSHING
& HARBORD.

L'entraînement militaire, et notam-
ment celui de la Cavalerie, intelligen-
ment compris, développe particulière-
ment les qualités de discipline, de
maîtrise de soi-même et de décision
qui sont à la base de toute réussite
dans l'activité humaine.



TRANSLATION

To the U. S. Cavalry Association:

I fully share the opinions expressed by the Great Chiefs of the
American Army: Generals **PERSHING AND HARBORD**.

Military training, and notably that of the Cavalry, intelligently un-
derstood, develops particularly the qualities of discipline, of self-control,
and of decision which are at the base of all success in human activity.

F. FOCH.

Ferdinand Foch
Marshal of France

Three Critical Defeats of Our History

BY

Captain ELBRIDGE COLBY, Infantry

BEFORE proceeding with the task of the historian and scrutinizing military engagements and the manner in which our people have waged war, it might be profitable for us to turn for a moment to the Fourth Estate and tear a leaf out of the editorial page of the *Chicago Tribune*, which says:

"American wars have always been children's crusades. We have always trotted into them trustfully enough, armed with a hullabaloo of hoasnnahs and a squirrel rifle, and we have always come out sadder, wiser, but somehow victorious. Long casualty lists, huge costs in gold and labor, a wrenched and gaping economic organization which profiteers have pilfered, have been a few of the items chargeable to our beatitude. But America will not be denied the luxury of her innocence. Nor can we entirely regret it. And another war, no doubt, will find us, as ever, singing, 'Onward, Christian Soldiers,' without any soldiers."

The following facts of history are not usually emphasized in the patriotic texts prepared by sentimental citizens for use in our schools:

THE DEFEAT ON LONG ISLAND

Our first war we brought upon ourselves. We resisted the attitude and the acts of a British king and frankly preferred conflict to submission. After seeing his troops severely punished at Bunker Hill and being forced to evacuate Boston by the threat of shells from Dorchester Heights, Howe had sailed for Halifax to cure his sick and prepare for the eventual subjugation of the revolting colonies. The line of the Hudson Valley was of great strategic importance. Possession of that line was to be "the great contention and controlling motive of the first three years of the war." Washington guessed correctly that Howe's next objective would be New York, and on June 29, 1776, the general in the red coat arrived at Sandy Hook. On July 3d he moved up to Staten Island, and later in the same month, when his brother joined him with a powerful fleet, he overcame this timidity enough to address himself to *George Washington, Esq.*, as a private citizen, and attempted to put down the revolution with an academic proclamation that all who should lay down their arms and assist in restoring tranquillity would receive the full pardon of George of England. But it was too late. Bunker Hill had stirred the colonists to confidence. The evacuation of Boston had confirmed it. The hiring of German mercenaries against them had roused their wrath. And Thomas Paine, in that pungent pamphlet "Common Sense," which had a circulation that was a phenomenon in the history of printing, had so crystallized popular sentiment that finally the Declaration of Independence put an end to all thought of peaceable solutions or quiet submission.

General George Washington, Commander-in-Chief of the Continental Army, was now fighting for independence. To oppose the 30,000 troops and the ten ships of the line and twenty frigates, with 1,200 guns and manned by 10,000

men, which the Howes had on Staten Island by the end of August, Washington had arrived with 8,000 troops. These he supplemented with short-term volunteers and many amateur officers. Some of the raw troops refused to move onto Staten Island because they had enlisted for service only on the mainland. Volunteer cavalry refused to do fatigue duty and had made no provision for forage; so Washington sent them home and hired mounted scouts at fifty dollars a day. Most of the terms of enlistment were due to expire on December 1. Yet they were good marksmen. Bunker Hill had proved that about the colonists, and Howe's Footguards officers were told to discard spontoons and halberds and dress like privates, so as not to be conspicuous targets.

WASHINGTON'S DIFFICULTIES

The real lessons of Bunker Hill were overlooked; well-laid defenses and well-trained officers of previous experience. The colonists seemed to think patriotism the sole qualification for a soldier's calling. Even the excellent marksmanship was a hindrance, because it led to the formation of "rifle" companies and to the neglect of steady discipline, and of the value of soundly trained troops equipped with musket and bayonet. With a hodge-podge paper strength of 30,000 and a lawyer Adjutant General, who accepted his appointment partially because it gave him an occupation and a salary while the courts of Philadelphia were closed, Washington could not muster an effective strength of more than 20,000, some of whom came without arms, without proper equipment, and often without semblance of a uniform.

Washington was convinced he could not hold New York against his superior and better-trained foe. However, the Continental Congress would not hear of a withdrawal, and General Charles Lee had been busily emplacing batteries all over the water front. Greene was posted in Brooklyn on high ground, which overlooked New York as Dorchester had overlooked Boston, and had been fortifying a strong position there. The American troops were scattered all about the place in order to cover various possible points of enemy entry. The dispositions clearly indicated Washington's frame of mind. He was not concentrating for a decisive battle, which must surely have gone against him. On August 20th he wrote to Congress: "We shall harass them as much as possible, which will be all that we can do."

On August 22d Howe crossed over to Gravesend Bay and made a temporary camp, sending a detachment under Cornwallis as far as Flatbush, which was delayed by Pennsylvania riflemen, who harassed its march and burnt all forage in sight. Howe then spent four days in reconnoitering. The American troops sent out two-regiment detachments to guard the Flatbush and Bedford passes across the wooded line of hills and to guard the road along the edge of the harbor and Gowanus Bay. A tiny detail of riflemen and some hired scouts were assigned to watch the Jamaica road, together with two troops of horse, which the New York Provincial Congress took upon themselves to order upon a cattle-driving game farther east, and the road was inadequately covered.

On August 26th Howe marched at night against the American positions, feinting at the Gowanus Pass, feinting in somewhat greater strength at the Flatbush and Bedford passes, and sending his major force around the comparatively unguarded eastern flank toward the Jamaica road. The guns in the center opened up. Miles's riflemen rushed "to the sound of the guns" and left the Jamaica road uncovered. Howe's movement at the center was purposely slow, to give the flank movement time to get around. Its slowness enabled the outnumbered Continentals to withdraw more or less toward the Brooklyn fortified lines, although many of them were thrown into disorder, many commanders rushed here and there, giving orders on the spot, irrespective of the general situation, and General Sullivan himself, now in command, took refuge in a cornfield, where he was found by Hessians and later was politely treated by Howe. Howe drew his forces up in front of the Brooklyn "lines" and, eschewing the costly methods of Bunker Hill, opened saps against them and started regular siege operations. Washington's force of 9,000 men in Brooklyn was hopelessly inadequate. He started to reinforce it, then wisely changed his mind and saw it ferried across the river in the quiet of the night of the 27th. Yet the principal reason for the withdrawal was not so much tactical or strategic as that their lack of spirit, their demoralized condition, and their lack of disciplinary training rendered them uncertain for the siege operations which would have ensued had he maintained his position.

COMMENTS

A recent commentator on this "Battle of Long Island" has said:

"The British commander might have crushed the Continental Army and brought the war to a close had he vigorously followed up his success. But he did not, and the British at all times carried on the war in a most leisurely fashion. He was a skillful tactician. We owe our independence to his lack of energy."

Bancroft made practically the same charge against Howe in his notorious ninth volume. And yet it appears that these two are mistaken. The "Battle of Long Island" was not a "battle" at all, in the military sense of the word. It was merely an affair of outposts. The Brooklyn troops awaited the enemy approach on a line of observation and were driven behind their fortified lines with some losses, but not decisive losses. They continued their withdrawal and later retreated across New Jersey under slight pressure. The "Battle of Long Island" was not a determining action, because Washington never wished it to be. The real results of the conflict were political rather than military. Enthusiasm in the Colonies had been at its highest after Bunker Hill, the Boston evacuation, and the Declaration of Independence. It died down quickly after Long Island. There was soon an opportunity to distinguish between what the pamphleteer called "the summer soldier and the sunshine patriot" and the real soldier and the enduring patriot, who wintered the hardships of Valley Forge and crashed through the ice across the Delaware. The best statement of the results of the battle are

in the words which Washington wrote to the President of Congress on September 2d, 1776:

"The check our detachment sustained has dispirited too great a proportion of our troops and filled their minds with apprehension and despair. The militia, instead of calling forth their utmost efforts to a brave and manly opposition in order to repair our losses, are dismayed, intractable, and impatient to return. Great numbers of them have gone off—in some instances almost by whole regiments, by half ones, and by companies at a time. This circumstance of itself, independent of others, when fronted by a well-appointed enemy, superior in number to our whole collected force, would be sufficiently disagreeable; but when their example has infected another part of the army, when their want of discipline and refusal of almost any kind of restraint and government have produced a like conduct, but too common to the whole, and an entire disregard of that order and subordination necessary to the well-being of an army and which had been inculcated before, as well as the nature of our military establishment would admit of, our condition becomes still more alarming, and with the deepest concern I am obliged to confess my want of confidence in the generality of the troops."

THE CAPTURE OF WASHINGTON

After the close of the Revolution the newly established United States of America continued to maintain only an extremely small regular army and aimed to depend in time of emergency upon rapidly raised volunteers, though without any concrete plan for organizing or utilizing those volunteers. Although the Federal Government had been created "for the common defense," military control was still left largely in the hands of the governors of the separate States, who were very jealous of their prerogatives as the heads of separate sovereignties.

Then the European conflicts broke out, started in order to suppress the French Revolutionists and concluding with the overthrow of Napoleon. The war was not our concern. Still, in every war, neutral rights are liable to be violated by belligerent nations, and neutrals are often drawn into the struggle to maintain those rights, especially neutrals with extensive commerce on the seas. We had a "limited" war with France in 1799, and later our relations with the other main belligerent became threatening.

Congress in 1807 authorized volunteer increases under volunteer officers, and again in 1812, on the very eve of war, voted regular increases and volunteer forces that were never raised. The war with England began on June 18, 1812, with the United States depending upon twelve-months volunteers raised in the States, two of which refused to furnish their quota, even for local defense, to relieve regulars for other duties. Hull at Detroit, Dearborn on Champlain, and Van Rensselaer at Queenstown had State troops who refused to cross the border because they had enrolled "to resist invasion."

After scattered operations in the center, when training and discipline began to tell, Harrison won the battle of the Thames in 1813, and then let his volunteers go home, like Rennenkampf, in East Prussia, in 1917, who went to bed

as soon as he had forced the Germans to retreat, and failed to push his advantage at the propitious moment. On one occasion "one-third part of the idle men would have saved all." In 1813, after fruitless arguments between the Commanding General and the Secretary of War, 5,000 raw troops started from Lake Champlain for Montreal and met defeat at almost the same moment that the Governor of Vermont recalled the troops from his State which were concentrated in reserve at Plattsburg.

Such was the general manner in which the war was being conducted: much bravery, but also much civil interference and much unsound policy as to the use of raw troops.

CONGRESS IS WARNED

In June, 1814, the President called the attention of Congress to the fact that a British fleet, with about 3,000 troops on board, had been hovering along the shores of the Chesapeake, and that the total number of regular United States troops in Maryland and Virginia was something like 2,208 men, widely scattered at various points from Baltimore to Norfolk. In July, when the treaty of Fontainebleau had been finally signed and Napoleon was safely on his way to Elba with a sick stomach and a broken heart, the British sent veteran troops across the Atlantic. Early in the same month Congress voted 2,000 to 3,000 State troops for the threatened area and 10,000 to 15,000 volunteers, "to be held in readiness to march at a moment's notice." Additional authorizations were made for additional troops, but the States did not respond. Says Upton, quoting Armstrong:

"The command of the new district was devolved upon General Winder, whose selection; according to the statement of the Secretary of War, was based 'not on the ground of distinguished professional service or knowledge,' but simply on a presumption that 'being a native of Maryland and a relative of the Governor, Brigadier Winder would be useful in mitigating the opposition to the war and in giving an increased efficiency to national measures within the limits of the State.'"

On August 18, 1814, word reached Washington that a British fleet at the mouth of the Patuxent was landing troops at Benedict, forty miles from the Capital. Two days later Winder issued his call for citizens *en masse*. They were mustered on August 21st; they were reviewed by the President on August 22d, and on August 24th, when they fought their first battle, they numbered 5,401 in all, of whom 400 were regulars, 600 marines, and 20 sailors, the remainder being raw troops. The Government had foreseen the impending invasion; it had authority to call out forces in advance and to prepare them for the field, and yet it held fast to the old principle of having citizens 'hold themselves in readiness,' and finally sent its defending troops, "suddenly assembled, without organization, or discipline, or officers of the least knowledge of service," into a brief and disastrous campaign.

On August 19th the Secretary of State mounted a horse and rode out to see the enemy, returning later with the information that they were 5,000 to 7,000 strong. On the 22d and again on the 23d detachments went out toward the British,

looked at them, and came running home again. Winder had sent a cavalry colonel "to harass, obstruct, and impede" the British advance; but this was not done, and the invaders marched forty-five miles towards Bladensburg without meeting resistance. Furthermore, on the morning of the 24th, due to the complete and rapid withdrawal of his reconnoitering detachments, Winder was absolutely out of touch with his foe. The Baltimore troops were mostly concentrated at Bladensburg. Winder, with other troops, was near the Eastern Branch bridge at Washington. Suddenly came the news that the British were marching on Bladensburg. Winder rushed in that direction. Stansbury and his Baltimore forces left Bladens-



Courtesy of Mr. George Havens Putnam

burg to join Winder near Washington, but he was met by orders to return and give battle at Bladensburg and by assurances of reinforcement.

THE AMERICAN DISPOSITIONS

He chose to take up a position behind the river and resist the British crossing. He laid his troops across the apex of a road junction, with riflemen and artillery covering the bridge and infantry regiments quite in rear of them. Then came Monroe and made some changes. Then came Winder and said "O. K." and put some recruit regiments up in front, cavalry regiments in a ravine up front, where they could be of no use whatever. Then came the troops from Washington under General Smith, who took advice from Francis Scott Key, who wrote a

song better than he planned a battle. The new arrivals were placed on a line of hills nearly two thousand yards back from the bridge and well out of supporting range of the weapons of those days. Finally, dashing through Bladensburg itself only half an hour ahead of the British, came Beall and his Annapolis boys, who passed through the entire American line and took up a position upon a high and apparently safe hill on the right of the rear line.

The British advanced through the city. Of the 3,500 in their force, only 1,500 pushed to the attack; but these were veterans, and the defenders were soldiers of only a few days' service. The advance American artillery forced the British to make use of the protection afforded by the buildings of the town and to advance across the bridge by bounds and in small groups. But they did advance, drove in the first light line in front of them, and by steady progress through the orchard and many a congreve rocket managed to strike terror in the untrained defenders and put the second line completely to rout. This force ran rapidly to the rear, principally westward, toward Georgetown, and clear of the rear troops, who stood and waited to fight their own little part of the battle. The British attack developed principally on the right of these troops. There was bitter fighting at many points. Barney's marines held their ground splendidly against Wellington's veterans. There was good resistance. But a few steady troops were not enough against 1,500 seasoned fighters who had conquered Napoleon. Beall's Annapolis volunteers fired three or four rounds from their hilltop and retreated in disorder, exposing the whole right flank. Thereupon, without attempting to maneuver into position the many units that had seen no action at all, General Winder ordered a general retreat, which was executed for a time in good order by the troops still remaining. The British did not attempt to pursue, but remained upon the field until evening, when they took up their march toward Washington.

The remainder of General Winder's command fled so far and so fast that it continued right through the Capital and made no attempt to stand after the defeat. The Capital was exposed to the torch of the invader and the public buildings were destroyed by fire. The White House is so called today because it had to be painted over to cover the marks of smoke and soot. Government officials scampered into the Virginia hills and hid in fear until the British withdrew and re-embarked as suddenly as they had landed and attacked. The British losses were 64 killed, 185 wounded, and 249 total. The American losses were 25 killed, 41 wounded, and 66 total. In other words, veteran troops inferior in number suffered 5½ per cent casualties and still wrested a National Capital from superior numbers of hastily raised patriots who fled in confusion after suffering only 1.1 per cent casualties.

Winder had fought for a few months on the northern frontier, yet he displayed appalling incompetence as a tactician, depending too exclusively on his artillery to bear the brunt of the battle: failing to maintain contact and to make definite plans for the action; scattering his troops in depth, but never using them as mobile reserves; and permitting them to be defeated in detail outside of mutual supporting distance. He was, however, no more incompetent than the hastily

raised and untrained volunteers which he had under his command and upon which the Government deliberately tried to depend, hoping to defeat with undisciplined men an invasion by tried soldiers from the continental wars. The Government had the time and the authority to raise and organize forces, yet plainly preferred to defer to State feelings, and to place its reliance on an announcement that all should be in readiness to "march at an instant's notice" instead of upon whatever discipline and instruction might have been imparted in the ten weeks or more that had been available since the 1st of June. Bladensburg is an example of bad military policy as well as of bad military tactics.

THE BATTLE OF BULL RUN

When South Carolina seceded in 1860 and was soon followed by six other States, the Regular Army of the United States numbered only 16,000 men, without experience in operations or maneuvers of any magnitude, or plans for mobilization. Arrangements had not been made to provide for the soldiers to be raised; supplies of war material were principally in the East; and the Ohio and Mississippi States had little more than "altered flintlocks" and "guns unfit for service"—in fact, "nothing but the men; all else was to be created." General Scott suggested the calling of 300,000 troops for three years; McClellan advocated a stronger force, to stay in the field indefinitely; but political conditions were such that Lincoln asked for 75,000 for three months.

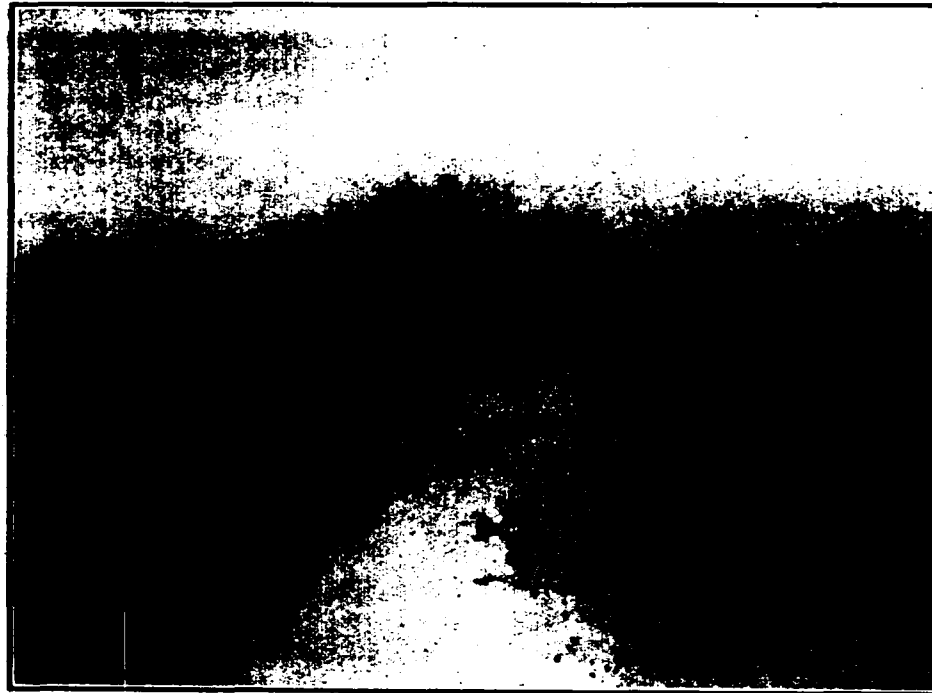
The essential frontier was the line of the Potomac, the Baltimore and Ohio Railroad and the Ohio River. West of the mountains, McClellan advanced against West Virginia: General Patterson was charged with holding Harpers Ferry; in and about the Capital came throngs of raw volunteers to protect the Government. A short advance across the Potomac secured Arlington Heights and Alexandria. On June 10th a reconnaissance in force from Old Point Comfort met a disastrous repulse. Patterson maneuvered about fruitlessly against Joseph Johnston at Winchester until his force began to disintegrate with expiring enlistments. The only encouragement came from McClellan, who won trifling engagements and dispersed the Confederates in his front.

A SPECTACLE FOR CONGRESS

The North was hungry for a real victory. It saw the volunteer army sitting idly around Washington, and clamored for action. It wished the short-term men to have a taste of conflict and give the country a glorious victory before they went home. A new call for troops had gone out, and that able soldier, General Winfield Scott, had advised delay until they could be fitted for the field; but the President ruled against him, and General McDowell was ordered to advance against the enemy position at Manassas Junction and provide a battle which Members of Congress might ride out and see, as if it were a gorgeous spectacle. Thus came about the First Battle of Bull Run—a battle which, in the words of R. M. Johnston, was fought "almost wholly by insufficiently trained and organized volunteers and against the judgment of the military authorities."

On July 16, 1861, with brigades and staffs only formed on the eve of the movement, and therefore inefficient and unpracticed, McDowell's columns marched out of Washington and proceeded toward Centerville by extraordinarily slow

stages. Beauregard, opposing him, learned of the movement the next day and straightway notified Richmond. Johnston, in the Shenandoah, deceived the not-too-quick-witted Patterson, screened his movements with active cavalry, and marched post haste to join Beauregard, who had retired from his forward positions and was preparing to defend the untrenched line of Bull Run. In the meanwhile McDowell came on inefficiently, the men straggling off the road to pick blackberries and occasionally to pillage a trifle here and there, and the com-



The Ruined Bridge Over Bull Run

manders fearfully deploying their entire forces at the faintest suspicions of danger ahead.

Unfamiliar with the country and with the enemy position, McDowell nevertheless made elaborate plans in advance, and Beauregard's outposts retired so quickly, in accordance with orders, that they completely lost touch with the advancing enemy. On the night of the 18th McDowell had his entire command packed in and around Centerville. One portion had pushed ahead in a faulty direction, attacked the Confederates at Blackburn's Ford of Bull Run, nearly routed them, and then withdrew without its commander taking the trouble to make a survey of the enemy strength or to maintain the contact established. McDowell spent the next two days in desultory reconnaissance, and so gave Johnston time to come over from the Shenandoah. On the night of the 20th he started out to

attack the enemy's left along uninvestigated roads. On the same night two militia regiments left for Washington because their terms of service had expired, one of these leaving its artillery guns unattended behind it.

A BATTLE OF BLUNDERS

It was near morning before the troops got started, all jammed onto one road in a perfect example of staff inability to calculate road space, and exposing their own flank to a Confederate attack that had actually been ordered, but was not pushed home for want of a word from the confused commander of the Confederates. The Union troops trod on one another's heels. Some of them took the wrong stream crossing; others were peremptorily detached from their division by McDowell, who interfered on the spot; but sooner or later they arrived successively on the Confederate left and attacked, one after another. Beauregard in turn pulled his units out of the positions in which they had been established with the idea of attacking the Union line of communication and sent them over to the left, one after another. So on both sides, all through the day, the action wore on, each outfit going in where and as it arrived, the ascendancy passing from one side to the other. Johnston's troops from Shenandoah did their part, Kirby Smith arriving at almost the last moment by train. For hours Stonewall Jackson held the top of Henry's Hill, until he judged that his enemies had spent their energy; then he ordered a counter-charge that decided the day. The Union troops broke and left the field. The raw volunteers started for home via Washington, and the grand offensive had come to an end. Unseasoned and undisciplined troops, they had marched all night and fought all day; yet all the succeeding night they streamed along the roads and never paused until they reached the Potomac, a disorganized and motley collection of uniformed men. Sherman's regulars alone kept their heads. "The battalion of regular infantry," says Rhodes, "alone obeyed commands. It covered the volunteers' retreat, which became a rout and then a panic."

COMMENTS

The three months' volunteers had fought their battle and finished their terms of service, and the cause of the Union was worse off than before. Gloom settled on the North. Said McClellan:

"Had we been successful in the recent battle, we might have saved the labor and expense of a great effort; now we have no alternative. Their success will enable the political leaders of the rebels to convince the mass of the people that we are inferior to them in force and in courage, and to command all their resources. . . . We may hope for the permanent restoration of a peaceful Union. But, in the first instance, the authority of the Government must be supported by overwhelming force."

The North had a white population of 22,000,000; the South 5,096,000; the North had all the advantages of superior financial and industrial organization and resources; and the North commanded the seas and was able to maintain an effective blockade. The victory at Bull Run, won by wavering raw troops over other wavering raw troops, heartened the South to continue the unequal struggle.

The emergency which had arisen was one clearly contemplated by the Constitution, which gave the President practically full powers to suppress insurrection against the United States. A sudden and effective blow against the newly formed

Confederacy, struck soon enough to prevent the insurgent organization from taking effective form, would have sustained the law of the country. Such a blow could not be struck, because there were neither materials nor methods, for an effective mobilization. Bull Run was our best effort, the natural result of depending upon untrained troops enlisted for short periods, under amateur officers. If our defensive forces had been sufficiently ready to meet such an insurrection, we should have had a remarkably short war and few pensions. Nor was there any excuse for the inadequacy of preparation.

The doctrine of State sovereignty had been a source of trouble for decades, intensified from year to year by the slavery question. A conflict of ideas had become a conflict of laws. A conflict of laws had become a conflict of people, until the forces were clearly divided by a parallel of latitude. The conflict of the two divergent popular opinions finally became a conflict of rifle and cannon. The conflict ceased to be an argument in constitutional law and became an attack upon the law of the land itself and upon its makers and executors. It took armed force to restore the law. As General Sherman later wrote to General Meigs:

"From 1861 to 1865 the Supreme Court was absolutely paralyzed; its decrees and writs were treated with contempt south of the Potomac and the Ohio; it could not summon a witness or send a deputy marshal. War and the armed power of the nation alone removed the barrier and restored to the United States courts their lawful jurisdiction."

Because the law and the Constitution were lacking in efficient, trained, powerful enforcement agents in 1861, and because the United States depended mainly on hastily raised and organized raw troops, the Battle of Bull Run was lost to other hastily raised and organized raw troops, who could have been overcome in short order by efficient forces. Because the Battle of Bull Run was lost, the war dragged on and sapped the man power of the country, but gradually developed troop leaders of the requisite skill and gradually required men for longer and longer terms of service.

THE REMEDY

I began with a quotation. I shall end with one. This one is not from an anonymous editorial writer, but from the words of a man whose chiefest reputation in the future shall rest more upon his work for the preparation for national defense of the future than upon his splendid leadership of the American Expeditionary Forces. These are the words of General Pershing:

"The act of June 4, 1920, lays down for the first time in our history a national policy for the military forces of the United States. . . . Before the World War a definite and comprehensive plan was impracticable. Our military forces were too limited and there was no legal sanction for the development of such a system. Since the World War, with the large number of war-trained officers available, with the initiation of a system for the training of younger men ultimately to replace them, with more adequate sources of military equipment and material, and with a settled legal sanction for the development and training of our traditional citizen army in time of peace, we are able to prepare definite plans for what has aptly been termed 'A National Position in Readiness.'"

Co-operation Between Cavalry and Air Service

BY

Major LEO G. HEFFERMAN, Air Service

IN this article it is intended to cover the operations that have actually been held by the 2nd Division Air Service with the First Cavalry Division, and at the same time present such conclusions and suggestions as are believed applicable as a result of this co-operative training.

Though the present tables of organization do not provide Air Service for a Cavalry Division, nevertheless, the Cavalry Division is the only division of any type in the United States that is actually operating with a Division Air Service. Infantry Divisions are entitled to certain Air Service organizations but, due to various other functions required of the Air Service in peace time, it is necessary that these Air Service units be assigned to stations at points where such functions can be performed, and away from the parent organization, viz: the Infantry Division. For the above reasons, and they are good, the 2nd Division Air Service has been taken away from the 2nd Infantry Division and located at the strategical and tactical post, Fort Bliss, Texas, where it performs the distant border reconnaissance formerly allotted to Cavalry outposts, thereby permitting greater concentration of the 1st Cavalry Division.

COMPOSITION OF DIVISION AIR SERVICE

At this point it might be well to define a Division Air Service. Each Division Air Service consists of one observation squadron, one photo section, and a detachment of Medical Personnel. The entire combined strength of these units is 33 officers and 157 enlisted men. The Observation Squadron has an authorized allowance of 31 officers and 132 men; the Photo Section 1 officer and 20 men, and the attached Medical, 1 officer and 5 enlisted men. Forty-two men and 5 officers of the 2nd Division Air Service are detached at Fort Sam Houston for operation with the 2nd Infantry Division and the Medical Personnel at Fort Bliss consists of only one officer and one enlisted man. In time of actual warfare, balloon companies would be attached as needed to the Division Air Service from the Corps Air Service.

The 1st Cavalry Division has but one brigade in continual operation with the Air Service; the brigade stationed at Fort Bliss. In addition the auxiliary troops, viz: Engineers, Artillery, etc., are stationed with the Headquarters of the Cavalry Division, and have profited by the combined operations.

COOPERATION WITH CAVALRY

Successful co-operation of Cavalry and Air Service demands that each branch on its reconnaissance work be assigned definite missions. To the Air Service in reconnaissance work would fall, in particular, reconnaissance missions from one to three days march to the front of a Cavalry independent command. On the flanks, reconnaissance to a depth of one or two days march

should give sufficient protection.⁶ It is contemplated in time of war that Air Service be assigned to Cavalry only when the Cavalry is acting independently or as Infantry.

Successful co-operation requires successful communication, which may be obtained by use of (a) radio telegraphy, (b) panels, (c) pyrotechnics, (d) projectors, (e) dropped messages and carrier pigeons. The signal plan of operation of Cavalry and Air Service is well covered in the plan of signal communication issued to all units in the 1st Cavalry Division. Occasionally there have been failures in our radio communication and even with improved equipment it is doubtful if such failures can ever be entirely eliminated. For this reason a method of communication independent of mechanical means should be held in reserve, both the air and ground forces being in readiness to put the reserve means into use. Under certain conditions the use of dropped messages from plane to ground, and panels from ground to plane, will be the most desirable means of communication. However, the proper use of panels requires a complete mutual understanding between the observer and the ground unit.

An Air Service unit will accompany an independent Cavalry command on the march, moving its airdromes as the command moves. An Air Service liaison officer should accompany the staff of the Cavalry command to select airdromes and to act as adviser in the employment of the Air Service units.

The types of missions performed by an Air Service unit with Cavalry, are: (a) reconnaissance missions, (b) Artillery missions, (c) liaison missions, (d) contact missions, (e) command missions, and (f) courier missions. As stated before, the airplanes will penetrate to a greater depth when operating with independent Cavalry than when operating with the Infantry Division.

RECONNAISSANCE MISSIONS

In reconnaissance missions the object is to gather information of (1) the location, nature, disposition and activities of enemy forces; (2) enemy road and railroad circulation, (3) enemy works, establishments and general defensive and offensive organization, (4) the military topography of the enemy terrain, including the location of good watering places, especially in operations over country similar to the Southwest.

These reconnaissance missions may be either visual or photographic, or a combination of the two. Aerial photography is a necessity in modern warfare and is most useful in operations over poorly mapped territory. A mosaic of the line of march for the succeeding day can be accomplished by a single aerial mission. Photographs taken during the afternoon can be placed in the hands of all units the same evening. Two or three days march could be photographed when desired, thus avoiding the necessity of ground reconnaissances to obtain similar information.

•LIAISON MISSIONS

The purpose of liaison missions is (a) to keep the command informed as to the activities of the different friendly units, (b) to observe and transmit signals of the advance elements, (c) to observe and transmit signals from

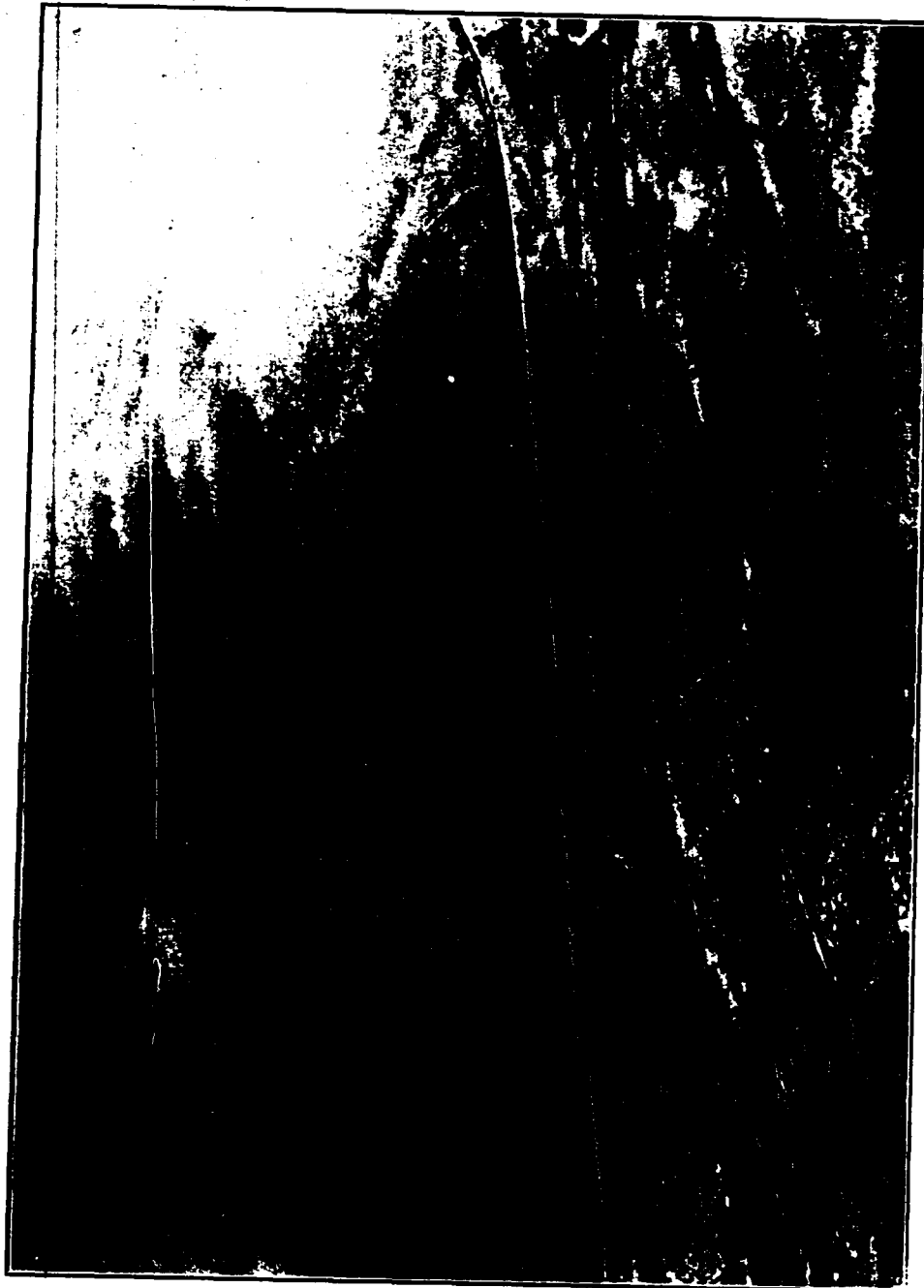


Photo By First Photo Section

Truck Train on the Road

command posts, (d) in general, to assist the Commanding Officer in maintaining communication with his units.

CONTACT MISSIONS

Contact missions serve the purpose (1) of keeping the command informed of the location of the enemy advance elements, (2) of aiding our own attacking troops by (a) informing the friendly advance troops of the location and nature of obstacles, (b) by assisting advance troops in the reduction of such obstacles and (c) preventing surprise enemy concentrations for counter attack. Contact missions are assigned only during active contact with the enemy, otherwise these functions are performed by the liaison observer.

ARTILLERY MISSIONS

Artillery adjustment missions have for their object the observation of artillery fire and are used only when terrestrial observation is impracticable. Further, observation balloons are used for this work whenever the target is not defiladed from them and is within their visible range, the airplane observer conducting all other adjustments. The effectiveness of artillery adjustments using aerial observation is measured by the training and mutual understanding between the aerial observers and the ground details. It is futile to suppose that either can do their work without training. Usually, practice employing the same personnel for a number of problems is the best means of obtaining the desired results. Full cooperation and mutual confidence will make possible the infliction of great damage to even moving targets, provided communication is rapid and reliable, and will allow the artillery to make adjustments otherwise denied to them.

In addition to the adjustment mission, artillery surveillance missions are sometimes employed. This mission is in the nature of a patrol and has for its object the transmission of information in which the artillery is primarily interested, such as reports on barrage or other sustained firing, and the location and adjustment on vulnerable targets.

COMMAND MISSIONS

Command missions are dispatched by the command before or during an action (a) to obtain some particular information, (b) to verify information received from other sources, (c) to observe some particular area or route, (d) or to allow a staff officer to survey the operation or reconnoiter the theatre of operations.

COURIER MISSIONS

Courier missions are for the purpose of delivering orders, dispatches, mail, photographs, maps, and other needed material, when time is an important element, or the usual means of transportation are lacking. The morale of front line troops can often be raised by providing, in this way, such non-essentials as cigarettes, personal mail, newspapers, etc. Courier missions can be accomplished by night as well as by day, and are particularly valuable when roads are poor or congested and when great distances are involved.

CAVALRY, DISMOUNTED

Whenever Cavalry is placed in a line of battle as Infantry, it is assigned

Air Service units on an equal basis with a like strength of Infantry. The missions of the Air Service are as above outlined.

PHOTOGRAPHIC MISSIONS

Aerial photographs, both vertical and oblique, are very valuable when properly used. Such photographs may often do away with the necessity for making road sketches by the tedious and slow methods ordinarily employed. Where no maps are available, suitable mosaics may be made to supply the demand; or routes or areas may be photographed to secure details for existing maps.

In a war of maneuver, troops will be seeking in late afternoon bivouacs or camps for the night; while there still remains sufficient light a photographic mission should be dispatched to locate the main bodies. The bivouacs or camps will not be far from the points photographed. Many times during the Marfa maneuvers the troops were caught by photographs moving into camps.

Photographic missions should be made at every opportunity, not only because of their value in reconnaissance, but also for comparison with previous photographs of the same ground. Such comparison often divulges information which cannot otherwise be obtained. Prior to the holding of the Marfa Maneuvers the entire country over which the maneuvers were held, was photographed and made up into a mosaic, from which all maps were corrected or remade by the Engineers. These maps were very good because the photographs furnished with accuracy all necessary data for supplying detail.

SPECIAL CONSIDERATIONS

With advance Cavalry there is generally no special Air Service assigned, this is likewise true of flank Cavalry. Any Air Service required by such Cavalry organizations is attached by corps or army orders, depending on the amount of independent work required of the Cavalry command.

The Air Service usually performs liaison missions between the Cavalry and main body. Aerial reconnaissance and reconnaissance by the Cavalry is coordinated by the commander responsible for the employment of both.

The Air Service reconnaissance will more particularly be concerned with forces of larger size than a squadron. Assembled troops numbering one hundred or more men are picked up from the air very readily in most any kind of terrain. In country like that of the Southwest United States it would be hard for an enemy force the size of a troop to remain concealed for any length of time. In operations in open country I believe it is more important for a Division Air Service to be assigned to Cavalry Divisions than Infantry Divisions. The observer on the ground in open country can see very well what is in the immediate front, but the problem of the commander cannot be solved until he knows, in detail, the whole situation within his sphere of action. This requires reconnaissance, to a depth appropriate to the command concerned. Such reconnaissance can be most efficiently performed from the air. In wooded country the Cavalry must do its own close reconnaissance, because the Air Service cannot always discover small detachments under cover of

trees. As large bodies disclose themselves by camps or other concentrations, distant reconnaissance can be accomplished by Air Service in any type of terrain.

In delegating missions of reconnaissance to Cavalry and Air Service the commander and staff must take into consideration the extent of territory that can be effectively covered by each arm. With airplanes available, it is not economical to employ Cavalry patrols to find the camp of the enemy, or the roads on which an enemy is approaching. This is a proper function of the Air Service. Again Air Service should not be called upon to search out small numbers of men in the immediate front of a Cavalry command, when such detachments cannot materially influence the action, and when the airplane thus employed could be more profitably employed giving information of a more general nature.

The Air Service has extended the depths of reconnaissance and, by photographs, visualizes much that is reported by patrols. If used as it should be it will afford a saving in horses and men, thus allowing a commander to conserve his troops for combat.

In territory such as that comprising the southwest portion of the United States, practically all engagements would be fought by Cavalry and Artillery, the reconnaissance falling in large part to Air Service. In case of the taking of strong points or cities, or to accomplish destruction beyond the range of Artillery, the Air Service would assist the combat by bombing.

In any operation it is the duty of the staff and commander to decide what missions can be best accomplished by each arm. Proper missions assigned as the result of proper decisions, with the proper cooperation means a favorable decision for our own troops.

COOPERATIVE TRAINING

The command at Fort Bliss has been very fortunate in having a Signal Officer who has realized the requirements for successful co-operation of Cavalry, Air Service, and auxiliary units. Well instructed panel details and radio sections in the different units are of paramount importance. Without these trained sections there can be no cooperation. An airplane can serve no liaison purpose if radio messages sent down cannot be received, if the panel detail does not know when to display a panel for the reception of dropped messages, or if the panel detail is unable to use panels making known the wants of the troops on the ground. It may be therefore stated as a fact that to secure good results, the headquarters of each unit with which observation Air Service is operating, must have well trained communication sections.

The burden of this training falls on the Division Signal Officer but the co-operation of each unit Signal Officer is essential.

TEST FOR TRAINING

The maneuvers held in the fall of 1923, at Marfa, Texas, furnished a good test of the co-operative training held at Fort Bliss by the Cavalry and the Air Service. These maneuvers first of all proved that Air Service supplies and personnel can be transported along with the main body of marching cav-

Photo By First Photo Section

Cavalry Division in Camp

alry on the poorest of roads. The transportation section of the Air Service made the march from Fort Bliss to Marfa, a distance of 200 miles by road, in two days, following the predetermined schedule. Some of the roads passed over were deep with mud, but still the trucks arrived on scheduled time. The planes made the flight to Marfa in two hours, arriving at Marfa the same day as the truck train. While the cavalry was on the march from Fort Bliss to Marfa, daily liaison and courier missions were dispatched.

At Marfa each problem mapped out for the combatting brigades of cavalry, assigned to the Air Service definite missions of reconnaissance, liaison, photography, or courier. The type of country was open, broken up here and there by small ravines or low mountains, ideal for cavalry action, but poor for concealing movements from the Air Service. All our missions were successful with the exception of one radio telephonic failure on an artillery adjustment mission.

To prevent constant surveillance by the Air Service over the combat sector, each side had a time limit in which aerial reconnaissances were to be made. This time limit was prescribed to simulate opposition by a superior air force. Had not this condition prevailed, the smallest detachments of cavalry could have been kept under constant observation. As it was, the Air Service of each side, was able in the time limit to locate the main body and reserves with no trouble whatsoever, as well as furnish additional detailed information.

These operations left no doubt that movements in open country cannot be concealed by troops when opposed by an active Air Service. Due to the advantage of rapid maneuver, cavalry is the only type of ground troops that could be used effectively in such country. The movement across open country will be facilitated if the cavalry commander knows from Air Service reports that such country is not occupied by enemy forces.

Such open country is not without advantage, however, for as was demonstrated during the Marfa maneuvers, the airplane can at times land near the headquarters of the commander thus enabling the crew to receive explicit instructions direct from the Commanding General or one of his staff.

SUMMARY

Our Army relies upon the offensive and a plan of movement. This means warfare very different from that of the late World War. Of all fighting in the recent war, the campaign in Palestine most nearly approached a real war of movement. In this campaign Cavalry and Air Service brought it to a successful conclusion. However, only Infantry Divisions have been provided with Air Service. This should be changed to provide Air Service units with Cavalry Divisions, in order to accomplish the rapid offensive movements upon which we rely for success. These same units could, if necessary, be used with Infantry Divisions after the Cavalry action had given way to infantry action.

Our Air Service should be used in the rapid gathering and dissemination of information and hence be an aid to the most advance elements viz. the Cavalry; acting as part of the command of the independent cavalry or in conjunction with the Cavalry under corps or army orders.

German Ideas on Modern Cavalry

COMMENTS AND TRANSLATION

BY

Colonel H. S. HAWKINS, 3rd Cavalry

UNDER the heading given above there has appeared in the *Revue de Cavalerie* for September-October, 1924, an article by Captain Brown De Colstoun, French Army, the translation of which follows these preliminary remarks.

This article is of special importance to us now for the following reasons:

a. It expresses the views of the Chief of Staff to General von Posec, who became Chief of Cavalry of the German Army during the World War.

b. It is the first time that we in America have seen in print a European expression of the principles that were emphasized at our Cavalry School upon its foundation in 1919.

c. While these principles were taught at the Cavalry School they were not and, as far as known, are not generally understood in the service. The new Field Service Regulations do not emphasize these principles, and therefore our officers are not being led to comprehend the true role and the true value of Cavalry. Such misunderstanding or misinformation on the part of our future commanders of Army Corps and Armies is a serious matter which should be corrected at once.

d. The principles specially referred to are briefly as follows:

(1) The chief and most important role of modern Cavalry is its participation in the battle of the force to which it is assigned or attached, in order to be utilized as *special troops* to attack or strike at the key point or most sensitive point of the enemy.

(2) Strictly speaking Cavalry is not an auxiliary arm to the Infantry. It does cooperate with Infantry and at some points replaces Infantry. The Cavalry should therefore be regarded as special troops and not auxiliary troops. The artillery is auxiliary to both infantry and cavalry and does not fight separately. This explains the difference between cavalry and artillery, or other corps and branches, in their relation to infantry.

(3) The mounted attack of large as well as small units is quite as important as the dismounted attack. It is the *method* of mounted attack (deployments laterally and in depth instead of close order) that has undergone a change.

(4) In order to carry out its principal role in great and important operations, a division of cavalry operating alone is not sufficient. We must foresee and contemplate cavalry corps and even cavalry armies. Many attempts to use cavalry for this mission have failed due to the weakness of the force employed. A proper appreciation of this principle would undoubtedly have won the World War for the Germans in

1914, and again in the spring of 1918.

(5) It is of great importance that the high commanding generals understand the role of this arm that may form part of their commands, that they spare it as much as possible from the fatigues of accessory roles and save it for its principal role. And finally, that they issue to it definite and precise orders as to its participation in the operations.

In addition to these principles in which American cavalry officers heartily concur, it may be of interest to state that we further believe that the introduction of improved rapid firing weapons will make the mounted advance in extended order, terminating in close combat, mounted or dismounted, a frequent rather than an exceptional occurrence in the attack against hostile foot troops. This is, of course, contrary to the prevailing ideas before the World War. But such action is made possible and even necessary by the fact that rapid movement is the best defense against modern weapons including the menace of gas and airplanes; and the support given during the attack by such weapons in our own hands adds another reason for venturing the quick and decisive results of mounted action. This has an important bearing on the role of cavalry and increases the strength of our belief in the principal role of cavalry as stated above and in the expediency of attempting it.

In connection with the means by which this great mission (to attack the enemy in battle at his most vital spot), may be accomplished, the following prediction is also ventured—a proper and skillful cooperation between cavalry on the ground and airplanes in the air has tactical possibilities that may be of great importance. To bring this about, the air service and the cavalry should understand each other thoroughly, and each should be provided in large numbers. Conversely, the cavalry, through its ability to disperse rapidly into small groups and to advance rapidly across country in such formation, is the arm best able to protect itself against attack by hostile airplanes.

The translation follows:

* * * * *

Under the title "*Studies on Modern Cavalry taken from the experiences of the War*," there has recently appeared in Germany an article by Lieutenant Colonel Brandt, Chief of Staff to the Inspector General of the Cavalry.

These studies are inspired, it is true, especially by the examples and the possibilities of the eastern front, and the author remarks that in Europe the Cavalry becomes more and more valuable as one travels towards the East. But by the spirit of analysis which is there revealed, by the ideas therein exposed, by the historical examples that they illustrate, and finally by a certain evolution which they already indicate as to the post-war German regulations, notably in the matter of exploration and employment of cavalry in great masses, they deserve to retain a moment of our attention.

It appears interesting therefore to make known these ideas to those who, in France also, wish to find out where and how cavalry may find its best utilization in future war.

It is almost a postulate for Lieutenant Colonel Brandt that the missions of cavalry have not changed. "To reconnoiter and observe the enemy, to cover, cooperate toward the decision in battle, to exploit the success or cover the retreat, have been and remain the tasks demanded of this arm. They depend on the employment of the principal equipment of Cavalry—the horse.

But, from time to time, under the influence of the modifications that the perfection of armament and new inventions have brought to the methods of combat of the various arms, the Cavalry has sought its principal employment in the execution of one or the other of its tasks.

What will be the essential mission of modern Cavalry? Such is the question which he proposes to answer.

Covering (Screening):—The reasons which militate in favor of the employment of cavalry in covering duties have an incontestable value. Its mobility permits it to hold wide fronts, to withdraw from difficult situations more easily than cyclists or infantry in trucks could do; then, once this mission is terminated to group itself rapidly at the point where it will find employment. Moreover, the concentration of an army remains by this means longer hidden to the enemy, because the veil will commence to rise for him only when he shall have identified elements other than the cavalry.

It is none the less true that this is only an accessory role of cavalry, that may impose upon it such fatigue that it finds itself prematurely used up.

This was the case in 1914 in regard to certain divisions of German Cavalry, so much that General von Posec has written the following lines concerning three cavalry divisions (7th, 8th, and Bavarian) employed in covering duties in Lorraine:

"The goings and comings had so exhausted the horses that two divisions reported that they were no longer fit for combat by reason of the overworking of their horses. The tasks for which whole divisions of cavalry had been maintained in a restricted zone would have been as well fulfilled by mixed detachments reinforced by regiments of cavalry."

It is in the employment of cyclists, infantry in trucks and special formations for covering duties that Colonel Brandt sees the means of helping out the cavalry as much as possible in this primary phase of a campaign and of thus sparing it from fatigues that may compromise gravely its ulterior activity.

Exploration:—Heretofore, strategic exploration has been one of the principal missions for cavalry. Before the World War it was the principal mission.

Even today one would not know how to do without the cavalry for exploration; aviation, infantry in trucks, cyclists and armored cars may reinforce it, but not replace it.

Aviators, in truth, cannot always fly; if they procure negative information, this has often only a limited value; they do not make prisoners, they do not cover, they do not keep the contact, they do not assure the possession of the terrain.

Cyclists and automobiles lose all value if they have no good roads and Lieutenant Colonel Brandt cites the following example:

"In Rumania, a cyclist brigade was added at Cracow, to the cavalry corps

of von Schmettow. To Bucharest there was a good road, and the weather was dry, so that the cyclists could be often employed. After Bucharest, during the march toward Sereth, there were no longer any good roads. The black mud collected so thickly on the bicycles that they could not run; they could not even be pushed, to say nothing of riding them. The trucks, which carried the machine guns of the cyclists, were also immobilized. There was nothing to do but abandon the bicycles and automobiles and to constitute with the elements of the cyclist brigade two feeble battalions of light foot troops.

"In Lithuania and in Courland, in 1915, it was necessary similarly to abandon the bicycles on account of the bad state of roads.

"In similar countries only the cavalry was utilizable in exploration."

Cavalry remains then indispensable for this role, but this is no longer its essential mission.

In fact, the help that the development of aviation brings to it, the spies and the means of transmission of information permit it to free itself of certain tasks that it had until the present time to assume alone.

The character of exploration is modified to such a degree that, the greater part of the time, it will be for the cavalry hardly a question of distant exploration.

Moreover, the information near and far that was demanded of cavalry has lost its value, because the development of means of transport permits the enemy today to make such rapid movements of forces as to render worthless the intelligence previously gathered and upsets all the old calculations of time and space.

The observation of such movements is incumbent upon aviation.

On the ground, a close reconnaissance will be sufficient, which gains in importance, but which can be assured by corps cavalry suitably reenforced.

"Thus, the boundary between distant exploration and close exploration disappears; reconnaissance of distant objectives, the principal aim of strategic exploration, goes to aviation. Cavalry finds itself freed to this extent in the accomplishment of a mission which, until the present, absorbed the greater part of its strength. It regains thus the liberty to point itself, with much less trouble than formerly, towards its principal destination: to cooperate in battle by intervening in the combat."

However, if it happens that terrestrial exploration must be pushed to several days march from the army, the cavalry alone is fit, thanks to its mobility, to do it well.

For a short distance detachments of all arms can well be employed, but to send them so far that they may not be supported within a day's march by their supporting units, would be to expose them to certain destruction. Their role is always delicate: if they refuse combat they often fail to accomplish their missions; if they become engaged they run the risk of being destroyed.

"In October, 1914, a division of Siberian infantry, pushed in front, was opposed near Grojec, between Radom and Varsovie, to the advance of the 8th German Army in Poland. It engaged in combat, and this decision of its chief was fatal to it. The brave Siberians experienced extraordinarily heavy and bloody

losses, and only the remnants of the division succeeded in escaping to Varsovie. It had barely checked the march of the 8th Army a few hours. Only a mobile force—Cavalry—could have avoided annihilation and done well the mission that was confided to that division: To delay the enemy and reconnoiter his forces."

As to the conception which prevailed on the German side in 1914, to assign to each army one or several divisions of cavalry, to assure the exploration on its front, "it ended only in an unlucky dispersion of the cavalry." Space was lacking between the adverse armies to move the cavalry and there was, so to speak, no exploration. It was there an affair for aviation and for the corps or divisional cavalry, the latter reenforced at need by elements of other arms.

In any case a mission of exploration of this kind must be coupled with a mission of delay which surpasses it in importance.

With the means that cavalry actually has at its disposal, it is an organ of combat much too precious for the high command to deprive itself of or to expend it before the battle in far away missions of purely strategical exploration.

The Cavalry Duel—A primary consequence of the place thus given above to exploration is that combat against the hostile cavalry can no longer be sought as a principle.

Moreover, it is no longer a question of an encounter with the arme blanche that, in a few minutes, must put out of action the enemy cavalry and cause it to disappear.

We are today "under the reign of the machine gun" and an adversary, although weaker, can hold for a long time an assailant under its fire; the decision will often be obtained only after several long and painful hours of effort.

Taking in consideration the fact that the combat against the hostile cavalry is no longer a brief episode, but rather an affair of long duration, the chief will have to decide if his mission permits him to engage the enemy cavalry in the combat so ardently desired.

The experience of the war has moreover proved—even on the eastern front where encounters of cavalry were more frequent—that the opposing cavalry forces do not attract each other, as one supposed, in the manner of two lovers. This would perhaps be true in the case of equal masses, but it is unreasonable that a strong cavalry should attract to it a weak one.

Thus, when at the end of November, 1916, in Rumania the cavalry corps of Schmettow had crossed the Oltu, a division of Rumanian cavalry appeared before him. The arrival of the latter could not be attributed to the attraction that the German cavalry corps might have exercised over it, and we can rather believe that it resulted from its mission, which required it probably to throw back the German cavalry across the river. The instant long awaited of a great battle of cavalry appeared then to have arrived. In expectation of this encounter the two divisions of German cavalry were assembled in close order ready for a common action. But suddenly their power of magnetic attraction disappeared. The division of Rumanian cavalry had probably recognized in time the superiority of the German forces and it disappeared without bringing on a combat.

Schmettow's cavalry corps did not allow itself to be led away by the Rumanian cavalry, because it would have been diverted from its principal mission. It would be useless to discuss the attitude of the Rumanian cavalry division as long as one does not know either its mission or the circumstances which provoked its conduct. But it would have been, during the following days, a troublesome adversary for the German cavalry corps, if it had hung on, which it could certainly have done while avoiding engagement in a decisive affair.

In future wars a battle between the two cavalry forces will not then be an end in itself.

If the received mission leads to an engagement it will be necessary as formerly to go to the limit in order to bring about a quick success.

But a leader of Cavalry will decide to engage it only after mature reflection; he runs in fact the danger of allowing himself to be tied to and fixed in a combat of long duration, in which success lies often with the weaker side that succeeds in turning a greater force from its mission.

Participation in the main battles—We touch here at the heart of the subject.

A cavalry division, says Lieutenant Colonel Brandt, is a unit of combat just like an infantry division. Cavalry is not like other arms an auxiliary to infantry; it can replace infantry.

But it has its peculiarities that the high command must know well in order to know how to employ it usefully and to obtain from it the maximum service.

In fact, upon the orders that it receives depends in great measure its success or non-success.

It is essential to give it its mission with precision, and if it is given several missions, the principal mission must be clearly defined; the execution of the latter must not be endangered by finding itself compromised by others.

If we wish to utilize fully its essential quality, mobility, we must be led to employ the cavalry outside of the armies, and consequently on the wings or in the intervals, since experience has shown that there was no place for it in front.

With the great fronts and the long duration of modern battles it is no longer necessary to maintain the cavalry very near the armies. A cavalry that sticks close to its army rarely attains the sensitive point of the enemy and strikes most often at a front already prolonged. On the contrary, by separating itself boldly it finds the more frequent occasions of putting to profit its power of fire, by surprise, there where the enemy cannot parry the blow at the right time.

To assist in gaining the decision by acting offensively in the main battle at the sensitive point of the enemy,—therein lies the principal task of modern Cavalry. This has been moreover the task of cavalry always; we have simply forgotten it from time to time.

All the wars wherein the importance of this essential mission has been misunderstood mark a period of decline in the history of cavalry. Why, on the contrary, are the wars of Frederick the Second and Napoleon the First, rich in incomparable exploits of cavalry? It is not because the firearms were less efficacious: a frontal attack of cavalry against an unshaken infantry had then as

little chance of success as today. But it is rather that the two great captains saw the principal role of their cavalry in an incessant intervention in battle. Recognizing that a decisive success was obtained only by the action of a very important force, they united the mass of their cavalry under the command of a chief and strove to hurl it by surprise upon the weakest point of the enemy.

There is the law of all times; the means change but the idea remains; it is a question of adapting the means to the idea.

Being given the effectives engaged in a modern war, the intervention in battle of a division of cavalry will be only the exception; the union, for this purpose, of several divisions of cavalry into a cavalry corps and even that of several corps of cavalry will be the rule.

The single experience of the western front can give to this subject false ideas, yet it may be certain that in August, 1914, an army of German cavalry operating on the right wing could have had a decisive action.

And again, the employment of the cavalry army of Buddeny, for example, in the war of the Bolsheviki in 1919-1920, responded to the requirements of the particular situation in the Polish theater of operations.

In Palestine the English had constituted the "Desert Mounted Corps" composed of four divisions of cavalry and a camel brigade. It is to this corps, almost exclusively, that they owe their success.

The modern means of communication make the command of an army of cavalry quite as possible as that of any other army.

But it is not sufficient to unite several cavalry divisions under the same command; it is necessary to effect *surprise*. The idea, very wide spread, "that in war one always has time" would be disastrous for the cavalry.

Mobility, rapidity, skill, are the elements of surprise.

In order to surprise the sensitive point of the enemy it will frequently happen that the cavalry must go far to seek it and that it must for several days make long marches of 40 to 50 miles. It is necessary that it be prepared and that it knows how to make these marches without using itself up; it must also know how to take rests which permits in particular the examination of the shoeing; "this was not always the case for the German cavalry in Lithuania in 1915."

Colonel Brandt thinks that an example of the judicious employment of the cavalry at the beginning of an important campaign is offered by the Polish campaign of 1920 against the Bolsheviki.

In April 1920, a Polish cavalry division advancing in front of the infantry was directed on Koziatyn, a village situated about 160 kilometers behind the Russian front, seat of the Q. G. of a Russian army and an important railway center, with a view of seizing this locality and of maintaining itself there until the arrival of the infantry. The Russian front was thin and presented holes, it had the aspect of a network of advance posts rather than that of a continuous front. The Polish cavalry succeeded without difficulty in breaking through the enemy line. It reached Koziatyn after 38 hours of marching, having had at only one point to engage in a short combat; it seized the village after a combat on foot

of long duration. If found itself thus on the back of the Russians and could render useless the important railway of Kiev. To the material success that the taking of the village represented was added besides, for the Poles, the great moral effect that always accompanies the first success at the beginning of a campaign.

Colonel Brandt draws, further, out of this combat of Koziatyn two lessons in detail.

"The Polish cavalry rested two hours 20 kilometers north of Koziatyn and went from there, at 4 o'clock in the afternoon, directly toward the south in three columns in order to attack the village. The attack was to be made by surprise: it had then been ordered to move at a gallop to the outskirts of the locality and not to dismount until there. Although the surprise of the Bolsheviks was complete and in spite of the order given to advance mounted as long as possible, the regiments dismounted too soon; they had at certain points to proceed more than two kilometers on foot. They thus gave the Bolsheviks time to recover from this first surprise and to organize fairly well a resistance."

"The energetic intervention of a divisional general was necessary to make the best out of this excess of prudence.

"But the time lost could not be regained and the attack miscarried that day. The Poles succeeded only the next day in taking the village after having renewed the attack at an early hour."

If the cavalry wishes to surprise, it must not dismount at the first shots of the enemy. A few shots should not stop its progress if it takes appropriate formations, like infantry, when it enters the zone of hostile fire, opening out even wider so as to permit rapidity of movement.

"At the same time that they attacked Koziatyn, the Poles had cut the railways terminating in the village. As, the next day, the Polish cavalrymen attacked on foot the railway station, they were surprised by the arrival of a Russian armoured train which opened fire against them. This train had repaired the road destroyed the evening before. This incident proves that it is indispensable to guard the destructions made while one fights around a junction of railways."

The question of surprise, realized thanks to long and rapid marches, brings up that of attaching infantry to a cavalry division.

It is not necessary that the mobility of cavalry be diminished thereby: the mounted troops must, in any case, constitute the principal part of the division and be able to separate themselves from the infantry reinforcement while at the same time keeping a sufficient combative strength.

"The strengthening of the fire action of a cavalry division to the detriment of its mobility, as we see it in the various divisions said to be 'light' and born of experience on the western front, will in the future surely appear as an error."

Similar divisions have failed in the operations of cavalry in Lithuania and in Courland, at the battle of Wilna, in Rumania, in Palestine, in the expedition already mentioned of the Poles against Koziatyn and in the running combats with which the Turks fought the Greeks in Asia Minor.

"On bad roads, in bad weather or without communication to the rear, only

cavalry remained mobile and fit for combat."

The best solution, in the mind of Colonel Brandt, consists in maintaining in the division the former number of cavalry regiments, and in reinforcing it by other arms, in particular by infantry with rapid means of transport.

It is necessary, moreover, that the troopers be well led and instructed, the horses trained and fit to resist the fatigue of long marches.

One must in fact reckon with the eventual impossibility of utilizing the railways and great trains of automobile transport, either on account of the poor system of railways or roads, or by reason of the bombardments by aviators or by artillery at long range; the advantage will then be with that one of the adversaries who will have mobile forces able to move rapidly by their own means. "A strong cavalry thus employed will be able in future battle to play the same role as that of the cavalry of Frederick II in Silesia."

From this point of view, the conditions of the eastern front give to cavalry a special value; it finds there the necessary space for its movements. But, at the beginning of a war, there will be portions of the frontier weakly guarded. At these points the cavalry will be able to break through before the armies are put in march, it will hamper the concentration of the enemy and oblige the latter to make dispositions that may upset his plan of operations.

Finally, on the flanks of the enemy, the cavalry corps will find space for its employment: they will menace the communications of the enemy, attack his columns, steal away by night, then appear the next day at a new point, 30 to 40 miles from the first.

Employment as a reserve in the break-through—Before the war we did not admit the idea of keeping cavalry inactive while infantry was fighting; we engaged it even when we knew that there was not much of importance to expect by its intervention.

The continuous fronts of the world war have made of primary importance the question of the employment of cavalry as a general reserve and its utilization in case of a break-through.

The author makes a distinction here between a break-through in a war of movement and a break-through after stabilization.

In war of movement there are intervals or flanks where the employment of cavalry is quite obvious; this happened equally as much on the western front as on the eastern front. Nevertheless, we can see that at the beginning of operations, before the covering force of the enemy had been broken through, or rather when the enemy has closed up the holes in which the cavalry has already been able to operate, the latter may be usefully maintained in reserve.

We could imagine also a cavalry initially reserved in order to be launched at the important point when the situation clears up, with a view to bring about a decision, after the manner of Frederick II and of Napoleon. But a result should be expected only by the intervention of a large mass of cavalry. The world war does not offer us any examples.

Will the future furnish the cavalry with the occasion for such decisive inter-

vention? Nobody knows. Perhaps the very slowing down of infantry by material that renders it still more slow and more dependent on roads will work for us cavalymen. This indicates in any case that the way to develop the power of cavalry is to preserve its mobility.

As to the employment of cavalry in a break-through it may be said that it must be engaged only when the breach really exists. It may then make the most of its rapidity in order to prevent the arrival of enemy reserves, to prevent the breach from closing, or to act against the parties on the enemy front who are still holding out.

The delicate point for the cavalry leader consists in deciding to what place he will push and when he will throw himself towards one or the other of the enemy wings. As a general rule—and so long as the enemy lets him go free—if he seeks a success of great magnitude, he will push far and not engage himself too soon, in order that he may penetrate deeply and gain the rear of the enemy.

In a war of positions, one resolves more easily to keep the cavalry as a reserve. It can then serve in effecting reliefs at various points of the front. But only in case of absolute need and for short periods should the cavalry be maintained on foot on the defensive.

It must be able in one case to oppose itself to a break through by the enemy and in another case to be launched against an enemy in retreat.

"At the time of their attack with Tanks near Cambrai in the Autumn of 1917, the English, after having destroyed the obstacles and having taken possession of the German position, pushed the cavalry into the breach. The same thing happened on the 8th of August 1918, when the left wing of the II German Army was broken. But, in both circumstances, the German Command succeeded in rapidly corking the hole before it was made deeper, because the British cavalry that was employed was too weak to obtain a great success. This shows again that only forces of considerable strength of cavalry can have a decisive influence upon the issue of a battle. At Cambrai the English could have engaged a sufficient force of cavalry, because they had at their disposal five divisions of cavalry in the neighborhood of the breach; but only the fractions of three divisions were used. The reasons for this parsimony are not known."

On the German side, Garnier's Cavalry Corps comprising five cavalry divisions was engaged in the gap made at the battle of Vilna. In the region of Vilkomir, to the north of Vilna, it had at the outset to fight by itself to make the breach. It had to struggle for several days and to throw the Russians towards the east before being able to launch itself to the south in order to take in reverse the Russian corps that were still fighting at Vilna. It succeeded in getting to the rear of the Russians. But as it was obliged at the same time to detach several divisions against the reinforcements coming from the east, its strength was not sufficient to bar for a long time the retreat of the Russian columns. Nevertheless it had brought about a great success and it had really contributed toward gaining the battle."

"In the breaks-through of 1917 in Italy, and in March and May, 1918, in France, there was unfortunately no German cavalry. By reason of the lack of men and horses the German high command had judged it preferable to employ its cavalry as infantry. Numerous passages of French war literature show how the French expected then to see German cavalry appear."

If it is easier to bring cavalry to the point of rupture in a war of positions than in a war of movement, the moment for its engagement remains a delicate matter. In principle its role should consist in penetrating deeply into the enemy in order to interfere with the arrival of his reserves and to render impossible their employment in a counter attack of the whole enemy forces. It is necessary then to avoid having the cavalry suffer in the preliminary combats and to strengthen it with artillery, especially with long range guns permitting it to hold centers of communication (road and railway junctions) under its fire.

To sum up, Colonel Brandt thinks that the combative power of modern cavalry makes it more fit than in the past to be used as a reserve and that this role will become incumbent upon cavalry frequently in the future.

Pursuit and Retreat—The pursuit and the protection of a retreat have always been within the domain of cavalry. Progress in technique will change this very little.

In the pursuit it will be necessary to reckon with the important demolitions which will check the troops transported by mechanical means.

In the retreat it will always be a question of being able to break off the combat rapidly and disappear.

In both cases the cavalry is the arm which is better fitted to these needs.

It is rare that the cavalry may bar the retreat to an enemy who retires without having been completely beaten. The example of Garnier's corps at Vilna shows this. It can however check his flank columns and oblige them to change direction.

But it is quite otherwise with an enemy who has really suffered a defeat. In this case the victorious infantry is not rapid enough to gather all the fruits of its success; the cavalry must be substituted for it.

The ideal would be for the cavalry to envelop the two enemy wings, but it will almost never be adequate for this; its action against a wing by flank attacks and in reverse assures already great successes. This was the case for the 2d and 6th Cavalry divisions and for the corps of Egon von Schmettow in the battle of Schaulen, in July, 1915.

Even a direct pursuit can assure success against an enemy utterly defeated, if one engages cavalry in great force and at a definite point.

But there again a strong cavalry is necessary to realize an enveloping pursuit and to overthrow the detachments that the adversary brings to oppose it. It must also be realized that "in order to gain the head of troops in flight" as Frederick II wished to do, much time will today be necessary.

If it is a question of a routed and demoralized enemy, the cavalry can and must dare all.

Finally, in order to cover a retreat, it is clearly indicated to employ the cav-

alry for the direct protection of the retreat, by reason of its aptitude for disappearing rapidly after having engaged itself in delaying actions, but one must seek also to make it act offensively on the flank of the enemy who pursues. The pursuit will be slackened and rendered prudent by this menace.

"Among all the examples of the last war, it may suffice to cite the success brought about by the 6th and 9th divisions of cavalry covering the retreat of the XXVth Reserve Corps of Brzeziny in November, 1914, and on the opposing side, the employment of the Russian cavalry during the retreat of the 5th Russian Army after the battle of Schaulen in July, 1915."

Raids:—The utility of raids has been much disputed, says Colonel Brandt.

The characteristic principle of a raid, he adds, is that the troops which execute it are deprived of all communication with the rear. But this is the case in all operations in rear of the enemy, such operations not necessarily taking on this account the aspect of a raid. There must then be something else which gives to a raid its own character. By searching carefully one finds that a raid never seeks to obtain only a transitory success, after which the cavalry moves off rapidly, but one which, connected with other operations may assume an importance much greater. "To mark a decisive success, a raid should therefore never be an end in itself, but it must enter into the scheme of grand operations."

Having laid down this definition, von Brandt gives a place apart to those incursions made in the course of a prolonged check of the operations and with a view of disturbing the enemy, and causing him damage in such a way as to develop the spirit of enterprise in the troops.

"It is necessary therefore to take care," he adds, "that the efforts connected with marching that are demanded of cavalry in such like enterprises do not render it unable to fulfill its essential tasks, which will commence only upon the resumption of the operations of the whole army."

There are, according to him, operations to which the term "raid" does not apply, even if they are executed by important forces.

Their chances of success are slim in a cultivated country provided with good roads, good railway communications and a good system for the transmission of information. These chances increase, on the contrary, in those regions where these conditions are not present.

To return to raids properly speaking, Brandt believes that if the cavalry regulations before the war did almost prohibit them, it was because "no one had thought of raids executed in liaison with other operations, like that one made by the Polish cavalry division against Koziatyn in 1920."

He thinks then that, in a future war, raids will be perhaps more frequent than formerly, particularly as a preliminary to an important operation.

Seeking for the best known raids of the Great War, he cites three:

a. That one of the 5th French Cavalry Division executed on the 8th and 9th of September, 1914, in the forest of Villers-Cotterets behind the right wing of von Kluck's army.

Distance: about 30 kilometers.

b. That one of the 1st German Cavalry Corps and of the Bavarian Cavalry Division on the 6th and 7th of May, 1915, in Lithuania, reaching to 25 kilometers to the northeast of Kovno, that is to say, far in rear of the Russian front.

Results: Destruction of the railway station of Zeimy on the line Janow-Schaulen.

Distance: About 60 kilometers.

c. That one of the Russian Cavalry Brigade of L'Oussouri on the 18th and 19th of June, 1915, to the left wing of the Army of the Niemen and reaching to Lukniki and Zorany.

Result: Destruction of a German convoy and the interruption of signal communications and of the supply of rations during several days.

Distance: About 35 kilometers.

"These three raids incontestably caused damage to the enemy," thinks Lieutenant Colonel Brandt, "but they did not have any decisive result, because they were all executed with forces that were too weak."

In conclusion, he finishes with a chapter entitled: *The principal mission of cavalry*, which can be summed up in the following manner:

Exploration, intervention after battles, covering (screening), in spite of their inconvenience for cavalry, remain the missions of this arm. Its utilization as a general reserve will assume a great importance. Raids are by no means out of date.

But these are only accessory tasks. "The principal mission consists in participation in battle, by acting offensively against the most sensitive point of the enemy in order to destroy him."

For this it is necessary to unite a great mass of cavalry under the orders of a single chief: a division of cavalry does not suffice; it is necessary to consider in the future the constitution of cavalry corps and even, in certain circumstances, armies of cavalry.

Such masses having need of time and space, they must be made to act freely separated from other forces in order to seek out the flank and rear of the enemy.

The above leads the author to make some reflections on the organization, instruction, armament, and the command of the cavalry.

The organization of cavalry in divisions is necessary in time of peace. "This principle was misunderstood by Germany before 1914, and the German cavalry was found from this fact in a state of inferiority. After the war, there will be hardly anyone to deny the enormous superiority of a body of troops whose elements have been instructed in common and whose units are not improvised at the time of the mobilization."

In this organization it appears to him that one should not have in view exclusively the combat by fire.

"In certain places efforts are being made to replace cavalry divisions by

divisions called 'light.' That this idea may have many advocates in Italy is not surprising, because this country did not experience, in the course of the last campaign, a war of movement. But the more the various nations have had occasion to recollect the experience of the war outside of France, the more they recognize, in their after-war regulations, the value of cavalry, and the more they proclaim that, even in a future war, mounted attacks will not be excluded. The English regulations go the furthest in this sense. In Poland, where, at the beginning, one accepted blindly the French views based solely on the experience of the western front, voices are also raised now which cast in doubt that the French doctrine, insisting exclusively on combat by fire, is suitable to the Polish cavalry in a country such as that on the Eastern front. And recently, even in France, certain military authors write that, in some circumstances, the cavalry will still be able to fight mounted with the arme blanche; this notion has never been lost by the cavalry arms with the offensive spirit of other armies."

The instruction of fighting on foot in the organization of the division should not entirely replace the maneuver of great units such as they practiced before the war.

The armament of the cavalry must permit it to equal on foot the best infantry, but it must not compromise its mobility.

Finally, upon the High Commander depends in part the rendition of its duties by the cavalry. It is a question here not only of the Commanders of the cavalry units themselves, but of that Commander who gives to them their missions.

As Frederick II demanded in the instructions, that Colonel Brandt recalls, it is indispensable that the infantry generals should understand cavalry so as to know how to employ it properly and judiciously, because it is a more delicate matter to engage cavalry well than it is to engage infantry. Reciprocally, the cavalry generals must well understand infantry, because they often have fractions of it under their orders.

The cavalry will have no reason therefore to lack confidence in the future: inspired by the lessons of the great masters of the past it will still expect in a future war to play a decisive role.



Training of Cavalry Radio Squads

BY

Lieutenant MORTIMER F. SULLIVAN, 2d Cavalry

IN the training of a Radio Squad the first problem that confronts the Regimental Signal Officer is the question of personnel. The selection of men that are capable of receiving training is the most important factor in building up a communication unit.

First of all the men should serve in a line troop for one year before they are assigned to a communication unit. There are three factors to be considered in the selection of suitable men.

First: A man must have sufficient education and intelligence to be trained as an operator.

Second: He must have sufficient physical strength and size to pack a horse and manage his pack horse as well as his own riding horse.

Third: He must have a sense of duty that will make him work hard under difficult conditions and courage enough to follow line troops over difficult ground.

Unless the Signal Officer is fortunate enough to have limitless support from the Regimental Commander, as is the case in the Second Cavalry, where he is allowed to pick his men from the whole regiment, the question of personnel will be a constant cause of worry. With the proper personnel the training becomes mere routine.

THE MECHANICAL SIDE

Numerous pamphlets and training manuals have been written at the Signal School and elsewhere on the technical and electrical side of the training of cavalry communication units. Nothing has been written on the mechanical side, that is the packing and unpacking of the set, and opening and closing station. To insure a speedy transmission of radio messages, which is essential in cavalry units, the mechanical side of the training of the members of the squad as individuals and as a unit must be very highly developed.

Considerable discussion has always existed among interested officers at the Cavalry School and elsewhere, as to whether or not the regimental radio section could set up station and send a short message, and be ready to move out with the column at the conclusion of a ten-minute halt. With a view to testing the practicability of such a procedure several tests were made by the Communication Platoon of the Second Cavalry and some interesting facts have been ascertained from these tests.

Various schemes and methods of training were tried with varying results until finally the scheme herein outlined was evolved. The idea of the two man team proved to be the solution of the problem. To begin with, the men were impressed with the idea that no one man worked alone, but always with his partner. They carried out the aparejo and load, packed the pack horse, and saddled their riding horses at the same time. Men assigned to a pack always worked together on the same pack horse. It did not follow that the same men were always part-

ners, but the men assigned to certain duties always worked together, for example: Horseholder No. 1 and the assistant operator; horseholder No. 2 and the operator; and horseholder No. 3 and the squad chief, were always partners. Then to add to the team idea the squad always marched to all formations as a squad, even to putting their saddles away after arriving at stables. All tests were made with the issue aparejo packs and equipment.

The following methods of training were used with excellent results in preparation for the demonstration which was given before the Commandant of The Cavalry School, the Colonel of the Second Cavalry and the student Officers of The Cavalry School, and which showed the practicability of sending a short message during the ten-minute halt.

ORGANIZATION

Two radio squads were organized as follows:

First Squad.

- 1 Sergeant (Squad Chief).
- 1 Operator.
- 1 Assistant Operator.
- 4 Horseholders.
- 1 Corporal (Operates set SCR 54 A).
- 1 Panel Operator.

Second Squad.

- 1 Sergeant (Squad Chief).
- 1 Operator.
- 1 Assistant Operator.
- 4 Horseholders.

The men were then given general instruction in the art of packing including tying the diamond hitch, after they understood the basic principles of pack transportation. The pack horses were tied on the line and the loads of the respective animals were brought out by each two-man team and placed on the ground on either side of the aparejo just as it is carried (See Illustration). The section was then lined up and each man was taught the name of each article of equipment belonging to the set and pack.

Each horse was then packed individually by the two men assigned to that animal, under the supervision of the squad chief, the rest of the members of the two squads observing and working as their turn came.

The generator is packed as the top load of No. 1 Animal with three mast sections, type M S 2 in each side load.

The set box with parts is on the near side of No. 2 Animal, and the battery box with parts on the off side. Frame, type M-1, is top load.

The tent bag and contents, with three mast sections are on near side of No. 3 Animal, and the antenna bag and contents with two mast sections, a ridge pole and tent pole, on the off side.

Each man was given a slip of paper with his duties assigned in order for unpacking, setting up station, closing station, and packing with instructions to memorize the same. The following are examples:

SQUAD CHIEF:

Halts, dismounts, turns to right about, turns his horse over to Horseholder No. 4.

Unsnaps overload strap and removes tent bag and mast sections from near side of No. 3 animal.

Puts legs in Set Box and opens it up.

Assists Operator in running up mast.

Commands "Tie Down."

Listens in to see if station is calling.

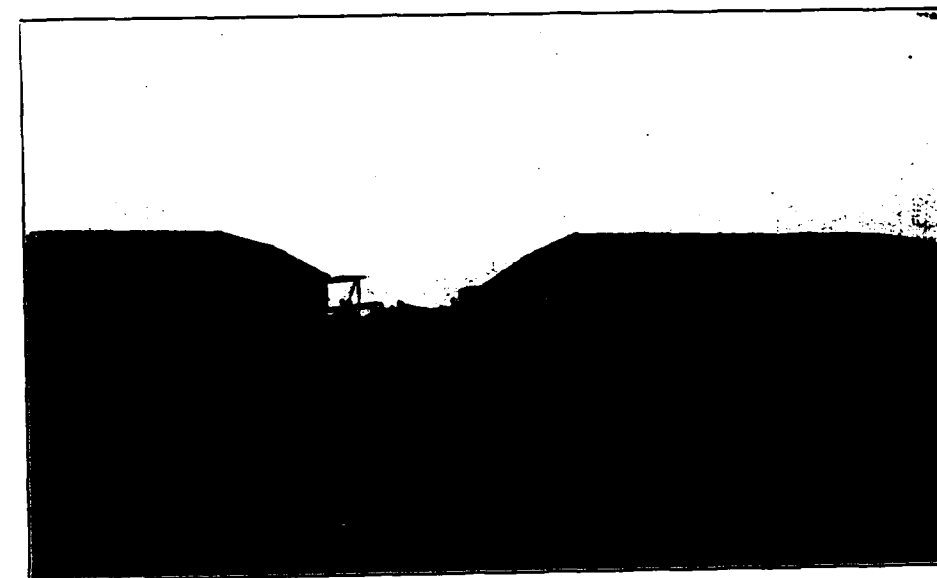
Tests transmission side of set.

Adjusts it to the prescribed wave length.

OPERATOR:

Moves up on left of Horseholder No. 1, halts, dismounts, turns his horse over to Horseholder No. 4.

Removes straps from Set Box.



Arrangement of Equipment Preparatory to Packing

Takes off Set Box placing it where station is to be set up.

Removes Mast Sections from near side and arranges them next to set box.

Places Battery Box in front of set box, attaches battery lead to set box.

Places Antenna Connectors in sockets.

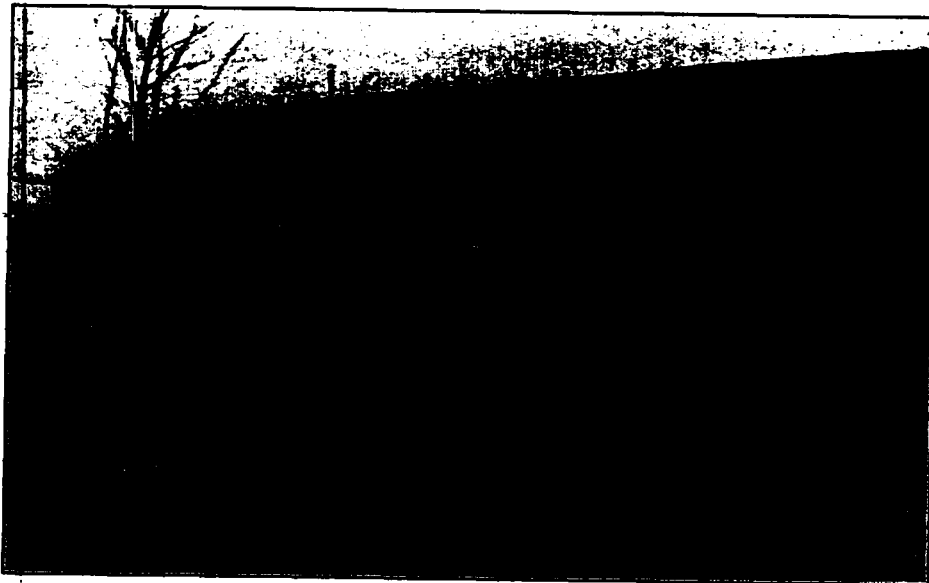
Assists Squad Chief in running up mast.

Keeps Log Sheet.

During this step in training three horses fully packed with a complete SCR 127 set were led out and the men of one squad went through their duties in setting up station by the numbers. The other squad observed, and each man in the observing squad checked up on his job in the working squad. No man was al-

lowed to assist another man except his team-mate, in any way. The idea of the two-man team being emphasized throughout the drill. Absolute accuracy was demanded. The observing squad and working squad then changed places and the drill was repeated, the former now doing the work and the latter watching.

The next stage was without the numbers but still with one squad working and the other observing. After each working squad finished each man was criticized in turn by the corresponding man of the observing squad, that is, the as-



The Squad Mounted

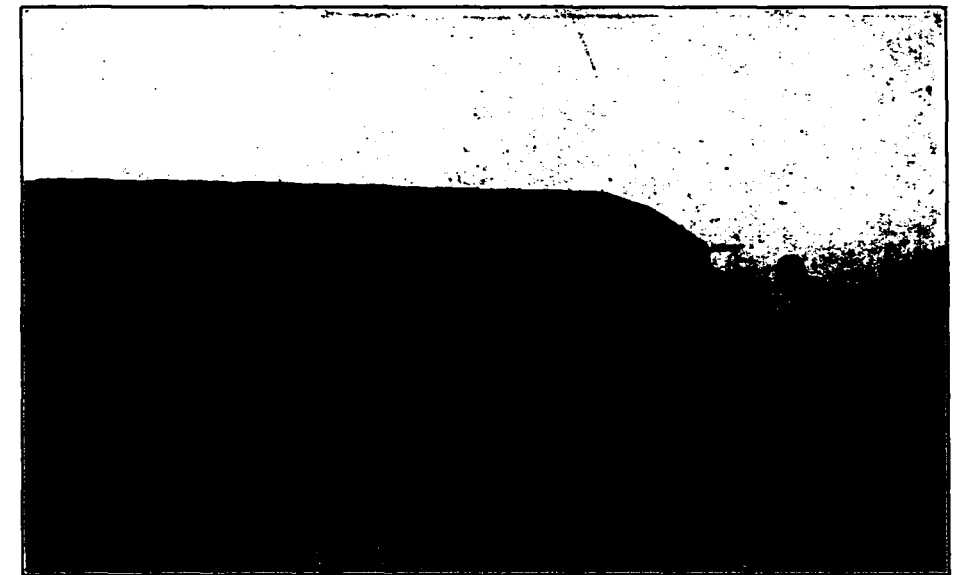
sistant operator of the observing squad made note of all the mistakes of the assistant operator of the working squad, etc.

The squads were then mounted and began to work for speed on about the sixth day of the training period. The drill was timed by a stop watch and each squad checked the other for accuracy. Competition became very keen between the two sections, and the result was that on the day of the test one squad had dots and dashes coming in through a magnavox hooked up to a receiving set in the riding hall two minutes and thirty seconds after the command "Open Station" had been given. After the squad mastered the drill, the horseholders were changed about so that each was familiar with the duties of the others.

In a like manner, the squad chief, operator and assistant operator, changed places, and by this procedure a versatile squad was secured. Nothing is said here about the training of operators. The matter of training operators is fully covered in training manuals and the only thing the regimental signal officer has to do is to follow these manuals. However, in this unit every man is an operator of

more or less skill. Their speed varying from five to thirty words per minute. Signal Corps Manuals on procedure are followed to the letter in all training. For training purposes along this line several Service Buzzers are hooked in a series, each buzzer being assigned a call letter. The N. C. S. then takes over the net just as if it were a radio net and puts through a traffic load. At the end of the problem the results are posted on the bulletin board showing number of messages sent and errors made by each station. The specified blanks are used in all problems.

The training of animals is also an item that must be considered. Quiet horses are essential both for riding and packing. The following methods were used in this troop: The horses were taken on long cross country rides over rough country and up and down steep hills. At first a man only had his riding horse to manage



Squad Unpacking After "Open Station" Has Been Given and Horses Circled

but later he had to manage a lead horse with just an aparejo as a load and finally one with the full radio load. If an unruly horse was found, he was packed up with two sacks of oats and taken out with that load until he became manageable.

Slides including the giant slide at Fort Riley were taken regularly and the squads were taken through wooded ravines to accustom the men and horses to avoiding trees with the packs.

The details of "open station" and "close station" follow:

TO OPEN STATION:

At the command "Open Station" given by the regimental signal officer or on reaching the place designated as the location for the radio station.

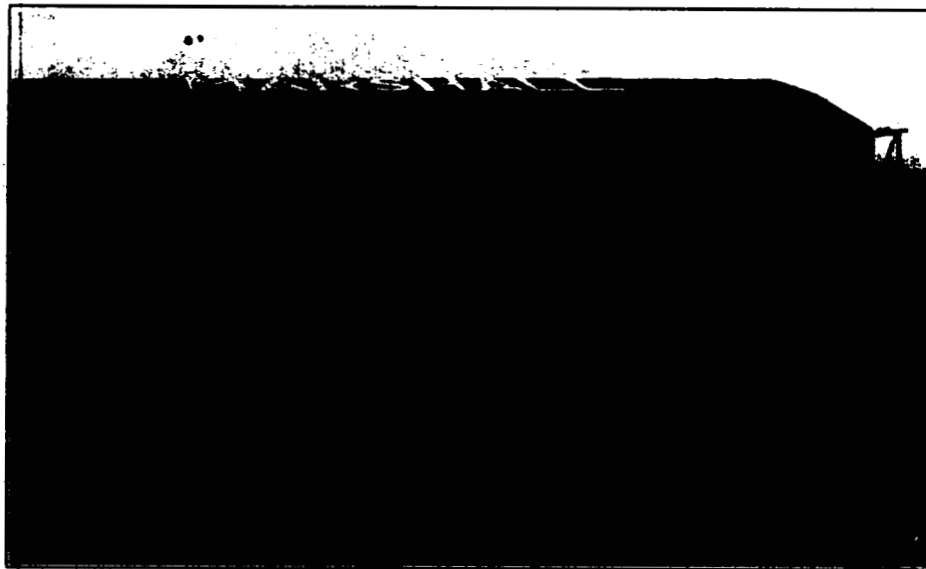
The squad leader commands "Circle Horses" the squad leader and horseholder No. 4 halt, dismount, turn to the right and left about respectively.

Horseholder No. 1 and assistant operator halt and dismount.

Horseholder No. 2 and operator move up on the left of horseholder No. 1, halt and dismount.

Horseholder No. 3 moves up on the right of horseholder No. 1, halts and dismounts. All pass their snaffle reins to horseholder No. 4. Horses are not linked for a temporary set-up.

Assistant operator releases the quarter straps and assisted by horseholder No. 1 removes the mast sections from No. 1 animal placing them on the left of the set box, ferrules to the right and then removes the generator.



The Mast Ready to Go Up, Equipment Unloaded and Arranged as Prescribed

The operator removes the straps from the set box. Horseholder No. 2 removes them from the battery box, leaving straps in the quarter strap rings. The operator and horseholder No. 2 remove set and battery boxes and place them simultaneously where station is to be set up, they then remove the mast sections, placing them on the left of the boxes, ferrules to the right.

The squad leader unsnaps the overload strap and throws it over to horseholder No. 3 who snaps it into the quarter strap ring. The squad leader and horseholder No. 3 then remove tent and antenna bags simultaneously placing them on the ground near the set box. They then return and remove the mast sections and place them alongside the bags.

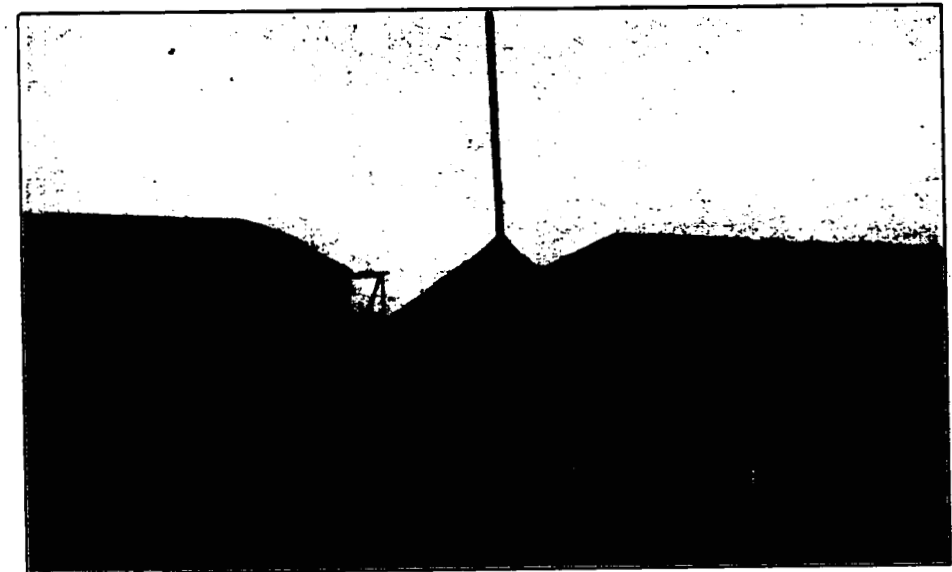
Horseholder No. 4 moves all horses of the squad fifteen yards clear of the set box.

Squad leader sets up and opens set box putting on legs.

The operator places battery box in front of set box, opens it, attaches the battery leads to the set box.

The assistant operator opens the antenna bag and removes reels and ground connecting block.

Horseholder No. 1 removes the generator cover, unwinds the leads and attaches the leads to set box.



The SET All Set Up and Functioning

Horseholder No. 2 arranges the mast sections on the ground, ferrules in one direction, and with top section nearest the place where the mast is to be set up. Horseholder No. 3 opens tent bag, and takes six pins and two hammers out of tool-bag.

The operator places the antenna leads in the connector sockets.

The assistant operator and horseholders Nos. 1, 2, and 3 each take an antenna reel and pin and proceed 90 feet in opposite directions, at a double time, holding the reel in the right hand, drops the reel, holds the wire in his right hand and drives the pin with his heel.

The squad leader and operator put up the mast, the men on the antenna wires giving or taking slack at each other's warning as pole goes up. The squad leader commands "Tie Down" antenna men tie antenna leads to pin with a clove hitch, they then double time back and get the counterpoise leads from the operator who has them connected in the counterpoise lead in block.

The counterpoise is then unreeled directly under the antenna wires.

Where six antenna wires are used for the installation of the set, this would be done where the set is not of a temporary character or where the wind is heavy, horseholder No. 1 and the assistant operator take out the extra leads, and horseholder No. 2 and 3 take out the extra counterpoise wires.

Horseholder No. 1 and No. 2 put crank handles on generator and wait for the squad leader's command to start turning.

The squad leader listens in to see if a station is calling, then tests the transmission of the set, and adjusts it to the prescribed wave length.

The operator keeps the log sheet, the assistant operator and horseholder No. 3 stand by to relieve the men on the generator.

When weather necessitates or when setting up is other than temporary the operator, assistant operator and horseholder No. 3 put up the tent as prescribed below. The operator takes a mast section type MS-2 and inserts ridge pole extension piece, making a complete ridge pole. The assistant operator and horseholder No. 3 each take a mast section type MS-2 and insert a tent adapter making an upright. They then insert the complete upright in the ridge pole. The operator unfolds the tent and pulls it over the complete tent pole with the aid of the assistant operator and horseholder No. 3.

The complete section is then raised and placed over the set box. The set box is not disconnected for this purpose. The operator drives the stakes while the assistant operator and horseholder No. 3 hold the tent upright.

The guy ropes are then tightened. The tent is always erected with the flap towards the generator and to the front of the set. When the tent is pitched, six antenna wires will be used.

CLOSING STATION (With tent up).

At the command "Close Station" the squad leader disconnects the antenna, counterpoise, generator, battery leads, and headsets, then closes the set box. Horseholders Nos. 1 and 2 remove the handles from the generator and secure the generator leads, winding them around the generator, and put the cover on. The squad leader puts the phones, battery leads, etc., in the battery box and closes it. The operator, assistant operator and horseholder No. 3 strike and fold the tent, and disconnect the ridge pole and upright.

The assistant operator, horseholders Nos. 1, 2, and 3 (at the double time) each reel up the counterpoise, then untie antenna guy wires and facing the mast, steady the antenna while the squad leader and operator lower the mast. As the mast is lowered the antenna men take in the slack at each other's warning.

The mast being down, the assistant operator, horseholders Nos. 1, 2, and 3 reel up the antenna wires and place them in the antenna bags. Horseholder No. 4 then leads the pack animals to their respective loads.

Squad leader and operator pack antenna bag, tent bag, and assemble all other equipment for packing. The same equipment is always packed on the

same animals, and by the man who unpacked it, and in the reverse order of packing.

When the tent is not used the 5th and 6th antenna wires will not be run out, so the modification in the above procedure is obvious.

All members of the squad get their riding horse from the horseholder No. 4, and the squad leads into column of twos or threes as directed facing the direction of march at the time the order to open station was given.

PANEL SQUAD.

Consists of:

1 Corporal (Operates 54 A set).

1 Panel Man (Operates panels).

SETTING UP 54A SET.

At command "Open Station," wagon halts and corporal and panel operator halt, and dismount, and turn their horses over to driver of wagon. Panel operator taking a mast section and reel runs out antenna to a distance of 100 feet, inserts antenna connector and insulator in mast, and guys mast to ground. Corporal connects antenna connector to other mast section, attaches antenna leadin to antenna, and hold the second mast section while the operator guys it down. Corporal attaches antenna leadin, ground leads, and phone plugs to set and listens in for a call. Panel operator lays out his identification panels rolled and ready to be displayed on call and identification of a friendly plane.



Mobility, Fire Power, and Shock

BY

Lieutenant Colonel CLARENCE LININGER, Cavalry

IT is said that the object of war is to impose one's will on the enemy. To accomplish this, his resistance must first be overcome. His means of resistance are men, materiel, and methods. To win, one must have more means, better means, or must use one's means with greater intelligence. For example, the enemy may concentrate his forces at a great distance and inaugurate strategical moves of vital importance. It is highly desirable to know of this action. The airplane exists and may be used for the purpose. The air service then is organized and a means of obtaining information at a distance is available. The armies meet. The enemy has field works, masses of men and animals, and materiel that one wishes to destroy. Gunpowder and the cannon are used, artillery is organized, and means for destruction have been provided.

In war tasks exist, and for the performance of such tasks, existing means are used, or new ones are devised. One does not first invent a tool and then find something for it to do. The task for it exists first. Every invention that ever found a place in warfare, found it because there was a task awaiting. Every arm, every branch that survives today, does so because there is a function for it to perform.

CAVALRY TASKS IN WAR

What, then, are the tasks for which cavalry is maintained? In war, whether in operations on a large scale or in those of smaller units situations arise in which time is an important factor. Something must be done quickly. A force is needed without delay to take advantage of an enemy's weakness or mistakes or to check the enemy at some point where he is gaining. Again, the area of operations may be extensive or the distance to the point where interference is needed may be great. Obviously there must be a specially organized force whose chief characteristic is such as to satisfy these needs. Many centuries ago men of war discovered that the horse could carry a burden and move for long distances at a rate moderately faster than a man and for short distances many times faster. They made the burden a soldier and his arms, organized, and had a force for the tasks mentioned above. They found that the soldier could remain on his horse and fight or could dismount and fight, thus greatly increasing his value. In the greatest of all wars, ended but six years ago, it was shown again that masses of horsemen, taking unto their own use modern inventions, performed the missions assigned them with results as marvelous as the world has ever known.

CHARACTERISTICS OF CAVALRY

Mobility, fire power, and shock are the characteristics of cavalry. The greatest of these is mobility, defined as the quality of being rapidly and readily moved about. Without mobility cavalry is of little value. On the other hand,

mobility alone is of little value. Mobility is valuable for what it confers. The value is that of the rapidity and readiness with which fire power and shock can be moved. Fire power and shock win battles but they must be used at the times and places most destructive to the enemy. Mobility makes it possible to use the fire power and shock of cavalry when and where wanted within a reasonable time and within a reasonable distance.

There are two kinds of mobility, or stated differently, mobility is used under two different conditions,—off the battle field and on the battle field.

Mobility off the battle field is expressed in long and rapid marches. It is seen in a situation where a cavalry division, say, is shifted quickly from one point to another in the theater of operations. It is used when a unit on a reconnaissance or security mission covers a great area. A treatise on marches would deal with this kind of mobility except from the strategical or tactical standpoints. It is obtained and preserved by march discipline, care of animals, and methods of marching that retain the freshness and vigor of the horses. It is characterized by long and sustained effort at a moderately fast rate rather than by a short effort at a very rapid rate.

Mobility on the battle field is displayed by rapidity of maneuver before fire power or shock is used against the enemy, and by the mounted charge when shock is used. Mobility on the battle field has too many applications for all to be named here. Among the most important are surprise, suddenness and impetuosity of attack, action against the enemy's weak and sensitive points, avoidance of heavy losses by rapid movement, the unexpected in regard to time, direction, place, and type of attack.

There is mobility of the individual as well as mobility of the mass. Without the former cavalry could not fill the country with a cloud of reconnoitering detachments and patrols, could not maneuver rapidly across country, and could not assume those many formations that allow it to fight in such a variety of methods and that are so productive of surprise.

Mobility is the means to an end, the end being to apply fire power and shock at places most harmful to the enemy. Whether fire power or shock be used, mobility should be employed to place the cavalry at the enemy's place of weakness,—at his throat so to speak. This place is sought out by active reconnaissance; when discovered the cavalry moves against it with great rapidity. Such place may lie along the enemy's front and an attack delivered at that point at once may be more productive of results than one delivered elsewhere a half hour later; but generally the point to be struck is the enemy's flank or rear, and there the cavalry must expect to reap its full harvest.

FIRE POWER OR SHOCK

The point of attack having been decided upon the cavalry commander must next choose between fire power and shock. Shock, in a few minutes, ends what it might take fire power hours to accomplish, and releases the cavalry at once for further missions; but if it fail the losses in men and above all

in horses may be tremendous. There is no rule. Shock should be the first thought of the cavalry leader but he should ask himself,—Have I surprise? Adequate fire support? Can I move at speed in suitable formation? If the answer is yes, the solution is the charge. The rash will always resort to shock; the timid or over cautious will always resort to fire power. The skillful leader will use sometimes one and sometimes the other, selecting the one which offers the greater results.

AN HISTORICAL EXAMPLE

Let us illustrate the uses of mobility and fire power by a familiar historical incident—that of Buford prior to and at Gettysburg. Leaving Middletown on the morning of June 29, 1863 he marched with two of his cavalry brigades via Boonsboro, Cave Town, and Monterey Springs to the vicinity of Fairfield. The next day he followed circuitous routes in order to avoid Confederate infantry with which he did not wish to become engaged and arrived at Gettysburg shortly before noon. He saw the strategical importance of the locality and decided to hold it for the Army of the Potomac, the leading infantry and artillery elements of which could not arrive until the following day. In two days Buford had marched some fifty miles, crossed a mountain range twice, slipped around a hostile force, and seized a locality which was vital to the success of a battle and a campaign,—a brilliant example of the use of mobility off the battle field.

Upon arrival at Gettysburg Buford found Confederate infantry approaching from Cashtown, eight miles to the northwest of Gettysburg. This infantry hurriedly turned back. Buford then sent reconnoitering parties to the northwest, north, and northeast. From them and other sources he heard of heavy infantry forces west of Cashtown, that Ewell's corps was advancing from the north, and rumors of Confederates approaching from the northeast. Receiving reports the following morning from his patrols of the approach of the Confederates from Cashtown, he dismounted his cavalry and placed it and his artillery northwest of Gettysburg astride the road upon which the enemy were advancing. From ten until half past ten in the morning he sustained a heavy infantry and artillery attack; at the latter hour he was relieved by Reynold's Federal infantry. In this action we find fire power used with far reaching results.

The question arises,—might not mobility have been used by Buford on the morning of July 1? The answer is no; the information of the enemy was too uncertain. The cavalry must remain in the vicinity of Gettysburg prepared to meet an attack from any direction except the southeast. But let us alter the situation somewhat and make the force at Cashtown the only enemy within a day's march of Gettysburg. Now Buford may march against this enemy, taking up a position three or four miles from Gettysburg, or better yet attacking the head and flank of the hostile infantry. At ten thirty the enemy would be two or three miles farther from Gettysburg than they were in the

actual case and the cavalry losses no greater and probably less. This would illustrate one of the numerous uses of mobility on the battle field.

Mobility is dependent on condition of animals and training of men and animals. Training and condition permit long marches and make possible rapid changes of pace, of direction, of formation. Without such flexibility cavalry falls a prey to more active enemy cavalry, becomes an easy target for artillery and airplanes, fails to reach the appointed place at the appointed time, and is incapable of effective shock action. It is at best only very poor mounted infantry.

IMPORTANCE OF REGIMENTAL OFFICERS

The regimental officer has little to do with organization or type and amount of equipment. He recommends—higher authority decides. But he has everything to do with the training of his men and the training and conditioning of his horses. His objective should be to obtain and hold fast to the characteristic which called cavalry into being thousands of years ago and made it the weapon with which military commanders from Alexander to Allenby wrought destruction upon their enemies. It is the regimental officer who trains cavalry to make long and rapid marches to the battle field and arrive there capable of further sustained effort. It is he who trains the cavalry to maneuver rapidly over varied terrain, make quick changes of pace, direction, and formation, and at the end act by fire power, shock, or a combination of both. It is he who makes of his organization a highly mobile and flexible unit which suddenly appears and strikes, goes on to gather the fruits of victory, or as suddenly disappears only to renew the attack elsewhere with unlesened violence, acting always with rapidity, activity, and surprise.

THE HORSE

The horse makes cavalry, distinguishes cavalry from foot troops, and gives the arm its characteristic of mobility. Cavalry therefore may operate within the powers of the horse and is held by his limitations. The horse in some respects is a hardy creature and in others a delicate one. He continues to carry his rider though terribly wounded but dies from apparently minor causes. He lives in the greatest extremes of climate but rapidly weakens under exposure. He lives upon almost any vegetable diet but soon falls by the roadside when deprived of his food. Misused, cavalry breaks and shatters. Properly used it produces the most astounding results.

CONCLUSION

To sum up: cavalry acts by fire power and shock. Mobility permits fire power and shock to be employed at the time and place most harmful to the enemy. The value of our cavalry therefore can be measured by the effectiveness of its fire, its skill in shock action, and its capacity for sustained movement off and rapid movement on the battle field.

Some Training Principles for National Guard Cavalry

BY

Captain KRAMER THOMAS, Cavalry

Instructor Wyoming National Guard Cavalry

THE training of National Guard Cavalry is always a difficult task, but most of the difficulties can be overcome and good efficient first-line combat cavalry can be developed if each problem is analyzed and solved in the light of the final mission of the unit. The 115th Cavalry, scattered over the State of Wyoming, presents the usual obstacles to training in intensified form, and a discussion of the methods used to overcome these difficulties should be of interest to all Cavalry officers since each is liable to assignment to National Guard instruction duty.

The 115th Cavalry has no two troops in the same town. Some troops are over five hundred miles from the Regimental Headquarters. The average distance between the Regimental Headquarters and Troops is about two hundred and fifty miles. The Regimental Staff itself is scattered in a triangle, each leg of which is about five hundred miles. For armories the State rents such facilities as the towns afford, although two armories are now being built. The men of the troops often live many miles from the troop station, and extreme cold weather in winter adds to the hardship of training. In planning and conducting the training of a Regiment under such conditions, the following principles have been evolved and successfully followed:

(1) *The program must be progressive.*

Although there is a large annual turnover in strength each year, the Regiment must not be held back in its training. Nor must it be held to elementary work until thoroughly proficient therein. The work must progress and it is better that the Regiment should be reasonably proficient in all phases of Cavalry training than expert in a few. Therefore, the programs for armory and field training have been made increasingly advanced with the result that the Regimental and lower Headquarters can now make sound solutions to ordinary tactical problems, issue good orders, and have the troops carry them out proficiently. This was demonstrated last year at camp in many problems. The remarkable part of this system is that new men quickly pick up and adjust themselves to the state of training of their unit as they find it. No difficulty from new men was experienced. The higher the mark, the higher will the troops aim.

(2) *The monthly schedules must be self-explanatory.*

It has been found that when the schedule prescribes a certain amount of work on "par. — to par. —, — manual" no one looks it up, and the drill period is devoted to such monotonous and morale killing exercises as Manual of Arms and Calisthenics. Therefore, schedules now issued prescribe in detail the work for each drill, and every new subject is thoroughly covered in an attached paper. Thus, if one hour is prescribed for exercises by the squad and platoon in bringing order out of confusion, a short paper is attached to the schedule

explaining the importance of this training and giving model exercises by which it can be taught. New and interesting things are thus constantly put before the troops, uniformity of training by scattered troops is secured, and interest is maintained. Troop Commanders seldom have time to do much studying in advance for drills, but by the above method, a few minutes spent in reading over the schedule prepares a leader to competently instruct his unit in the prescribed exercises. Thus the line of least resistance in armory drill is to follow the schedule.

(3) *Unit Commanders must thoroughly understand the organization of their commands.*

This is particularly true of the Headquarters Troop, Service Troop and Squadron Detachments, whose makeup is complex. This is facilitated by publishing "Function Charts" of all units. Thus the Headquarters Troop is divided into its platoons and sections, and each is analyzed on a separate sheet showing the rank, number and equipment of the men composing it, what their training should be, and what they should be able to accomplish. With this are furnished all necessary Training Regulations, pamphlets and suggestions. For example—the sergeant in charge of the Intelligence Section of the Regimental Headquarters Troop knows the organization of his Section, what each man should be able to do, what equipment he has for training, etc., and he then actually conducts the training of his Section supervised as necessary by the C. O. Staff Platoon.

(4) *To have complete equipment, required first that Commanders know what they should have.*

To simplify this problem, the equipment tables of the Militia Bureau have been studied and individual tables prepared for each unit showing what articles they should have, to whom issued, and for what purpose. A separate table, including exact allowance of expendable supplies, has been prepared for each type of unit.

(5) *Collateral work for officers.*

A short correspondence course to supplement the routine training is given each officer. It is divided into three sub-courses: Tactics, Animal Management and Cavalry Weapons. This also is progressive from year to year. Thus the officers come to camp with a good idea of many important subjects, which are impossible to cover in armory drill. This course is written and conducted by the instructors since the regular Army Course is too long to be suitable for National Guard.

(6) *Instruction must go through unit leaders.*

This is particularly important at camp. The best methods of handling this feature of training have been found to be:

- (a) A school (lecture) for officers conducted by instructors, immediately followed by
- (b) NCO School taught by troop officers on the day before a subject is taken up by troops on the field, then.
- (c) A demonstration by troops before the Regiment, followed by
- (d) Actual practice in the subject by the troops themselves.

For instructors to impart instruction direct to troops lessens the incentive of National Guard Officers to learn and lowers their prestige.

(7) *All demonstrations should be made by National Guard Troops themselves.*

A demonstration requires careful rehearsal (instruction) which may best be given to the National Guard Troops that they may benefit accordingly. Also it increases their self-respect to know that they can do these things rather than have Regular Troops make the demonstration for them.

(8) *Instructors should work unobtrusively.*

If the instructors make proper preparations for each new phase of training as outlined in (6) above, they should not have to go on the field and make corrections before troops. The same principle applies to matters other than training. A National Guard Regiment has within itself everything necessary for its operation. If instructors actually take over any executive or operative function, they are depriving some officer of his proper training. When an instructor solves an administrative or other problem, no one remembers how he did it, but if the Regiment has to figure it out alone, the lesson is well learned.

(9) *Regimental Esprit should be built up.*

In all National Guard Cavalry Regiments, and particularly those which are scattered over considerable territory, every effort should be made to attain a high standard of Regimental spirit and sense of unity. Toward this end the 115th Cavalry has found the following method beneficial:

- (a) Publication of a newspaper.
- (b) Wearing of Regimental Insignia.
- (c) Adoption of a Regimental Motto, "Powder River."
- (d) Regimental Summer Camp.
- (e) Encouraging little Regimental customs and practices, which are exclusively "115th Cavalry."

(10) *The Regimental Staff must function whether scattered or not.*

As an example of how this can be done, the 115th Cavalry was assembled for Summer Camp from its many home stations by the issuing of a Warning Order and a Field Order prepared by the Regimental Staff. These Orders were so complete that the regiment was assembled without a hitch, and no other instructions were sent out. The Regimental Commander sent a "Staff memo" to all Staff Officers calling on each to submit his paragraph for each order. These paragraphs were then coordinated and consolidated into the Warning Order and Field Order, each was issued at the proper time, and no further information was furnished or requested.

The principles given above have been tried and found sound. They have been instrumental in making a good, efficient Cavalry Regiment, which is not only able to "drill" but can march, camp, handle advance guard, outpost and similar duty, fight mounted or dismounted, make a good solution and take effective action on any problem with which it may be faced.

The International Polo Tournament Mexico City, D. F. Mexico

BY

Captain EDWARD M. FICKETT, Cavalry

For a number of years conditions in Mexico have been such as to keep a large part of the United States Army on the border looking over into that country, but prohibited from going over to see what it was like. From the casual contacts that many United States officers have made it seemed as though Mexico should be a very interesting place, and that there were some very interesting and pleasant people there. So much had been said and printed in the United States about the Mexicans being people habitually addicted to turning over in bed and shooting somebody just to keep their hands in, that finding the opposite of such a condition was to the people who experienced it a very pleasant surprise. But there was that everlasting curiosity. What was over there anyway? So said most of us who had been stationed on the border for any length of time. The result was that when Major E. L. N. Glass, Cavalry, now Assistant Military Attache of the Embassy of the United States at Mexico City, and formerly of the 10th Cavalry, was in Fort Sam Houston in December of 1923 during our last Mid-Winter Polo Tournament here, he and a group of polo enthusiasts got together on a scheme to see if an International Polo Tournament in Mexico City could be arranged somewhat along the lines of our own Mid-Winter Tournament in San Antonio. It was thought that the two could be run more or less together since civilian teams coming to San Antonio for the winter would probably be willing to ship to Mexico City for a tournament, and if the scheme could be put over once it would probably be possible for more and more of the teams from the Army to make the tournament.

Despite the fact that at the time the plan was first suggested, a revolution was in progress in Mexico, the idea was well received, and with the decline of revolutionary activities, our hopes grew stronger and stronger. The great thing which had to be overcome was the initial inertia; once that was overcome and things started moving, the project moved forward rapidly. A number of trips were made by Major Glass in the interest of the tournament, and without his energy, and willingness, tact, and ability in overcoming last minute obstacles, it is probable that the arrangements could not have been made. Srs. Eduardo Utrubide and T. Algara of the Mexico City Polo Club came to San Antonio during the summer and explained a great many things to us which were not clear in the discussions as they had been going on. Baron A. von Schroeder, also of the Mexico City Polo Club was invaluable in his assistance in getting the scheme under way. Even with the assistance of all these gentlemen, it appeared up to about three weeks before we would have to leave that the difficulties in the way of the trip were insurmountable. Eventually, however, all difficulties were cleared away and the trip made. The

official story of the tournament as reported to the War Department is as quoted:

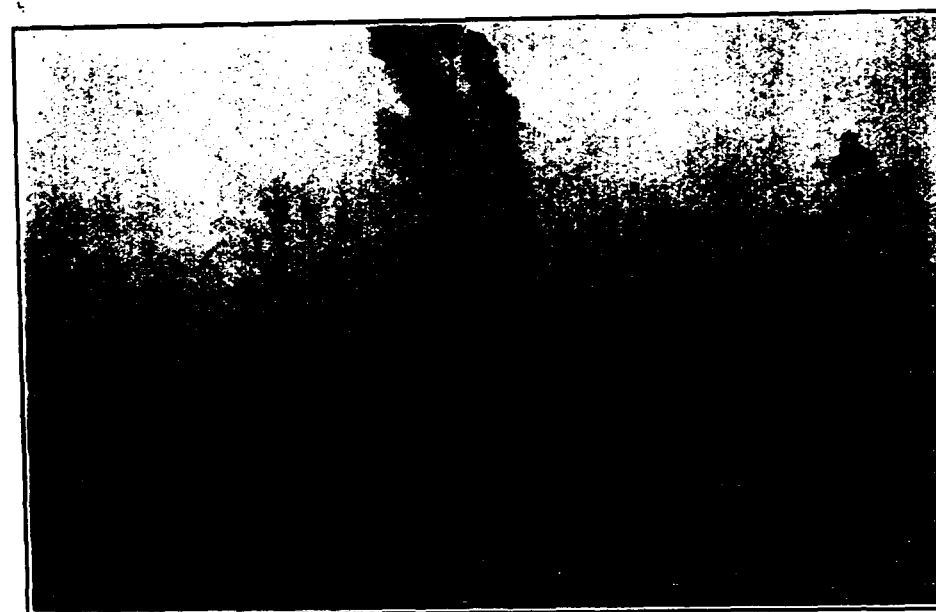
"An invitation was received by the Commanding General, Eighth Corps Area from the Board of Directors of the Polo Club of Mexico to send two Polo Teams from Fort Sam Houston, Texas, to Mexico City to participate in a Polo Tournament between these teams and teams representing the Polo Club of Mexico. At the request of the Corps Area Commander authority was granted by the War Department, under date of November 17, 1924, to send two teams to Mexico City, subject to the condition that the only expense to the United States would be that of commutation of rations for the enlisted men accompanying the teams for a period not to exceed thirty days."

"The official party consisted of Colonel John F. Preston, Chief of Staff; Colonel James F. McKinley, Corps Area Polo Representative; Lieutenant Colonel C. R. Norton, Polo Representative, Fort Sam Houston, Texas; Captain E. M. Fickett, Cavalry, Acting Quartermaster, and the First Team consisting of 1st Lieutenants Guy C. Benson, 12th F.A. (Captain), John A. Smith, 15th F.A., Eugene McGinley, A.D.C., M. McD. Jones, Cavalry, and Captain John A. Hettinger, Cavalry; and the Second Team consisting of Majors John F. Lapham, F.A.-O.R.C., (Captain), Frank M. Andrews, Air Service, C. B. King, 15th F.A., 1st Lieutenants B. M. Fitch, 12th F.A., and J. M. Clark, Air Service; and eighteen enlisted men of the 2nd Division. The official party, with the exception of Captain Hettinger and 1st Lieutenant Guy C. Benson, who accompanied the horses, arrived in Mexico City on December 5th. The horses arrived in Mexico City one week prior to the arrival of the players and when the players arrived the horses had been conditioned to the extent that light practice could be held and within a few days scrimmage was possible. Each day after the arrival of the players, up to and including December 12th, either light workouts or practice games were held."

"In company with Major Glass, Assistant Military Attache, the official party, on December 6, 1924, called on the Secretary of War and was received most cordially. The party received most courteous treatment at the hands of all government officials with whom they came into contact. The only other official call that was made was upon Mr. Sheffield, the United States Ambassador. Mr. Sheffield was sick during the visit of the Polo Teams in Mexico City, but Mrs. Sheffield gave a most delightful tea to the entire party. Major and Mrs. Glass were most cordial and entertained the entire party in their home. A great deal of the credit for the success of the Polo Tournament is due to the untiring efforts of Major Glass."

"The First Team played two games to win the President's Cup. On December 13th, our First Team defeated the Mexican First Team by a score of 9-1. On December 16th our First Team defeated the Mexican First Team by a score of 11-1. No one man on the American First Team stood out above the others. The team as a whole displayed splendid team-work and never was in danger of defeat."

"Our Second Team duplicated the work of the First Team by winning two games straight from the Mexican Second Team on December 15th and 17th. They defeated their opponents by scores of 11-2, and 14-2. The Second Team as a whole displayed excellent team-work. The two out-standing players on the Second Team were Major C. B. King, 15th F.A., and Major J. H. Lapham, F.A.-O.R.C. The line-up for the First Team was as follows: Lieut. Benson at No. 1, Lieut. McGinley at No. 2, Lieut. Smith at No. 3, Lieut. Jones at No. 4, Captain Hettinger, substitute, played at different positions for several periods in the two games. The Second Team had five men in their line-up and played all of them in each game. Two of the players kept their positions throughout their two games, Major King at No. 1, and Major Lapham at No. 4. The other three, Major Andrews, Lieutenants Fitch and Clark, alternated at the other two positions."



The Fort Sam Houston "Yellow Jackets" and the First Team of the Polo Club of Mexico
Left to Right: Mr. Manuel Campero, Mr. Eduardo Iturbide, Mr. Miguel Parada, Mr. Jorge Parada, Major E. L. N. Glass, Umpire, Lt. G. C. Benson, Lt. E. McGinley, Jr., Capt. J. A. Hettinger, Lt. M. McD. Jones.

"On December 18th an exhibition game was played by two teams, each composed of two American players and two Mexican players taken from their respective first teams. The line-up for the White team was Lieutenants Smith and Jones of the American Team, and General Iturbide and Mr. Campero of the Mexican First Team. The Yellow team was composed of Lieutenants Benson and McGinley of the American First Team and Mr. George Parada and Mr. Miguel

Parada of the Mexican First Team. Both teams apparently were of equal strength and the final outcome was a victory for the White Team by a score of 7 to 5. The game was a fast one and strongly contested.

"On December 19th an exhibition game was played by the two Mexican teams, strengthened by two American players, namely, Captain Hettinger and Major Andrews who played on opposing sides. There was a noticeable lack of teamwork in the game; however, the individual players rode hard and were most ag-



The Mexican Second Team

Reader's Left to Right: Mr. Archibaldo Burns, Major E. L. N. Glass, U. S. A., Mr. Miguel Parada, Mr. Antonio Pliego.

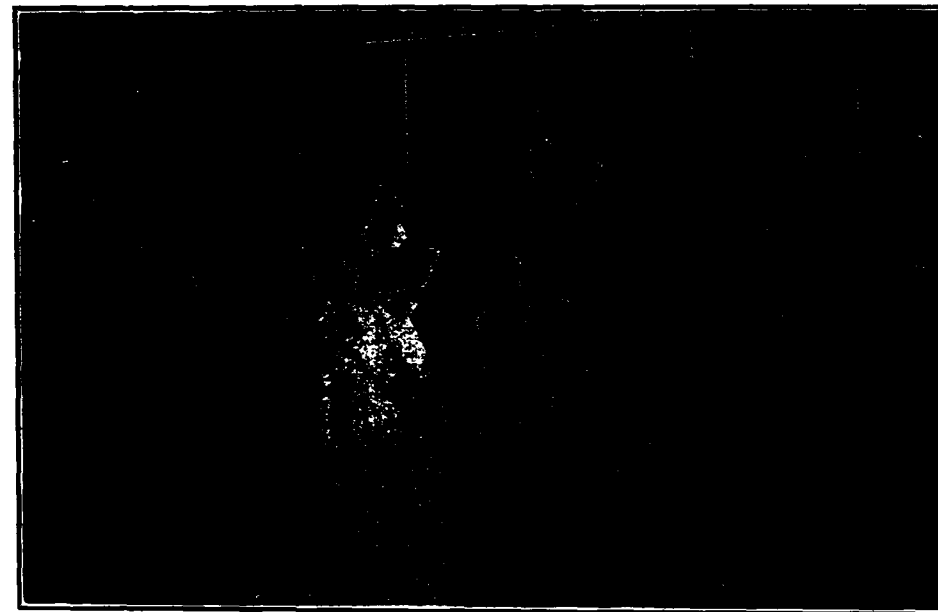
gressive at all times. From the standpoint of the spectators it was an interesting game.

"The only other scheduled game in the tournament in which the Americans took part was the Final Exhibition Game between the two American Teams. Lieutenant Jones played on the Second Team in place of Lieut. Fitch who played on the First Team. This game was looked upon as a game between our First and Second Teams. It was an exceptionally fast game, bitterly contested, and a thriller throughout. The final outcome was a victory of 7-6 for the Second Team.

"There are two fields in Mexico City at the present time. The practice field is very hard and should not be used for fast playing. It is very trying on the feet and legs of the animals. The second field belongs to the new Polo Club of Mexico.

Within a year it will be an excellent field when it becomes thoroughly covered with grass which is now very thin.

"From the experience of our teams in Mexico City it is believed that ten days is necessary to accustom our horses to the change in altitude; one week is sufficient for the players. During the tournament the teams experienced no trouble from the horses not being in condition as they had been in Mexico a sufficient length of time to get used to the altitude. From the standpoint of the care of

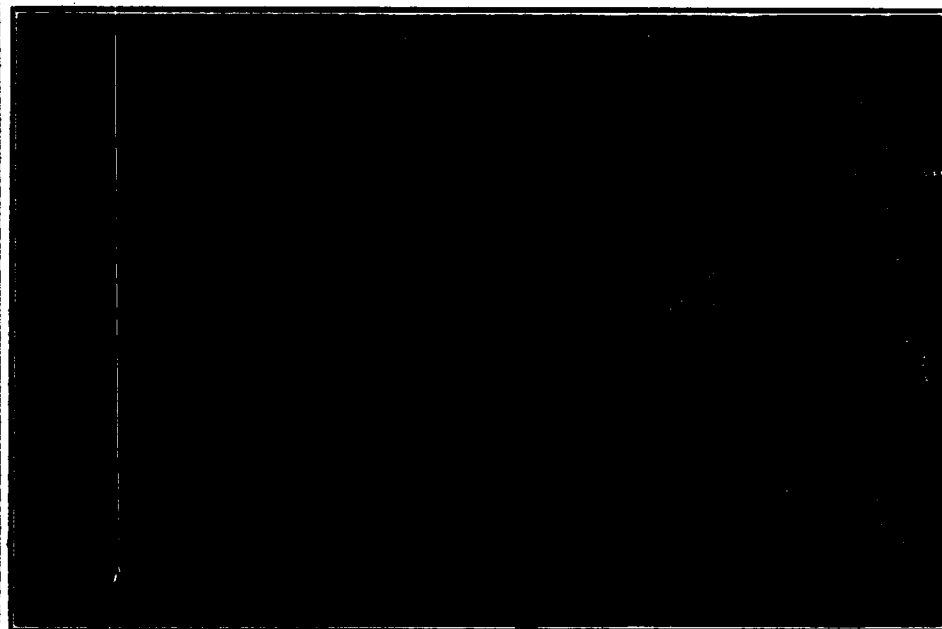


Senora Manuel Campero, Presenting the Polo Club Cup to Major Lapham at Cafe Chapultepec, December 18, 1924

animals, the most important thing about the climate of Mexico is the rapid evaporation which occurs there. Under no circumstances should grooms be allowed to sponge down the horses after playing; they should be covered with blankets and walked slowly until dry. During the winter months blankets should be used from about 4:00 o'clock in the afternoon until the sun fully comes up the following morning. Colds are easily contracted and due to the high altitude are most difficult to throw off.

"The fine spirit, and the gentlemanly and sportsmanlike manner in which the members of the two Mexican teams conducted themselves were at all times most noticeable; even though the teams were unevenly matched, individual members of both Mexican teams gave numerous exhibitions of hard riding aggressiveness. The players on both Mexican teams invariably played as hard during the last chukkers of each game as they did at the commencement of the game. Their splen-

did spirit and clean playing throughout the tournament was commented on by each and every member of the American teams. It is a fact that the actual playing of the Mexicans improved a great deal during the tournament. With the exception of two or three players it was their first experience of either seeing fast polo or taking part in it. Many of their horses were finely bred and fast, but with very few exceptions had not the best of polo training. It is apparently very difficult for them to get competent trainers and farriers in Mexico City. It is believed that within a couple of years the Mexicans will have some excellent polo teams; they have plenty of money to buy good ponies and will not rest until they have won back the challenge cup which was presented to the Polo Club of Mexico by General Calles, the President of the Republic.



Presenting the President's Challenge Cup at the Cafe Chapultepec, December 18, 1924.
General Carrillo Representing President Calles Presenting the Cup to Colonel J.
F. Preston, Representing the Commanding General, 8th Corps Area.

"The Mexican players are most anxious to improve their game and have extended invitations to a number of our First Team players to spend their vacations in Mexico City as their guests; they are anxious to have some of our good American players play with and coach their teams.

"The press was very liberal in their write-ups of the American players and the games. All of the papers carried stories, pictures and cartoons of the games. It is a fact that all the Mexicans with whom the official party came into contact

did everything in their power to make the visit of the Americans pleasant. No stone was left unturned by them to make the trip a memorable one."

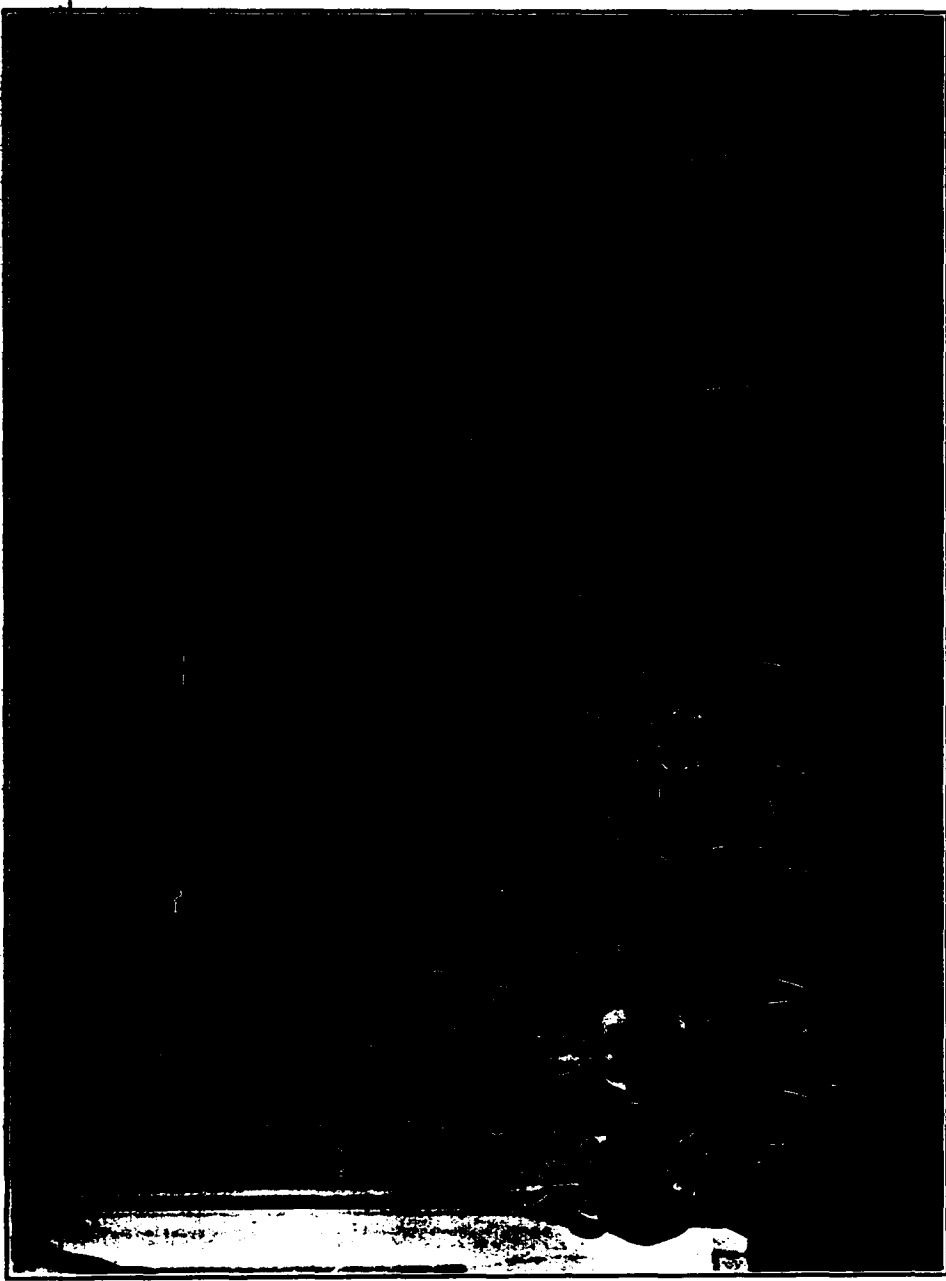
Our hosts arranged many pleasant social events which afforded an opportunity to become better acquainted with the Mexican people, and to appreciate their generosity and sportsmanship in arranging this tournament. The party given by the Polo Club of Mexico at the Cafe Chapultepec in honor of the visiting polo players is one that stands out from many of the less formal affairs. The President's Challenge Cup, the cup of the Polo Club of Mexico, and the individual trophies were presented at this party with suitable ceremonies. The President's Cup was presented by General Carrillo, Chief of Staff of General Amaro, Secretary of War, in the name of, and representing President Calles who was unable to be present. A very gracious speech was interpreted by General O'Neill, Assistant Chief of Air Service, and was replied to by Colonel Preston, representing Major General Summerall, the Corps Area Commander.

The Polo Club of Mexico Cup was presented by Mrs. Campero, wife of the President of the Polo Club and the star number 1 of the Mexican team, and was accepted in the name of the Corps Area Commander by Major J. H. Lapham, the captain of the "Whips." Individual trophies were presented to each of the players on each team, after which appropriate dedication ceremonies were held.

The Mexico City Country Club also gave a beautiful party in honor of the polo players which was thoroughly enjoyed by everybody. On this occasion our hosts again came forth with an additional set of trophies, presenting silver cigarette cases to the Chief of Staff, Col. Preston, and the members of the two teams. This was a fancy dress party, the principal idea being polo; the result was that two of the fine horses of the Mexican string were occupying places of honor in box-stalls alongside the dance floor.

The "Fronton" and the bull-fights took hold of the American players and we all enjoyed them very much. The "Fronton," by the way is a kind of a glorified hand-ball court, with stone floor, end walls, and one side wall. The other side is open to a great hall seating probably 2,000 persons, but separated by a wire netting. Here they play the game of "pelota" with a small hard rubber ball about the size of a billiard ball, and a fiber basket tied to the wrist. The basket looks a little like a lacrosse racquet. The game is fast, difficult and interesting, but it is no game for a beginner or a novice as some of the boys found out when a private game was arranged one morning. The ball has a bad habit of sliding out of the basket and running up the arm, kissing one gently on the cheek, and other such pleasant tricks. And as the Mexicans say when one asks them if it is dangerous, "Oh yes, every once in a while some one gets killed." The bull fights, too, were a great subject of conversation and argument.

Interest became so keen in the bull-fighting that our friends arranged a private bull fight or "noveada" for us, so that we might have an opportunity to see and judge for ourselves just what kind of a sport it was to be in the ring with an infuriated bull. The only trouble was that the fight was arranged for the morning after the party at the Cafe Chapultepec where the cups were presented. The two

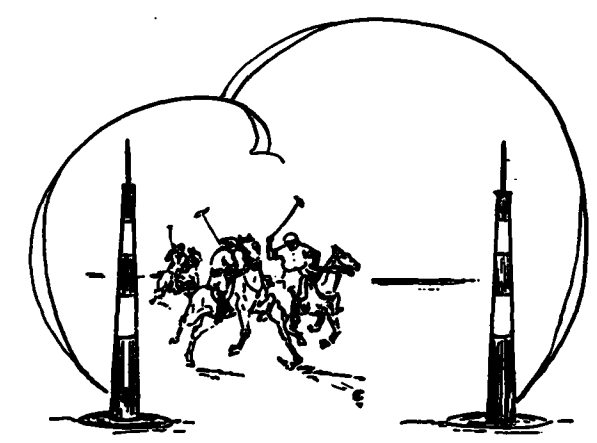


The Mexican and American Teams After Presentation of Cups

Left to right, sitting: Capt. J. A. Hettinger, Lt. J. A. Smith, Lt. E. McGinley, Jr., Lt. G. C. Benson, Col. J. F. Preston, G. S., Major J. H. Lapham, Col. J. F. McKinley, Major F. M. Andrews, Major C. B. King, Lt. B. M. Fitch, Lt. J. M. Clark. Standing: Mr. Nacho Orvanllanos, Mr. Tito Algarra, Mr. Jorge Parada, Mr. Eduardo Iturbide, Mr. Manuel Campero, Major E. L. N. Glass, U. S. A., Capt. E. M. Fickett, U. S. A., Mr. Julio Mueller, Mr. Archibaldo Burns, Mr. Antonio Pilego, Mr. Henry Lacey.

toreadors were Tito Algarra and Julio Mueller, both of the second team and seasoned amateur fighters. The balance of the "cuadrilla" were supposed to be Americans, but as the hour approached, a number found that they were very ill, or otherwise unable to take part. However, four of our players discovered how fast a peevish bull could move and one, who had some preconceived ideas as to bull-fighting, found out that his idea was all wrong. After testing it three times, and the bull, having won two out of the three falls, he left the field to the bull.

The result of the tournament and of the entire trip is believed to have been of great value to both the countries. The friends made, the friendly feeling established, the sportsmanship of the players and the spectators demonstrated, and the mutual feeling of understanding and cooperation founded are believed to be real and definite contributions to a new era in the relations between the people of Mexico and the United States. Everywhere the Americans went they found the greatest desire to help them in their difficulties with the language, and customs of the country. The people of all classes were much interested in the tournament, and as a result of the tournament are taking a stronger and stronger interest in polo. It is thought that this tournament is not only the fore runner of many similar tournaments in Mexico, but that Mexican teams will soon be coming to the States and competing in our tournaments. They have already signified their intention of challenging for the President's Challenge Cup next year.



A Word As To Field Maps

BY

Colonel W. C. BROWN, U. S. Army

NO class of line officer has greater need in the field of good maps than the Cavalry officer, and this is true whether he be a lieutenant commanding a small reconnoitering patrol, or a Colonel in command of an independent column.

To supply these maps is of course one of the functions of the staff, but in the past they have not always been successful in producing the goods when wanted, as the writer has had the misfortune to experience.

The following examples are taken from actual personal experience.

In an Indian campaign in middle Idaho in 1879 *no maps* were supplied, for the very good reason that the government maps of that day marked our theatre of operations as "UNEXPLORED."

When the Spanish War came on the War Department essayed to do better, so the officers down to the grade of Captain and probably others, were issued a map of Cuba compiled shortly previous and which therefore embodied practically all that was known of Cuba at that time. The map which I received comprised 9 sheets, each 27" x 42", on a scale of 1" = 4 miles, the whole weighing a full pound. None of us knew where we were to land in Cuba so it was necessary to carry the whole big roll of sheets, but when we landed at Daiquiri, and it was known that Santiago was our objective, the writer cut out from the appropriate sheet a piece 6" x 8" which covered all and even more of the Cuban terrain which had any interest for us. But even this scrap was of *paper* and required unusual care in the torrential rains to which we were exposed to prevent its being disintegrated to a pulp.

In the Philippine Insurrection we fared worse, for the old Spanish maps supplied us were printed on paper almost as fragile as eggshells, and required the greatest care in handling to prevent their being torn. Some, compiled hurriedly in Manila, were blue printed from tracings but were lacking in detail.

In 1916 came the Punitive Expedition and the map of Northern Mexico supplied was printed on very thin paper and on a scale of 1" = 16 miles,—not much better than a sketch map,—and abounding in inaccuracies.

Conditions there were such that the commander of a column was obliged to refer constantly to the map, not an easy matter in high winds and occasional rain storms. The reader will ask, "Why not use a map case?" This is all very well but it adds just one more article to one's personal equipment. In Cuba we were afoot and officers carried everything, rations and all, on their backs. In Mexico we were mounted but with no transportation for officers' rolls so that, as *all impedimenta* had to be carried on the back of the horse, even a light leather map case made just one extra article to carry.

MAPS ON CLOTH

When I returned to the United States I determined to have a map *on cloth* affected by neither rain or wind, which after its being consulted could be stuffed back into one's pocket or saddle bags with no more care than one would take with a handkerchief.

After some investigation and experiments we find that there are several kinds of cloth maps which have varying degrees of merit, some very easily and quickly made, others which require more technical skill, but none difficult.

Blue print cloth is a commercial article, and with it an ordinary blue print (white on blue) can be made by direct print if the map to be reproduced be on thin transparent paper, as is the case of our General Staff Map of Northern Mexico, or a blue on white can be secured by first making a Van Dyke print or reversed negative as described below.

METHODS OF PREPARATION

Both of these are as tough as ordinary tracing linen, but in both cases the sizing in the linen gives us an article somewhat lacking in pliability—it is the same in this respect as ordinary tracing linen, no more and no less. To secure a map on a softer material with the pliability of a handkerchief, one must prepare his own sensitized blue print cloth, which is fortunately easily done by using the following formula:

- | | | |
|----|----------------------------------|--------|
| I | Citrate of Iron and Ammonia..... | 1¼ oz. |
| | Water | 8 oz. |
| II | Red Prussiate of Potash..... | 1⅞ oz. |
| | Water | 8 oz. |

Dissolve and filter each separately.

Select a fine meshed cotton material—100 meshes to the inch or finer. It should have some "body" and not be too thin. Such material can be had at from 50c to 75c per yard.

Stretch with thumb tacks on a clean board.

Mix equal parts of I and II in a saucer and, in a dimly lighted room, apply with a soft sponge to the cloth, going over it back and forth and crossways until thoroughly coated, then place in the dark to dry, and after the cloth is dry *keep in a dark place*.

If no facilities other than a printing frame be available and the map to be copied be on thin paper, an ordinary blue print copy on cloth (white lines on blue ground) can be secured by direct printing.

A step in advance of the above giving blue lines on a white background may be obtained at a photostat establishment, making what is known as a Van Dyke print or negative by placing the map (which must have no printing on the back) face to face against a sheet of sensitized Van Dyke negative paper, which when developed gives a *reversed* white on brown print to be used as a negative.

This latter is now used as a negative by placing it in the printing frame, face to face with the sensitized cloth. The resulting print is washed and dried, the same as in making ordinary blue prints.

Better results, however, are obtained by making a wet plate negative, enlarging or reducing as may be desirable, using a prism in the lens when photographing. If, however, the photographer is not equipped with a prism, the negative can be restripped on another piece of glass, making it a reverse negative. Place the negative over the sensitized cloth. Make the exposure in the sunlight, experimenting first with small scraps to determine the length of time of exposure required. This will give a blue line print with white background. For details of this latter method the writer is indebted to the Clason Map Company of Denver, Colorado.

In all the above prints the blue may be intensified by immersing for a few seconds, after the first thorough washing, in a 4% solution of hydrochloric acid, when it is again thoroughly washed.

These several methods are described because the facilities for one kind may be available but not the other.

It is desirable, of course, to get as clear a negative as possible, and the same negative should suffice for the purposes of printing all the copies of a given map required in any Corps Area.

Since the above was written, attention has been called to reproduction by Planography, which is applicable in the present instance, the details of which have been supplied by the Washington Planograph Company of Washington, D. C.

In this process a wet plate negative is first made, which is then printed onto a flat zinc plate which has by the use of chemicals been sensitized. The printing is done from the zinc plate on cloth giving a permanent beautiful black on white.

This process, it will be seen, is more technical than the others but appears more suitable for producing maps in large quantities.

Editor's Note—Samples of maps on cloth prepared by the methods described in the above article by Colonel Brown have been examined and the results are quite remarkable. Their legibility is at least equal, and possibly superior, to that of maps on paper, and their superior durability is unquestionable.



The Service Coat

BY

Major P. R. DAVISON, Cavalry

THERE is no stigma attached to, or criticism made of, an officer who expresses himself, verbally or in writing, concerning armaments or organization. In fact, he is encouraged to experiment and endeavor to develop ideas which tend to increase the efficiency of the fighting forces of the United States. Weapons are constantly undergoing a change. Some changes minute and unnoticed unless one be of a technical turn of mind and studies the mechanism carefully. Other changes outstanding. Marked revolutions in both design and use.

PROGRESS MADE THROUGH CHANGES

Saddlery has undergone radical changes, with the result that we have at present highly successful saddles for different purposes. I invite the attention of the reader to the fact that I mention saddles in the plural. The officers' field saddle, the enlisted men's modified McClellan and the training saddle. Each designed and used for a particular purpose. No attempt being made to establish one as an ever-ready for all occasions. It was found necessary to use a different type for the officer and the enlisted man. One saddle not being satisfactory for both usages, we improved the McClellan and very commendably adopted outright two French models. The officers' field saddle and the training saddle. On the training saddle, most of the riding at the Cavalry School and most of the riding for pleasure throughout the service, is done. It is strictly a non-military model, but fits into our scheme of training excellently. In the adoption of the above we have lost no part of our nationalism, individualism or of our self respect. To the contrary we pat ourselves on the back for being smart enough to be able to pick the best and put it to our service. It makes absolutely no difference to the horseman who designed the saddle he uses, so long as it is suitable to the work at hand and does not injure the horse.

Should we adopt a policy of, "we will adopt nothing new unless it be of distinctly American invention, design or manufacture," as an efficient fighting machine our army would be doomed. There are brilliant inventive geniuses in other countries. Other countries do not fail to take from us that which is good and successful.

Why should it be considered indiscreet for a junior officer to even so much as harbor the thought that he would like a change in the uniform? Why should he feel that by voicing an opinion he is hurting himself officially or incurring the wrath of the powers on high? Is not, and I hold most vehemently that it is, the uniform a very important part of our equipment? Why then should not this subject be open to development and improvement, and suggestions encouraged. If nature had seen fit to clothe us as the bear or wolf

there would be no need of argument. Since this is not the case the subject is herewith opened and certain views expressed. These views are not the views of any solitary officer but are the collective thoughts of the vast majority of the junior officers in my branch of the service and a goodly number of the other branches, among the few with whom I have had the good fortune to have been thrown. At any social gathering, any place where two or more officers are present, with no official duties to perform, you will hear, sooner or later, the matter of the uniform enter the conversation.

THE SERVICE COAT UNSATISFACTORY

The premise to start with is that the present service coat is unsatisfactory. This statement requires arguments to prove it. Statements of advantages and disadvantages. In the military hospital in which I took my annual physical examination I noticed that all of the medical officers were either in shirt sleeves or in operating gowns. Upon questioning I found that the gowns and shirt sleeves were not worn principally for sanitary reasons, but because the service coat was too uncomfortable to work in. That, in work more of a mental than a physical nature. The opinion was also expressed by a medical officer of considerable experience, that due to the standing collar the service coat is unsanitary. It is a primary cause of boils around the neck. The tight standing collar does not allow for the body heat to escape and causes profuse perspiration. The collar quickly becomes damp and when the exercise is stopped, and the person cools off, the damp collar helps the wearer to contract a cold. The standing collar is only the major bone of contention in the uniform.

Change the collar on the service coat from the standing type to a collar with lapels, similar to the collar on the British field coat.

The contents of his pocket book is one of the chief worries of an officer of the army. He must scratch around quite a bit to make both ends meet. The present uniform does not help him in his problem. The coat costs in the neighborhood of \$65.00 and is not an economical garment. If it is cut to fit so that a smart appearance will result. The coat is too snug for service requiring physical exertion. This snugness is necessary because the coat is entirely built around the collar and not the collar put on the coat. Any good tailor will claim that he could make a good uniform if he could cut the collar. It takes a specially trained expert to do that. After a short period of wear that collar will break down if the garment is worn during our many forms of mounted exercise that require great freedom of the arms, head, neck and shoulders. Shoulder seams burst at the slightest provocation when mounted. Once the coat has been ruined by mounted wear it cannot be assigned to the second string and used for dismounted wear only. Dismounted wear requires a better turn out and a snappier appearance than while mounted. A broken coat has no place left for it to go except to the rag-bag. As we now dress, field work and target practice, are done in flannel shirts. Should we have to wear coats for this duty, as we did during the war, we would have to keep on

hand a coat of large and sloppy dimensions especially for this work. In a very short time an officer has on hand several half worn coats. The material is good and shows little wear. They are broken down and of no further use. If they had been made in a comfortable, useful model, the maximum wear could have been secured from them. This leads to the conclusion that a dress and service uniform combined is more expensive than two separate types would be. That is not the question we are arguing at this time, so nothing further will be said on the matter. It is something to consider however. It is easy to see that we are traveling on a tangent of false economy.

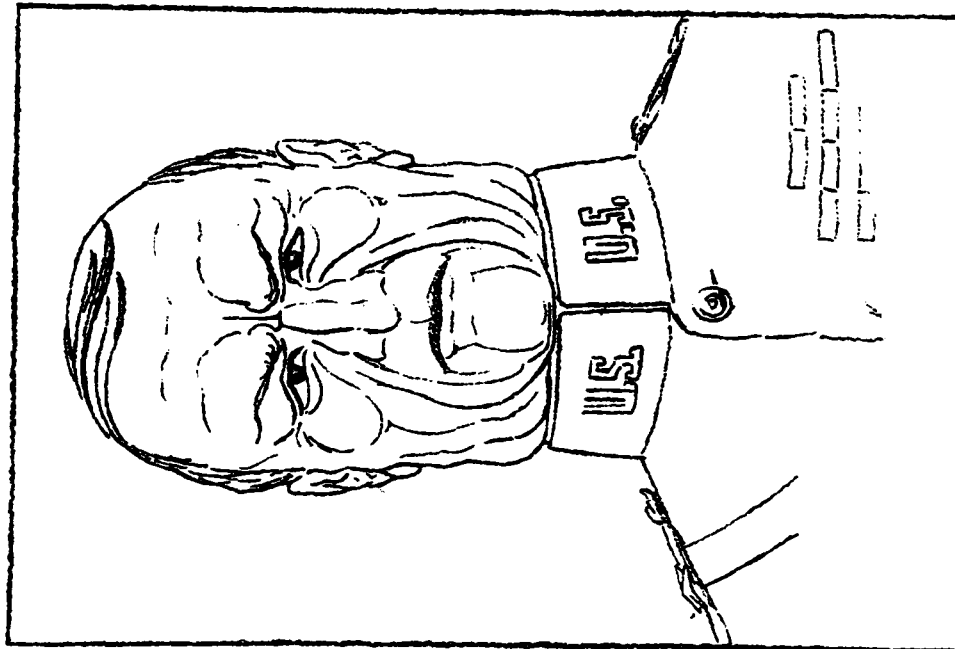
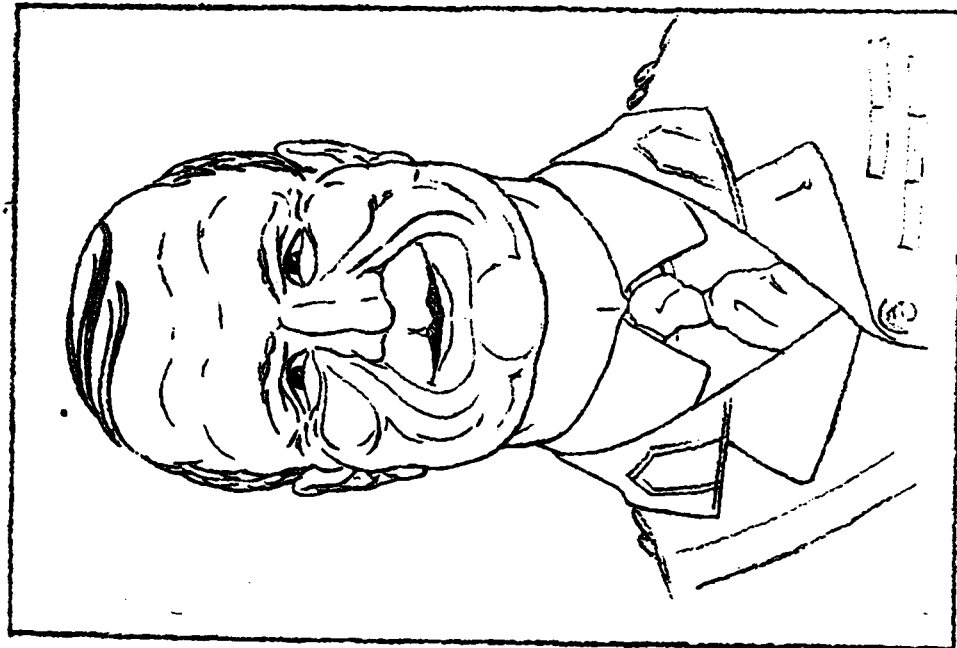
THE ACME OF DISCOMFORT

Dismounted, when a person has to wear a pack or even the belt, with equipment on it, over the coat with the present collar, the torture is like that of the damned. The front of the collar takes great delight in crowding the Adam's Apple toward the back of the neck. In consequence, the collar is left unhooked and the net result, a most sloppy appearance. Did you ever stop to consider what we have around our necks when we are fully dressed in the cold weather? A white linen collar, a coat collar hooked tightly, an overcoat collar hooked tightly. The head, neck and chin are in a set position as though set in concrete. The discomfort can be slightly overcome if the collar is loose and low but no particular, self respecting officer can afford to wear sloppy clothes with the standards as now set.

Air service officers are particularly strong in their objections to the standing collar and I notice, regardless of regulations, that they rarely fly with the coat on. This is somewhat of an argument in itself.

In an office, or class room, it might be thought, by those who are permitted to wear civilian clothes, that the standing collar would not be uncomfortable and that no argument could be raised against it. To those of us that are performing office and class room duty and are required to wear the uniform continually, on duty at the several service schools for example, the matter is of serious consideration. We suffer tortures unimaginable. We have a nasty, raw, red mark around our necks and who can blame us for dashing off our coats and climbing into something comfortable. Sitting around the house in the evening in a poly-garb, half uniform and half civilian. Dashing up the back stairs, in case visitors come, to get back into the torture coat in case the visitors should be of superior rank. Changing again on their departure. Shaving over the raw collar mark is just one of the many discomforts of the day. You cannot keep your mind open and concentrate on the work before you when you are in physical agony because of the garb you are wearing.

The only argument that I have ever heard put forth against the adoption of the lapel collar is that it does not present a military appearance. It is a question in the minds of many officers as to just what constitutes a military appearance when in uniform. Shall we say that the Scotch Highlander is unmilitary in appearance simply because he wears kilts? They do not detract



A Contrast in Expression

one iota from the military appearance of a Scottish regiment on parade or in battle. Greek Guardsmen wear bed room slippers and ballet skirts yet I have never heard them called unmilitary. Some British regiments wore knee pants such as our boy scouts wear. They were no laughing matter and fought with considerable zest. It can be seen that the whole matter of military appearance is one of personal opinion and not a matter of what's what. Let's snap out of our lethargy and give our soldiers a chance to perform their duties with some comfort. We copied the present coat from the Germans, let's copy a new one from some one else.

For summer wear officers may wear a light weight wool coat and cotton breeches. The combination is not unsightly and the garment that requires the most washing and gets the most wear is of a washable material. The cotton coat fits the wearer only once—before it is washed for the first time—after that it is a terribly ill fitting affair. Most officers have ceased to wear the cotton coat entirely. An open collared coat of light wool material would remedy the matter completely.

ECONOMY

I have talked with several first class uniform tailors and am informed by them that a coat could be turned out in less time, better fitting and at a lower cost to the officer if the lapel collar was adopted. There are plenty of tailors who can build a coat with a lapel collar. Those who are able to set the standing collar are experts and few and far between. These same tailors inform me that they can alter the present coat with little difficulty and at an expense of from \$3.00 to \$5.00 depending on the material.

Why not secure a vote of the service on the matter of the change? The ballot of two years past was started and counted in the wrong manner. There were too many items upon which to ballot. The differences in each change slight and misunderstood. The phrases: roll collar, turn down collar, civilian collar or no change, all drew their proportion of the vote and a majority was not secured. The matter dropped. The questionnaire should not be sent to Corps Area commanders to canvass their districts and then give their own opinion. It should be handled direct from Washington. The questionnaires sent out in the same manner that the Statement of Preference is sent out. The questionnaire so worded that the answer required would be yes or no. The matter should be attended to before it is necessary for officers to purchase new uniforms for next winter's wear.

It is difficult to get a matter of this nature before the authorities that are able to take action without its being killed en route. The matter is a sore and much debated subject to subordinates and it is hoped that this will be read in the spirit in which it is written, an argument for a much wished for reform and not a growl in a spirit of bolshevism.

The Cavalry School

BY

Captain ROBERT A. BUSH, Cavalry, O. R. C.

HONOR, education, pleasure, these three things, more or less desired by every officer of the military service, are given to one so fortunate as to be detailed for a course of instruction at the Cavalry School, Fort Riley, Kansas.

Honor, because no greater recognition of a Cavalryman's desires could be accorded than a period of training at this institution, which lives, breathes, and is, the true spirit of Cavalry.

Education, for no matter how much, or how little, one who is detailed to the School may know about his Arm, the facilities and opportunities for learning, together with the untiring efforts and patience of instructors, will send any officer forth from the School with a wealth of knowledge concerning the capabilities and requirements of Cavalry.

Pleasure, derived from association with our army's greatest Cavalrymen and their ladies, who, from the arrival of the student officer at the Cavalry School, until his departure therefrom, do everything in their power to make his stay a pleasant period of his military career.

The student, upon his arrival, is very quickly convinced that Fort Riley, so far as he is concerned, means very little, but that the Cavalry School is to be his world. He learns that punctuality and regular attendance at classes, with a *speaking* knowledge of the text being studied, are essentials to his personal happiness. If he is of a mind not readily convinced, interviews with instructors followed by a short conference with the Commandant, will fully convince the student that *time, place and an approved solution* will all require a great amount of consideration on his part.

COURSE OF INSTRUCTION

The course of instruction at the Cavalry School, based upon sound military principles, is the peak of efficiency and training. Every facility which will help the student in any manner is placed at his disposal. Weapons, horses and equipment allotted to his use are of the highest order. The course for the Reserve Officer, necessarily crowded because of lack of time, is nevertheless thorough, and given by instructors who not only know the subject they teach, but also know how to convey that knowledge to the student. The Departments of Horsemanship and Tactics consume the greater number of hours during the course, and although every subject and hour of the course is of interest and value, undoubtedly these two departments are to the average student the best of the School.

The Departments of Cavalry Weapons and General Instruction, each having decidedly important subjects, are hampered by the shortness of the Reserve Officers' course. In all departments the student feels the thoroughness and interest which marks the teaching of every subject, and cannot help but derive some good from every minute of instruction received.

Since the World War it has frequently been the policy of officers, especially of other Arms, to speak in a disparaging manner concerning the Cavalry. The



Over the Fence With the Reserve Officers

Cavalry does not need to apologize to any other branch of service for its existence, and a careful study of the uses and deeds of Cavalry during the World War will quickly dispel any ideas of this nature. Without disparaging the Air Service, the Cavalry is still the eyes of the army. The use of the Cavalry by the Germans in their advance across Belgium, in the early days of the war, furnish ample proof of the above statement. That Cavalry is a protector of the less mobile arms in many instances, is demonstrated by the use of Cavalry in delaying actions when the Allied Armies were retreating toward Paris. That Cavalry has mobility, fire and shock power unequalled by any other arm of the service, is shown in the use of Cavalry by the British in Palestine, when this achieved successes which seemed well nigh impossible, and with a loss of men, horses and equipment which was almost negligible.

THE SABRE AND PISTOL

Cavalry officers disagree to some extent as to the relative value of the sabre and pistol. However, the sabre enthusiasts seem to have the best of the argument, for the sabre is always loaded, and in the hands of men well trained in its use, it is a formidable weapon, giving to the Cavalryman the same dash and spirit that the bayonet gives to the Infantryman. One fortunate enough to witness the demonstration of a mounted attack by well trained troops, armed either with the pistol or sabre, will readily realize that mounted troops, well disciplined and trained in the use of their weapons are extremely efficient, and their effect upon an enemy, both in loss of life and morale, is great. Foot troops, no matter how well trained and disciplined, will be shaken by a mounted charge. A solid line of troopers coming toward one, even though you realize that they are going to stop

before they strike you, will give a thrill never to be forgotten, and will cause even the stoutest of hearts to want to move from the "zone of action."

THE CAVALRY BOARD

The Cavalry Board, on duty at the Cavalry School, is constantly bringing forth revisions in equipment and training, which will improve the Cavalry. Assisted by the school staff, and the troops on duty at the School, which are used for demonstration purposes, the Board is readily acquainted with the feasibility and usefulness of any new equipment or plan for training. The practical demonstration of all phases of instruction at the Cavalry School show the student just what well trained cavalymen are capable of doing, and present to him pictures of the theoretical work he has had, or will have during the course.

GENERAL "A"

The alphabet of the School proves to be confined chiefly to the letter "A," and it is surprising to note what a stumbling block this letter is to the student. Actions and orders of the "A's," from Corporal "A" to General "A" are ever with you, and the many tactical errors and omissions which these models of military tactics are guilty of is readily proven by their bold signatures, appearing on the papers of each student as he gropes his way to victory, or, as is more often the case, defeat, so far as the approved solution of the situation is concerned.

Gettysburg-Antietam and the Kansas-Republican Rivers have been the scenes of many combats which would make such famed soldiers as Hannibal and Napoleon stand awestruck, could they behold the boldness and cunning which mark the engagements and battles fought in these great theatres of war.

The reservation surrounding the School furnishes a variety of terrain which is replete with hazards giving to the most daring horseman any excitement that he may crave. To the uninitiated, Magazine Canyon, Cemetery Slide, Republican Point and Twenty-second Battery Hill are mere names. To those who find these names familiar come memories of thrills, repeated alibis and much writing in the Police Book. Temptations to caress Mother Earth are ever looming in the path of the Cavalry School student.

RESERVE OFFICERS' COURSE

The course for the Reserve Officer is entirely too short, therefore he does not derive full benefit from the instruction and training offered at the School. Toward the end of the course inclement weather curtails parts of the course which are very essential to a well-trained Cavalryman, thereby working a hardship not only on the student, but on instructors as well. If the course could be lengthened the value received would far exceed the expenditure in money. The aim of every Reserve Officer should be to have provisions made for an increase in appropriations for the training of Reserve Officers at the Cavalry School, which would in turn permit a longer course for Reserve Officers, a greater number of officers being detailed to take the course, and it is hoped, a greater opportunity for the graduate of the School to pass along knowledge gained to his brothers.

Too much praise or credit cannot be given to the Commandant and the Staff of the Cavalry School for their efforts in the instruction of, and their courtesy to the student officers. It is to be hoped that every Cavalry Officer of Reserve status may be permitted at some time to have the privilege of attending the Cavalry School.

The Boise, Idaho Endurance Ride

BY

Captain W. R. KIDWELL, V.C., 116th Cavalry, Idaho N. G.

BOISE, Idaho, staged its first Annual Endurance Ride the week of September 14th, 1924. It was held under the sponsorship of the Boise Chamber of Commerce, The Gymkhana Association, and the Adjutant General of the Idaho National Guard.

The judges were Captain L. R. Shafer, 13th Cavalry, U. S. A., Dr. H. E. McMillan of Filer, Idaho and Dr. W. R. Kidwell of Boise, Idaho.

On Monday morning, September 15th, all entrants were weighed. The horses were weighed, pulse, respiration, and temperatures were recorded. Measurements were taken of the chest or heart girth and abdominal girth in the region of the flank. A thorough physical examination was given each animal, special attention being given to any blemish, unsoundness, or abnormalities. The gaits of the various mounts were observed, with riders up, and notes made while moved at a walk, trot, and canter.

Each horse had to carry 200 pounds weight, including the rider. If the rider weighed 155 pounds or more when stripped, he had to carry one pound additional dead weight for every two pounds of live weight over the 155 pounds.

The course was sixty miles, extending from Boise Barracks to Caldwell, a town located about 25 miles from Boise. Here all entrants stopped for the noon rest, fed and watered their mounts, and had a light lunch themselves. They were checked in by the Route Master on arriving and checked out again upon resuming the ride. From Caldwell the route extended to Meridian, and thence into Boise. The requirements were that the horse must complete the sixty miles in not less than 9 hours nor more than 11 hours. This included any stops made to water, feed, rest, or to replace lost or loose shoes. The entrant had to ride the entire distance.

Sergeant George Gatlin, horse shoer of Headquarters Troop, 116th Cavalry, Idaho National Guard, carried his emergency equipment to reset or replace loose or lost shoes. He rode the entire distance each day, in a car with one of the judges and only replaced shoes on the road under the direction of a judge.

Each morning the rider was weighed out with his full equipment, including saddle, bridle, blankets or pads, and any weights that he carried and weighed in each night on completion of the day's ride. An accurate record of all grain or forage fed was kept by the Route Master, Mr. L. M. Davidson of Boise.

The first morning out 27 entrants and aspirants started, including one woman. All finished the sixty miles in the prescribed time, though some came in quite lame. The second day 22 entrants started with one dropping out

enroute. The third day 17 started with two dropping out on the road. The fourth day 11 started with seven finishing, while on the fifth and last day seven started with two being eliminated on the road. The remaining five finished within the prescribed time, as hereinafter stated.

Each morning the judges carefully examined each horse and observed them under the saddle at a walk, trot, and canter to note any lameness or weakness which might have developed during the night. If any were noted the horse and rider were eliminated and not allowed to start the day's ride.

On the morning following the fifth and final day's ride, the judges met at the stables and each horse was carefully examined before the owners or riders were permitted in to care for their mounts. The pulse, temperature, and respiration were again recorded. The riders were then permitted to enter the stables and attend to their horses for a period of fifteen minutes. The horses were then weighed and measured as on the preceding day of the ride, after which they were tried out with riders up, to determine the character of their gaits and to note any weakness. One horse was eliminated, as he was too lame to go on the road. The judges then retired to a private office where all notes and records were carefully gone over to determine the winners.

The winning horse, No. 11, owned and ridden by A. F. Feamster of Nampa, Idaho was a three quarter bred Saddle Horse of *Red Squirrel* breeding. His time for the three hundred miles was 47 hours and 44½ minutes. This horse consumed 51¾ pounds of oats and 102 pounds of hay during the five days, and lost 15 pounds in weight. He gained ¾ inch in heart girth and lost 1¾ inches in flanks.

The horse which was awarded second place was No. 20; owned and ridden by Earl Coleman of Meridian, Idaho. This animal was a three quarter Morgan horse. His time was 48 hours and 53 minutes. He consumed 48 pounds of oats and 92 pounds of hay; losing 20 pounds weight in the five days. He also lost 1½ inches in heart girth and 3 inches in the flanks.

The horse which was placed third was No. 10; owned by the U. S. Government, and assigned to Troop C, 116th Cavalry, Idaho National Guard, at Grace, Idaho. He was ridden by Sergeant E. R. Cox of that Troop. His total time was 48 hours and 32¾ minutes. He consumed 51½ pounds of oats and 105 pounds of hay. He lost 40 pounds in weight. His heart girth was 2 inches and his flank measurement was 4 inches less than when he entered the race. This mount, while making slightly better time than the one placed second did not finish in as good condition. He was continually troubled by interfering behind, which counted greatly against him. This rider also received a cash prize of \$25.00 for showing the best horsemanship during the contest.

The fourth horse, No. 22, was owned by the U. S. Government and assigned to Service Troop, 116th Cavalry, Idaho National Guard at Caldwell, Idaho. He was ridden by R. J. Lonkey of that Troop. His time was 49 hours

and 23 minutes. This animal consumed 47½ pounds of oats and 100 pounds of hay. He lost 20 pounds in weight as well as 1 inch in heart girth and 1¾ inches in the flanks.

No. 6, the fifth horse that finished, was owned by the U. S. Government and assigned to Headquarters Troop, 116th Cavalry, Idaho National Guard at Boise, Idaho. He was ridden by the Commanding Officer of that Troop,—Capt. J. F. Coonan. His time was 48 hours and 27½ minutes, which was the second best time made. This horse consumed 51½ pounds of oats and 113 pounds of hay, losing 40 pounds in weight. He gained ¾ inch in heart girth and lost ¾ inch in the flanks. While this horse was not placed within the money, he deserves favorable mention and praise. It was unfortunate that this animal did not place, because of his wonderful spirit and stamina which was shown throughout the ride. The spirit and horsemanship of his rider who was untiring in his efforts to care for his mount, were no less conspicuous. It is safe to say that Captain Coonan gave more attention to his mount than any other rider, while on the road. However, on the morning of the final judging, this horse could scarcely be moved from his stall: his left hind leg being so swollen and sensitive that it was with difficulty that he was moved at all. This condition, of course, eliminated both the horse and rider. Suffice to say, that Captain Coonan was given the consolation prize which was subscribed by his friends and admirers.

In conclusion, will say that the ride was a success from every angle, especially so, when one considers,—(1) that this was Boise's first attempt at staging an affair of this nature; and (2) that no horses were permanently injured or died as a result of this grueling contest. It demonstrated that blood and breeding counts when it comes to endurance. Also one might be led to believe that the environment and climatic conditions of Idaho, under which these horses lived, are conducive to producing the highest quality of stamina and staying power, which is so much desired in horses of this type. From the interest and enthusiasm shown, the indications are that there will be more and better blooded horses entered for the 1925 Ride than there were last year.



Editorial Comment

DRESS UNIFORM

At the present time, in view of decisions by the War Department, discussion of the subject of dress uniform would appear to be profitless. Nevertheless, the matter is deemed worthy of attention.

It is believed that the blue dress uniform should be revived for both officers and enlisted men. The main objection to such an action, is of course, expense, but for officers it can be demonstrated that two types of uniform are no more expensive than one type for wear on all occasions. As for enlisted men, the additional funds required could not be expended to better advantage in accomplishing an improvement in the morale and contentment of the enlisted personnel. A few years ago millions were spent in enterprises which had this for their object.

It has been found desirable to prescribe for formal occasions, the wearing of full dress blue uniform by the aides to the President. This is appropriate and reasonable. At the nation's Capitol most official functions are under the critical observation of the representatives of foreign countries, and it is proper that the Staff of our Chief Executive should be attired in a manner befitting the dignity of the office.

It is fully as important and for similar reasons that our military attachés abroad and troops on duty in foreign countries should be provided with a dress uniform.

Is it not as important, if not more so, that the army should be so attired as to inspire upon all occasions the respect of our own fellow citizens?

The service uniform was originally the working and field garb of our army. Drab color is associated in all minds with the idea of work—manual labor. And while manual labor is honorable, there is a time and a place for the habiliments thereof. It does not follow that because a plasterer does his eight hours daily task in overalls that he should wear overalls to a social function at night, even though he does change into a clean suit.

It is generally acknowledged that after the day's work is done a change from working clothes to others is desirable from the standpoint of comfort, health and morale. It may be said, "Why not change from one service uniform to another?" The above reference to the plasterer applies here.

A man's dress is reflected in his attitude toward himself and others. The great influence which our attire exercises in affecting our behavior, establishing self-confidence, and contributing to our success in life, is universally acknowledged. As a builder and sustainer of one phase of morale a neat, attractive, well-fitting dress uniform has no equal.

The appearance of our soldiers on occasions of ceremony has been very unfavorably commented upon, and especially in comparison with the Marine Corps. Such a state of affairs must certainly react to the detriment of the self-

respect of the soldier and of the respect in which the uniform is held by civilians.

Much of the criticism of the untidy appearance of enlisted men on pass in the streets of cities and the necessity for the issue of frequent and drastic orders with a view to the correction of such irregularities, is due to the authorization of but one type of uniform for all occasions.

We speak of a uniform, but as conditions are at present, it is at times a mis-nomer, for nothing could be more un-uniform than a gathering of officers with a dozen or more variations in color and material of the service coat and breeches.

INTERNATIONAL ASPECT OF ARMY POLO

The great development of army polo during the last few years is evidenced, among other things, by its present international aspect. A Canadian team has recently been playing at the Coronado Tournaments. Army teams from Camp Lewis and Fort Snelling exchange visits with neighboring Canadian teams. Army teams at Manila line up against their British friends from Hongkong.

Last December two teams from the Eighth Corps Area made a successful trip to Mexico City. And, as a fitting climax, a picked team of the Army is en route to England to defend our title to the International Military Championship of the World.

These events, aside from their interest as sporting contests, are of great value, for the resulting associations with our neighbors to the North and the South, and with the Mother Country across the Atlantic are bound to do much toward the promotion of international understanding and good feeling.

ANNUAL DUES

The proposed amendments to the constitution which were published in the October CAVALRY JOURNAL, and copies later furnished to all members, were adopted at the recent annual meeting. It will be recalled that the purpose of these amendments is to return to the system of payment of annual dues in place of subscription to the CAVALRY JOURNAL as the monetary requirement for membership in the Cavalry Association.

In order to comply with the Postal laws, the Executive Council has provided that 60% of the \$2.50 prescribed as annual dues shall be designated for subscription to the CAVALRY JOURNAL. There will be no increase in the amount heretofore paid.

Organizations, and individuals not eligible for membership, may as heretofore, subscribe to the JOURNAL at \$2.50 per year.

100 PER CENT MEMBERSHIP

The Fifth Cavalry and the 1st Machine Gun Squadron have a 100 per cent membership in the Cavalry Association.

THE HORSE

There are numerous articles appearing throughout the country in newspapers, periodicals and service journals on the use and improvements of mechanical transportation. These articles naturally attract attention and do a great deal of good in the improvement of various machines and promote their general use. Yet on the other hand, such articles lead many people, both in and out of the Army, to false conclusions as to the old reliable, indispensable means of transportation—the horse and the mule.

The horse (and the mule), within a certain sphere, perform work which could not otherwise be done. They are in reality just as much a commercial and military asset now as they have ever been in the past. The CAVALRY JOURNAL realizes the above facts and proposes in the future to devote a certain amount of space under the heading "THE HORSE" to horse activities, including their use for commercial and military purposes, their production, etc., and we hope, in this effort, to keep the value of the horse before the public and before the Army, that we shall be assisted by all horse associations, as well as individuals interested in both their production and use.

BULLETINS OF RESERVE CAVALRY DIVISIONS

Very commendable enterprise is indicated by the attractive and interesting Bulletins published from time to time by the Reserve Cavalry Divisions.

The Bulletins of the 62d and the 63d Cavalry Divisions, the Arrowhead of the 64th, and The Chevalier of the 65th are worthy of special mention. Their attractive make up and variety in subject matter show that much time and thought are devoted to them.

The Chevalier, published at Chicago by the 65th Cavalry Division Association, is particularly meritorious, and in its printing, half tones, and subject matter compares very favorably with any publication.

SERVICE TO MEMBERS

Are you interested in the latest books on military and other subjects? Are you studying some subject concerning which insufficient information is available at your station?

Is there any matter which you would be interested in looking up if you were in close proximity to facilities afforded by the War Department and its records, the Library of Congress, and other institutions in Washington?

If so, do not hesitate to make your wants known to the Secretary. It will be a pleasure to be given an opportunity to furnish such service to members.

NATIONAL GUARD MEMBERSHIP RECORDS

Attention is invited to the fine records of membership in the Cavalry Association made by the following National Guard organizations:

- 1st Squadron, 106th Cavalry, Michigan National Guard—11 members.
- 2d Squadron, 106th Cavalry, Illinois National Guard—10 members.

115th Cavalry, Wyoming National Guard—16 members.

The above records which compare very favorably with those of regular Cavalry organizations, and are far ahead of other National Guard organizations, speak well for the cavalry spirit and professional zeal of the personnel of the organizations concerned.

Much of the credit for this fine showing is due to the enthusiastic support of the following instructors:

1st Squadron, 106th Cavalry—Major H. T. Aplington, Cavalry.

2d Squadron, 106th Cavalry—Captain J. K. Colwell, Cavalry.

115th Cavalry—Captain Kramer Thomas, Cavalry.

INDEX TO VOLUME XXXIII

The Index to Volume XXXIII of the CAVALRY JOURNAL has been printed and is available for distribution to all who may desire it.

CAVALRY FUND

Since the last report the Tenth Cavalry, the Twelfth Cavalry, and the Thirteenth Cavalry have joined the 100% contributors to the Cavalry Fund.

CERTIFICATES OF MEMBERSHIP

Beginning January 1, 1925, all new members have been and will be furnished an embossed certificate of membership. It was hoped that a similar certificate could be furnished all members, old and new, but this was found to be impracticable as the membership records prior to 1920 are not sufficiently complete to enable dates of enrollment to be ascertained.



Topics of the Day

THE 1925 ENDURANCE RIDE

In view of the excellent showing made by Cavalrymen in the 1924 Endurance Ride, it is hoped that the number of service entries for the 1925 Endurance Ride will be as great and if practicable, greater than last year.

This year the Ride will be held in Vermont from the 19th to the 25th of October. The exact location will be determined and announced later.

Several changes in the conditions of the Ride were decided upon at the meeting of the Board of Sponsors, January 19, 1925.

Questions of eligibility will be determined by the management instead of by the judges as heretofore.

The following section relative to Control Stations has been added:

"Control stations shall be established at approximately every fifteen miles. At these stations every horse must be stopped a sufficient length of time to allow for an examination by at least one of the judges. A record of the time required for this examination shall be kept and shall be deducted from the horse's time for that day, and shall not count against him. This shall not be construed in any way so that the time for lunch at noonday shall be deducted from the horse's time on that day."

The final judging will take place on the day following the completion of the Ride instead of on the second day following.

The minimum weight to be carried has been reduced from 225 to 200 pounds.

The officials of the Ride are as follows:

Chairman, Albert W. Harris; Secretary and Treasurer, C. C. Stillman; Judges, Albert W. Harris, Major Henry Leonard, Dr. W. W. Townsend; Recorder, Lennox D. Barnes; Route Master, Major C. A. Benton; Assistant Route Master, H. H. Reese.

The Ride is under the direction and management of the Board of Sponsors, made up of one representative from each of the following organizations: American Remount Association, Arabian Horse Club of America, Horse Association of America, The Kentucky Jockey Club, The Morgan Horse Club, Thoroughbred Horse Association, U. S. Cavalry Association.

The prizes this year are as follows:

\$500.00 to the *rider* of the horse whose score for condition is the highest at the end of the Ride, without regard to his position at the finish.

\$100.00 in gold to the *rider* who shows the best horsemanship during the Ride, without regard to his position at the finish.

First prize, \$600.00, the Mounted Service Cup, Arabian Horse Club Medal, The Morgan Horse Club Medal, The Morgan Horse Club gold link cuff buttons; second prize, \$500.00, The Morgan Horse Club gold link cuff buttons; third prize, \$400.00, The Morgan Horse Club gold link cuff buttons; fourth prize, \$300.00; fifth prize, \$200.00; sixth prize, \$100.00.

INFANTRY SCHOOL RECREATION CENTER

Many letters have been received concerning the contribution of \$1,000.00 by the Cavalry to the Infantry School Recreation Center Fund as a memorial to our comrades of the Infantry who lost their lives during the World War.

Of these letters, the following are especially noteworthy:

202 Hillcrest Avenue,

Orlando, Florida, January 31, 1925.

President United States Cavalry Association,

1624 H Street, Washington, D. C.

My dear General:

I am just in receipt of a letter from General B. H. Wells, informing me of his receipt of a check for \$1,000.00 from the secretary of your association as a subscription for a bay in the Doughboy Stadium, at Fort Benning. I understand that this bay is to be dedicated by the Cavalry to their comrades of the Infantry who lost their lives during the World's War.

On behalf of the Infantry, I wish to express appreciation of the fine spirit of comradeship which prompted this splendid action. To the Infantry, it means much more than simply a thousand dollars towards the accomplishment of a cherished objective. It is an assurance of the continued growth of the one army spirit which has been in evidence for the past four years. It is an expression of approval of a project that has been very dear to the hearts of most infantrymen. It will have an effect that will reach far into the future, much beyond the mere building of a recreational center or even of a Memorial Stadium. Coming as it did, uninvited and entirely unexpected, it means more to the Infantry than I can express.

Please extend these expressions of heartfelt appreciation to the Chief of Cavalry and the Commandant of the Cavalry School, and their fine assistants who I feel sure must have had an active part in developing the Cavalry spirit that prompted this contribution.

Very Cordially yours,

C. S. FARNSWORTH,

Major General, Chief of Infantry, U. S. Army.

The Infantry School,

Fort Benning, Georgia, January 19, 1925

Lieut. Colonel W. V. Morris, Cavalry,

Secretary, U. S. Cavalry Association,

1624 H Street, Washington, D. C.

Dear Colonel Morris:

I was very much surprised and naturally greatly pleased with your note of January 15 inclosing a thousand dollar check as a contribution from your association to The Infantry School Recreation Center Fund.

The thousand dollars, of course, means much to us, but the feature that

pleases us most and to which we give a value that cannot be measured in money is the one that concerns the interest and sympathy you extend to our efforts by your unsolicited and spontaneous action and the regard and respect your association has manifested for your Infantry comrades who lost their lives in the World War.

Please convey our official and my personal gratitude to your Executive Council and say that we accept the contribution in the spirit in which it is made. Our Recreation Center Board has reserved a bay in Doughboy Stadium which will belong to the Cavalry Arms in perpetuity. The Cavalry colors will fly from the parapet wall above your bay at all times when the field is dressed for pomp, for ceremony or for gala occasions.

At a later date when we have determined the size and quality of pennants and flags, you will be asked to indicate your desires with reference to the Cavalry.

Sincerely yours,

B. H. WELLS,

Brigadier General, U. S. A., Commandant.

THE INTERNATIONAL MILITARY POLO CHAMPIONSHIP

In April 1923 the U. S. Polo Association initiated the idea of bringing together polo teams representing the British Army and the American Army. As a result, on May 1, 1925, General Pershing wrote to General, The Earl of Cavan, Chief of the Imperial General Staff, British Army, as follows:

My dear General:

The American Polo Association, through its Chairman, is arranging for a special polo match this Autumn between teams representing the British and American Armies.

I have gladly accepted for the American team, feeling that such a contest is the logical outcome of two friendly, horse-loving countries engaged in developing certain of its men for mounted work in the National Defense.

I sincerely hope you will accept for the British Army in order not only to further the development of polo in our respective Armies but to foster and extend the pleasant relations between the Nations.

Yours most sincerely,

JOHN J. PERSHING,

General of the Armies,

Chief of Staff.

In reply to General Pershing's letter, accepting the invitation, General Cavan said, in substance: I am delighted with your wonderfully hospitable proposition for an Army International Polo Match. Speaking entirely on my own behalf, as one friend to another I am anxious that this matter should set an example to all the world for clean sportsmanship. I therefore strongly advocate:—

- (1) That the teams be strictly confined to officers on the active list of our regular forces.
- (2) That the ponies should be the bona fide property of the officer on the active list of the Regular Army, or the actual property of the War Department.

General Cavan ended by saying "how very deeply we all appreciate the generosity of your offer, and how keenly we welcome such an opportunity of inaugurating under your lead a competition that should tend to make our respective soldiers even more friendly and intimate than they are already".

The above letters from two great polo enthusiasts put in operation the machinery which organized the first International Military Polo Tournament, which was played at Meadow Brook on September 12, 15 and 18, 1923. The American Army won the first and third games, and the title of Military Polo Championship of the World.

There was a tacit understanding that the title was to be played for every two years, and alternately in America and England. Accordingly, on June 19, 1924, a cable was received from the Hurlingham Committee inviting the U. S. Army polo team to visit England as their guests during the Summer of 1925 to play a return match with the English Army. A reply was cabled accepting the invitation.

In the selection of the Army team, previous War Department policy has been to concentrate on the development of a few men. As a result, great advances in Army polo have been made as evidenced by the winning of the Junior Championship in 1922 and 1923, and the Military Championship in 1923. Practically the same officers made up the team in all three events.

The War Department has decided it is not safe to depend upon these same men, nor is it desirable, and it is the policy now to look for new and promising material. With this in mind, the Army Central Polo Committee acted upon a large list of candidates highly recommended, and from which six officers have been selected who will represent the U. S. in England in 1925.

The team will assemble at Fort Myer, Va., about March 10th, where final arrangements will be completed, and it is expected sail for England March 28th, where, after a series of practice games with selected teams, the Military Championship Tournament will be played at Hurlingham, the middle of June.

The Army team at present is composed of:

Major Louie A. Beard, Q.M.C., Captain.

Major A. H. Wilson, Cav.

Captain Peter P. Rodes, F.A.

Captain Charles H. Gerhardt, Cav.

1st Lieut. Eugene McGinley, F.A.

1st Lieut. John Andrew Smith, Jr., F.A.

Thirteen enlisted men and twenty-five first class ponies complete the team.

PREPARATION BY ARMY TEAM

Since January 24, 1925, and until March 7th, the Army team was having intensive practice at the Flamingo Polo Club at Miami where it had had excellent preparation through playing against well-mounted teams, some of the members of which were among the country's best players. Expert observers report that the individual and team work of the army players has reached a high standard. While comparisons are difficult reports indicate that the team will be as strong as that which won the title in 1923.

Major Beard reports great enthusiasm on the part of everyone at Miami as to the team's prospects. A fund of \$15,000, which was raised by enthusiastic supporters of army polo, will be utilized for the purchase of a number of first class ponies.

Major Beard during a game had the misfortune to fracture his right thumb, but fortunately it occurred near the end of the team practice at Miami and he will be able to play again when the team arrives in England.

THE BRITISH TEAM

No information has been received as to the make-up of the British Army Team, but six of the seven players who constituted the British team in the matches last year for the International Cup will be eligible to play in the International Military Match, namely, Major V. N. Lockett, Lieut. Col. T. P. Melville, Major Geoffrey H. Phipps-Hornby, Major T. N. Kirkwood, Major E. G. Atkinson, and Major F. B. Hurndall. It is probable that some of these will be on the four which the Army team will meet at Hurlingham in June.

Of the above players, Major Lockett, Colonel Melville and Major Atkinson all played in the International Military Match of 1923.

R. O. T. C. HORSE SHOW—MICHIGAN AGRICULTURAL COLLEGE

Under the direction of Lieutenant Colonel T. L. Sherburne, Cavalry, the third annual R. O. T. C. Horse Show of the Michigan Agriculture College will be held at East Lansing, Michigan, May 29 and 30, 1925.

Last year a very successful two days show of eighteen classes was held with entries from all over Michigan, including the Kent Saddle Club of Grand Rapids and the following clubs of Detroit: The Grosse Pointe Hunt Club, The Detroit Riding and Hunt Club, and the Bloomfield Hunt.

This year there will be eighteen classes with \$1,000.00 in cash prizes in addition to cups or plate and ribbons for each class.

The show is sponsored by the Corps of Cadets at the Michigan Agricultural College, to foster the interest in horses of the general public in this state of the motor car.

Additional information may be obtained from Captain William C. Chase, Cavalry, Secretary-Treasurer, The Horse Show Committee, East Lansing, Michigan.

THE RASP

The 1925 RASP, the annual publication of the Cavalry School is now well under way and will go to press in June. This year's volume will be

bigger and better than ever and will contain a complete series of pictures depicting the activities of the school year from start to finish.

For those who expect to be at the Cavalry School next year, THE RASP will contain much valuable information. For those who have been there it offers an opportunity to renew old acquaintances and to learn why Aggie Austin no longer carries the mail; to see what friends have struggled with Funston, Brookline and Chamberlain and just who appears on the Honor Roll.

For the members of the National Guard and Officers Reserve Corps, the RASP will give an interesting picture of the Cavalry School, the heart of the Cavalry Service.

HOLLAND 1925

The preliminary prize list of the International Horse Show "Holland 1925" has been received with a cordial invitation for the participation of competitors from this country. It will include the following competitions:

1. International Horse Show at Hilversum (near Amsterdam) to be held on June 6th and 7th.
2. International Championship for riding horses at Hilversum, on June 8th, 9th and 10th, to be held under the same conditions as will obtain in the Olympic Games of 1928.
3. International Race Meeting at the Hague on June 11th.
4. International Horse Show at the Hague on June 12th, 13th and 14th.

RELIEF FOR THE REEL CART

Firing the wire by means of a projectile attachment is a new method being worked out by First Lieutenant Fred Canfil, of the 66th Cavalry Division, for laying telephone wire in the field. If present experiments are successful a trial will be given under field service conditions.

It is claimed for this method that wire consolidation can be made in a very short time, a close touch with advance elements can be maintained with but little labor, and, that new wire can replace, in a few moments, that cut by shell fire.

Very little change has to be made in present equipment and the added features are compact and light in weight.

Foreign Military Notes

FURNISHED BY THE MILITARY INFORMATION DIVISION, G. S.

FRANCE

Superior War Council: A French decree of January 6, 1925 publishes the composition of the Superior War Council for the year 1925. It is composed of the six Marshals of France and eight Major Generals who have commanded large units or have held the post of Chief of Staff of the Army.

Following are the members: Marshals Joffre, Foch, Petain, Lyautey, Franchet d'Esprey and Fayolle; Major Generals Gouraud, Berthelot, Guillaumat, Mangin, Debeney, Dupont, Degoutte and Weygand.

Marshal Petain has been appointed Vice-President of the Council which signifies that he would command the French armies in war. He is the permanent inspector of troops, services and military schools and is responsible for the "center of advanced military studies" and the Ecole Superieure de Guerre. He has authority over the Major Generals who are members of the Council and makes all the necessary proposals to the Minister of War concerning them in the matter of the allocation of commands in peace and war. The General Staff of the Army is under the control of the Vice-President of the Council.

The Minister of War is by virtue of his office the President of the Superior War Council.

General Weygand was recently relieved as French High Commissioner in Syria by General Sarrail, who has been in retirement since his relief from command of the Salonica Armies in December, 1917. He has now been reinstated and is now given an important command.

General Weygand will assume the post of Commandant of the Center Higher War Studies on his return from Syria.

Marshals and General Officers: The active list of general officers of the French Army is as follows:

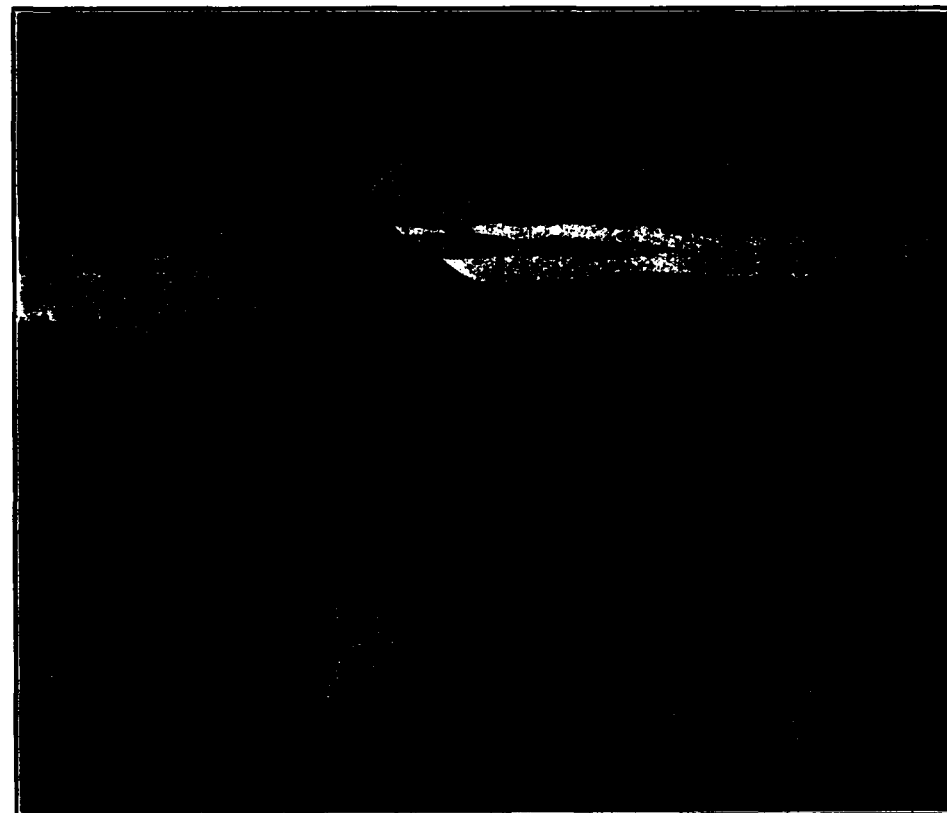
- 6 Marshals of France,
- 3 Major Generals (Castlenau, Sarrail, and Guillaumat) who remain on the active list for life,
- 1 Major General (Berthelot) who is held on the active list until reaching the age of 65 years,
- 1 Major General (Peltier), detached,
- 117 Major Generals, of whom 15 are with colonial troops,
- 233 Brigadier Generals, of whom 32 are with colonial troops.

The Senior general officer is General Gouraud followed by Generals Mangin and Debeney, in order.

The Horse

INCREASED POPULARITY OF HORSEBACK RIDING

Detailed surveys were made by representatives of The Horse Association of America during the past summer in Los Angeles, Detroit, Boston and Chicago. In all of these cities riding has increased very greatly within the past four years and in Chicago the number of riders has quadrupled within that time. There



Imported ABU ZEYD, Pure Bred Arabian, Owned by W. R. Brown, Berlin, N. H.

are now 40 riding stables, academies and clubs with over 1,750 horses kept exclusively for riding and more than 8,175 separate individuals participating in the sport each week throughout the riding season.

Most important of all, the interest which has developed in Chicago in the past four years caused men of wealth and influence to take the lead in building the finest riding club in the world, which is virtually completed and will be ready to open about January 1, 1925. The ground and buildings alone cost more than

a million dollars and the club, fully equipped, will cost around one and a half million. It contains the largest indoor riding arena of any club in the world. It will accommodate 452 horses and will have every appointment for the convenience of its members that the finest athletic clubs in America possess. The development of such a club is indeed significant, for it shows conclusively that leaders in the business world appreciate the great value of horseback riding for themselves and the members of their families.—(*From annual report of Horse Association of America.*)

HORSE AND MULE IN MODERN WARFARE

In many articles you see a comparison of horse and mule transportation to motor transportation. None of these articles distinctly defines the sphere of operation of either the animal or the motor. Their sphere of operation is quite distinct and is based on obvious reasons, if we take the trouble to study them. The motor, for instance, we all admit has taken over the work of the horse and mule where good roads are available and where they are not subject to destruction by shell fire. On the other hand, where the work has to be done across country and under fire, the horse and mule are still supreme.

We agree that the motor delivers various supplies to the front, as far as the road permits, and also to division supply points. What then completes the delivery to the troops on the firing line? Such roads as exist are under fire, and delivery to the firing line must necessarily be made off the roads and across country. There has never yet been a mechanical appliance that could replace the pack horse, the pack mule, or light, movable carts or wagons. Tables of organization of all modern armies require the horse and mule to do this work. The need for greater supplies causes greater methods of transportation, and the supplies required for a modern army is enormous. The mechanical vehicles are taxed to their limit to deliver these supplies near the front, and the proportion of animals to men still remains great in order to make the final connecting link to the firing line. A man in the Civil War could carry all the ammunition he would need for a day or possibly a week. Now a soldier can shoot up all that he can carry in a few moments. Ammunition carts, pack outfits, rolling kitchens, water carts, etc., must all be operated up to the firing line and this work must be performed by the horse and mule. They do it, too, heroically, quietly, patiently, and efficiently.—(Major C. L. Scott, in *The Quartermaster Review*.)

EXIT THE HORSE (?)

According to the Phoenix Horse Shoe Company of Chicago there are today in the United States, 27,283,413 horses and mules. Twenty years ago we had 300,000 less horses and 2,370,000 less mules.

New Books Reviewed

Napoleon: An Outline. By BRIG.-GEN. COLIN R. BALLARD, C. B., C. M. G. D. Appleton & Co., New York.

For the past century the career of Napoleon Bonaparte has been the subject of more discussion and the inspiration of more writers than that of any other character of our times. Apart from his military genius when at the zenith of his powers, and concerning which all agree, writers on Napoleon are generally violent partisans for or against him.

In this latest Napoleonic work which is written by the Professor of Military History at the English Staff College, the subject is treated with an unusual impartiality, as well as being presented in a novel and interesting manner.

The author divides Napoleon's career into three phases:

First Phase, up to the year 1800, Napoleon the Adventurer, with nothing to lose and everything to gain.

Second Phase, from 1800 to 1809. Napoleon the Man of Destiny, with everything won.

Third Phase, from 1809 to the end. Napoleon the Man against Destiny, with nothing to win and everything to lose.

Some space is devoted to a discussion of Napoleon's change in policy or of character sometime between 1800 and 1810 as evidenced by the renewal of war with all Europe, the execution of D'Enghien, and the annexation of Northern Italy, all bellicose facts in contrast to his constructive statesmanship prior to that time. General Ballard attributes this change to the British Navy which had thwarted Napoleon on three of the four occasions on which he had encountered it, namely: at the Battle of the Nile, at Acre, and at Malta. Napoleon widened his hatred of the Royal Navy to a hatred of the nation. This apparently influenced many of his future policies and resulted eventually in his downfall.

An interesting and unusual viewpoint is indicated by the statement that, broadly speaking, Napoleon fought twelve wars, in six of which he was successful, whereas the others ended in complete disaster, in the last five of which he suffered losses far greater than any he had ever inflicted.

After disposing of the theory that Napoleon's decline was the result of physical disease, the author discusses and emphasizes the distinction between the strategist, the tactician, and the leader of men. "A great general need not be, and rarely is, all three." After stating that no man has combined the strategist, tactician and leader better than Napoleon in his first campaign, it is admitted that events showed that he retained his genius as a leader and a tactician to the end. His failure is attributed to a decline in the strategist, which was caused by his strategy being based not upon knowledge, but upon ignorance. Three causes are given for this ignorance: First, he had so overawed his household that no one dared to give him even good advice, much less any contradiction. Second, he was overworked; and Third, self-deception. He used against himself the power of deceiving others which he knew so well how to wield. He had grown accustomed to find his wishes become law; he now began to regard them as facts."

As the title indicates, the book is an outline and does not pretend to give a detailed account of the Corsican's life. It does, however, present the man himself and the history and strategy of his campaigns in such a way as to be easily understood by the general reader. It enjoys the rare distinction among historical works in being of such interest that after beginning its perusal one is loath to lay it aside until it is completed. Twenty-six sketch maps specially drawn for the volume add greatly to its value.

The Genesis of the War. By the RIGHT HONORABLE HERBERT HENRY ASQUITH, Prime Minister of England, 1908-1916. George H. Doran Co., New York. (Price, \$6.00 net.)

The period since the World War has been enlivened by many Memoirs, Personal Recollections, etc., of prominent actors, both military and political, in this epochal event. Many of them have been chiefly devoted to confessions, vindications and demonstrations that this, that, or the other country (other than that of the author) was responsible for the War.

In "The Genesis of the War" Mr. Asquith very effectively "knocks the props" from under the platform of German innocence so laboriously erected by the two Chancellors, Prince von Bulow and Herr von Bethmann-Hollweg, and the Ex-Kaiser. He begins his narrative with a discussion of the Chancellorships of Caprivi (1890-1894) and Hohenlohe (1894-1900) through that of Prince Bulow which in 1900 marked the effective beginning of Weltpolitik. In 1904, during this regime, was begun the development of the Entente.

With the appointment as Chancellor of von Bethmann-Hollweg in 1908, began the intensive naval expansion of Germany which was its reply to the offer of Great Britain to reduce the competition in naval armaments.

The author goes quite fully into this phase and follows with a brief discussion of the effect on international relations of the Morocco question and the *Panther* incident.

Pre-war preparation of Great Britain is discussed under the three headings of first, the Financial Aspect; second, the Committee of Defense, and third, the Dominions in Council.

In the discussion of the period immediately preceding the war, it is indicated that Germany had such a war in mind at all times, that she was seeking to gain time until quite ready, and that when the storm broke in July, 1914, the time was considered propitious.

In addition to her satisfactory state of military and naval preparedness, Germany appears to have considered the political situation in the three Entente countries to be favorable for the long looked for clash. In Russia there was much industrial trouble and disorganization of public services. In France there was an era of ministerial instability and reports of alleged deficiencies in the equipment of the Army. In Great Britain the Irish question had reached an acute stage. That Germany placed undue reliance on these conditions is a matter of history.

Mr. Asquith's narration of the diplomatic exchanges and other events following the tragedy at Serajevo (28th June, 1914) leads one to the conclusion that the nations of the Entente were constantly striving for a peaceable settlement of the matter, and that Germany was working against such a settlement. The narrative closes with an interesting character sketch of the Kaiser with an analysis of his war preparation charges and a discussion of his claims to scholarship.

The value of this book is much enhanced by the author's intimate knowledge, by virtue of his office, of British policy and international politics during the period of which he writes, together with his having access to confidential state papers, from which many facts are disclosed for the first time. It is one of the most important, if not the most important book on the War.

Horses, Saddles and Bridles. By MAJOR GENERAL WILLIAM HARDING CARTER. Fourth Edition. The Lord Baltimore Press, Baltimore, Md. (Price, \$2.75.)

Much water has gone over the wheel since the first edition of "Horses, Saddles and Bridles" was prepared as a text book for the Infantry and Cavalry School. Its use was later extended to include examinations for promotion, and had much to do with the interest awakened in the subject of "hippology," a word created by the army

to comprehend the details of knowledge concerning horses expected of all officers who in the course of their official duties would have charge of public animals. Notwithstanding the efforts of the War Department to provide information on military matters in pamphlet form, and eliminate the necessity of officers purchasing private publications, the advantage arising from having technical subjects treated from the standpoint of personal experience by one who has devoted a lifetime to the subject, and embraced in a single volume, is very great.

That General Carter's interest in the horse is still keen is evidenced by the popularity of his latest book, "Horses of the World," of which 900,000 were published by the National Geographic Society.

The Fourth revised edition of "Horses, Saddles and Bridles" is now for sale and is commended to those who desire information in a somewhat different form from the official pamphlets.

Armaments Year-Book of the League of Nations. 844 pp. Sole American Agents, World Peace Foundation, Boston. 1924. (Price \$4.00, postage extra.)

This is the first annual publication of a comprehensive character on this subject. It gives, in considerable detail, much statistical information concerning the land, sea and air armaments of thirty-two nations, together with their budget expenditures on National Defense. In addition, considerable space is devoted to organization and administrative details. For any one making a study of the subject, either world wide or with reference to any specific nation, the work should be of great value.

Training Schedule for National Guard Rifle Companies; Training Schedule for National Guard Howitzer Companies; Training Schedule for National Guard Battalion and Brigade Headquarters Companies. By CAPTAIN DAVID P. LIVINGSTON, Iowa National Guard. Quartermaster Association, Washington, D. C. (Price, \$.50 each.)

The volumes complete the series of which *TRAINING SCHEDULE FOR NATIONAL GUARD MACHINE GUN COMPANIES* was the first volume.

The need of a complete National Guard training schedule and training guide in compact form has long been felt. The above set of four schedules, prepared by a National Guard company commander, with the assistance of other National Guard organization commanders and Regular Army Instructors at The Infantry School, were designed to meet this need. These *TRAINING SCHEDULES* are punched to fit the regulation size loose-leaf binder and may, therefore, if desired, be filed for convenient reference with War Department pamphlets.

Foreign Military Journals

The Cavalry Journal (British) January, 1925.

In this number *An Affair of Outposts*, by Captain J. G. W. Clarke, M. C., 16th/5th Lancers, deals with operations carried out by the 16th Lancers on August 28 and 29, 1914, during the retreat of the British Expeditionary Force after the battle of Le Cateau, with a view to preventing the crossing by the enemy of the Crozat Canal which connects the Somme and Oise Rivers. The necessity for changes in position from day to night outposts is brought out, together with the fact that a rear guard, boldly handled, does much to stop any incautious advance by an enemy.

Curiously enough, almost four years later, on March 21 and 22, 1918, the 16th Lancers found themselves at the same spot and carrying out a similar mission, when the Fifth British Army was driven back over the same ground.

Major E. G. Hume, 18th (K. E. O.) Cavalry, in *Notes on Modern French Cavalry*, gives an interesting description of the organization, equipment and training of the French Cavalry.

In *The Action of Kassala on July 17, 1894*, Major T. M. Carpendale, 3d Cavalry, I. A., describes a cavalry action between the Italian forces and the Dervishes. A remarkable feature of this action was the taking of the Italian Squadron in flank by a Dervish force in ambush at the moment that the Squadron started to charge the body on which the main attack was directed. It resulted in a *melée*, in which the crush was so great that sabers could not be effectively used although the Baggara horsemen made good use of their javelins and "jabbing spears." The Italians were greatly outnumbered, and were finally compelled to withdraw.

The Canadian Defence Quarterly January, 1925.

In an article entitled *The Regular Army and Tobacco*, the unpopularity of the Regular Army in England is attributed to its use in the Seventeenth Century in enforcing the laws prohibiting the growth of tobacco in England in competition with the Colonists in America. This is on a par with the suggestion of prohibition enthusiasts that the Regular Army in this Country be employed in the enforcement of the Eighteenth Amendment.

An article on *Japan and Her Army* by the author of *The Military Side of Japanese Life*, reviews the development of the Japanese Army from the *samurai* of feudal days to the present modern military establishment. Some space is devoted to the economic and political differences between the United States and Japan and the probabilities of a future conflict between the two nations.

Marlborough's Strategy Preceding Blenheim deals with the campaign of 1704 preceding the battle of Blenheim.

Two Great Captains: Jenghiz Khan and Subutai, reprinted from Blackwood's Magazine, is an intensely interesting and instructive article dealing with the campaigns of the great Mongol leader and his principal lieutenant.

The Journal of the United Service Institution of India

January, 1925.

In *The Course of Future Wars*, by Major General Sir W. E. Ironsides, K. C. B., C. M. G., D. S. O., there is depicted the probable course of future wars between states separated by a land frontier. The author admits the possibilities of national destruction by air forces, but believes that the probable effect upon morale has been overestimated. A judicious combination of the action of land and air forces, with close co-operation between the two appears most likely.

Protection on the March, Mountain Warfare, by Colonel C. A. Milward, C. I. E., D. S. O., deals with various security methods while on the march which are necessitated by the special conditions of mountain warfare. Much of the discussion is based upon actual campaign experience in the mountain districts of India.

In *The Tactical Withdrawal by Night* a description is given of the British evacuation of the Gallipoli Peninsula in December, 1915, and January, 1916, which has been characterized by a German writer as a "hitherto unattained masterpiece." In the face of predictions that such a withdrawal was unthinkable and could not be made without heavy losses, the British feat of accomplishing it with but a few men wounded is extraordinary. The main reason for the success of this operation appears to have been the complete deception of the Turks which was facilitated by their poor combat intelligence system.

Journal of the Royal United Service Institution (British) February, 1925.

An Outline of the Rumanian Campaign, 1916-1918, which is continued in this number, covers the Austro-German attempt to break through into Rumania, including the first and second battles of Targujui, and the events in the Dobrudja from the 10th of October to the 10th of November, 1916, together with the German advance through Western Wallachia and the crossing of the Olt (November 21st-26th).

Major C. T. Tomes, D. S. O., M. C., in his lecture on *Old Military Customs Still Extant*, goes back to the beginnings of such customs as the various forms of the Salute, Sentry Duties, Funeral Exercises, Trooping of the Colours (Escort of the Colors), Officers' Messes, Military Bands, and the nomenclature of military ranks. In speaking of the salute, the lecturer states, "An integral part of the modern salute is to turn the head and eyes toward the officer saluted. In medieval days no serf was allowed to raise his eyes or look in the direction of his lord. He was expected to slink to the side of the path and avert his face when that privileged being passed by. The soldier, the man-at-arms, was no serf, but a free man, and as such had every right to look his superior straight between the eyes." This is commended to civilians and others who have construed the salute as a menial gesture.

Colonel G. M. Orr, C. B. E., D. S. O., Indian Army (Retired), gives a discussion of *Operations on Interior Lines in Bush Warfare*, based upon the Campaign in German East Africa, June to October, 1917. The British plan of campaign against the German force under command of General Von Lettow consisted in one force's moving south while another moved westward from the coast. This plan gave Von Lettow many opportunities to operate on interior lines. In five months he carried out seven distinct operations of this nature, in but one of which was he successful in changing the course of operations to his advantage. In commenting on this fact Von Lettow says, "The operation at Narungombe (where he was too late to effect anything) was a further proof of how difficult it is in the unknown African bush and in the face of uncertainty of communications, even if other circumstances are favorable, to carry through an operation in which several columns are taking part so as to secure the necessary unity of action on the battlefield. . . . My belief was strengthened that if I wanted to use different bodies of troops in one operation it was necessary to secure the closest concentration first."

Cavaleristisch Tijdschrift (Netherlands) November, 1924.

Cooperation Between Reconnaissance Forces in the Air and on the Ground. By H. Mathon. A short article based on the 1924 Combat Regulations.

It is important for both airplanes and cavalry to be informed of each other's movements and of any intelligence that either may pick up.

Airplanes are to get a general view of the enemy's movements; the cavalry reconnaissance detachments learn the details. Before starting out, the commanders of

cavalry reconnaissance detachments should be summoned to headquarters for a consultation with the commander of the air forces attached to the brigade or division.

Communication should be maintained by wireless. One automobile and two motorcycle wireless stations are assigned to the Light Brigade. Experience has shown that the cavalry detachment, not being confined to hard-surfaced roads, can easily leave the radio vehicles behind. The station then can be used for transmitting, orderlies being sent back to it by the commander of the reconnaissance detachment. What the cavalry reconnaissance detachment needs is a radio outfit that can be taken wherever the detachment goes and can be used for both sending and receiving.

Flanking Light Machine Gun Positions. By Tielens. The use of flanking fire in defensive operations is discussed at some length in this article, which is illustrated by several drawings and photographs.

The author considers flanking fire much superior to frontal fire, although it does not allow the machine gunner as wide a field of fire.

The chief means of attacking machine gun positions are: artillery fire, shell from infantry guns, hand and rifle grenades, flanking fire from machine guns, and enveloping. Artillery fire is of little effect. No country has yet found an infantry gun that is entirely satisfactory. Hand grenades have to be used at short range. If the attacker uses flanking fire from machine guns, it may interfere with the advance of parts of his own units. If the machine gun positions of the defender are selected so that they flank each other and cover all hollows, etc., that the enemy might try to use for infiltration, it will be hard for the attacker to envelop them. All machine gun positions should also afford protection for the gunners from frontal fire.

Organization in depth is another important factor.

Cavaleristisch Tijdschrift (Netherlands) December, 1924.

Radio in the Cavalry. By R. Wirix. A very interesting article about a field radio outfit constructed by the writer; illustrated by two photographs.

The whole outfit weighs 9 kilograms and easily be carried by two troopers or even by one if necessary. The radio apparatus itself is contained in a wooden box 30 x 35 x 16.5 cm. Variable mica condensers and milliwatt double grid tubes are used, so that the A and B batteries can be made very light.

Messages have been received from an airplane 100 kilometers away, under rather unfavorable conditions.

The outfit can be set up or packed for transportation in about 2½ minutes. No aerial is used, but the wires are stretched on the ground.

Operation is extremely simple and the apparatus is built according to the plan followed by the majority of Dutch radio amateurs; consequently no long course of instruction is required. It can be used for wireless telephony as well as telegraphy.

The box is so strongly constructed that the same tubes could be used throughout the maneuvers of the Light Brigade in September, 1924.

The batteries will last for twenty-four hours and are of a type that can be procured in any village.

Small tools and an instruction book are carried in the box.

The total cost was about 150 florins (sixty dollars).

As this little receiving set has turned out so well, attempts are now being made to develop a sending outfit that can also be transported by cavalry.

Cavaleristisch Tijdschrift (Netherlands) January, 1925.

The Work of Reconnaissance. By Capt. H. W. C. E. Mathon. The failure of the French to have their cavalry conduct proper reconnaissance in 1914 cost them dear. Their postwar regulations aim to avoid this mistake. Both the French and the Germans feel that, despite the great development of aviation, the cavalry can still do

good work. Proof of this was given in Poland in 1920, when the Polish air service, which was quite efficient, could not lift one corner of the veil that the 15,000 troopers of Budyenni held before the organizations of his army.

The postwar cavalry regulations of the French and the German armies are presumably based on experience gained during the World War by the compilers of the regulations. They differ fundamentally in one respect: the French reconnaissance detachments are to be given pretty definite instructions and are to follow the route mapped out for them; the German detachments are given much more liberty.

For the small Dutch army, no extensive cavalry movements can be contemplated; the French idea is more likely to be followed than the German one. Patrols should not be sent out very far ahead of the main cavalry detachment and the commander of the detachment should be careful not to weaken it too much by dividing his forces.

The Cyclist Patrol of the Squadron. By Captain J. de Waal. Each squadron of cavalry has a cyclist detachment consisting of one sergeant, two corporals and twelve privates.

In the opinion of the writer, this detachment should be used as a whole, instead of weakening it by allowing several members to be detailed as orderlies, etc.

When the squadron is marching as an independent unit, the cyclist patrol can be sent ahead as a billeting detachment; if contact with the enemy is likely, the patrol forms the point of the advance guard. When the cavalymen dismount to fight on foot, the cyclists can act as horseholders; in case of combat on horseback, the patrol acts as a covering party. If the squadron is marching in column with other organizations, the cyclist patrol forms an excellent means of liaison between different parts of the column. In case an airplane appears, the cyclists can dismount and open fire more quickly than men on horseback.

The Regimental Liaison Detachment and that of the Light Brigade. By 1st Lieut. G. F. Imminck. In the future, the liaison detachment of the regiment is to consist of: the telephone section, the radio section, the optical section and the orderly section, all under the command of the liaison officer. In the Light Brigade, the liaison detachment is made up as follows: detachment headquarters (1 supply truck, 1 baggage truck, 1 ration truck with rolling kitchen); 1 radio section (1 motor truck carrying a high-power radio outfit, 2 motorcycles with sidecars, carrying a low-power radio outfit); 1 optical section (2 lamps for signalling to great distances, and 1 sergeant, 1 corporal and 6 signalmen on bicycles); 1 telephone section (2 passenger automobiles, 2 cable trucks, 1 telephone switchboard, 6 telephone instruments, 16 km. of heavy field cable).

As most of the members of the above mentioned sections will be taken from cavalry organizations, more attention will have to be paid to training in telephony, lamp signalling, etc., than heretofore.

The writer considers a small flag much better than a lamp for signalling in daytime. For night use, he recommends the German "Perlux" lamp. He considers German telephone and radio equipment the best to be had.

Reviews by Major Harold Thompson, Cavalry

Memorial de Caballeria (Spanish) November, 1924.

In this number appears an article by Captain Ramon Climent, Spanish Artillery, entitled *Evolution of the Cavalry*. The writer opens his theme with a strong arraignment of those who would do away with the Cavalry Arm or delegate to it secondary or unimportant rôles. Admitted that the fire power of modern weapons prohibit the massed, boot-to-boot cavalry charges of the past, is no reason that Cavalry as an Arm should disappear or leave its complete rôle to Aviation or any other Arm. On the contrary, he says, evolution which is a natural law, is applicable in every sense to the

employment of Cavalry and here the author agrees thoroughly that there must be a change.

In the first place the Cavalryman must cease considering the horse as an arm, instead of a means toward a definite end. Mobility with increased fire power must be given the most serious consideration and to this end, he would do away with the lance. [There are eight Lancer regiments today in the Spanish Cavalry.] Not so the saber, for although its use may be very limited, the ease with which it can be carried and its lightness together with its possible use, design that it should be used by the Cavalry when opportune. Mobility is again and again emphasized, and in few but positive words the writer strives to impress upon the reader that one of the most important factors here toward attaining mobility is to lighten the load on the Cavalry mount, rations and ammunition being reduced to the minimum consistent with the mission planned.

At another point the Captain vehemently disclaims advocacy of the Mounted Infantryman, for evidently he fears that his statement "the principle being accepted that the horse is a means of transportation," will be so construed. On the contrary Cavalry is and will be always the Arm of opportunity and surprise and for this reason its essential characteristics, mobility and fire power, must not be interfered with by such a hybrid product as mounted Infantry.

Many passages would appear to be identical with our own conceptions of the employment of Cavalry, such as Cavalry and Aviation in the different phases of operations before combat, Aviation forces with Cavalry in distant reconnaissance in force, and many others. The various illustrations offered are based upon Cavalry both in the offensive and defensive. It is interesting to note that the writer believes that Cavalry should be endowed with heavy fire-power, both machine guns and machine rifles, as well as hand-grenades. For the Cavalry division he advocates light and fast armored cars with 37 mm. guns and machine guns, as well as a unit of cyclist Infantry. The uses or employment of machine guns in side-cars and armored cars that are recommended, coincide identically with those suggested at the Cavalry School.

As of interest, it is recommended that the light type of armored car, similar to one employed by the French be adopted, three or four cars to a group, two or three groups forming a combat section. A command car (armored) and a motorcycle to be added for liaison purposes.

All personnel for the Cavalry armored car sections should come from the Arm, should be trained at the various Cavalry training centers (Cavalry School of Fire and Cavalry Demonstration Unit) and then at the Specialists' Training Center. To be successful armored car soldiers, the men must come from the Cavalry, where the Cavalry spirit and all it implies, is engendered and fostered.

Sheridan's Raid, 27th February-25th March, 1865, is continued, the article apparently having created a great deal of interest. After discussing each phase of the operations, conclusions are drawn, based upon the principles illustrated.

Memorial de Caballeria (Spanish) December, 1924.

Captain Ramon Climent, Royal Spanish Field Artillery, continues his article, *The Evolution of the Cavalry*, from the November number.

Certain deductions are made as to the best ways of employing armored car sections with Cavalry units, these being, for reconnaissance on the march, with the advance guard, so as to make rapid trips ahead of the column, and reconnoitering cross-roads and villages, always with a reserve car or element held out. For combat reconnaissance, such cars should be able to break the resistance of lines holding up the advance, employing short and rapid bursts of fire at close range. For strategic pursuit where parallel roads exist armored cars with Cavalry should more than prove their value, due to their mobility, fire power and protected parts.

Additional missions such as transmitting messages under fire and bringing up ammunition for troops in combat are suggested. For independent Cavalry, from large units to the squadron, armored cars would prove of the greatest value.

Having Cavalry endowed with additional fire power by incorporating elements such as horse artillery, light truck artillery, automobile machine guns, cyclist infantry and light armored cars, the true employment of Cavalry will be found in acting on the flanks or toward the enemy rear by large enveloping movements; raids along the lines of communication, feints, mobile reserve, the break through, pursuit and exploitation, screening and reconnaissance in force.

The writer finds still another employment for the Cavalry, particularly the Divisional Cavalry, armed and equipped as the Independent Cavalry with automatic material, grenades and carbine, which would appear to be to hold such Cavalry close to the enemy front, yet protected from Artillery fire and ready to take advantage of a propitious moment—rupture, sudden withdrawal or over-extension of the line. —(Continued.)

Memorial de Caballeria (Spanish) January, 1925.

In this issue, Captain Ramon Climent, Spanish F. A., concludes his remarks on the *Evolution of Cavalry*. After a brief statement of the former conception of the rôle of Cavalry in retreat, he presents his idea of how Cavalry, with its Artillery and Machine Guns should be employed in the case. Normal action will be by short but violent fire fights with rear guard elements, while the maneuvering mass strikes at the flank or flanks, rapidly and in succession. Perhaps here the opportunity will occur for the mounted charge, but it will be most successful if undertaken by small units. The disorder, confusion and moral depression of the mounted charge are not underrated; however, the menace of machine guns and machine rifles is to be remembered. Such attack should be made in line of forages and with good intervals.

In the retreat, the rôle of Cavalry is still brilliant. Uppermost should be the thought of gaining time, by means of mobility, such as rapidly breaking off an action in order to hold a succeeding delaying position, and by actions embracing short and sudden bursts of fire to force enemy deployment. The use of the light armored cars and auto machine guns is here described and the necessity for the closest liaison by the Cavalry columns with such units. This also involves the Aviation forces with the Cavalry.

The first part of the article by Captain Francisco Ramos, Cavalry (Mehal-la of Larache, Africa) appears in this number. This brilliant Cavalry officer was killed at Megaret in September, 1924.

Spanish and French Cavalry in Morocco.

The organization of the Cavalry forces of both countries in the Moroccan zone is as follows:

SPAIN

Two Peninsular regiments, 14th and 28th Chassuers, of six squadrons, and the 29th Chasseurs of seven; four demi-regiments, Moorish Horse, of four squadrons each; the Mehal-la, a squadron of three mfas (100 horse each) and various irregular units of Native Constabulary, Guides and tribesmen (in groups called Harkas).

FRANCE

Six regiments of chasseurs d'Afrique of five squadrons each; four regiments of Algerian Spahis, and the organized "Guma," smaller native units, number and composition varying.

In comparing units, the personnel of the Spanish Chasseur regiments does not differ from regular Peninsular units, whereas the Chasseurs d'Afrique are real

Colonial troops. These have their permanent stations in Algeria, but may serve in any part of the French dominions or protectorates.

In regard to the native forces of Cavalry, both French and Spanish contingents are similar in character and composition. They differ in two characteristics, in system of recruiting, and in organization. In the Spanish units, Cavalry and Infantry are together in one group, while the French keep their Cavalry units separate from the Infantry.

The remaining forces of both nations have little in common. The native police, Spanish is excellent, practically equal to the native soldiery. The *Gums* (French) which have contributed so well to the pacification of the French protectorate, are raised by levies from one or more tribes, and are commanded by their own tribal chiefs. Note, too, that the French always employ the *Gums* thus raised against rebel tribes who are widely separated from the former, or employ such *Gums* against the latter's tribal enemies. In service, they form a light curtain of horsemen who precede the other troops (action at Setat, 1908); again, they may fight both mounted and dismounted, forming a part of the regular native Cavalry, Chasseurs or Spahis (action at Kaiva, 1913).

The Spaniards have already formed a group of *Gums* in the Melilla zone, but it is too early yet to appraise their value.

The Harkas (irregular groups of friendly tribesmen, not organized) leave much to be desired. In fact, the past has frequently proved their undesirability except for a small moral effect. Those composed exclusively of Cavalry have a real latent value.

The mountain country of the Riff, Yebala and Beni-Snassen (Spanish protectorate) have never furnished even small contingents of enemy horsemen, whereas in the French zone, the French have had to deal almost exclusively with the horsemen of the plains country.

The tactics employed by the Moorish horsemen have ever been the same. Here he quotes Heefer, "Essentially it consists in approaching to some seven hundred yards from the enemy, a sudden deployment in thin lines at full gallop and an abrupt halt at the limit of short range, when the Moors fire their pieces, mounted, turn to the rear and fall back in small groups still at the gallop, and return and repeat. Certainly not dangerous for steady troops, and if our Cavalry advances with sabre at the charge the Moorish lines disappear like mist."

However, in the rugged mountain region even the French have had their difficulties and in proof, surprise attacks by the Moorish horse against convoys for example, it took the genius of General Lyautey to end the resistance of the powerful Beni-Snassen tribesmen.

Recently, too, when General Poemyrau occupied Uazzan, the French forces had to lament considerable casualties, and at that the columns included all arms, including light armored cars. Again, and with the same column, endowed with equally great fire power and mobility, the French had eighteen killed and one hundred and seventy-four wounded. This was at Beni-Mestaran, when two thousand tribesmen attacked the convoy, with a fifteen per cent loss to the French.

Where the Spanish forces operated over the plain country of Garet, Guerra and Metassa, against the tribesmen who at times numbered eight thousand, four and five to one, the losses on the part of the Spaniards were very slight, analogous to those of corresponding French operations.

There is no doubt in the mind of the writer that operations in the rugged, mountainous country of the Riff and Yebala have been difficult and that losses have been and will be large. Certainly the experience of the Spaniards in Northern Morocco since 1909 proves his belief.

(To be continued)

Revista Militar (Argentina) November, 1924.

First Lieutenant Leopoldo Ornstein, Argentine Cavalry, presents an article in this number titled *Field Fortification for the Cavalry Service*. A detailed study is made of the movements of the Cavalry Corps of von Richthofen and von Marwitz, together with those of the British Cavalry divisions in the opening phases of the World War, coupled with a brief discussion of Mobile Defense, Delaying Action, Defensive Screen and Protection by the Cavalry during retreats.

The Lieutenant's deductions, based upon the opinions he has formed, are, in so far as they apply to the Cavalry Arm of the Argentine Army:

That the defensive missions of the Cavalry are more readily carried out by employing certain forms of hasty field fortification;

That the Cavalry should be in position to equally develop a mobile defense or a tenacious form of defense;

That the great extension of probable Argentine theatres of operation, and their physical characteristics, demands that the Cavalry develop both forms of defense (as above), to a degree greater than developed in Europe;

That Cavalry personnel be well-instructed in hasty construction defense, bridge demolition and road obstruction;

That Cavalry officers thoroughly understand the best methods of field fortification;

And that Cavalry units be equipped with certain kinds of field fortification material.

And as a caution, he adds that the above must in no way be understood as to imply any checking of the essentially characteristics of Cavalry, the offensive spirit.

From the military information chapter is taken the following, relating to the newly organized unit of Mounted Infantry (Brazilian Army):

The new Mounted Infantry battalion of the Infantry Brigade (Rio Grande del Sul) is composed of three companies (rifle), one machine gun company, and a reserve squad of ten men. The company has 122 effectives, the machine gun company, 86 men. Total, in the battalion, 463 officers and men.



Polo

THE SECOND ANNUAL MID-WINTER POLO TOURNAMENT

San Antonio, Texas

BY

Captain EDWARD M. FICKETT, Cavalry

For many years San Antonio has been a great polo center, and for many more years a center of military activities in the Southwestern States. The border troubles of 1911 to 1920 brought of great many troops into this region, and inasmuch as San Antonio—Fort Sam Houston,—was also Department Headquarters, it seemed only natural that it should become the army polo center of this section of the country. At the same time under the able guidance of "Bill" Meadows, "Jack" Lapham, Mr. Drury, and others, civilian polo was developing. After the war, efforts were made from time to time to get polo teams from all over the Corps Area to come here for the annual tournaments with greater or less success until 1923 when the First Mid-Winter Polo Tournament was held. This was such a great success that no one gave thought to anything but that it would be an annual meeting.

The 1923 tournament was such a success that when the Chamber of Commerce of San Antonio was approached on the subject of assisting again in the staging of the second tournament, they raised a fund of \$3,200.00 to be used in bringing the teams here. Other public-spirited firms and individuals subscribed largely, making it possible to bring a large and representative group of teams to the tournament.

The fact that the weather here is ideal for all 'round the year polo, and that when the teams in the north are limited to riding hall work and indoor polo, outdoor polo and fast polo at that, is possible in San Antonio is coming to be more and more generally accepted throughout the United States. Teams from Detroit, Chicago, and Des Moines, and other northern points have found that weather conditions, fields, competition, and accommodations are such as to make attendance at such a tournament exceptionally attractive and pleasant. In addition it affords them an opportunity to get in condition for the spring, summer, and fall tournaments in the north and east without having to rush the conditioning of their ponies.

Three tournaments were made possible this year. The low handicap tournament for the Texas Cups is a regular part of the Mid-Winter Tournament. The South Western Circuit Tournament was moved up from its usual time in the early spring so that it could be held as a part of the larger meeting. The fact that the United States Polo Association announced an elimination tournament to be held in each Circuit to select a team to represent the Circuit in the Inter Circuit Tournament to be held in the northeast some time this summer provided the opportunity for the third tournament.

Due to the fact that play for the Texas Cups was limited to teams of not more than six goals handicap, many of the competing teams brought both low and high goal teams, that is, enough low handicap men so that a team could be entered in the low goal events and at the same time, by the substitution of other men place a strong team in the field for the Southwestern Circuit and Elimination events.

The results of games for the TEXAS CUPS were as follows:

First Round—Detroit 14-15th Field Artillery 8; Camp Marfa 10-Kelly Field 5; Fort Sill 10-2d Division, Infantry, 8; Austin 8-Fort Clark 6.

Second Round—Fort Bliss 20-Detroit 4; Camp Marfa 8-Fort Sill 6; San Antonio 10-Fort Brown 9; Hdqrs., 8th Corps Area 10-Austin 8.

Semi-Finals—Fort Bliss 13-Camp Marfa 7; San Antonio 16-Hdqrs., 8th Corps Area, 7.

Finals—Fort Bliss 17-San Antonio 4.

Play throughout the tournament was hard and fast, especially in the later brackets. The semi-final game between Fort Bliss and Marfa was one of the best of the Texas Cup event. The final score is no index of the actual closeness of the game. Both teams rode hard and hit well, but the excellent team play of the Fort Bliss Cavalrymen gave them the edge. The game between the 8th Corps Area Headquarters and San Antonio was hard fought, but the Corps Area was outmounted, and outplayed. The final game of the tournament between Fort Bliss and San Antonio was an easy victory for Fort Bliss. Captain Wood and Captain Huthsteiner at the ends of the team were a combination that San Antonio could not beat. Line-ups follow:

Fort Bliss	Camp Marfa	San Antonio	8th C. A. Hdqrs.
No. 1—Capt. Wood	Capt. Herman	Mr. J. Chittim	Capt. T. W. Hasty
No. 2—Lt. Col. Holliday	Capt. Morris	Mr. C. Armstrong	Lt. Col. E. Swift
No. 3—Lt. D. Burgess	Capt. Truscott	Lt. B. M. Fitch	Maj. A. H. Jones
No. 4—Capt. Huthsteiner	Capt. Thompson	Mr. W. D. Meadows	Lt. Col. Tompkins

The results of games of THE SOUTHWESTERN CIRCUIT CUPS were as follows:

First Round—Fort Clark 15-Detroit 10; San Antonio 20-15th Field Artillery 12; Fort Bliss 13-Hdqrs., 8th Corps Area, 7; Fort Sam Houston 16-Kelly Field 12; Austin 13-2d Division, Infantry, 7.

Second Round—Fort Clark 15-Fort Sill 9; Camp Marfa 13-San Antonio 5; Fort Sam Houston 9-Fort Bliss 8; Austin 15-Fort Brown 8.

Semi-Finals—Camp Marfa 13-Fort Brown 6.

Finals—Camp Marfa 15-Fort Sam Houston 12.

In the semi-final game between Fort Clark and Marfa, Fort Clark put up an excellent fight but lacked the team-work and organization of the Marfa team, and despite the fact that they put up a game fight against heavy odds were defeated. The final game was a complete upset to all the "dope." It was felt that the Fort Sam Houston "Yellow Jackets" were easy favorites, although a good game was expected. When Marfa came out, and by hard riding and driving, and team play such as has seldom been seen here, defeated Fort Sam Houston by a score of 15 to 12, just the difference in the handicaps, it was a complete surprise. It was a beautifully fought, hard, fast game. The defensive work of both backs was excellent, and the rest of both teams were equally good. The smooth, machine-like functioning of the Marfa team was simply too much for the Fort Sam Houston men.

Line-ups follow:

Camp Marfa	Fort Clark	Fort Sam Houston
No. 1—Lieut. Forsyth	Capt. Berg	Major King
No. 2—Capt. Morris	Capt. Tully	Lieut. Jones
No. 3—Capt. Truscott	Capt. Barnhart	Lieut. Smith
Back—Lieut. Feagin	Capt. Daniels	Capt. Hettinger

The results of games for THE SOUTHWESTERN ELIMINATION CUPS were as follows:

First Round—Fort Clark 11—Detroit 5; Fort Sill 18-Hdqrs., 8th Corps Area, 5.

Second Round—Camp Marfa 13-San Antonio 5; Fort Bliss 24-2d Division, Infantry, 4; Fort Clark 10-Kelly Field 3; Fort Sam Houston 19-Fort Sill 7.

Semi-Finals—Fort Bliss 9-Camp Marfa 4; Fort Sam Houston 15-Fort Clark 10.

Finals—Fort Bliss 11-Fort Sam Houston 7.

The three strong teams in this tournament were Fort Bliss, Fort Sam Houston, and Camp Marfa, although Fort Clark was showing greater and greater strength each day they played. Opinion was fairly evenly divided as to the final outcome of the event, with each team holding its strong supporters. The preliminary games were a little one-sided, but showed quickly that there would probably be not more than four contenders for the final cups. As the tournament neared its end, and other

teams were eliminated from competition, the matter of rest between games for the teams still remaining in became a vital one, so that Marfa was of necessity required to play Sunday, March 8th, and again on Tuesday, March 10, it became a question of which game they could best afford to loose. An even worse condition faced Fort Sam Houston. Playing Sunday against the tough Marfa team, they then met Fort Clark on Tuesday, and on Thursday Fort Bliss for the final events. At the same time Fort Bliss had two hard tournament games in two days, and Fort Clark the same. The result was that all the horses were a little tired.

The Fort Bliss-Marfa game played Tuesday, March 10, was a hard-fought battle from the first whistle to the last bell. Horsemanship, hitting, and team work marked the play of both teams. The excellent work of Captain Wood at Number One for Fort Bliss, and of Major Chamberlin, who replaced Lt. Col. Holliday, was a great help in piling up the score, although the size of the score gives no idea of the fierceness of the game.

Fort Clark gave Fort Sam Houston a real thrill in the second game played the same day at Harbord Field when they held the "Yellow Jackets" to the small end of the score with the aid of a six-goal handicap until the fifth period, when Fort Sam Houston got going and finally defeated Fort Clark 15 to 10. Captain Daniels, of Fort Clark, was invaluable to his team.

The bitterest and hardest-fought battle seen here in many a day was the final game between Fort Bliss and Fort Sam Houston. Both teams were anxious to win due to the fact that the winners were to be selected to represent this Circuit in the Inter-Circuit Tournament to be held in Philadelphia this summer. The game was fast from the very beginning, Bliss, however, did not get into its stride until the fourth period when they stepped out and started scoring. In the meantime the "Yellow Jack-ets" had made up the handicap of three goals which they had to give away and were going strong. About that time, however, Major King got a fall in a bit of slippery going near one end of the field and was a little shaken up. Then the Fort Sam Houston horses began to show the strain of three hard games in six days, and the Cavalymen got their steam roller oiled up and working. From that time on the game was the personal property of the crew from Fort Bliss. The "Yellow Jackets" staged a momentary rally in the sixth Chukker, but were unable to catch up. It is hard to say that any one man stood out or was responsible for the winning or the losing of the game. Both teams were functioning as teams exceptionally well. The forwards naturally made most of the goals, but the defensive work of both sets of backs was probably the best that has been seen in this vicinity for a long time. The most thrilling incident of the game was when Captain Wood, of Fort Bliss, was hit square in the face by a long backhander that came back so fast that it had hairs on it. No one saw that he was hit, though he called for time. The whole play, including the umpires, passed him by, with Wood just barely able to hang on to his horse. After a number of seconds he managed to get himself together and rejoin the play. Shortly thereafter he pushed through another goal.

In addition to the Polo Tournament, there was held as a part of it, and in connection with it, an excellent Horse Show and Gymkhana at the Remount Station. Major A. H. Jones, in addition to his other duties, found time to put on one of the best shows seen around here in many years. Competition was keen and the show was attended by an extraordinarily large crowd of both army people from Fort Sam Houston and the visiting polo teams, and also by a large crowd of people from San Antonio and vicinity.

Altogether the Second Annual Mid-Winter Polo Tournament is and was a very satisfactory event, both from the standpoint of teams entered, the class of polo, and the financial results.



Eighth Cavalry Team, Senior Champions, 1st Cavalry Division
Lieutenant Collier, Lieutenant Bosserman, Major Chamberlin, Captain Huthsteiner.

POLO IN ALABAMA NATIONAL GUARD

The Birmingham Sabers (Headquarters Troop, 23d Cavalry Division, Alabama National Guard) have moved into their new quarters. They are now at Roberts Field, home of the 106th Observation Squadron, Alabama National Guard. This new arrangement affords an ample field for polo and about 250 acres of good riding country.

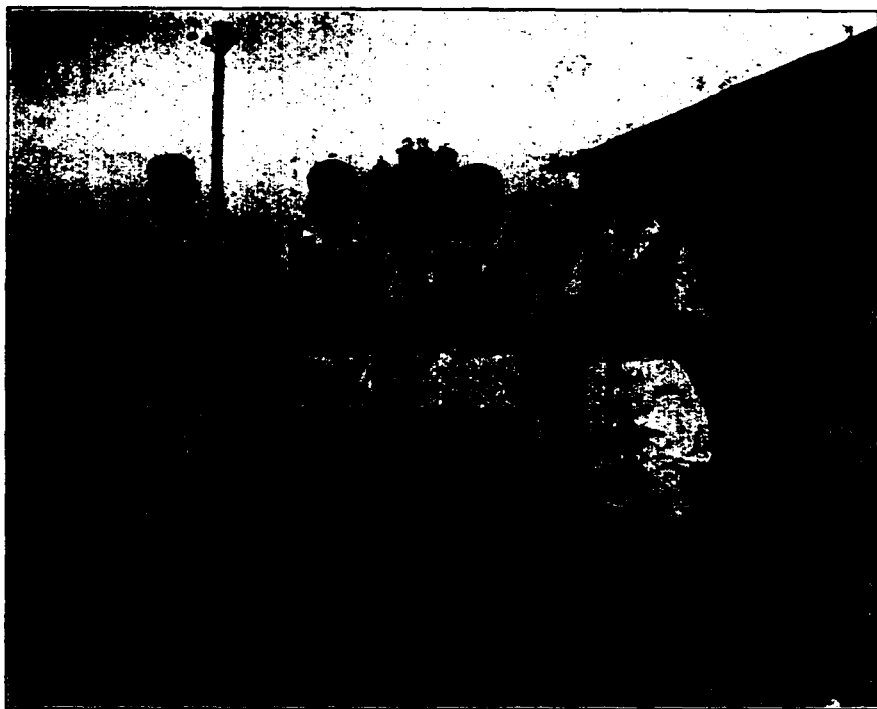
During the greater part of the year polo practice is held twice a week, and Sunday afternoon a practice game is played on the new regulation size field.

The officers of the 106th and the members of The Birmingham Sabers, together with other enthusiasts, have formed a Polo Association. The greatest handicap to be overcome is horses. At present there are 32 issued by the government for training purposes, and practically all of these are used, together with some three or four private mounts.

Last Summer at Camp McClellan the Birmingham Sabers team was selected to play the Governors Horse Guards from Atlanta on Governors Day. These two teams had, by a process of elimination, been selected to meet in this final match. The Governors Horse Guards from Atlanta won by a close score.

Plans are being made to have similar matches this year at the annual encampment which will be held at the home of the 6th Cavalry at Fort Oglethorpe. The officers of the 6th Cavalry have made practically all the mounted officers of the National Guard in the Southern States polo enthusiasts in the past three years. This regiment helped to instruct and hold matches at the annual encampments and, at times, participated in matches with the Guardsmen.

Thanksgiving and the Saturday following of this year, The Birmingham Sabers had the Anniston Polo Association in Birmingham for two games. These games were close and enjoyed by the crowds that witnessed them. First Lieutenant Charles M. Hurt, Cavalry (DOL), Instructor, Cavalry, is the polo instructor and manager of the Birmingham Association.



1st Machine Gun Squadron Team, Junior Champions, 1st Cavalry Division
Lieutenant Chittim, Lieutenant Carleton, Captain Berg and Captain Baylies.

INDOOR POLO IN BOSTON

The first season of the Boston Indoor Polo League proved a greater success than had been anticipated even by the most confirmed optimists. Six teams, three service and three civilian, fought hotly for the title and gave some excellent exhibitions of fine riding and stickwork.

A year ago several polo teams were formed around Boston and played a number of games, but it was not until the autumn of 1924 that the league was definitely formed, being composed of the 110th Cavalry, and the 101st Field Artillery, both of the Massachusetts National Guard, the Instructors of the Harvard R. O. T. C., the Harvard University Polo Team, and the Essex and Norfolk Club teams. These last two were made up of members of the Myopia and Dedham outdoor teams. Not only was the interest strong among the players and other members of the organizations concerned, but there was also much interest shown by the public in general, giving promise that in future years indoor polo will hold a strong place among the winter sports supported by public interest.

Honors this year were carried off by the 110th Cavalry trio, with four games won and only one lost. A very marked improvement was noticeable on the part of the Cavalry over last year both in team work and in stick work. In addition, several games were played by the 110th Cavalry with teams not in the league, notably with the Rhode Island Cavalry.

The National Guard

SERVICE MEDALS FOR TEXAS CAVALRY

In view of the special circumstances connected with the organization and service of the two brigades of Texas Cavalry organized under authority of the War Department dated December 8, 1917, and also on account of their not being entitled to Victory medals under the law, Congress has recently authorized the issuance of Service medals to the officers and enlisted men of these two brigades.

After the 36th Division was called into service in 1917 the State of Texas was authorized to organize two National Guard Cavalry Brigades of three regiments each with a total of approximately 350 officers and 7,900 enlisted men. This was for the purpose of relieving the Regular Army regiments doing Mexican Border duty, in order that these regiments might be available for overseas duty.

On September 18, 1917, arrangements were made for the officers of these brigades to attend a training camp of four months duration. Non-commissioned officers and enlisted specialists were also to attend non-commissioned officers' and specialists' schools. The attendance of both officers and enlisted men was voluntary.

It was decided that the two brigades would be drafted into Federal service on January 2, 1919. The signing of the Armistice stopped the draft of these regiments, but officers and enlisted men voluntarily agreed to continue their courses until completion, December 8. During the time the officers and enlisted men were at these schools the remainder of the regiments were being drilled almost every day at the home rendezvous.

NEW PRESIDENT, ADJUTANTS GENERAL ASSOCIATION

At a special meeting of the Adjutants General Association held in Washington on March 10, 1925, Brigadier General Frank D. Beary, Pennsylvania, then Vice President, was elected President, to fill the vacancy caused by the retirement of Brigadier General Harry B. Smith, Indiana. Brigadier General Hartley A. Moon, Alabama, was elected to fill the unexpired office of Vice President.

104th CAVALRY—Pennsylvania National Guard Colonel E. J. Stackpole, Jr., Commanding

Officers of the regiment are watching with sympathetic interest the development of plans for an encampment of the 21st Cavalry Division, of which the 104th Cavalry is a unit, being worked out by officers of the Militia Bureau and staff officers of the 27th, 28th and 29th National Guard divisions, to which units of the cavalry division are attached for training and discipline. This encampment will bring together for the first time in their history the units of the 21st Cavalry Division, and it is the estimate of the officers of all regiments concerned that such an encampment would be invaluable. A question of costs, it is said, is the only obstacle to such a plan.

The proposed camp would see the 51st Cavalry Brigade, composed of the 51st Machine Gun Squadron and the 101st Cavalry, both of New York state; the 102nd Cavalry, of New Jersey; the 52nd Cavalry Brigade, including the 52nd Machine Gun Squadron, the 103rd and 104th Cavalry regiments, and Company "A," 125th Mounted Engineers, all of Pennsylvania, together. It is understood that Sea Girt, the New Jersey National Guard camp, has been suggested for the site of the cavalry maneuvers.

Plans for a large military ball, to be held during February in Harrisburg, Pa., regimental headquarters of the 104th Cavalry, are being made and Regular Army, National Guard and Reserve Corps officers from all parts of the State will be invited. The 104th Cavalry band will alternate with an orchestra for the dancing, and the regimental standard, troop guidons, sabres, and the lances of the Governor's Troop at Harrisburg, will be a part of the decorative scheme.

The 104th's band, which last year was heard in a dozen states when it broadcast from station WBAK, the Pennsylvania State Police station at Harrisburg, is preparing another program to be sent out from the same station.

Motion pictures will have a large part in the training of the regiment's recruits, following the purchase of a machine and projector. Pictures will be taken of the elementary drills, proper methods of saddling and biting, mounting and jumping, as well as the use of arms, mounted and dismounted. These will be shown at troop drills. In addition, pictorial records of the summer camps of the regiment will be made.

FIRST SQUADRON, 105th CAVALRY—National Guard, Wisconsin ANNUAL OUTDOOR SHOW

The dismounted season of the 1st Squadron, 105th Cavalry, was brought to a successful climax on Saturday, March 7th, at the Shorewood Armory. In accordance with the custom, the Officers Club arranged a party and dance for the squadron, following exhibition work. One of the largest crowds ever handled at the Armory was in attendance.

The event of the evening was the crack platoon competition, dismounted, between selected platoons of the three troops. These outfits have been rehearsing on Sundays for several months, and each produced twenty minutes of exhibition drill involving everything in the regulations. Leather boots were worn throughout, and an excellent appearance was presented.

The platoons representing Troop C, led by 2nd Lt. E. P. Beyer, won the decision and with a year's custody of the Instructors Trophy. Lt. Col. R. M. Barton, Cavalry; Captain Wm. T. Haldeman, Cavalry, and Lieutenant A. H. Norton, Cavalry, all of the Regular Army, acted as judges.

Between events in the competition, fencing and broadsword exhibitions were presented by selected officers.

After the exhibition trophies were given to the various winners of the recent Guard-Collegiate Shoot, St. John's Military Academy being on hand to receive the principal awards.

The results of the final examination and grading for the winter of the non-commissioned officers' school students were announced. Diplomas were issued, the five leaders being given special certificates of proficiency, to be filed with their records and considered during the next examinations for commissions. They were as follows:

Sergeant Roland E. Zache, Troop B,	97%
Sergeant F. G. Patterson, 1st Sq. Det.,	96%
Sergeant P. H. Jacobs, Troop C,	96%
Sergeant W. Bubboltz, Troop "C,"	95%
Corporal Frank Rupnik, Troop A,	94%

In addition Sergeant Zache won the "Non-com's plaque" for his winter's work. General Charles King, U. S. A. (Ret.), made the presentations.

SECOND SQUADRON, 106th CAVALRY

Officers of the 2d Squadron, One Hundred Sixth Cavalry, met at the Hotel Orlando, Decatur, Illinois, and inaugurated a series of quarterly banquets to be held by executives to discuss cavalry problems peculiar to the National Guard.

Following dinner the mounted service was discussed from different angles by the squadron commander, Major Kenneth Buchanan, and by Captain J. K. Colwell, D. O. L., cavalry instructor on duty with the unit.

Major Buchanan stressed the need of regular physical exercise within the command and basketball games between the troops were arranged. A squadron gymkhana at the coliseum of the Illinois State Fairgrounds will be another feature in the near future. All officers who had not already become members of the Cavalry Association were ordered to do so.

Following Major Buchanan's talk, Captain Colwell urged troop commanders to use the "Lentz" system of dismounted drill and explained its manifest advantages over other methods.

Letters from the Adjutant General of the State, and General Foreman were discussed in which the squadron was highly commended for its appearance and discipline during the inaugural ceremonies in January, when the mounted unit was selected over the entire 33d Division for the guard of honor.

During summer camp in 1924 the 2d Squadron One Hundred Sixth Cavalry won a number of trophies from the division for appearance, efficiency and the riding qualities of its troopers.

117th CAVALRY—Colorado National Guard, at the Western National Horse Show, Denver, Colorado—January 19-24, 1925

Squadron Headquarters and Headquarters Detachment and Troop "B," 117th Cavalry (Colorado), successfully participated in the Western National Horse Show at Denver, Colorado, winning two first prizes, one second, one third, and four fourth, against strong competition from the entries of the 13th U. S. Cavalry, Fort D. A. Russell, Wyo., Dr. Walter Venn of Chicago, Bruce Robinson of Des Moines, Iowa, Country Club Heights Stable of Denver, Colorado, A. C. K. Palmer and E. A. Phinney of Golden, Colorado, and C. F. Cusack of Denver, Colorado.

On January 19th in the Heavy and Middle Weight Hunter Class with 15 entries, 4th place was won by Sergeant R. E. Noe on *Tony*, No. 17, of Troop "B."

On January 22d in the Triple Bar Jump class with 23 entries brought out the keenest competition of the show, the 13th Cavalry having five entries and Troop "B" six. Sergeant R. E. Noe rode *Tony*, No. 17, to win and *Colonel* to third place. Actual measurement of the winning jump showed a spread of 22 feet 6 inches, the high bar being 4 feet 6 inches. The splendid horsemanship exhibited by Sergeant Noe received the highest commendation from Officers of the 13th Cavalry as well as from the other competitors and the spectators.

On January 23d in the Pairs and Hunters class with 10 entries, Captain L. N. Scherf and Sergeant R. E. Noe rode *Tony*, No. 17, and *Stump* to second place, and Sergeants Hamrock and Appledorn on *Tony*, No. 24, and *Cappy* rode to fourth place.

In the Officers' Chargers class with 15 entries 4th place was won by First Lieutenant C. E. Richardson, Commander of Headquarters Detachment, 1st Squadron, 117th Cavalry.

On January 24th in the Consolation for Hunters and Jumpers class with 13 entries, the blue went to *Colonel*, ridden by Sergeant R. E. Noe.

All entries by the 117th Cavalry were Government horses issued to the National Guard in 1921, and the officers and enlisted men of the regiment are entitled to the

highest commendation for the excellent work done in training and developing them. Every one of the thirty mounts in the hands of this unit will freely take a three foot jump.

The organization acknowledges the splendid instruction and assistance rendered by Lieutenant Colonel James E. Shelley, Q. M. C., Commander of Trains, 103d Division O. R. C., and appreciates that the Cavalry suffered the loss of a real horseman when Colonel Shelley transferred to the Quartermaster Corps.

The Organized Reserves

SIXTY-FOURTH CAVALRY DIVISION

The 64th Cavalry Division, with headquarters at Louisville, Ky., Colonel Kirby Walker, Cavalry (DOL), Chief of Staff, has been holding monthly conferences at the Armory of the 138th Field Artillery, Kentucky National Guard. The average attendance at these conferences has been over fifty Reserve officers, who are very much interested in a series of lectures being given by Colonel Walker on "The Palestine Campaign."

Twice weekly, Reserve officers of the Division living in Louisville and vicinity meet at the Riding Hall, 138th Field Artillery, for classes in equitation, with Lieutenant Stanton Higgins, Cavalry (DOL), as instructor. Interest is keen and all officers are working to perfect themselves in horsemanship with a view to putting over a horse show in the Spring.

A polo team has been made up of 64th Cavalry Division officers who meet the 138th Field Artillery team twice a week in practice games. Officers composing the former team are Captains George I. Smith, W. E. Barott and Lieutenant Stanton Higgins, all Cavalry (D. O. L.).

63d CAVALRY DIVISION

During the past three months Division Headquarters has been actively engaged in conducting Tactical Schools and Equitation Classes for National Guard and Reserve Officers of Chattanooga.

The Headquarters of the Division being located at Fort Oglethorpe, Georgia, the home station of the 6th U. S. Cavalry, and only nine miles from the City of Chattanooga, it is particularly fortunate in being able to offer the training facilities of an excellent Cavalry Post to all Officers of the Army of the United States, who wish to take advantage of same.

The Tactical School is held in Chattanooga semi-monthly, and through the courtesy of the Y. M. C. A. we have secured an excellent room in which to conduct the class. The attendance, though not as large as desired, is satisfactory. Many students are so interested in these classes, that they have been present for each session since the school began last November.

The problems deal with the use of combined arms, the students being divided into small tactical groups, according to their rank and branch, each group being given certain tactical requirements to solve.

Similar schools are being conducted in all the larger cities throughout the Fourth Corps Area.

The riding class, held Sunday mornings at Fort Oglethorpe, began last December as a semi-monthly affair with an attendance of only five or six Reserve Officers.

However, the rides soon became so attractive, that frequent requests were made for more riding. Accordingly, the class is now held every Sunday morning, and has

increased to such an extent that the average attendance is about twenty (20) officers each ride.

The duration of each class is about two hours, the first hour being devoted to intensive instruction in the riding pen, the second hour the class has a flock ride through Chickamauga Park. Beginners are given McClellan saddles, the more advanced students using the flat saddle. Horses are furnished by the 6th Cavalry.

The war strength (58) commissioned personnel of one (1) cavalry regiment of this Division is to be ordered to active duty for fifteen (15) days at Fort Oglethorpe, Georgia, April 5-19th.

The 309th Cavalry has been selected by the Chief of Staff, 63rd Cavalry Division, as the regiment to report. Programs and schedules for the training of this regiment have been drawn up and approved.

Clay pigeon traps have been set up and a gun club organized at Fort Oglethorpe. All officers of the Army of the United States are eligible to join. Regular shoots are held on each Saturday afternoon and Sunday morning. Several Reserve Officers have taken advantage of this opportunity and are showing their skill, or the lack of it, on the flying clay targets.

It is contemplated organizing a Reserve Officers' Team to compete in the tournaments, which will be held from time to time during the year.

322nd CAVALRY

Approval has been officially granted the following design for the regimental insignia of the 322nd's Cavalry: Shield, "Or, a Sioux warrior in war bonnet brandishing a spear in dexter hand and mounted on an Indian pony courant all proper."

The Motto, as approved, is: "Audacter et Strenue," which was adopted from the motto of the family coat-of-arms of Colonel H. H. Polk, of Des Moines, Iowa, the first and present commanding officer of the 322nd Cavalry.

The 322nd Cavalry is a component of the 66th Cavalry Division: is allotted to states of Iowa, Minnesota and Nebraska with the officer personnel largely from the cities of Des Moines and Minneapolis. The regimental area is old Sioux country. Regimental headquarters is located in Des Moines. The Executive Officer is Captain Joseph L. Phillips, Cavalry, (D. O. L.).

During the absence on leave of Captain Joseph L. Phillips, Cavalry, (D. O. L.), Executive Officer, 322nd Cavalry, from Des Moines, the equitation class for reserve officers at Fort Des Moines, has been conducted by Captain Luther L. Hill, a graduate of the Military Academy, now Plans and Training Officer of the 322nd Cavalry.



######

persistent effort has failed to increase our income from this source. Our principal dependence apparently must be upon members and friends of the Association who by means of personal solicitation or otherwise, are in a position to help us.

The Book Department has continued to be a profitable enterprise and a means of service to members. Our stock of old books has been materially reduced, and the supply of a few works practically exhausted. The only increment in stock during the year was 350 copies of "As to Military Training" which were received through the generosity of Major J. F. Wall, the author, with the proviso that 60% of the proceeds should go to the Cavalry Fund and 40% to the Association.

The Magazine Department has continued its success of last year and has been the greatest single source of income. Troops, headquarters detachments, officers' clubs, and some individual members have been liberal in giving us their business and at this time seventy-five troops and seven headquarters detachments are obtaining their periodicals through the Association. It is hoped that all cavalry organizations not on our lists at present will eventually give the Association this very material support.

The continued popularity of the Marquis equipment shows that officers appreciate the value of first class saddle equipment. About one thousand dollars worth of this equipment was sold during the year. Although the profit made by the Association is very small, it is believed that the enterprise is fully justified by the service rendered to members.

The various securities in which the surplus funds of the Association have been invested have been a consistent source of income.

The fact that the market values of all our bonds are well above what they were at the time of purchase indicates the wisdom of the investments.

A final payment of \$489.01 from the William B. Wetmore Legacy was received in June, \$3042.08 having been received in 1923.

The income from subscriptions to the CAVALRY JOURNAL has increased during 1924 and the paid circulation on December 31 stood at the highest mark in its history.

This is largely due to the co-operation and loyal support of commanding officers, regimental representatives and officers on duty with the National Guard and Organized Reserves.

The following analysis of subscriptions and membership may be of interest:

Cavalry R. A., active and retired, and General Officers, 895 (gain of 3.9%).
Cavalry Reserve Corps, 375 (gain of 34.8%).
Cavalry National Guard, 158 (loss of 21.5%).
Miscellaneous (Officers of other Arms, Libraries, Clubs, etc.), 332 (gain of 2.1%).
Exchange 23, Complimentary 1, Life 4, Honorary 3, 31 (loss of 32.9%).
Organizations, R. A., 131 (gain of 11%).
Organizations, N. G., 8 (loss of 37.5%).
Total, 1930 (gain of 5.7%).

While the increase in membership in the Regular Army and Organized Reserves is gratifying, we are not satisfied. It is felt that there should be many more than 158 members out of 716 National Guard Cavalry Officers and more than 375 members out of 3217 Reserve Cavalry Officers. And it is especially disappointing that 233 (22%) regular cavalry officers out of a total of 1050 on the active list should be non-members of the Association of their branch of the service.

There may be various reasons for this state of affairs. That it indicates on the part of non-members a lack of interest in their profession and their Arm, we are loath to believe. Rather it is thought that outside of some cases of neglect, the situation is largely due to a lack of education in the history and purposes of the Association.

If the history of the accomplishments of the Association, its purposes, and its meaning were thoroughly understood, it is believed that in but few cases would the response be unfavorable. It is difficult to do this at long range—much work, many

quarts of ink and reams of paper have been devoted to it—and with some success, but it has been our experience that the place for the most effective missionary work for the Association, is in squadrons, regiments, posts, brigades and divisions, and by those on duty with, and in more or less intimate contact with our fellow cavalry officers in the National Guard and the Organized Reserves. Many loyal members serving in various capacities with the three components of the Army have done yeoman service for the Association during the past year and it is desired at this time to express to them our appreciation of their valuable assistance in increasing the membership.

THE CAVALRY FUND

Pursuant to the action of the Association at its last annual meeting, the Cavalry Fund and the support of various activities were continued this year. The financial statement of the fund follows:

FINANCIAL STATEMENT OF THE CAVALRY FUND FOR THE YEAR ENDING DECEMBER 31, 1924

RECEIPTS	
On hand January 1, 1924.....	\$588.95
Received from Officers and Organizations.....	964.03
	<hr/>
	\$1552.98
DISBURSEMENTS	
Entrance fee for Cavalry School Team, Colorado Endurance Ride.....	\$40.00
1924 Endurance Ride	500.00
Medals for Cavalry Rifle-Pistol Team.....	176.50
Engraving-Cavalry Engineer Trophy	7.50
On hand in bank, December 31, 1924.....	828.98
	<hr/>
	\$1552.98

Washington, January 5, 1925.

We, the undersigned, appointed by the President of the United States Cavalry Association, to audit the Cavalry Fund account for the year ending December 31, 1924, do hereby certify that we have examined the books of account, vouchers, and the foregoing statement, covering said fiscal year, and that the same are correct and true.

W. J. GLASGOW,
Colonel, Cavalry.
JAMES H. REEVES,
Colonel, General Staff.
LEON B. KROMER,
Colonel, Cavalry.

On the basis of a contribution of \$3.00 from each field officer and \$1.50 from each officer below field grade it was thought that probably \$1500.00 out of a maximum of \$2000.00 would be collected, which would permit laying aside each year a substantial amount for the Olympic Team and a reserve for the Fund. As shown by the statement but little more than half of the amount expected has been collected. The disbursements from the fund have been limited as indicated in the statement, and there are no obligations outstanding.

The next call for disbursement from the fund will be about June 1, 1925, when our contribution of \$500.00 toward the 1925 Endurance Ride is due. It is hoped that before that time many officers and organizations that have not contributed as yet may find it possible to assist in augmenting the fund.

It is believed that the solution, as in the case of membership, is in educating them at close range as to the advantages accruing to the Cavalry as a whole, and the indirect individual benefit to be derived from our support of the various enterprises to

which the Cavalry Fund may contribute.

As a result of the Prize Essay contest of 1924 an enthusiastic Cavalry Reserve officer who believes that the value of Cavalry is largely measured by the prompt decision and aggressiveness of the leaders of its small units, has donated \$1000.00 to be utilized in prizes for a competition in the Combat Leadership of Small Cavalry Units.

The President of the Association appointed a committee consisting of Colonel J. H. Reeves, General Staff; Colonel Hamilton S. Hawkins, 3d Cavalry, and Lieutenant Colonel Robert Mc. Beck, Jr., Cavalry, to prepare a plan for the competition.

After a thorough study of the subject, the committee submitted its recommendations, which have been approved. In general, the two essentials of the plan are as follows:

First, that field sports, or feats involving nerve and endurance, form an integral and important part of the competition.

Second, that technical problems should be brief, simple, and settled when possible by concrete evidence (e. g., hits in fire problems and condition of horses after a march problem).

The test is to be in two phases; the first phase to be such as to test the individual military capacity bearing upon leadership of the officer and enlisted man, and will determine who will compete in the second phase; the second phase to be such as to test the ability of the officer to lead a unit, and also the teamwork of the men composing the unit.

The test is to be held at the Cavalry School during the year 1925, the details to be determined by the Commandant of the School.

The fund in question has been deposited as a separate savings account, and has been verified by the Auditing Committee appointed by the President of the Association.

Captain G. A. Moore, to whom is due much credit for the sound financial condition of the Association, he having been Acting Secretary, Treasurer, and Editor during the first half of 1924 and Managing Editor for the past three years, ceased to function as such September 25, 1924, as he was assigned, upon return from a leave of absence, December 5, to duties in the office of the Chief of Cavalry which require his entire time.

On December 1, Major Kenna G. Eastham was, in addition to his other duties, assigned to duty in the office of the Association, and has rendered material assistance to the Secretary and Treasurer.

Upon motion, the report was accepted.

The following officers and members of the Executive Council were unanimously elected:

President: Major General Malin Craig.

Vice-President: Colonel Hamilton S. Hawkins, 3d Cavalry.

Members of the Executive Council:

Colonel W. J. Glasgow, Cavalry.

Colonel J. H. Reeves (Cavalry), General Staff Corps.

Colonel A. C. Colahan, National Guard of Pennsylvania.

Colonel F. Le J. Parker, Cavalry.

Colonel T. A. Roberts, Cavalry.

Lieutenant Colonel W. P. Draper, Cavalry Reserve Corps.

Lieutenant Colonel John Philip Hill, Cavalry Reserve Corps.

Lieutenant Colonel W. M. Connell (Cavalry), General Staff Corps.

Lieutenant Colonel S. R. Gleaves, Cavalry.

General Craig, the newly elected President, took the Chair.

The following amendments to the Constitution proposed by five members of the

Association three months before the meeting and submitted to the members one month before the meeting, all in accordance with Article VIII of the Constitution, were adopted by unanimous vote:

In Article III, Section 2, erase the words "and at such subscription price" and the words "which may be subscribed for by any person or organization," so that the section will read:

"In furtherance of its aim and purpose, the Association shall publish with such frequency as may be determined from time to time by the Executive Council, a professional and scientific journal to be known as the CAVALRY JOURNAL, and conduct a book department for the sale to its members and the public, of books, maps, and periodicals."

In Article IV, Section 2, to erase the words "for at least one year's subscription to the CAVALRY JOURNAL," substituting therefor the words "of at least one year's dues, the amount of which shall be determined from time to time by the Executive Council"; also erase the words "date at which his subscription to the JOURNAL is commenced," so that the section will read:

"Any person desiring to become an active or associate member, shall make application to the Secretary, which application shall set forth facts establishing his eligibility, and be accompanied by the payment of at least one year's dues, the amount of which shall be determined from time to time by the Executive Council, and the applicant's eligibility appearing, the Secretary shall award him membership."

In Article IV, Section 3, erase the entire section and substitute for it the following:

"All active and associate members shall receive the JOURNAL without other cost than the annual dues."

In Article IV, Section 4, erase the words "renew the annual subscription to the JOURNAL," substituting therefor the words "renew through payment of annual dues," so that the section will read:

"Any member may withdraw from the Association at the end of any current year by tendering his resignation; and membership shall lapse, ipso facto, by failure to renew through payment of annual dues; but such withdrawal or lapse shall not operate to relieve such member from liabilities to, or as a member of the Association, incurred prior thereto."

To Article IV add the following section:

"Section 6—Any person or organization may become a subscriber to the CAVALRY JOURNAL upon the payment of a subscription price equivalent to the annual dues of the Association, and all such as are not regularly admitted and entered as active, associate, or honorary members, shall be considered as subscribers merely."

Upon motion, it was unanimously voted to contribute, on behalf of the Cavalry, one thousand dollars to the Infantry School Recreation Center Fund as a memorial to our comrades of the Infantry who lost their lives during the World War.

Major General Willard A. Holbrook, at the request of the members, made a brief address on the achievements of Cavalry and its future.

The President addressed the meeting briefly.

Upon motion it was unanimously voted to extend to Major General Willard A. Holbrook the thanks and appreciation of the Association for his valued and efficient services as President during the past four years.

There being no further business, the meeting adjourned.

W. V. MORRIS,

Lieutenant Colonel, Cavalry,

Secretary

Cavalry School Notes

THE CAVALRY SCHOOL—Fort Riley, Kansas
Brigadier General E. L. King, Commandant

Graduation exercises of the National Guard and Reserve Officers' Class of 1924 were held on December 12-13, 1924.

A night ride of about 25 miles was started at the West Riding Hall at 7:30 P. M., on the evening of the 12th. The course extended via Clark's Creek, West Gate, Cedarville Ranch and Ogden. Each contestant was required to go over the course at a rate of 8 miles per hour reporting at each station at the finish. Penalties were incurred for failure to report and for over and under time at any station. Horses were required to be in serviceable condition at the finish. The winner was Captain Mott, O. R. C.; second, Captain Philip, Texas N. G.; third, Lieut. Bradley, O. R. C., and Lieut. Dundon, O. R. C., tied.

On the morning of the 13th, each member of the class was "cited in orders" by the President of the Class for some feat "above and beyond the call of duty", such as "policing", "carrying the mail", etc., performed during the course. Following this was a ride by the whole class which included the following movements: slow trot, form line, trot, threes by the right flank, half turn in reverse, three by the left flank, half turn, by threes right oblique, gallop depart in circle, suppling exercises, jumping through the chute and jumping. The Commandant, General King, then made a short address, in which he stressed the importance to all components of the Army of the United States of the provisions of the National Defense Act, following which he presented prizes for the night ride and certificates of graduation.

The following were the members of the class: Lieutenant Colonel de Hermida, O. R. C.; Majors Baxter, Bell and Carrico, O. R. C.; Captains Bierwirth, Michigan N. G.; Blackledge, Wyoming N. G.; Bush, O. R. C.; Durant, Connecticut N. G.; Fox, Kansas N. G.; Gillispie, Louisiana N. G.; King, Alabama N. G.; Leonard, O. R. C.; Mott, O. R. C.; Philp, Texas N. G.; Stitt, Texas N. G., and Timmons, New Mexico N. G., and Lieutenants Barber, Kentucky N. G.; Bercaw, O. R. C.; Bradley, O. R. C.; Cain, New Mexico N. G.; Dundon, O. R. C.; Hlavas, O. R. C.; McKenney, Rhode Island N. G. Monroe, Kansas N. G.; Mozley, Alabama N. G.; Sawyer, O. R. C., and Sheldon, New York N. G.

Distinguished visitors to the post included General George H. Cameron, formerly Commandant of the Cavalry School, and General Snow, Chief of Field Artillery, who was accompanied by Major Lester. Exhibitions were given in their honor in the West Riding Hall, which included pair jumping by the Special Advanced Class in Equitation, a ride of schooled horses by the instructors of the Department of Horsemanship, special drills by troops of the 2nd Cavalry and exhibition driving by Battery "A", 9th Field Artillery.

A holiday horse show was given in the West Riding Hall on the evening of December 19, 1924. Zero weather failed to cool the enthusiasm of the contestants and spectators. A jumping contest for troop officers over a course of eight 3½ foot jumps was won by Captain Carpenter; Captain Neilson, second; Captain Cox, third, and Captain Ligon, fourth. The first Platoon, Captain Coe, Instructor, won the ribbon for the highest aggregate score. A class for teams of three jumpers from any organization to be shown in column over a course of seven 3½ foot jumps was won by the team from the Department of Cavalry Weapons, consisting of Colonel Lippincott, Captain Falck and Major T. K. Brown. Prizes consisted of a piece of plate presented by "The Standard" and three hunting snaffles presented by Captain C. C. Smith. Second place went to the First Platoon and third place to the Second Platoon. The Advanced

Class jumping over eight 3½ foot jumps was won by Major Rayner, with Major Millikin; second, Lieutenant Colonel Gordon Johnston, third; and Major Foster, fourth. The open jumping class, over a very difficult course of eight jumps, 4 feet high and better, without wings, was won by Captain Fiske, with Captain Maddox, second; Lieutenant Comfort, third, and Lieutenant Holbrook, fourth. The Ladies' Jumping Class was won by Mrs. J. B. Thompson, with Mrs. Coe, second; Mrs. Truxes, third, and Miss Lillian Whitside, fourth. A potato race for enlisted men resulted in a tie between 1st Sergeant Harris, Troop "F", 2nd Cavalry, and Private Engel, Battery "A", 9th Field Artillery. A novelty event for grooms was won by Private Van Dyke, Stables No. 4. After the show, coffee and "hot dogs" were served by the School for Bakers and Cooks.

The February Horse Show was held in the West Riding Hall on the evening of February 6, 1925. The bucking barrel class was won by Private Autry, Transportation Stables, who was dislodged from the barrel only after 1 minute and 7 seconds. The class for cow ponies, open only to civilians, was won by Mr. Chard. The ladies' jumping class was won by Miss Lillian Whitside, with Mrs. Creed, second, and Mrs. Truxes, third. The enlisted men's jumping class was won by Private Lovesee, 2nd Cavalry, with Corporal Starkey, 9th Engineers, second, and Sergeant Rembe, 2nd Cavalry, third.

The Troop Officers' Jumping Class resulted in a tie between Captain Pierce, Captain Ramey and Captain Creed, all of whom had clean performances. In the jump off, they were placed as listed above. Lieutenant Puncett of the Cuban Army was fourth. The Second Platoon, Captain Coe, Instructor, won the platoon phase of this event. The jumping class for officers on duty with school troops, was won by Lieutenant Reinberg, with Lieutenant Jennings second, Lieutenant Wofford third, and Major Conard fourth. The jumping class for staff officers and instructors resulted in a tie between Captain Beeman and Major Lyman, who were placed in that order in the jump off. Captain Stevens was third and Captain Weeks fourth. The Advanced Equitation Class pair jumping was won by Major Strong and Captain Gay, with Captain Lambert and Lieutenant Holbrook second, and Captain Grow and Captain Maddocks third.

The team jumping class, for the Standard Plate and three hunting snaffles, donated by Captain Waters, was won by the 1st Platoon of the Troop Officers' Class, Captain Roffe, Instructor, with a team composed of Captain Creed, Captain Maher and Captain Pierce. The Post Headquarters team, composed of Lieutenant Waddell, Captain Weeks and Captain Washburn, was second and the 2nd Cavalry team composed of Lieutenant Reinburg, Lieutenant Thornburg and Captain Monahan, third.

The whole Cavalry School was given over to the Army Relief on Friday afternoon and Saturday, February 27th and 28th. The program included a circus in the West Riding Hall on Friday afternoon, a cabaret Friday night and an air circus Saturday afternoon.

The circus started off with a grand parade of all the performers around the post. The side shows of ringing live ducks, throwing tennis balls at boxes, fortune telling and an exhibition of the smallest dog in the world garnered many dollars in small change. The Ladies' Costume Ride to music by 32 members of the Ladies' Riding Class was a well executed and charming performance. A stirring holdup of the Deadwood Coach followed. The cow pony class was won by Mr. Chard. The Medicos, in a gruesome autopsy on a live victim, caused uproarious laughter. The bareback riding, including a "Fred Stone Rope Act," rivalled anything that Barnum ever put on. Members of the Troop Officers' Class enacted a stirring Jousting event between Queen Arthur and Mrs. Launcelot for the hand of the Virgin Knight and the Special Advanced Equitation Class gave a ludicrous burlesque of an Instructor's School Ride. Other events were the covered wagon, a Buckling Barrel Contest and a Greased Pig Contest. Boy Scouts sold crackerjack and peanuts and the Bakers' and Cooks' School coffee and sandwiches.

The cabaret was jammed to the doors and a good time "was had by all." The hits of the evening were the Sally chorus, led by Mrs. Neilson, and the Black and White Ballet, led by Captain Millholland. It is rumored that Mr. Ziegfeld made several flattering offers after the show. The Equitating Balletiers and Bud's Tanbark Tooters were side splitting acts, the former a classic dancing act and the latter a German brass band. Miss Lillian Whitside and Captain Mallan gave a lovely exhibition waltz and Mr. Fletcher Sargent of Junction City gave a seductive oriental dance. Other attractive acts were a radio concert by Lieutenant Pride, a vocal solo by Mrs. Neilson and a musical fanfare by the 2nd Cavalry Drum and Bugle Corps and the 9th Cavalry Band. At the end of the performance, opportunity tickets for many beautiful gifts donated by the merchants of Junction City, were drawn.

The air circus started with formation flying and an aerial review, and included machine gun and bomb attacks, stunt flying by Captain Bock and a parachute jump by Private Snyder. Aerial photographs were made by the 9th Photo Section and sold for a small sum. Tickets were raffled off to civilians for three airplane rides and the ladies of the post reaped a small harvest selling tags.

In all, a total of over \$3,000.00 was made for the Army Relief.

Regimental Notes

THIRD CAVALRY (Less First Squadron)—Fort Myer, Virginia
Colonel Hamilton S. Hawkins, Commanding

The winter season opened on December 5th with a pay ride in the riding hall for the benefit of the Army Relief Society. In spite of the very disagreeable weather that we had on that day the hall was filled.

The program was a very good one; consisting of a rough riding exhibition by Troop F, Roman riding by Troop G, a Squadron Drill, and an Officers' School ride led by Colonel Hawkins. There was also a class for the best trooper's mount, and a civilian and an officers' jumping class.

Since this first date there has been a ride given every Friday afternoon. Troop F has specialized in rough riding. Troop G, in Roman and bare-back riding, Troop E, in school riding. At various times the program has been changed by a drill given by the entire Squadron, a drill by the 1st Battalion 16th Field Artillery, an officers' or a non-commissioned officers' jumping class, a drill by one of the Batteries and an officers' school ride led by Colonel Hawkins. These Friday afternoon programs have become so popular that on February the twenty-seventh at the drill given in honor of the Chief of Staff there were over twelve hundred and forty tickets given out.

For the second time since being stationed at Fort Myer, the Regiment (less the 1st Squadron) participated in the Inaugural parade as a guard of honor to the President and the Vice-President.

FIRST SQUADRON, THIRD CAVALRY—Fort Ethan Allen, Vermont
Lieut. Colonel Herbert E. Mann, Commanding

During the past three months the post has experienced some of the coldest weather, and the heaviest snow storm, that has been seen around here for many years. The mounted work out of doors has been restricted mainly to horse exercise, while the Post Riding Hall has been constantly in use for equitation purposes, and for the training of remounts which were received here last December. Another car-load of particularly high grade remounts were received by the Cavalry in February, and training has commenced on these.

From the 20th of January to the 8th of February the entire garrison was engaged in its annual task of cutting, hauling, and storing ice.

On February 21st the Post in conjunction with the University of Vermont, held an Ice Carnival. Entries were made from the garrison, the University of Vermont, and other civilians; appropriate cups and prizes being presented by the Post and the

Chamber of Commerce of Burlington, Vermont. Unfortunately the skating events had to be omitted on account of the thawing of our ice rink, but the skiing, skijoring, snow shoeing, obstacle races, etc., went off well. This Squadron won the most points for the Army, with Troop "B" in the lead.

The troops are going in strong for gallery practice this winter. The first indoor gallery competition was held between the various organizations, the competitors being men who fired last year and failed to qualify. This competition was won by Headquarters Detachment, and will be followed by competitions between marksman, sharp-shooter, and experts from the different troops.

An exciting and closely contested Basketball Tournament has been in progress since December 16th, the outcome of which is still in doubt.

Our string of polo ponies have had a good rest for the last two months, and are now fit and ready to start in strenuous training for the coming season.

On Saturday, February 28th, the garrison was startled by the unusual sensation of an earthquake, which was quite severe in this locality.

FOURTH CAVALRY (less 1st Squadron)—Fort D. A. Russell, Wyoming
Colonel Osmun Latrobe, Commanding

Colonel Osmun Latrobe took command on January 3rd.

The Post Bowling Championship was won by the 4th Cavalry Officers' team consisting of Captains R. E. Willoughby, C. W. Burkett, P. S. Haydon, and Lieutenant A. K. Hammond.

March 3rd, being the 70th anniversary of the organization of the regiment, was declared a holiday. The day was celebrated by appropriate exercises and a Horse Show. The program of the exercises was:

Explanation of assembly by Regimental Commander.

Prayer by Chaplain.

Reading of short history of regiment.

Presentation of new men to colors.

Short talk to new men by Regimental Commander.

Address by Brigadier General J. J. Jenkins.

National Anthem.

The Horse Show events and place winners were:

CLASS 1. Officers mount, Private or Government owned. 1st Place: Captain R. E. Willoughby. 2nd Place: Captain T. A. Dobyns. 3rd Place: Lt. H. I. Hodes.

CLASS 2. Non-commissioned Officers Jumping. 1st Place: Sgt. John S. Maras, Troop G. 2nd Place: Sgt. Daniel F. Murphy, Hq. Troop. 3rd Place: Sgt. Clarence Jones, Troop E.

CLASS 3. Privates Jumping. 1st Place: Pvt. Arthur B. Carlton, Hq. Troop. 2nd Place: Pvt. Norbert E. Tuck, Troop G. 3rd Place: Pvt. Steve Fernick, Troop E.

CLASS 4. Officers Jumping. 1st Place: Lt. A. K. Hammond. 2nd Place: Captain T. A. Dobyns. 3rd Place: Captain P. S. Haydon.

CLASS 5. Enlisted Mens' Equitation. 1st Place: Pvt. Bundy Penegar, Service Troop. 2nd Place: Sgt. John J. Donegan, Hq. Troop. 3rd Place: Pvt. Andrew Wescott, Hq. Det. 2nd Sq.

CLASS 6. Recruits, full field equipment. 1st Place: Pvt. James Pratt, Hq. Troop. 2nd Place: Pvt. Fred Hartman, Hq. Troop. 3rd Place: Pvt. James Brown, Troop T.

CLASS 7. Escort Wagon Class. 1st Place: Pvt. Ellis M. Mitchell, Service Troop. 2nd Place: Pvt. Anton D. Jurgatis, Service Troop. 3rd Place: Pvt. Marvin E. Hunt, Service Troop.

CLASS 8. Radio Set Class. 1st Place: 2nd Squadron Detachment.

CLASS 9. Mule Jumping, Bareback. 1st Place: Pvt. Arthur Briscoe, Service Troop. 2nd Place: Pvt. Wasil Kozol, Service Troop. 3rd Place: Pvt. Joe Karaniczyz Service Troop.

CLASS 10. Special Officers' Jumping. 1st Place: Lt. C. C. Blakeney, 76th F. A. 2nd Place: Lt. W. C. Stout, 76th F. A. 3rd Place: Capt. L. A. Shafer, 13th Cavalry.

The Troop winning the largest number of points was, Headquarters Troop, commanded by 1st Lieutenant E. E. Cox, 4th Cavalry.

Many guests from Cheyenne and the other regiments stationed at the post were present for the Horse Show.

FIRST SQUADRON, FOURTH CAVALRY—Fort Meade, South Dakota

Major Otto Wagner, 4th Cavalry, Commanding

There have recently been received three carloads of remounts from the Remount Depot at Fort Robinson, Nebraska. These replacements were badly needed as the average age of horses of this squadron is between 12 and 15 years. Most of the young horses received promise to make excellent troopers' mounts and some of them can probably be developed into good polo ponies.

The squadron has received 43 recruits since January 1st, 1925. A large part of the present training is devoted to recruit instruction and training of remounts.

The Advanced Course in Tactics, for officers, under the direction of Major Otto Wagner and Captain C. G. Wall has been an excellent one and has been strictly carried out according to the original schedule. A short course in Public Speaking has been recently incorporated in this course. Officers have chosen the following subjects for their lectures:

Major Wagner—"Preparation of Addresses."

Captain Kilburn—"Early History of U. S. Army."

Captain Wall—"The Present Day Army."

Lieutenant Ward—"Progress of War Settlements."

Lieutenant Gregg—"The Chaotic Condition of European Finance."

Lieutenant Stone—"Muscle Shoals."

Captain Barnum—"The Paris Peace Conference, 1919."

Lieutenant Noble—"General Mitchell's Campaign for a United Air Service."

Lieutenant Sells—"Premier Mussolini."

Major Wagner—"Events Leading Up to the World War."

The Enlisted Men's Dance Committee has been giving one dance a month. These dances are popular and well attended. As there is no band at this post the expense of Officers' and Enlisted Men's dances must be borne by the individual. Due to the isolation of the post the cost of transporting and engaging dance orchestras is high and therefore dances have been few.

The Squadron Basketball League, composed of teams from Troop A, B and C, has been playing some exciting and fast basketball during the winter months. The teams are evenly matched and the race is very close.

The individual stars of the league are Lieutenant Gregg, 4th Cavalry; Sergeant Dyer, Troop A; Corporal Morris, Troop C; Private Hendricks, Troop B.

The present standing of the three teams is as follows: Troop A won 5, lost 3; Troop B won 3, lost 5; Troop C won 4, lost 4.

The Post Team is composed of the following players: Sergeant Dyer, Forward; Private Hendricks, Forward; Corporal Morris, Center; Lieutenant Gregg, Guard; Corporal Szpienski, Guard. To date the Post Team has competed in two outside games with the following results: Fort Meade 11, Spearfish 14; Fort Meade 20, Deadwood 19.

FIFTH CAVALRY—Fort Clark, Texas

Colonel Wallace B. Scales, Commanding

During the month of February the regiment engaged in record saber practice, in which 158 qualified as Experts, 156 Excellent, 7 Swordsman, and 10 were Unqualified. Percentage qualified—96.9.

There are still about twenty officers and enlisted men to take the course; all are expected to qualify, thereby raising the percentage.

On March 3rd the regiment celebrated the seventieth anniversary of its organization. Following is the program of the exercises for the day:

(a) Salute to the Standard—Band playing National Anthem.

(b) Reading of G. O. No. 2, Hq. 5th Cavalry, February 6th, 1920.

(c) Address—History and achievements of regiment.

(d) Address by regimental commander.

(e) Regimental March by the band.

(f) Reminiscences by Master Sergeant Bovee, oldest soldier in point of service with the regiment.

(g) America—by the band.

This was followed by an officers' polo game in the afternoon and an enlisted men's dance at night.

Due to the recent death of Lieutenant Colonel R. R. Love, the Executive Officer of the regiment, the officers did not have their customary dinner and dance on Organization Day.

The First Squadron and Headquarters Troop started range practice with the rifle on March 1st. The Second Squadron and Service Troop started range practice with the pistol on March 1st. Although we set a high standard in qualifications attained last year in all arms we are out to surpass those marks this year.

Due to pressure of business and a shortage of officers, the regiment did not send a polo team to Fort Sam Houston, Texas, for the mid-winter tournaments. A team from Fort Clark, is now at Sam Houston, engaged in the tournaments and is composed of Captains J. M. Tully, F. H. Barnhart, and E. M. Daniels of the regiment and Captain S. Berg, of the 1st Machine Gun Squadron. The team has been successful to date, having won three out of four games played.

SIXTH CAVALRY—Fort Oglethorpe, Ga.

Colonel Robert J. Fleming, Commanding

On January first the annual presentation of trophies and medals to individuals and organizations was made. Troop "C," Captain Renn Lawrence commanding, was again awarded the Guidon streamer for attaining the highest average in Military Proficiency during the year 1924 and the cup presented to the troop securing the highest number of points in the annual horse show. Troop "F," Captain Robert R. Maxwell commanding, was awarded the banner for the highest average in Military Administration, while Troop "G," Captain Wharton G. Ingram commanding, won all first place awards for the highest percentage obtained in Rifle, Automatic Rifle, Pistol dismounted and Pistol mounted practice for the year, qualifying 100 per cent in each record practice. Troop "G" also won the cup offered in the Troop Rifle Competition with an average score of 312.3.

Monthly field days were held in January and February. The events in February showed a decided improvement over previous months, especially in pair jumping and novelty jumping, the winners winning with a clean performance.

The Chief of Staff of the Army, Major General John L. Hines, visited the Post on February second and third. A review followed by a tactical inspection was held on the morning of the third, while in the afternoon Post Schools, Headquarters, Barracks and Stables were inspected. The General's visit was the occasion for a very delightful Hop at the Officers' Hop Room. He expressed himself as well pleased with the condition of the Regiment.

A review by the Commanding Officer on February thirteenth was used to present streamers to which the Sixth is entitled to bear on its standard. Twenty-two streamers bearing inscriptions of Indian Wars, Civil War, Spanish-American War, China

Relief Expedition, Philippines Insurrection and the World War campaigns and engagements were placed on the standard.

During February the Officers and Ladies of the Post gave a County Fair and the entire Post gave a Carnival for the benefit of the Army Relief Society. A total of \$545.67 was raised and forwarded as a result of these entertainments.

A Gun Club has been organized by the Officers and Ladies of the Post, together with a number of enthusiastic civilians from Chattanooga. All equipment has been installed and regular meets are held three times a week. The Higgins Trophy is being competed for at the present time and real competition has developed.

The Baseball season has started with the prospect of developing the fastest team we have had in several years. We are a member of the City League of Chattanooga which assures us strong competition and a regular schedule of three games a week throughout the season.

Captain W. G. Simmons has been ordered to duty with the Organized Reserves with station at Knoxville, Tennessee, and Captain W. C. Steiger has been ordered to the Philippines. Lieutenant W. P. Campbell is attending the Chemical Warfare School at Edgewood Arsenal.

The Regiment reached its authorized strength during February with 133 recruits now in training with the Recruit Detachment. It is expected to complete all Recruit Drill in time to return all recruits to duty to take part in the summer training camps to be held here this summer for the CMTC, ROTC, ORC and National Guard.

SEVENTH CAVALRY—Fort Bliss, Texas

Colonel Fitzhugh Lee, Commanding

In December the Regiment completed the training of the individual soldier, tests of which the Brigade Commander, Brigadier General Joseph C. Castner, conducted soon thereafter and pronounced creditable. Recently the training squad and the platoon was satisfactorily finished.

During January and February the Regiment, with the exception of a few men in the Hospital, fired the Pistol Qualification Course, mounted and dismounted. Out of the total firing, only four men were lost. A high percentage is anticipated for the Regiment when the final results shall be tabulated, which will be in keeping with the excellent record of last year.

The saber qualification course has just been completed with the excellent result of 98.7 per cent. for the Regiment.

During the quarter officers have been attending schools in Tactics, Equitation, and Field Service Regulations.

On account of favorable weather, interest in athletics has not waned. The Regimental Basketball Team made a creditable showing in the Post League, but did not achieve first honors. The Team played in the league at El Paso and gave the winners a hard fight for first place. Two days, December 23rd and 24th were devoted to a Regimental field meet embracing mounted and dismounted events. Prizes were awarded to Troops and individuals. Presentation was by Colonel Fitzhugh Lee.

The baseball season for the Regiment opened on February 15th with an appropriate speech from Colonel Lee, the band playing "Garry Owen," and Service Headquarters Troops crossing bats. The inter-troop league is now well under way. The Regimental Team has promising players, and its prospects for championship of the Post League are good. The Post League Pennant won by this Regiment for two consecutive years, waves over the grandstand challenging the players to make it theirs for a third consecutive year. Lieutenant A. B. Clark is coaching and managing the Team. Sergeant W. W. Morrison is assistant, and is very active in all athletic affairs of the Regiment.

The Regimental Band, conducted by Warrant Officer C. B. Price, began the

spring concert season on Sunday afternoon, February 15th. The concerts are welcomed by the personnel of the Post, and are attended regularly by a large audience from El Paso.

During the past quarter the Non-commissioned Officers' Club of the Regiment, has promoted successfully a few dances, several masquerades, radio concerts, smokers, and sociables. An auxiliary to the Club has been organized among the wives of the Non-commissioned Officers. The auxiliary has proven a valuable aid in entertainments. The Club is active and prosperous.

EIGHTH CAVALRY—Fort Bliss, Texas

Colonel S. McP. Rutherford, Commanding

Results of the recent mounted pistol competition between five-man teams from each cavalry troop of the army show the Eighth Cavalry in the three top places. Troop "F" took first place—total score, 147; Troop "G," second, 146, and Troop "E," third, 145. A letter has been received from the Brigade Commander congratulating the regiment on this remarkable record. That one squadron should take all three places in a competition entered by all troops of the army is considered more than phenomenal.

The members of the Troop "F" team were awarded gold medals and a bronze medal for highest regimental score. These medals were presented at Regimental Inspection on February 28th, by the Regimental Commander.

This year's pistol firing has been completed, with gratifying results. About 86.75 per cent qualified dismounted, and about 97.1 per cent mounted. Both E and F Troops qualified all men mounted.

This regiment's organization day is November 23rd. It was desired to celebrate the event, but the celebration had to be deferred until December 30th on account of the rush of activities during November. The celebration took the form of a field meet, opened by an address by the Regimental Commander on the history and achievements of the regiment. The field meet, comprising both mounted and dismounted events, was won by Troop F. It is intended to hereafter make the celebration of organization day an annual event.

The Brigade completed saber practice on February 25th. Of the officers and enlisted men of this regiment running the course 89.67 per cent qualified. Troops "A" and "E" qualified all officers and enlisted men.

The facilities afforded by the new area service club have greatly stimulated interest in basket-ball. During the winter just past an inter-troop league was formed, and after many good games Service Troop carried away the honors. The regimental team is on top in the post league and its winning the title is almost assured.

NINTH CAVALRY—Fort Riley, Kansas

Lieut. Colonel Kerr T. Riggs, Commanding

The Ninth Cavalry Club boasts one of the finest Enlisted Men's Club Houses in the service. Fully equipped in every detail to furnish comfort and recreation to the men of the regiment, their wives and friends, it has been the center of attraction during the winter months. In addition to the regular weekly hops, and the moving pictures, a number of special entertainments have attracted large social gatherings. At all of these joyful festivities, Sergeant Clyde Andrews' Jazz Orchestra thrills the veterans of six or seven "hitches" with the spirit of gallant youth.

The elimination boxing bouts on February 12th drew a large crowd of patrons of the "Manly Art." Four fast and furious bouts furnished an enthusiastic audience with plenty of excitement.

An innovation to furnish amusement and entertainment for the members of the regiment and their friends, entertainments consisting of both mounted and dismounted events are held periodically at the West Riding Hall. These events are held at night so as to permit everyone to attend and are officially known as "NINTH CAVALRY

NIGHTS." Music is furnished by the band, and refreshments are served following the contests. The troop winning the highest number of points is presented with a banner. "NINTH CAVALRY NIGHT" on January 28th included the following events: Caterpillar Race, Potato Race (Mounted), Three-legged Race, Mounted Wrestling and a Relay Race. Troops finished as follows: First, Troop G, 11 points; second, Headquarters and Service Troop, 10 points; third, Troop F, 7 points; fourth, Troop C, 6 points. "NINTH CAVALRY NIGHT" on February 11th was won by Troop A with 13 points; second, Headquarters and Service Troop, 10 points; third, Troop B, 8 points; fourth, Troop G, 7 points. The program included the following events: Mounted Boxing, Greased Pig Chase (open to married men only, winner gets pig), Pie-eating Contest, Pillow Fight and Mounted Wrestling.

The Army Relief Benefit on February 27-28th was a huge success. The Ninth Cavalry took an active part in the numerous entertainments that were held to raise funds.

As the basketball season draws to an end the regimental baseball team is commencing its spring practice. Several very promising players have been acquired who will bring added strength to the very formidable aggregation of last year.

On February 18th a retirement party was given in honor of First Sergeant Richard L. Wilson and Staff Sergeant Miles Terry.

ELEVENTH CAVALRY—Presidio of Monterey, California Colonel H. J. Brees, Commanding

On December 12 and 13 the regiment entered a team in the 30th Infantry Horse Show, which was held at San Francisco. Under the direction of Major Sloan Doak this team brought back several cups and ribbons. Cups were won by the following entrants: Colonel H. J. Brees, Clift Hotel Cup; Captain W. J. Redner, Fairmont Hotel Cup; 1st Lieutenant Sol M. Lipman, Cup presented by Major General Chas. G. Morton, Corps Area Commander; 1st Lieutenant P. A. Noel, Hotel Plaza Cup; Sergeant T. P. Farrell, Troop B, The Mecchi and Company Cup; Private Dahlstrom, Headquarters Troop, winner of two cups presented by the 30th Infantry. The Regiment considers it acquitted itself admirably considering that it was in competition with some of the best civilian horseman and horses on the Pacific Coast.

The month of January was devoted to completing the saber course of 1925. Practically every man in the regiment was put through the course and almost 100% qualified. February and the first week in March was allotted to pistol practice dismounted. The remainder of March will be used for mounted pistol practice. It is intended to finish all target practice before the summer training camps begin. The results to date are very gratifying.

During the month of January one and two-day marches were made by all troops which greatly facilitated the field training. The weekly parades are still continuing. Regimental parade being held on the first Thursday of the month and squadron parades the remaining Thursdays. These parades are of much interest to the civilian population, all being well attended by people from Monterey, Del Monte, Pacific Grove and Pebble Beach.

Two members of the regiment have been cited by the Secretary of War in War Department General Orders for heroic conduct on September 14, 1924, during the destructive oil fire which occurred at that time. The two heroes are Sergeant Herbert A. Pederson, Headquarters Troop, 11th Cavalry, and Private George Bolio, Headquarters Troop, 11th Cavalry, who was cited posthumously, he having lost his life in the fire.

Athletics have been progressing satisfactorily. The regiment participated in a post dismounted field meet on February 25, winning a fair share of first places. A boxing card was held at the Post Gymnasium on February 26th, in which the regiment was well represented.

Preparations are being made for the summer training camps, Troop B, Captain James M. Adamson, commanding, having been designated to go to Camp Lewis, Washington, in June, to participate in training at that station, while Troop C, Captain D. C. Hawley, commanding, will go to Camp Del Monte, California.

TWELFTH CAVALRY—Fort Brown, Fort Ringgold and Sam Fordyce, Texas Colonel John M. Morgan, Commanding

The entire regiment will engage in rifle practice, automatic rifle practice and musketry problems at Fort Ringgold this year, due to the lack of range facilities at Fort Brown and the excellent terrain at Fort Ringgold. One-half of the Fort Brown command, with Lieutenant Colonel Edmund A. Buchanan, 12th Cavalry, in charge, left Fort Brown March 5th for Fort Ringgold, the itinerary calling for a five-days' march. When this contingent has completed firing and has returned to Fort Brown, the other half of the Fort Brown command will go to Fort Ringgold.

The completion of saber record practice, regular season, at Fort Brown in February, shows satisfactory progress in the training in this arm. Among the enlisted men, sixty-two qualified as expert, one hundred and eighty-six as excellent and twenty-three as swordsmen, making a total of two hundred and seventy-one qualified. The qualifications total sixty-nine more than are required to run the course, these being authorized but not required to demonstrate their ability in the saber. Fort Ringgold has not completed saber practice, having taken up rifle practice first in order to be able to turn the class A range over to the Fort Brown troops in March.

Athletics held the interest of the command throughout the past quarter. The basketball series consisted of 15 games with five organization teams competing. The series was completed February 11th, and Headquarters Troop awarded a loving cup for first place. Service Troop took second place. Field meets, including dismounted and mounted events, were conducted on January 31st and February 23rd. Good boxing cards entertained fight fans on the nights of December 29th, February 6th and March 3rd with five bouts each night. An inter-troop baseball league has been organized for the 1925 season. The official series will begin in May and will consist of a "once-around" round robin, each team playing each other team once.

THIRTEENTH CAVALRY—Fort D. A. Russell, Wyoming Colonel John J. Boniface, Commanding

During the past three months weather conditions have been exceptionally good in comparison with the usual Wyoming winters. The 13th Cavalry has thus been allowed, for the most part, to proceed without interruptions with its program of training. Frequent regimental practice marches, tactical inspections, and weekly mounted and dismounted parades are nearly always held as scheduled. The regiment is fortunate in having received 117 new horses, about one-third of which have completed their remount training and have been assigned for duty; the remaining remounts are progressing very satisfactorily under the supervision of Captain Selby and the personnel of Troop "E".

The 13th Cavalry Annual Horse Show, which was held on January 30, was complimentary to the Commanding General, Fort D. A. Russell and to the Governor and State Legislature of Wyoming. The seating and standing capacity of the riding hall would scarcely accommodate the spectators. A tea was given at Post Headquarters after the show to welcome the Wyoming Legislature, in session at that time.

A riding team, composed mainly of 13th Cavalry entries, participated in the National Western Horse Show in Denver during January. Fourteen ribbons were won in the nine classes entered. The most valued ribbons won were first places in the five-foot class and in the pairs of hunters; both of these classes were won on 13th Cavalry horses.

Nine officers of the 13th Cavalry have recently purchased horses either in Colorado or Wyoming. Practically all officers are now mounted on private mounts, there being 22 private mounts in the regiment.

In addition to our equitation classes, a cross country ride of about ten miles is held on each Thursday afternoon. All officers take this ride, which is led by Colonel Boniface. Twice this ride terminated at the Regimental Commander's quarters where tea and sandwiches were served by Mrs. Boniface.

The regiment has bright prospects for a good season of polo. Fourteen officers are training new ponies selected from the remounts just received in the regiment. Plans are being made for a local tournament in July, during the Cheyenne Frontier Days Celebration.

The 13th Cavalry Regimental Dinner was given at the Plains Hotel in Cheyenne on February 18th. This monthly affair is normally given in the Officers' Club, but the change to a new orchestra and dancing between courses made a pleasant innovation.

At a regimental dismounted parade on December 12, decorations, awarded by competent authorities, were formally presented by Brigadier General John M. Jenkins to the following officers and enlisted men of the 13th Cavalry for meritorious and conspicuous service: Colonel John J. Boniface, Major Mack Garr, Captain H. C. Minuth, Sergeant Alex Lager, Sergeant John May, and Corporal J. V. A. Kruas.

FOURTEENTH CAVALRY—Fort Des Moines, Iowa, and Fort Sheridan, Illinois Lieutenant Colonel A. H. Davidson, Commanding

Troop A returned to Fort Sheridan on December 1st from St. Louis, Mo., after participating in the St. Louis Horse Show. This troop was one of the main attractions at the Horse Show and received many favorable notices.

The regimental training during this period has consisted of schools for officers and enlisted men and mounted and dismounted drills.

On January 5 the regiment (less 1st Squadron) received 22 remounts from Ft. Robinson, Nebraska. These remounts together with those received earlier in the year are being trained daily in the officer's and non-commissioned officer's equitation classes.

Lieutenant Colonel A. H. Davidson took command of the regiment on January 18, Colonel Caldwell having been promoted on that date to the grade of Brigadier General.

General Caldwell left Fort Des Moines on February 13 for Fortress Monroe.

On February 18 Lieutenant Colonel H. J. McKenney joined from sick leave, having been attached to the regiment by War Department Orders.

A great deal of interest has been shown by all organizations in the various competitions scheduled for the winter season.

The post football championship was not decided as both games between Troop G and Troop F to determine the winner resulted in a tie.

The bowling schedule which ended on February 20 resulted in a tie between the Service Troop and the Quartermaster Corps team, each having won nine games and lost one. The tie will be played off on March 3.

The winner of this event will receive a cup donated by Argonne Post No. 60, American Legion of Des Moines.

In the Indoor Pistol Competition the teams at the top at the present time are:

Headquarters Troop, 14th Cavalry	4680
Service Troop, 14th Cavalry	4664
Troop F, 14th Cavalry	4442

The post basketball championship was won by the Combat Train, 9th Field Artillery, with eight straight victories. Troop G, 14th Cavalry was second, having won seven games and lost one.

SECOND CAVALRY—Fort Riley, Kansas Colonel George Williams, Commanding

During the month of December this regiment gave two demonstrations as follows: December 3—Headquarters Troop Demolition Sections and December 5 the 1st Squadron in an advance guard problem.

In January each troop of the regiment was assigned periods in the riding halls for the preparation of exhibition rides to be given on Saturday morning during the winter. On January 17th an exhibition drill was given by Troop G, demonstrating all phases of platoon drill. The following Saturday the Communication Platoon Headquarters Troop gave an exhibition drill showing the speed of setting up radio stations and establishing communication. Troop F also gave a drill showing the training of troopers' mounts in combat which included rifle fire, pistol and saber.

On January 26, Troop G gave an exhibition drill for the Chief of Field Artillery. Troop F acted as mounted escort on the departure of Chief of Field Artillery from this post on January 26th.

Troop C and the Service Troop gave exhibition drills on February 21. The former demonstrated close order drill, mounted, and the latter gave an excellent driving exhibition.

A class in equitation and jumping under Captain Wharton and Captain Duke is being conducted during the winter months for all the officers of the regiment.

The middle of February saw the second of a series of School Horse Shows. The School Troops open jumping being won by Lt. Reinburg, 2nd Cavalry, with Lt. Jennings second and Lt. Wofford third. In the team jumping for entire school the 2nd Cavalry Team, Lt. Reinburg, Lt. Thornburgh, Capt. Monihan, took third place.

ESTABLISHED 1818

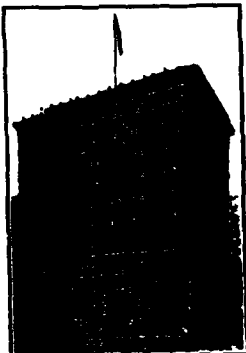
Brooks Brothers,
CLOTHING
Gentlemen's Furnishing Goods.
MADISON AVENUE COR. FORTY-FOURTH STREET
NEW YORK

Officers' Uniforms

Agents in the United States
for the
"Woodrow" Cap
and
Messrs. Peal & Co.'s
"Sam Browne" Belt

Send for Circular

BOSTON PALM BEACH NEWPORT
LITTLE BUILDING PLAZA BUILDING AUGER BUILDING
Tenth and Broadway C O R D E R 220 Broadway Avenue



BROOKS BROTHERS'
Building, convenient
to Grand Central, Subway,
and to many of the lead-
ing Hotels and Clubs

MILITARY
POLO
HEATING
BOOTS
SPURS
WHIPS
CROPS
KIT BAGS
&
CASES
REPAIRS
ITINERARY
BY U.S.A.
SENT ON
REQUEST

J. A. L. & Co.
100 N. FORD ST.
CHICAGO, ILL.
U.S.A.

Representatives visit principal Cities and Army Stations.
Itinerary sent on request.

AUTOMOBILE INSURANCE

"For Officers, Warrant Officers, ACTIVE AND RETIRED, and Field Clerks, of the United States Services". Application blanks may be obtained from U. S. Cavalry Association, or

WRITE FOR PARTICULARS

(giving description of your car)

If application sent, enclose \$5.00 Membership Fee to apply on premium. Coverage at cost.

UNITED SERVICES AUTOMOBILE ASSOCIATION

(Formerly U. S. Army Auto Ins. Ass'n)
FORT SAM HOUSTON, TEXAS

Frank J. Krupp

Successor to

Henry Schick & Co.

**Army and Navy
Uniforms**

1421 F STREET NORTHWEST

Washington, D. C.

CIVILIAN DRESS A SPECIALTY

Instructions in Learning Accurate Pistol Shooting Illustrated

Adopted by the U. S. Marine Corps, 1922

Covers the fundamentals of pistol shooting in concise form and in the Shooters language; points on coaching men; technical description of the Colt's Automatic Pistol, caliber .45, Model of 1911 and a table of percentages for the quick and accurate recording of scores. Single copy, 50 cents.

Ten per cent reduction on ten copies; twenty per cent reduction on twenty-five copies; thirty per cent reduction on fifty copies.

Address your orders to
GY.-SGT. JOHN M. THOMAS
Rifle Range, M.B., Parris Island, S. C.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Devoted to the Interests of the Cavalry,
to the Professional Improvement of Its
Officers and Men, and to the Advance-
ment of the Mounted Service Generally

EDITOR

Lieutenant-Colonel W. V. MORRIS, Cavalry

Copyright, 1926, by

The United States Cavalry Association

Published quarterly by the United States Cavalry Association. Editor, Lieutenant-Colonel W. V. Morris, Cavalry. Entered as second-class matter at the post-offices at Washington, D. C., and Baltimore, Md., under the Act of March 3, 1879. Acceptance for mailing at special rate of postage provided for in section 1103, Act of October 3, 1917, authorized May 29, 1920.

Office of Publication, Baltimore, Md. Editorial Office, Washington, D. C.
\$2.50 per year; single copy, 65c. Foreign Postage, 25c Additional

Bargains In Standard Military Works

An Excellent Opportunity to Add to Your Military Library

A Few odd lots of books published by The Cavalry Association are on hand and must be moved regardless of original cost. When the supply is exhausted these books will be out of print and unobtainable.

To equalize the cost to us we have combined the books into groups made up of several titles. All contain works of lasting value and the volumes are in good condition.

GROUP I

TACTICS, Volume I—Infantry
Balck

CRITICAL STUDY OF GERMAN TACTICS
de Pardieu

INDIVIDUAL AND COMBINED MILITARY SKETCHING
Cole and Stuart

AS TO MILITARY TRAINING
Wall

A HISTORY OF CAVALRY
Denison

NIGHT MOVEMENTS
Burnett

MESS OFFICERS ASSISTANT
Holbrook

Regular Retail Price \$12.10
Special price to You \$6.75
Postpaid

GROUP II

TACTICS, Volume I—Infantry
CRITICAL STUDY OF GERMAN TACTICS

INDIVIDUAL AND COMBINED MILITARY SKETCHING
AS TO MILITARY TRAINING

Regular Retail Price \$5.90
Special Price to You \$3.50
Postpaid

GROUP III

A HISTORY OF CAVALRY
NIGHT MOVEMENTS
MESS OFFICERS ASSISTANT

Regular Retail Price \$6.20
Special Price to You \$4.25
Postpaid

The U. S. Cavalry Association
1624 H Street, N. W.,
Washington, D. C.

Please send Groupto the address below. Check for \$.....
enclosed (or) Request that cost be charged to my account.

CONTENTS FOR JULY, 1926

Vol. XXXV, No. 144

	PAGE
THE STORY OF THE LITTLE BIG HORN.....	295
Lieutenant Colonel W. A. Graham, J. A. G.	
THE PURSUIT AFTER JENA.....	370
Captain Wm. H. Colbern, Field Artillery.	
THE CHINA PONY	382
1st Lieutenant F. B. Butler, C. of E.	
IF ONLY WE HAD READ THE PROPHET CLAUSEWITZ.....	397
Colonel A. T. Hunter, V. D., R. of O. (Reprinted from Canadian Defence Quarterly.)	
SOME RUSSIAN CAVALRY CHARGES DURING THE GREAT WAR.....	403
Boris d'Adamovitch.	
THE BLACK HILLS ENDURANCE RIDE, 1926.....	406
Captain Norman E. Fiske, Cavalry.	
COMMAND AND GENERAL STAFF SCHOOL.....	412
(Reprint from The Military Engineer.)	
A PHILIPPINE HUNT	418
Major John A. Considine, Cavalry.	
OBJECT AND VALUE OF PRESTON SYSTEM OF BRANDING ANIMALS....	426
Major C. L. Scott, Remount Service, Q. M. C.	
SIDE LIGHTS ON THE BATTLE OF THE LITTLE BIG HORN.....	428
EDITORIAL COMMENT	437
MILITARY READING—THE LITTLE BIG HORN—PROPORTION—THE JOURNAL.	
TOPICS OF THE DAY.....	440
A SELECTED LIST OF BOOKS—APROPOS OF THE NEXT OLYMPIADE—A SPARTAN COMMANDER—MAGAZINE SUBSCRIPTIONS.	
FOREIGN MILITARY NOTES	447
THE NATIONAL GUARD	449
THE ORGANIZED RESERVES	451
NEW BOOKS REVIEWED	457
FOREIGN MILITARY JOURNALS	460
REGIMENTAL NOTES	464

The United States Cavalry Association

DESIGN

1. The aim and purpose of the Association shall be to disseminate knowledge of the military art and science, to promote the professional improvement of its members, and to preserve and foster the spirit, the traditions, and the solidarity of the Cavalry of the Army of the United States.

ARTICLE III of the Constitution.

Organized November 9, 1885

OFFICERS

President

Major General MALIN CRAIG

Vice-President

Colonel HAMILTON S. HAWKINS, 3d Cavalry.

Secretary and Treasurer

Lieutenant Colonel W. V. MORRIS, Cavalry.

EXECUTIVE COUNCIL

Colonel F. S. FOLTZ, U. S. A. Retired
Colonel T. A. ROBERTS, Cavalry
Colonel L. B. BALLANTYNE, 102d Cavalry
Colonel W. M. CONNELL, (Cavalry) G. S. C.
Colonel JOHN PHILIP HILL, Cavalry Reserve
Lt. Col. DANIEL VAN VOORHIS, Cavalry
Lt. Col. A. B. CONE, Cavalry
Major A. R. CHAFFEE, 3d Cavalry

MEMBERSHIP AND SUBSCRIPTION TO THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Membership shall be of three classes, which, together with the conditions of eligibility therefor, are as follows:

- (1) Active, for which all general officers of the Army of the United States and all commissioned officers of the Cavalry of the Army of the United States shall be eligible.
- (2) Associate, for which all present and former commissioned, warrant, and non-commissioned officers of honorable record of the military or naval services of the United States not included in class I shall be eligible.
- (3) Honorary.

Application for membership, showing present or former military status, should be addressed to the Secretary, U. S. Cavalry Association, 1624 H Street N. W., Washington, D. C., and be accompanied by remittance of dues for one year.

There is no initiation fee. Annual dues, payable in advance, \$2.50, which includes subscription to the Cavalry Journal, 60% thereof being so designated.

Any person or organization not eligible for membership may subscribe for the JOURNAL at the regular subscription rates of \$2.50 per year. Canadian and foreign postage, 25 cents additional.

Members and subscribers are requested to give prompt notice in advance of change of address.



G. A. Custer.

Courtesy of the Garry Owen Trumpeter

BREVET MAJOR GENERAL GEORGE A. CUSTER

As Lieutenant Colonel, Seventh Cavalry

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Vol. XXXV

JULY, 1926

No. 144

The Story of the Little^h Big Horn

BY

Lieutenant Colonel W. A. GRAHAM, Judge Advocate

INTRODUCTION

In the summer of 1866 the Congress of the United States, after much discussion, reorganized and enlarged the fighting force of the regular army, the cavalry and infantry being increased respectively to ten regiments where there had been but six, and forty-five battalions where numerically there had been but nineteen.

Though the entire array was not to exceed 45,000 men, this startling extravagance was speedily assailed by pacifists, economists, etc., as utterly unnecessary. "now that the war was over;" and it followed that within three remorseful years the builders of what was to have become the bulwark of our national defense were as busy tearing down as they had been precipitate in bracing up, and in the summer of 1869 officers by scores went back to civil life as the infantry was telescoped into twenty-five old-style regiments, a year's pay being bestowed on each man thus eliminated; and as this process did not of itself bring about the desired reduction, certain devious and dubious methods were prescribed, whereby officers with shady pasts (and quite a few without) found themselves suddenly and summarily out of the army, turned loose upon a cold and unsympathetic world.

As it had been prescribed that all vacancies thus created in the cavalry and artillery should be filled from what had been named "the unassigned list," promotion became blocked for more than a generation.

And still the reduction fell short of the demands of Congress, even, as was said in a certain summer, "with such aid as was afforded by our all-too-eager red brothers," the warriors of our Western domain. Far to the south on the Texan border-land Kiowa and Comanche afforded many a casualty. In Arizona the elusive Apache clipped off many a promising life. All along the cross-bordered Smoky Hill route to Denver, the Cheyennes, fiercest of the wild frontier cavalry, harassed the big wagon trains headed and heralded as for "Pike's Peak or Bust";

and still farther north, along the Platte to Independence Rock and beyond—the old Mormon trail to the new Salt Lake City—several thousand strong the warlike Sioux, under their warrior chief Red Cloud, played havoc with unguarded outfits.

It was this condition of affairs that induced the Congress to maintain in such undue proportion the cavalry branch of the army. It was a fact that while many a blanket in the artillery and infantry remained tenantless, the cavalry rode with full ranks. There was a time when it was asserted that at the heels of certain favored and favorite regiments, there followed by the dozen, eager and adventurous spirits, young men of American parentage, ready and eager to sign enlistment papers the moment a vacancy occurred. It is another fact that while four fifths of our horsemen were stationed all over the wild West and Texas, one fifth, just two regiments, were retained in close touch with civilization—the Fifth—the old Second Cavalry of antebellum days, and the Seventh, newly organized, yet already leaping into martial prominence.

Quartered in and about the city of Washington and the slowly reviving municipalities of the Southeast, the Fifth Cavalry was scattered by troop over the most attractive sections of the country, while the Seventh occupied stations like Forts Leavenworth and Riley in Kansas, under the inspiration, guidance, and leadership of their lieutenant colonel—the most conspicuous soldier of the time in the army of the United States.

George Armstrong Custer, foot of his class at West Point, was so regardless of academic regulations that it became a mooted question in the spring of 1861 whether or not he should be awarded the prized diploma. So, while his classmates were hurried away to Washington and set at once to work drilling the rapidly assembling regiments of militia, Custer was held back. But "Custer's luck," a commodity in which he ever expressed supreme confidence, soon directed his wayward footsteps. He "followed on" in time to get into the thick of the scrimmage at First Bull Run, and thereafter by leaps and bounds, to rise from one command to another, to the end that by July, 1863, he rode at the head of the new Michigan brigade of cavalry, and in the spring of '65 was a division commander.

It was in the nine days from Five Forks to Appomattox that Custer was in his glory. Leader of the Third Division of the Cavalry Corps of the Army of the Potomac, which swore by him, clad in a picturesque garb of his own devising, bestriding a big mettlesome charger as full of energy and vim as was its rider, he hovered every mile along the southward flank of the retiring remnants of Lee's heroic army, darting in at every cross-road, picking off flankers, stragglers, wagons by the dozens, even occasional field guns and caissons, giving the starving columns no chance to eat, much less to sleep, striking everywhere along the line of march, interposing wherever he found a gap, compelling his adversary to halt and deploy, thereby delaying the progress of the gray columns and enabling the infantry of the Army of the Potomac to come striding along by every parallel road, gradually overhauling their gallant but exhausted foemen,

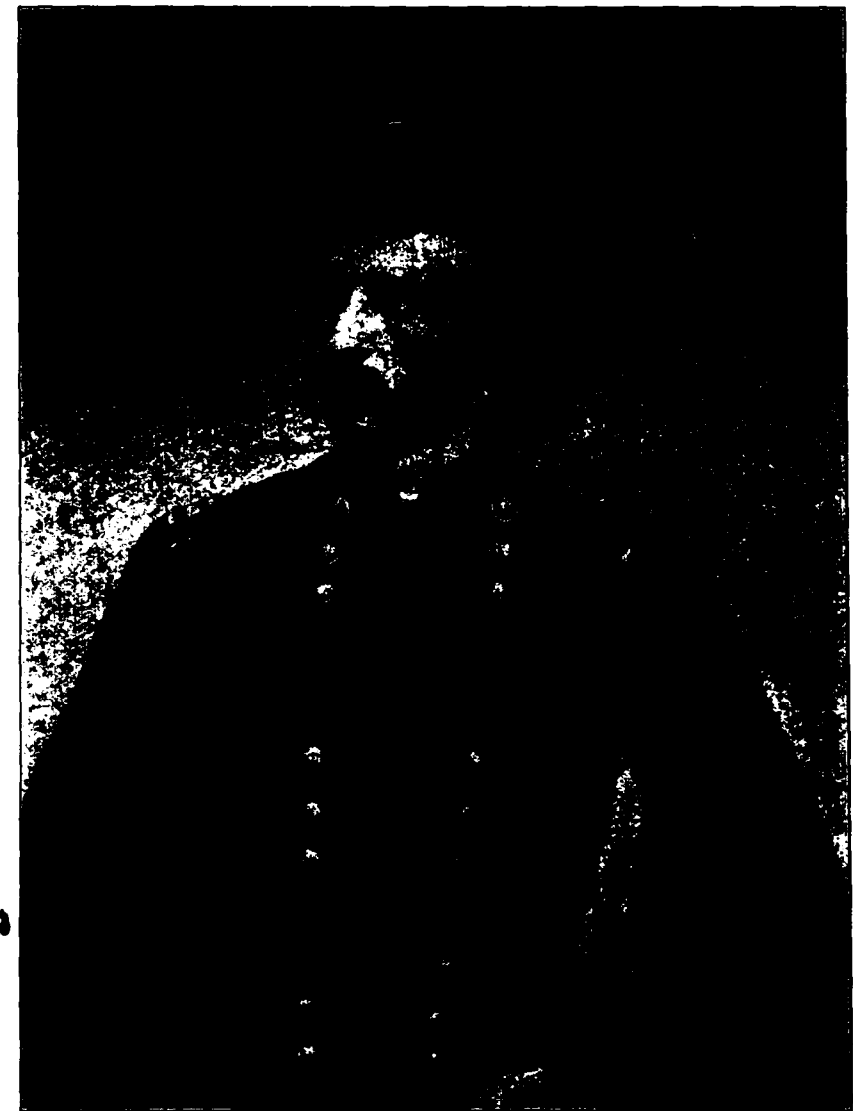


Photo By Brady

**At the Little Big Horn
Lieutenant Colonel in Command of the Seventh Cavalry
A Civil War Portrait of Brevet Major General George A. Custer,**

capturing whole batteries of field artillery, and finally, in one supreme effort, throwing his entire division athwart the Confederate front, and compelling a dead halt until the Union infantry could reach the extreme head of the column, reach around and across the turnpikes and roads, and finally, screened by Custer's cavalry, halt their long dusty columns and form their lines of battle facing eastward—squarely across the Confederates' only way to safety.

Thus and then at last the almost indomitable army of the South was brought to bay, and Lee's dramatic surrender followed. It was Custer who had the luck to be in the lead at the start and to hold it against all comers to the finish; Custer who led the last charge of Sheridan's cavalry (against that South Carolina colonel who wouldn't surrender); Custer who bore away in triumph the table on which Grant had drawn up the terms of that merciful disbandment of Lee's devoted men; Custer, whose runaway charger made him by long odds the most conspicuous object at the grand review in Washington; Custer whose yellow curls and major general's uniform in the fourth carriage of the presidential procession, one year later, drew the enthusiastic plaudits of the crowds along their route—crowds that had not so much as a single hand or cheer for Andrew Johnson, chief magistrate of the victorious Union; and finally Custer who became the magnet that lured to his standard hundreds of daring young Americans; for when the Seventh Cavalry took the field against the hostiles of the southern plains, Custer at the head of the column, it was practically an American regiment, one in which the soldier of foreign birth was almost a stranger. The roster of the Seventh Cavalry was made up in greater number—probably far greater—than any other in the army of the United States, of eager young troopers, American to the core.

Yet all had not gone well or happily with the fortunes of the Seventh. The battle of the Washita against Black Kettle's overwhelming array of warriors, starting vaingloriously with the band blaring Custer's battle-song of Garry Owen—gallant Lou Hamilton falling in the initial charge—and to the dumb amaze of some of his best officers, closing with the abandonment to their cruel fate of Major Elliott and his flanking party as Custer withdrew the regiment, never again to hold its undivided faith or admiration. Then came the episode of his court-martial in Kansas for deliberate absence, and the summary shooting down of deserters in the field, and later the splitting up into scattered troops during the Ku-Klux days and the troublous political times in the South.

Matters seemed brighter, however, when the reunited Seventh made its long northward march to Fort Abraham Lincoln. Yet again in the Spring of '76, its restless leader brought down upon himself the censure of the War Department and the peremptory orders of the President removing him from command at the very opening of the greatest campaign against the hostile Sioux ever yet undertaken, and his reinstatement only upon his earnest pleadings, and the request of the department commander, General Terry, that Custer might be spared the infinite humiliation of retention at the rear when his gallant regiment took the field, on the campaign that every officer believed destined to decide whether the red man or the paleface should thereafter be master of the Western world.



HUNTING AND CAMPING PARTY FROM FORT A. LINCOLN, D. T., AT LITTLE HEART RIVER, 1876

Left to right:

1. Lieutenant James Calhoun, 7th Cavalry
2. Mr. Swett (son of Leonard Swett, Chicago)
3. Captain Stephen Baker, 6th Infantry
4. Boston Custer (youngest brother of General Custer)
5. Lieutenant W. S. Edgerly, 7th Cavalry
6. Miss Watson
7. Captain Myles W. Keogh, 7th Cavalry
8. Mrs. Jas. Calhoun (sister of General Custer)
9. Mrs. George A. Custer (nee Elizabeth Bacon)
10. General George A. Custer
11. Dr. H. O. Paulding, M. C., U. S. A.
12. Mrs. A. E. Smith
13. Dr. G. E. Lord, M. C., U. S. A.
14. Captain T. B. Welf, 7th Cavalry
15. Lieutenant W. W. Cooke, Adjutant, 7th Cavalry
16. Lieutenant R. E. Thompson, 6th Infantry
- 17-18. Misses Wadsworth, of Chicago
19. Captain Thomas W. Custer, 7th Cavalry
20. Lieutenant A. E. Smith, 7th Cavalry
- Nos. 1, 4, 7, 10, 13, 15, 16, and 20 were killed at the battle of the Little Big Horn, June 25, 1876.
- Nos. 2, 17, and 18 were guests of General and Mrs. Custer.

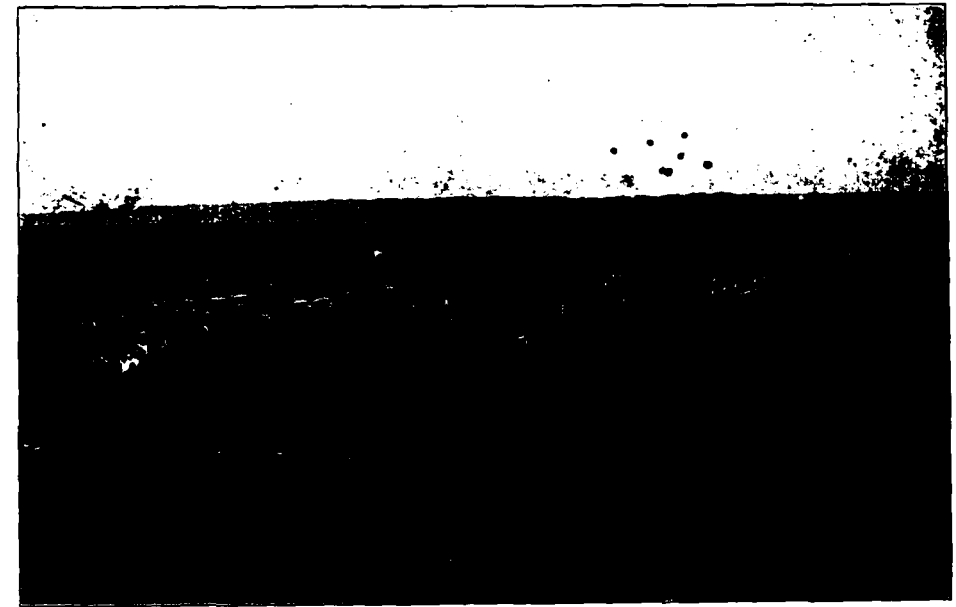
With unknown numbers assembled at his call, Sitting Bull had defied every overture of the Indian Bureau, and at least six tribes of the great Sioux nation had joined him on the warpath, Ogallallas, Brulés, Minneconjous, and Hunkpapas from the southern limits of their broad domain; Sans Arcs and Blackfeet from the northward; and with them, most to be dreaded, those skilled allies, the Northern Cheyennes. Scouts and frontiersmen had located them vaguely as somewhere in the glorious hill country between the Big Horn Mountains and the Yellowstone, and what was most significant and as it proved most fatal, in the ten years that had elapsed since Red Cloud with his thousands, though scantily armed, had lured and massacred to the last man the little battalion sent forth from "the hated fort on the Piney," the Sioux had learned the use of modern weapons. Only muzzle-loaders had either white or red warrior in that bitter December of 1866; but in the famous Wagon Box battle, some months thereafter, Captain Powell, with the first issue of Springfield breechloaders, had given the Sioux their first lesson in the possibilities of warfare with the paleface. Then came the decade in which all over the wide Indian frontier, with the full knowledge if not connivance of the servants of one department of our paternal government, the red wards of the nation were gradually supplied with the latest model repeating arms and ammunition, wherewith to combat and at times to overcome the sworn soldiery of another. In plain words, through the Indian agencies, north, south, and west, "for hunting purposes" of course, the red warriors of the most famous tribes became possessors not only of the single shooting rifle or carbine, as issued to our infantry and cavalry, but, far more effective, the Henry or Winchester magazine rifle, wherewith, anywhere within six hundred yards, to pump leaden missiles into the ranks of our devoted troopers—a vast advantage over their luckless foe.

Summer after summer, loading up with these modern arms of the best make, enterprising fellow citizens steamed away up the Missouri, meeting their Indian customers at well known rendezvous, and there bartering their weapons at standard rates—one hundred dollars' worth of robes, hides, or furs—buffalo, bear, or beaver—the price demanded for either Henry or Winchester; and according to distance, ten, fifteen, or twenty cents' worth, as the price of a single cartridge; then back to St. Louis, the old home of the Astor Fur Company, to dispose of their valuable cargoes.

So too, at the agencies, every brave sought to be the owner of a magazine rifle; and "for hunting purposes" why should they be denied? In that decade too, chiefs without number sought opportunity to visit the national capital, to pay their respects to the Great White Father, and return laden with death-dealing gifts by no means unsolicited. It was recorded of one of the number that on the occasion of his visit to the White House and his truculent demand to be furnished with the latest model of the Winchester—not only for himself, but for each warrior of his imposing retinue—when some prominent functionary expressed the hope that the desired weapons were not for the purpose of "killing my soldiers," he made prompt and disdainful response that "a club was all he needed for that."

Deny these statements as some at least of the officials of the Indian Bureau occasionally did, the fact remains that between the date of the Wagon Box battle early in '67, and the triumphant summer of '76, nine out of ten of the warriors known to be on the warpath had not only the magazine rifle, with abundant supply of copper cartridges, but, as a rule, two revolvers, Colt's Navy preferred. The very few dead that fell into the hands of our troopers fairly bristled with deadly weapons.

As for ammunition, even as late as mid-June in the battle summer of '76, it was being freighted by wagon load to the agencies far inland; and just as the red man was supplied with superior weapons for frontier warfare, so had he a more reliable cartridge than had been issued to some, at least, of our cavalry;



Courtesy of Brig. Gen. E. S. Godfrey

Fort Abraham Lincoln, May 3, 1876

some to the Seventh certainly, for during the following year there were Indians, employed as scouts, who told our fellows in the field of numbers of Custer's devoted followers, on that fatal twenty-fifth of June, seen vainly hacking with their hunting knives at cartridge shells wedged in the heated carbine chambers—shells through whose rim the extractor of the Springfield carbine had cut its way as though through so much putty.

It had not opened well, that centennial summer, which saw by tens of thousands our citizens flocking to Philadelphia for the first of our great expositions. Early in March, even on Patrick's day, in face of a raging blizzard, with the mercury at thirty degrees below, a strong column of cavalry rode northward

from old Fort Fetterman on the Platte, in hope of striking in their winter lodges a band of Sioux under the lead of one of the bravest and brainiest of their war chiefs—Ta Shunka Witko—Crazy Horse—against whom had been pitted a war-time major general, one of Grant's own classmates. And within the week that double-starred yet ill-starred soldier, brave, loyal, dutiful, yet utterly inexperienced, meeting with unlooked-for disaster, drifted back to the Platte with a crop of courts-martial as the sole fruits of the enterprise.

Then, roused to strenuous efforts, the War Department, determining to deal a blow that the disdainful chiefs would rue to their dying day, had directed almost every available soldier from the northern stations to concentrate on that red army toward which were turned the eyes of the eager young braves of every tribe between the Missouri and the Platte on the south, and the Big Horn on the west. From Fort Lincoln came General Terry with a strong column of infantry, and a battery of Gatling guns; and with him, Custer and every troop of the war-tried Seventh, by that time, after many seasons in the field, the most experienced regiment in mounted warfare of the entire army. Westward they came by long day marches from opposite Bismarck—on to the Yellowstone—the Powder—the Tongue—the Rosebud. Eastward from the Montana stations came another veteran commander of the Civil War, John Gibbon, with the Seventh Infantry and squadrons of the Second Horse. Finally, marching northward from the posts along the Union Pacific and the North Platte, most formidable of all in point of numbers, came the Third Cavalry, with a supporting squadron of the Second and a composite regiment made up from the Fourth, Ninth, and Fourteenth Regiments, under the lead of the only man who had prevailed over the Apache, who had spent the best years of his life among the Indians of the Pacific slope, and of whom, perhaps, the most was expected—George Crook—to whom the Sioux and the Cheyenne as yet were strangers.

It was Crook who was destined to strike the first blow of the new campaign. Crook who was first to lead a heavy force against the most warlike Indians in the world. Even as Sheridan had planned, Crook confidently marched on to the heart of "Indian story land," drove in confidently to the attack, and in one hour learned a lesson that revolutionized his idea of the prowess of the Sioux. At the end of that hour he was glad to be able to extricate his command, to fall back to his intrenched camp, there to double his defensive measures and send back to the States for reinforcements.

And thus there came a comrade regiment from beyond Crook's department limits—thus came Sheridan himself, far out to Fort Laramie, personally to send them in, with orders to stop the flow of warriors, arms, ammunition, and supplies from the Red Cloud Agency to Sitting Bull's triumphant camps. Thus it happened that there came to the Fifth Cavalry, on the very day of his promotion to its head, Wesley Merritt, Custer's senior and rival division commander at Five Forks and Appomattox. And thus having broken up the travois traffic to the west of the Black Hills of Dakota, waiting for orders at Sage Creek, Merritt and the Fifth, on the early morning of the seventh of July, 1876, were stunned by the awful tidings brought by Lieutenant Hall and Buffalo Bill—"Custer and five whole troops wiped off the face of the earth!"

For half a century, both in and out of the army, vain search has been made for some one volume in which should appear the story of that deplorable event. We have heard or read individual experiences by the dozens, but never until now has there appeared a complete, comprehensive, and reliable account of that fatal campaign. It is the work of an officer accustomed for years to weigh evidence, and he has taken that of almost every survivor who could be reached; and having sifted and winnowed the tangled mass, partially from the records of the Reno Court of Inquiry, in 1879, but largely from the volume of replies from letters to and interviews with participants in the campaign, with the facile pen of the ready writer whose heart is in his work, whose objective has been the truth, the whole truth, and nothing but the truth, there is laid before the reading public a book of absorbing interest from cover to cover, utterly free from favor or prejudice, a narrative as clear to the layman as to the professional, closing with an array of notes and authorities that challenge criticism or question, and accompanied by sketch-maps, which enable the reader to follow every move of that devoted band, faithful to their soldier oath of service, the one complete and reliable record yet to appear of Custer's Last Battle.

CHARLES KING.

FOREWORD

Colonel Graham has spent several years in the study of the battle of the Little Big Horn, and has interviewed nearly all of the known survivors of that disaster.

In my opinion the following account is as nearly accurate as it is possible to make it at this late day, and contains all the facts of importance that will ever be known. In saying, "The chief cause of disaster was unquestionably the lack of correct information as to the numbers, the organization, and the equipment of the Indians," he hit the nail squarely on the head; for if these things had been known General Terry would not have divided his command at the mouth of the Rosebud, nor would General Custer have made two divisions of his regiment, one fifteen miles from the village and the other when the village was about two miles away.

The idea that the Indians would try to escape was general in the Seventh Cavalry on the morning of June 25, and the first division was made in order to catch them in whatever direction they might run.

General Custer undoubtedly believed they were running away when he decided to move down the right bank of the river and attack on the flank instead of following in Reno's rear.

The remark of Girard, the interpreter, to Custer, "There are your Indians, running like the devil," of Sergeant Knipe, "We've got 'em, boys," as he rode past Benteen's squadron, and the Trumpeter Martin's, "The Indians were surprised and are skedaddling," show what the general impression was in Custer's command at the time he moved off down the right bank.

Even if the blame for the disaster was due to General Custer, the fact remains that he and his five troops died heroic and glorious deaths, and upheld the reputation of their regiment and the United States Army for bravery in action.

W. S. EDGERLY,

Brigadier-General, United States Army, Retired.

Cooperstown, New York, September 2, 1925.

1

THE men of the Golden West have ever been a forward-looking people; else the past fifty years, which has seen it develop from a land inhabited by savages, to become the pride, the wonder, and the backbone of America, could not have produced, in so short a time, those results that have amazed the world. Forward; always forward; overcoming, trampling down, sweeping aside all obstacles, the men of the West have marched on. Such is the spirit of the West.

The history of those fifty years is replete with the records of glorious achievement, the fruits of which the younger generation accepts and enjoys, little knowing, and, perhaps, little caring, how its heritage was won. This is the tale of but one of the many events which blaze the trail; one which the Western youth may well pause to look back upon, since it marked the high tide of the Red Man's struggle against the onward rush of civilization, and stands out, in all the history of America, as the greatest victory ever won by the Indian warrior over the white soldier; a greater triumph, even, than was Braddock's Defeat.

In 1868, the Government concluded a treaty with the Dakotas (the Indians generally known and referred to as the Sioux Nation), which set off to that numerous and warlike people a large territory in the Northwest to be their own forever. It included their favorite hunting-grounds, the Black Hills, and certain lands adjoining; and the Sioux, for the most part, were satisfied. Then came the discovery of gold in the Black Hills and the inevitable resulting inroads of covetous whites.

BLACK HILLS EXPEDITION

In 1874, an expedition under the command of Major General George A. Custer was sent into the Black Hills by the Government, to reconnoiter and explore the country. The Sioux, quite naturally, became perturbed and resentful over this invasion of their lands; and during the year 1875, their protests having gone unheeded, it became apparent that resistance was imminent. Some few of the Dakotas had never accepted the treaty of 1868, and to these malcontents were now joined hundreds of protestants against the violation of their treaty rights.

Foremost among the "non-treaty" Sioux, the leader and rallying-point of all the dissatisfied and rebellious, was the Hunkpapá medicine-man, Sitting Bull; and to him, somewhere in the Rosebud country in Montana, during the early part of 1876, flocked thousands of representatives from the many tribes of the Sioux Nation: Hunkpapá; Brulé; Ogallalla; Minneconjou; Sans Arc; Yanktonnais; Santee; Blackfeet—all were there. The Cheyenne and Arapahoe, allied nations, sent active aid in numerous array. How many were with him, no one

knew; nor, for reasons of their own, did the Indian agents wish to have it known.

In November, 1875, the hostile attitude of Sitting Bull and his followers moved the Commissioner of Indian Affairs to recommend that force be used to compel these bands "to cease marauding and settle down, as the other Sioux have done," and the Indian Inspector called for the use of troops, "this winter, the sooner the better." In December, 1875, the Interior Department notified the hostiles that if they failed to come in by January 31, 1876, the military would be sent against them; and on February 1, the appointed time having arrived without response, the whole situation was turned over to be dealt with by the War Department. General Sheridan, then commanding the Division of the Missouri with headquarters at Chicago, was instructed to reduce the hostiles to subjection.

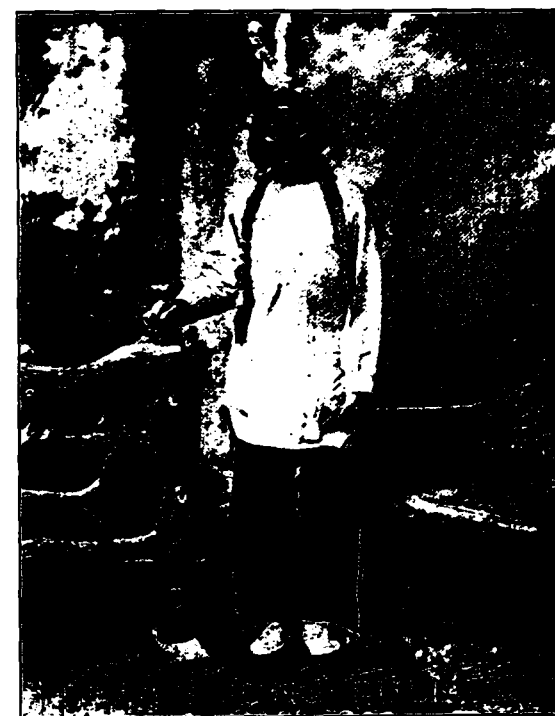


Photo by Barry

Sitting Bull, the Hunkpapá Sioux Medicine Man,
the Leader of the Hostile Sioux in 1876

During February and March, 1876, a part of General Crook's column under Colonel J. J. Reynolds was sent into the Powder River country and encountered the Indians under Crazy Horse, but this expedition was without satisfactory result; and Sheridan thereupon organized a campaign from three directions: south, west, and east, to be under the command of Generals Crook, Gibbon, and Custer.

GENERAL CUSTER

Major General George A. Custer, to whom command of the eastern column had been intrusted, was one of the most brilliant military figures of his time. Graduating from the Military Academy at West Point with the class of June, 1861, he began his career as an officer of the army at the disastrous battle of Bull Run: but by sheer merit and the force of an extraordinary personality he had steadily risen in his chosen profession until he became one of the recognized leaders among the cavalry commanders of the Civil War. His elevation to high rank had been unprecedented; and when made a major general of volunteers in command of a division of cavalry, he was the youngest man who had ever held that rank in the American Army since the Revolutionary War, when the youthful Marquis de la Fayette, representative of the King of France, received similar recognition at the hands of the Continental Congress.

Before the eastern column got under way, however, Custer gave offense to General Grant, then President of the United States, by becoming involved in the impeachment proceedings pending against Secretary of War Belknap, who had resigned under fire. By the President's order Custer was summarily removed from command; and General Alfred H. Terry, the Department commander, was ordered by Sheridan to go in his stead. To his great humiliation, Custer was forbidden to accompany the expedition in any capacity whatever.

THE SEVENTH CAVALRY

The Seventh Cavalry, which formed the important part of the eastern column, was a comparatively new regiment, having been organized after the close of the Civil War. Its commanding officer, Sturgis, was at this time on detached service, as were also the two senior majors of the regiment. General Custer, normally second in command, was thus the senior officer on duty with the organization; and next under him was Marcus A. Reno, the junior major.

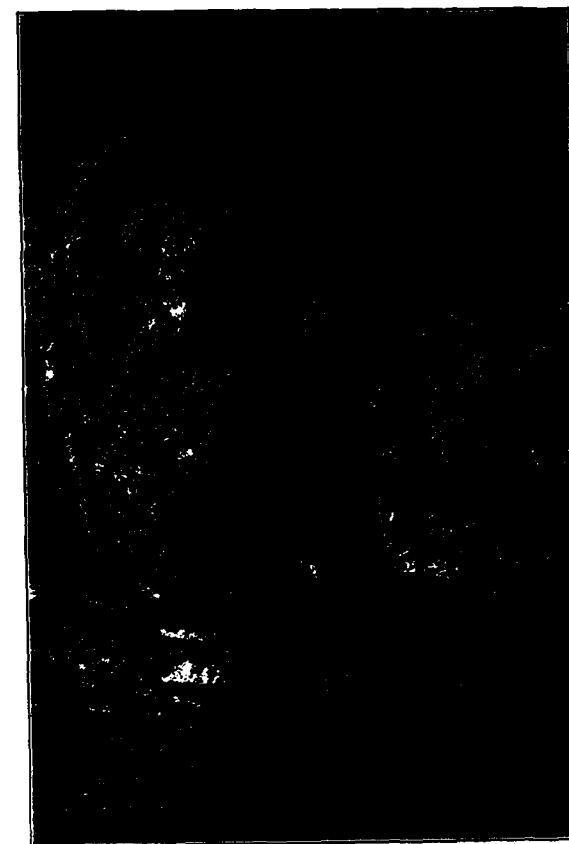
Among the troop commanders were men who had made brilliant records as leaders of cavalry during the Civil War, and several who had held command of regiments and even of brigades. There existed, unfortunately, much jealousy in the regiment, which had become a house divided against itself, separated into Custer and anti-Custer factions. Chief among the latter was Captain Frederick W. Benteen, commander of H Troop; and second only to him was Major Reno.

Upon being removed from command of the expedition, Custer had made frantic efforts for reinstatement; and through the kindly intercession of General Terry, the President at the last moment lifted the ban. Custer was allowed to go at the head of his regiment, but Terry remained in command of the expedition.

That Custer chafed under such restraint cannot be doubted, nor is it much to be wondered at. His was a bold, free, impulsive character, in whom dash and audacity were as second nature, and to whom subordination to another's will was onerous. His rise to military eminence had been both rapid and extraordinary: his commands had been large and important; his independence rarely fettered. He doubtless felt that the President's action had been as arbitrary as it was humiliating: he took the field smarting under a sense of injustice; and that his state

of mind in some degree affected the manner in which he conducted his campaign, cannot be doubted.

The eastern column, under the command of General Terry, marched from Fort Abraham Lincoln, near Bismarck, North Dakota, May 17, 1876, and reached a point some twenty-five miles above the mouth of the Powder River, on the Yellowstone, June 10. From this point Terry dispatched Major Reno, with six



A Civil War Portrait of Captain F. W. Benteen

troops of the Seventh, to scout the valleys of the Powder and Tongue rivers in search of the hostiles. Though not contemplated by his orders, Reno swung west as far as the Rosebud, and there discovered a fresh trail leading up that stream. This he followed for a short distance, and then, retracing his steps, cut across the country to the command near the mouth of the Rosebud, its point of confluence with the Yellowstone. Here General Terry, on June 21, after receiving Reno's report, held a conference on board the supply steamer *Far West*, and laid out the plan of his intended operations to Gibbon and Custer, his two subordinates. (Note 1.)

PLAN OF CAMPAIGN

In brief, the plan was that Gibbon, whose column of about four hundred men was composed largely of infantry, should proceed south along the banks of the Big Horn River, some fifty miles to the west, while Custer, with the entire Seventh Cavalry, would ride south, up the Rosebud, until he reached the trail which Reno had discovered on the scouting trip a few days before. He was then to ascertain in which direction the trail led; and if, as General Terry surmised, it led to the valley of the Little Big Horn, Custer was to follow the trail no further, but, sending scouts over it, he was to proceed south until he reached the headwaters of the Tongue, and there swing west and north, timing his marches to conform to the estimated progress of Gibbon's column, so that the two might reach the vicinity of the Little Big Horn valley at about the same time on the twenty-sixth, and so be in position to cooperate with each other in any fighting that might occur. And to Custer was detailed one of the best of Terry's scouts, George Herendeen, who was to be used as a courier to inform Terry, who had decided to march with Gibbon's column, of the movements of the Seventh, and its information of the enemy.

Unhappily, while there is no doubt as to his general scheme of operation, Terry's written instructions to Custer (Note 2) were not of a positive character; and Custer, for what cause and with what motive or reason no one can ever certainly know, did not carry through his commander's plan for cooperative action but, reaching the trail, at once followed it to the hostile camp, which he struck during the afternoon of June 25, in the valley of the Little Big Horn, about twenty miles from the mouth of that tortuous stream.

For nearly fifty years there has raged fierce and bitter controversy as to whether Custer wilfully disregarded Terry's instructions; and a strong case may be made out on either side the question. Since, however, it is not the purpose of his narrative to enter the field of controversy, but only to tell the story of the Seventh's crushing defeat at the hands of the Sioux, it is enough to state the fact that such dispute exists, and will, very likely, continue to exist so long as any of the men of the Old West survive.

THE START

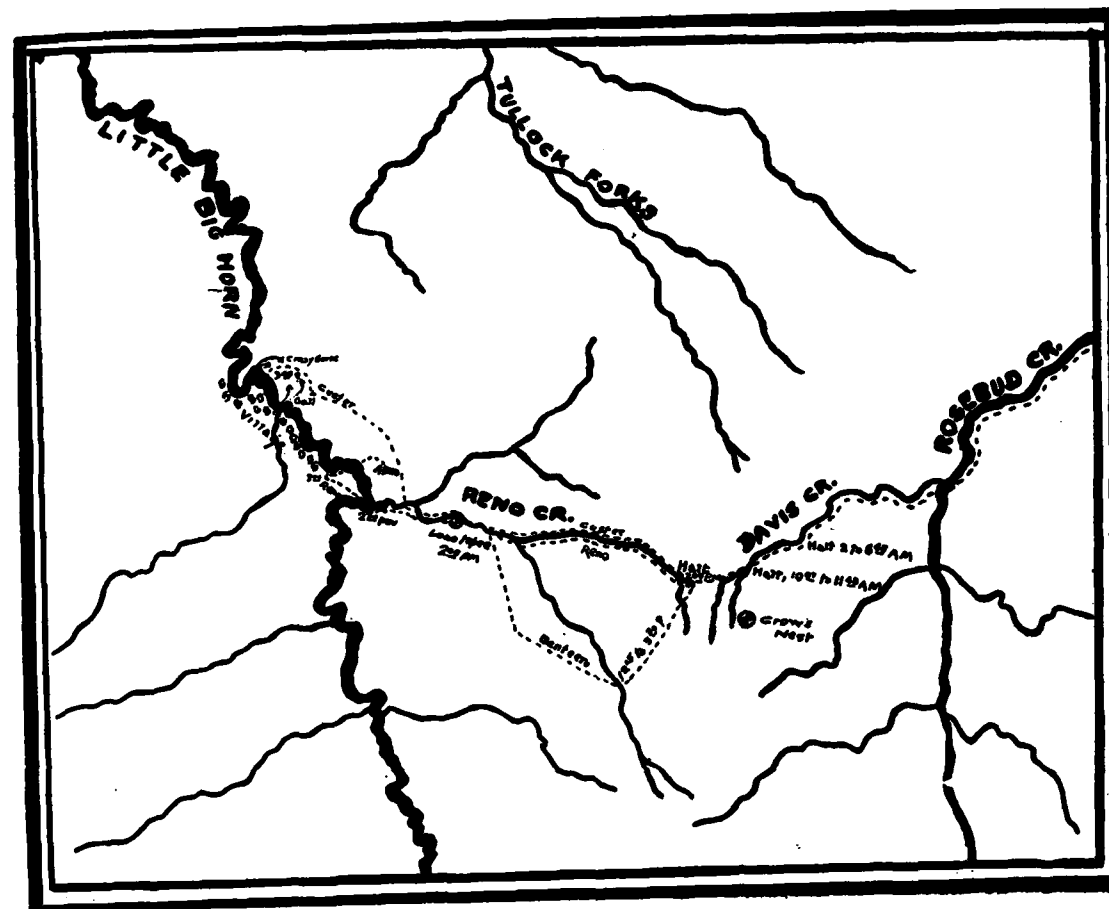
Custer left the mouth of the Rosebud at noon, June 22, 1876, with twelve troops (or companies, as they were then called) of the Seventh Cavalry—the entire regiment, about six hundred strong, together with some forty Arikara (Ree) and Crow scouts, hereditary enemies of the Sioux Nation.

On the evening of June 24, the regiment bivouacked near where the station of Busby is now located, where it waited for intelligence from the friendly Indian scouts who had been sent on ahead.

Thus far, Custer's march from the mouth of the Rosebud had been conducted with the utmost precaution, and everything possible had been done to conceal the presence of the troops. All regimental divisions into wings and battalions had been abolished, the troop commanders reporting to Custer in person. Bugle signals were forbidden, and the column marched so as to raise as little

dust as possible, so that no lurking hostile warrior might detect the tell-tale signs of marching troops.

No one believed, when the Seventh left the mouth of the Rosebud on the twenty-second, no one had any reason to believe, that Sitting Bull's followers numbered in excess of a thousand to fifteen hundred warriors: indeed, estimates



Map Compiled by the Author, Showing the Movements of the Several Detachments of the Seventh Cavalry, June 25, 1876, with Approximate Times and Distances

usually stopped far short of the smaller number; and there is abundant proof that Terry, as well as Gibbon and Custer, considered either column of the little army amply able to meet and defeat them. Terry's plan of combined operations was, however, directed rather to inclosing and capturing the Indians than to merely meeting and beating them in combat.

It was common belief that the Sioux would, upon the appearance of the

troops, hasten to strike their camp and escape. Nobody entertained the thought that they would stand and fight a pitched battle. That was not the Indian way; nor had the troops heretofore found it possible to operate against them successfully otherwise than by surprise attacks. An hour's warning, and they were gone. Except in those rare instances when they had fallen upon some small, detached, and unfortunate band of soldiers, as in the Fetterman disaster of 1866, and by sheer force of numbers had annihilated it, the troops had found them more willing to run than to fight.

Custer had been unusually effective as an Indian fighter for several years. The greater part of his service since the close of the Civil War had been against Indians; he was an adept in bringing off surprise attacks that crushed and paralyzed resistance. Both his reputation and his experience as an Indian campaigner were second to none; and the Seventh Cavalry, while its ranks were now full of recruits (Note 3), was held one of the best regiments in the service. It was but natural, then, that when the regiment marched proudly away from the mouth of the Rosebud on its mission, Terry could and did feel confident that if he could but catch the recalcitrant braves of Sitting Bull between Custer and Gibbon, he would certainly crush and capture them; and if, perchance, Custer found them elsewhere than was expected, the Seventh Cavalry, under such a leader, would be more than equal to any emergency.

TRAIL OF THE SIOUX

Shortly after 9 p. m. of the twenty-fourth, the scouts reported to Custer that the trail of the Sioux led across the divide and into the valley of the Little Big Horn. He at once sent for his officers and, assembling them in the darkness, told them what the scouts had found. He announced that the march of the regiment would be taken up at once, as he wished to get as nearly as possible to the divide before daybreak, when he would conceal the command during the day, locate definitely the Indian camp, and make his plans to attack it at dawn the day following, the twenty-sixth.

In the intense darkness, progress was slow, and the command laboriously picked its way along, until at 2 a. m., June 25, having proceeded about ten miles toward the divide, the regiment again halted, to obtain further news from the scouts, who, under Lieutenant Varnum, had gone ahead to a high point on the divide known to the scouts as the Crow's Nest, from which one could see, stretched out before him as in panorama, the valley of the Little Big Horn.

Varnum and his Indians reached the Crow's Nest before dawn; and as the first rays of summer illuminated the valley, the sharp eyes of the Indians detected, some fifteen miles away, immense herds of ponies that told them that the sleeping village of Sitting Bull was close at hand. Varnum at once sent word to Custer that the village had been located.

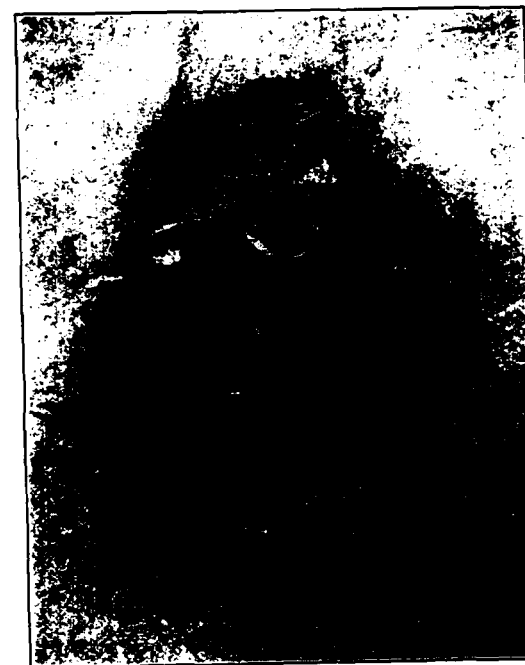
Custer received the message soon after daylight and ordered the regiment to move at eight o'clock. Shortly after that hour the command moved forward, slowly and cautiously, Custer himself hastening ahead to the Crow's Nest that he might confirm the report thus sent him by Varnum.

The regiment, having advanced within a short distance of the divide, again

halted, and here Custer, returning from the lookout, once more called his officers together. He told them that the Indian scouts said the village was ahead, in the valley of the Little Big Horn; that he had not been able to see it himself, and doubted that it was there; but that "Mitch" Bouyer, the half-breed chief of scouts, had told him that he could see it plainly, some fifteen miles down the valley. (Note 4.)

THE COLUMN DISCOVERED

At this point two circumstances combined to compel Custer to abandon his expressed intention to lie in concealment during the day. Both incidents convinced him that the Sioux had discovered the presence of the command and that his only hope of success now lay in instant pursuit and immediate attack when he should come upon them.



Lieutenant Charles A. Varnum, 7th Cavalry, in Command of the "Ree" and Crow Scouts at the Little Big Horn. He is Now a Colonel, Retired

During the night march one of the packs had become loosened, and a box of hard bread and a bag had dropped in the darkness somewhere along the trail. Sergeant Curtis of Yates's troop had been sent back, as soon as the loss was discovered, to pick up the missing articles before some watchful Sioux should find them. Going back some miles, he had indeed found the lost articles; but a small party of Sioux were before him, one of whom, when Curtis came upon

them, was sitting upon the box and examining the contents of the bag. The Indians, upon sighting the sergeant, at once rode toward the valley. (Note 5.)

While Custer was on his way to the Crow's Nest, two or more Sioux scouts were discovered watching the command. They too had left in the direction of the village: and fresh pony tracks, found in a near-by ravine, indicated that a considerable party of warriors had been in close observation.



Brininstool Collection

"Mitch" Bouyer, a Half Breed Crow, and Custer's Chief of Indian Scouts

Further attempt at concealment was obviously useless. It was now near noon of the twenty-fifth, and Custer, all chance of surprise gone, and believing that the instant the Sioux scouts reached their village Sitting Bull and all his band would be on the move, scattering in all directions, led the regiment across the divide, to strike as soon as he could reach his wary enemy. Here, at 12:07 P. M., he halted, divided the regiment into battalions, and prepared for action.

II

LOOKING back upon what Custer did that day in June, 1876, in the light of all we know now, it has seemed to many that he was reckless and foolhardy in the dispositions he made of his regiment. But it is neither just nor fair to judge his actions thus. The wisdom or unwisdom of his tactics must be determined, not in the light of what we know now, but of what he knew then, of the situation which confronted him.

CUSTER'S LACK OF INFORMATION

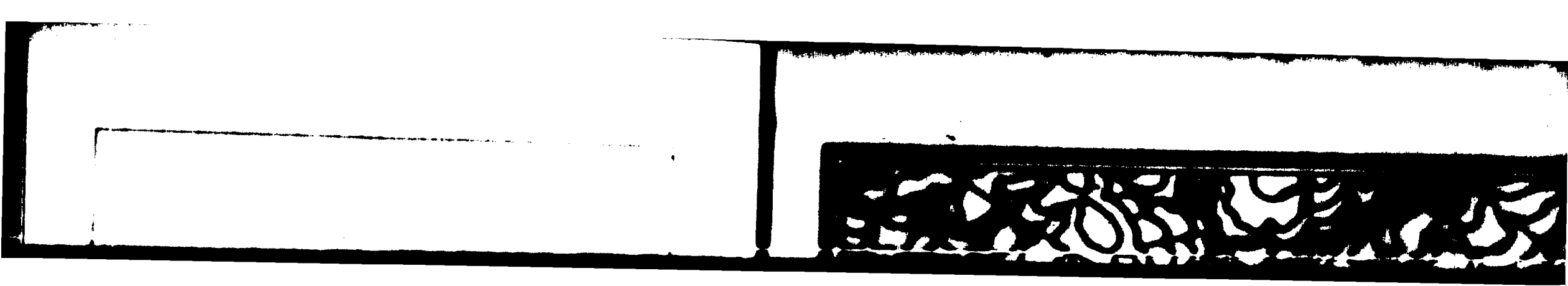
In 1876 Montana was a wild, unsettled, and all but unexplored territory, in which there existed little or no means of communication. Telegraph lines were few and far between, and in the Rosebud country there were none. The telephone was as yet a thing unknown, and the only means available for the transmission of news was the mounted courier.

Custer did not know, nor did Terry and Gibbon know, that but the week before, at the very time when Reno was turning back to the north from his scout on the Rosebud, Crook was being met and checked by these same Sioux; that, led by Crazy Horse, and other famous war chiefs, the followers of Sitting Bull had held the Gray Fox, as Crook was called, and all but whipped him, not far from the place where Custer and his horsemen crossed the divide. They did not know that, flushed with success, Sitting Bull and his braves had been reinforced by hordes of young men from the reservations; that his camp held, not the thousand or fifteen hundred warriors that Terry and Gibbon and Custer expected to find and crush, but at least three times the larger number of fighting men. They did not know that the Indian agents had concealed the truth, if indeed they knew it, that a great part of the fighting strength of the Sioux Nation was with Sitting Bull; nor did they know that for many months the Indians had been acquiring from white traders repeating rifles of the latest pattern, far superior to the ancient single shot Springfield carbines carried by the troops; that they were possessed of ammunition in plenty, and were both prepared and determined to stand and fight.

Some inkling of these facts had indeed come to Sheridan after the expedition had taken the field, information that Sitting Bull's village contained some eighteen hundred lodges, which meant that there were with him from four to five thousand warriors; but there was no way to reach Terry except by courier. This Sheridan tried, but the fight was over long before the warning could arrive. (Note 6.)

DIVISION OF THE REGIMENT

When the regiment halted at 12:07 P. M., Custer, with his adjutant, Cooke, one of the most gallant soldiers of fortune that ever fought under the Stars and Stripes, withdrew a short distance from the command and with pencil and notebook, divided the regiment into battalions, or, as we would call them now, squadrons. One battalion he assigned to Major Reno, the only field officer, save himself, present with the regiment. This battalion consisted of Companies A, G, and M, under the commands of Captain Moylan, Lieutenant McIntosh, and



them, was sitting upon the box and examining the contents of the bag. The Indians, upon sighting the sergeant, at once rode toward the valley. (Note 5.)

While Custer was on his way to the Crow's Nest, two or more Sioux scouts were discovered watching the command. They too had left in the direction of the village: and fresh pony tracks, found in a near-by ravine, indicated that a considerable party of warriors had been in close observation.



Brininstool Collection

"Mitch" Bouyer, a Half Breed Crow, and Custer's Chief of Indian Scouts

Further attempt at concealment was obviously useless. It was now near noon of the twenty-fifth, and Custer, all chance of surprise gone, and believing that the instant the Sioux scouts reached their village Sitting Bull and all his band would be on the move, scattering in all directions, led the regiment across the divide, to strike as soon as he could reach his wary enemy. Here, at 12:07 P. M., he halted, divided the regiment into battalions, and prepared for action.

II

LOOKING back upon what Custer did that day in June, 1876, in the light of all we know now, it has seemed to many that he was reckless and foolhardy in the dispositions he made of his regiment. But it is neither just nor fair to judge his actions thus. The wisdom or unwisdom of his tactics must be determined, not in the light of what we know now, but of what he knew then, of the situation which confronted him.

CUSTER'S LACK OF INFORMATION

In 1876 Montana was a wild, unsettled, and all but unexplored territory, in which there existed little or no means of communication. Telegraph lines were few and far between, and in the Rosebud country there were none. The telephone was as yet a thing unknown, and the only means available for the transmission of news was the mounted courier.

Custer did not know, nor did Terry and Gibbon know, that but the week before, at the very time when Reno was turning back to the north from his scout on the Rosebud, Crook was being met and checked by these same Sioux; that, led by Crazy Horse, and other famous war chiefs, the followers of Sitting Bull had held the Gray Fox, as Crook was called, and all but whipped him, not far from the place where Custer and his horsemen crossed the divide. They did not know that, flushed with success, Sitting Bull and his braves had been reinforced by hordes of young men from the reservations; that his camp held, not the thousand or fifteen hundred warriors that Terry and Gibbon and Custer expected to find and crush, but at least three times the larger number of fighting men. They did not know that the Indian agents had concealed the truth, if indeed they knew it, that a great part of the fighting strength of the Sioux Nation was with Sitting Bull; nor did they know that for many months the Indians had been acquiring from white traders repeating rifles of the latest pattern, far superior to the ancient single shot Springfield carbines carried by the troops; that they were possessed of ammunition in plenty, and were both prepared and determined to stand and fight.

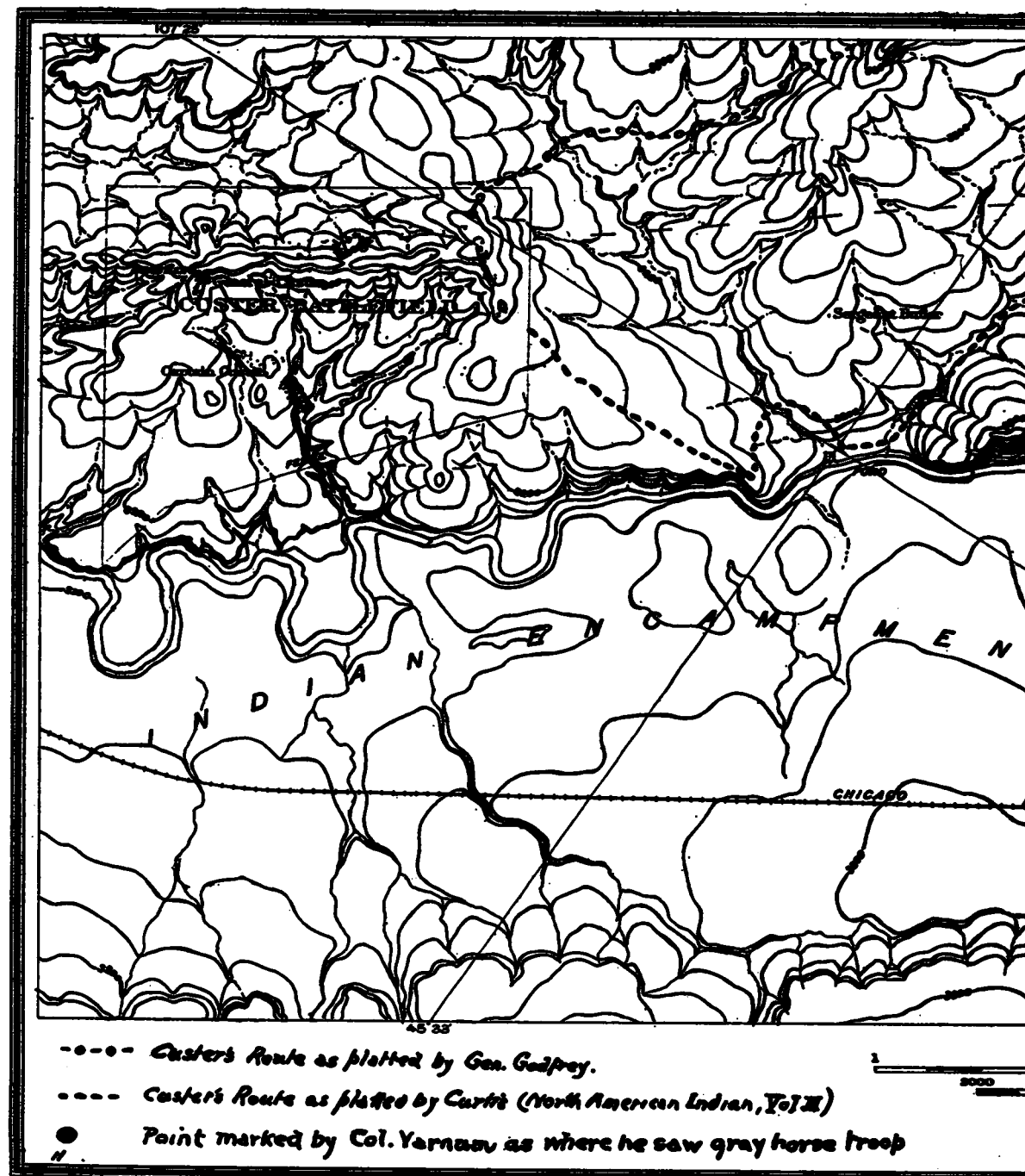
Some inkling of these facts had indeed come to Sheridan after the expedition had taken the field, information that Sitting Bull's village contained some eighteen hundred lodges, which meant that there were with him from four to five thousand warriors; but there was no way to reach Terry except by courier. This Sheridan tried, but the fight was over long before the warning could arrive. (Note 6.)

DIVISION OF THE REGIMENT

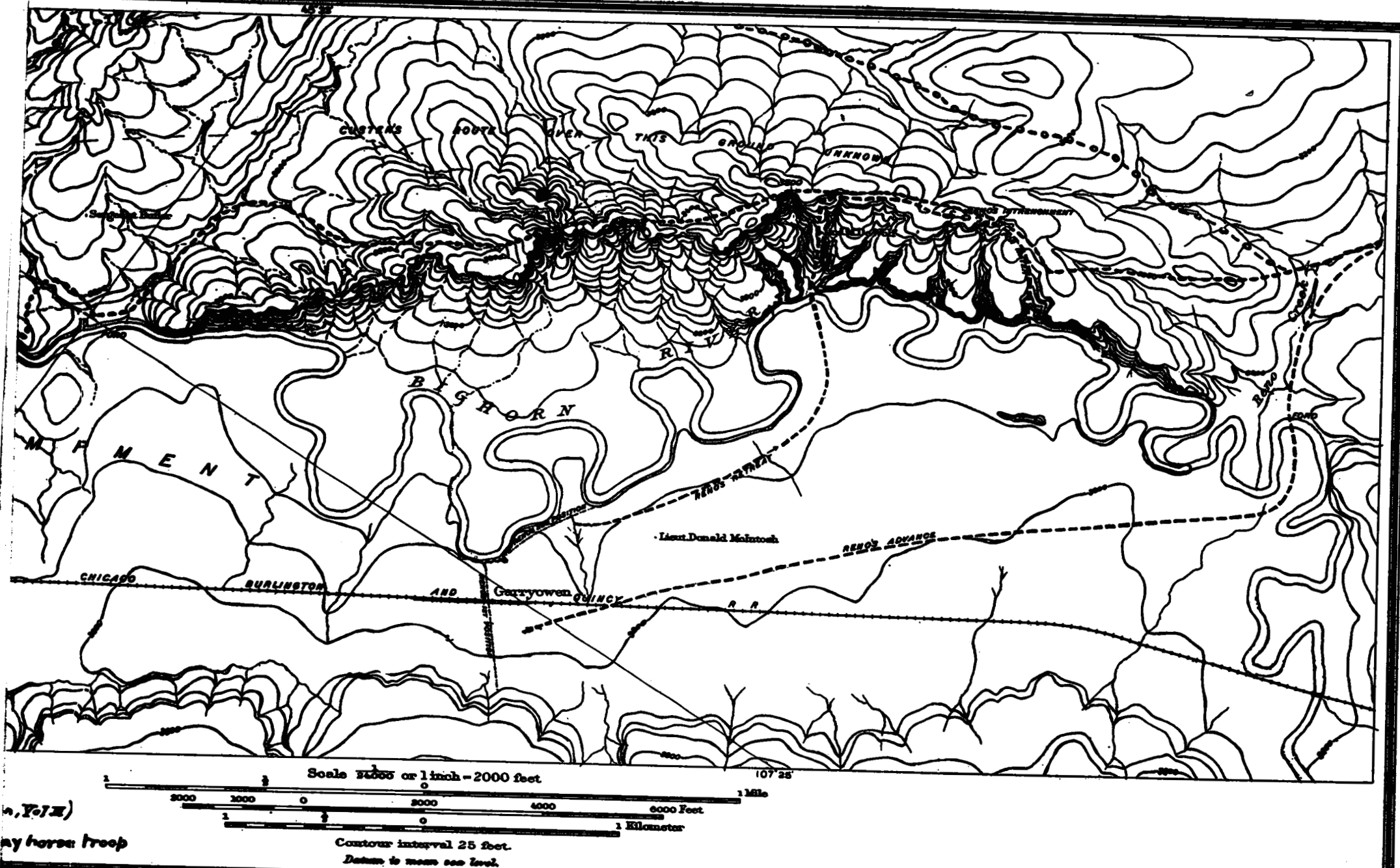
When the regiment halted at 12:07 P. M., Custer, with his adjutant, Cooke, one of the most gallant soldiers of fortune that ever fought under the Stars and Stripes, withdrew a short distance from the command and with pencil and notebook, divided the regiment into battalions, or, as we would call them now, squadrons. One battalion he assigned to Major Reno, the only field officer, save himself, present with the regiment. This battalion consisted of Companies A, G, and M, under the commands of Captain Moylan, Lieutenant McIntosh, and



Crazy Horse, the Ogallalla Sioux Chief Who First Attacked Custer



Contour map of the battl



Contour map of the battlefield. (U. S. Geological Survey) Custer's route as supposed by Curtis and Godfrey.

Captain French, respectively. The second he gave to the senior captain, Frederick W. Benteen. This battalion comprised companies H, K, and D, which were commanded by Benteen, Lieutenant Godfrey, and Captain Weir. It is doubtful whether further battalion assignment was made, though it has been supposed that three companies were given to Captain Yates and two to Captain Keogh. The five companies which may have been so divided were C, E, F, I, and L. Of these, the first was commanded by General Custer's own brother, Captain Tom Custer; E, by Lieutenant Algernon Smith; F, by Captain Yates; I, by Captain Miles Keogh, and L, by Lieutenant Calhoun, Custer's brother-in-law. Whether battalion assignment of these five companies was in fact made is immaterial, since Custer retained them all under his personal command. B Company under Captain McDougall was assigned to the convoy of the pack train, to which duty each of the other companies contributed one non-commissioned officer and six privates. Each of the latter was assigned to lead two pack-mules.

BENTEEN DETACHED

At about 12:15 P. M., the battalion assignments having been completed, and all being ready for advance, Custer ordered Benteen with his battalion, approximately one hundred and twenty-five men in all, to proceed to the left, at an angle of about forty-five degrees from the route of the regiment, to scout the bluffs that loomed several miles distant; "to pitch into anything he might find," and report to Custer. Benteen at once took up his march, and within ten minutes, such was the broken nature of the terrain, was lost from view. Twice during the first few minutes of his march Custer sent him amendatory orders which directed him, in case he found nothing, to go on in the same direction to the valley beyond, and, if he still found nothing, to the next valley.

Benteen having departed, the rest of the regiment proceeded on its way, Reno with his battalion on the left bank of a small tributary of the Little Big Horn, and Custer with his five companies on the right bank. This tributary formed the middle branch of what is now known as Reno Creek.

It is well to keep in mind that when Benteen was sent off to the left the entire command was nearly fifteen miles distant from where the Indian village, some two hours later, was found. This fact lends some color to the statements of Reno and Benteen, and of the scout Herendeen, afterward made and always persisted in, that Custer, when he crossed the divide and split up his regiment, was skeptical as to the location of an Indian village anywhere in that vicinity. (Note 4.)

Custer and Reno, following the opposite banks of the tributary, proceeded cautiously for about nine miles. Their lines of march were almost parallel; sometimes close together, sometimes as much as three hundred yards apart. At 2 P. M. Custer motioned with his hat for Reno to cross to the right bank, and the two columns then moved side by side, so close that the men freely conversed from one to the other.

Shortly after two o'clock a lone tepee was sighted. Custer immediately bore down upon it at a stiff trot. It proved to be the remnant of a freshly

abandoned Indian village, all the tepees of which had been removed except this one, which was found to contain the dead body of a warrior. This "dead warrior tepee" was located on the south bank of the middle branch of the tributary now known as Reno Creek, and about three miles from its confluence with the Little Big Horn.

THE INDIANS SIGHTED

It was now about 2:15 P. M. As the command reached the tepee, which had been set afire by the Indian scouts who preceded the troops, a heavy dust cloud was seen, apparently some five miles distant, across the river, and down the Little Big Horn valley. At the same moment, Fred Girard, a civilian interpreter, rode to the top of a small knoll, a short distance away, from which he saw a party of some forty Sioux between the troops and the river. They appeared to be in flight downstream.



Brininstool Collection

Fred Girard, the Interpreter Who Pointed Out the Fleeing Indians to Custer

Girard turned in his saddle and shouted to Custer, "Here are your Indians—running like devils." Instantly Custer ordered the Indian scouts ahead in pursuit, but they refused to go. To shame them he demanded that they give up their ponies and rifles, and turning to his adjutant, he gave the order that precipitated the action and proved fatal to the regiment.

Reno, at the head of his battalion, was just coming up. To him rode Cooke and said, "General Custer directs that you take as fast a gait as you deem prudent, and charge afterward, and you will be supported by the whole outfit."

When this order was given, Benteen with his battalion was probably eight to ten miles away to the left and rear. His position could at best be only approximated. It is certain, however, that he was not within cooperating distance, nor had his orders contemplated cooperation with any other part of the regiment. When he was sent away, no village had been definitely located; no force of Indians had been seen; and there neither was nor could have been at that time any definite plan, either of approach or of attack, in Custer's mind. It is important to remember this, for many if not most of those who have written of the battle of the Little Big Horn have assumed that Custer had made a definite plan of battle, in which Benteen's part was to attack the left flank of the village, Reno the front, while Custer himself should come upon it from right and rear. But such assumptions are quite erroneous: there was no such plan, nor any plan, when Benteen was detached and sent away to explore the bluffs and valleys to the left. (Note 7.) Whatever scheme of attack was resolved upon was and must have been determined, if at all, more than two hours later and when Custer was some ten to twelve miles closer to the village: Benteen, at least, could have known nothing of it.

The attack order to Reno cannot be certainly reproduced. It was an oral order; and while it was heard by many who afterward tried to repeat it, there is disagreement in their accounts. Some say that the order directed Reno "to charge the Indians wherever you find them"; others, "to charge the village," or "charge afterward"; some, "to make for the dust." All accounts, however, agree as to the last phrase of the order, that Reno would be "supported by the whole outfit."

When the attack order was given, the village was not visible. Aside from the party of hostiles sighted by Girard as they fled down the river, no Indians were in sight. The one indication of any considerable force was the cloud of dust in the distance. Nothing had as yet developed to warn Custer that not a thousand, not fifteen hundred, but far nearer four thousand of the fiercest, bravest, most daring of savage warriors awaited him in the valley of the Little Big Horn: awaited him, elated by recent victory over Crook; armed with new repeating rifles; literally loaded down with ammunition.

That little party of fleeing Indians, that cloud of dust in the valley, meant but one thing to Custer. The Sioux were running; and unquestionably in that belief he ordered Reno forward at rapid gait, to strike the enemy as hard and as quickly as he might. Nor is there any indication, much less any evidence, that Custer had then any other intention than to follow in Reno's tracks; to cross the river after him; to support his charge from the rear, and to hurl his own five companies, a veritable thunderbolt, upon a startled, disorganized, and routed enemy.

RENO'S ADVANCE

Reno had three miles to go to the river. He made those three miles at a sharp trot, and crossed the river at about 2:30 P. M. Custer followed at a slower gait, being some three quarters of a mile behind when Reno's advance reached the stream. Cooke, the adjutant of the regiment, and Keogh, commander of I

Company, rode to the river with Reno's column. There they turned back, to go to their deaths with Custer. (Note 8.)

All but five of the Indian scouts had gone with Reno. As they reached the stream, they excitedly pointed out to Girard, the interpreter who had first discovered the fleeing hostile party, that the Sioux had sighted Reno and were streaming up the valley to meet him. Girard, knowing that Custer believed the



White-Man-Runs-Him, One of the Crow Scouts Who Went With Custer and Turned Back in Time

enemy in flight, galloped back on the trail, overtook Cooke, the adjutant, and told him that the Sioux were not running but were coming up the valley in heavy force. Cooke answered that he would at once report the fact to Custer, who up to

that time was still following Reno. Whether Cooke did so report, of course no man can say; but it must be assumed that he did, and within a very few minutes after 2:30 P. M.

Reno crossed the stream. In the fringe of woods upon the farther side he halted and reformed his command. Then, sending an orderly to Custer with the message that he had the enemy in force in his front, he trotted down the valley in line of battle, the Indian scouts under Varnum and Hare on his left front, A and M Companies in line, with G in reserve in the rear.

In this formation Reno's battalion swept toward the village, the first few tepees of which could now be seen through the shifting clouds of dust, some two miles down the river. Now G Company was called up on the line, and taking the gallop, the battalion rapidly neared its goal, Reno riding some twenty yards to front and center.

III

AS the battalion approached the village, out of the swirling clouds of dust stirred up by the Sioux to conceal their movements—an interesting forerunner of the smoke screen made famous during the World War—mounted Indians, in what numbers no one could tell, could be seen dashing furiously about, now advancing, now circling, now receding, but all the time drawing the cavalry closer to the village. A few shots rang out to the left and front; the horses of the troopers, unused to so long a dash, were becoming excited and unruly, some of them getting entirely out of control. Suddenly the dust cleared, and Reno saw, in his front and to his left, mounted warriors by hundreds in rapid motion. Again shots to the left, and the Ree scouts scattered and vanished. Reno halted; and as he did so, a large body of Indians swarmed from a ravine five hundred yards away, menacing his left flank. Two of his men, their horses frantic with excitement, were carried into the Indian lines.

RENO'S SITUATION

A heavily timbered bend of the river jutted into the bed of the valley to his right; beyond it flowed the rippling Little Big Horn River. The nearest tepees of the village were still a quarter of a mile away. Hundreds of yelling, shooting Sioux were in his front; and other hundreds were riding around his left flank, which, no longer held by the Rees, was in the air. He looked to the rear and looked again for the promised support. It was not there. Custer and his five companies had not followed him; and with every second, the strength of the Sioux increased. Already more warriors were opposed to his handful of men, only 112 all told, than had been supposed the total of Sitting Bull's forces.

What to do, should he continue his advance, charge forward into the village and engulf his whole command in this swirling mass of savages, who, far from showing any signs of running, were rapidly and confidently attacking front and flank? Or should he take position and wait for supports? He must decide, and that instantly; and he did.

DISMOUNTED FIGHT

Reno has been bitterly criticized for what he did. He has been accused of cowardice; of disloyalty and wilful abandonment of his commander because he chose the latter course. Whether these accusations are justified, whether he, in the circumstances, did only what any sane leader would have done, must be left to the impartial verdict of history. He was not ordered to sacrifice his command, nor to ride headlong into an obvious trap, to inevitable annihilation. He halted, dismounted his men, and fought on foot, protecting his horses from the fire of the Indians by placing them in the timber. For a quarter of an hour, perhaps longer, his men, advancing until within three

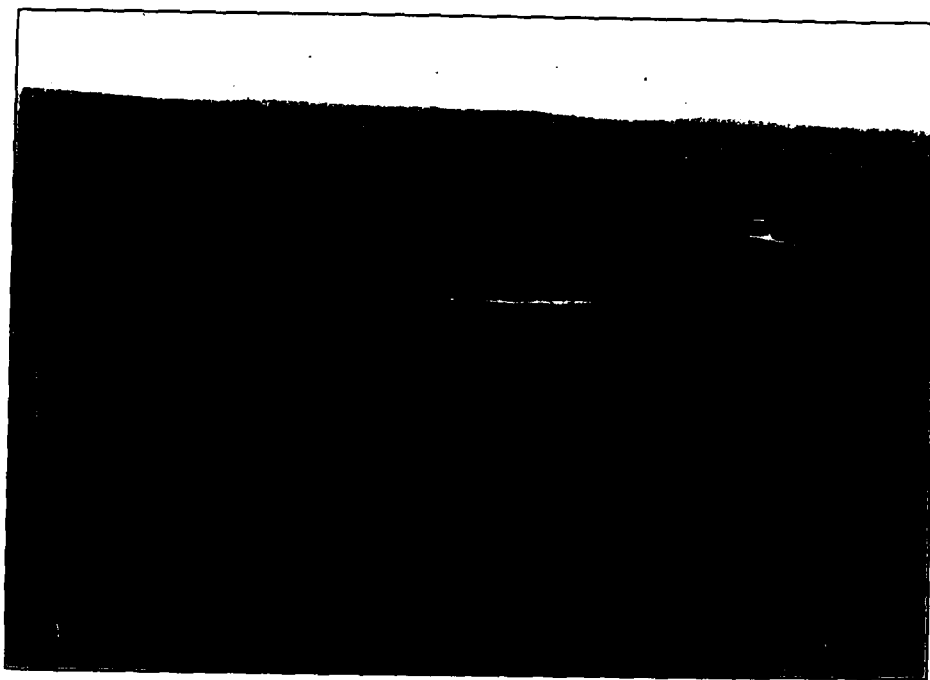


Photo by Brininstool

The Valley of the Little Big Horn. The Sioux Village Was Located for Several Miles Along the Farther Bank of the Stream. This View Taken from Reno Hill

hundred yards of the southernmost tepees, stood off the Sioux, deployed in a thin blue line which stretched less than half way across the valley, outnumbered ten to one, a hundred against a thousand. But the Indians were massing on his left and threatening his rear; they had begun to fire across the river from the east bank. Fearing, as he had every reason to fear, that, pursuing their usual tactics, the Sioux would now attempt to stampede his horses, which would be fatal to his command, he called G Company from its position on the line and placed it in the timber, A and M Companies extending to fill the gap

by increasing their intervals. But now the line was too thin to hold the Sioux, and his unprotected left flank, upon which the pressure was over-great, was doubled back upon itself. His left was now completely turned, the two miles of valley between him and his crossing filled with Indians; the situation had become desperate. Twice before he halted he had sent messages to Custer to tell him that the Sioux were there in force; but no word had come from his chief since his order to attack was given. Once, indeed, just after the skirmish line was formed, Lieutenant Wallace of G Company had tried to persuade a half-breed scout named Jackson to go to Custer with a call for help; but Jackson, waving his arm to the rear in the manner of Indians, refused. "No man could get through alive," he said. And no man could have done so then.

Reno now ordered his battalion to change front, and at the double the troops pivoted, to line the edge of the timber, a shift that put the timber and the river to the rear and the village on their right flank. Here they fought for half an hour or more; but they were too few to cover the position without getting beyond supporting distance of each other, and the Sioux were filtering through the woods to right and rear and were firing upon them from all sides. (Note 9.)

RENO'S WITHDRAWAL

Up to this time Reno had lost but one man, Sergeant Hynes of A Company, who was shot through the breast as the skirmish line made its change of front; but now bullets were flying among the horses, several of which were hit, the command was being surrounded by overwhelming numbers, and still no supports had come. His ammunition was running low, and already the reserve in the saddle bags and pockets had been drawn upon. A quick survey of the situation convinced Reno that he must get out; and more, that if he was to get out, he must do so quickly or remain there forever. He gave the order to get to the horses; but in the confusion many failed to hear or to understand it. A little clearing of about ten acres had been found in the center of the timber, which had evidently been the camping ground of a Sioux medicine man. It has been believed that this clearing was, in fact, the place where the tepees of Sitting Bull himself had stood; and in this clearing Reno formed his troops, the men leading in their mounts and standing to horse.

Reno gave the command, "Mount." As he did so, a large party of Sioux broke through the timber and fired into the troops point blank. At Reno's side fell the Ree scout Bloody Knife, shot through the head, his brains splashing into Reno's face and spattering his clothes. A trooper was mortally hit and with a fearful cry toppled from his saddle. Reno, startled and disconcerted, ordered the men to dismount and to mount again, and whirling his horse, broke through the timber and so out up on the plain, closely followed by the confused troopers. Here they hastily formed an irregular column, and at the gallop, led by Reno, started up the valley toward the ford at which they had crossed in their advance. Seventeen men were left behind in the woods; among them Lieutenant De Rudio, Private O'Neil of G Company, Girard the interpreter, and the half-breed Jackson. (Note 20, paragraph 4.) The famous

scout Charley Reynolds, who had remained behind in the timber when the troops rode out, dashed to overtake them and was met by an Indian bullet which stretched him dead upon the plain. McIntosh, commander of G Company, which was scattered through the woods when the order to leave was given, strove to rally and collect his men, few of whom had heard the order. At the edge of the timber his horse went down, an arrow through its head.



Photo by Barry

"Charley" Reynolds, a Famous Scout. Killed During Reno's Retreat

Back into the woods he darted, where a trooper of G Company gave up his mount to his officer. Again McIntosh left the woods, now far behind the command. The Sioux rode between, and he died.

The column, led by Reno, with pistols drawn, charged into the horde of Indians, which gave way to let the soldiers pass, and instantly closed in. The pressure from the right was too strong, the weight too heavy; and Reno, realizing that he could not cut through to the ford at which he crossed, swerved to the left and so struck the river more than a mile to the north, downstream, from the point of his first crossing.

A ROUT

The head of the column reached the river in fair order, the horses at the run. Few if any Indians had been encountered to the left; but to the right of

the column there were hundreds, who raced along parallel with the troops, pumping their new Winchesters as fast as they could load and fire, ducking behind the shoulders of their agile ponies whenever a trooper raised his pistol. The charge quickly became retreat at the head of the column, rout at the center, panic at the rear. All along the route to the river men and horses dropped. It was a hand-to-hand combat for the rearmost troopers all the way. Lieutenant Varnum, left behind at the start, raced his horse to the front, shouting, "For God's sake, men, don't run; we've got to go back and save the wounded." But he could not stop them.

At the river bank a sheer drop of six feet to the water below checked the foremost horses, many of which refused to jump. The pressure from those behind forced them over the crumbling bank, and down they went, men and

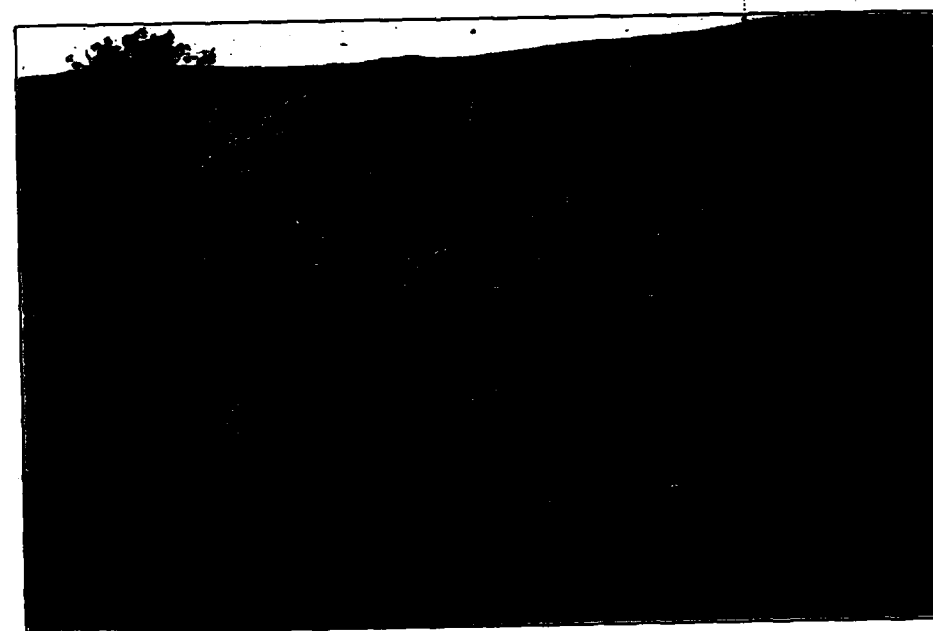


Photo by Brininstool

Scene of Reno's Crossing in Retreat

horses floundering together in the water, at that point four feet deep. It was each man for himself now, and no one thought to stop, to make any attempt to protect the crossing for the others, or to resist the frenzied Sioux, who from the banks above and below, from both sides of the stream, poured a steady fusillade of bullets into the jammed and panic-stricken troops. Twenty-nine of the 112 were killed and many wounded before the crossing was negotiated.

Benny Hodgson, Reno's adjutant, pet and favorite of the regiment, was hit as his horse took the jump. The bullet tore through his thigh and killed

his horse, which sank under him in the river. Struggling to his feet, he seized the stirrup strap of a passing trooper and was dragged through the water to the other side. The trooper tried to raise him to his horse but failed; and Hodgson, unable to use his leg, faced the Indians, pistol in hand. An instant later he was shot down and died, nobly, upon the river bank. De Wolf, the surgeon, crossed in safety and with his orderly, Clair of K Company, coolly started up a ravine to the left. They had gone but a few yards when both were shot down and scalped by painted warriors in plain view of the fleeing troopers.

ON THE BLUFFS

At the place of Reno's crossing in retreat, the right bank rises abruptly to hills that tower above the stream. The panting men and horses struggled up the rise, and there Varnum, having now stopped the flight of the leaders, was reforming them when Reno, hatless, excited, and out of breath, reached the top. As the scattered remnants of his three troops, some wounded, many without mounts, all discomfited and disorganized, were gathered together, they were posted hastily to fend off the expected rush of the Sioux.

Thus ended the first phase of the battle of the Little Big Horn. Reno had crossed the river to the attack about 2:30 P. M. His halt to re-form in the timber on the left bank could not have taken less than ten minutes; and it was not earlier than three o'clock when, after his advance down the valley, his forward movement was checked. His action in the valley lasted the better part of three quarters of an hour, and it was after four o'clock when, routed and disorganized, and almost out of ammunition, his command reached the hills upon the right bank, having lost in killed and wounded and missing, nearly half of the battalion.

Had the Sioux followed him across the river in attack, as he had every reason to apprehend they would do, there can be no question that his command would have been as completely obliterated as was Custer's later in the day. Many of the warriors did, in fact, ford the river above the command, and were advancing up the slopes and ravines to intercept the retreat when the attention of the greater part of the Indian force was for the time diverted to another part of the fatal field.

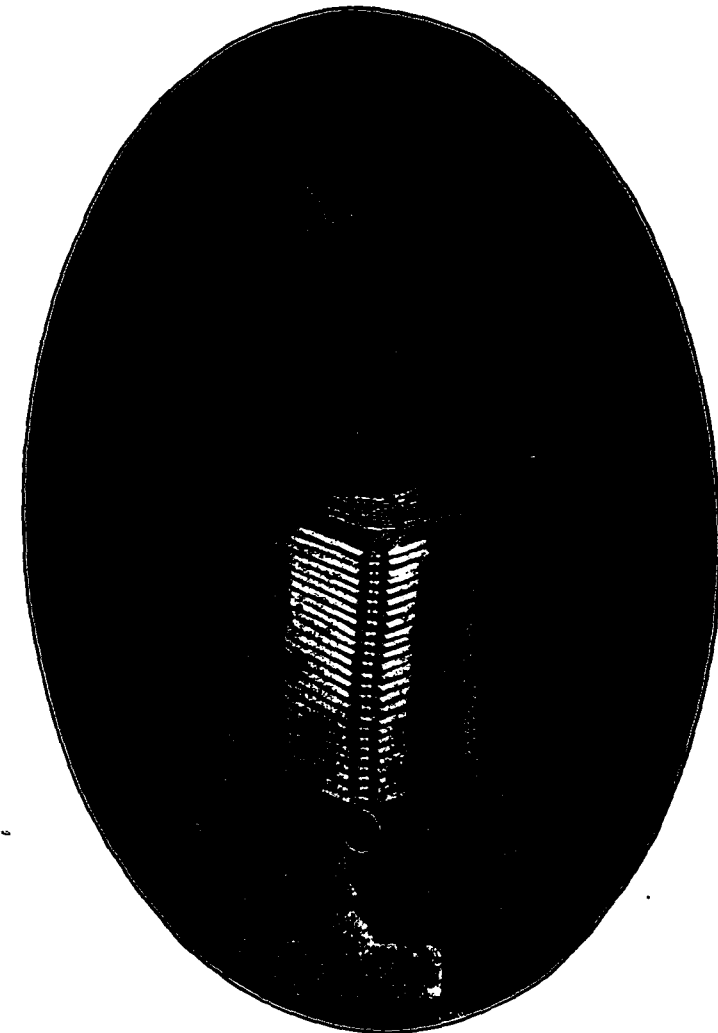
IV

WHERE during all this time was Custer; and where Benteen? The question was in the mind and upon the lips of every man of Reno's stricken battalion, as it crouched apprehensively on that hill, hoping, praying for aid, expecting every instant to find the Sioux again upon it.

Benteen, ordered to scout the bluffs and valleys to the left, had diverged from the route of the regiment soon after the halt at 12:07 P. M., when the division into battalions was made. No one had seen him since, nor knew his whereabouts or doings. Whether he too had fought an action no one knew. Ten minutes after his departure the bad lands had swallowed him, as completely as if he had gone into the bowels of the earth.

BENTEN'S MOVEMENTS

Carrying out Custer's orders, Benteen had taken a fast walk, sending Lieutenant Gibson and a squad of ten in advance of the battalion. With his orderly trumpeter alone, he much of the time rode far to the front, preceding even his own scouts. He reached the bluffs, some four miles distant from



Crow King, One of Gall's Chief Lieutenants

where he had left the regiment, and sent Gibson to the top. No Indians in sight; nothing in sight but more bluffs; no sign of a valley as far as eye could see. The ground was very rough and cut with innumerable gullies and

ravines; bad lands of the most rugged type, almost impassable for anything but goats. Now skirting the bluffs for several miles, he sent Gibson to the top time after time, but always the signal came back, "No enemy in sight." (Note 10.) He was satisfied that nothing was to be found in this direction, and that even Indians would never cross a country such as this unless they could find no other path. He felt that Custer's orders had been ill considered, that his march was a waste of time and effort and had sent beyond hope of coöperation three full companies which might be sorely needed in the fight which he believed was sure to come on the trail the rest of the regiment had followed. (Note 11.)

Having satisfied himself, therefore, after marching some twelve miles that he could accomplish nothing where he was, he took the bit in his teeth, and, disregarding orders further, turned toward the direction in which the regiment was headed when he left it, and, at about the same angle to the trail, hurried to overtake the other battalions. His march had covered some fifteen miles, all to the left and rear of the command, when he again struck into its trail. It was now near the middle of the afternoon, probably about 3:30.

CUSTER'S MESSAGE

As he reached the trail, he stopped at a boggy morass to water his horses, which were weary and hot with their three hours of climbing and sliding in the bad lands; and here Captain Weir of D Company, hearing some distant shots, became impatient and took the lead without orders. As Benteen left the morass, the first mules of the pack-train appeared, and these, frantic with thirst, rushed into the bog and mired down. Two miles further on he came to the lone tepee, from which nearly two hours before Girard had first sighted the fleeing band of Indians, and from which, at the same time, the dust-cloud in the valley had been seen by the regiment. A mile beyond the tepee, Sergeant Kanipe of C Company, Tom Custer's troop, arrived with an order to the commanding officer of the pack train to "hurry up the packs." Telling the sergeant that the train was following far to the rear, he pointed out the direction, and rode on. A mile or so further and he was met by another messenger, a member of his own troop. This was John Martin, who had been detailed as Custer's orderly trumpeter that day. Martin was a green Italian lad who, born Giovanni Martini, had served under Garibaldi as a drummer boy at Villafranca. He had been but a year in America and spoke and understood but little English. Martin bore Custer's last message, written and signed by his adjutant, which read: "Benteen—Come on—Big Village—Be quick—Bring packs." And after Cooke had scrawled his signature, he had added hurriedly, "P. S. Bring pacs." (Note 12.)

Benteen received this message sometime near four o'clock, after he had proceeded, following the trail of the regiment, for about three miles beyond the "dead warrior tepee." It seems likely that he had taken Custer's trail rather than Reno's, since three miles from the tepee on Reno's trail would have brought him almost to the river. Custer, however, after following Reno for more than two miles after leaving the tepee, struck off sharply to the right



Call, the Hunkpapa War Chief, Who After Routing Reno, Rode to the Attack on Custer, and Led the Charge That Exterminated His Command

downstream. As Martin had followed Custer's route back, he probably met Benteen on Custer's trail, approximately a mile south of the hill on which Reno took refuge after his disastrous action in the valley and subsequent crossing of the river.

Martin had been fired upon by the Sioux as he made his perilous ride to Benteen; his horse had been struck and was bleeding profusely, the animal being at the point of exhaustion when he arrived. He had seen Reno in action in the valley and was jubilant and elated, telling Benteen that the Indians were "skedaddling," that Custer was charging through the village. During his ride back he had met Boston Custer, the youngest of the General's brothers, who had accompanied the expedition as a civilian forage master. Young Custer had, for some reason, left the General's column and returned to the pack train on an errand, and was riding furiously to overtake the fated five companies, which were even then turning toward the ridge where they perished to a man one short hour later.

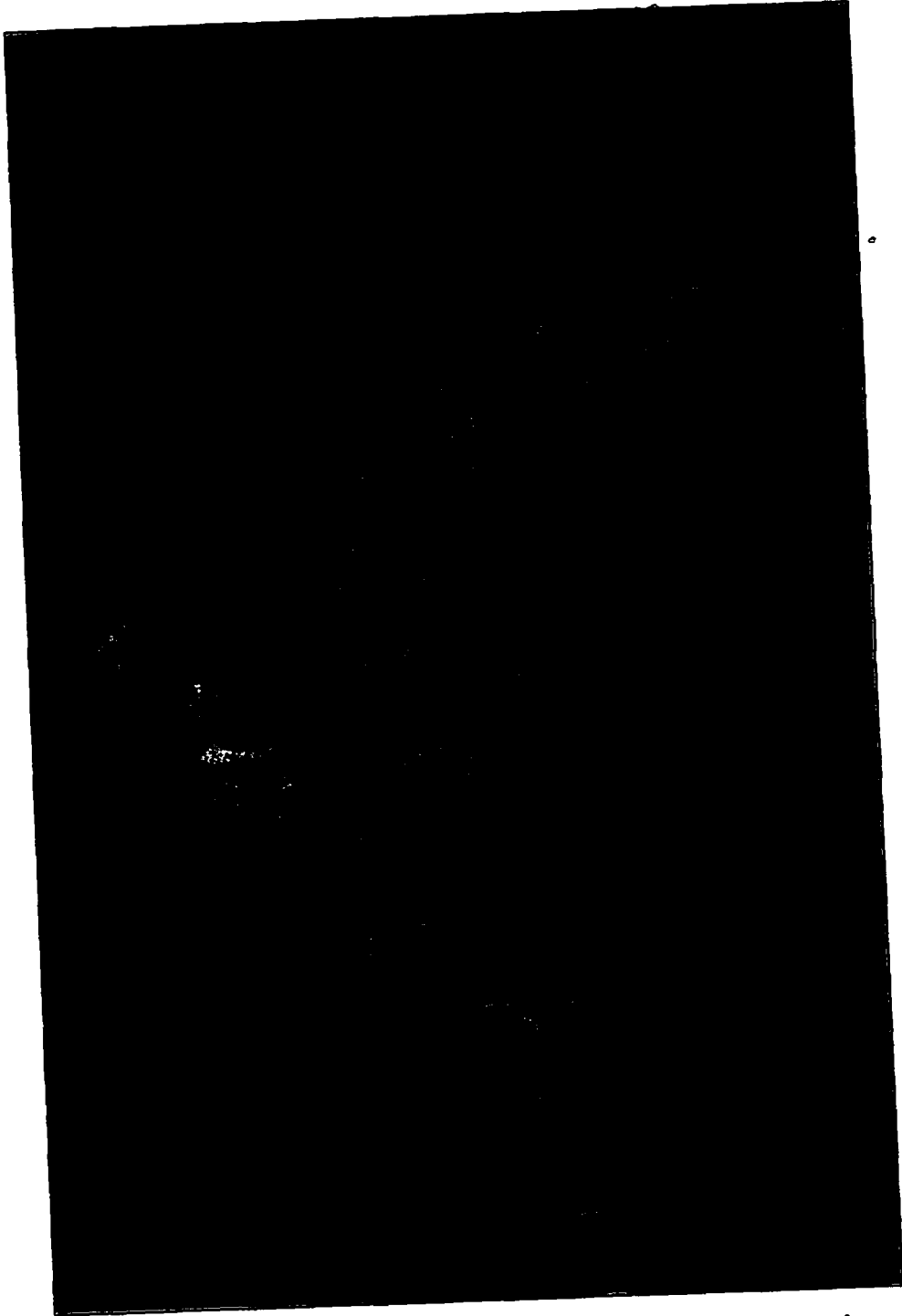
Benteen read the message carried by the excited Martin, showed it to Weir and Edgerly, the officers of D Company, as they rode up; and then, quickening the pace, he rode to the sound of the guns that could now be heard distinctly in the valley below. He did not pause to bring up the packs; he had sent Sergeant Kanipe to the train commander with Custer's order to hurry. Leading his battalion, he went forward.

Coming to a rise in the ground, the valley of the Little Big Horn opened before him; and there, in the dust and smoke, Benteen's command saw that which must for the moment have dismayed them. An overwhelming force of yelling, painted Sioux, sweeping and swooping from all directions, were riding down and killing a little band of soldiers who were vainly trying to reach the river. It was the last of Reno's command, those who had been unhorsed and left behind during the mad rush for the bluffs.

ARRIVAL OF BENTEEN

As Benteen and his battalion appeared over the crest of the ridge, the Indians sighted them and immediately opened fire, their bullets striking all about and at the feet of the horses. The range was too long, however, to do them any damage. Undecided what to do, Benteen was considering the crossing of the river, when he saw, some hundreds of yards to his right, a party of Indians. Lieutenant Godfrey of K Company rode swiftly toward them and found them to be a group of the Crow scouts, among whom was their leader, Half Yellow Face, who motioned him to continue to the right. As the command neared the Crows, Lieutenant Godfrey rode to Half Yellow Face, pointed to the valley and then to the hills, and asked, "Soldiers?" The Crow shook his head and, sweeping his arm to the right, answered, "Soldiers," at the same time pointing out the hill to which Reno had fled.

Benteen's battalion drew pistols and trotted forward. As they approached the hill, Reno, dismounted and with his head tied with a handkerchief, ran breathless out to meet them. "For God's sake, Benteen," he shouted, "halt your command and help me. I've lost half my men." A minute



Brigadier General E. S. Godfrey (Retired), Who As a Lieutenant of the Seventh Cavalry, Was in Command of Company K at the Battle of the Little Big Horn

later and Benteen's battalion had joined the remnants of Reno's on the top of the hill. Reno, his overwrought nerves still in the ascendant, his self-control gone, broke off in the midst of a sentence to fire a revolver at the Indians a thousand yards away. Even Varnum, hero though he had proved himself that day, was beside himself, both with rage against the Sioux and with grief over the death of Hodgson, his dearest friend. He too seized a carbine and commenced to fire at the distant enemy.

The whole of Reno's command was disorganized, excited, and on edge. A few, however, through all the harrowing experience, had remained cool and



Photo by Barry

Some members of the Seventh at the 1886 Reunion on the Battlefield. Left to right: Corporal Hall, Dr. H. R. Porter, Captain (now General) Edward S. Godfrey, Captain F. W. Benteen, Captain (now General) W. S. Edgerly, Captain Thos. M. McDougall, Private Aspinwall, "White Swan", one of the Four Crow Scouts Who Went Down the River With Custer.

self-possessed. Some of the rearmost who had escaped the Sioux were still coming up the bluff, one man nonchalantly waving a scalp freshly ripped from the head of an Indian warrior. Lieutenant Hare, Godfrey's subaltern in K Company, who with Varnum had been in charge of the scouts who rode with Reno, enthusiastically shook the hand of his company commander, saying with much gusto: "I'm damned glad to see you. We had a big fight in the valley and got whipped like Hell." His laconic description stated the situation exactly.

Upon Benteen's arrival it was he, not Reno, who was the real commanding officer. Benteen was a man of magnificent presence and dominating per-



Photo by Barry

Rain-in-the-Face, the Sioux Warrior Who Killed Tom Custer, Brother of the General, and Cut His Heart Out

sonality; cool, keen, daring, and brave as a lion; and he quickly brought order out of confusion. His troops were ordered at once to divide their ammunition with Reno's men, who had almost exhausted their own during the fight in the valley. Reno's companies were re-formed, and the combined battalions placed in a proper attitude of defense. Lieutenant Hare, impressed by Reno as battalion adjutant in place of the unfortunate Hodgson, was despatched on the freshest horse to be found, to ride at top speed to the pack-train, whose dust could be seen in the distance, with orders to cut out and rush forward the ammunition mules and to hasten the progress of the train. Hare's company commander, Godfrey, gave up his own mount that the perilous ride might be made. In the meantime the command made ready for any eventuality. They were no longer menaced by the Sioux, the greater part of whom had left their front and had ridden pell-mell down the valley. Only a few now remained to watch and harass them with long distance fire.

V

WHILE the last of Reno's men were arriving on the hill immediately after Benteen's arrival, firing, heavy and continuous, had been heard. It came from down river. Some one was fighting there and furiously. The Indians opposed to Reno had heard it too and had ridden by hundreds in that direction. (Note 13.)

Benteen had shown Custer's message to Reno immediately upon joining him. He had asked Reno as to Custer's whereabouts. Reno did not know, nor did any of his command: no word of any kind had come from their chief since the attack order at 2:15, and it was now near 4:30. More than two hours had elapsed since they had parted at the lone tepee. Custer had not crossed the river at the southern end of the village; that was certain. He had not gone back toward the packs; that also was certain. He must be to the north, downstream, for Martin had come from that direction. It was surely Custer who was engaging the Indians below.

As they listened and wondered on the hill, two distant volleys rang out. Weir, commander of D Company, sprang to his feet, exclaiming to his lieutenant, Edgerly, "That's Custer."

"Yes," Edgerly replied, "and we ought to go down there."

Weir thought a moment. "I'm going to ask them; but if they won't take the command, are you willing to go with D Company alone?"

"Yes," said Edgerly, "I am." Weir strode away. He spoke heatedly with Reno; then, alone but for his orderly, he rode to the north.

Edgerly, supposing that permission had been given, followed with the company. They advanced a mile or more down stream until from a high point they could see the Indians, some of whom were gathered in groups, while others rode about, shooting at objects on the ground. But no engagement was in progress. Whatever of combat there had been was finished now, and if the sounds of battle they had heard, the volleys that had reached their ears, had indeed come from Custer it was evident that he was no longer fighting there.



Brigadier General Winfield Scott Edgerly (Retired).
General Edgerly Was a Lieutenant of D Company, Seventh Cavalry
At the Little Big Horn

Weir and his troop, searching out that field with straining eyes, wondered what had become of their commander. Little did they imagine the truth. Nor did any member of Reno's command, which soon followed Weir's advance, draw any other inference from what they dimly saw in the distance than that Custer had found the Sioux too strong and, repulsed, had gone to join forces with the advancing columns of Terry. They had but to hold their own yet a little while and Custer would come charging back again with reinforcements. (Note 14.)

Reno had waited for the pack train to come up before he followed Weir's advance and was now well stocked with ammunition. The train had been slow in arriving, and it was after five o'clock before the last mules were up. He had many wounded to carry. He could not leave them behind, and it took six men to carry one. Progress was slow. His advance, led by Benteen, reached Weir close to six o'clock, when it took position on the hills and faced the approaching Sioux, who now were swarming up the gorge to attack.

Soon the leading companies were engaged; and Reno and Benteen, quickly surveying the field, decided that this was no place to stand and fight, since stand and fight they must. Orders were given to retire to the hill whence they had just come; and the command now slowly retraced its steps, each company as it arrived on the hill being placed by Benteen. K. Godfrey's company, was the last to reach the position, having covered the last lap of the retreat; and as the dismounted troopers, close to seven o'clock, made the final dash to the rear, the battle was on.

The Sioux attack followed the troops closely. Reno was immediately surrounded and besieged, fighting with desperation until merciful darkness, settling down upon the hills, made it impossible longer to see. Not until then did the vengeful warriors withdraw, having killed and wounded many of the little band upon the hill, and played havoc among the unprotected animals.

A NIGHT OF TOIL

That night, in the Indian village across the Little Big Horn, there was revelry and celebration. That night, among the little band of soldiers on the hill there was feverish preparation for defense against the attack that all knew would be renewed with the first blush of daylight; and many were the muttered curses, both of officer and man, that Custer and his five companies had deserted them.

All night long the little band burrowed in the dusty, flinty ground, scooping out, with such implements as they could improvise—for three spades and two axes were the only tools they possessed—shallow holes which would afford some cover. Working, perforce, with knives and spoons, all except Benteen's company "dug in" as best they might. During the night, positions hastily taken the evening before were revised; gaps in the line were closed; the animals were picketed and protected as much as the terrain would permit. The line girded the hill below its crest in an oval formation, the animals being placed in a depression near the center, which was shielded from the fire of the Indians in all directions save the east. Reno, with McDougal (B), Wallace (with the remnant of G), French (M), Godfrey (K), and Weir (D), held the northerly curve of the

oval; Moylan, with A, the eastern side; and Benteen, with H, the south. The western side of the oval had natural protection in the steep slope to the river, which could be swept by cross fire from north and south. Bread boxes, saddles, everything that would stop a bullet or an arrow were piled in front of the shallow holes; ammunition was distributed; and the command was ready, grimly awaiting the onslaught of the savage enemy.

Two o'clock. Darkness, heavy, impenetrable, still hung over the hills. The Indian village was still and quiet. Scouts who had ventured forth returned to say that no sign of Custer could be found, and the country around about was full of Indians. Two-thirty, and the faint dawn that precedes the sunrise began to lighten the hilltops. Day comes in the mountains as swiftly as the night falls: a few minutes now, and the tale would be told.

Silently the men, who had snatched a few minutes of sleep, were awakened; as silently each one crept to his appointed place: the defense was ready, peering out into the quickly lifting murk for the unseen foe.

THE ATTACK AT DAWN

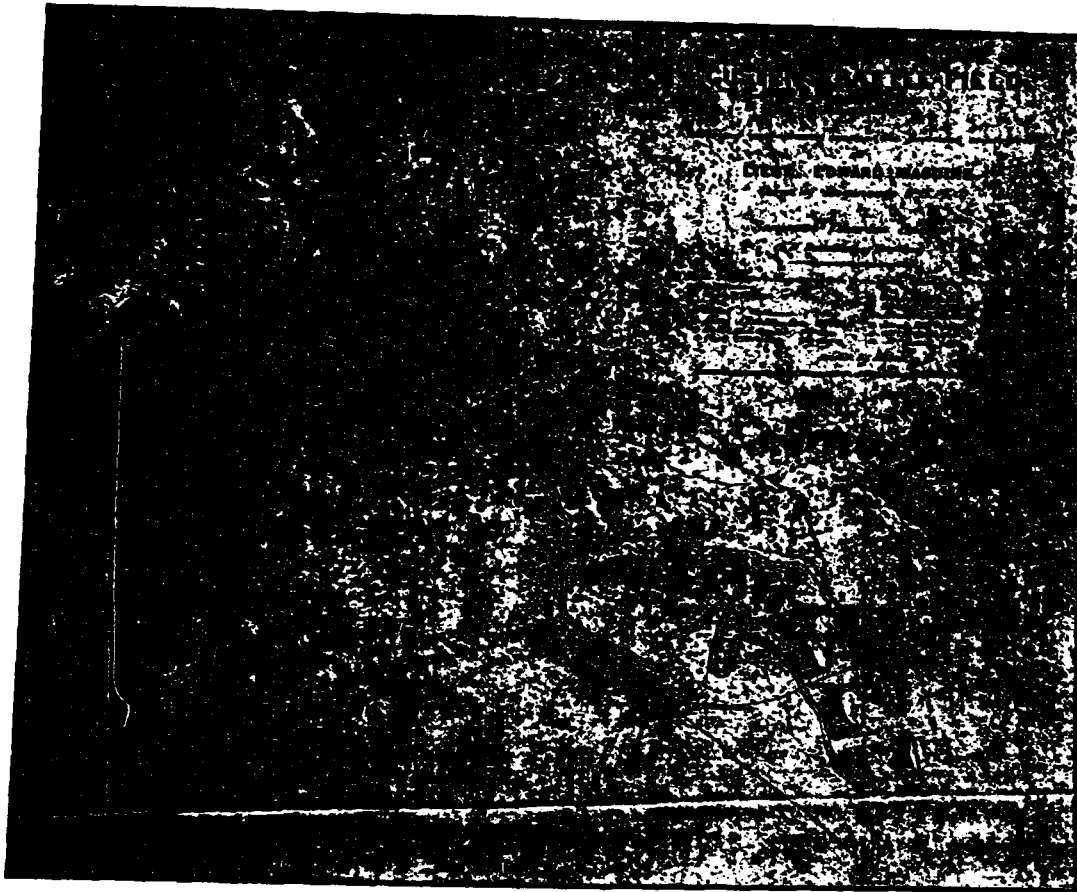
Two forty-five. The hilltops were light, the valley below visible through the mist. And now a single rifle shot rang out, followed at a short interval by another. It was the enemy's signal, and upon the instant there poured from all directions, from every vantage point that could conceal a warrior, the crashing fire of the Sioux, which steadily increased in volume as broad daylight cleared the scene of action.

Following the time-honored tactics of the Indian, the warriors fired from cover, for the most part at will, though frequently in regular and ordered volleys. To draw the fire of the troops they resorted to every stratagem known to the savage mind; now standing erect for an instant, then dropping from sight; raising hats or other headgear above the bush. But these devices did not serve; except for a few picked shots the men were forbidden to return the fire.

During the fiercest of the fighting and once during the night of the twenty-fifth, bugle calls were heard by the hard-pressed soldiers. Some, believing relief at hand, anxiously scanned the hills for signs of Custer's column. Others, all hope of reinforcement long since gone, were now convinced that white allies were arrayed against them with the Indians. But no relieving column came, and here and there, as the wary foe exposed himself, they glimpsed for the instant men clad in white men's garb; some, indeed, in the uniform of the Army. A cry went round the hill: "Deserters are with them! White renegades are fighting with the Sioux!" Not till long afterward was the truth revealed: that Indian braves had stripped clothing from Custer's dead, soldiers and civilians alike, and had donned it in an attempt to lure Reno's men from their secure position; that the bugle, torn from the body of some ill-fated trumpeter of Custer's battalion, had been sounded by an Indian warrior with the same crafty purpose. (Note 15.)

Benteen's company, exposed to fire from the rear, suffered more than the others. His was the weakest spot in the line as well as the key to the position.

Sensing this, the Sioux concentrated upon him a heavy force, which, while keeping up a steady fusillade, crept ever nearer. He left the company to go over the crest to Reno to demand reinforcement, which Reno reluctantly gave, sending Captain French with M Company to his aid. During the few minutes of Ben-



The Battlefield Map Made by Lieutenant Maguire of the Engineers, June 28, 1876

teen's absence, one daring warrior crept close enough to count *coup* on the body of a soldier that lay within his lines.

COUNTER ATTACK

The situation had become both critical and desperate; and Benteen, thinking attack the best defense, charged the Indians, scattering them from his front. To Reno now he went, urging that he too must drive the Sioux from that front also or be overwhelmed. Reno, loath to risk further losses, hesitated. But Benteen insisted and insisted again, until Reno, lying flat upon the ground at Benteen's

feet, told him that if he could see the Indians, to give the order.

During all the fight upon the hill Benteen had shown extraordinary courage and the utmost disdain of the Sioux. He exposed himself freely, walking about with a smile upon his face, his white hair, like Navarre's plume, shining in the sun. With words of cheer and encouragement to the men worth more than reinforcements, his example inspired them all to deeds of heroism. He gave the order: "Ready, men!—Now!—Charge and give them hell!" Led by Reno, the four companies dashed forward just in time to scatter a large body of warriors who were gathering for a rush. Then back they raced to their shallow defenses. Not a man had been lost in the sortie.



The Battle Monument

Photo by Brininstool

As the sun mounted high in the heavens, the heat became intense, and the suffering from want of water, of which there had been none for nearly twenty-four hours, became unendurable. Volunteers crept down to the river, a quarter of a mile away, carrying with them canteens and kettles; and thus, though at heavy risk, a few swallows of the life-giving fluid were obtained for the wounded and the thirst-maddened men.

WITHDRAWAL OF INDIANS

Shortly after midday, Sioux scouts rode into the village from down the valley, and there ensued much talking and powwowing among the chiefs. Soon the squaws began to dismantle the tepees; and the braves, at the signal of their

leaders, withdrew by sections, a few score at a time, until, when the entire village had been torn down, the pony herds gathered, the squaws and children collected, the last of the warriors left the hill and late in the afternoon joined the moving village, which slowly made its way, in precise formation, toward the Big Horn Mountains.

Freed now from the terrors of the past two days, Reno's men watched them depart; and though they knew not why deliverance had come, they thanked God for it. They had suffered heavily. Eighteen men had been killed on the hill, and fifty-two wounded; and the loss of animals, exposed as they were to long range fire, had been terrible.

A group of officers gathered on the high ridge near the river to watch the Indians depart. Not until then had they been able to form any real estimate of the strength of the Sioux. The moving village, which remained in sight for several hours, bulked against the setting sun as a solid mass of savages and animals, as numerous and as precisely organized as a division of cavalry on the march. The number of ponies was variously estimated as between fifteen and twenty-five thousand, and the fighting strength of the village, exclusive of the hundreds of women and children, from three to five thousand. It was the largest gathering of Indians ever seen on the plains. The standing village, as was afterward determined, had been placed along the west bank of the Little Big Horn, each of the various tribes camping by itself. From one end to the other, it covered a distance of nearly four miles and was at some points nearly half a mile in depth. More than fifteen hundred lodges had been erected and occupied, besides innumerable wickiups.

Safe for the time but in bad case, Reno's men had now time to think and to relax. During the early evening the dead on the hill were buried, the bodies of those who fell on the east bank during the retreat from the valley were recovered, and the position was shifted, both to be nearer water and to escape from the stench of dead animals on the hill.

Then came discussion and debate. What had become of Custer? Why had he left them to their fate? For what reason had he deserted them? Had he ridden north to join with Terry, or had he turned to the south in search of Crook? It was not like Custer to allow an enemy to escape; yet the enemy had escaped, and Custer was not there. Why did he not come? What could he be doing?

And thus throughout the night ran comment and conjecture, sometimes not over-kind to the absent commander and his five companies of their comrades-in-arms.

VI

WHAT indeed had become of Custer; and what of the gallant 225 who rode with him?

During the morning of the twenty-sixth, Terry's scouts, led by Lieutenant James H. Bradley of the Seventh Infantry, pushed ahead of Gibbon's plodding column under urgent instructions from General Terry to get in touch with the Seventh Cavalry. They came upon some Indians, who fled across

the Big Horn on their approach, leaving on the bank clothing that was recognized as a part of that worn by the Crow scouts who had left the Yellowstone with Custer. They were induced to return only when satisfied that Bradley and his party were not of the dreaded Sioux.

EVIDENCE OF THE DISASTER

To these they told a tale of battle and destruction. They said that Custer had met the Sioux, that he and hundreds with him had been killed; the survivors were besieged and in dire distress.

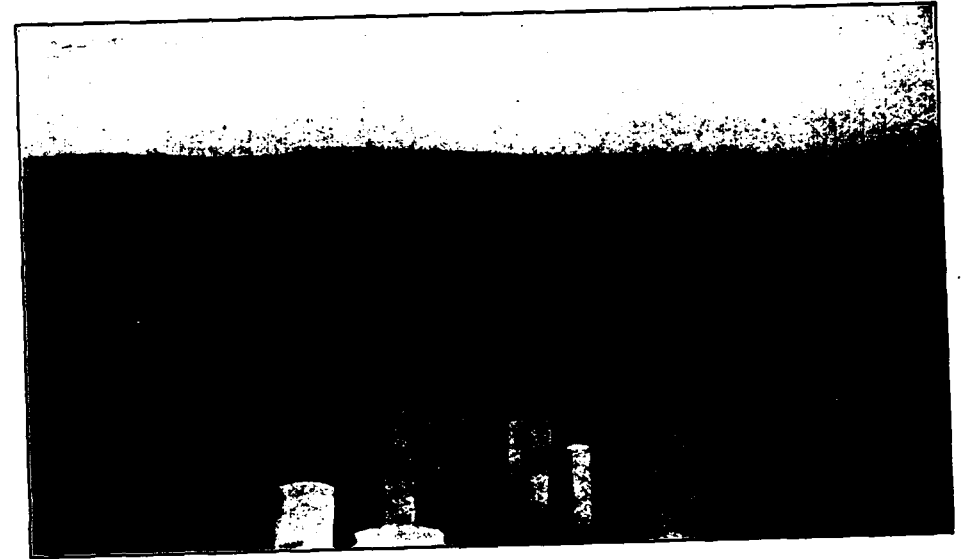


Photo by Brininstool

The Scene of Custer's Last Stand at the Little Big Horn

A messenger from Bradley galloped posthaste to the rear and to Terry reported what the Crows had said. The story was not credited. That disaster of such proportions could have overtaken such a regiment as the Seventh Cavalry was preposterous. Yet since fighting must have occurred, Terry urged the column forward, and at nightfall the exhausted doughboys camped in the Little Big Horn valley, some nine miles below the scene of Reno's siege. During the latter part of the day's march the Sioux in heavy force were in their front; and it is known that this approach of Gibbon's column on the twenty-sixth was all that caused the Indians to abandon their effort to wipe out Reno's command.

At daybreak on the twenty-seventh, Bradley and his scouts were again in motion up the river, taking the hills on the eastern side, while Terry, with Gibbon's command, marched up the valley.

Soon after crossing the river, Bradley and his party came to a point from

which they saw, lying there in the glare of the morning sun, objects which gleamed white in the distance. As they drew nearer, confirmation both horrible and shocking proved the accuracy of the story told by the frightened Crows.

On the field before him, cold in death, lay the bodies of more than two hundred white men, and, about them and among them, the carcasses of many horses. There was no doubt now that the Crows had told the truth.

Again Bradley sent the word to Terry, who at the head of Gibbon's little command was hurrying up the valley. To him was borne the solemn news and to him related the evidence that his scouts had seen.

From the heights overlooking the valley of their tribulation, the survivors of Reno's command saw the approach of the little column. Whether it was friend or foe they could not tell. But as they watched the slow, methodical advance, it gradually took form. Unless the Sioux were imitating soldiers, the formations were those of troops. Reno ordered Lieutenants Wallace and Hare to cross the river and to ascertain who and what the column was.

RELIEF OF THE BESIEGED

Quickly they mounted horses and were on the way. A few minutes' gallop and the infantry and cavalry of Gibbon's command loomed near enough to prove relief at hand. Putting spur to the horses, they dashed ahead, and as they reined beside General Terry, from the lips of both came the same questions: "Where is Custer? Have you seen him? Why is he not with you?"

When General Terry and his staff arrived upon the hill where Reno and his beleaguered men awaited him, among the rescued men both joy and grief struggled for the mastery. Strong men wept unashamed, while rejoicing at their own deliverance. All were shaken to the depths of their souls over the appalling news of Custer's fate, of which no man of Reno's command had entertained the least suspicion.

That afternoon, Benteen, accompanied by a party of officers, was led by Bradley to the scene of Custer's last fight. What they found there—what they saw—is all that ever has been known, all that ever will be known of the manner of his fate; for save such tales as were long afterward wrung from unwilling members of the Indian horde that snuffed him out, and with him every officer and soldier of his command, no witness to the tragedy was ever found. The evidence of the stricken field alone remained to bear mute testimony of a gallant, desperate combat to the death. One living thing they found upon that field,—one only; the horse *Comanche*, Keogh's mount.

No one knows certainly to this day what route Custer took after leaving Reno's trail. No one knows why he changed his plan to follow Reno in support. The only ones who knew died with him.

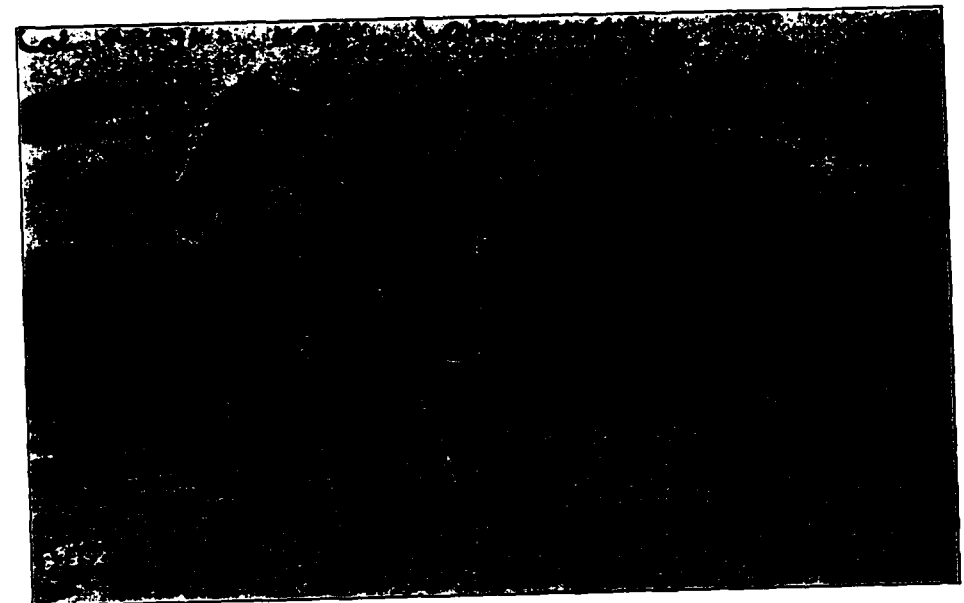
CUSTER'S MOVEMENTS

Part of the way—part only—can we follow him and his devoted band; after that, the trail is closed.

Shortly after turning to the north, he despatched Sergeant Kanipe of C

Company with an order addressed to the commanding officer of the train. It bade him "hurry up the packs." That order, as has been before related, the Sergeant had delivered to Benteen, who sent him on his way to find the train.

After Kanipe had left the column, it proceeded north at a gallop for more than a mile, when Custer, having already sent "Mitch" Bouyer and the four Crow scouts who remained with him to the ridge, halted the command under the shadow of a towering hill. Accompanied by his brother and the Adjutant, and by his nephew "Autie" Reed, the General galloped to the crest of the ridge to look down upon the village. At least one enlisted man went with him, John Martin of H Company, his orderly trumpeter.



Comanche, the horse ridden by Captain Myles Keogh, Seventh Cavalry, at the battle of the Little Big Horn, June 25, 1876. This horse was the only animate part of Custer's command that survived the fight. It had three severe wounds when found—through the neck, shoulder, and hind quarter, also several flesh wounds. It was cared for by the officers and men of the Seventh until its death in 1891, at the very respectable age (for a horse) of 28 years.

Sharply the General scanned the valley with ready glasses. The village seemed asleep. Save for a few dogs and ponies, lazy in the sun, a few squaws and romping children were all that could be seen. The camp was lifeless, apparently denuded of fighting men.

Abruptly he turned to his companions. "We've got them," he exclaimed. "We've caught them napping. Come on!" And wheeling his horse, with a wave of his hat to the waiting troops, he dashed back to the command and, with a cheer, again led them to the north.

A mile further on they went, trotting, galloping, all the way, the intervening hills screening them from the village. Then the General, turning to his orderly, said: "I want you to take a message to Captain Benteen. Ride fast as you can and tell him to hurry. Tell him it's a big village, and I want him to be quick, and to bring the ammunition packs."

Martin checked his horse and was turning when the Adjutant cried, "Wait, orderly; I'll give you a message," and tore from his book the note which reached Benteen at Martin's hands, some three miles from the lone tepee. When Martin left the column, it was turning toward the river. He was the last man to see Custer alive, except those who rode on, and perished on the ridge. (Note 12.)

It is known that somewhere between the point where Kanipe left the column and where Martin turned back with Custer's last message, one set of fours dropped out, their horses exhausted. Two at least of these men, Privates Thompson and Watson, both of C Company, joined Reno later in the day. The others were probably killed by the Indians.

CONJECTURES

So far we can follow Custer and his men on their ride to death. Little more is known.

The accounts given by the Sioux differ so widely that little satisfactory information can be culled from them. Their stories cannot be reconciled. The field of battle, however, proved that Custer had ridden down the river some five miles from the point at which he diverged from Reno's trail, evidently with intent to strike the Indian village in flank or rear. Whether he attempted to cross the river is unknown; but the fact that several headless bodies of his men were found in the village, nearly opposite the scene of his destruction, would seem to indicate that some of his men may have penetrated the village. But whether in attack or in attempted flight, it is impossible even to conjecture.

It is probable that he approached the village from the southeast, emerging from behind the hills and ridges that screened the march of his troops until he turned toward the river, and that he was attacked and overwhelmed before he had time or opportunity to strike the village, which lay on the other side. It was apparent that the brunt of the Sioux attack came from the south, that Calhoun's company was the first to be struck by the savage mass, and, immediately after, Keogh's. Aside from these two companies, in which officers and men died in their places, in platoon formation, there was no semblance of battle lines anywhere on the field. All was confusion. The tide of battle had swept over Calhoun and Keogh, crushing them by sheer weight of numbers, and, rolling onward had first enveloped, then engulfed, the other three companies. The great war chief Gall of the Hunkpapas led the main attack, which broke the troop formations and pushed the swirling, fighting, milling mass to the north, until, upon the ridge where now stands the battle monument, assailed in the rear by the Ogallallas under Crazy Horse and Two Moon's fierce Cheyennes, both flanks turned, enveloped by overwhelming numbers on every side and swept with fire from every direction, the gallant Custer and his comrades fell. To the thousands that attacked

him as he approached the river, there were added, during the later moments of the struggle, hundreds of warriors fresh from Reno's rout, in headlong charge.

HEROIC DEATHS

That the combat was intense, that soldier and officer alike sold his life as dearly as he might, there is no doubt. At the point on the ridge where lay the bodies of the slain leader and his officers, all save those of Keogh's and Calhoun's troops, there was ample evidence that the final struggle was terrible in its despera-



Photo by Brininstool

"Curley", a Crow Indian Scout, Long Believed to Be a Survivor of Custer's Battalion

tion. Horses and men lay thick about the body of the General, who, shot through the temple and the left breast, had sunk to death between the corpses of two of his men, his arms, outstretched, resting across the bodies. Only a few feet away lay the mutilated remains of the General's brother, Tom, the Captain of C Troop, while Yates and Smith, Reilly and Cooke were close at hand. Grouped around their officers were found the bodies of some

two score soldiers who had rallied to support their General's last stand. And for a mile square the field was dotted with the corpses of the slain, some in little groups, some alone and separated from the others by many yards. Of the 225 officers and men who rode with Custer into the fight that day, not one was left alive. They were wiped out, obliterated, exterminated to a man. The Indian loss was negligible. (Note 15½.)

VII

AND so ended the battle of the Little Big Horn. Upon the fatal field where Custer and his five companies fought and fell there were recovered more than two hundred bodies; and these, with few exceptions, were buried where they lay, in shallow graves. Some were never accounted for; but from that day to this, no trace of a single survivor has ever been found. They were utterly exterminated; not one escaped the fury of the Sioux. Even Thermopylæ spared one. (Note 16.)

Reno's losses during his fighting in the valley, along the course of his retreat, and on the hill where he was besieged after Benteen and McDougall joined him, numbered fifty-six dead and fifty-nine wounded, of whom eight died.

Of the six hundred who so confidently rode in review before Terry on the twenty-second, of the officers and men, veteran and recruit, of the proud Seventh Cavalry, there remained active and fit for duty on the twenty-sixth less than half; a loss of more than fifty-one per cent. In all history there is no such record of savage victory over trained troops.

CAUSES OF THE CATASTROPHE

What were the causes of the catastrophe? Who was to blame? Whose the responsibility? Controversy only slightly less savage and intense than that of the battle which gave it birth has raged for fifty years on these questions. And yet it is possible to answer them fairly without blasting the reputation of any participant or impugning the motives or the honesty of any military leader of that generation.

The chief cause of disaster was unquestionably and undeniably the lack of correct information as to the numbers, the organization, and the equipment of the Indians. The Seventh Cavalry was sent out by Terry to round up a band of recalcitrants variously estimated at between eight and fifteen hundred fighting men. They found almost three times the number of the highest estimate. They rode to locate and to drive or capture a band which, judged by all past experiences, would scatter and run at their approach; they found instead a force of stern warriors who fought with determination and tenacity equal to their own; who were led to battle by the greatest war-chiefs of the Nation, whose strategy and tactical dispositions were that day superior to those of their opponents.

They thought to find a band equipped with ancient muskets and discarded rifles, with primitive spear and bow and arrow. Instead, they found a foe far better armed than they themselves, possessing Winchester rifles of the latest pattern and stores of ammunition that seemed inexhaustible.

Why were these things not known? The answer lies in the almost criminal policy pursued by the Government during all the period of our Indian wars:

a policy that permitted a maladministered Indian Bureau to sow the wind, and compelled the Army to reap the whirlwind. It is idle now to discuss that policy: it has, happily, passed into history, a black, disgraceful page. But during the Indian war period the country resounded with its scandals and corruptions.

Next in importance as a causative factor was the failure of the expeditionary leaders to scout the country thoroughly; to obtain at first hand correct information of the enemy instead of relying upon the reports of Indian agents. Some effort was made, it is true, when Terry, some ten days before the battle, had sent Reno with half the Seventh Cavalry on the scouting expedition during which he had found the trail which Custer subsequently followed. But that ef-



Photo by Brininstool

The Spot Where Custer Fell

fort was directed only to locating the hostiles. No real attempt appears to have been made to ascertain their strength before the movement against them was launched. (Note 17.)

Next in relative importance was the division of the regiment and the separation of its battalions beyond supporting distances. When Reno rode in to the attack with his pitiful force of 112 men, his was the only part of the regiment on the western or village side of the river. His battalion, it is well to remember, was the only part of the regiment that at any time either crossed the Little Big

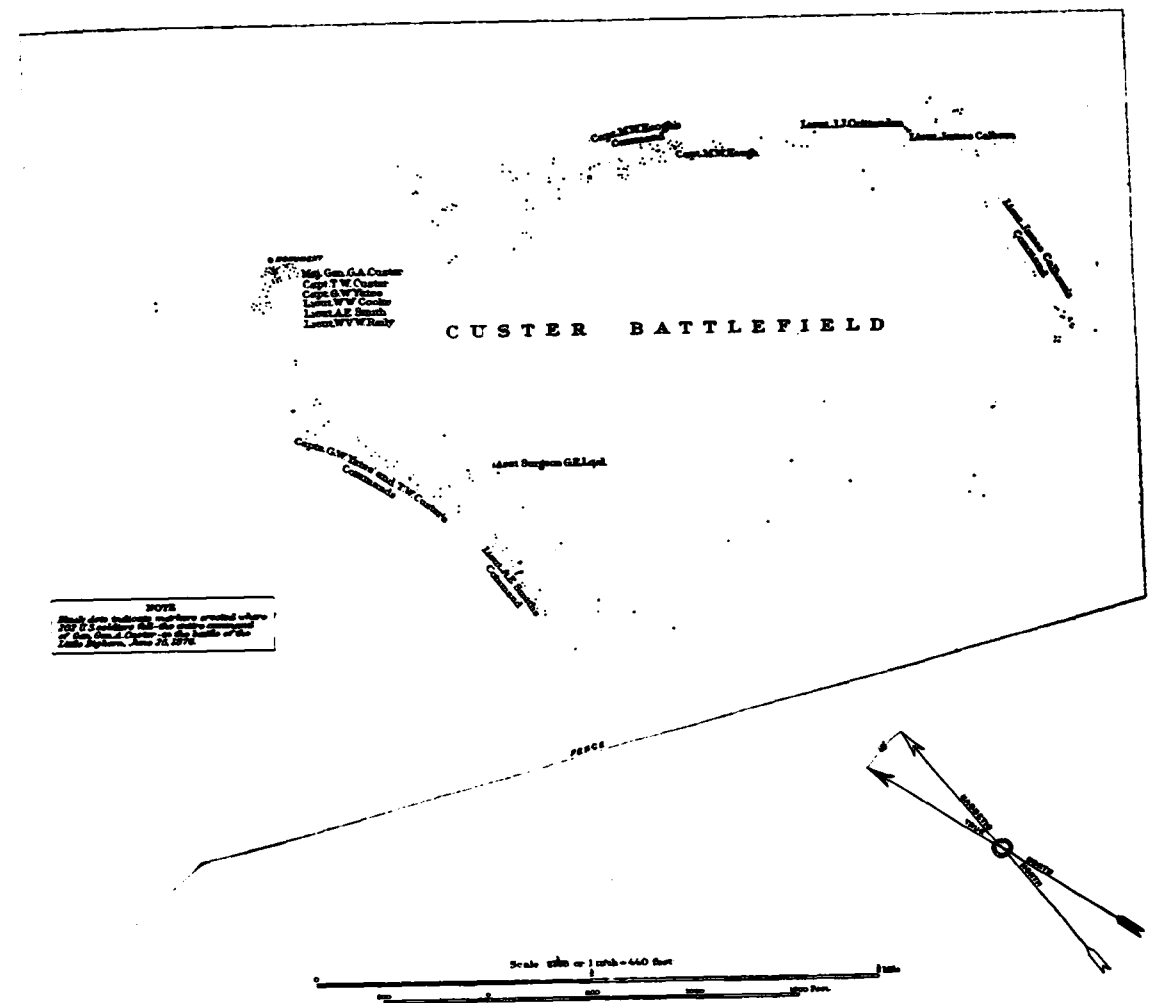
Horn or was ordered to do so. Benteen's battalion was at this time miles away to the left and rear, its whereabouts unknown, and had no orders to co-operate either with Reno or with Custer. Reno, when he crossed the river, believed and had reason to believe that he was expected to bring on only an advance guard action, and that Custer, with his larger and stronger force would deliver the main attack, supporting his charge from the rear. But instead of supporting, Custer changed direction and rode five miles down the river without notifying Reno of his change of purpose. The pack-train, which with its escort accounted for 130 men, more than twenty per cent of the regiment, and which had in charge all the reserve of ammunition, had been left far back on the trail, to struggle along as best it might. The men of the three battalions carried only one hundred rounds apiece of carbine ammunition, and four loadings, or twenty-four rounds, for their pistols.

When the fight in the valley began, therefore, not one of the three fighting battalions had ammunition sufficient for prolonged combat, nor was with-in communicating distance of the reserve supply; nor was any one of the four detachments of the regiment within supporting distance of either of the others. Not only were all separated by miles of difficult and enemy-infested country, but no one of the commanders, Custer, Reno, Benteen, or McDougall, knew where either of the others was, or what he was doing. This unfortunate separation, and, as it proved, fatal ignorance of each other's acts and whereabouts, gave to the Sioux, whose horde outnumbered the soldiers at least six to one, every opportunity to beat them in detail; opportunities of which they promptly and thoroughly availed themselves with almost Napoleonic sagacity.

It may be conjectured that Custer abandoned his expressed intention to support Reno's attack when he received word, through Cooke, that the Indians were coming up the valley in force to meet Reno's advance, for it was about that time, apparently, that he changed his course, left Reno's trail and rode to the north. John Martin, the trumpeter who carried his message to Benteen to "come on and be quick," has stated that he heard the General say to his adjutant before the message was written that he would bring up Benteen and put him in the center while he attacked the rear. But this is the only scrap of evidence in existence as to what was in Custer's mind when he rode down the east bank of the river instead of following Reno to the other side.

Had the regiment been kept together and an attack delivered upon the village in the dashing, brilliant manner which had always characterized Custer's fighting, there was a chance to have driven or at least to have held the Sioux on even terms. But the Seventh Cavalry, even had it made the attempt as a unit, undivided, was too overwhelmingly outnumbered to have beaten them if they stood their ground, or to have prevented their escape in any event.

Custer's defeat cannot fairly be ascribed to his disregard of Terry's plan of campaign. His disobedience of orders, if such occurred, and his disloyalty



Plat showing the location of the graves on the Custer field. The bodies were buried approximately where they fell.

to his commander, if that existed, form no proper part of this narration. They constitute the basis for an inquiry of an entirely different nature. Both faults have been charged to Custer by his critics and his enemies; both have been indignantly denied by his supporters and his friends.

What would have happened had Terry's plan been followed to the letter is of course mere conjecture, but it is reasonably probable that if Custer, instead of following the trail of the Indians as he did, had scouted it only, and kept his force to the east, working south to the headwaters of the Tongue before turning toward the Little Big Horn, the Sioux would have discovered

both his approach and Gibbon's, and the Indian village would have melted away and disappeared long before the jaws of Terry's trap could have closed upon them. And thus the whole purpose of the campaign must have failed.

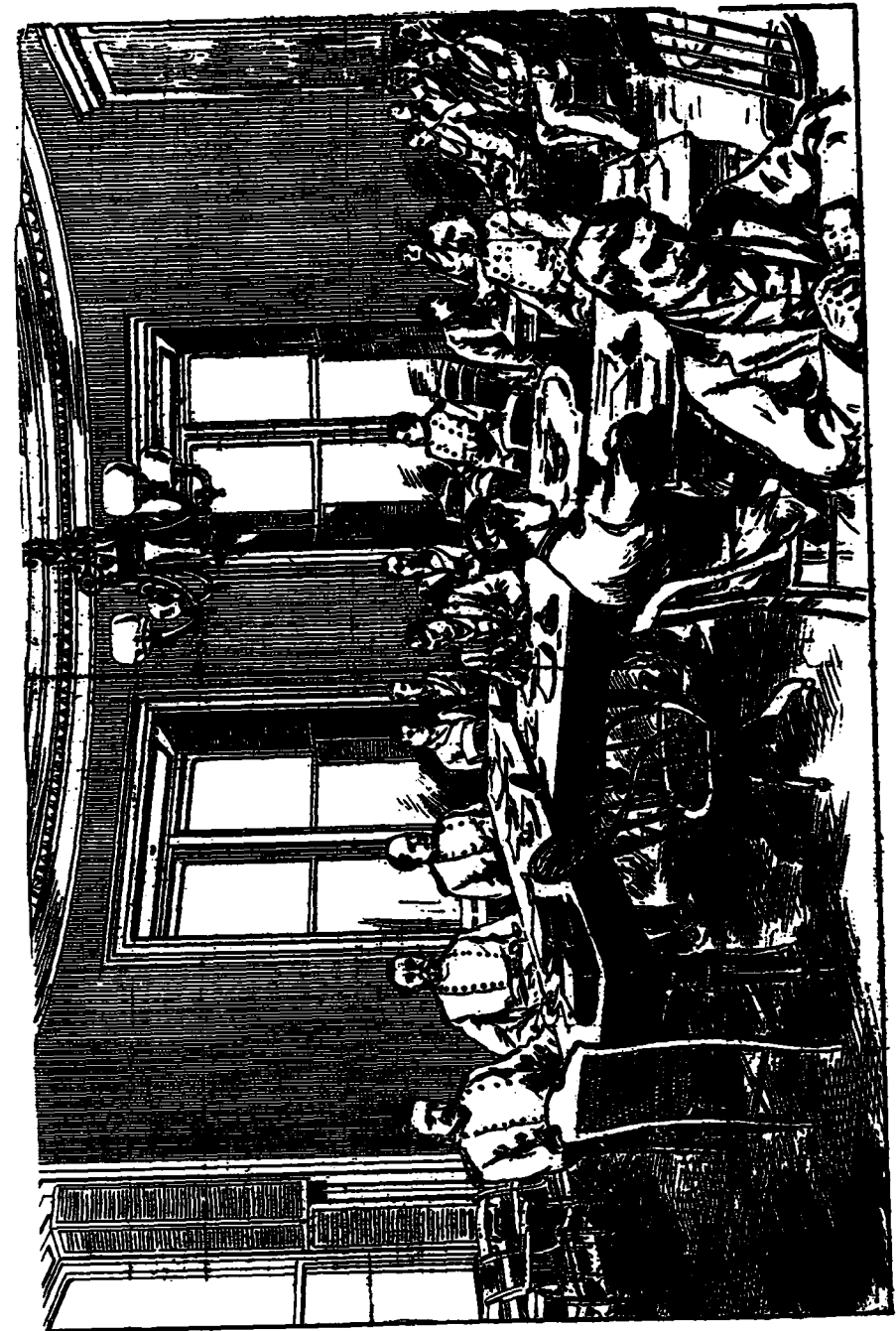
One may surmise, of course, that the Sioux, having fought Crook to a standstill only the week before, might have held their position in the valley to await and receive just such an attack as Terry planned. They might, indeed, have advanced, to meet and crush Terry before Custer could come up; but the judgment of almost every Indian fighter living is that they would not have done so. That they stood and fought as they did when the Seventh rode suddenly upon them on the twenty-fifth was in itself as surprising as it was unexpected; but it will not be forgotten that the Indians at the outset of the battle were fighting in defense of hearths and homes, and wives and children, and that the regiment's initial attack (Reno's) was pitifully weak. When Custer's approach was discovered, therefore, they knew well that every advantage, both of numbers and position, was theirs; that their own overwhelming force was between the widely separated bodies of white soldiers, one detachment of which they had just driven in wild panic and utter rout.

What would have happened had Terry's plan been carried out is therefore speculation only. But the probable answer is: nothing; the Sioux would have separated and slipped away; there would have been no battle of the Little Big Horn; and Terry's expedition, like that of Crook and Reynolds before it, would have resulted in a mere "water-haul."

VIII

SHORTLY after the battle, and long before the close of the campaign, there ensued much bitter comment and criticism over the conduct of Reno and Benteen, who were accused of disloyalty, disobedience of orders, and failure to go to Custer's relief. So strong and insistent did these claims become that Reno, finding himself discredited and all but ostracized, after vainly urging congressional investigation, demanded a court of inquiry, which was held at Chicago during January, 1879, by order of the President. (Note 18.) The testimony developed during that extensive hearing failed to show that Reno had been remiss in his duty, but rather that he had been confronted with so overwhelming a force of Indians that to have charged into the village would inevitably have resulted in the total annihilation of his battalion. It indicated strongly that had he held his position in the timber, which he might have done for a somewhat longer period, the same result would probably have followed. Nor did it appear that his failure to charge the village or to hold the timber could in the least degree have affected Custer's fate. As to his alleged failure to go to the General's relief, it was abundantly proved that the thing was impossible even had Custer's extremity been known, which it was not; that Reno and Benteen combined could have effected nothing but their own slaughter had they advanced before arrival of the pack train with ammunition. And this, unfortunately, came too late. Custer's fight was over.

The charges against Reno and Benteen took added strength from the known enmity of both men toward Custer; but it is as unthinkable as it is



A Newspaper Cut of the Reno Court of Inquiry in 1879. From a Photo by Copelin, Chicago

untrue that these officers deliberately sacrificed more than two hundred comrades, members of their own regiment, because of unfriendly feeling toward their commander: for that, in plain terms, was the charge against them in final analysis. There is nothing in the history of the fight on the Little Big Horn which justifies such a charge; it ought never to have been made, much less believed. On the contrary, while Reno did not show himself to be a great commander who could rise above the demands of trying and desperate conditions, it was due to his withdrawal from the valley, by whatever cause inspired (Note 19), and to Benteen's heroic leadership, that any of the Seventh Cavalry survived. The Court of Inquiry found nothing which required animadversion, and such was its unanimous report to the President. (Note 20.)

It is highly significant that on July 4, 1876, only nine days after the battle, 236 of the enlisted men of the Seventh Cavalry, all of whom had participated in the action, joined in a petition to the President asking the promotion of Reno to the lieutenant-colonelcy of the regiment made vacant by Custer's death, and praying likewise for the advancement of Benteen to the grade of major. They did this in expression of their belief that these two officers had saved the regiment from utter annihilation. Had there existed in fact any such condition as the imputations against Reno and Benteen infer, it is beyond belief that such a request would have been almost unanimously made by the surviving enlisted men. (Note 21.)

Benteen was Custer's bitter and outspoken enemy. Not even death served to change his attitude; to the day of his own passing he never abated his hatred. But his known character and the habit of his entire life refutes the imputation that at any time or in any circumstances he failed in his duty as an officer and a soldier. He fought as he had lived, fearless, uncompromising, and grimly stern. Benteen was one of the best soldiers the United States Army has ever possessed.

For half a century the battle of the Little Big Horn has been known as the Custer Massacre. It is time that another name be given it, for it was no massacre. On the contrary it was a bitterly contested combat to the death between the armed representatives of two civilizations, each of which fought after the manner of his kind. The simple truth is that in this, the greatest battle ever waged between the red men and the white, between a receding and an advancing race, the red men had the victory because they exhibited that day a greater proficiency in the art of war than did the chosen representatives of the white men. Warfare, however it be savage, is not massacre when the conquered go to their deaths with arms in their hands.

MUTILATION OF THE DEAD

In all Indian warfare mutilation of the bodies of the enemy dead as well as torture of living prisoners is expected. It is part and parcel of savage

war. And therefore the battle of the Little Big Horn is all the more remarkable for the fact that there was no torture of prisoners, for the Sioux took none; and contrary to general belief there was no universal mutilation of the bodies of the slain, except those few of Reno's command who fell close to the village and were subjected to indignities by the squaws and children.

But on Custer's field, the Indian brave had in great part respected the bodies of his slain enemies. Save for scalping, the invariable custom of Indian warfare, there was comparatively little mutilation of the soldier dead. In a statement to the press, published just one month after the battle, Lieutenant Bradley, the scout chief of Terry who first saw and counted the dead, thus refuted the shocking tales of mutilation that had flooded the country:

Of the two hundred and six bodies buried on the field, there were very few that I did not see, and beyond scalping, in possibly a majority of cases, there was little mutilation. Many of the bodies were not even scalped, and in the comparatively few cases of disfiguration, it appeared to me the result rather of a blow with a knife, hatchet or war club to finish a wounded man than deliberate mutilation. . . . The bodies were nearly all stripped, but . . . I saw several entirely clothed, half a dozen at least. (Note 22.)

As for the body of the dead leader, it was found there white and undefiled. Perhaps there can be employed no better words to bring to a close this story of the Little Big Horn than Bradley's eloquent description of the dead Custer as he lay, like Saxon Harold at Hastings, surrounded by the bodies of his men-at-arms:

Probably never did hero who had fallen upon the field of battle appear so much to have died a natural death. His expression was rather that of a man who had fallen asleep and enjoyed peaceful dreams than of one who had met his death amid such fearful scenes as that field had witnessed, the features being wholly without ghastliness or any impress of fear, horror or despair. He had died as he lived, a hero.



NOTE 1

General Terry made two reports upon the battle of the Little Big Horn. The first, which was dated June 27, 1876, makes no mention of his plan for coöperative action by the columns of Custer and Gibbon. The second, which was intended to be confidential, was dated July 2, 1876. It reached Chicago in advance of the first report and while General Sheridan, to whom it was addressed, was in Philadelphia attending the Centennial Exposition. Sheridan, upon receipt of the confidential message, showed it to Sherman, then in command of the Army, who was also in Philadelphia at the time. Sherman, desiring to relay the message to the Secretary of War at once, intrusted it to a person whom he supposed to be a Government messenger, but who proved to be a reporter for the "Philadelphia Inquirer." This enterprising journalist copied the message, and it appeared in full in the columns of the "Inquirer," July 7, 1876, and later, in the "Army and Navy Journal." It was the first official news of the disaster. The message follows:

I think I owe it to myself to put you more fully in possession of the facts of the late operations. While at the mouth of the Rosebud I submitted my plan to Gen. Gibbon and to General Custer. They approved it heartily. It was that Custer with his whole regiment should move up the Rosebud till he should meet a trail which Reno had discovered a few days before but that he should not follow it directly to the Little Big Horn; that he should send scouts over it and keep his main force further to the south so as to prevent the Indians from slipping in between himself and the mountains. He was also to examine the headwaters of Tullock's creek as he passed it and send me word of what he found there. A scout was furnished him for the purpose of crossing the country to me. We calculated it would take Gibbon's column until the twenty-sixth to reach the mouth of the Little Big Horn and that the wide sweep which I had proposed Custer should make would require so much time that Gibbon would be able to coöperate with him in attacking any Indians that might be found on that stream. I asked Custer how long his marches would be. He said they would be at first about thirty miles a day. Measurements were made and calculation based on that rate of progress. I talked with him about his strength and at one time suggested that perhaps it would be well for me to take Gibbon's cavalry and go with him. To this suggestion he replied that without reference to the command he would prefer his own regiment alone. As a homogeneous body, as much could be done with it as with the two combined and he expressed the utmost confidence that he had all the force that he could need, and I shared his confidence. The plan adopted was the only one that promised to bring the Infantry into action and I desired to make sure of things, by getting up every available man. I offered Custer the battery of Gatling guns but he declined it saying that it might embarrass him: that he was strong enough without it. The movements proposed for Genl. Gibbon's column were carried out to the letter and had the attack been deferred until it was up I cannot doubt that we should have been successful. The Indians had evidently nerved themselves for a stand, but as I learn from Capt. Benteen, on the twenty-second the cavalry marched twelve miles; on the twenty-third, thirty five miles; from five A. M. till eight P. M. on the twenty-fourth, forty-five miles and then after night ten miles further; then after resting but without unsaddling, twenty-three miles to the battlefield. The proposed route was not taken but as soon as the trail was struck it was followed. I cannot learn that any examination of Tullock's creek was made. I do not tell you this to cast any reflection upon Custer. For whatever errors he may have committed he has paid the penalty and you cannot regret his loss more

that I do, but I feel that our plan must have been successful had it been carried out, and I desire you to know the facts. In the action itself, so far as I can make out, Custer acted under a misapprehension. He thought, I am confident, that the Indians were running. For fear that they might get away he attacked without getting all his men up and divided his command so that they were beaten in detail. I do not at all propose to give the thing up here but I think that my troops require a little time and in view of the strength which the Indians have developed I propose to bring up what little reinforcement I can get. I should be glad of any that you can send me. I can take two companies of Infantry from Powder River and there are a few recruits and detached men whom I can get for the cavalry. I ought to have a larger mounted force than I now have but I fear cannot be obtained. I hear nothing from General Crook's operations. If I could hear I should be able to form plans for the future much more intelligently.

I should very much like instructions from you, or if not instructions, your views of the situation based as they must be on what has taken place elsewhere as well as here.

I shall reft as rapidly as possible and if at any time I should get information showing that I can act in conjunction with General Crook, or independently, with good results, I shall leave at once.

I send in another dispatch a copy of my written orders to Custer, but these were supplemented by the distinct understanding that Gibbon could not get to the Little Big Horn before the evening of the 26th.

ALFRED H. TERRY,
Brigadier General.

NOTE 11

General Terry's written instructions to Custer were as follows:

Camp at the Mouth of Rosebud River,
June 22, 1876.

Lt. Col. Custer, 7th Cavalry:

Colonel: The Brigadier General commanding directs that as soon as your regiment can be made ready for the march, you proceed up the Rosebud in pursuit of the Indians whose trail was discovered by Major Reno a few days ago. It is, of course, impossible to give you any definite instructions in regard to this movement, and were it not impossible to do so, the Department commander places too much confidence in your zeal, energy and ability to wish to impose upon you precise orders which might hamper your action when nearly in contact with the enemy.

He will, however, indicate to you his own views of what your action should be, and he desires that you should conform to them unless you shall see sufficient reason for departing from them. He thinks that you should proceed up the Rosebud until you ascertain definitely the direction in which the trail above spoken of leads. Should it be found, as it appears to be almost certain that it will be found, to turn toward the Little Big Horn, he thinks that you should still proceed southward, perhaps as far as the headwaters of the Tongue, and then turn toward the Little Big Horn, feeling constantly, however, to your left so as to preclude the possibility of the escape of the Indians to the south or southeast by passing around your left flank.

The column of Col. Gibbon is now in motion for the mouth of the Big Horn. As soon as it reaches that point it will cross the Yellowstone and move up at least as far as the forks of the Big and Little Big Horn. Of course its future movements must be controlled by circumstances as they may arise; but it is hoped that the Indians, if upon the Little Big Horn, may be so nearly enclosed by the two columns that their escape will be impossible.

The Department Commander desires that on your way up the Rosebud you should thoroughly examine the upper part of Tullock's Creek, and that you should endeavor to send a scout through to Col. Gibbon's column with information of the result of your

examination. The lower part of this creek will be examined by a detachment from Col. Gibbon's command.

The supply steamer will be pushed up the Big Horn as far as the forks of the river are found to be navigable for that space, and the Department Commander, who will accompany the column of Col. Gibbon, desires you to report to him there not later than the expiration of the time for which your troops are rationed, unless in the meantime you receive further orders.

Respectfully,

E. W. SMITH,
Capt. 18th Infantry,
Acting Asst. Adjt. Genl.

NOTE III

The proportion of raw recruits in the Seventh Cavalry during the Little Big Horn campaign was very large. It has been impossible to ascertain the exact figures, for the rolls and returns of the regiment for 1876, which have been laboriously examined at Washington, do not contain the necessary data. Generals Edgerly and Godfrey, however, are authority for the statement that speaking in general terms, the companies contained from thirty to forty per cent of recruits without prior service. To very many of those, their first fight was their last. During the proceedings of the Reno Court of Inquiry held at Chicago in 1879, Sergeant F. A. Culbertson, of Company A, testified (as to Reno's battalion):

Most of G Company were recruits; about half; and about a third of A Company. I don't know about M. The new men had had very little training; they were very poor horsemen and would fire at random. They are brave enough, but had not had the time nor opportunity to make soldiers. Some were not fit to take into action.

General Godfrey has lately informed the author that K Company took twenty-five recruits at St. Paul, just before the campaign opened. The total strength of the company after leaving the supply camp on the Yellowstone was forty-two, and these were disposed on June 25 as follows: with the pack train, 7; with General Custer as flag bearer, 1; hospital steward, 1; orderly to Dr. De Wolf, 1; total detached, 10. In action, 32, of whom 10 were detailed as horse holders, leaving a fighting strength of 22.

NOTE IV

Statement of George Herendeen, scout, July 7, 1876, published in the "Army and Navy Journal," July 15, 1876:

About daylight we went into camp, made coffee, and soon after it was light, the scouts brought Custer word that they had seen the village from the top of a divide which separated the Rosebud from the Little Big Horn River. We moved up the creek until near its head and concealed ourselves in a ravine. It was about three miles from the head of the creek where we were then, to the top of the divide from which the Indians scouts said the village could be seen. General Custer, with a few orderlies, galloped forward to look at the Indian camp. In about an hour Custer returned and said he could not see the Indian village, but the scouts and a half-breed guide, "Mitch" Bouyer, said they could distinctly see it some fifteen miles off.

Testimony of Captain F. W. Benteen before the Court of Inquiry, 1879:

I think at the first halt (about 11:30 A. M., June 25), an orderly came to me with instructions for the officers to assemble. General Custer told us that he had just come down from the mountain; that he had been told by the scouts that they could see a

village; ponies, tepees and smoke. He gave it to us as his belief that there were no Indians there; that he had looked through his glasses and could not see any and did not think there were any there.

Testimony of Major M. A. Reno before the Court of Inquiry, 1879:

At daylight I was informed only that the Commanding Officer had gone to the top of a mountain to make observation with regard to the Indians which the scouts had reported to be in sight. When he called the officers together, I attended, of course. He said the scouts reported a large village in view from the mountain; that he did not believe it himself, as he had looked through his glass.

NOTE V

Testimony of Major M. A. Reno before the Court of Inquiry, 1879:

On the 25th at 10:30 to 11 o'clock, the command halted. There was a fresh trail visible, only a day or two old. While at this halt at the foot of the divide between the Little Big Horn and the Rosebud, a sergeant of one of the companies returned on the trail to recover some clothing of his that had been lost from a pack mule the night before. He had gone back several miles and while going over a knoll, saw two or three Indians four or five hundred yards in front of him, sitting on a box of hard bread and examining the contents of a bag. He returned at once and reported it to Capt. Yates, his company commander. Capt. Yates talked it over with Capt. Keogh, and Keogh hunted up Colonel Cooke [the Adjutant] to notify him in order that General Custer might be informed. General Custer was at that time some distance ahead at the point where the Indian ponies were [reported to be] visible.

NOTE VI

It appears that information of the exodus of fighting men from the reservations reached Crook's command June 8, when dispatches were received notifying him that all able-bodied male Indians had left the Red Cloud agency and that the Fifth Cavalry had been ordered up from Kansas to take post in his rear. See Bourke's "With Crook on the Border," pp. 295-296.

NOTE VII

It has been so often assumed that Custer, when he divided his regiment at the Little Big Horn, had definitely planned to make an enveloping attack of the kind employed by him several years before at the Washita, that it is desirable to set out the reasons for the different view expressed in this narrative. These reasons are found in the testimony of his subordinate battalion commanders as given at the Reno inquiry at Chicago in 1879.

Benteen, who diverged to the left by Custer's order, at a few minutes after 12 M., testified:

When I received my orders from Custer to separate myself from the command, I had no instructions to unite with Reno or anyone else. There was no plan at all. . . . If there had been any plan of battle, enough of that plan would have been communicated to me so that I would have known what to do under certain circumstances. Not having done that, I do not believe there was any plan. In General Custer's mind there was a belief that there were no Indians and no village. I do not know, except that I was sent off to hunt up some Indians. I was to pitch into them and let him know. And if I had found them, the distance would have been so great that we would have been wiped out before he could get to us.

Major Reno testified:

There was no plan communicated to us; if one existed, the subordinate commanders did not know of it. . . . When I say that no plan was communicated to us, I mean to the regiment. I do not think there was any plan.

That no definite plan of battle existed was evidently the belief of other officers. Lieutenant Wallace testified:

When we [first] crossed, Custer must have been to our right and rear; Benteen to our left and rear, but we knew nothing as to his orders and expected no assistance from him. I supposed from what Lieutenant Cooke said that our support would come from Custer, not Benteen. . . . There was no announcement made to Reno as to junction with Benteen that I know of. There was no plan for the reuniting of the three battalions that I ever heard of.

Sergeant Culbertson testified:

I heard Captain Weir ask Captain Moylan if, when he was Adjutant, General Custer ever gave him any particular orders about doing anything. Captain Moylan said "no", that when he was Adjutant, General Custer never told him what he was going to do: he would order him to tell company commanders to go to such and such places and that was all.

In an unpublished manuscript written by Benteen, found among his papers after his death, occurs the following:

. . . An orderly was sent to notify the officers that General Custer wished to see us: at all events the officers gathered where he was. General Custer then told us that he had just come down from the mountain where our Crow Indian scouts had been during the night, and that they had told him they could see tepee tops, lots of Indian ponies, dust, etc., but that he had looked through their telescopic glass, and that he could not see a thing, and he did not believe that they could see anything of the kind either.

This passage refers to the halt made by the regiment from 10:07 to 11:45 A. M. at the foot of the divide between the Rosebud and the Little Big Horn, when Custer went to the Crow's Nest to verify the report of the scouts. A few minutes afterward, the regiment crossed the divide, going about a mile, when the battalion division was made at 12:07 P. M., Benteen diverging to the left immediately thereafter.

NOTE VIII

Testimony of Lieutenant George D. Wallace before the Court of Inquiry, 1879:

Lieutenant Cooke and Captain Keogh went with us toward the ford. Where they turned back I don't know.

NOTE IX

The situation of Reno's command immediately before he abandoned the position in the timber was graphically described by his officers during the inquiry at Chicago. Lieutenant Wallace of G Company testified:

When we went on the skirmish line I for the first time saw the village, and the Indians were thick on our front and were pressing to our left and rear. After a short time it was reported that they were coming to the opposite bank and were trying to get our horses. Company G was taken off the line and put in the timber. The skirmish line soon had to fall back into the timber on account of exhaustion of ammunition and Indians on left and rear. After being there some time the Indians commenced firing from across the stream fifty yards from us and in our rear in the timber. There was no protection where we were, and the other side was a bank. Word was passed that we would have to charge them, as we were being surrounded . . .

Lieutenant Varnum, in command of Reno's scouts said:

Captain Moylan called to me that the Indians were circling to the left and into

the timber, and our horses and ammunition would be cut off and something must be done . . . At the time the move was made a great many bullets were dropping into the woods from the rear. I did not see any Indians there, and whether the bullets came from the bluffs above or from below I don't know. The bottom near the stream was heavy underbrush.

Captain Myles Moylan of A Company testified:

The horses were led into the timber for protection and the men deployed as skirmishers, G on the right, mine [A] in the center and M on the left. In about ten minutes I understood that Major Reno had information that the Indians were turning his right, coming up the left bank of the river, and the greater portion of G was withdrawn and taken into the woods, leaving an open space between the right of my company and the timber. I extended to cover that. . . . I don't know how many Indians had got into the timber. I saw forty or fifty; there may have been several hundred. . . . The Indians in the timber next to the river were firing: 40 or 50 shots or more at the time we left.

Lieutenant De Rudio, in his testimony stated:

Lieutenant Wallace directed my attention to Indians coming in on the other side of the woods. I started over with five or six men to see. . . . I saw some Indians through the woods, downstream. . . . I noticed the company guidon on the bank. . . . about 40 feet away. I crawled up and grabbed it. There were twenty or thirty Indians coming about 40 feet away. . . . They fired a volley at me. . . . There were about two hundred Indians on our right when we were in the timber.

George Herendeen, a civilian scout, testified:

The Indians came around our left and into the timber. As there was no firing on the line they came closer and closer. I saw twenty or twenty-five where I fired at them and more coming. . . . Major Reno was sitting on his horse in the park. I heard him order "dismount", and then there was a volley fired by the Indians, I judge the same ones I had seen coming in, and fired at. The Indians were not over thirty feet from us when they fired that volley.

NOTE X

General Godfrey has recently stated to the author that Lieutenant Gibson, in reply to his direct question, informed him that the last time he went to the top of the hills the valley of the Little Big Horn was visible. This information was contained in a letter from Gibson to Godfrey dated August 8, 1908, in which he says:

Now as to my little scout to the left to find the Little Big Horn Valley, I can state definitely that I did find and see it. . . . Benteen sent me with a small detail . . . and he gave me his field glasses to take with me. I got some distance in advance . . . I crossed an insignificant stream running through a narrow valley which I knew was not the Little Big Horn, so I kept on to the high divide on the other side of it and from the top of it I could see plainly up the Little Big Horn Valley for a long distance with the aid of the glasses; but in the direction of the village I could not see far on account of the sharp turns in it, or at any rate a turn which obstructed the view. I saw not a living thing in it and I hurried back and reported so to Benteen who then altered his course so as to pick up the trail, and you know the rest. I have often wondered what the result might have been if Benteen had taken his whole battalion to where he sent me, and then to have struck the village at some point other than where we did strike.

NOTE XI

Testimony of Captain F. W. Benteen before the Court of Inquiry, 1879:

From my orders I might have gone on twenty miles without finding a valley. Still I was to go on to the first valley and if I did not find any Indians, I was to go on to

the next valley. Those were the exact words of the order. . . . I understood it as a rather senseless order. . . . I consider that I violated my orders when I struck to the right. If I had carried them out I would have been twenty-five miles away. . . . As it was, I was certainly too far to cooperate with Custer when he wanted me.

NOTE XII

See "Come On—Be Quick—Bring Packs," the complete story of Trumpeter Martin, CAVALRY JOURNAL, July, 1923.

NOTE XIII

It is a matter of great uncertainty as to the time of the attack on Custer, with reference to the time of Reno's retreat. Many of the Indians have said that they did not fight Custer until after they whipped Reno. As to those who were in the valley fight with Reno, this is undoubtedly true. But the logic of the whole situation, the time element, the distances traversed, and the fact that fully three quarters of the Indian force was waiting for Custer at the lower end of the village and ambushed him as soon as he turned toward the river, impels the belief that the attack upon him commenced some time before Reno's retreat. True, Reno's command heard the firing down river only after they arrived on the hill; but that proves nothing, for while in action themselves, they would not have been able to hear anything but the noise of their own musketry. Lieutenant De Rudio, who was left in the timber when the retreat was made, testified before the Court of Inquiry in 1879:

Whether the Indians who left Reno to go down stream got there soon enough to assist in the attack on Custer I don't know. They started after the heavy firing commenced.

Reno was opposed largely by Hunkpapás and Blackfeet, who were camped at the upper or southern end of the village. The attack on Custer was begun by the Cheyennes and Ogalallas under Crazy Horse and Two Moon who were camped at the lower or northern end of the village. When Reno retreated, Gall, who had chased him to the river, dashed back to take charge of the attack on Custer from the south; and as soon as he arrived, he led the rush which crushed Calhoun and Keogh, while Crazy Horse and Two Moon were performing the same office as to the other companies of Custer's command.

Lieutenant Varnum testified before the Court of Inquiry:

The last time I saw Custer's command was about the time we dismounted in the bottom. I then saw the gray horse company moving down along the bluffs. I only saw it momentarily. It was back from the edge of the bluffs and the head and rear of the column were behind the edge of the bluffs. They were farther down stream than the point we struck in crossing, probably three quarters of a mile from where we then were in the bottom; they were moving at a trot. This was about an hour before Capt. Benteen joined us after we got on the hill. General Custer must have been in action before Benteen joined Reno.

NOTE XIV

The following résumé of testimony given at the Reno Inquiry clearly reflects the impressions and sentiments of the members of Reno's and Benteen's battalions regarding Custer's situation and whereabouts during the

night of the twenty-fifth, and shows beyond question that such a thing as his possible destruction never crossed their minds.

Lieutenant Wallace said:

After we occupied the hill there was no uneasiness about Custer; but there was a great deal of swearing about General Custer's running off and leaving us. . . . We were looking for him back the first night and didn't understand why we hadn't seen him. The command thought Custer had sent us in and then gone off and left us to look out for ourselves; that he had made an attack and probably been defeated, and had gone off down the river to meet General Terry.

Lieutenant (now General) Edgerly said:

Nobody had any idea that Custer was destroyed: the belief was general that he had gone to join Terry.

Lieutenant Varnum testified thus:

I suppose everybody felt as I did, wondering what had become of Custer and where he was. I don't know that there was any special worry—he had five companies with him. I don't think there was any idea or thought in the command that he was in the fix he was. The command felt in doubt, wondering if he was corralled as we were, or had been driven away to Terry; but that he had been wiped out—there was no such thought. . . . When General Terry came up the first thing I asked was, "Where is Custer; do you know what has become of Custer?" and I supposed the cavalry of Terry's command was Custer.

And Lieutenant (now General) Godfrey stated:

There was an impression among the men that Custer had been repulsed and had abandoned them.

Benteen testified:

It was the belief of the officers on the hill during the night of the 25th that General Custer had gone off to join General Terry and that we were abandoned to our fate.

Captain McDougall of the rear guard said:

During the night of the 25th the conclusion was that Custer had met the same crowd and they were either following him or else he had gone to join General Terry. . . . We had no idea that Custer's command was destroyed.

NOTE XV

Until the surrender of Kill Eagle, one of the older chiefs present at the battle, the contemporary press was filled with stories, probably sponsored by men of Reno's command, that the ranks of the Sioux contained many white allies. Indeed, Reno in his report said, "I think we were fighting all the Sioux Nation, and also all the desperadoes, renegades, half breeds and squaw men between the Missouri and the Arkansas and east of the Rocky Mountains."

One tale was that deserters from the Army directed the Sioux attack; another that a cashiered West Pointer had drilled the warriors and instructed them in tactics. Still another, that they had learned the Army's bugle signals and employed a deserter trumpeter to blow the war chief's orders on his bugle.

All these stories proved figments of imagination, and when Kill Eagle gave himself up he put them all at rest. No whites fought in the Indian ranks, and the bugle calls were blown by a warrior upon a captured trumpet!

NOTE XVI½

No authentic information as to the Indian loss at the Little Big Horn has ever been available. After the hurried departure of the Sioux, two tepees

containing the dead bodies of some twenty-two warriors, were found standing in the village. The bodies were dressed as for burial, and the tepees were surrounded by the bodies of ponies, arranged in accord with savage burial custom. Several more bodies were discovered along the trail taken by the Indians, these being sepultured in trees and on scaffolds.

Altogether, about forty dead were thus accounted for: some of these, however, were probably casualties of Crook's fight on the Rosebud, which occurred on June 18. How many of the Indians were wounded at the Little Big Horn, or died of wounds received in the battle, no one has ever known.

NOTE XVI

According to General Godfrey's tally, which is undoubtedly correct, 212 bodies were recovered. Lieutenant Bradley in his letter of July 25, 1876 (see note 22), gives the number as 206. Godfrey's, however, included the bodies found in the village.

The exact number of men with Custer is not known. It was, however, about 225. The bodies of several, both officers and men, were never found, or, if found, never identified. They had lain in the hot sun three days when burial took place, and the difficulty of identification in many cases is not to be wondered at.

The battle of the Little Big Horn was hardly over when alleged witnesses or survivors began to appear. Even now, fifty years after the event, it is no infrequent occurrence to find some enterprising imagination still at work, whose owner comes forward with spurious claims. There is no truth in any of these tales. No authentic witnesses save the Sioux have ever appeared, and their accounts are at such variance that it is impossible to reconcile them. It was long believed that Curley, a Crow scout, went into the fight with Custer and escaped in disguise; but his story has been completely discredited by the other Crow scouts who were his companions that day.

NOTE XVII

Reno, on returning from his scout, reported that the trail he struck on the Rosebud was of a band of some three hundred lodges. This appears to have been the only late information the regiment possessed as to the enemy's strength.

NOTE XVIII

The immediate cause of Reno's demand for a court of inquiry was a letter addressed by Custer's biographer, Frederick Whittaker, to the Hon. W. W. Corlett, a delegate to Congress from Wyoming, in which he vitriolically urged a congressional investigation of the conduct of both Reno and Benteen, against whom he made the most serious of charges. The letter was dated May 18, 1878, and Reno's demand for a court of inquiry followed its publication on June 13, 1878, his letter to the President being dated June 22, 1878. He had previously urged the Military Committee of the House to resolve upon the inquiry asked by Whittaker, but Congress had adjourned without action. Reno's critics have always insisted that he made no move to clear his record until the statute of

limitations had barred trial by court-martial. While it is true that he did not demand a court of inquiry as promptly as another might have done, it is equally true that during all the time intervening between the battle and his demand for such a court, no charges were ever preferred against him.

NOTE XIX

Whether Major Reno was justified in leaving the timber, whether his movement to the hills was inspired by cowardice, whether his conduct throughout the action was craven, are questions about which there will be dispute and controversy so long as the battle of the Little Big Horn is remembered. This narrative is not intended as support to either side; it simply endeavors to state "the haps as they happened." Reno's conduct of the action in the valley has been so bitterly assailed, however, and he has been so unsparingly condemned by authors who have written of the Little Big Horn fight, both for his failure to charge into the village and for his retreat to the hills, that it is only fair to him that the opinions of the officers and men who were with him, as they gave them under oath during the inquiry at Chicago in 1879, be made known.

The following extracts give these opinions as they were expressed upon the witness stand by every surviving officer of his battalion except Captain French of M Company, who was not called, and by the only enlisted man whose opinion was asked:

Failure to Charge into the Village

Lieutenant Luther R. Hare, Scouts:

If Reno had continued to advance mounted, I don't think he would have got a man through: the column would not have lasted five minutes. His dismounting and deploying was all that saved us.

Captain Myles Moylan, A Company:

In my judgment if he [Reno] had continued to charge down the valley he would have been there yet. In my judgment the command, without assistance, would have been annihilated in the timber. If the Indians had followed and closed in on the retreat to the bluffs the same result would have followed.

Lieutenant Charles De Rudio, A Company:

I saw no indications of cowardice on Reno's part; nor any want of skill in the handling and disposition of men. When he halted and dismounted I said, "Good for you," because I saw that if we had gone 500 yards further we would have been butchered.

Retirement of the Skirmish Line

Sergeant Culbertson, G Company:

If the skirmish line had not been retired, or had been held out there three minutes longer, I don't think any one would have gotten off the line. I don't think Major Reno could have held the timber but a very few minutes.

Leaving the Timber in Retreat

Lieutenant George D. Wallace, G Company:

I think Reno did the only thing possible under the circumstances. If we had remained in the timber all would have been killed. It was his duty to take care of his command and to use his best judgment and discretion.

Lieutenant Charles A. Varnum, Scouts:

The position in the timber was as good as any place on the left bank. But I don't think we had enough men to hold it and keep the Indians out of it. The front was good; but I don't know about the rear. At the time the move was made a great many bullets were dropping into the woods from the rear.

Lieutenant L. R. Hare, Scouts:

Major Reno stayed in the timber till all hope of support from Custer had vanished. I think the reason we left was because if we stayed much longer, say twenty minutes, we could not have gotten out at all. . . . I can only estimate his conduct by the way it turned out. I think his action saved what was left of the regiment.

Knowledge or Expectation of Reinforcement by Benteen

Major M. A. Reno:

At the time I left the timber I did not see Benteen's column nor had I the remotest reason to expect him to unite with me.

Captain F. W. Benteen:

When I received my orders from Custer to separate myself from the command I had no instructions to unite at anytime with Reno or anyone else. There was no plan at all. . . . The reason I returned was because I thought I would be needed at the ridge. I acted entirely upon my own judgment. I was separated from Reno fifteen miles when at the greatest distance. . . . My going back was providential or accidental or whatever you may be pleased to term it.

General Winfield Scott Ederly, who was Weir's lieutenant during the battle, and whose knowledge and information equals that of any officer of Benteen's battalion, does not consider that Reno was cowardly. On the contrary, he says, in a recent letter to the author that while, in common with all his command, Reno was intensely excited when he reached the hills, he soon calmed down, and thereafter "was perfectly cool, though by no means heroic."

On the other hand, General Edward S. Godfrey, who commanded K Company, of Benteen's battalion, during the action on the hill, thinks that Reno was cowardly and craven throughout. When called as a witness at Chicago, however, he did not plainly state that opinion, but characterized what he himself observed as "nervous timidity."

The late General Nelson A. Miles condemned Reno in the strongest of terms, as does also another very distinguished veteran of the Indian wars, Captain R. G. Carter (retired), late of the Fourth Cavalry, Mackenzie's regiment. As neither General Miles nor Captain Carter were present at the Little Big Horn, their opinions are necessarily based upon hearsay and report.

Ederly, Godfrey, Varnum, and Hare are the only officers of the Seventh of 1876 who now survive. The opinions of both Varnum and Hare, who of the four were the only ones who participated in the valley fight, have already been quoted verbatim, just as they gave them from the witness-stand in 1879.

From the foregoing résumé, it appears that in the opinion of his own officers Reno exercised proper discretion and good leadership up to the time his retreat to the hills began, and that the dispositions and movements ordered by him were correct and requisite to meet the military situation. From that time on, however, it seems evident that he lost his head, and, with it, all control over

his men. When Bloody Knife was killed at his side, he became startled and unnerved. His formations were made in undue haste, and many men were left behind who neither heard nor understood the order to leave the timber. The run to the river became a panic, and when those who successfully ran the gauntlet reached the bluffs, they were halted with difficulty. Reno at no time thereafter regained his lost leadership, and it was Benteen whose "providential" arrival saved the day and what was left of the regiment.

Fire Control

There appears to have been little or no fire-control during the fight in the valley. The men shot away their ammunition both recklessly and rapidly, and when the survivors reached the hills, more than half their scanty store had been expended. For this, Reno has been bitterly assailed, and not with entire justice.

There is no doubt that with seasoned troops proper fire control is always possible. It is by no means always had, however. *But with ranks full of raw recruits, the difficulty of fire control immeasurably increases.*

Reno's seasoned men were necessarily detailed as horse-holders, and thus his firing line was filled with men who never before had been in action. Complete fire control is impossible under such conditions, however great its need; and it is in every situation the responsibility, primarily, of the platoon and company commanders. While Reno, as battalion commander, is properly subject to a share of criticism, it is they, rather than he, who should bear the greater burden of blame for its apparent total absence during the fight in the valley.

NOTE XX

The Court of Inquiry convened at Major Reno's request sat at Chicago during January, 1879. Colonel John H. King, Ninth Infantry, was President; Colonel Wesley Merritt, Fifth Cavalry, and Colonel William B. Royall, Third Cavalry, completed the membership. After a long and protracted hearing, during which some twenty-three witnesses were examined, the Court came to its findings, which were thereafter published by the War Department, as follows:

General Orders
No. 17

Headquarters of the Army,
Adjutant General's Office,
Washington, March 11, 1879.

1. The Court of Inquiry of which Colonel John H. King, 9th Infantry, is President, instituted by direction of the President, in Special Orders No. 255, Headquarters of the Army, Adjutant General's Office, November 25, 1878, on the application of Major Marcus A. Reno, 7th Cavalry, for the purpose of inquiring into Major Reno's conduct at the battle of the Little Big Horn River, on the 25th and 26th days of June, 1876, has reported the following facts and opinions, viz:

First. On the morning of the 25th of June, 1876, the 7th Cavalry, Lieutenant Colonel G. A. Custer, commanding, operating against the hostile Indians in Montana Territory, near the Little Big Horn River, was divided into four battalions, two of which were commanded by Colonel Custer in person, with the exception of one company in charge of the pack-train; one by Major Reno and one by Captain F. W. Benteen. This division took place from about twelve (12) to fifteen (15) miles

from the scene of the battle or battles afterwards fought. The column under Captain Benteen received orders to move to the left for an indefinite distance (to the first and second valleys) hunting Indians, with orders to charge any it might meet with. The battalion under Major Reno received orders to draw out of the column, and doing so marched parallel [with] and only a short distance from, the column commanded by Colonel Custer.

Second. About three or four miles from what afterwards was found to be the Little Big Horn River, where the fighting took place, Major Reno received orders to move forward as rapidly as he thought prudent, until coming up with the Indians, who were reported fleeing, he would charge them and drive everything before him, and would receive the support of the column under Colonel Custer.

Third. In obedience to the orders given by Colonel Custer, Captain Benteen marched to the left (south), at an angle of about forty-five degrees, but, meeting an impracticable country, was forced by it to march more to his right than the angle above indicated and nearer approaching a parallel route to that trail followed by the rest of the command.

Fourth. Major Reno, in obedience to the orders given him, moved on at a fast trot on the main Indian trail until reaching the Little Big Horn River, which he forded, and halted for a few minutes to re-form his battalion. After re-forming, he marched the battalion forward towards the Indian village, down stream or in a northerly direction, two companies in line of battle and one in support, until about half way to the point where he finally halted, when he brought the company in reserve forward to the line of battle, continuing the movement at a fast trot or gallop until after passing over a distance of about two miles, when he halted and dismounted to fight on foot at a point of timber upon which the right flank of his battalion rested. After fighting in this formation for less than half an hour, the Indians passing to his left rear and appearing in his front, the skirmish line was withdrawn to the timber, and the fight continued for a short time—half an hour or forty-five minutes in all—when the command, or nearly all of it, was mounted, formed, and, at a rapid gait, was withdrawn to a hill on the opposite side of the river. In this movement one officer and about sixteen soldiers and citizens were left in the woods, besides one wounded man or more, two citizens and thirteen soldiers rejoining the command afterwards. In this retreat Major Reno's battalion lost some twenty-nine men in killed and wounded, and three officers, including Doctor DeWolf, killed.

Fifth. In the meantime Captain Benteen, having carried out, as far as was practicable, the spirit of his orders, turned in the direction of the route taken by the remainder of the regiment, and reaching the trail, followed it to near the crossing of the Little Big Horn, reaching there about the same time Reno's command was crossing the river in retreat lower down, and finally joined his battalion with that of Reno, on the hill. Forty minutes or one hour later the pack train, which had been left behind on the trail by the rapid movement of the command and the delays incident to its march, joined the united command, which then consisted of seven companies, together with about thirty (30) or thirty-five (35) men belonging to the companies under Colonel Custer.

Sixth. After detaching Benteen's column, Colonel Custer moved with his immediate command, on the trail followed by Reno, to a point within about one mile of the river, where he diverged to the right (or northward), following the general direction of the river to a point about four miles below that (afterward taken by Major Reno) where he and his command were destroyed by the hostiles. The last living witness of this march, Trumpeter Martin, left Colonel Custer's command when it was about two miles distant from the field where it afterwards met its fate. There is nothing more in evidence as to this command, save that firing was heard proceeding from its direction from about the time Reno retreated from the bottom

up to the time the pack train was approaching the position on the hill. All firing which indicated fighting was concluded before the final preparations [were made] in Major Reno's command for the movement which was afterwards attempted.

Seventh. After the distribution of ammunition and a proper provision for the wounded men, Major Reno's entire command moved down the river in the direction it was thought Custer's column had taken, and in which it was known General Terry's command was to be found. This movement was carried sufficiently far to discover that its continuance would imperil the entire command, upon which it returned to the position formerly occupied, and made a successful resistance till succor reached it. The defense of the position on the hill was a heroic one against fearful odds.

The conduct of the officers throughout was excellent, and while subordinates, in some instances, did more for the safety of the command by brilliant displays of courage than did Major Reno, there was nothing in his conduct which requires animadversion from this Court.

OPINION

It is the conclusion of this Court, in view of all the facts in evidence, that no further proceedings are necessary in this case, and it expresses this opinion in compliance with the concluding clause of the order convening the Court.

II. The proceedings and opinion of the Court of Inquiry in the foregoing case of Major Marcus A. Reno, 7th Cavalry, are approved by order of the President.

III. By direction of the Secretary of War, the Court of Inquiry of which Colonel John H. King, 9th Infantry, is President is hereby dissolved.

By Command of General Sherman:

E. D. TOWNSEND,
Adjutant General.

Official.

NOTE XXI

Camp near Big Horn on Yellowstone River,
July 4th, 1876.

To his
Excellency the President
and the Honorable Representatives
of the United States.

Gentlemen:

We the enlisted men the survivors of the battle on the Heights of Little Horn River, on the 25th and 26th of June 1876, of the 7th Regiment of Cavalry who subscribe our names to this petition, most earnestly solicit the President and Representatives of our Country, that the vacancies among the Commissioned Officers of our Regiment, made by the slaughter of our brave, heroic, now lamented Lieutenant Colonel George A. Custer, and the other noble dead Commissioned Officers of our Regiment who fell close by him on the bloody field, daring the savage demons to the last, be filled by the Officers of the Regiment only. That Major M. A. Reno, be our Lieutenant Colonel vice Custer, killed; Captain F. W. Benteen our Major vice Reno, promoted. The other vacancies to be filled by officers of the Regiment by seniority. Your petitioners know this to be contrary to the established rule of promotion, but prayerfully solicit a deviation from the usual rule in this case, as it will be conferring a bravely fought for and a justly merited promotion on officers who by their bravery, coolness and decision on the 25th and 26th of June, 1876, saved the lives of every man now living of the 7th Cavalry who participated in the battle, one of the most bloody on record and one that would have ended with the loss of life of every officer and enlisted man on the field; only for the position taken by Major Reno, which we held with bitter tenacity against fearful odds to the last.

To support this assertion—had our position been taken 100 yards back from the

brink of the heights overlooking the river we would have been entirely cut off from water; and from behind those heights the Indian demons would have swarmed in hundreds picking off our men by detail, and before midday June 26th not an officer or enlisted man of our Regiment would have been left to tell of our dreadful fate as we then would have been completely surrounded.

With prayerful hope that our petition be granted, we have the honor to forward it through our Commanding Officer.

Very respectfully,

[236 signatures]

This petition went to General Sherman, who did not present it to the President or to Congress, but indorsed it as follows:

Headquarters Army of the
United States, Washington,
D. C., August 5, 1876.

The judicious and skilful conduct of Major Reno and Captain Benteen is appreciated, but the promotions caused by General Custer's death have been made by the President and confirmed by the Senate; therefore this petition cannot be granted. When the Sioux campaign is over I shall be most happy to recognize the valuable services of both officers and men by granting favors or recommending actual promotion.

Promotion on the field of battle was Napoleon's favorite method of stimulating his officers and soldiers to deeds of heroism, but it is impossible in our service because commissions can only be granted by the President on the advice and consent of the Senate, and except in original vacancies, promotion in a regiment is generally if not always made on the rule of seniority.

W. T. SHERMAN,
General.

NOTE XXII

The letter of Lieutenant Bradley (quoted in the text) in which he recounts the circumstances under which he discovered the Custer battlefield on the morning of June 27, 1876, and describes the condition of the bodies of the soldier dead, was published in the Helena (Montana) "Herald" for July 25, 1876. It is as follows:

Reports current in the States, circulated by many papers, of the mutilation of Custer's body, are disposed of by Lt. Bradley in a letter published in our columns today. It is not true that Custer's heart was cut out by the savages, or that his remains otherwise suffered disfigurement.

"To the Editor of the Herald,
"Helena, M. T.

July 25, 1876.

"In the presence of so great a disaster as that which overtook the Regular troops on the Little Horn, and the consequent excited state of the public mind, and its eagerness to get hold of every detail, however minute, of that unfortunate affair, it is to be expected that many stories of a sensational character, having no foundation in truth, would obtain with the public. Of such a character is that now going the rounds of the press to the effect that the Sioux had removed Custer's heart from his body and danced around it, a story related upon the authority of one Rain-in-the-Face, a Sioux Chief, who participated in the fight and afterwards returned to his agency. Of the same character, also, is the sweeping statement as to the general shocking mutilation of the bodies of the soldiers who fell on that occasion. The bare truth is painful

enough to the relatives and friends of these unfortunate men without the cruel and gratuitous exaggeration of their grief that must come from the belief that they had been horribly mutilated after death. It, therefore, seems to me worth while that these stories should receive emphatic contradiction, and being in a position to make such a denial, I address you this letter with that object.

"In my capacity as commandant of the Scouts accompanying General Gibbon's column, I was usually in the advance in all his movements, and chanced to be upon the morning of the 27th of June, when the column was moving upon the supposed Indian village in the Little Horn Valley. I was scouting the hills some two or three miles to the left of the column upon the opposite bank of the river from that traversed by the column itself, when the body of a horse attracted our attention to the field of Custer's fight, and hastening in that direction the appalling sight was revealed to us of his entire command in the embrace of death. This was the first discovery of the field, and the first hasty count made of the slain, resulting in the finding of 197 bodies reported to General Terry. Later in the day I was sent to guide Colonel Benteen of the 7th Cavalry to the field, and was a witness of his recognition of the remains of Custer. Two other officers of that regiment were also present and they could not be mistaken, and the body so identified was wholly un mutilated. Even the wounds that caused his death were scarcely discoverable (though the body was entirely naked), so much so that when I afterwards asked the gentlemen whom I accompanied whether they had observed his wounds, they were forced to say that they had not.

"Probably never did hero who had fallen upon the field of battle appear so much to have died a natural death. His expression was rather that of a man who had fallen asleep and enjoyed peaceful dreams, than of one who had met his death amid such fearful scenes as that field had witnessed, the features being wholly without ghastliness or any impress of fear, horror or despair. He had died as he lived, a hero, and excited the remark from those who had known him and saw him there, 'You could almost imagine him standing before you.' Such was Custer at the time of his burial on the 28th of June, three days after the fight in which he had fallen, and I hope this assurance will dispose of the horrible tale of the mutilation and desecration of his remains.

"Of the 206 bodies buried on the field, there were very few that I did not see, and beyond scalping, in possibly a majority of cases, there was little mutilation. Many of the bodies were not even scalped, and in the comparatively few cases of disfiguration, it appeared to me the result rather of a blow with a knife, hatchet, or war club to finish a wounded man, than deliberate mutilation. Many of Custer's men must have been disabled with wounds during the fight, and when the savages gained possession of the field, such would probably be mainly killed in the manner indicated. The bodies were nearly all stripped, but it is an error to say that Kellogg, the correspondent, was the only one that escaped this treatment. I saw several entirely clothed, half a dozen at least, who, with Kellogg, appeared to owe this immunity to the fact that they had fallen some distance from the field of battle, so that the Indians had not cared to go to them, or had overlooked them when the plundering took place.

"The real mutilation occurred in the case of Reno's men, who had fallen near the village. These had been visited by the squaws and children and in some instances the bodies were frightfully butchered. Fortunately not many were exposed to such a fate. Custer's field was some distance from the village and appears not to have been visited by these hags, which probably explains the exemption from mutilation of those who had fallen there.

"Yours truly,
JAMES H. BRADLEY,
"1st Lieut. 7th Inf."

It is proper to state for the reader's information that such authorities as James McLaughlin, author of "My Friend the Indian," who for many years was Indian agent at Standing Rock, does not accept Lieutenant Bradley's statement as correct; on the contrary, he states in the work referred to that the mutilation of bodies on the Custer field was both general and shocking. Mr. Amos Gottschall of Harrisburg, Pennsylvania, another man who had long experience among the Indians, echoes McLaughlin's views. On the other hand, W. M. Camp of Chicago, who for twenty years spent his summers among the plains tribes, says that Custer's conquerors, hundreds of whom he interviewed, very generally support what Bradley said as true.

CONCLUDING NOTE

Few white men, even in the "old days," were ever able to understand the Indian's point of view, and fewer still were able to comprehend his motives. His psychology was a field almost untouched. The Indian lived in a different world to ours, and his ideas and traditions, his customs, his beliefs and superstitions were as different from those of the white man as the poles are far apart. As well attempt to measure the ancient Phoenician by the standards of the primal Briton, or to judge the Zulu warrior by comparing him with the Chinese.

The story of an Indian campaign, to be comprehensible to white men, must be written from the white man's point of view, and this narrative is written from that point of view. There have been, perhaps, exceptional white men who from long and friendly intercourse and sympathetic contact have learned the psychology of the Indian; but those living to-day who thus knew the plains Indian of a half century ago, when his race was strong and powerful, before he had succumbed to the domination of the white man, are so few that they may be easily be counted. They were never numerous, and the author makes no claim to membership among them.

Therefore no attempt has been made to set forth the Indian viewpoint, or to include any of the various accounts of the battle related by individual Indians, for the result would almost inevitably have been misconstruction and distortion. The Indian accounts vary so widely upon nearly every salient fact as to seem irreconcilable with the white man's logic. They are sparse and hard to understand. They do not check with one another. Therefore, no effort has been made to use them.

It is, however, not difficult to account for the paucity and lack of agreement in the tales told by the Indians. After the battle, notwithstanding their overwhelming victory, the tribes separated and scattered to the four winds. Some of them soon returned to the reservations, as did Kill Eagle and his followers; others remained out until forced back by the vicissitudes to which they were subject, as did Crazy Horse and his band. Pursued everywhere by relentless troops, many were killed; others were captured or surrendered. Sitting Bull with his own band escaped to Canada, where he remained for several years.

When the "hostiles" came in, they came as suppliants or as conquered, if not as captives. They both feared and expected punishment for the part they had taken in the wiping out of Custer's command. *Vae victis* was the only rule they knew. It was natural that they should tell as little as they might; and notwithstanding promised amnesty, they did not believe the white man would keep faith. Each warrior's tale was therefore his individual story, too often shaped to please the ear of his white interrogator.

The tribal organizations were disrupted, the chiefs supplanted by new and strange leaders who had not the authority or the influence of the old ones; the power of the councils was gone. No more did their own form of government prevail, but that of the white man. The Indians' world was upside down, his freedom gone.

"No more did the teller of tales wander among the tepees, feasting upon the choicest morsels of the tent dwellers' fare, while reciting to rapt audiences the legends and folk lore of his people; no more did the criers stalk through the camps, intoning the orders of the council, summoning the people to ceremonial dances; to tribal hunts and solemn rites."

And so no Indian saga of this greatest of their triumphs over the paleface; no Siouan epic of the red avalanche that overbore the Yellow Hair and his cohorts was ever sung. Nor will it be. The day of the red man has passed forever; the stronger hand of another, and to him a stifling, civilization has slowly but surely choked him until his racial soul is dead.

The author has endeavored in the foregoing pages and notes to present a vivid and faithful picture of the great contest between the Sioux and the troops of Custer. The narrative is not offered as a complete history of the campaign of 1876, nor does it pretend to relate in detail all that occurred on that fateful twenty-fifth of June. To compass either would require a volume of considerable size. But it is believed that the important and salient facts will be found here, and that from this story the uninitiated reader may be enabled to visualize the battle as it occurred.

It should be understood that from the time of the division of the Seventh Cavalry into battalions just after crossing the divide between the Rosebud and the Little Big Horn valleys, about noon of June 25, all time periods as well as distances are necessarily approximated. These have been carefully computed after analysis of all the authentic data discoverable after a study and search extending over several years. They are believed to be nearly correct and, in the main, to approach the truth as closely as it is now possible to do. The map which appears at page 309 is believed to show more accurately the movements of the Seventh Cavalry on the day of the battle than any heretofore published.

The Pursuit After Jena

BY

Captain WM. H. COLBERN, Field Artillery

THE pursuit after the battles of Jena and Auerstadt, in Napoleon's campaign against Prussia in 1806, involved many typical cavalry actions. It might be interesting therefore, to consider briefly the composition and employment of the French cavalry at that time.

Napoleon had a very high opinion of the cavalry branch and realized the necessity for good light cavalry to screen the movements of an army and to obtain information of the movements and designs of an enemy.

He was equally impressed with the value of cavalry when used in large masses as a mobile reserve to make great attacks on the battle field or to exploit a success. After his accession to command the organization of the cavalry was changed accordingly. Scattered regiments were formed into brigades and divisions of troops of the same type.

Heavy cavalry, intended to maneuver en masse at slow pace, was composed of cuirassiers and carbineers. Reduced gaits made losses by fire so much heavier that Napoleon reintroduced the cuirass and casque as a means of protection. Carbineer regiments were also provided with this defensive armor. Their armament consisted at first of a carbine with bayonet, pistol and a straight sword. The bayonet was soon discarded.

Light horse consisted of dragoons, mounted chasseurs and hussars, organized and equipped with a view to rapid maneuver and long marches. They were armed generally with the saber, pistols and a small musket.

Squadrons were grouped four in a regiment; the division consisted of five regiments; and the corps was usually composed of two, three or four divisions.

Just prior to the campaign of 1806, six divisions of heavy cavalry and the two light cavalry brigades of Generals Lasalle and Milhaud were grouped into a cavalry corps under Prince Murat and given the designation, Cavalry Reserve or independent cavalry. Its strength in 1806 amounted to 22,000 men.

Each corps of infantry had its division of light cavalry or corps cavalry which was employed in conjunction with the infantry and was charged with the reconnaissance and security of the corps.

Napoleon understood the importance of cavalry in preparing the way for a battle, in screening the movements of the infantry and artillery while concentrating and developing for action and in aiding them during the progress of a battle by charges in support of attacks. He also knew when to launch it against a shaken and demoralized enemy in order to exploit a success and prevent his reorganization.

In the successive wars of the Empire the principle of cooperation of all three arms came to be fully appreciated and Napoleon supported his attacks of infantry and cavalry with artillery and always had his cavalry and infantry ready to sup-

port each other. While impressed with this idea he did not, however, overdo it by scattering and mixing the arms together. His cavalry, although partly divided to support the different corps of infantry was still retained in mass in sufficient force to enable decisive charges to be launched upon critical points of a battle field.

At the battle of Castiglione, where the Austrian center was penetrated and the cavalry brilliantly employed in the break-through and ensuing pursuit, Napoleon saw the decisive results to be gained by using his horsemen vigorously in following up a beaten and flying foe.

THE CAUSE OF HOSTILITIES

In order to proceed logically with the pursuit after Jena and to understand the strategic importance of its result, it will be necessary to summarize the events leading up to hostilities and the following battles of Jena and Auerstadt which marked the beginning and end of the Campaign of 1806 against Prussia.

The proximate cause of hostilities between France and Prussia was the violation of Hohenzollern territory by Napoleon's army on the march to Ulm in September of 1805. Being occupied with Austria at the time Napoleon, to assuage her anger offered Prussia the province of Hanover, which was a hereditary possession of the King of England. Frederick William of Prussia refused to accept Hanover, on Napoleon's conditions, which would have involved hostilities with the English. He later learned that in negotiations with England, France had promised the return of Hanover in the event of peace. Furious at having been duped and remembering the violation of his frontiers the year before, he allowed himself to be forced into premature action by the clamor of the war party.

THE CONCENTRATION AT JENA

Of the several plans of action open to the Prussians, probably the most feasible was to have waited defensively with forces concentrated on the upper Saale, supporting their left on the frontiers of Austria. Beaten in front they could have retired on Dresden and Silesia and waited with the Russians on the Oder. On the contrary they advanced into Saxony and decided to concentrate around Muningen in three masses. The corps of Ruchel, 20,000 men, formed the right at Eisenach, the principal army of 50,000 men under the King and the Duke of Brunswick took position in the vicinity of Erfurth, while the Army of the Left, about 50,000 men, under the Prince of Hohenlohe was concentrated on Blankenhayn. The flanks were protected by detachments under General Blucher on the right and Tauenzien on the left at Schleitz.

Napoleon in the meantime, had concentrated the corps of Marshals Soult, Bernadotte, Davoust, Lannes, Ney and Augereau, the Guard and Murat's cavalry, in all about 190,000 strong, in the valley of the Main between Wursburg and Amberg. His plan was to move in mass on the right to turn the Prussian left, cut them off from Berlin by Hof and Gera and prevent their junction with the Russians then cantoned on the Nieman. On receipt of the ultimatum the French army advanced in three columns, by Colburg to Saalfeld, by Kronach to Saalburg

the Prussian resistance suddenly collapsed and the whole corps scattered and fell back in disorder on Weimar.

On the same day the Prussian main body under the King and the Duke of Brunswick, retreating without adequate security, was intercepted at Auerstadt and decisively defeated by Davoust's 3rd Corps in a brilliant execution of an active defense. Confronted by superior numbers the advanced French infantry division under Goudin formed in squares, repelled a charge by Blucher's cavalry and beat off the piecemeal attacks of the Prussian infantry. When the Prussians wavered Davoust assumed the offensive and sending in the divisions of Moraud and Friant completely routed the forces which were rallying behind their reserve. Headed off by Bernadotte at Dornberg and joined by fugitives from Hohenlohe's Corps, the whole Prussian army retreated in a disorganized mass toward Weimar.

THE PURSUIT

The French victory at Jena on October 14th, 1806, was decisive.

The Prussian situation on the evening of that day was as follows: Prince Von Hohenlohe and General Kalkreuth, who was left in command of the remnants of the Duke of Brunswick's army, were retreating in disorder from the fields of Jena and Auerstadt on Weimar. They hoped to save themselves by the Harz on Magdeburg and the first there was to take command, rally all the troops he could find and march on to the Oder toward Stettin. Two other corps under the Duke of Weimar and General Winning were marching on Eisenach. A fourth corps formed a reserve under the Duke of Wurtemberg at Halle.

The pursuit, both strategic and tactical, of the wreck of the Prussian armies was pushed with the most phenomenal vigor.

The Emperor, himself, directed the march of four corps on Berlin and the Oder which forced the Prussians to completely change their strategic plans and blocked all routes of retreat.

The Reserve Cavalry of Prince Murat supported by the 4th and 6th corps of Marshals Soult and Ney, all under command of Murat, pressed a close pursuit which allowed the fleeing remnants of the armies of Hohenlohe and Brunswick no time to reorganize.

THE STRATEGIC PURSUIT

Napoleon, with the corps of Bernadotte, Lannes, Davoust and Augereau and his Guard in several roughly parallel columns, immediately took the road to Dessau to cross the Elbe at that place, to press on to Berlin, seize the enemy's capital and communications and cut the Prussians off from the Oder and all chance of aid from the approaching Russian forces.

On October 17th, Bernadotte fell on the reserve, under Prince Eugene of Wurtemberg, hitherto intact and drove them from Halle.

On October 18th, Davoust entered Leipzig and pressing on drove the Prussians from the bridge at Wittenberg before they could destroy it, while Lannes seized the crossing at Dessau.

Assembling the corps of Lannes, Davoust and Augereau at Wittenberg on the 23rd, Napoleon pushed on to Potsdam, the capital of Frederick the Great, which he entered on the 24th.

During the next day (October 25th) Davoust entered Berlin and the fortress of Spandau surrendered to Murat and Lannes.

Napoleon entered Berlin on October 28th and immediately pushed his forces to the line of the Oder. Stettin was occupied by Marshal Lannes, Glogau was invested by the Bavarians, Augereau took Frankfort and Davoust, pushing forward from Berlin, seized Custrin, one of the strongest fortresses in Germany.

Orders were issued to Murat from Berlin for the complete destruction of the remains of the Prussian field army.

THE TACTICAL PURSUIT

To follow the tactical pursuit from the beginning it will be necessary to return to the situation at Jena on the evening of October 14th and recount the actions of Prince Murat whose corps of Reserve Cavalry, in conjunction with the infantry of Soult and Ney, was charged with the close pursuit of the Prussian army.

Forcing the success begun at Jena, Murat reached Weimar on the heels of the fugitives and while a portion of his horsemen penetrated into the town with them, the remainder passed around it and cut off the retreat, so that in a few minutes 15,000 Prussians and 200 pieces of artillery fell into the hands of the French cavalry.

On the next day, October 15th, Murat overtook the rear guard of a mixed force of cavalry and infantry in position on the high ground in rear of Erfurt. He promptly charged and drove them from their position into the city. Being unable to dislodge them with cavalry alone, he awaited the arrival of Ney's infantry and on the 16th the town was captured. During this delay Murat sent out detachments of cavalry to maintain contact with the enemy and supply information of his movements. In his report of October 16th to Napoleon, he stated that the enemy was retreating toward Mersburg and Halle and that he was marching on the next day to Langensalza to cut off the Duke of Weimar's corps, which was retiring from Eisenach on that place.

At Langensalza on the evening of the same day, Murat found that Weimar's Corps had been diverted by this march, thus preventing his junction with the Prussian main forces. He also learned that a hostile column had passed through the town four hours ahead of him, marching on Mulhausen in response to a general order for all corps to assemble at Frankenhause and from there to reach Magdeburg.

Followed closely by Ney and Soult, Murat pressed forward to Magdeburg, driving the enemy before him and keeping detachments of cavalry always on the tails of his columns to harass his rear guards and operate against his trains, of which many were captured. Coincident with this march General Blucher escaped capture by Murat's cavalry. An account is best given by quoting from The Grand Army Bulletin No. 11, of October 19th.—"The Prussian General Blucher with 5000 men, crossed the dragoon division of General Klein who had cut him off. Having stated to General Klein that a six weeks' armistice had been made, this general was simple enough to believe it."

Leaving Ney's Corps at Magdeburg to blockade that place and intercept small bodies of the enemy attempting to join the garrison of 20,000 men left by Prince

Hohenlohe, Murat supported by Soult crossed the Elbe with the purpose of intercepting an expected retreat by Hohenlohe in the direction of the Oder. Moving by rapid marches, he arrived on October 25th at Spandau, which promptly surrendered to the cavalry and the infantry of Marshal Lannes, who had been summoned from Potsdam to prevent the lateral escape of the enemy.

On the same day the Duke of Weimar appeared at Magdeburg and finding that place blockaded, moved toward the Elbe. Three days later Marshal Soult's corps was ordered to intercept him and prevent his gaining the Oder.

Hohenlohe, intercepted on his march to Berlin, took the route to Grandsee and Zeydenich for Stettin; but here again Murat by forced marches had gotten the start even of the cavalry of his advance guard, and at Zeydenich, on October 26th, Hohenlohe's flank guard of cavalry and infantry was attacked by Lasalle's hussars and Grouchy's dragoons and severely defeated with a loss of 1000 men. Murat's report to Napoleon gives an interesting account of this fight:—

TO NAPOLEON.

Zehdenick, 26 October, 1806, 9:00 P. M.

SIRE:

I have the honor to inform your majesty that General Lasalle's brigade was in contact with the enemy; it met four cavalry regiments, in rear of Zehdenick; General Lasalle was satisfied to have made a good appearance while awaiting the dragoons.

Grouchy's division appeared, and the hussars then charged with the rapidity of lightning, they overthrew everything, they chased this innumerable throng into the town, and drove it into a defile while cutting them to pieces. Meanwhile the Queen's dragoons rallied at the exit of the defile, and prepared to resist, the hussars formed in their turn on the right of the road to allow the dragoons to charge in their turn which they did with a horrible butchery, and drove them as far as Templin with horrible carnage. 600 prisoners, among which several noted officers, the colonel of the Queen's dragoons, one major, about 30 officers, the regimental guidon, is the result of the prettiest and most vigorous charge which has taken place. I have lost several men, but the enemy had at least 200 men killed. No officers of the Queen's dragoons are left, that regiment which still had 800 men, has now ceased to exist. This column almost all cavalry was commanded by General Shimpenning. I have sent Prince Philippstadt, and tomorrow will send all prisoners, to Spandau. 14,000 infantry soldiers are announced for this evening. The billeting parties have been taken, this detachment was a flank guard. It seems that Prince Hohenlohe is marching via Gransee on Dannenwald via Templin. I have sent to reconnoiter Ruppin and Gransee; tomorrow I will send out according to information which I receive concerning the enemy. I find myself here well placed. I will proceed at daybreak toward Templin; Marshal Lannes will maneuver against the enemy who I think is largely to our rear. I have this moment captured a message dated Stettin, the 25th instant, addressed to Mr. Jacobi, advising him that a corps is being formed at Genthim which should move towards Custrin and directing him to send the funds to that town. The letter is addressed to Hewelsberg. I have also an intercepted letter addressed to the King, from one of his aides at Brunswick, it is being translated, I will send it to your Majesty.

I hope that Marshal Lannes is at Falkenthal today. I hope that tomorrow I will do good work. Sire, your cavalry has truly covered itself with glory; General Lasalle has wiped out the day of Weissensee. I will advise your Majesty as to the names of those brave men who are the most distinguished.

I am your Majesty, etc.

I will know either at Templin or at Gransee if it is true as I have been told that this was the head of the column.

MURAT.

The following day more fighting took place in which the Prussian Gendarmes of the Guard were enveloped by the French cavalry and forced to surrender in open field.

Hohenlohe cut off from the direct road to Stettin hoped by the circuitous route through Furstenburg and Prenzlau to make his way through. Murat anticipating his intentions made preparation for the capture of his entire force. His plan can be best understood from his correspondence with Napoleon and Marshal Lannes:

TO NAPOLEON

Zehdenick, 27 October, 1806, 8:00 A. M.

SIRE:

Gransee was evacuated yesterday at 10:00 P. M.; the headquarters which were to stay there for that night on the first news of my march left for Furstenberg; and the 14,000 infantry who were to come here and the surrounding villages took this same direction. Prince Hohenlohe is to proceed from there towards Prenzlau, where I expect to arrive before him, or at least before the greater part of his command. I am marching on Templin and Prenzlau with all my cavalry; I have asked Marshal Lannes to follow the enemy with a detachment of cavalry and to send me the rest. I will write your Majesty from Templin.

The enemy is retiring in the greatest disorder and the butchery of yesterday by our cavalry will undoubtedly increase this. The cavalry detachment which passed yesterday was certainly the flank guard; all the rest of the army is retiring by its left and for Mecklenburg; I hope that all their trains, funds and artillery, if they have any left, will be captured together with a large part of their troops. I hope that it will be a fine day.

I am, etc.

MURAT.

27 October, 1806.

TO MARSHAL LANNES

MY DEAR MARSHAL:

Gransee was evacuated yesterday at 10:00 P. M. Prince Hohenlohe who was to stay there for the night left quickly for Mecklenburg via Prenzlau, where I expect to head him off. The 14,000 infantry who were to occupy Zehdenick took the same route as the Prince; all should have stopped for the night at Furstenberg; the trains taking the same route. In sending your light cavalry in this direction, you will capture many; they are retiring in the greatest disorder. I leave now for Templin, from where I will advise you as to the enemy's movements. If you can send me regiments of your cavalry it would please me. There is much before me and they will be very useful.

MURAT.

On the 27th at Templin Murat detached Milhaud's light cavalry to reconnoiter Boitzenburg and cut the bridge at that place ahead of the Prussian advance guard, while he with the remainder of the cavalry moved to Prenzlau. Milhaud succeeded in destroying the bridge at Boitzenburg and defended the crossing for over three hours against the entire force of Hohenlohe. Had the infantry been present, it is probably that the Prussians would not have forced the crossing and would have been compelled to surrender.

During the morning of October 28th, Murat intercepted Hohenlohe just beyond Prenzlau. The Prussians, attacked in rear and in front by the French

cavalry and threatened on the right flank by Lannes' infantry arriving from Templin were, after some hard fighting obliged to surrender. The following is Prince Murat's official report of the capture:

To NAPOLEON

Prenzlau, 28 October, 1806, 6:00 P. M.

SIRE:

Your Majesty's orders have been carried out. Prince Hohenlohe is in my power together with his army corps. As I had foreseen, he maneuvered by his left and went towards Prenzlau after having marched all night. Being in doubt as to his movement I had ordered General Lasalle to proceed during the night to Prenzlau; the heads of both columns arrived at this town at the same time, the hussars rendered the honors and allowed the Prussian column to pass. At 6:00 A. M. I was in march with all the cavalry to support General Lasalle. General Milhaud followed the enemy with the 13th Chasseurs and the 9th Dragoons. I was two leagues from Prenzlau, when General Lasalle informed me of the enemy's movements and of his position; I hastened my march and after 9:00 A. M. I discovered the march of the Prussian army. I had ordered General Lasalle to approach the suburb and attack it, and I sustained him with six guns, and Grouchy's division by three regiments of Beaumont's division. General Beaumont, my aide, had orders to pass the bridge at the village of Gollnitz, with a brigade of dragoons of Beaumont's division, to threaten an attack on the enemy's rear and flank. During this time a detachment reconnoitered to ascertain whether it was practicable to proceed by my right from Zolchow towards Seelibbe in order to turn the town.

The attack commenced, the artillery fire became general and very active, your Majesty's artillery silenced the hostile artillery and forced it to withdraw from position to position. We arrived at the suburb, noting that the column was on the point of escaping, I had General Bossard's brigade cross by a ford and ordered General Grouchy to charge the head of the enemy's column, which he did with inconceivable intrepidity; he overthrew infantry, the cavalry, took 18 guns and was about to enter the town pell-mell with the Prussians, when the gate was closed; all who were on the outside were captured. I brought up some artillery and sent General Belliard to summon Prince Hohenlohe. During this time the Dragoons broke in the Stettin gate and went for the enemy, when the Prince consented to lay down his arms. The officers are prisoners of war, retaining their swords and baggage and are permitted to return home subject to exchange; the troops have laid down their arms, are prisoners of war and are to be sent to France. 16,000 infantry and 6 regiments of cavalry surrendered before your Majesty's cavalry.

SIRE: 16,000 infantry, 6 regiments of cavalry, 60 guns, 60 flags, the Princes August, Ferdinand, Hohenlohe, Tauenzien, and several other generals, are the result of this fine day.

General Lasalle is marching on Lockenitz where he will stop tonight to cut the retreat of General Blucher; General Milhaud is proceeding to Pasewalk. Tomorrow I will be before Stettin.

MURAT.

On the next day, October 29th, Lasalle, marching from Lokenitz, advanced to Stettin and on the second summons that fortified city capitulated with a garrison of 6,000 men and 160 cannon. Lasalle's troopers were relieved on the same day by a division of infantry from Lannes' Corps, which took possession of the city. At the same time a hostile column of 6,000 men surrendered at Pasewalk to General Milhaud's light cavalry, completing the capture of all that remained of the Prince of Hohenlohe's Corps.

Of the Prussian field army which had numbered 190,000 men there now remained 14,000 men under the Duke of Weimar and 8,000 under General Blucher.

The Duke of Weimar having crossed the Elbe at Havelburg on October 26th, in an endeavor to reach the Oder, was being pursued by Marshal Soult, while Blucher, who had been following Hohenlohe as a species of rear guard and had escaped capture at Prenzlau by withdrawing from Gransee, was now in the vicinity of Pasewalk and being directly pursued by Bernadotte.

Murat, having cut off Blucher's route toward Stettin with his light cavalry, then initiated the pursuit with the remainder of the Reserve Cavalry and Lannes' infantry. His plan was to direct General Becker on Anklam, while he moved via Pasewalk and Friedland on Demmin to turn the enemy and cut off his retreat on Stralsburg and Rostock. The infantry of Bernadotte and Soult were to maintain a direct pressure against the tails of the Prussian columns.

At Friedland on October 31st, he learned from Bernadotte that General Blucher had moved by Neu-Strelitz on Waren to effect a junction with Weimar's column which had left Havelburg and retreated via Wittstock, Robel and Plau. This formed a body of about 22,000 men which Marshal Bernadotte thought intended to march on Teterow or Schwerin with a view to embarking at Rostock or Wismar as a last resort.

General Becker, with a brigade of dragoons, encountered the Prussian General Bila at Anklam, on the same date, and forced him to surrender his entire force of two cavalry regiments and some artillery, about 4,000 men in all.

Murat arrived at Demmin on November 1st and from there sent Lasalle to Rostock to destroy all means of embarkation. He also detached two squadrons of hussars to operate against the Prussian trains in the direction of Gustrow. That same evening Bernadotte attacked and drove in the enemy rear guard at Jabel.

On November 2nd, Murat was at Teterow with his right at Rostock and Marshal Soult arrived at Plau and later joined his force with that of Marshal Bernadotte.

From Teterow Murat marched on Gustrow and thence via Schwerin to Ratzeburg where he arrived the evening of November 5th, after effecting a junction with Bernadotte and Soult at Schwerin. Blucher's rear guard was again overtaken at Ratzeburg and being turned by Lasalle's cavalry lost 300 cavalry and 8 guns. Reports indicated that Blucher was retreating on Lubeck and Murat immediately ordered Bernadotte to follow by way of Rehna, and Soult by way of Ratzeburg. The cavalry of Lasalle was to precede Soult while that of Generals d' Hautpout and Grouchy was to cooperate with Bernadotte. All columns were to march on Lubeck at 5:00 A. M. the following day.

On the morning of the 6th Lasalle's cavalry encountered a delaying force two miles south of Lubeck and drove it to the walls of the town. The infantry, converging from the south and east, carried the outer defenses, blew down the gates with artillery and entered the town. After severe fighting the heads of the two columns met in the middle of the city. The cavalry was there ordered to

pursue the enemy with the saber on the Travemunde road, by which General Blucher retired.

Night brought an end to the fight and prevented the capture of the last of the Prussian troops. Blucher was situated between the Baltic sea on the east and the Danish troops on the west. Denmark was prepared to enforce neutrality.

Before daybreak on November 7th, the cavalry brigades of Lasalle and d'Hautpout mounted and, surrounded the enemy near Schwartau. General Blucher, Prince Frederick William of Brunswick, and all generals were obliged to sign a capitulation and surrender before the French army. This surrender destroyed the last remaining corps of the Prussian army.

The campaign of Jena had scarcely lasted one month. The pursuit, which followed the decisive battle at Jena, is unsurpassed for the relentless vigor with which it was pushed. It accomplished its mission, the annihilation of the Prussian forces and the destruction of their military system.

DISCUSSION

The account of the pursuit after Jena is a graphic illustration of the role of cavalry in exploiting a success and following up a beaten and demoralized enemy.

The pursuit was very properly assigned to the cavalry whose characteristics render it peculiarly fitted for the execution of this mission.

Since we have no standards by which to judge the tactical efficiency of Prince Murat in the employment of his cavalry, other than our own, paragraphs of our Field Service Regulations, pertaining to pursuit, are quoted to assist in arriving at a conclusion:

490. Only by means of a relentless pursuit of the beaten enemy can the full fruits of victory be obtained. Pursuit of a decisively defeated enemy must be pushed to the utmost limit of the physical endurance of the troops and no opportunity given him to reorganize his forces and reconstitute his defense. The object of the pursuit is the annihilation of the hostile forces. This can not be accomplished by a straight pushing back of the hostile forces on their lines of communication. Direct pressure against the retreating forces is combined with outflanking maneuver designed to place our own troops across the enemy's lines of retreat. By the concentrated employment of every agency of destruction and terrorization at the disposal of the field forces, the shaken morale of the defeated enemy is converted into panic and the incipient dissolution of his organization is transformed into rout. *Encirclement of the retreating forces and of the separate elements thereof by double envelopment is always attempted wherever conditions permit.*

494. Whenever practicable, cavalry advances along roads paralleling the enemy's line of retreat, delivering repeated attacks against the hostile flanks, carrying out destructions on his line of retreat, attacking convoys and attempting to beat the enemy to defiles, bridges, and other critical points.

Murat's conduct of the pursuit and employment of cavalry are fundamentally related to our own principles in numerous instances:

The exploitation of the success at Jena.

The pursuit to Weimar which prevented the reorganization of the Prussian forces.

The reconnaissance by the light cavalry which was continuous throughout the campaign.

The cooperation with the infantry in the pursuit and capture of the Prince of Hohenlohe's force at Prenzlau and in the overtaking of Blucher at Lubeck.

Outpacing and intercepting the retreat of Hohenlohe on Stettin with the bulk of his cavalry while detachments delayed and harassed the rear and flanks of the hostile columns.

Harassing action against Blucher's rear guard and the capture of his trains during his retirement on Lubeck.

The unremitting pursuit which was pushed to the limit of the endurance of his troops.

The accomplishment of the object of the pursuit, the annihilation of the Prussian army.



Polo on the Legation Glacis in Peking

The China Pony

BY

First Lieutenant F. B. BUTLER, Corps of Engineers

ONE of the gamest and hardiest breeds of horse existing, and one less known to the American horseman than any other perhaps, is the so-called "China" pony. The breed is poorly named, for China and the Chinese have had little or nothing to do with the animal save to abuse him. They have had no part in developing the breed. No doubt he became known as the "China" pony on account of the fact that he is in universal use in China and it was in China that the English-speaking, horse-loving peoples first met him. The pony (again a misnomer) is just as much a horse as the larger breeds known to us. All horse flesh descends from the same stock and, while thanks to favorable climates and abundant feed, the Arab and other familiar breeds have developed to their present proportions, the China pony bred and raised on the steppes of Mongolia, has kept more closely to the size and proportions of the wild horse from which he and his cousins descend. The country where the last remnants of the true wild (Przewalski) horse are found is quite similar to, and not far from, the grazing country of Mongolia which is given over to horse breeding. The close resemblance noted between the domesticated pony and the wild horse is an interesting commentary upon the theory of environment's developing type.

Lest I digress too far in this interesting subject of the development of the various domestic horses, I refer the reader to a complete and most scholarly paper on the subject by General W. H. Carter, which appeared in the *National Geographic Magazine* of November, 1923.

In addition to the general interest in the China pony whose gameness and endurance rank him high with all horsemen who know him, the American army has a real professional interest in the breed. The substitution of the China pony for the domestic horse in our Far East garrisons has long been discussed as a measure of economy. First, there is the economy in purchase price; secondly, the economy in feed; and thirdly, the economy in transport to destination. The China pony has for nearly two years been an authorized mount for officers serving in the United States Army Forces in China, and appropriations for the present fiscal year (1926) carried funds for the purchase of public mounts. This of course involves an insignificant number when compared to the number needed to put the Philippine Department on the same basis.

IN THE MONGOLIAN WILDS

I had known and been served by the pony in China for two years before I had the opportunity to see him and his wild ancestors in their native setting. For the purpose of presenting the China pony to the reader, I shall reverse my own experiences and describe him first as he is found in Mongolia and later as he is used in China. It was my privilege to accompany the Third

Asiatic Expedition during the 1925 field season and our travels took us into the pony country of Mongolia and beyond to the reaches where the wild ass (more of a horse than his domestic namesake) roams, and finally across the Altai down into the wild horse region. These remnants of the past do not merely survive in these desert domains, but are found in tremendous numbers. During the foaling season, stallions and mares gather in huge herds on the flats for protection from the wolves while the colts are de-



A Mongol Horseman of the Desert. The Long Pole With a Rope Loop on One End is a "Lasso". The Stick With Attached Thong Showing on the Near Side is a Mongol Riding Crop

veloping. In late June, we saw herds estimated to contain as many as fifteen hundred head.

It may be assumed that a country whose wilderness is so vast as to shelter the last remnant of the wild horse* would abound in wild animals of

*The herds of wild horses that roamed the western ranges of the United States were not wild animals in the strict sense of the word, but were descended from domesticated stock which had been imported to the Western Hemisphere by the early Spanish settlers and explorers.

various types. Such proved to be the case. In addition to the wild horse and ass, huge numbers of antelope feed on the plains. The antelope exists in Mongolia today as did the buffalo on our western prairies before the advancing frontier exterminated him. One herd of antelope seen in Inner Mongolia numbered, on a conservative average of estimates, fifteen thousand head. In the mountains are found flocks of the great mountain sheep (*ovis argali*) as well as the ibex. Wolves and foxes are also found in large numbers. These wild and un hunted fastnesses are amongst the few places remaining in the world where wild animals are found in herds. Nor is wild game limited to animal life. During the summer months, countless migratory birds breed in the lakes of the northwest. Even for the rarer animal or bird, one can afford to choose his specimen. Hunting in this country is sport de luxe. But this is not a narrative to rouse the envy of hunters and sportsmen, and I must return to my subject.

The scribes of ancient times, in developing their narrative, used to thread their way along, beginning with the creation of the Universe. While I have no intention of following their tedious example by going into a minute description of Mongolia in order to trace the development of the horses of that region, I feel a very few words on that little known country will give a better appreciation of the conditions which control the development of the Mongol pony, the pony which is known to the world as the China pony.

GEOGRAPHY AND CLIMATIC CONDITIONS

The geography of Mongolia is not complicated. To present a simple picture of the land: Consider it an uplifted elliptical platter with the major axis lying northeast-southwest. The Eastern Altai come onto this platter over its western rim and stand up fin-like, elongated and well defined. On the higher slopes of the encircling rim and in the still higher Altai, the air being rare, any moisture which is blown into the region is precipitated. Though the moisture is not abundant, it is sufficient to support good grazing and this grassland country is not unlike the range country of certain parts of Wyoming and Montana. In the bottom of the platter (to use the same illustration) the air is denser and capable therefore of holding a greater moisture content. Rapid evaporation takes place in the basin lowland as against precipitation in the higher levels. This basin is the drab Gobi Desert. The elevation of the grassland country runs from about three thousand six hundred feet to five thousand feet above sea level. The basin drops off to about two thousand eight hundred feet.

The climate is severe and the open season only lasts from May to September. Bitter gales sweep down from the north and try the endurance of both man and beast. The country is flat and open with no natural protection. In the winter there are apt to be heavy blizzards, covering the country deep in snow. At such times the short grass is buried and the struggling animals are forced to paw in the snow for their feed. No forage is gathered

in the summer, the grass being short, and hence none is available to put out in the winter. These severe but infrequent blizzards kill off thousands and thousands of animals.

Under such conditions of climate, feed, and water, it is to be expected that nature would develop a hardy horse. An animal that must struggle for its existence cannot be one of superfluous frame or flesh. Even within Mongolia itself, one sees this effect of environment on development. The ponies of the grass lands, whose feed is more regular and abundant, are larger than those of the desert regions. The ponies we found in the Altai were of the



A Pair of Desert Mongol Hunters Trying Their Luck in the Border Grass Lands.
Note the Narrow Saddle and the Height of the Seat

same type as the desert pony. Though used in the mountains where feed is on the whole more abundant, these ponies are bred in the lowlands and hence follow the predominant stock.

THE DESERT PONY

Since it is the larger grass land pony which is used in China, I shall not describe him as found in his native haunts, but cover him in connection with the service exacted of him under foreign hands in China. The desert pony, while not a possibility for use other than in this desert country, is such a remarkable little beast that I am sure horsemen will find of some interest a brief description of the pony as I knew him.

I would never recommend the desert pony of Mongolia to one riding for pleasure. The largest pony I measured stood twelve hands high. The smallest was eleven hands two inches. I had no difficulty in locking my feet under the belly of the largest! As small as he is, the animal is capable of doing a

mountain of work,—and as for a test in the pony's own country, there is no room for doubt as to his ability to wear down a larger animal. An ordinary horse would starve where one of these ponies would find comfortable grazing.

My experience with the pony in question is not too extensive but nevertheless it is probably greater than that of any who will read this! The greatest test to which I saw the desert pony put, and in fact the hardest service I have seen demanded of horse flesh, was during our hunting in the eastern spurs of the Altai. On this work, we established a base camp well up the slopes of the mountains in which we were hunting, and worked out from this base for periods of thirty-six to forty hours. I say "on this work," for strenuous physical effort it was—though pleasant. We were hunting mountain sheep and ibex and had but a limited time in which to get the required specimens for the American Museum of Natural History of New York and the Field Museum of Chicago. Any sportsman in the world would sacrifice years of his life to get the hunting we had. Therefore, I cannot be so blasé as to dwell upon the fatigue attached. There was only one day in all my hunting when I did not get at least one specimen. As one of our party enthusiastically put it, "Hunting here is just like 'pot shooting' in the Zoo, but on a Ford production scale."

ENDURANCE

As to the pony's part in these shoots: The usual custom was for two of us to hunt together and use a native as guide. We were all mounted and in addition had one pack horse per party to carry food, water, bedding, and the skins of our prey. We would start off from the base camp about eight o'clock in the morning, travel until one or two in the afternoon and then make camp. As the shadows began to lengthen and the game came out of the ravines to feed on the slopes, we would again mount up and be off for the evening hunt. We could only carry a few bags of water and never found any supply in the hunting areas. The ponies therefore rarely had water after we left our base camp. In view of this, they were not allowed to graze during the afternoon rest, as it would increase their growing thirst.

We would return from the evening hunt about eight or nine o'clock, and only then when the dew was beginning to fall would we let the ponies graze. To take advantage of the early morning shadows, we would be on our way at five o'clock, and the ponies again were under saddle. Depending on our luck, the morning hunt would end anywhere from nine o'clock to noon, whereupon we would pack up and return to our base. It was only when the ponies got to the lower levels where there were springs or wells that they got their first drink. The longest I was forced to work ponies without water was thirty-six hours and they stood this siege without discomfort or ill effect. The ponies are never watered more than once a day and can thus stand the longer trial. Men and beasts both would have a good rest with proper food and drink at the base camp before starting off the next morning for a fresh hunt. After two weeks of such going I am sure that we were much nearer exhaustion than were the sturdy little ponies.

The slopes were frightfully steep and the footing accordingly poor. I have seen these little ponies carry their burdens up and down mountain sides and across rock slides which one would not dare attempt with a horse, or even with a mule. The plucky little beasts were marvellous. There is a great field for the S. P. C. A. in this country! A Mongol never dismounts and leads. Whether going up hill or down, in sand or rock, no matter how steep or dangerous the slope, Mr. Mongol sits in his saddle.

Our pack ponies carried nearly two hundred pounds at times and we took them into altitudes of over eight thousand feet. Under the most severe conditions I never saw a pony take a false step. They are remarkably sure-footed. I did see one pack animal go over in a slide however, roll some five hundred



A Hunting Camp in the Altai. The Range in the Background Gives An Idea of the Country That Ponies Are Forced to Negotiate

feet down the mountain side, and pull up bucking furiously to get rid of his saddle. He had already rid himself of the load, scattering it over the mountain side in his precipitous and unwilling descent.

To give an idea of the ground these animals can cover on the flat, I will cite a performance which rescued a party of us. While off on a side trip of exploration in one of the trucks, we developed clutch trouble which upon investigation proved beyond our resources to repair. At that time we were sixty-five miles from the main body and sent off one of our Mongols with a message asking for food and the required spare part. He started out with two ponies, riding and leading alternate animals until well into the night, when upon reaching a lone yurt he rested until daylight. He left the poorer pony behind when starting off at daybreak and made his way into the main

camp that day. On the return, he picked up the second pony and rode it the entire way back from his stop of the first night. The trip of one hundred thirty miles was made in about fifty-four hours. It is true that two ponies were used, but remember that these animals had no heavy feed on the way and were dependent on the poor grazing which the country afforded. I should have prefaced the narrative of this incident by saying that the ponies had been fetched from a spring some ten miles distant from our marooned motor. Likewise they made this distance back to their herd immediately upon the completion of the ride described.

THE GRASS LAND PONY

Further study of this little animal, his traits and characteristics, would prove highly interesting but not so fruitful as a cursory review of the larger grass land pony. Many who come to China and have this animal thrust upon them in lieu of a proper horse never become reconciled to it. I remember distinctly my feelings of disgust when I had my first ride on a pony shortly after my arrival in Tientsin. When the ride was ended and I dismounted, I did so with a prayer to the good Lord that he send me *any* kind of a horse. I was done with billy goats; hadn't had any satisfaction for my time and effort; and wanted a *ride*. I now look back with amusement on my initial reaction, for soon thereafter I was thoroughly converted to the pony. He has neither the size nor the power of the horse it is true, and it is often a bit hard to adjust oneself to his gaits, but he is a mighty game companion and a serviceable mount.

The dominating feeling that one has in riding a pony for the first time is that of being on the animal's neck. The trot too is apt to be a bit short, the small legs not being able to take the long swing of the full sized horse. The same may be said of the canter, but at a full gallop the pony extends himself and moves in a free, easy stride. He can out-walk a horse and it is amusing to see horse and pony moving side by side, the small pony walking evenly and the big horse jogging to keep up. What I have said concerning the constrained trot and canter is of course general. Frequently animals will be found with a good solid trot and a canter very much like that of a horse.

As for the endurance and general usefulness of the pony, his use in various sports,—racing, polo, steeplechasing, and hunting, as well as his use in the field,—will be his brief. This latter quality should go unchallenged when it is remembered that Ghengis Khan and Kublai Khan sent forth their horsemen hordes mounted on this selfsame animal, to conquer Asia and Europe. In those days, there was no infantry in the conquering army,—it was a cavalry monopoly. Even in this day and age, the Mongol army is strictly a mounted body. There is no place for a foot soldier.

Ponies are rarely brought out of Mongolia under four or five years of age, and even then the animals have not developed their full size and strength. With the severe winter and limited feed, a colt develops from May to November and merely lives (if it can) from November 'til May. As a result, growth is slow. Since the bulk of the ponies have to make an overland journey of

about a thousand miles before coming in to the shipping point, an animal must be quite well developed to withstand the journey, and hence must be a four-year-old at the minimum. While the herds are being driven into China, the animals graze their way across desert and plain. No feed is carried nor is any form of grain available. It is interesting to watch the development of these newly imported ponies when they come under the protection of a sheltered stable and are given regular feed throughout the year. All develop in size, weight and muscle, and many grow an inch or more during their first year. Many continue their development until they are well over six years old.

SIZE AND OTHER CHARACTERISTICS

The pony as found in North China runs on the average from twelve hands three inches to fourteen hands. Pure bred ponies larger than fourteen hands are the exception. In weight they vary from six hundred twenty-five pounds to seven hundred seventy-five. The average pony is about thirteen hands one inch and will weigh seven hundred pounds. Incidentally, these latter



Mongol Huntsmen of the Desert. The Musket is a Crude Flint Lock with Hexagonal Bore, While the Slug Fired is Hemispherical. The Ponies Are Not in the Least Gushy

figures,—thirteen hands one inch and seven hundred pounds,—have been prescribed as the minimum for public and officers' first mounts. Officers' second mounts may be thirteen hands and weigh six hundred fifty pounds.

The pony is well proportioned and in his reduced size follows the proportions and configuration of the horse, except in the case of the head. The head is very nearly the same size as that of a fifteen hand to fifteen hand two

inch horse. The various issue bridles and bits can be fitted to the pony without extensive alteration. It goes without saying that the McClellan saddle fits him as well as it does a horse, though naturally, with the smaller barrel the quarter straps must be taken well up. Other types of saddles issued to the service, such as the Training Saddle and the French officers' Field Saddle can be used, but they do not distribute the weight so well as when used on a horse. The French Corps of Occupation in North China use their regular horse equipment however, and seem to get along quite well. (In addition to infantry, the French have a detachment of mounted infantry, one battery of 75's and one battery of mountain artillery. All mounts are China ponies and native mules are used for pack and draft.)

The predominant coloring in the China pony breed is grey, and this shading runs to the lighter colorings with iron or dapple greys rare. Probably the next most common color is bay, with sorrels and chestnuts following. There is an occasional "pinto" as well as a rare roan. Animals of solid color however, predominate. In addition to the above, there is another color group worthy of special mention. There are many buckskins (called "dun" here) and they usually carry the markings of the wild horse. The ground color is the same and usually there will be found the dark stripe along the spine and the faint zebra-like bands around the forelegs. The head too, is more like the wild horse (mule-like) head, than in the case of ponies of other colorings.

ARAB BLOOD

It is safe to say, I believe, that every Mongol pony has today and has had since the time the Mongol hordes spread over the West, some Arab or "horse" blood in him. It is definitely known that, at the time of the Mongol conquests, the Mongols were struck by the beauty, size, and speed of the horses of Europe and Asia Minor, and brought back fancy mares and stallions for cross breeding. In seven centuries, this introduced strain would not die out but rather spread to establish a stable breed. There is no doubt that it is in this way that the Mongol pony of today has come to differ even as much as he does from his neighbor and forebear, the wild Przewalski horse. It is most likely that the buckskins mentioned above are "throw backs."

At the present time there are some direct cross breeds in China. Russian stock is entering the pony country via Siberia and the product of this crossing is usually distinctly more "horsey" than the pure bred. He is larger, and on the average has greater speed. This cross however, loses many of the desirable characteristics of the pony. He is not so adaptable nor is he so hardy. It is more difficult to train him, as he is decidedly more temperamental. One of the most valuable assets of the pony is his adaptability and the rapidity with which he adjusts himself. The cross breed must be trained as one would train a horse while a pony can be advanced at a much more rapid pace.

The racing demands of North China and the fancy prices offered for

untried ponies (griffins) result in the pick of the herds being exported. Many of the ponies which come down for racing purposes either have been raced in Mongolia or have been used as lasso ponies in the various herds. The Mongols go in for long distance racing only and race cross country for about seven miles, forcing the pony every inch of the way. They are frightfully cruel races and only an extraordinary pony can stand up under such continued abuse. The other group of preferred ponies, the lasso ponies, are naturally the fastest animals in a herd and from this group usually come the successful short and mid-distance racers. Exceptional animals of either of these classes fetch as high as three thousand dollars Mex in Kalgan. They bring this price on their reputation and before the buyer has even seen the pony on a track.



Mounted Orderly, 15th Infantry. Regular Issue Equipment is Used on the Ponies

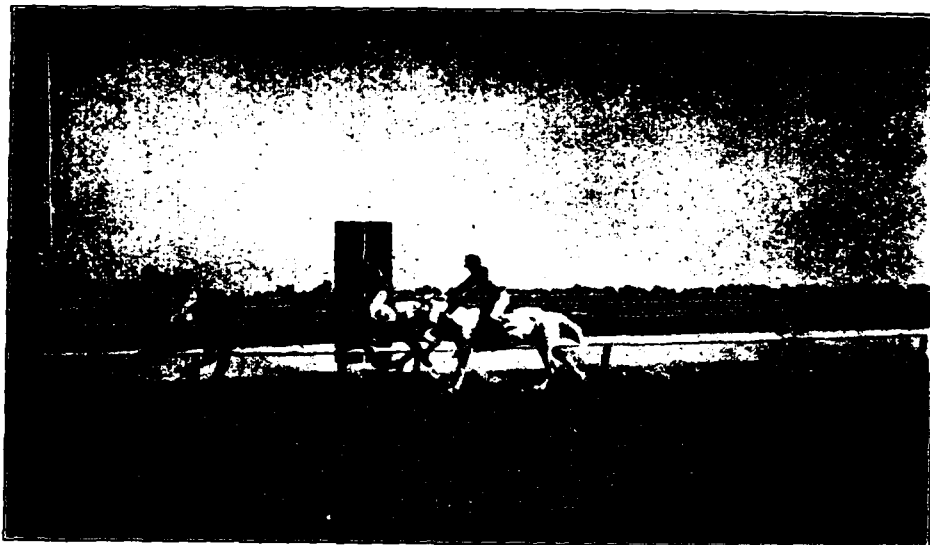
The average price for racing prospects is perhaps five hundred dollars Mex. About one thousand ponies are brought down each year at the above prices. Of these, about two hundred develop into racing prospects, the others being resold as hacks, polo ponies, etc., at about one hundred dollars to one hundred fifty dollars Mex per head. The original purchaser stands the difference and writes it off as profit and loss in his annual sport budget.

RACING, HUNTING, AND POLO

In China, racing is purely an amateur sport, and to enable owners or their gentlemen jockeys to ride, the racing weights are greater than those carried where racing is professional and the riding is done by light weight jockeys. An arbitrary weight of one hundred forty pounds is laid down for a twelve hand pony. For each additional inch, an extra three pounds is added. Besides this basic weight, ponies are subject to additional penalties in certain handicap races. I have seen ponies racing under weights as great as one

hundred seventy-five pounds, that being weight for inches plus handicap penalties for wins. The times made are remarkable when one stops to consider the size of the animal and the weight carried. The record for the half mile is 55 3-5 seconds, for the mile and a quarter it is 2 minutes 31 3-5 seconds, and for the two miles it is 4 minutes 16 1-5 seconds. These figures suffer by comparison with similar records for thoroughbreds, but in making the comparison remember that the smaller pony is carrying a far greater weight than the larger horse and therefore the pony's performance must be considered a gallant one.

Hunting in North China is confined to paper hunts and drags. Hunts are usually held once a week during the winter months and the ponies are kept



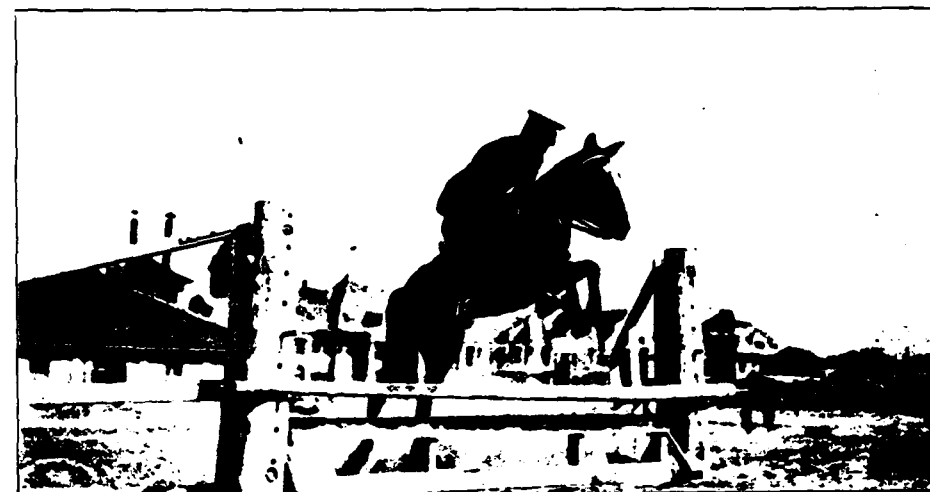
Racing is the Most Popular Sport in China. Considering the Weights Carried, the Ponies Make Excellent Time

in training by nominal exercise during the rest of the week. On the average, the hunts are about seven miles long. There are never more than three checks in a chase, so that it is rather continuous going all the way. In the course, the Master will manage to have anywhere from twelve to twenty jumps, both fence and ditch. In these hunts, the jumps are hardly ever over two feet six inches in height and the ditches are about eight or ten feet wide. Here again it must be remembered that this six hundred fifty to seven hundred seventy-five pound pony may be carrying one hundred eighty pounds or more. The average hunt takes slightly less than a half hour to run. I have never seen a pony in distress (though riders frequently so) during one of these severe runs.

The record high jump credited to a China pony is four feet eight inches. This was made in Peking recently by a small pony ridden by an Italian, an

ex-Cavalry officer, who had spent several months in training the animal. A jump of that height is of course far above the ordinary performance. Ponies belonging to officers in the Fifteenth Infantry have cleared the bars at three feet ten inches without training and without too skillful riding. At a recent Gymkana, green ponies, absolutely without training or practice, cleared three feet six inches over a post and rail jump. On the whole, these Army ponies have been carrying weights in the neighborhood of one hundred sixty-five or one hundred seventy pounds, while the Peking pony above referred to was carrying not more than one hundred forty pounds.

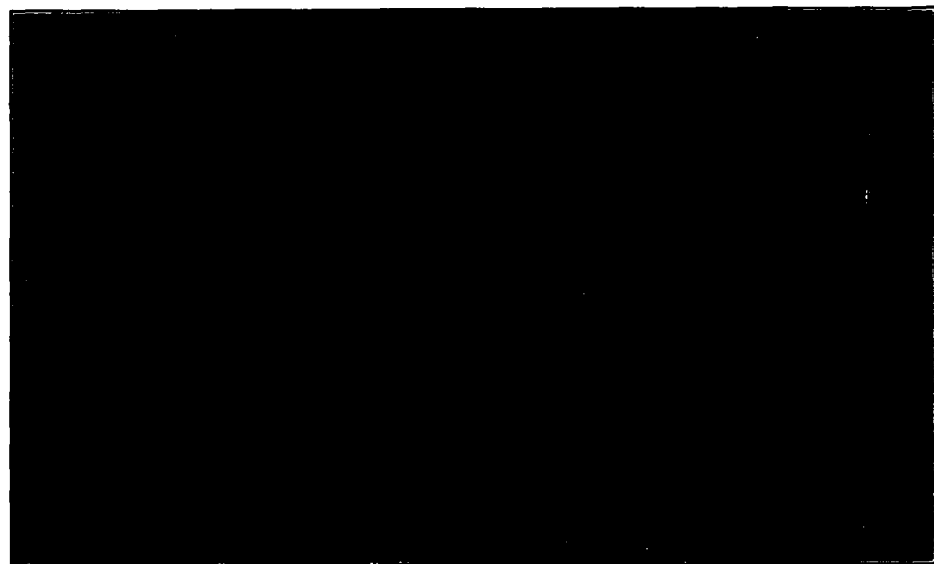
The China pony is a natural polo pony. It is hard to conceive of any



A Green Pony, Seemingly Enjoying the Jump. This Promising Jumper is in Good Hands and Should Make a Name for Himself in North China

piece of horse flesh being introduced to a ball and stick early one afternoon and playing a fair game of polo later that same day. It has been done time and time again with the China pony however. I do not approve of this method of breaking in a pony and in every instance where it has been done the animal's progress has been handicapped. At the most though, two or three months of hard conscientious work with the animal will come fairly near to producing a finished pony. Polo on these ponies is not so fast a game as with horses, but nevertheless it is a very satisfactory sport. For the reason above referred to, namely, that few are willing to put in the work necessary to train a pony properly, the animals are not so handy as polo ponies at home. The stopping is usually a gradual process, and turning is a matter of circling. I have often heard it stated that a China pony could not be made to stop and turn on its haunches; but that is not so. The contention has always been that

the small pony carrying a weight so great in proportion to his own, could not handle the combined momentum as a horse does by setting the hind quarters and swinging on them, and that it was necessary for the pony to slow up by a succession of hops and circle around on the forehand. I have proved to my own satisfaction at least that a pony can be made to turn on the haunches and his speed increased materially. Accentuated aids, with particular attention to shifting the weight will bring a pony up every time. From what I have said above I am afraid that the inference drawn will be that every China pony is a potential polo pony. That of course is not the case. Just as with horses, so with ponies. Every now and then a senseless, mouthless brute bobs up and no amount of training or schooling will develop the animal into a polo mount.



Food, Grooming and Proper Management Develop the Shaggy "Griffin" into a Good Looking, Well Proportioned Animal. This Pony is the Property of Lieutenant Colonel George C. Marshall, 15th Infantry

All take naturally to the stick and ball part of the game, but as regards handiness the majority need a lot of finishing. In midsummer a pony is played two chukkers in an afternoon, but in cooler weather many can stand three periods without injury. The normal practice is to play on alternate days, though frequently successive days see the ponies in action.

I have gone into the pony's performance in these various sports as one means of showing the animal's power, stamina, and speed. Reference also has been made to the service rendered by them to the conquering Khans. The hardiness developed through service in present day Mongolia is also outlined. His use in the Chinese army would be another item to his credit.

SUITABILITY AS MILITARY MOUNTS

A question which arises in the minds of cavalrymen when considering this animal for a trooper's mount is whether or not he could carry the weight. The weights that even the small desert ponies carry under very trying conditions should be recalled. The fact too, that a thirteen hand one inch pony will race through a seven mile hunt carrying as much as one hundred eighty-five pounds throws more light on the subject. I have had ponies out for three day periods on reconnaissance work and usually covered about a hundred miles on these trips. The ponies carried very nearly the equivalent of the full field equipment load and suffered no discomfort. From personal experiences, from what I have seen in North China and Mongolia, and from what I have heard from people of broader experience than myself, I have every confidence that the China pony would stand up under service conditions.

It may be taken as an established rule that all ponies coming into China are geldings. I know of but two mares and two stallions in all of Tientsin and Peking. The Mongols choose to keep the monopoly of the pony market and will not release animals that might be used to start breeding enterprises in China. Such mares and stallions as have come through have been excellent animals and the Mongol owners could not withstand the temptation of the prices offered. Selective breeding cannot be conducted under foreign supervision. From what has been mentioned above, it is seen that the opportunity does not exist in China since the necessary stock is not available. Certain efforts along these lines are made in Mongolia to perpetuate strains which become famous, but it is not done with any intelligence and the results leave much to be desired. Cross breeding has been mentioned, but at the present time this practice is not being encouraged. The wholesale introduction of the cross breed was demoralizing racing and the various Race Clubs have limited the sport to pure bred ponies.

COST

While it has been possible to purchase locally sufficient ponies to meet the needs of the United States Army Forces in China, it would be necessary to go into Mongolia in order to purchase remounts in quantity for Manila. Satisfactory ponies for military purposes could be put down in Kalgan today at about one hundred thirty dollars Mex. In such a draft of picked ponies, there would be plenty of animals that could be developed for use in those mounted sports now rightly regarded as essential for mounted training. The above mentioned price is however, subject to advance at the whims and wiles of the tax-hungry Mongol Government on one hand, and of the Chinese militarist factions on the other. Such fluctuations would probably not alter the total given below by more than twenty-five dollars United States currency. For the purpose of calculation, take the above figure, known to be accurate for the present day, add twelve dollars for freight to Tientsin and sixty-six dollars for transport Tientsin to Manila, with the result that the pony landed in Manila costs two hundred eight dollars Mex or about one hundred fifteen

dollars United States currency. This price is based on commercial shipping rates, and were the *U. S. A. T. Meigs* to be used for these shipments, the cost to the government would be less. Consider this figure as against the average price for remounts, one hundred sixty-six dollars (F. Y. 1925). To put this animal down in Manila, add railway freight and shipping costs on the Pacific. A horse set on the wharf in Manila will stand the Government not much less than two hundred sixty-five dollars as against one hundred fifteen for a China pony.

FORAGE

As for feeding, the pony is again the more economical animal. He does very well on ten pounds of hay and eight pounds of oats as against fourteen and twelve respectively for the horse. At present prices, based on American feed put down in Manila, this is a saving of fifty-three dollars per head per year. In addition to money savings, the reduced amount of feed to be hauled would release valuable transport space for other cargo. These pony versus horse figures are worth noting, now that Army funds are so limited and every resource must be exploited in order that a dollar may be made to go farther than previously.

There is every reason to believe that the China pony could become acclimated to the Philippine weather. He does very well in Hongkong and goes through the intensely trying local summers without suffering. Our Montana and Wyoming stock live in a climate not much less severe than that of Mongolia and seem to be able to adjust themselves to tropical conditions.

I do not wish it inferred that I am among those unthinking enthusiasts who would forsake the horse for the pony under any and all circumstances; but I firmly believe that under certain conditions the pony is at least the equal of the horse. That these favorable conditions exist both here in China and in the Philippines, I am firmly convinced. The local situation is unquestioned and beyond the necessity for argument, despite the fact that one local commander of the past saw fit to have condemned and shot some thirty ponies, replacing them with misfit American stock. The reason given seems to have been that a pony was no worthy mount for a man-sized man!

My purpose in embarking upon this narrative was to set down facts regarding the pony and to describe him along lines which would interest horsemen. I now realize I have gone beyond my original purpose and in addition have endeavored to brief a case for the animal. However, there are perhaps many of the readers of this article who, through an incomplete understanding of the China pony, have classed him as an inferior type of horse. I trust that through this unwitting plea they may find their opinions at least leavened with tolerance.

If Only We had Read the Prophet Clausewitz

BY

Colonel A. T. HUNTER, V.D., R. of O.

I HAVE been impelled to the utterance of this sermon by reading a performance of Rudyard Kipling who in so many books has done much towards the appreciation of the English soldier and given glorious inspiration to all citizens of the Empire. The performance I refer to is characteristic of Kipling, characteristic of the English-speaking race and is a dangerous if not evil performance. It is always dangerous and sometimes evil to despise other men's religion.

Kipling calls it "The Honours of War" and it deals with the ragging of a young officer who according to Kipling used "to lecture on tactics in the anteroom" and "said Clausewitz was the only tactician"; "Tactics and the great General Clausewitz unknown to the Average Army Man", says Kipling.

Now Clausewitz, while his sacred writings deal with tactics in their humble place and proportion as he deals with all subjects pertaining to War, is no more to be called a tactician than an archbishop is to be called a deacon. Nor is he to be called a mere great general nor even a strategist; although when occupying the mundane position of Prussian Chief of Staff in the winter of 1830-31 he drew a plan, which in turn, as we shall see, drew some of us into Belgium.

Among Germans, Clausewitz is to their great War God what among Moslems, Mahomet is to Allah. I am seeking to inquire whether it would have been better if our soldiers, our statesmen and better still our great writers had read Clausewitz, from whose inspiration the military and political operations of the Germans have flowed just as directly and inevitably as the incursions of the Arabs, Saracens, Turks and other Moslems flowed from the Koran.

The man Clausewitz entered the world in 1780 and the Prussian Army in 1792. He served in the campaign of 1793-94 on the Rhine against the French revolutionary armies. In these days if he had that amount of service and had attained the ripe age of 14 he would call himself a War Veteran and consider his military education complete. His service put Clausewitz on his inquiry and he began to study until he attracted the attention of Scharnhorst, who is also reckoned by the Germans among the prophets. He made the Jena campaign in 1806 as an aide-de-camp, was wounded and taken prisoner. On his return he went on Scharnhorst's staff and was made military instructor to the Crown Prince who afterwards became Kaiser Wilhelm I. by the efforts of soldiers who worshiped the prophet Clausewitz.

In 1812 Clausewitz transferred to the Russian service and after Napoleon's retreat from Moscow was the intermediary in the intrigue by which York's Corps deserted from Napoleon. He continued his service nominally

with Russia until 1815 when in the Waterloo campaign he acted on a Prussian staff at Wavre against Grouchy.

From 1818 to 1830 he became Director of the Military School at Berlin, during which years he composed, among other military studies, that message to suffering humanity called "On War". In 1830 he became Chief of Staff under Marshal Gneisenau and as I have said composed a plan. He died of cholera in 1831 and his wife published his manuscripts. So much for the man Clausewitz.

The "On War" of Clausewitz has been the Bible of the modern German. The literary style is a delightful perplexity. Following the methods of the Philosopher Kant, of whom he was in some degree a disciple, he dives with you to tremendous metaphysical depths. Then just as you are drowning, he resuscitates you with some of the most tingling satire that ever was penned. The criticisms of military men attempted by moderns like Mr. H. G. Wells sound crude and inartistic after reading the passages where Clausewitz demolishes the geometric systems or the bloodless manoeuvres admired by his contemporaries.

It is true that at last our Field Service Regulations and our military thinkers have accepted his doctrines. These first became a religion with the Germans and the parts that can be avowed have been embodied in their regulations; while many things that startle humanity and would not be good to put into circulation as an official publication have been handed along through the regiments, the bureaux and the universities of Germany like the secrets of Masonry. Our regulations have gradually cribbed some of Clausewitz's ideas on War. But nearly everything that our regulations and our staff lecturers are preaching in these days as a novelty was preached by this fiery prophet of Mars to his lecture classes a century ago.

When our lectures on operations parade their dull phrases about an offensive-defensive and the necessity of the counter-stroke, why not read the reasoning that led to the doctrine and the beautiful summing up in his own words?

"A swift and vigorous assumption of the offensive—the flashing sword of vengeance—is the most brilliant point in the defensive."

What a number of great sermons we could preach from texts in old Clausewitz. Take one at random and worry it out. He says—

"Almost all the Generals who are represented in history as merely having attained to mediocrity and as wanting in decision when in supreme command, are men celebrated in their antecedent career for their boldness and decision."

You could write a thesis on this text with illustrations from the career of Fighting Joe Hooker in the American Civil War or General Buller in the South African War.

The supply of texts for startling sermons is inexhaustible.

Instead of reading our dead-worded regulations, would it not have profited us to read the original message? Moreover, would it not have helped

us when we come to find that everything German in the Great War is in the Gospel of Clausewitz; every German conception of what War is, and that it must be conducted not as with us like a superior form of sport but as "an act of violence pushed to its utmost bounds?"

Do we marvel at the German contempt for treaties and international moralities about poison-gas when Clausewitz almost on his first page speaks of "Self-imposed restrictions almost imperceptible and hardly worth mentioning, termed usages of International Law?"

Do we wonder at a tendency towards frightfulness when the prophet says "In such dangerous things as war, the errors which proceed from a spirit of benevolence are the worst"; and says "To introduce into the philosophy of war itself a principle of moderation would be an absurdity?"

Let us now set our minds to the study of three specific matters in which we shall better comprehend the reverence of the Teutons for their supreme prophet.

First, it was a matter of some wonder that the Central Empires, blocked at the Belgian and Rhenish entrances to France and stale-mated on the Austro-Italian front but still with enormous reserves, did not break through Switzerland. The intrepid but untried Swiss Militia would have lasted probably as long as the Rumanian Army when it got the full brunt of war.

This dangerous suggestion was settled not on a calculation of chances but on a dogma of Clausewitz that Switzerland must be left to its own forces and remain neutral.

Secondly, it has been a matter of considerable cogitation why, inasmuch as Russia was always a long way from war-readiness and France was nearly as much on her toes as Germany herself, the German strategists did not follow the Napoleonic procedure of merely holding or observing the French and hitting Russia at the outset with every available pound of man and ammunition power.

It is all to be found in Clausewitz. He says in one passage:—

"Russia by the campaign of 1812 has taught us, first that an Empire of great dimensions is not to be conquered (which might have been easily known before), secondly that the probability of final success does not in all cases diminish in the same measure as battles, capitals and provinces are lost (which was formerly an incontrovertible principle with all diplomatists, and therefore made them always ready to enter at once into some bad temporary peace) but that a nation is often strongest in the heart of its Country, if the enemy's offensive power has exhausted itself; and with what enormous force the defensive then springs to the offensive."

That is a little in the style of old Kant, but this is more definite; in speaking of the man whom he always calls Buonaparte there is this utterance:

"His campaign did not miscarry because he advanced too swiftly or too far, as is commonly believed, but because the only means of success failed. The Russian Empire is no Country which can be regularly conquered, that is to say, which can be held in possession, at least not by the forces of the present States of Europe, nor by the 500,000 men with which Buonaparte

invaded the Country. Such a country can only be subdued by its own weakness, and by the effects of internal dissension. In order to strike these vulnerable points in its political existence, the Country must be agitated to its very centre."

Accordingly in the Great War our astute disciples of Clausewitz, instead of trying like Napoleon to hack through to Moscow, provided by subtler means the internal dissension and fomented the necessary agitation. By hearkening to the great prophet they have more surely reached the Kremlin than the Corsican Conqueror who staked his army at Borodino and found hot ashes and cold comfort for his pains. The present Soviet government and the Red Bolshevism that is simmering in every industrial town in the world were born in that passage of Clausewitz.

Thirdly, how did it come that they must hack through Belgium instead of, as they afterwards tried to do, passing where the French with so much difficulty erected a sign "They shall not pass?"

Again it is all according to the Prophet Clausewitz. He can no more keep away from it than a Hebrew prophet can forget Babylon. In one passage he says:

"The centre of gravity of the French power lies in its military force and in Paris. To defeat the former in one or more battles, to take Paris and drive the wreck of the French across the Loire must be the object of the Allies (Read *Germans for Allies* in these days). The pit of the stomach of the French Monarchy is between Paris and Brussels; on that side the frontier is only one hundred and fifty miles from the capital."

But the plan I have already mentioned will speak for itself. You will find it on p. 120 of the English translation of Von Caemmerer's book "The Development of Strategical Science."

We must of course read the word "Germans" for the word "Allies" when Clausewitz uses it. In 1830 Allies includes Prussia; it was the French against the Allies; in 1914 the Germans against the Allies. With this exception I read it verbatim.

Clausewitz proposes to make the conquest of Belgium the real object of the attack:—

"That country of moderate size and large resources is enveloped by Holland and Germany; the Army kept concentrated in that country after its conquest would not be an advanced guard pushed far ahead into an enemy's country, and therefore this conquest could, under ordinary circumstances, be permanently maintained. Public opinion in Belgium, however passionate and hostile at first after the revolt, was certainly not unanimous; especially at Antwerp and Ghent a political reaction in this respect might be expected; this also would facilitate effective occupation. All these circumstances of course would contribute to a more easy conquest. The French may be ever so strong in Belgium; they still would be always weaker, as matters stand, than in their own Country. If once in possession of the Meuse as far as the

Sambre, the conquest of Belgium would be practically complete; for even if the fortresses Mons, Tournay, Courtray, etc., in a straight line along the frontier, were not in the hands of the Allies (Germans) they could still maintain themselves in Belgium. On the Meuse, however, Venlo, Liege, and Namur would have to be captured, probably the latter fortress only offering some resistance. Hence we believe that if the arms of the Allies (Germans) were able to gain a victory somewhere, and this must necessarily be supposed when an offensive is intended, that victory would be attained by the conquest of Belgium as the easiest and most assured result."

In all the numerous plans that Von Moltke framed for the invasion of France between the years 1857 and 1870 he always cast longing eyes on this old plan of Clausewitz. In 1870 the shadow of England kept the cat from the canary.

But in 1914, feeling at last strong enough to defy the effete British, the Germans followed the old plan inch by inch. They treated Belgium as a conquest. They dealt with Antwerp with unusual and but for this plan inexplicable tenderness. They found the French, as predicted, weaker in Belgium than in their own country and the French retreated. As predicted they had no difficulty in maintaining their ground in Belgium and being provident folk they had made ready for the resistance of Liege and Namur with earth-quaking howitzers.

Ignorant people have said the Germans had been preparing for this war for forty years. In truth it was for eighty years. And thus we have seen how, more than four score years after the mortal remains of the prophet had mouldered into dust, his disciples, millions upon millions strong, in fulfilment of his prophetic direction, came roaring up the Belgian pike, Hell-bent for Paris.

Now we naturally ask would it not have been well if English officers had read the prophet Clausewitz? The answer is, English officers did read Clausewitz and it made no difference.

A conspiracy is a queer thing. If a dozen men conspire, the secret usually leaks out. Robert Louis Stevenson notes that a secret might be known to a whole Highland countryside and not leak out. In our day there was a conspiracy of sixty million people with a secret poisonous to Britain. Every German officer, civilian dignitary and university professor knew the secret and was a conspirator. Did it leak out? If not, why not?

Our senior English officers had not only read Clausewitz but *knew much about* this German conspiracy. In their higher staff courses they were being informed that the Germans had built enormous railway sidings and platforms at a lot of jerk-water villages on the Belgian frontier. The English intelligence service was amazingly good and kept the authorities well informed of what was going on, but no action appears to have been taken. Among them they suppressed the information. This is a cold historical fact:

the British Empire was deceived by the suppression of information vital to its existence. The trouble with these English officers (and their Canadian imitators) has been that they did not sufficiently read Clausewitz when he treats of war as "an instrument of policy", that "War is not an isolated event". "War is nothing but a continuation of political intercourse with a mixture of other means" and that in reality the staff does not plan a war but the cabinet. This being the case the public opinion which elects the cabinet in a democracy is the ultimate strategist that designs the war. Our intelligence service knows this of other countries and studies the currents of their political life closely. But the political life of Great Britain, most important of all to the Army that is its instrument of policy, has been entirely abandoned by the English officer.

In the ancient republic of Athens on one occasion, when there was a bungle, a batch of generals were executed, not because they were beaten—that might happen to any one—but because they had deceived the people. Had it been Athens, the Ancient Mistress of the Seas, and not Britain, we shudder to think what they would have done to those who, knowing of the conspiracy, kept the information from them.

I am aware that in English-speaking countries military and naval officers have a horror of political affairs and confuse them with immodest advertising, intrigue for unfair promotion and general unsportsmanlike conduct. But there will be no safety for the British Empire or the American Republic until this attitude is so far modified that an officer in receipt of information, the suppression of which will endanger his country, will feel that he is not entirely absolved from his duty to the public that pays his wages by reporting to somebody higher up, whether it be to a military or naval grandee or to a pigeon-holing statesman; and that the security of the nation is in some cases paramount to the etiquette of the profession. I do not suggest a letter to the *Times* or any of the cruder methods of publicity. It is an exceptional case not provided for in regulations and officers must learn to improvise.

But to return to our Prophet Clausewitz, let us not be in any hurry to condemn the religion he teaches. Let us remember that he was not speaking for an Empire that was seeking to tread on the necks of humanity but for a people that like Israel under Moses had just come out of bondage. His ethics were meant as gospel for the defensive; and he preaches that War is not the remedy of the stronger but of the weaker party. To the pacifist who would persuade you of the merits of being a door-mat you may cite this text in behalf of preparedness—

"War actually takes place more for the defensive than for the conqueror, for only invasion calls forth resistance, and it is not until there is resistance that there is War. A conqueror is always a lover of peace (as Buonaparte always asserted himself); he would like to make his entry into our state unopposed; in order to prevent this, we must choose War, and therefore also make preparations, that is in other words it is just the weak or that side which must defend itself which should be always armed in order not to be taken by surprise; so it is willed by the Art of War."

(Reprinted by permission from the Canadian Defence Quarterly.)

Some Russian Cavalry Charges During The Great War

BY

BORIS D'ADAMOVITCH

Formerly Colonel commanding the First Cossack Cavalry Regiment

AFTER the Russo-Japanese War a great many military writers said that the old-time role of cavalry was finished and that the cavalry charge against modern artillery and infantry was impossible; that modern cavalry is only for reconnaissance service and that it represents a mounted infantry. All these sad authors take for their example the charge of Captain Kasorotov who, during the Japanese War, charged a Japanese battery with his squadron of Cossacks and failed to take it. But this charge even without results demonstrated the contrary of the above claims:—The squadron charged the battery on an open plain. During the charge Kasorotov and the officers of the squadron were killed. Command was taken by a sergeant who led the squadron within *ten paces* of the guns and ran into barbed wire. All that was necessary was to move a few paces to the right and a few paces to the left and the guns would have been taken. But during this movement the sergeant was killed and the men, remaining without any commander, retired without having captured the battery.

Grace a Dieu the views of these mournful cavalry undertakers remained without serious attention. The Inspector General of Russian Cavalry, the Grand Duke Nicholae Nicholaevitch (Chief of the Russian armies during the war), changed the tactical methods of the cavalry and gave the most careful attention to open order and the individual training of the cavalry officer, soldier, and horse, but conserved the charge as the first and primary objective of cavalry.

The splendid charges of the Russian cavalry during the Great War form a glorious crown for the Grand Duke Nicholae Nicholaevitch and for all the Russian cavalry generals who were always in favor of the charge. Almost on the first day of the war on the Galician plains, in East Prussia and in Poland began a series of cavalry charges each more brilliant than the others. Of the more remarkable of these charges I wish to cite the following:—

1. The charge of August 4, 1914, near the village of Gorodoc by the Cossacks of the First Line Coulan Regiment of the Second United Cossack Division against Hungarian Hussars of General Zarembo.

2. The charge of this same First Line Regiment and the capture of a battery near Bouchach in August, 1914. This charge began at a distance of six kilometers from its objective on an open plain,—open order front, several ranks. A kilometer in advance of the regiment went a lieutenant with two Cossacks as a sort of battle patrol. The charge commenced at the trot and afterwards at the gallop. Two kilometers in front of the Hungarian battery there was encountered a deep morass which had only two passages; these

were found and indicated by the lieutenant of the patrol. The regiment closed up for this passage, passed through, dispersed in open order again and arrived at the Hungarian battery. The last shots from these guns were fired at twenty paces from the cavalymen and horses, and those of them which were hit were torn in pieces. The gunners took cover under the cannon, firing with their revolvers. They were all cut down with sabers. The group of Hungarian officers with General Zarembo fought to the end with their pistols and were sabered, together with the squadron of Hungarian Hussars which defended the battery.

This charge was one of magnificent beauty,—the blue sky splashed with the red of the exploding Hungarian shrapnel shell and the green plain with the red "Bachlik" of the charging regiment. The loss to the cavalry regiment in dead and wounded was two officers and forty Cossacks.

3. The charge against, and capture of a German battery in East Prussia in August, 1914, by the Guards Regiment "Konny". In this charge the officer commanding the squadron which took the guns was Captain Baron Wrangel, who afterwards was General and Commander of the Russian Contrabolshevist army.

4. The charge of the 12th Cavalry Division under the command of General Kaledine during the great battle of Galiciya (August, 1914) against the Austrian infantry in trenches. This resulted in the capture of the trenches and all the infantry.

5. The charge of the First Volgsky Regiment of Cossacks under the command of Colonel Pacapay against three lines of Austrian trenches occupied by infantry and machine guns near the village of Vetrzino in December, 1914. All three lines of trenches were taken but the regiment lost all its officers,—the colonel and seven officers killed,—and a hundred Cossacks killed and wounded, because this regiment (like all mountain Cossack regiments) had no lances and could not reach with their sabres the infantry which took cover in the trenches and then fired on them from the rear.

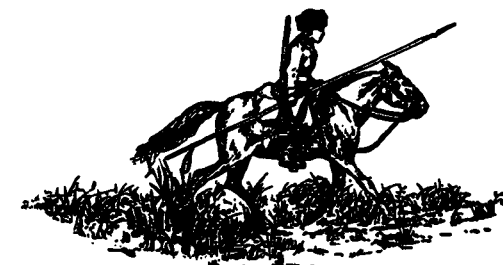
It is impossible to describe in a short article the numerous charges of the Russian cavalry during the last war. It is a history of cavalry which properly occupies itself with that. I am sure, however, that the names of the Russian cavalry generals of the Great War,—like Count Keller, Pavlov, Baratov, Kaledin, Krimov, Rennenkampf, Krasnov, Baron Wrangel and many others,—will for a long time be connected with cavalry charges.

Finally, as an example of the mobility of cavalry. I want to mention the squadron of Russian Cossacks of Colonel Paliy which marched from the Russian front in Turkey to the English front in Mesopotamia.

From my personal experiences in the Great War in charges against cavalry, artillery and infantry,—against villages with trenches, infantry and machine guns,—I am, personally in favor of the charge in every modern war. This same opinion was my father's in the war against the Turks, my grandfather's in the wars against Napoleon, and was the opinion of all my forbears

in the ancient wars. It is only the tactics and the style of order which changes.

A true cavalryman will find always the moment and the means for making a victorious charge as we saw well proved on the Russian front in the last war.



The Black Hills Endurance Ride, 1926

BY

Captain NORMAN E. FISKE, Cavalry

TO the Black Hills of South Dakota, famous in legend and story for the lurid romances and daring exploits of the early mining camps, the horse is no stranger. In the exciting careers of such heroes as Deadwood Dick, Calamity Jane and Wild Bill Hickok, he no doubt participated in many an endurance ride where the reward of speed and stamina was something more than a bit of ribbon or a piece of silver. But even in such a locale of traditional romance and necessity, the horse has been subjected to the same inevitable modernizing influences that, banishing the dance halls and the faro tables—the informal gaieties of the Western frontier—substituted the movie palaces and the automobile; and the horse from a forlorn survival on the farm, only occasionally asserts his ancient nobility in the rodeo and roundup.

But there are pioneers of the old days still living in the Black Hills who would like to see the revival of the riding horse industry in South Dakota. During the War most of this stock was bought up by the Army and until recently it has not seemed worth while to replenish it. Answering a new and persistent demand, however, the breeders of this state are again becoming interested in the production of animals for polo and pleasure riding.

It is not surprising then, that the suggestion of an endurance ride to be held in the Black Hills as a local preliminary to the Colorado Endurance Ride, met with such enthusiastic response from the South Dakota horseman. The cavalry post at Fort Meade, located in the eastern foothills of the Black Hills and in the very center of the horse country, took the lead in promoting the event.

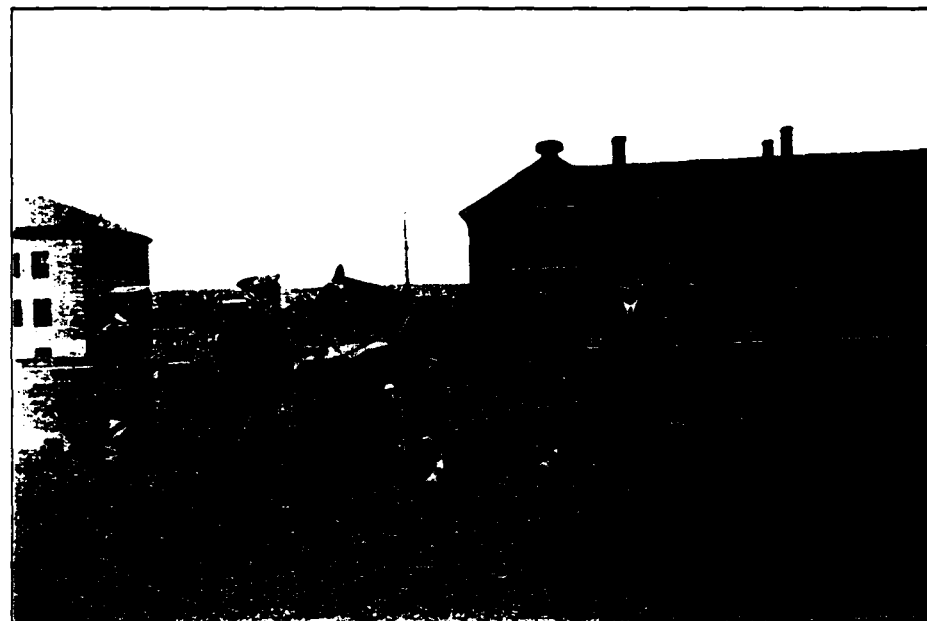
The number of military entries was limited only by the number of available horses. Early in the Fall a tentative date was set for the Ride, and throughout the Winter the horses to be entered were trained and conditioned.

Since one of the objects of the Ride was to select horses to be entered in the Colorado Endurance Ride, the conditions of the 1925 Colorado event were adopted in their entirety excepting those pertaining to distance and speed. Two conflicting considerations governed the distance and speed. Any weaknesses in the contesting horses must be brought out and at the same time the successful contenders must be in condition for the Colorado Ride in September. The length of the route finally determined upon was 211 miles which was to be covered in four days, instead of 300 miles in five days, and the minimum time calculated for each day was six miles per hour instead of about six and one-half.

To be eligible for entry a horse had to be of known breeding on at least one side—that is, either the sire or dam, or both, had to be registered in a recognized stud book. This condition naturally restricted the choice of suitable horses from among those assigned to the Fourth Cavalry at Fort Meade. Of the eligible animals all were tried out and about twenty were selected for conditioning. Those thus chosen were trained under a consistent program of daily routine, with work

under saddle and weight at slow gaits, frequent feeding, and a copious amount of grazing. By April 18th, the day set for the Ride, all of the horses so trained were in excellent condition excepting two that were suffering from injuries.

The preliminary judging, when the horses were weighed and examined for blemishes existing prior to the Ride took place Sunday morning, April 18th, on the parade ground at Fort Meade. Mr. A. E. Hinman of Rapid City, Mr. H. J. Petersen of Sturgis and Lieutenant Colonel R. W. Walker, Major O. Wagner and Captain Norman E. Fiske of Fort Meade were selected as judges. Captain

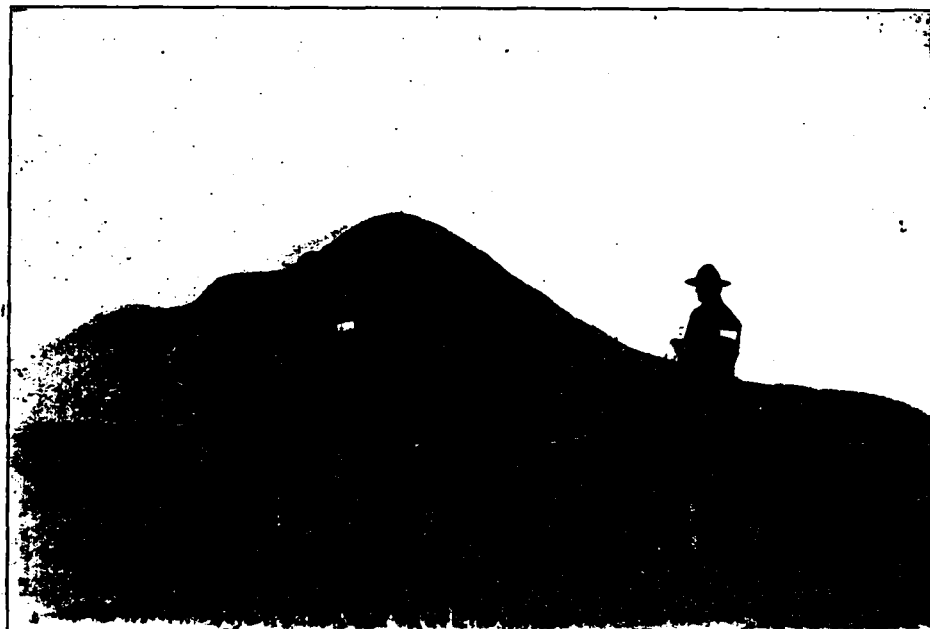


Stella at the Preliminary Judging. Left to right: Lt. J. T. Ward, Lt. Col. R. W. Walker, Corp. Tony Krokaaki, Capt. S. B. Renshaw, Mr. H. J. Peterson, Major O. Wagner, Capt. N. E. Fiske, Mr. A. E. Hinman

S. B. Renshaw, V. C., acted as official veterinarian, Lieutenant J. T. Ward as Recorder and Weigher and Lieutenant W. E. Shallene as Route Master. Eighteen entries were examined by the judges and declared to be ready to start. With the exception of a grade Standardbred mare and a grade Morgan mare, all were grade thoroughbreds.

The first day's ride was but little more than an average march for a cavalry trooper's mount, a distance of 46 miles. The course lay to the east away from the Hills and out over the open South Dakota prairie to the Belle Fourche River and return to Fort Meade. All of the eighteen entries finished this day with so little apparent effort that even the "wise ones" were chary about predicting a winner.

On the second day the distance was 51 miles and the road led north from the Post over the rolling foothills into the sheep and cattle country on the Belle Fourche Irrigation Project. At the noon halt, Lieutenant John I. Gregg's mount *Shorty* was withdrawn because of acute laminitis and Lieutenant Wightman's entry *Moonshine*, by the thoroughbred stallion *Shine*, was disqualified for not complying with the conditions of the ride. On return to Fort Meade, two other horses were eliminated, *Jenny*, a *General Hadley* foal from the Diamond Ranch in Wyoming, on account of an accident and *Adak*, another grade thoroughbred, because of lack of condition.



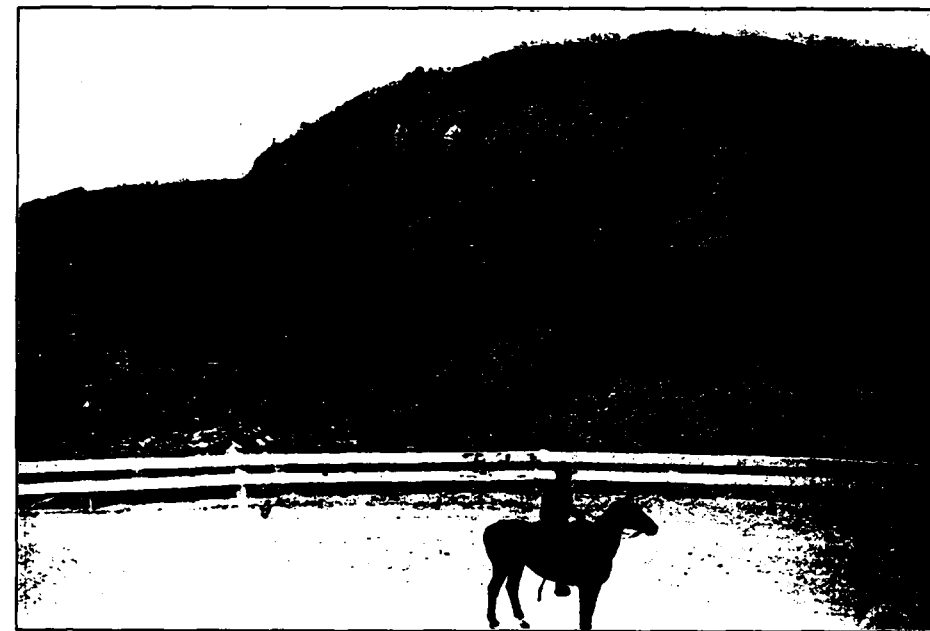
Sergeant Farmer Riding Whistler and Corporal C. N. Boudreau on Suzanne, Skirting Bear Butte, Second Day

The remaining fourteen entries came out of the stables on the morning of the third day looking thoroughly fit for the longest and hardest day, 62 miles over the crushed rock Custer Battlefield Highway to the manufacturing town of Rapid City and return. At the noon halt on Rapid River, *Lucy*, a five year old filly bred by the Remount Service and sired by *Defense*, went out with a sore back. Two more were eliminated on the return trip, *Rambeau*, an Oregon half-bred by *Manwood*, with an enlarged hock, and the Standardbred mare *Alice*, because of exhaustion.

The eleven horses still going showed up very well this day. Captain C. G. Wall on his half-bred polo pony *Gyp* and Lieutenant W. I. Weinaug also on a

polo pony, finished in exceptionally good condition. *Red*, a grade Thoroughbred ridden by H. A. Johnson, *Whistler*, another polo pony sired by *Billy Mason* and ridden by Sergeant D. A. Farmer, Troop C, Fourth Cavalry, *Abject*, a *Jack the Sailor* gelding ridden by Private J. R. Mitchell, Troop A, and the five year old Remount bred mare *Stella*, by *Roly*, entered by Corporal Krokoski, Troop C, were all looked upon as close contenders. *Whistler* and *Stella* were perhaps the favorites, with the odds inclining toward *Whistler* because of the mare's tender age.

But no contest is more uncertain and less possible to "dope" than an en-



Red, Ridden by H. A. Johnson, Entering Deadwood Gulch

durance ride. Most close followers of the ride waited until the fourth day before risking a guess as to the winner. On this day the route deserted the lowlands and climbed into the heart of the Black Hills. From Fort Meade the contestants climbed over the Whitewood Hill and down into the mouth of the picturesque Spearfish Canyon. Then they again took the upgrade and climbed nearly 3000 feet to the mountains above the quaint old mining town of Deadwood, then a sharp drop into Deadwood itself, and finally the return to the Post by way of Boulder Canyon and Bear Butte Valley. The snow had not yet left the mountains but in the canyons the trees were already budding in the warm spring air. The Hills were really at their best but the scenic beauty was somewhat lost on the tired riders who were trying to push their still more tired mounts over the mountain grades.

Captain Wall's pony *Gyp* and Lieutenant Weinaug's mount *Poke* were both very tired and a little lame on this trip. They came in within the minimum time but were eliminated from further consideration. *Gladiator*, the *Saratoga* gelding ridden by Sam Delucia, was also ruled out because of sore back. The surprise of the day was the showing made by *Batty*, a chestnut mare sired by the registered Morgan stallion *Goldfain*, entered by Private R. G. Johnson. This little mare started the ride totally out of condition from a month on sick report. Every day she gained in strength and appearance and on the last day she did so well over the mountain roads that she began to be looked upon as a real con-



The Winners. Left to right: Private J. R. Mitchell on *Abject*; Corporal Tony Krokoski on *Stella*; Corporal C. N. Boudreau on *Suzanne*; Private R. G. Johnson on *Batty*

tender. *Suzanne* and the Oregon half-bred *George W* also surprised the judges by their improved condition on the mountain roads. *Whistler* still ruled as the favorite with *Stella*, *Abject*, and *Red*, close behind.

At the final judging, Friday afternoon, April 23rd, *Whistler* and *Red* were both very stiff and sore. *Abject* appeared perfectly normal as did *Stella* and *Suzanne*. *Batty* had improved still more and was looking better than ever. As a result of the scoring by the judges during the ride, on the day following the ride and at the final judging the following awards were made:

First: *Abject*, bay gelding, age 9; grade Thoroughbred by *Jack the Sailor*. Ridden by Private J. R. Mitchell, Troop A, Fourth Cavalry. Score 94.5. Awarded the Black Hills Endurance Ride Trophy and blue ribbon.

Second: *Stella*, chestnut mare, age 5; grade Thoroughbred by the Remount stallion *Roly*. Bred and raised at the U. S. Army Remount Station at Fort Robinson, Nebraska. Ridden by Corporal Tony Krokoski, Troop C, 4th Cavalry. Score 94. Awarded an individual silver trophy and red ribbon.

Third: *Suzanne*, brown mare, age 8; grade Thoroughbred by *General Hadley*. Bred and raised by Mr. Paul C. Raborg on the Diamond Ranch in Wyoming. Ridden by Corporal C. N. Boudreau, Troop C, 4th Cavalry. Score 92.8. Awarded an individual silver trophy and yellow ribbon.

Fourth: *Batty*, chestnut mare, age 7; grade Morgan by *Goldfain*. Bred and raised by Mr. W. L. Ricketts of Gillette, Wyoming. Ridden by Private R. G. Johnson, Troop C, 4th Cavalry. Score 92.5. Awarded an individual silver trophy and white ribbon.

Fifth: *Whistler*, bay gelding, age 9; grade Thoroughbred by *Billy Mason*. Ridden by Sergeant D. A. Farmer. Score 90.3.

Sixth: *George W.*, bay gelding, age 8; grade Thoroughbred by *Manwood*. Ridden by Private J. A. Dalton, Troop C, 4th Cavalry. Score 87.2.

Seventh: *Red*, chestnut gelding, age 14; grade Thoroughbred from Nevada. Entered and ridden by H. A. Johnson. Score 86.5.

Eighth: *Boxes*, bay gelding, age 9; grade Thoroughbred from the McCoy Ranch, Bighorn, Wyoming. Ridden by Corporal John Carden, Troop B, 4th Cavalry. Score 85.4.

The length and speed of this ride are about what a well conditioned cavalry horse should be expected to do. The judges ruled critically and severely, however, and allowed no horse to continue that was not very close to normal. The ride fully accomplished the purposes of its promoters. It renewed the attention of the horsebreeders to the type of light riding horse desired by the Cavalry; it created interest in the national endurance rides, and particularly it revealed some promising material to train for entry in the Colorado Ride. But of most importance from a military standpoint, it was of great educational value not only to the military horsemen who participated, but to the many who followed and closely observed the progress of the ride.

Command and General Staff School

These are letters which have appeared in *The Military Engineer* and are reprinted by permission.

Fort Leavenworth, Kansas

My dear B:

I haven't forgotten my promise to write you my impressions of this school—and while we have a breathing space here goes for a start.

The usual joys of getting settled were intensified by the sweltering weather during the first part of September. I got here on the last permissible day—better take a week and do it leisurely when you come next year. But, things soon got ironed out under the systematic procedure prescribed in great detail for all newcomers.

Fort Leavenworth appears to most newcomers a surprisingly beautiful post. It is on a plateau a hundred feet above the Missouri River, surrounded by rolling, more or less wooded country, with good bridle paths for riding, though not many good auto roads. Kansas City is thirty miles distant and readily reached by train, trolley, or via a concrete automobile road. The reservation is fairly extensive, comprising some ten square miles in area, and includes the U. S. Disciplinary Barracks, while adjoining one far corner is the federal penitentiary. Gone are the days of the old 2d and 3d Engineer Battalions, when Fort Leavenworth was a good deal of an engineer post. The former engineer barracks have been cut up and made over into several score of officers' apartments, popularly known as the "Beehive". The same thing has happened to other old buildings. Most of these apartments are roomy and comfortable, but we preferred, and were able to obtain, a house on account of giving more elbow-room to the children.

There is a good post school, supported in part by contributions from parents who take advantage of it. As for the ladies, there are so many activities that they apparently have trouble in deciding what to leave out.

Post athletics are concentrated under the management of the Officers' Club, and a single moderate fee confers the privileges of the excellent 18-hole golf course, the dozen tennis courts, the swimming pool, et cetera.

The opening days of the school were characterized by talks of welcome and advice from the commandant, director, and instructors. We were assured that there were in the course no catch problems, no "niggers in the wood pile"—that we would do well not to play hunches, or bone the personal equation of individual instructors, not to follow previous problems blindly, but to tackle each problem with an open mind, giving it our own honest best, as if an actual situation existed. Above all, we were warned not to "straddle" in solving a problem. I am convinced that this is excellent advice. It was also emphasized that the purpose of the school is not simply to turn out staff officers, as some have supposed it to be, but equally to train every officer taking the course for *high command*.

Our program started in rather lightly, with plenty of free afternoon periods. There was no question from the start, however, but that our evenings would be full ones. The amount of reading matter to be covered demanded all available time after supper. In general, the morning is divided into three periods of one hour each, from 8:30 until noon, with 15-minute intervals between. These are either "lectures" or more generally "conferences" on an assigned subject. Student officers are called on at random by instructors, but are not marked on their recitations. An engineer in our class was asked by an infantry instructor, "How do the Engineers fight?" Answer: "They fight like infantry, and they fight like h—!"

The "applicatory system" is early in evidence, for very often the lesson is accompanied by an "illustrative problem," driving home concretely the application of the principles involved. Instructors spend an average of eighty hours each in preparation for these conferences which, on the whole, are very well handled.

So far, all problems and practical exercises have been given in the afternoon, lasting from 1:00 until 5:00 or later. On days when an afternoon problem is scheduled, the last morning period is left free. Saturday is always entirely free, and we are not only permitted, but encouraged, to play hard from Friday evening until Sunday afternoon. It is not difficult to slip back into a schoolboy's attitude toward these week-end holidays.

Preliminary Problems

All problems for the entire first month are illustrative in nature, and do not count on our standing. Thus, the class is given a course in solving map problems, ending with a "trial shot" at a problem involving an "estimate of the situation," and each solution is criticized, but not marked. Another introductory course covers the technique of writing combat orders. The principal subject-matter for the first six weeks, however, is the "tactics and technique" of the various branches, which is covered as thoroughly as time permits, and as the knowledge required of staff officers demands. At the conclusion of this period, one has a fair idea not only of the tasks and capabilities of each branch, but of the way the different arms cooperate. An instructor may be an enthusiast on the Air Service, for instance, but his treatment of the subject can do no more than give this branch its generally accepted place in the picture of the whole team.

A welcome change from the indoor instruction is the "tactical ride." At 1:00 p. m., each student falls in with his section and mounts his assigned horse, recognized by a large number painted on the croup, and the class of 250 rides off into the country, to what destination no student knows. The instructors halt the column at "Cross-roads 576", perhaps, and each student receives a copy of the "situation" and "requirement", the answer to which must be turned in at a designated hour. Before writing our solutions, we are allowed to "reconnoiter", on foot or horseback, though usually not beyond the limit of the "line held by the Blue advance guard," for instance. The solution of this first requirement may be followed by a second and even a third new situation and requirement for "Colonel A" to solve before the afternoon is over. The only map that can be used in these problems is a one-inch map showing the roads, streams, and principal features, but *without contours*; the ground forms, cover, and so on must be determined by observation in the field.

The first problems that count in our year's record are given early in October—and after that they come along at an average rate of two or three a week. The first series do not score heavily—five units each out of a total 1,000, so, although we have had eight problems, the total value is only 4 per cent of the year's work. They are, in fact, referred to as "jitney" problems. Five of them have been "terrain exercises", solved outdoors like the illustrative tactical rides, but these are now over for the fall, not to be resumed until the "general terrain exercises" of next spring. All problems now are indoor map problems, solved as a rule on the Gettysburg and Leavenworth 3-inch maps.

You can readily see that no great amount of preparation before coming here is essential. Of course, the officers who have spent a past year at a special service school of instruction have a certain advantage therefrom, particularly at the start. But the course, as I have indicated, gives you plenty of time to get into your stride, and no engineer officer need hesitate to come here from a district or office job. Correspondence Course "D" is the best course of preparation available for you. It parallels the course here, though in a less thorough manner, and you should cover at least the first few sub-courses, in order to get in advance a little of the feel of the thing.

With the advent of the first "pay" problems, there are heard also in the daily gossip of the section room all sorts of adages about how to solve them—hunches about what the next problem will be, rules of thumb about how to hit upon the proper solution. But, there are no short cuts to success. The school wants you to master the principles and apply them with your own honest opinion to the problem at hand.

The System of Marking

Our first marked problems have come back, and the perusal of the comments is bound to have a chastening effect (as did our experience in giving a verbal order to a dictaphone, and listening to the halting phrases that came back at us from the instrument.) It is well, perhaps, that this year the problems are not to be graded A, B, C, et cetera, but are to be simply marked either S (satisfactory) or U (unsatisfactory). Less time will be given to trying to figure out just where one stands. As you probably know, the marking is entirely impersonal. Our papers bear no names, simply identification numbers, and the instructors are ignorant as to whose papers they grade. They work in committees, under a system designed to insure uniformity in marking. If you believe that the marking committee has missed your point and failed to do you full justice, you may submit your paper for further consideration by means of a "reclama." My impression is that such resubmissions are seldom necessary or advisable.

Among the most helpful aids to study, are the old problems used in former years, if used wisely. The comment sheets issued with the problems are particularly valuable in throwing light upon the concrete application of principles. The wrong use of a problem is, of course, to memorize a solution, and to apply it blindly to a new situation which is bound to have essential differences of detail.

Teamwork and Cooperation Encouraged

Another agency to assist in study has been set up this year by the commandant, Brigadier General Edward L. King, who conceived the ideal spirit of the school to be that of a football team, with the instructors as coaches. The class is divided into sections, to each one of which are assigned two instructors. At least once a week, each section meets with its instructors for the purpose of an informal and frank discussion as to difficulties, doubtful points, and the like. This is an experiment the value of which is not yet fully tested. There are also committees formed voluntarily by various groups of students that meet usually once a week, to exchange views and mutually helpful data. In reviewing a number of subjects preparatory to a problem which may cover a wide range of instruction, it is helpful to have available carefully digested review notes—the preparation of such notes is a task which may well be split up among the members of a committee. I think that such groups can serve a useful purpose if they are thoughtfully planned and organized, and include officers of various branches, representative of different view-points.

We have fairly finished what might be called the first phase, covering the separate arms, their tactics, and technique. We are well started on the course in "Command, Staff, and Logistics", which goes into administrative details of supply, and the like. Today, we had our first conference in "Tactical Principles and Decisions", the basic and most important course of all. So far, there is little evidence of mental strain. This class is younger than any that have come before—the average age, I should judge, is well under forty. Instructors say they can detect a difference in the complexion of the various classes from year to year, and our class appears to be not less serious-minded and business-like about its work, but a bit more light-hearted.

I'm getting quite keen about the course. It dovetails together so neatly—individual instructors may fall somewhat short of academic excellence, but the *tout ensemble*, the system, is surely admirable. We are getting the benefit of the work of a devoted succession of instructors who have put together, piece by piece, this impres-

sive structure of applied knowledge. We have sloughed off all responsibility except that of the student—to take every advantage of this course. The opportunity for extending one's acquaintance among these many fellow-students and instructors, also, is an unusual and valuable one. Altogether, I count it a great privilege to be here. Do not waver in your own decision to come.

Faithfully yours,

A.

Fort Leavenworth, Kansas.
December 31, 1925.

My dear B:

No schoolboy ever welcomed a holiday more joyously than we greeted the Christmas vacation which commenced on December 23, to last over New Year's. That day marked an exodus from the Post for many, especially those temporary bachelors whose families did not accompany them to Leavenworth this year. Those of us who were left have reveled in delightfully late breakfasts, in skating, in reading, in lazy hours of long postponed play with our families. Perhaps there has been some study, but—for the good of our souls—I trust *not much*. For we needed a bit of relief after some four months of steady grind.

Subjects of Instruction

The principal subject-matter for study since my last letter in October has been the course in "Tactical Principles and Decisions." Successively, we have taken up the various lessons—marches, reconnaissance, security, meeting engagements, attack and defense of a position, attack and defense in zone warfare, retirements, delaying actions, counter-attacks, pursuits, river-crossings—a formidable array of tactical principles, brought down to earth by means of a host of illustrative examples. Sometimes, in fact, there are two or three of these applicatory problems to stake out, study, and inwardly digest in an evening—rather a rich diet tactically it seems at times.

Almost as important, perhaps, is our parallel course in "Command, Staff, and Logistics." The composition of a good administrative order is as difficult as, and certainly a more unaccustomed task for most of us than, a field order. We have worked out every detail of moving a division, both by truck and by rail, all over the Gettysburg map. We are taking up, along with each type of tactical situation, the corresponding logistics of supply—thus, supply in attack, supply in pursuit, supply in defense of a river line, and the like. Much emphasis is properly placed on this question of supply—an emphasis not always given in the past—in order that commanders and staffs may not fail to appreciate the vital part that such considerations play in campaigns.

Four other courses, which may be called minor subjects, on the basis of allotment of time, deserve mention here. A brief course in "Military Intelligence," with one test problem, emphasizes the importance of that subject and gives a picture of the technique of a G-2 section in action. The course in "Methods of Training," recognizing that every army officer today must be a competent instructor, covers the principles of training and the preparation of all kinds of map and terrain problems, maneuvers, and field exercises; there are two test problems. "Military History" devotes nineteen lectures to the campaigns of the World War, and touches briefly upon methods of historical research. The course in "Leadership" consists also of a series of lectures, on such illuminating subjects as, for instance, "Failures in Leadership in the Commanders of the Army of the Potomac." One wonders, incidentally, to what extent these failures were inherent in the men themselves, or how far the record might have been differently shaped had better opportunities for previous experience and training been available. Would McClellan's career have

been sensibly different if his notoriously inadequate Pinkerton information service had been replaced by a modern G-2 organization?

Our test problems have been coming along at the rate of only one or two a week, but many afternoons of late have been devoted to map maneuvers, both of the "two-sided" variety, between groups of students, and "one-sided," with the instructors playing the enemy role. Starting with a reinforced regiment, we worked up through the brigade to the division, which involves quite an array of bits of cardboard to move around on the map. These map maneuvers have obvious limitations; they are surrounded at best by a somewhat artificial atmosphere; they need skilled direction in order not to lag, and most of the instructors do not claim real expertness in directing them. With all that, they seem to me very valuable in illustrating principles, in teaching certain details of technique, in compelling an officer to think on his feet, in affording much needed practice in giving verbal orders. After the purely tactical problems, come map maneuvers that simulate the functioning of a staff, with the parts of the various G's and also of the administrative staff played by the students. It all helps mightily to round out the picture the School is trying to paint for us.

Scheme of Instruction

The general scheme of our morning instruction continues unchanged. There is no denying that the conferences do at times get pretty deadly. There is a difference in the inherent interest of the various topics for discussion, and a good deal of difference too, in the ability of the various instructors to "put it over." Some instructors, with no better knowledge of the subject, but perhaps a better understanding of the psychology of their audience, put just the right touch of unexpectedness, of allusion, of humor into the discussion. They use graphics wherever applicable. They seem to put their finger on just what difficulties the student has, and leave him with a concrete picture. It is interesting to try and analyze just wherein lies the difference! It has been a surprise to me, too, to note the rapid rotation in instructors: we have had to date about sixty different instructors for less than two hundred and forty conferences and lectures, or an average of less than four periods per instructor. Needless to say, we are not imbued with the personality of individual instructors, but rather are we left with the impression of a composite of the whole faculty; instruction by mass, rather than individual performers, so to speak. Of course, the personality of the directing heads makes itself felt, but there is this distinct impression of a *system* of instruction paramount to any individual.

The problems though they come less frequently than the "jitney" problems of mid-fall, are getting harder, and they count more. It is becoming more difficult, also, to make any estimate as to what the problem will be about (with exceptions in certain subjects). This calls for a good deal of reviewing, in order that all the various principles imbibed may be fresh in mind before putting to the test one's knowledge of any particular group of them. Two problems have called for "estimates of the situation." These involve a four-hour struggle to cover reams of paper with a discussion, and are popular neither with the students nor (I should guess) with the instructors who have to read them, but are held by the School to be valuable in teaching such logical approach to a decision as will thoughtfully weigh all factors before reaching a conclusion.

Principles, Not Rules, Given

One problem, especially, has caused no end of discussion. A Blue division advancing to cover the frontier from invasion encounters, on its own soil, a Red reinforced brigade. Another hostile brigade is advancing some fifteen or twenty miles distant. Each Red force is about two-thirds the strength of the Blue division. The great majority of the class, some 75 per cent, in their solution, attacked the leading Red brigade vigorously, in order to defeat it before it could be reinforced by the

other brigade. The School's solution, on the other hand, surprised many of us by taking up a defensive position to meet a probable attack from the combined Red forces, while awaiting Blue reinforcements, due the next day. The critical factor was, of course, the question of how soon the other brigade could come into effective supporting action, but it seemed rather a close decision, and the School happily did not consider that those who attacked had merited a mark of "U" (unsatisfactory) thereby, if their solutions were otherwise acceptable. It becomes increasingly clear that no instructor, no school, can give us *rules* that will always, or even generally, work—only *principles* that must be applied as a matter of individual judgment. Usually, the School solutions carry conviction, and seem so surprisingly simple and obvious that one wonders afterwards why it was not all as clear as that while being worked in the problem room!

You recall that I spoke of the official "committees" that meet weekly, each with its own two instructors. These meetings afford opportunity for a discussion of some of the principal errors noted in correcting our papers. In particular, they are the medium for preparing for the formal "discussions" held in respect to certain selected problems. Each group, meeting a day or two after the problem in question, and before the "School solution" has been published, instructs a spokesman to present its own composite judgment on some particular phase of the problem. These spokesmen present their several views later at the joint discussion, and build up, aided by the instructor's comment, a solution, which may or may not conform to the School's dictum presented at this time. Thus, our sense of critical analysis is no doubt stimulated.

I think I have already spoken of the weekly hops that are held every Friday night at the Golf Clubhouse; make a note that tuxedos are generally worn on these occasions. Another great source of pleasure lies in the performances given each month by the Dramatic Club. The brunt of the acting must naturally be borne by the instructors and ladies of the post, but a few student-officers do appear able to find time to learn their lines as well as their tactical principles. In this matter of recreation, the propinquity of Kansas City has been mentioned. Perhaps the favorite resort there is the new Kansas City Athletic Club, to which all officers here have been sent complimentary guest-cards.

If my letters have made you less dubious about coming here, I shall be glad. Certainly, our morale as a class is still excellent. We are fairly in our stride, but not forgetting that there are some stiff hurdles ahead. Personally, I am more than glad to be here, as I have said before.

Faithfully,

A.



A Philippine Hunt

Major JOHN A. CONSIDINE, Cavalry

THE large military reservation at Camp Stotsenburg offers a good opportunity for shooting deer and wild pig under such bizarre environment that one never tires of it, always finding something novel, something interesting in addition to the actual amount of game secured. On one occasion it will be something new about the Negritos or their nondescript dogs; on another, the jungle will yield some secret from its wonderful storehouse of natural history, or perhaps it will be a period of introspection invited and abetted by the wonderful, broken country of your shooting stand. Again you may be carried away by the leaping, roaring grandeur of a twelve-foot grass fire set by your beaters to drive the game towards the guns. All in all, the conditions of a hunt here are so different, the people so interesting and the game so unusual, that one whose hunting experiences have been limited to an occasional hunt in the States, finds it a restful diversion, both mental and physical.

Bright and early on holidays during the hot season, a few devotees of the sport assemble mounted in the rear of the officer's line and ride three or four miles back into the hills across the Bamban River, where they meet their Negrito and Filipino beaters and dogs at a prearranged spot and the day's sport commences. On these hunts one may encounter deer, wild pig, large pigeons, jungle fowl and an occasional python. This local deer is the Luzon sambar which is closely allied to, though smaller than the Indian sambar found in Indo-China, Siam and the Federated Malay States. A large full grown buck will dress about eighty to one hundred pounds, so one readily sees they are smaller than the varieties we are used to in the States. Moreover, the horns slope more to the rear than do those of the States' deer, on account of the fact that they are in the same plane as the frontal bone. The usual bare or sore spot on the underside of the neck, so distinctive of the large Asiatic sambar, is, while present, not so definitely marked. In addition to the deer, there is an abundance of wild pig very much like our razor backs at home, though with larger tusks, and certainly very closely allied to the *barrio* variety one so often has to dodge on an auto trip into Manila. The pigeons vary in size from the ordinary dove, common in the States, to the large green balud of about one pound and a half in weight, including various sizes and colors in between. Jungle fowl and rail can be found in places, but seldom in quantity, while on the other hand, snipe and ducks are to be had in numbers during the rainy season.

In addition to our hunting on holidays there are times when we establish a camp on the northern end of the reservation, about ten miles airline from the post proper, for here we are able to tap virgin hunting country. Having just returned from such a camp established by Lieutenant Walker and myself

near the Negrito village of Maanao, I shall describe in detail our manner of hunting as it is quite typical of the usual hunt to be had here in the Philippines.

Leaving Stotsenburg early in the morning with the necessary men, horses and equipment and proceeding via Capas and O'Donnell, we arrived at Maanao and went into camp in the pine trees in the river bottom adjacent to the O'Donnell river.

The camp site was ideal. Located on a low point in a wide bend of the river, it was swept by whatever breeze was stirring. This in itself was a help as March weather here in the Islands is very hot and very dry. I might mention in passing that pine trees were pine in appearance, but en-



Luzon Sambar Buck Killed on Trip

tirely devoid of the pungent odor one always thinks of in connection with the conifers. However, we were thankful for the shade they offered from the blistering sun. The river at this time is only a very sad imitation of its rainy season proportions. Now it is a rather clear, sluggish creek about fifteen feet wide and two feet deep. To see it thus, one can hardly realize that in July it will be a raging, boiling torrent four hundred and fifty feet wide and fifteen feet deep. This is but one of the many great changes that take place here with the reversal of the seasons.

Camp was barely in shape when the chief of the Negritos and the *teniente* of O'Donnell arrived to arrange the details of the hunt which is to start tomorrow afternoon. The old Negrito chief arrived in camp accompanied by

his Filipina wife, who, while I made arrangements about the hunt with him, sold a few chickens and eggs to the mess sergeant and arranged for delivery of some sweet potatoes and corn for the next day. The chief's wife told the mess sergeant that she would much rather have grain sacks in exchange for the chickens than money. Details for the hunt were quickly completed with the chiefs so that runners were soon out to the various Negrito barrios with orders for the hunters to assemble with their dogs and for the town of O'Donnell to send the best dogs to be had. All is in readiness for a hunt the next afternoon when Generals McRae, Donaldson and Symmonds, and Lt. Bryan will arrive by plane to join the party.



Camp on O'Donnell River

About eleven A. M. the Generals land, just in time for lunch, the "piece de resistance" of which is a delicious young buck killed by one of the detachment the afternoon before. Next in order is a short siesta during the heat of the day, as anyone here knows that mountain climbing in the middle of the day in the tropics is not listed as a sport. About three P. M. we saddled and cleared camp arriving at our shooting stands about a half hour later to find the Negritos already in position for a beat. The ground selected was a section of a grassy hillside intersected by three wooded ravines uniting in a fair sized valley about five hundred yards wide at the bottom where it joined the river bed. Here the guns were placed in line while the beaters, Negritos and Filipinos with their dogs, formed a semi-circle on the hills above "a la skirmisher."

When all was in readiness the Negrito chief sounded a blast on his cara-

ba horn and the drive was on. The change was instantaneous. The unbroken silence of the jungle and hills was shattered by piercing yells from a hundred throats and the shiny black bodies of the Negritos could be seen flashing in and out of the grass on the open hillside advancing down the slope toward the guns. The yells were continuous, though at times they slackened, only to again be reawakened into their full vigor by the bark of one of the dogs indicating a probability of game. When the beaters were half way down the hill an increased commotion ensued but only resulted in the flight of a much flustered and angry jungle cock. On they came when the dogs again barked and then several of them opened with the yip-yip



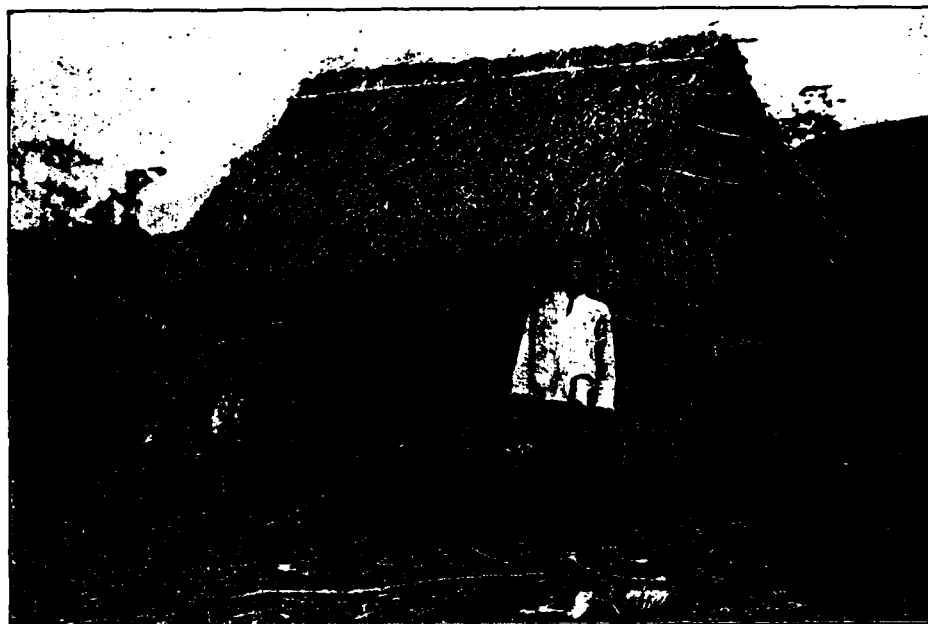
Mess Tent With Negrito Mess Boy in Middle

which indicates a hot trail, closely followed. Now all the Negritos are yelling at the top of their lungs and one old fellow who has apparently caught sight of the game lets go the cry we all have been waiting for, Oosah—Oosah! (deer—deer!) On the alert, all tense, the hunters focus their attention on the point where the dogs are baying. Guns are at the ready for it is only a question of seconds till the game breaks cover and one must shoot quickly before it can flash through the line of guns.

Suddenly a magnificent buck jumps from the grass about fifty yards away from one of the guns and comes on headlong. At the shot he staggers and turns to the left only to meet another shot when he turns back to the right and drops to the third shot. All the guns stand far, as there may be

more game, for the beaters are still driving down the hill. However, nothing more developed so we had the beaters tie the buck on a pole as per the illustration, and we all proceeded back to camp for a session in the old swimming hole, "chow", and an early turn in.

Next morning on our way to the hunt we passed through the Negrito barrio of Maanao where I took the picture of the Negrito family in front of their shack. An amusing incident occurred in connection with obtaining this photo. From a distance I had seen the family standing in front of the shack but by the time I dismounted and set up my camera only the man and the



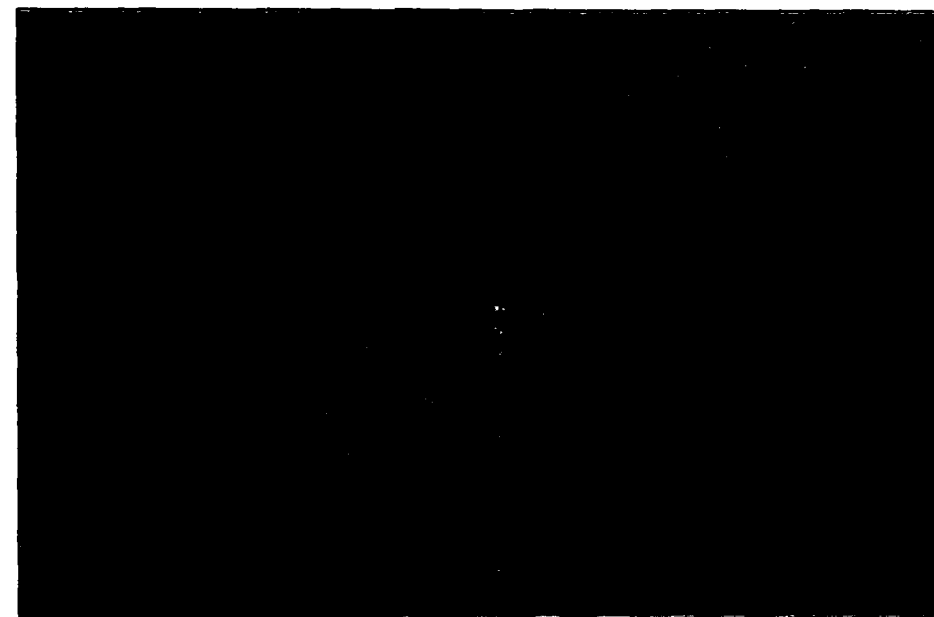
Negrito Shack and Family at Maanao

kids were visible. I went over and upon looking in the shack saw the woman hanging like a monkey with one arm around the ridge pole, a leg curled around an upright and holding the kid in the other arm. She was so badly frightened that it was only by including a neighbor that I could get her to consent to the photographic process.

Leaving Maanao, we rode about four miles to a large saucer shaped valley where we found the Negritos already in position on the heights awaiting the signal to start. This drive was a duplicate of the other except that it was on a much larger scale, covering more country and using about one hundred and fifty beaters. The net results were one deer and one pig, with several pigs that refused to break cover, and one dog gone to his ancestors for getting too familiar with an old boar in the tangled jungle. This drive

took all morning so that we were ready for the excellent dinner Sergeant Diocsin of "C" Troop had prepared for us in a shady dry creek bed at the end of the valley.

While we were eating dinner the Negritos prepared a concoction of roots and rice, cooked by being mixed with water in sections of green bamboo and tossed into the fire from which they were withdrawn thoroughly cooked before the green bamboo had burned through. This mess was spread on banana leaves and all the Negritos assembled around to gorge themselves, occasionally going to a small pool to get a drink which they accomplished by



A Meal in the Jungle. Left to right: Brig. Gen. C. J. Symmonds, Major Considine, Lieut. Bryan, Brig. Gen. T. O. Donaldson, Maj. Gen. J. H. McRae

using sections of bamboo for cups. What would these people do without the bolo and the ever present bamboo?

The afternoon drive brought forth the prize of the trip in the form of a twenty-one foot python with a girth of thirty inches, an altogether evil looking and evil smelling brute. It seems that one of the beaters almost stepped on this huge snake and from what I could gather from his dialect and gestures the experience had been anything but pleasant. However, after the accompanying photos had been taken, the Negritos carved it up and took it to Maanao for a big feed. One point I failed to get was whether they scrambled the ten feet of eggs, about one hundred in number, or merely gulped them down in their usual manner of eating. The accompanying il-

illustration gives a pretty fair idea of this queen of the bosque. On the same drive a big deer came down the hill in full view of everyone and proceeded to try to run over one of our Generals but with disastrous results to itself, turning end over end at the magnificent range of fifteen feet.

So concluded two days of wonderful sport under most interesting conditions, all returning to camp well satisfied that the hunt had been a success. On arrival at camp, Sergeant Salangsang, one of the original Macabebe scouts who was with General Funston at the capture of Aguinaldo, and now First Sergeant of our detachment, informed me that in some strange way



A Twenty-one Foot Python

all our empty grain sacks had "transferred" to the Negrito village and been replaced by ten gamecocks so common here in the Islands. Not seeing the roosters I made inquiry of the Sergeant as to their whereabouts and was informed that on discovery that the sacks were "absent" and the *Manooks* "present" he had made "many chow" out of them for the soldiers. The trip actually ended next morning when the Generals took off. No story of the hunt would be complete without the inspiration of the "Sage of Stotsenburg," our Commanding General, so I am including it.

OUR STOTSENBURG HUNT

By Brigadier General C. J. Symmonds, U.S.A.

'Twas on Clark Field, all set and heeled,
Six ships in line were parking;
The Generals came, all primed for game,
And soon began embarking.

That night was bright and very quiet
As soon as all were sleeping;
But just before, some deer and boar
Heard talk and so were fleeting.

In flights of three, the ships sailed free
And reached the camp, where 'twas said:
"We're in the pines, where the river winds,
And mistletoe hangs o'er."

Early next day, all rode away
To the hunters' choice preserve
Where Ya-Ya howls and dogs and growls
Would surely, the game, unnerve.

With game near by, and some hung high,
They gathered around the table;
The view was great, and what they ate
Surpassed the days of fable.

Two drives were made on this crusade
And luck and skill were telling;
One boar, two deer, a python here
Brought forth the wildest yelling.

They had a hunch that after lunch,
A hunt would be suggested;
So all prepared they even dared
To take the stands selected.

A question arose and do you suppose
That lonely doe was stalking
Or pythonessed and too distressed
To dodge the hunters' talking?

Beaters galore, Balugas three score,
Beat hard the hills and jungle
Till one big buck, just out of luck,
Was struck and took a tumble.

The python "get" did much, you bet,
To add to all their glory;
'Twas twenty-one feet and couldn't be beat
By truth in any story.

Not half's been told of the hunters bold
Or the jokes, the way they tell them
So, if in doubt, just draw them out,
They're always glad to sell them.

Object and Value of Preston System of Branding Animals

BY

Major C. L. SCOTT, Remount Service, Q.M.C.

THE Preston system of branding horses and mules was adopted for two reasons, as follows: (1) As a means of positive and permanent identification; (2) As a means of collecting valuable data for the Remount Service, Q. M. C., for the Veterinary Corps, and all mounted branches of the service.

When a horse or mule is purchased for the Army, its record card, Q. M. C. Form 125, is made out in triplicate. The original accompanies the animal, duplicate copy is filed in the office where animal is purchased, and the triplicate sent to The Quartermaster General's Office for file in the Army horse and mule record file. If the card of any animal branded under the Preston system is lost in the service, a duplicate can be obtained from The Quartermaster General or from one of the five Remount Purchasing and Breeding Headquarters. As long as the brand is properly applied the horse is positively and permanently identified, and his record can be looked up at any one of three places—and the first object of the branding is definitely accomplished.

When a horse or mule is separated from the service, the cause for its separation should be noted on its record card under the heading "Final Separation from the service and reasons therefor", and the card mailed to The Office of The Quartermaster General, as prescribed in instructions thereon. The cause of separation should be stated in specific terms, such as "condemned and sold on account of ring bone, spavin, periodic ophthalmia, etc.," "died of colic, influenza, etc." A mere notation that the horse "died" or was "sold" provides no data as to the reason the animal died or was sold, and gives no information of value to anyone.

After the record card, with proper notation as to final separation from the service of any animal is received in the Office of The Quartermaster General, the triplicate card for this animal, which has been on file in that office all the time, is completed as to reasons the animal was disposed of, and the card placed on the "Dead" file of animals for study and collection of data. The original card is then forwarded to the Surgeon General's Office for study and for collection of desired data of particular interest to the Veterinary Corps.

Anyone can readily see that if these cards are made out and sent in properly after the animal is disposed of, they can be studied and sorted out so as to accomplish the second object of the Preston brand and to show the following:

(a) Longevity of horses from various sections of the country, or of various breeds.

(b) Average useful life of horse in various branches of the service or sections of the country.

- (c) What parts of the horse's anatomy go bad first, if any.
- (d) What are the most prevalent diseases and injuries.
- (e) What causes the greatest loss in animals.

In fact, many other important things of interest and value can be determined, which should benefit the Remount Service, Q. M. C., in its purchasing and breeding work, the Veterinary Corps in its treatments of animals, and the service at large in its handling, care and use of animals. It is of interest to note that the Preston system of branding has already brought out the fact that 1½% of all animals purchased are lost from various causes before they are issued to organizations.



"Captain Hershler," Standing at Brandon, Vt. Foaled 1917; Height, 16 hands; Weight, 1200 Pounds; Girth, 72; Bone, 8¼. Bay T. B. Stallion by "The Manager," Out of "Fleeting Fashion" by "Hamburg". Located for the Remount Service by Major C. A. Benton and Purchased from Mr. MacFinn at Saratoga.

Side Lights on the Battle of the Little Big Horn

THE following paragraphs on Sitting Bull, Gall, and the Sun Dance are reprinted by permission from the excellent article on the Battle of the Little Big Horn by Brigadier General E. S. Godfrey, which was originally published in the *Century Magazine* in 1892:

Sitting Bull

"Sitting Bull," a Huncpapa Sioux Indian, was the chief of the hostile camp; he had about sixty lodges of followers on whom he could at all times depend. He was the host of the hostiles, and as such received and entertained their visitors. These visitors gave him many presents, and he was thus enabled to make many presents in return. All visitors paid tribute to him, so he gave liberally to the most influential, the chiefs, i. e. he "put it where it would do the most good." In his way he became known as the chief of the hostile camp, and the camp was generally known as "Sitting Bull's camp" or "outfit." Sitting Bull was a heavy set, muscular man, about five feet eight inches in stature, and at the time of the battle of the Little Big Horn was forty-two years of age. He was the autocrat of the camp—chiefly because he was the host. In council his views had great weight, because he was known as a great medicine man. He was a chief, but not a warrior chief. In the war councils he had a voice and vote the same as any other chief. A short time previous to the battle he had "made medicine," had predicted that the soldiers would attack them and that the soldiers would all be killed. He took no active part in the battle, but, as was his custom in time of danger, remained in his village "making medicine." Personally, he was regarded by the Agency Indians as a great coward and a very great liar, "a man with a big head and a little heart."

The War Chief Gall

Chief Gall was born about 1840, of Huncpapa parents. Until Sitting Bull's surrender, 1881, Gall never lived at the agencies, but was sometimes a guest. When 25 years old he was noted for his bravery and daring. He was besides so subtle and crafty that in 1886 the military authorities offered a reward for his body, dead or alive; an outrage had been committed, which, for daring and craftiness, it was thought no other Indian was equal to. However, he was innocent. Gall knew of the price laid on his carcass and kept away from the military. At Fort Berthold, while visiting friends at the Agency, his visit was made known to the commanding officer at Fort Stevenson, a few miles away. A detachment was sent to the tepee where he was visiting, to arrest him. On their entrance Gall dropped on his belly and pushed himself backward under the tepee. A soldier on the outside bayoneted him through the body and held him till he fainted. The soldiers supposed him to be dead, and so reported. Sent back to get the body, great was their astonishment to find that Gall had recovered consciousness and crawled away. The men searched faithfully the woods in which Gall had concealed himself, but he was not discovered. Gall then got back to his people and vowed vengeance. He had it in many a foray and numbers of battles. He lurked about the military posts and pounced on luckless promenaders, even at the very gates of the stockade that enclosed the barracks and quarters. He raided settlements and attacked Black Hills stages and freighters. He it was who followed the Bozeman Expedition about 1874, for days, when they were searching for gold, compelling them at all times to be in readiness for battle. One of their intrenchments may yet be seen on the divide between the Rosebud and Little Big Horn at the head of Thompson's Creek.

In 1872 he led his braves in a raiding attack on the 2nd Cavalry at "Baker's Battlefield" on the Yellowstone, which by reason of its surprise, came near proving a dis-

aster, as Indians rarely made night attacks. August 4th, 1873, General Custer had gone into bivouac on the north bank of the Yellowstone, just above Fort Keogh, waiting for the main command under General Stanley. The two troops had unsaddled and were resting in the supposed security afforded by the absence of fresh "Indian signs," while Gall made his dispositions for attack. His warriors crawled through woods, down ravines and under the river bank to within 300 yards when an alarm called to arms and a lively battle was kept up until the arrival of troops from the main command which had heard and seen the firing from the mesa several miles away. A week later Gall made an attack on the 7th Cavalry at the head of Pease Bottom, a few miles below the mouth of the Big Horn. In this fight Gall, dressed in brilliant scarlet and war bonnet, rode back and forth in front of the firing line, the target of hundreds of shots, but escaped unharmed. He was the great War Chief of all the Sioux at "Custer's Last Battle." In 1877 he went with Sitting Bull to Canada, and in 1881 surrendered at Poplar Creek, Montana. The band was taken into Standing Rock Agency, 1882, by steamboat. The boat was met by a great throng of people; the military, settlers and employees and Indians of that Agency were at the landing. When the boat tied up, Gall, in full war paint and regalia ostentatiously walked down the gang plank, halted and surveyed his surroundings. His old mother ran to him and tried to gain his notice; she got on her knees, clasped him about his legs, took hold of and kissed his hand; she moaned and cried. Ignoring her caresses, he stalked dramatically aboard the boat. Later Gall became reconciled to agency life and was a good Indian; wise and conservative, he supported the Agent, Major James McLaughlin, in all his efforts for the good of the people. In the grand councils of all the chiefs of the Sioux nation, he was the most influential and stood up for what he considered the just rights of his people. He died at Oak Creek, near Standing Rock Agency, in 1895. His features were massive, and in facial appearance he was compared to Webster, to Beecher, and to Newman. He was a man of great natural ability and force of character and possessed great common sense.

The Sun Dance

"The Sun Dance" was a semi-religious festival where the young men of the tribes were transformed into warriors, knighted as it were. The Sun Dance lodge was the arena and was constructed of rough cut poles; the center pole, fifteen to twenty feet high, was firmly planted within the ground; a circular framework about thirty to forty feet in diameter was constructed around it, the whole tied together with raw hide thongs. It had no covering. Raw hide thongs fifteen to twenty feet long were tied to the center pole. Buffalo skulls were provided to which raw hide thongs were attached.

The warriors squatted in a circle around the arena, first the chiefs and elders, then the other warriors in rear of them; the squaws assembled standing in rear of the warriors; the tom-toms, the orchestra, as it were, were inside the circle near the opening for the neophytes. The neophytes assembled at the large council tent. When all was in readiness they emerged from the tent clothed only in the loin cloth or "gee string," and their bodies painted in all the hideousness that contrasted brilliant colors could give; some with half the body, from hair tip down, painted in green, the other half yellow or white or as the individual fancy could invent. They formed in column and proceeded in slow measured steps, chanting in weird, mournful, sing-song tones, to the arena; the tom-toms were beaten to the time of the chant; as they approached the squaws began in low muffled voices, their plaintive chanting; entering the arena the medicine men made incisions in the skin and flesh of the breast, back or other part of the body of the neophyte and tied one of the thongs fast. Frantic with pain he would dance and yell and plunge his bloody body to break away from this cruel tether that tied him to the framework or from the additional torture of the tied

buffalo head. They fasted for a period before and during the ordeal, all of which was to test their fortitude and courage; such as could pass through the test were received as warriors. Those who failed were branded as "squaws" and cowards and were doomed to the association of squaws and celibacy. During the Sun Dance, the crowd feasted on dog soup—considered a great delicacy. This dance was a ceremony of great importance, and it compared in interest to the Indians with the graduation exercises of our civilized communities. One had taken place about June 5th on the Rosebud. In anticipation of it, the Agency Indians had here joined the hostiles. We passed this Sun Dance lodge on June 24th, where we halted for a rest.

A Sioux Description of Custer's Last Fight

THERE is given below an account of the battle which is translated from a narrative by Red Horse, a Sioux Chief who was a participant.

This account appears in the Tenth Annual Report of the Bureau of Ethnology to the Secretary of the Smithsonian Institution, 1888-89, and was furnished to the Bureau by Dr. Charles E. McChesney, Acting Assistant Surgeon, U. S. Army.

The narrative lacks continuity, is not arranged chronologically, and we do not know anything as to the credibility of the narrator. It is nevertheless believed that our readers will find much of interest in this description of the battle from an Indian view point.

Five springs ago I, with many Sioux Indians, took down and packed up our tipis and moved from Cheyenne River to the Rosebud River, where we camped a few days; then took down and packed up our lodges and moved to the Little Big Horn River and pitched our lodges with a large camp of Sioux.

The Sioux were camped on the Little Big Horn River as follows: The lodges of the Uncpapas were pitched highest up the river under a bluff. The Santee lodges were pitched next. The Oglala's lodges were pitched next. The Brulé lodges were pitched next. The Minneconjou lodges were pitched next. The Sans Arcs' lodges were pitched next. The Blackfeet lodges were pitched next. The Cheyenne lodges were pitched next. A few Arikara Indians were among the Sioux (being without lodges of their own). Two Kettles among the other Sioux without lodges.

I was a Sioux chief in the council lodge. My lodge was pitched in the center of the camp. The day of the attack I and four women were a short distance from the camp digging wild turnips. Suddenly one of the women attracted my attention to a cloud of dust rising a short distance from camp. I soon saw that the soldiers were charging the camp. To the camp I and the women ran. When I arrived a person told me to hurry to the council lodge. The soldiers charged so quickly we could not talk (council). We came out of the council lodge and talked in all directions. The Sioux mount horses, take guns, and go fight the soldiers. Women and children mount horses and go, meaning to get out of the way.

Among the soldiers was an officer who rode a horse with four white feet. (From Dr. McChesney's memoranda this officer was Captain French, Seventh Cavalry. However, Brigadier General E. S. Godfrey in a recent letter to the Editor, states that "the only officer of the Seventh Cavalry who rode a horse with four white feet was General Custer, and the description of this officer's characteristics and movements is sufficient evidence that it was General Custer he had in mind. Captain French was with Reno's command and rode a bay horse.") The Sioux have for a long time fought many brave men of different people, but the Sioux say this officer was the bravest man they had ever fought. I don't know whether this was Gen. Custer or not. Many of the

Sioux men that I hear talking tell me it was. I saw this officer in the fight many times, but did not see his body. It has been told me that he was killed by a Santee Indian, who took his horse. This officer wore a large-brimmed hat and a deerskin coat. This officer saved the lives of many soldiers by turning his horse and covering the retreat. Sioux say this officer was the bravest man they ever fought. I saw two officers looking alike, both having long yellowish hair.

Before the attack the Sioux were camped on the Rosebud River. Sioux moved down a river running into the Little Big Horn River, crossed the Little Big Horn River, and camped on its west bank.

This day (day of attack) a Sioux man started to go to Red Cloud Agency, but when he had gone a short distance from camp he saw a cloud of dust rising and turned back and said he thought a herd of buffalo was coming near the village.

The day was hot. In a short time the soldiers charged the camp. (This was Major Reno's battalion of the Seventh Cavalry). The soldiers came on the trail made by the Sioux camp in moving, and crossed the Little Big Horn River above where the Sioux crossed, and attacked the lodges of the Uncpapas, farthest up the river. The women and children ran down the Little Big Horn River a short distance into a ravine. The soldiers set fire to the lodges. All the Sioux now charged the soldiers and drove them in confusion across the Little Big Horn River, which was very rapid, and several soldiers were drowned in it. On a hill the soldiers stopped and the Sioux surrounded them. A Sioux man came and said that a different party of soldiers had all the women and children prisoners. Like a whirlwind the word went around, and the Sioux all heard it and left the soldiers on the hill and went quickly to save the women and children.

From the hill that the soldiers were on to the place where the different soldiers (by this term Red Horse always means the battalion immediately commanded by General Custer, his mode of distinction being that they were a different body from that first encountered) were seen was level ground with the exception of a creek. Sioux thought the soldiers on the hill (i. e., Reno's battalion) would charge them in rear, but when they did not the Sioux thought the soldiers on the hill were out of cartridges. As soon as we had killed all the different soldiers the Sioux all went back to kill the soldiers on the hill. All the Sioux watched around the hill on which were the soldiers until a Sioux man came and said many walking soldiers were coming near. The coming of the walking soldiers was the saving of the soldiers on the hill. Sioux can not fight the walking soldiers (infantry), being afraid of them, so the Sioux hurriedly left.

The soldiers charged the Sioux camp about noon. The soldiers were divided, one party charging right into the camp. After driving these soldiers across the river, the Sioux charged the different soldiers (i. e., Custer's) below, and drove them in confusion; these soldiers became foolish, many throwing away their guns and raising their hands, saying, "Sioux, pity us; take us prisoners." The Sioux did not take a single soldier prisoner, but killed all of them; none were left alive for even a few minutes. These different soldiers discharged their guns but little. I took a gun and two belts off two dead soldiers; out of one belt two cartridges were gone, out of the other five.

The Sioux took the guns and cartridges off the dead soldiers and went to the hill on which the soldiers were, surrounded them and fought them with the guns and cartridges of the dead soldiers. Had the soldiers not divided I think they would have killed many Sioux. The different soldiers (i. e., Custer's battalion) that the Sioux killed made five brave stands. Once the Sioux charged right in the midst of the different soldiers and scattered them all, fighting among the soldiers hand to hand.

One band of soldiers was in rear of the Sioux. When this band of soldiers charged, the Sioux fell back, and the Sioux and the soldiers stood facing each other. Then all the Sioux became brave and charged the soldiers. The Sioux went but a short distance before they separated and surrounded the soldiers. I could see the officers riding

in front of the soldiers and hear them shouting. Now the Sioux had many killed. The soldiers killed 136 and wounded 160 Sioux. The Sioux killed all these different soldiers in the ravine.

The soldiers charged the Sioux camp farthest up the river. A short time after the different soldiers charged the village below. While the different soldiers and Sioux were fighting together the Sioux chief said, "Sioux men, go watch the soldiers on the hill and prevent their joining the different soldiers." The Sioux men took the clothing off the dead and dressed themselves in it. Among the soldiers were white men who were not soldiers. The Sioux dressed in the soldiers' and white men's clothing fought the soldiers on the hill.

The banks of the Little Big Horn River were high, and the Sioux killed many of the soldiers while crossing. The soldiers on the hill dug up the ground (i. e., made earthworks), and the soldiers and Sioux fought at long range, sometimes the Sioux charging close up. The fight continued at long range until a Sioux man saw the walking soldiers coming. When the walking soldiers came near the Sioux became afraid and ran away.

Comanche

IN connection with the brief mention of *Comanche* in the article in this number on the Battle of the Little Big Horn, there has been furnished by Captain P. W. Wey, Q. M. Corps, the following description of the life led by this equine hero subsequent to the battle.



I joined the 7th Cavalry in 1886 and was still in the regiment at the time of *Comanche's* death, which occurred in a box stall in the stable of Troop "I" in November, 1891, at Fort Riley, Kansas. He was about 32 years old when he died.

While I personally never had the opportunity to see the order, it appeared to be a matter of common knowledge amongst the members of the regiment that an order existed to the effect that *Comanche* must not be ridden by anyone, and that he should

never be molested in his wanderings about the reservation, even if he were found grazing on the parade ground. During the time Headquarters of the regiment was at Fort Meade, Dakota Territory, *Comanche* was stabled with the band mounts; however, upon the arrival of Troop "I" at Fort Meade in 1887 from its former station at Fort Totten, near Devils Lake, *Comanche* was turned over to that troop for care and stabling. This was done, it was understood, for the reason that *Comanche* was ridden by Captain Keogh, who commanded that troop prior to and during the engagement. Farrier Korn of that troop, who was personally known to me, was designated as his caretaker. Farrier Korn was subsequently killed in action at the battle of Wounded Knee, South Dakota, on December 29th, 1890, while still a member of Troop "I."

During the time I was a member of the regiment, *Comanche* attended all regimental parades, being led directly in rear of the standards by Farrier Korn. It is needless to say that *Comanche* received the best of care in the way of feed and grooming; however, in spite of that fact, he had a habit of making daily visits to the troop kitchen garbage cans, adroitly removing the lids with his nose, then would help himself to such of the garbage as best appealed to his taste. He appeared to have a special liking for potato parings, fresh vegetable tops and scraps of bread. After completing one of his tours of the garbage cans, he would present a comical appearance, in that his entire head would be covered with dried coffee grounds and similar matter. Another noticeable trait of this animal was that no matter where he happened to be on the reservation when stable call was sounded in the evening, he never failed to make his appearance at the stable of Troop "I" to receive his daily grooming and feed.

A feat which was considered quite remarkable at the time was that he made the overland march with the regiment in 1887 from Fort Meade, D. T., to Ft. Riley, Kansas, the road distance of which approximated 900 miles. He accomplished this without apparent fatigue, covering as high as 25 to 30 miles per day. While he was burdened with nothing but a halter and just straggled along with the command, the regimental veterinarian considered it a remarkable feat, considering his age, which was then about 28 years.

The story of his discovery near the battle field a few days after the battle, which was related to me numbers of times by members of the regiment who were with the commands of either Major Reno or Captain Benteen, was to the effect that *Comanche* was found grazing some distance from the battlefield without a bridle. The saddle blanket had become lost and the saddle had turned under his belly, which it is presumed was caused by rolling. He had several gunshot wounds, around which the blood had spread and dried, presenting a rather deplorable sight.

The order referred to by Captain Wey follows:

Headquarters, Seventh Cavalry, Fort Abraham Lincoln, D. T.
April 10, 1878, General Orders No. 7.

1. The horse known as *Comanche* being the only living representative of the bloody tragedy of the Little Big Horn, Montana, June 25, 1876, his kind treatment and comfort should be a matter of special pride and solicitude on the part of every member of the 7th Cavalry, to the end that his life may be prolonged to the utmost limit—wounded and scarred as he is—his very existence speaks in terms more eloquent than words of the desperate struggle against overwhelming numbers, of the hopeless conflict, and of the heroic manner in which all went down on that fatal day.

2. The commanding officer of Troop "I" will see that a special and comfortable stall is fitted up for him and he will not be ridden by any person whatever under any circumstances, nor will he be put to any kind of work.

3. Hereafter upon all occasions of ceremony (of mounted regimental formation) *Comanche*, saddled, bridled, draped in mourning and led by a mounted trooper of Troop "I" will be paraded with the Regiment.

By command of COLONEL STURGIS,
(Signed) E. A. GARLINGTON,
1st Lieutenant and Adjutant,
7th Cavalry.

Rain-in-the-Face

THE following story of Rain-in-the-Face, who is supposed to have killed Captain Tom Custer, is from an article by Colonel Jacob Amberg in the

Garry Owen Trumpeter:

Rain-In-The-Face had waylaid and murdered Dr. Houzinger, a veterinary surgeon, and Mr. Baliran, a sutler, who were stragglers in the rear at the time of the Yellowstone Expedition under General Stanley. Not long after this, Rain-In-The-Face with other young Sioux took part in the Sun Dance, a ceremonial performance of great torture in which the aspirants give final proof of endurance and courage which entitles them to the *toga virilis* of a full fledged warrior.

One feature of it was the suspension in the air of the candidate by a rawhide rope passed through slits cut in the breast or elsewhere until the flesh tears and he falls to the ground. If he faints, falters, or fails, or even gives away momentarily to his anguish during the period of his suspension, he is called and treated as a squaw for the remainder of his miserable life. Edward Esmond says Rain-In-The-Face was lucky when he was so tied up. The tendons gave way easily and he was released after so short a suspension that it was felt that he had not fairly won his spurs. Sitting Bull, the Chief Medicine Man, decided that the test was unsatisfactory. Rain-In-The-Face defied Sitting Bull to do his worst, declaring that there was no test that could urge a murmur from his lips. Sitting Bull was equal to the occasion. He cut slits in the back over the kidneys, the hollows remaining were deep enough almost to take in a closed fist years afterward and passed the rawhide rope through them. For two days the young Indian hung suspended, taunting his tormentors, jeering at them, defying them to do their worst, while singing his war songs and boasting of his deeds. The tough flesh muscles and tendons would not tear loose although he kicked and struggled violently to get free. Finally Sitting Bull, satisfied that Rain-In-The-Face's courage and endurance were above proof, ordered buffalo skulls tied to his legs and the added weight with some vigorous kicking enabled the Indian stoic to break free. It was one of the most wonderful exhibitions of stoicism, endurance, and courage ever witnessed among the Sioux, where these qualities were not infrequent.

Rain-In-The-Face had passed the test. No one thereafter questioned his courage. He was an approved warrior. Indeed, it was while suspended thus that he had boasted of the murder of Dr. Houzinger and Mr. Baliran, and was overheard by Charley Reynolds who told Custer and the regiment. Rain-In-The-Face was arrested at Standing Rock Agency by a squad of soldiers under command of Captain Tom Custer, whom the Indians called Littlehair, to distinguish him from his brother, the General, whom they called Longhair. He was put in the guard-house and condemned to execution but with the aid of white prisoners made his escape. Before doing so he told Tom Custer in the event of his escape, he would cut his heart out and eat it.

From here on we will let the warrior tell his own story as found in *Out Door Life*, of March, 1903:

"I joined Sitting Bull and Gall. They were afraid to come and get me there. I sent Littlehair a picture on a piece of buffalo skin of a bloody heart. He knew I

didn't forget my vow. The next time I saw Littlehair, Ugh! I got his heart. I have said all."

And Indian-like, he stopped, but we wanted to hear how he took Tom Custer's heart. McFadden who is quite an artist as well as an actor of note had made an imaginary sketch of Custer's last charge. He got up and handed it to Rain, saying: "Does that look anything like the fight?" Rain studied it for a long time and then burst out laughing; "No," he said, "this picture is a lie. Those Longswords (cavalrymen) have swords (sabres). They never fought us with swords but with guns and revolvers. These men are on ponies, they fought us on foot and every fourth man held horses. That's always their way of fighting. We tie ourselves on our ponies and fight in a circle. These people are not dressed as we dress in a fight. They look like agency Indians. We strip naked and have ourselves and our ponies painted. This picture gives bows and arrows. We were better armed than the Longswords. Their guns wouldn't shoot but once. The thing would not throw out the empty cartridge shells. (In this he was historically correct as dozens of guns were picked up on the battlefield by General Gibbons's command two days after the fight with the shells still sticking in them showing that the ejector would not work.) When we found they could not shoot, we saved our bullets by knocking the Longswords over with our war clubs. It was just like killing sheep. Some of them got down on their knees and begged; we spared none. Ugh! This picture is like all the pictures of the white man of Indians—a lie. I will show you how it looked—" Then turning it over he pulled out a stump of a lead pencil from his pouch and drew a large shape of a letter "S" turned sideways. "Here," said he, "is the Little Big Horn River. We had our lodges along the banks in the shape of a bent bow."

"How many lodges did you have?" asked Harry.

"Oh, many—many times ten. We were like blades of grass." (It is estimated that there were between four and six thousand, and by some as high as between five and nine thousand Indians, hence there must have been at least one thousand lodges.)

"Sitting Bull had made big medicine way off on a hill. He came in with it. He made big speech. He said that Waukontonka, (The Great Spirit) had come to him riding on an eagle. Waukontonka had told him that the Longswords were coming. Sitting Bull had the squaws put up empty death lodges along the river to fool the Ree scouts. When they came and looked down over the bluffs, the brush and bend hid our lodges. Then Sitting Bull went away to make more medicine and didn't come back until the fight was over.

"Gall was Head Chief. Crazy Horse led the Cheyennes—Goose the Bannocks. I was not Head Chief. My brother Iron Heart was. But I had a band of the worst Uncpapas—all of them had killed more enemies than they had fingers and toes. When the Longswords came we knew their ponies were tired out. We knew that they were fooled by the death lodges. They thought we were but a handful. We knew they made a mistake when they separated. Gall took most of the Indians up the river to come in between them and cut them off. We saw that the Ree scouts had stayed back with Long Yellow Hair (Custer) and we were glad. We saw them trotting along and let them come in over the bluffs. Some of our young men went up the gully which they had crossed and cut them off from behind. Then we showed our line in front and the Longswords charged. They reeled under our fire and started to fall back. Our young men behind them opened fire. Then I saw some officers talking and pointing. Don't know who they were for they all looked alike. I did not see Long Yellow Hair then or afterward. We heard the Rees singing their death song. They knew we had them. All dismounted and every fourth man held the ponies. Then we closed all around them. We rushed like a wave does at the sand out there—(This interview occurred at Coney Island.) and shot the pony holders and stampeded the ponies by waving our blankets in their faces. Our squaws caught them for they were tired out.

I had sung the war song! I had smelt the powder smoke. My heart was bad. I was like one who had no mind. I rushed in and took their flag. My pony fell dead as I took it. I cut the thong that bound me. I jumped up and brained the Longsword flagman with my war club and ran back to our lines with the flag. The Longsword's brains splashed in my face. It felt hot and blood ran in my mouth. I could taste it. I was mad. I got a fresh pony and I rushed back shooting, cutting, and slashing. This pony was shot and I got another. This time I saw Little Hair (Capt. Tom Custer). I remembered my vow. I was crazy. I feared nothing. I knew nothing would hurt me for I had my White Weasel Tail Charm on. (He was wearing the Charm at the time he told me this.) I don't know how many I killed in trying to get at him. He knew me. I laughed at him and yelled at him. I saw his mouth move but there was so much noise I could not hear his voice. He was afraid. When I got near enough I shot him with my revolver. My gun was gone. I don't know where. I leaped from my pony and cut his heart out and bit a piece out and spit it in his face. I got back on my pony shaking it. I was satisfied and sick of fighting. I did not scalp him. I did go back on the field after that. The squaws came up afterward and killed the wounded. Cut their boot legs off for moccasin soles and took their money, watches, and rings. They cut their fingers off to get them quicker. They hunted for Long Yellow Hair to scalp him but could not find him. He didn't wear his Fort clothes (uniform). His hair had been cut off and the Indians didn't know him. (This corroborates what Mrs. Custer says about her husband having his long yellow curls cut at St. Paul some weeks before he was killed.)

"That night we had a big feast and scalp dance. Then Sitting Bull came up and made another big speech. He said: 'I told you how it would be. I made great medicine. My medicine warmed your hearts and made you brave.' He talked a long time. All of the Indians gave him the credit of winning the fight. Gall got mad at Sitting Bull that night. Gall said: 'We did the fighting. You only made the medicine. It would have been the same anyway.' Their hearts were bad toward each other after that always.

"After that fight we could have killed all the other men on the hill (Reno's command) but for the quarrel between Gall and Sitting Bull. Both wanted to be Head Chief. Some of the Indians said Gall was right and went with him. Some said Sitting Bull was. I didn't care. I was my own Chief and had my bad young men. We would not obey either of them unless we wanted to and they feared us. I was sick of fighting. I had had enough. I wanted to dance. We heard more Longswords were coming with wheel guns (Gatling guns). We moved camp north. They followed many days until we crossed the line into Canada. I stayed over there until Sitting Bull came back and I came back with him. That is all there is to tell. I never told it to white men before."

When he had finished I said to him:

"Rain, if you didn't kill Long Yellow Hair, who did?"

"I don't know. No one knows. It was like running in the dark."

"Well," asked Mac, "why was it Long Yellow Hair wasn't scalped when everyone else was? Did you consider him too brave to be scalped?"

"No one is too brave to be scalped. That would not have made any difference."

Editorial Comment

MILITARY READING

THE importance to military men of a certain amount of careful reading of judiciously selected books cannot be overstated. It is only by the reading of standard works on military history, biography, the art of war, development of tactics, etc., as well as by a more or less familiar acquaintance with general literature, that an officer can properly fit himself for the responsibilities which he may at any time be called upon to assume.

In an article on this subject in the *Journal of the Military Service Institution of India*, which we shall freely paraphrase, it was stated that "reading, provided the material is suitable, may have three different effects on the reader; it may add to knowledge; it may stimulate the brain, and it may influence character." Although these three effects are equally important many people attach primary importance to the first. Consequently, through precept or their own misguided views, officers sometimes attempt to accumulate in a short time a greater amount of military knowledge than their brains can comfortably digest. The inevitable reaction sets in and the reading of such books becomes a burdensome task instead of a pleasure.

A motto suggested for officers who wish to read and those who wish to encourage reading, is: "Don't be narrow, and always mix your reading."

By narrowness is meant the theory, which is more or less prevalent, that organization, tactics, strategy and armaments are the only subjects worthy of serious attention by the military reader. No theory could be more fallacious. Battles and wars are won or lost by men, and not by theories or inventions. Napoleon won his victories as much by his will power, his knowledge of human nature and his energy, as by his tactical and strategical skill. That this was the case is clearly shown by the fact that so long as his physical and mental powers were unimpaired, he never lost a battle, even when his tactics were faulty, as on several occasions they undoubtedly were. It follows, therefore, that to learn the secret of his success, we must study Napoleon as a man as much as we study him as a strategist or a tactician. What is true of Napoleon is true of every other general. The author, therefore, evolves the following truth, "if you want to get at the vital lessons of a campaign, you must study the characters and methods of the men who conducted it as well as the actual movements of troops." Hence the importance of military biography.

Another form of narrowness inclines to the theory that only books that deal directly or indirectly with military subjects or personalities are worth reading. Should this be practiced, military men would live in a little world of their own, quite oblivious of the great political and social movements that may affect the nation or the rest of the world.

Every officer is likely sooner or later, to be called upon to work in close cooperation with the civil authorities, or even to exercise administrative power

over civilians. It goes without saying that any officer who has confined his interests to things military will be at a great disadvantage under such circumstances. The civilian has interests, modes of thought, and points of view different from those of the soldier, and unless the latter has made some study of them, friction will inevitably arise when the two come into close contact.

Many officers, especially those who are naturally fond of reading, find a way to provide themselves with suitable reading matter. But in these days of the high cost of living, there are many others who are unable to purchase even the comparatively small number of books considered as a minimum requisite. This fact suggests the desirability of some means for rendering available to officers, and especially to junior officers, the necessary facilities for a reasonable amount of professional and general reading.

In several cavalry regiments the problem has been solved by the establishment of regimental libraries and keeping them supplied with the latest standard works on topics with which an officer should be conversant.

In any case, the subject of reading in general, as well as that of providing facilities therefor, is worthy of the careful study of all who are interested in the professional improvement of themselves and of those under their command.

THE LITTLE BIG HORN

THIS number of the CAVALRY JOURNAL appears on the fiftieth anniversary of the battle of the Little Big Horn, sometimes referred to as the Custer Massacre and as Custer's Last Fight. It was for this reason that the publication in this number of Colonel Graham's fine article, "The Story of the Little Big Horn," was deemed particularly appropriate. The value of the article is much enhanced by the interesting introduction written by General Charles King, who as Captain Charles King, has entertained many thousand readers with his stories of Army life in the early days on the western plains.

As stated in the April CAVALRY JOURNAL, this anniversary is being commemorated by elaborate exercises on the battle field on June 24, 25, and 26. Thirteen officers and 220 men of the Seventh Cavalry have been sent from Fort Bliss, and they have been joined by some 3,000 Sioux, Cheyenne, and Crow Indians. All will participate in ceremonies depicting renewal of the peace pledge between the Indians and the Whites. The peace pipe will again be smoked and a tomahawk will be buried in the foundation stone of a memorial to the veterans of all Indian wars, which will be placed in the national cemetery at the scene of the battle. The Sioux and the Crows, traditional enemies, will through their selected representatives, smoke the pipe of peace for the first time within the period of Indian lore or tradition.

It is hoped that the example set on this occasion by the survivors of the battle and the descendants of the foemen who met on that bloody field, will be followed by all others interested in that tragic event to the end that the bitter fifty year old controversy as to the responsibility for the debacle may, at least so far as the public prints are concerned, be terminated forever. In view of the

magnitude of the disaster and the many unusual circumstances connected with the battle, it is but natural that those taking sides should feel very strongly about the question. Nothing, however, can possibly be gained by further discussion of a controversial nature.

PROPORTION

WEBSTER'S Dictionary defines proportion as, "The relation of one portion to another or to the whole, or one thing to another as respects magnitude, quantity or degree."

A good cavalryman should be one who is possessed of a sense of proportion insofar as relates to the various things that he should know. How often have we heard it said of an individual that he is a good field soldier but of no value in garrison. Or that he plays a smashing game of polo but cares little for the laborious work connected with drill and administration. These officers lack balance in the sense of Webster's definition.

Horsemanship is another thing that many develop at the expense of other important essentials, especially tactics. Everyone will admit that horsemanship is an important part of a cavalryman's training, but it will not make up for deficiency in the principles governing combat. The veriest dub of a horseman may by his attention to the tactical side of his profession become the brilliant cavalry leader who can plan and execute operations of decisive combat value. And after all the end and aim of our training is success in combat—in other words to lead men successfully in battle.

The man who is an all round soldier comes nearest to the ideal. One sided personalities who find some things intensely interesting and others stupidly boring will come to grief sooner or later. They are certainly difficult persons to handle if their particular métier happens not to be available at the moment. Tactics, polo, horsemanship all have a place; none should be developed at the expense of the others.

THE JOURNAL

WE hope that you will like this number of the JOURNAL. It might be worse. It might be better. In the final analysis the JOURNAL is what the members of the Association make it. It is *your* JOURNAL, as it is *your* Association.

With the very limited clientele possessed by a professional periodical of this nature, it is not in a position financially to compete with general magazines in obtaining articles by professional writers. Consequently, and properly so, the JOURNAL must depend for the material which goes into it, largely upon the members of the Association, and it is desired at this time to express to contributors our appreciation of their generous assistance and co-operation.

The JOURNAL is not responsible for statements of fact or opinion made by authors.

Topics of the Day

A SELECTED LIST OF BOOKS

A NUMBER of representative cavalry officers were recently requested to assist in the compilation of a list of twenty books which were considered to be the most essential to a cavalry officer who wished to be well-read in the theory of his profession.

The list follows, the books being listed in the order of the number of votes for each:

A History of Cavalry—Denison
 The Desert Mounted Corps—Preston
 American Campaigns—Steele
 Military Policy of the United States—Upton
 Stonewall Jackson and the American Civil War—Henderson
 The Principles of War—Foch
 Tactical Principles and Decisions—General Service Schools
 Cavalry in War and Peace—von Bernhardt
 Breaking and Riding, with Military Commentaries—Fillis
 Napoleon's Maxims of War—Burnod
 Tactics and Technique of the Separate Branches:
 Vol. I—The Division
 Vol. II—Corps and Army Troops
 Development of Tactics Based on the World War—Balck.
 Animal Management—British War Office
 Military Aid to the Civil Power—The General Service Schools
 As to Polo—Forbes
 Decisive Battles of the World—Creasy
 Robert E. Lee, the Soldier—Maurice
 The Art of Reconnaissance—Henderson
 History of the United States Army—Ganoe
 Achievements of Cavalry—Wood

The following, though not in the first twenty, were well recommended:

Allenby's Final Triumph—Massey
 History of the Great War, Based on Official Documents—Edmunds
 Official History of Australia in the War of 1914-1918—Gullet
 Horse Sense and Horsemanship of Today—Brooke
 Mount and Man—McTaggart
 Military Intelligence, A New Weapon in War—Sweeney.
 Warfare—Wright, Spaulding and Nickerson
 Stable Management and Exercise—Hayes
 Principles of Strategy—Naylor
 Memoirs of U. S. Grant
 A Study of War—Custance
 Cavalry Studies—Haig.

Great Captains—Dodge
 German Cavalry in Belgium and France—von Poseck
 Under the Old Flag—Wilson

The following, reprinted from *The Spirit of '76*, affords an interesting comparison with the above list.

About 200 general officers and officers of the General Staff Corps were requested by the National Library Information Bureau, Washington, to name not more than ten books, the knowledge of which will form a sound foundation on which the general military education of the American army officer may be based. The following nineteen books received the greatest number of recommendations from the 128 officers who replied to the request. The number of recommendations is shown in parentheses after the name of each book.

American Campaigns—Steele	(112)
Military Policy of the United States—Upton.....	(103)
Principles of War—Foch	(92)
Stonewall Jackson—Henderson	(84)
Napoleon—Jomini (out of print).....	(83)
History of the United States Army—Ganoe.....	(81)
Influence of Sea Power on History—Mahan.....	(80)
Conduct of War—von der Goltz.....	(77)
On War—Clausewitz	(77)
Principles of Strategy—Naylor.....	(76)
Fifteen Decisive Battles of the World—Creasy.....	(75)
Military History of the World War—Howland.....	(71)
Napoleon's Maxims—Burnod	(70)
Battle Studies—du Picq	(68)
Ludendorff's Own Story	(64)
Defense of Duffer's Drift—Swinton.....	(64)

APROPOS OF THE NEXT OLYMPIADE

THE following comments by General Detroyat, Commandant of the French Cavalry School, on the Equestrian events of the VIII Olympiade, translated from the *Revue de Cavalerie*, reflect the French views on the results of these competitions, and are of special interest in connection with preparations for the Olympic Games of 1928.

Some of the best horsemen and finest saddle horses of the world were gathered together at Paris during the second half of July for the Olympic Games. From the 20th to the 27th, magnificent presentations succeeded one another, each offering an interest of first order and forming a unique spectacle which should have drawn to Colombes, if not a crowd of curious, at least the elite of French horsemen.

The different contests took place however before empty tribunes, in the midst of general indifference. This alone, this fact so characteristic, should suffice to explain our lack of success.

This failure was striking.

In the schooling contest, our representatives bore themselves honorably. Mounting beautiful thoroughbreds, in excellent condition and well trained, they executed the test with calm and in a good style. The remarkably precise work of Captain Lesage, classed third, was much appreciated by the jury and considered quite comparable to that of the first two.

In contrast and for different reasons, the team for the three day championship and that for the obstacle contest were presented in rather mediocre condition.

In the charger championship (three day contest), three horses out of four went lame after "the endurance test"; and the fourth, conqueror however in the last championship of Paris and laureate of the Etrier, was classed absolutely among the last (30th out of 32).

In the jumping contest, three horses out of four did not finish the course; the fourth only finished it after numerous faults, two of which were refusals.

Finally, in the classification by teams, France did not even enter.

This result has surprised and even thrown into consternation a part of the public opinion; and those who were the least interested in these contests have not been the last to deplore that we did not shine.

To what should one attribute such an evident inferiority as compared with fourteen nations the majority of whom, twenty years ago, were still appreciably behind us? Evidently to the progress that they have made. But can we be contented with this explanation, visibly too convenient?

One readily blames the mediocre quality of the horses.

It is certain that our breeding industry like that of all nations that were engaged in the war, has been especially tried. In the equestrian events, all the first prizes were gained by neutral countries—still rich, and richer than ever, in men, in horses, in money; in the schooling contest, Sweden; in the championship, Holland; in the jumping event, Switzerland; in polo, Argentina.

Our horses could then have been better.

Perhaps they could have been better chosen.

Let us recognize the fact that they could also have been better prepared.

The choice of horses, and also that of riders, depends largely upon the number of contestants.

This is one of the conditions of success. Not only does it permit selection but it creates rivalry; and above all it creates the environment which has so much influence on the preparation.

As a result of the small number of contestants, the teams had trouble in forming themselves, and the future team members worked in an atmosphere that was not very favorable.

It is easy to criticize the more or less fortunate presentations; it would be unjust to throw all the responsibility on the competitors. These proved their energy and spirit of enterprise, of perseverance and of disinterestedness. They should be thanked for the effort that they have so generously given.

Those truly responsible for our reverse are not the horsemen who took part or desired to take part in the contest, but those who abstained. If the preparation for the Olympic Games had provoked more enthusiasm in the regiments or even only more interest, the result would have been quite different.

One cannot accuse the present generation of lacking spirit. Never have equestrian contests (steeplechases, cross country races, horse shows, polo) been more numerous and more followed. Sport, with its unforeseen features, its risks and its triumphs, has always the same irresistible charm for ardent hearts. We must rejoice in this fine spirit and encourage it in all its forms. However one is obliged to state that the equitation practiced by the majority of these bold and vigorous horsemen bears only a distant relation to classical equitation.

Already, 15 years ago, a certain young school, refusing to admit that equitation could be both classical and sportive,—classical in its principles, sportive in their application,—pretended to separate the Sport, a physical exercise more or less violent, from the finesse and elegance of Equitation.

These tendencies, necessarily favored by the war, have been accentuated during the crisis that the cavalry has just passed through. The taste for good equitation is being lost.

In the daily application, it must be recognized, the consequences of this abandon are not too deeply felt. And, in a word, an instinctive equitation, when it is the result of a large and virile practice, is more fecund than an academic equitation, when the latter is dull and unnatural.

But in the important competitions and especially in the great international contests, the lack of principles, of study, of work is visibly manifest. In order to assure the complete submission of the horse, to give him the style that is required and even to lead him only to the degree of condition required by every severe test, the most beautiful natural gifts do not suffice.

One would like to recall here the charming and always true pages that La Guerinere calls: "why there are so few horsemen, and the qualities necessary for becoming such."

"The feelings of those who count theory for nothing in the art of riding (there are always some) does not in any way prevent me from maintaining that it is one of the most necessary things in order to attain perfection. Without this theory, practice is always uncertain. I maintain that in an exercise where the body plays such a part, practice should be inseparable from theory . . . but to attain excellence in this art, one must necessarily be prepared for the difficulties of its practice by a clear and solid theory. . . ."

It is to the clear and solid theory of the French School, it is to the studious and reflective putting into practice of this theory, that are due the successes carried away from Colombes by certain foreign teams and especially by Sweden and Holland.

It is to the abandonment of these same principles that it is necessary to attribute our reverse.

In the equestrian events, as in every other competition, nothing replaces classical form.

One may judge this archaic and superannuated; but then we should renounce taking part in the great international contests,—we will carry away only failures.

If on the contrary we wish to regain our rank and our prestige, let us not grow tired of encouraging the equitation enthusiasts, there are some still, and above all let us try to create or rather to reconstitute an environment that favors their efforts and encourages new talent.

It does not suffice to urge on some few brilliant individuals. The mass must be acted upon.

It does not suffice to begin preparing now an Amsterdam team. It is necessary that in two years each regiment of cavalry and of artillery have its own team and even its teams for Amsterdam, as it has today its polo team or teams.

To do this in each brigade, in each division, in each corps, in each region, horse shows and charger championships must be instituted. If the three parts of the championships seem too severe, it should be possible, in order to interest the greatest number of officers in its preparation, to create more simple events, for example, training and endurance, and training and obstacles. But once again it is upon the entire army that we must work.

As long as the taste for the "well schooled horse," both docile and keen, shall not have been replaced in honor in the regiments, as long as these questions shall not have regained the places that they should occupy in the minds of the chiefs of corps, the most endowed cavalymen, left to themselves, without guide, without support, without encouragement of any sort, will only obtain mediocre or very uncertain results.

AN INTERNATIONAL LUNCHEON

WE are indebted to *El Porvenir*, of Monterey, Mexico, for the following account of a luncheon tendered the Chief of Cavalry during his recent inspection trip:

On the picturesque ranch owned by Mr. Manuel Longoria, situated on the Mexican side of the Bravo river, and very near the international line, there was served a lunch in honor of General H. B. Crosby, Chief of Cavalry, U. S. Army; Lieutenant Colonel C. O. Thomas, Commanding Officer at Fort Ringgold, Texas; Major Godner, M. C.; Captain C. S. Miller; Lieutenant D. P. Buckland and about fifteen other officers.

Many people were present at the festivity from this city (Camargo) as well as from Rio Grande City, Texas.

The lunch was organized by our Consul at Rio Grande City, Mr. Jose F. Montemayor, by the Major of Camargo, Mr. D. Lazaro Garza Canales, by Lieutenant Lugo, commanding the garrison at Camargo and by the Chambers of Commerce of Camargo and Rio Grande City.

The Consul tendered the luncheon in the name of its organizers.

When they had finished eating, General Crosby in a brief address which was interpreted by Mr. Federico D. Guerra expressed his thanks, indicating that he was very much pleased. He stated that he had the highest regard for the Mexicans, and that having had several soldiers of this nationality in his command, he had an opportunity to become acquainted with their good qualities. He closed by saying that among the officer under his command he counted Mr. Federico D. Guerra as one who merited much confidence. General Crosby was much applauded.

There were addresses by the editor of "El Fronterizo", Rio Grande City, Mr. Pedro Diaz, speaking in the name of the press in general; by Lieutenant Lugo, in that of the Mexican Army; and finally by the Chief of Immigration in this city, Mr. Antonio Garcia, and our Consul in Rio Grande, Mr. Jose F. Montemayor, on behalf of the Mexican Government.

A fine orchestra from Pharr, Texas, playing the most modern selections of its repertoire, was a pleasing feature.

At three o'clock General Crosby and his suite returned to his country, being accompanied by the assembly to the banks of the river, where was sung first the American National Hymn, and afterwards our National Hymn. Americans and Mexicans uncovered respectfully during the singing of both patriotic hymns.

A SPARTAN COMMANDER

MODERN tendencies toward inconspicuous field uniforms and "traveling light" in order to maintain the requisite degree of mobility, have an interesting colonial precedent. Lord Howe, brother of the Lord Howe who was later British commander during much of the Revolution, came to America as commander of a regiment to engage in the campaign against Canada, and was encamped at Albany. During the war with the French it is stated by Mrs. Grant in *Memoirs of an American Lady*:

Lord Howe always lay in his tent, with the regiment he commanded; and which he modelled in such manner, that they were ever after considered as an example to the whole American army, which gloried in adopting all those rigid, yet salutary regulations, to which the young hero readily submitted, to enforce his commands by his example. In the first place he forbade all displays of gold and scarlet, in the rugged march they were about to undertake, and set the example by wearing himself an ammunition coat, that is to say, one of the surplus soldier's coats cut short. . . . To prevent the march of his regiment from being desecrated at a distance by the glittering of their arms, the barrels of their guns were all blackened; and to save them from the tearing of bushes, the stings of insects, etc., he set them the example of wearing leggins, a kind of buskin made of strong woollen cloth, formerly described as a part of the Indian dress. Hair well dressed, and in great quantity, was then considered as the greatest possible ornament, which those who had it took the utmost care to display to advantage, and to wear in a bay or a queue, whichever they fancied. Lord Howe's was fine and very abundant; he, however, cropped it, and ordered everyone else to do the same.

Another point which this young Lycurgus of the camp wished to establish was that of not carrying anything that was not absolutely necessary. An apparatus of tables, chairs, and such baggage, he thought highly absurd, where people had to force their way, with unspeakable difficulty, to encounter an enemy free from all such incumbrances.

When his lordship got matters arranged to his satisfaction, he invited his officers to dine with him in his tent. They gladly assembled at the appointed hour, but were surprised to see no chairs or tables. There were, however, bearskins spread like a carpet. His lordship welcomed them, and sat down on a small log of wood; they followed his example; and presently the servants set down a large dish of pork and peas. His lordship, taking a sheath from his pocket, out of which he produced a knife and fork, began to cut and divide the meat. They sat in a kind of awkward suspense, which he interrupted by asking if it were possible that soldiers like them, who had been so long destined for such a service, should not be provided with portable implements of this kind; and finally relieved them from their embarrassment by distributing to each a case the same as his own, which he had provided for the purpose.

The regiment moved out with the column directed on Ticonderoga and Lord Howe was killed in the attack.

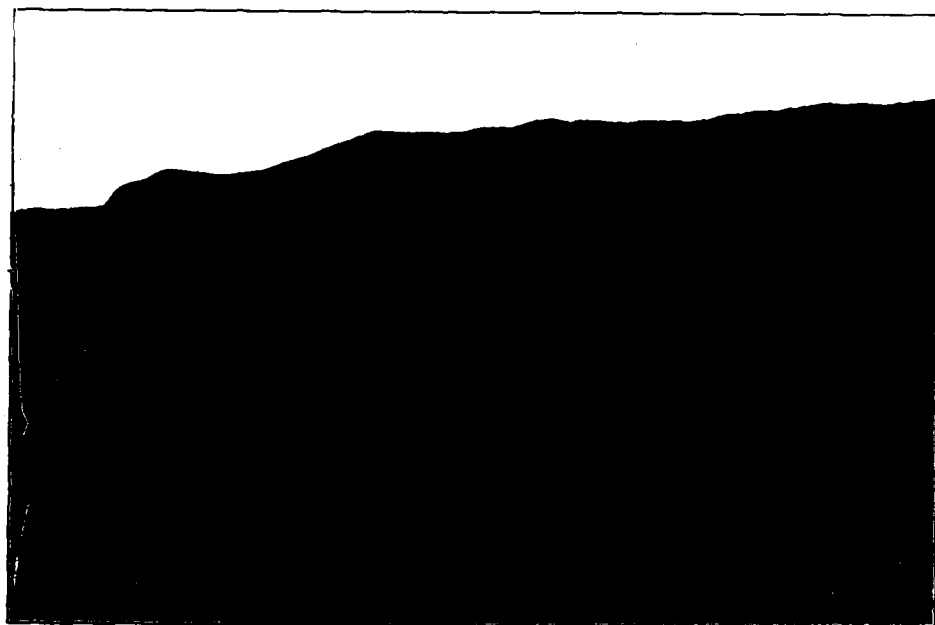
MAGAZINE SUBSCRIPTIONS

EVERY troop or detachment in the cavalry provides magazines for the organization library. Sixty-four per cent of these secure their periodicals through the Cavalry Association. Thirty-four per cent do not. We appreciate the co-operation of those who do; we are puzzled about those who do not.

The reason why the absent ones do not join the sixty-four per cent is hard to determine. Our prices are as good or better than any competing civilian agency, and if in any special cases they are not, we will make them so. And we are on the job every minute to render satisfactory service when an order has been intrusted to us. Last year there was some complaint over non-receipt of periodicals, but the causes underlying this condition have been removed and our service is now 100 per cent perfect.

It goes without saying that we make a small commission on magazine

subscriptions and so does any other agency through whom subscriptions are placed. It is impossible to have a magazine to read and not pay someone a profit. Then why not pay it to your Association? The profit will be used for the cavalry and the furtherance of its interests. It will go to publish the JOURNAL, to send the Cavalry Team to Olympic games, to support the Cavalry Rifle and Pistol Teams, to maintain the Cavalry in the forefront of all matters pertaining to horsemanship. The scope of the Association's, and hence the Cavalry's sponsorship in matters of cavalry interest is limited only by available funds. Make the assets grow by sending all magazine subscriptions, both personal and for the organization to YOUR Association. Instead of sixty-four per cent only, we need the support of every organization.



Hunting Country Near Maanao, Philippine Islands

Foreign Military Notes

FURNISHED BY THE MILITARY INFORMATION DIVISION, G. S.

ENGLAND

Equipment of British Cavalry Trooper

Mounts. The specifications for cavalry horses describe the trooper's mount as follows: "The Cavalry Troop Horse, for Cavalry of the Line and Horse and Field Artillery, height at four years not less than 15 hands or exceeding 15.2; over four years not exceeding 15.3. The type of horse required is one that is deep bodied, has a short back, well-sprung ribs, and of the hunter stamp, with substance, quality and true action." It will be noted in this description that no weight is specified for the horse. This is because horses in Great Britain are always classified according to the weight they are capable of carrying and not according to the weight of the animal itself. Although their specifications for service mounts are not elaborate, yet the type found in their organizations is very uniform. This uniformity is due primarily to the fact that all purchasing in the United Kingdom is done by two or three officers who are horse experts of the first rank, and who have an intimate knowledge of service needs and of the potential possibilities of horses bred in various localities. Again, the general excellence of their service mounts is due to the fact that very few saddle horses of poor quality are bred in Great Britain. The breeders have learned that it costs just as much to raise poor horses as good ones and that much greater profits accrue from producing animals with conformation, quality and substance that will classify them as hunter prospects. Racing and hunting dominate all breeding of saddle horses. In consequence, the task of the British Remount Service is made easier because of the type of animals they have to select from.

The cavalry troop horse they aim to get is one that has been bred as a hunter but has not grown to a size which will command high price. Generally speaking these horses are from one-quarter to three-quarters thoroughbred, the prevailing doctrine in breeding hunters being to breed thoroughbred sires to quarter-bred or half-bred mares that are of suitable size and type to produce hunters. Only a very limited number of thoroughbred animals will be found in the hunting field because as a rule they are not up to carrying enough weight in the heavy going of the average English and Irish hunting districts. It is for this reason that it has been found necessary to introduce other blood to obtain the necessary size and weight-carrying qualities.

The present purchase price for troop horses in Great Britain is 55 pounds (approximately \$265) and for this figure they obtain an excellent type of animal. By and large, their cavalry troop horses are much superior to those in our Army, and while it is certain they have no more endurance or marching ability at slow gaits, yet at the faster gaits, in jumping, and in work across country, they are very much superior. Also in the matter of quality they are far ahead of our average troop horse.

Arms. The arms of the cavalry soldier are the rifle and sword and in the

case of Lancer organizations, the lance is also carried. The pistol is issued only to those who for some special reason are not equipped with rifles or swords.

The short model Lee-Enfield rifle is carried by each trumpeter over 18 years of age and by all corporals and privates except bandsmen, orderly room clerks, numbers one and two, Vickers machine-gunners, numbers two and three, Hotchkiss machine-gunners, and motor cyclists.

The cavalry sword, 1908 pattern, is carried by all ranks, except drivers, signalers, numbers one and two, Vickers machine-gunners, numbers two and three, Hotchkiss machine-gunners, and motor cyclists.

The caliber .455 Webley revolver is issued to: regimental sergeants major, warrant officers, staff sergeants, orderly room sergeants, sergeant trumpeters, sergeant saddlers, sergeant cooks, squadron quartermaster sergeants, sergeants, paid lance sergeants, orderly room clerks, numbers one and two, Vickers machine-gunners, numbers two and three, Hotchkiss machine-gunners, and motor cyclists.

The lance is carried by Lancer organizations only, and is issued to each noncommissioned officer and private except bandsmen, numbers one, two and three, Vickers and Hotchkiss machine-gunners, and motor cyclists.

The machine-gun squadron, which is a part of the headquarter wing of the regiment, is equipped with the Vickers .303 caliber machine-gun, while the machine-gun section of each squadron is supplied with the Hotchkiss gun of the same caliber.

Uniforms. The service uniform of all cavalry units is the same and consists of: an olive drab blouse fastened at the neck; olive drab breeches with leather strappings; olive drab forage cap; olive drab, woolen, spiral puttees; black shoes; short, loose-fitting, double breasted overcoat and nicked spurs. All buttons and insignia are of highly polished brass.

All regiments have their own distinctive full dress uniform, but at present full dress is only authorized for the Household Cavalry. This uniform for the Life Guards consists of: a close fitting scarlet tunic; white buckskin breeches; high, black jack boots; white metal helmet with a white plume and a highly polished white metal cuirass. The full dress of other organizations, while not as elaborate as that of the Life Guards, is in keeping with their dignity and traditions.

Clothing and Equipment. The approximate total weight carried by the ordinary troop horse is as follows:

	Pounds	Ounces
Rider	150	0
Clothing and miscellaneous articles, not including overcoat	19	12½
Arms, not including lance	13	9
Ammunition	5	10
Accoutrements	14	8
Rations and Water	5	12
Saddlery, etc.	55	12
	<hr/> 264	<hr/> 15½

The overcoat weighs 5 lbs. 15 ozs.; the lance, 4 lbs. 4 ozs.

The National Guard

ALLOWANCES OF HORSES FOR THE NATIONAL GUARD

THE allowance of horses for the training of mounted and horse-drawn units of the National Guard has been changed by Circular 15, current series, to care for cases where more than one unit of the same branch of the service is quartered in one armory. In these cases, the unit which is entitled to the greater number of horses when in a separate armory will be given the full allowance, while all other units grouped with it will be given fifty per cent of the allowance provided when that unit is in a separate armory. In no case, however, will the animals authorized for units grouped in a single armory exceed 96, except when application has been made to, and approved by, the Chief, Militia Bureau.

ATTENTION!

ORGANIZATION Commanders: Don't leave dead-wood in your companies. Recruiting is needed by nearly every unit in the National Guard. Get new men. And as fast as a new man comes, discharge a man that clutters up the records.

Remember that 60% attendance is a *minimum* attendance. Aim at 100% and be satisfied with little less, and that little only for good reasons.

Good attendance will come when there are good inducements. Armories must be made attractive; drill must be always interesting and not allowed to lag; there must be discipline and enthusiasm in the air. However much is accomplished depends upon the initiative and energy of the company commander and his brother officers.

Have you tried to have smokers, where your men will enjoy themselves and company spirit is knit in good fellowship? Have you fully co-operated with the civic authorities and sought co-operation? Have you interested the community with your activities—particularly the women—and asked their aid and support? Do you invite the public, and make it an invitation, to witness your drills and exhibitions? Do you give exhibitions? Do you make your company known in the newspapers?

Everything, to gain popularity, needs a press agent, pushing, and support. You are supported by the United States Government, your State, and by all good citizens—by the last in a passive manner, generally. You must awake this passivity, and fan it into enthusiastic support. It can be done; it has been done; make your town proud of your organization.

Then there will be no dead-wood. Recruiting will take care of itself.

AN EFFICIENT TROOP

CAPTAIN M. M. FOUST, commanding Troop E, 108th Cavalry, Louisiana National Guard, believing in preparedness, has, as a means of training boys as well as giving his mounts the necessary exercise, encouraged the Boy

Scout troop sponsored by the American Legion at Bogalusa, Louisiana, to take horsemanship. This has resulted, so far as concerns Bogalusa, in the horse's winning back the devoted allegiance of time honored friend, the American Boy, and the United States acquiring a first class troop of cavalry consisting of about fifty boys of the average age of twelve years. This troop of boy scouts is able to execute any movement laid down in the Cavalry Drill Regulations.

At a recent annual armory inspection a platoon of these youngsters was formed for an exhibition drill. With their own platoon and squad leaders, they put up as smooth a drill in close and extended order as would the mother organization. Their confidence and ability was surprising. They all took the chute while executing suppling exercises, dismounted and mounted while taking an 18 inch jump, made the second horse facing to the rear, while certain selected ones made the third horse to the rear. The exhibition was terminated by a roman ride consisting of three-horse teams.

Old Hickory Council, Boy Scouts of America, of which this troop is a member, was organized by J. W. Richardson, Past Commander of the Bogalusa Post of the American Legion, and First Lieutenant of Troop E, 108th Cavalry. The troop is led by Lt. Col. Benjamin W. Miller, a veteran of the World War who was wounded in the Argonne Forest, and who is now on the staff of Governor Fuqua of Louisiana.

The troop has been trained in horsemanship, in the care of the horse and equipment, and in cavalry drill by Sergeant Oliver Hartford, Troop E.

The reputation of this troop of Scouts is not confined to Bogalusa. Several papers and magazines have published illustrated articles about it. Although it has been organized but for three years, Captain M. M. Foust is beginning to reap the benefit, in that he has five members of his organization who received their initial training in the Boy Scout troop and all five of these men are as good cavalymen as ever picked up a saber. In the course of the next few years Troop E, 108th Cavalry promises to be without a peer as a cavalry organization, as it will by that time be made up of former members of the Boy Scout troop of Bogalusa, all of whom will have had this thorough preliminary training prior to becoming bona fide troop members.

The Organized Reserves

RESOLUTIONS ADOPTED BY THE RESERVE OFFICERS CONVENTION

FOLLOWING are some of the principal resolutions adopted by the fourth annual convention of the Reserve Officers' Association of the United States:

Be it resolved, That we recommend that one reserve officer be detailed to active duty as an additional member of the War Department general staff, as an assistant to the deputy chief of staff and to be charged with the coordination of reserve activities within the general staff.

Be it resolved, That the War Department request a sufficient appropriation to train all combat troops of the Organized Reserve annually.

Be it resolved, That this association request the War Department to include in its budget estimate an initial allowance of one month's pay to be placed with the Quartermaster's Department to the credit of each newly commissioned reserve officer below the grade of captain for primary uniform and equipment purchase.

Be it resolved, That the Reserve Association recommend that enlisted men of the Regular Army assigned to duty with the Organized Reserves be allowed full commutation and allowances and that this be continued while these enlisted men are attending summer training camps so that their families may be properly provided for.

Be it resolved, That we recommend that graduates of C. M. T. C. courses be given credit for same on entering R. O. T. C. schools and that copies of this resolution be sent to the War Department, the chairmen of the military affairs committees of the House and of the Senate and to all corps area commanders.

Be it resolved, That this Association urge Congress at the earliest possible moment to provide sufficient appropriations to carry out the provisions of the national defense act of 1916, as amended, and that appropriations for the next fiscal year be made sufficient to provide for the present strength of all branches of the Army and for reasonable expansions to carry out this act.

Be it resolved, That this Association endorse the selective service law prepared and submitted to the 69th Congress (S. 2561, H. R. 4841, 1924), by the Secretary of War.

Be it resolved, That the President and the national council of the Association be instructed to prepare a bill to be introduced into Congress providing for suitable allowance of mileage or *per diem* allowance for Regular Army executive officers to enable them to visit at least once annually all units of the reserves under their jurisdiction.

Be it resolved, That Congress be urged to enlarge the R. O. T. C. by appropriations sufficient to establish new units in additional institutions to the end that approximately 8,000 reserve officers be commissioned annually from

this source and that full monetary allowances be granted to all enlisted men on R. O. T. C. duty.

Be it resolved, That Congress be urged to make appropriations which will provide equal travel pay and allowances for all branches of the Army when on active duty of whatever length.

Be it resolved, That the Congress of the United States be urged to provide the necessary appropriations for the citizens' military training camps to permit the education and training of 50,000 candidates during the summer of 1926.

Be it resolved, That Congress provide sufficient funds to maintain the Regular Army in a high state of preparedness so that it can properly train and instruct its reserve components, the Organized Reserve, the R. O. T. C. and the C. M. T. C., and thereby carry out the provisions of our national defense act.

Be it resolved, That Congress be urged to make sufficient appropriations for the issuances of military supplies and ammunition to the Organized Reserve, C. M. T. C. and R. O. T. C. in addition to the maintenance without depletion of the reserve supply, as provided in the War Department act of 1926.

Be it resolved, That the Reserve Officers' Association of the United States assembled in the fourth annual convention again state its approval of the principle of retirement for disabled emergency officers and the 69th Congress be urged to take prompt and favorable action by reenacting bill H. R. 6484, S. 33, 68th Congress, to place this class of disabled officers in the same status as those of the regular service.

Be it resolved, That the state departments of the Reserve Officers' Association urge the state departments of education of the various states to give credit for the work done in the citizens' military training camps toward graduation from high schools and colleges.

Be it resolved, That reserve officers satisfactorily completing the command and staff course of Fort Leavenworth either in person or by correspondence school or who may have satisfactorily established their ability to perform the duties of an officer of the general staff be recommended by the War Department for the general staff eligible list.

Be it resolved, That this Association urges the introduction in present Army schools of a special course of training for Regular Army officers before their assignment to any reserve units, and further

Be it resolved, That all Regular Army officers detailed to duty with the Organized Reserves have no dual assignment.

Be it resolved, That the War Department be requested to establish suitable credits for reserve officers attending training camps, group study classes, attendance on examining boards and for successfully completing correspondence courses or any other duty on an inactive status.

305th CAVALRY—Philadelphia, Pa.

Colonel John C. Groome, Commanding
Equitation

During the months of March and April, the equitation class rode weekly on Wednesdays from 5:30 to 7:30 P. M. at the First City Troop Armory, 23rd and Ransstead Streets.

During the month of May the rides were held outdoors at the Quartermaster Depot riding ring, 21st and Oregon Ave.

In order to vary the work and keep up interest a few minutes during each equitation period was devoted to the following; Conformation, Points of the Horse, Common Diseases and Symptoms, Cavalry Drill, and Saber work.

The average attendance during the period mentioned above was 20 members of the regiment per ride.

On April 12th, at the Depot Quartermaster riding ring, the jumping elimination was held for members of the equitation class to pick six officers for the jumping exhibition (show) on Regimental Day. The class put up a fine exhibition over a course of eight jumps without a single refusal or run out, Major R. C. Logan and Captain D. M. Speed, Q.M.C., kindly acted as judges and picked the six officers who jumped on Regimental Day.

On April 20, 23, 27, 30, May 3, and 26, at the Q.M. corral, 1½ hours instruction in equitation and jumping in preparation for the Indoor Horse Show on March 7th and 8th was given the six officers who represented the regiment in the jumping and Officers Charger classes at that show.

Regimental School

The officers and enlisted men of the regiment who have regularly attended the school kept up their good record during March, April, and May. The following conferences and meetings were held during the three months as scheduled with average attendance of 17 members.

March 10th—Conference and quiz on Care of Animals and Stable Management. Age by the teeth.

March 31st—Study and explanation of the movements of the exhibition ride on Regimental Day (This was put across by means of small mounted figures).

April 21st—Conference. Map problems on troop meeting engagements. Seven simple situations involving tactics of the squad, platoon, and troop solved by the class.

April 30th—Practical work at Q.M. stables, inspection of stables, feeding, watering, care of stalls, and corrals.

May 5th—Practical work in inspecting grain and hay, defects in same. Proper feeds and feeding.

May 12th—Demonstration—correct grooming, care of feet, shoeing, restraint and control of horses.

Correspondence Class

Great credit is due the following officers of the regiment for their fine work in Cavalry Basic Officers Correspondence Course. Lieuts. Adams, Chew, Ennis, Esler, Hunter, Kirk, Roberts, Taylor, and Town. These officers regularly attended the weekly meetings of the class held at regimental headquarters from 12:00 Noon to 1:00 P. M., giving up their noon hour to this work. The majority of the class completed six subcourses on May 15th which is believed to be a fine record for the year.

Polo

The regimental polo squad regretted very much the loss of Lieut. Mitchell, as

due to an injury, he was unable to play after March 10th. Lieut. Mitchell was making rapid strides and showed promise of becoming an excellent player.

Practice was held on Tuesdays and Thursdays from 5:00 to 7:00 P. M. at 103rd Cavalry Armory during March and the first week in April. This consisted of practice games between regimental teams.

The following games with outside teams were played during March and first week in April.

On the 4th of March, P.M.C. eliminated the regimental team from the Spring Tournament by a score of 11 to 3. Although the score does not show it, this was a hard fought game from start to finish. Lieut. Town played an excellent game for the 305th.

On March 9th a game with the Service Troop, 103rd Cavalry resulted in a tie score of 5 to 5. Lieut. Mathiot riding difficult ponies played an excellent game.

On March 12th the regiment defeated Wenonah by a score of 6 to 2. Lieuts. Meehan, Town, Taylor, and Mathiot showed up well.

On March 16th the regiment took the Pennsylvania Polo Club into camp by a score of 7 to 2, and again on March 18th defeated Riviera Polo Club by a score of 9 to 1. Lieuts. Town and Taylor played excellent polo in both these games.

On March 19th, P.M.C. again defeated the regiment by a score of 5 to 3.

On April 2nd a game played with the Penn Polo Club resulted in a 5 to 4 victory for the 305th Cavalry.

It was hoped to be able to play indoor polo until May but due to the fact that the majority of teams playing indoor polo in Philadelphia close the season on April 1st, it was found impracticable for the regiment to play after April 10th.

The regiment played 9 games with outside teams during the season, winning seven and losing 2. This is considered a good start for the first year of polo in the regiment.

Hunts

March being the last month of hunting season in the vicinity of Philadelphia the following members of the regiment took full advantage of every occasion to hunt; Major Hare, Captains Brogden, Livingston, Porter, Lieuts. Bray, Mathiot, Taylor, and Meehan. Several good runs were enjoyed especially the one at West Chester on St. Patrick's Day which had a field of over 150.

Regimental Day

On April 17th the regiment, in compliance with A.R. held its second Regimental Day Celebration in Philadelphia, which was highly successful. The program was carried out in true Cavalry style as follows:

Exhibition ride at 6:00 P. M.; 103rd Cavalry Armory. Only 18 members of the equitation class could ride due to the fact that a shortage of equipment existed. However, through the kindness of Major B. T. Merchant, Director of Horsemanship, Cavalry School, who loaned the regiment 18 white bridles, saddle cloths, and tie ropes the class made a very smart appearance. The well groomed horses were in strict conformity with the riders in their new regulation uniforms, highly polished boots and spurs. Colonel Groome, commanding the regiment, was highly complimented by the officer guests of the Regular Army and National Guard who viewed the ride from the boxes. The reviewing stand was decorated with the regimental standards and cavalry colors. The ride, conducted by Captain William S. Brogden, Commanding Troop A, and controlled by whistle was highly complimented for the precision in execution of all the intricate movements. The other officers who participated were Captains Bell, Easby, Livingston, Rutan, Young, Vannan, Lieuts Mitchell, Churchill, Esler, Gardiner, Grannis, Mathiot, Meehan, Ritter, Schimpf, Taylor, and Town.

The following officers, winners of the jumping elimination on April 12, put up



305th Cavalry Horse Show Team

a fine exhibition of jumping over a course of eight jumps; Captains Vannan and Bell; Lieutenants Churchill, Gardiner, Mathiot, and Taylor.

Following the program at the Armory, the regimental dinner was held at the Racquet Club, at which Colonel John C. Groome, Commanding the regiment, presided. In further compliance with par. 7, A.R. 345-105, Colonel Groome, the principal speaker of the evening, embodied in his talk a brief history of the regiment and especially stressed the wonderful spirit of the regiment and its future. The accomplishments of the officers and men of the regiment were reviewed. Colonel Groome thanked Captain Speed in the name of the whole regiment for his kindness in allowing the regiment to use the Q.M. horses for the riding class, tactical rides, and horse shows. Other speakers were General Shannon, Colonel Norvell, Colonel Sorley, Major Gardner, Captain Speed and Captain Groome.

Delightful music and singing was among the other forms of entertainment. In the dinner arrangements, entertainment features, and decorations great credit is due the Committee for their fine work. This committee was composed of Capt. Rutan and Lieuts. Mitchell and Franklin.

Forty-nine members of the regiment turned out for the dinner.

Horse Shows

The regiment was represented by six entries in the Philadelphia Indoor Horse Show held at the 103rd Cavalry Armory from May 5th to 8th. The following named officers exhibited in the following classes:

Class for Horses Suitable for Officers Mounts; Lieutenants Schimpf and Mathiot. Officers Charger class and Military Jumping class; Lieutenants Mitchell, Gardiner, Taylor, and Town.

Great credit is due these officers for their excellent performances and the time and work they put on their horses in preparation. In the class for Officers Mounts, second place was awarded Lieut. Schimpf. In the class for Officers Chargers and Military Jumping third place was awarded to Lieut. Mitchell.

The Regimental Horse Show was held at the Q.M. Depot outdoor ring on May 21st.

Only members of the regiment with 60% attendance at equitation class were eligible to enter.

There were three classes designated as A, B, and C. "A" Class comprised equitation and jumping 8 jumps, 4 feet high. "B" Class, equitation and jumping 8 jumps, 3 feet 6 inches high. "C" Class equitation only.

As the horses were not all equal as to performance or ability in jumping they were allotted to the different classes and entrants by each officer and enlisted man drawing for his mount.

Class "A" consisted of seven entries, Class "B," eleven entries, Class "C," four entries.

The awards in the different classes were as follows:

In Class "A" the first prize and ribbon was won by Captain William S. Brogden, Commanding Troop "A," ribbon for 2nd Place by Captain Max Livingston, Jr., Regimental Adjutant; ribbon for 3rd Place by Captain Edward E. Young, Regimental Supply Officer.

In Class "B" the first prize and ribbon was won by 2nd Lieut. Horace P. Kirk, Plans and Training Officer, 1st Squadron; ribbon for 2nd Place by Captain May S. Easby, Commanding Headquarters Troop; ribbon for 3rd Place by 2nd Lieut. John D. Grannis, Troop "B."

In Class "C" the first prize and ribbon was won by 2nd Lieut. Horace A. Franklin, Troop "E"; ribbon for 2nd Place by Private Charles W. Ogelsby; ribbon for 3rd Place by 2nd Lieut. Karl D. Mathiot, Troop "G."

The Classes were judged by Major Henry D. F. Munnikhuysen Q.M.C., Captain David M. Speed, Q.M.C., and Captain George A. Goodyear, Cavalry.

Prizes were awarded by Major Edgar S. Garnorer, Fin-Res.

New Books Reviewed

Allenby of Armageddon. By RAYMOND SAVAGE. The Bobbs-Merrill Co., Indianapolis. (Price \$5.00.)

So many sentimental legends have grown up around the name of the hero of the brilliant Palestine campaign that the book under consideration is of special value because of its avoidance of such legends.

As a soldier and as an administrator, Field-Marshal Lord Allenby is one of the outstanding figures of the War and of the troublous period after the Armistice. The author—a captain on Lord Allenby's personal staff—had exceptional opportunities for observing his work day by day, and the intimate relationship enables Captain Savage to furnish us with a faithful character study to which no other writer has been able to approximate. These considerations make this one of the most noteworthy military biographies that has appeared in recent years.

Early in his service in Natal Lord Allenby manifested the characteristics which marked him as a fearless horseman, a conscientious soldier, and a born leader of men. The recital of his service in South Africa prior to and during the South African War is replete with details indicating that he possessed the qualifications that later were so necessary in the Great War when the Allies were straining every resource to hold back the onrushing Germans.

In the early days of the War, General Allenby, by his masterly handling of the British Cavalry of which he was in command, was very instrumental in stopping the tremendous drive on Paris by the Germans. Many were the clashes of cavalry against cavalry as the reconnaissance elements met, and many times did the cavalry save the retreating infantry and parry the strokes of the advancing Germans.

As the author states: "Allenby's cool forethought, determination and energy, and the magnificent quality of the officers and men of the cavalry and horse artillery, stood a thousand tests which embraced every principle in cavalry tactics and training. Acting as reserves, covering retirements under heavy fire, in spirited rear-guard actions against vastly superior forces, and guarding the exposed flank of the entire Allied line, the work entailed heavy exertion and ceaseless vigilance."

As an example, we have: "Late on the twenty-eighth (August 28, 1914) Allenby, who had established his headquarters at Cressy, received news that two cavalry columns had left St. Quentin on the respective high roads to Le Fère and Noyon, on both of which tired British columns were marching to bivouac. Plans were at once made for a simultaneous attack. On the La Fère road, Chetwode with the Fifth Brigade turned back below Cherisy, and surprised the column. As the leading squadrons recoiled in confusion and the regiment became a tangle of plunging horses and contrary orders, the impetuous charge of the Scots Greys and Twelfth Lancers wrought terrible havoc. Further west, Gough with the Third Cavalry Brigade, also seized an excellent opportunity. After wiping out a small French detachment on the Somme canal, the second column was pushing south when it was surprised at sunset and thrown back by Gough's force, which had no heavy cavalry, but completely routed the crack Lancers of the Guards, inflicting very heavy losses. Thus in both cases the tables were completely turned in efforts to harry the jaded British retirement."

In May, 1915, Lord Allenby succeeded General Plummer in command of the Fifth Corps and in October, 1915, was assigned to the command of the Third Army, where as an army commander he continued his excellent work which culminated in the brilliant victory at Arras early in 1917.

In June, 1917, he was sent to Egypt to reorganize the Egyptian Forces and prepare for the Palestine campaign. The story of this wonderful campaign and its far

reaching results has been told so frequently that all are familiar with it. It suffices to say that it culminated in the most complete and bloodless victory known to history, and marked the beginning of the end of the World War.

After the war, as High Commissioner of Egypt, Lord Allenby, facing many difficulties, made a fine record of achievement, and by his rigid policy of government undoubtedly prevented civil war.

Field-Marshal Allenby was, above all, a Cavalryman and his military career which began modestly in the Zulu Wars in South Africa and terminated so gloriously at Damascus, will always be an inspiration to every officer of Cavalry.

The Origin of the Next War. By JOHN BAKELESS. Illustrated with maps. The Viking Press, New York. (Price \$2.50.)

While military men have nothing to do with starting wars, they in common with most normally curious persons would like to know if the present agitation for "No More War" is likely to be successful. This book supplies the answer. There will be another war of world wide scope because danger spots exist today just as they did prior to 1914. France and Spain in Morocco, England and Turkey at odds, the Balkans again disturbed, the tensions of the Pacific, growing air fleets, new gases, all these war producing forces present familiar landmarks along the path of present day humanity. The author points out the alarming similarity of these conditions before 1914 and after 1918.

Mr. Bakeless is a former associate editor of *The Living Age* and the author of *Economic Causes of Modern War*. He may therefore be considered an authority on the subject of which he writes. The book describes in vivid and engaging style the factors most likely to produce international conflict; the specific problems of dissatisfied peoples; of over-population; of commercial expansion, and of military strategy. There is no attempt to mince words but an honest effort to state with definiteness and understanding an important truth which has been adroitly avoided in a thousand editorials and fully as many political speeches. The author demonstrates conclusively that the war to end war failed; that since the Armistice the World has not enjoyed a single year of perfect peace. His conclusion, a prophecy no more than a fact, gives a picture of what the nations may expect.

One chapter of this interesting book discusses the weapons of the next war. Air-planes, gas and tanks are to play even more important roles than they did in the World War and will have more decisive effects. The author believes that mobility is likely to regain its old importance and that Cavalry will be invaluable for reconnaissance in the open warfare of the future. He cites the characteristics that especially fit the Cavalry for reconnaissance and the limitations of other arms for this role. As he says: "Here is a niche that Cavalry alone can fill . . .". It is indeed refreshing to find a writer who appreciates the true worth of Cavalry after the flood of half baked ideas on the subject by authors who glean their information from biased sources. Perhaps his conclusions as to the employment of Cavalry are more limited than our tactical doctrine advocates, though his reference to Allenby's brilliant campaign and mention of the capture of Beersheba, indicate that mounted troops will not be restricted to the role of reconnaissance.

This book should be of intense interest to any military man awake to civilization's greatest problem. It contains a strong argument for Cavalry and as such should be in every cavalryman's library.

J. T. M.

Fix Bayonets! By CAPTAIN JOHN W. THOMASON, JR., U. S. Marine Corps. Illustrated by the author. Charles Scribner's Sons, New York. (Price \$3.50.)

For a long time after the World War publishers issued notice that they were prepared to consider anything "except the war." But in the seven years that have elapsed since the great upheaval, sentiment has changed and now authors have no

difficulty in finding publishers and readers on the minutiae of the great struggle. And present day productions are of far more distinguished caliber than the loosely put together compilations which ran off the presses, while the minds and hearts of everyone retained vivid recollections of what happened in France.

Of these later day authors Captain Thomason stands out preeminently. His work "Fix Bayonets" tells of the exploits of the Marines at Belleau Wood, at Soissons, at Mont Blanc through five months of the bitterest fighting of the World War. His descriptions are those of a man who is a "born soldier", he gives one the feel of American troops in battle. His word pictures convey the inwardness of a game that is played at its far end with telephones, maps and colored pins, and at its near end by sweating, hungry, footsore men.

Captain Thomason in addition to being a very forceful writer is a draftsman of exceptional merit. His drawings, made in most cases on the field, depict in realistic fashion the hand-to-hand fighting that went on around him. These drawings are of permanent interest to American history.

The book is frank in its exposure of the blind mercilessness of fate when men go forth to kill or be killed. But it is an impersonal exposure, in which the joy of a soldier in his calling is reinforced by the keen sense of an artist. The book shows the fatalism of the soldier and the intense pride and exaltation the officer feels in his command. To Captain Thomason, "the marvel of the Soissons fight" was "how those men, two days without food, three nights without sleep, after a day and night of forced marching, flung off their weariness like a discarded piece of equipment, and at the shouting of the shells sprang fresh and eager against the German line." Without doubt "Fix Bayonets" is the finest thing on actual fighting that has appeared since the World War.

J. T. M.

Law of Destiny. By RALPH W. WILES. Dorrance & Co., Philadelphia. (Price \$2.10 postpaid.)

This book tells the story of two brothers with like physical characteristics but utterly different in disposition and character; the one of excellent character and the other without moral scruples of any kind, and both of great physical strength. These two natures clash from the beginning and the feud between them is continuous throughout the book. Michael, treacherous and vindictive, is constantly trying to injure his brother and prejudice his interests.

The recital carries the reader through many interesting parts of the world, from lumber lands of the Northwest to India, and thence to the Philippine jungles among hostile Moros.

The story is well written, of absorbing interest and full of thrills.

Mobilization in Retrospect. By Lieutenant Colonel T. M. COUGHLAN, Cavalry. (Price \$.50).

Many Reserve officers undoubtedly have a rather hazy idea of exactly what they would have to do in case of mobilization and how they would go about it. The general mobilization plan of the War Department covers the subject generally, but there has heretofore been no one work which gave in detail the duties of an organization commander upon mobilization. Colonel Coughlan's booklet fills this want and will assist Reserve officers greatly in visualizing their mobilization functions and in preparing their unit plans thereunder. In chronological order the Reserve company, battery or troop commander is carried through the various steps under the present mobilization plans from appointment in peace through local mobilization in war, terminating in arrival at the concentration point.

This booklet, although prepared especially for Reserves, should be quite as useful for National Guard officers, as their problems in mobilization would be very similar to those of the Reserves.

Foreign Military Journals

The Cavalry Journal (Great Britain) April, 1926

In *The Campaigns of Hannibal*, Captain C. F. Marriott, 20th Lancers, I. A., briefly sketches the military career of this great soldier whom he describes as "one who was in early manhood the most brilliant Cavalry leader that ever sat a horse."

Due to his consummate genius in the second of the Punic wars, Rome narrowly escaped the complete destruction which she finally visited upon her great rival for the supremacy of the Western Mediterranean.

Hannibal's daring project of invading Italy across the Alps was well planned, and for a long time was uniformly successful. Early in the campaign the superiority of the Carthaginian horsemen was conclusively demonstrated and throughout the war they took a decisive part in every battle.

The author pays Hannibal this tribute: "From a literary point of view, it is one of the great tragedies of history that no account of his campaigns written by one of his own countrymen had come down to us. We know next to nothing of the organization and administration of his amazing army of mercenaries, of the personality of his many able lieutenants, and above all perhaps of the tactics and even the armament and equipment of his superb Cavalry. The exploits of Alexander, who never had to face a Western army, and even of Caesar, pale into insignificance when compared to the achievements of Hannibal, when we consider that, single-handed and denied anything approaching whole-hearted support from his unworthy countrymen, he temporarily broke the military power of the most martial people of antiquity. His career is perhaps the outstanding example in history of what individual genius can achieve in war, and must ever remain an inspiration to all who follow the profession of arms; above all, to those who serve in that arm which was so peculiarly his own, both by instinct and by training, and which ever remained his sheet-anchor in battle."

In *Cambrai*, Colonel E. B. Maunsell traces the action during the Cambrai battle of the Lucknow Brigade which was detached from the 4th Cavalry Division and attached to the III Corps.

The Nine Days' Ride Which Saved Natal to Britain. By Major-General Sir Nevill Smyth, V. C., K. C. B. This is an interesting description of a ride made in 1842 by Richard King, a young Englishman, for the purpose of obtaining relief for a British detachment which was besieged in an earthwork fort at Durban by the Boers. After a ride of 600 miles beset by dangers from hostile Boers, natives, wild animals and reptiles, King arrived at Grahamstown on the ninth day and succeeded in his mission.

The Capture of Togoland. By Colonel F. C. Bryant, C. M. G., D. S. O. Togoland, which, by the way, was a German colony in West Africa, was early in the War marked for capture by the British and French, as it lay between the Gold Coast colony of the former and Dahomey, a colony of the French. The colonial forces of the two nations in a three weeks' campaign were completely successful and Togoland passed from the control of Germany.

Canadian Defence Quarterly April, 1926

If Only We had Read the Prophet Clausewitz. By Colonel A. T. Hunter, V. D., R. of O. In this very interesting paper the author, from a post-war viewpoint, holds that it would have been better if British soldiers and statesmen, and better still their great writers, had read Clausewitz from whose inspiration he states, "The military

and political operations of the Germans have flowed just as directly and inevitably as the incursions of the Arabs, Saracens, Turks, and other Moslems flowed from the Koran."

After a brief resume of the career of Clausewitz, Colonel Hunter quotes a number of the principles enunciated by the great author of "On War" and shows their application to German policy and conduct of war. He makes the startling statement, "Our senior English officers had not only read Clausewitz, but *knew much* about this German conspiracy. In their higher staff courses they were being informed that the Germans had built enormous railway sidings and platforms at a lot of jerk-water villages on the Belgian frontier. The English intelligence service was amazingly good and kept the authorities well informed of what was going on, but no action appears to have been taken. Among them they suppressed the information. This is a cold historical fact: the British Empire was deceived by the suppression of information vital to its existence."

Conditions in the Far East at the End of 1925. By Lieutenant-Colonel G. R. Pearkes, V. C., D. S. O., M. C., A. D. C. This is a very masterly analysis of Eastern political conditions with particular reference to China. Beginning with Russia's first appearance on the Pacific Coast of Asia in 1860, when China ceded to the Czar the port of Vladivostok, the author depicts the principal events leading up to the present state of political chaos existing in the Celestial Empire, with the Russo-Japanese struggle for political and economic domination always in the background.

In *Elements of Military Horsemanship*, Major T. Lishman, late R. A. V. C., gives a brief outline of the five essentials of this subject, viz: supervision, feeding, watering, cleaning, and exercising.

The Journal of the United Service Institution of India April, 1926

In this number is concluded the account of *The Battle of Kut-al-Amara*, by Major General Sir W. D. Bird, which was begun in the January number.

A confirmation of the difficulties met with in the above mentioned battle is given in an article on *The Physical and Climatic Difficulties of the Mesopotamian Theatre of War*, by Colonel W. F. Blaker, D. S. O., O. B. E., who heads his paper with the following from the Arabic: "When Allah had made hell he found it was not bad enough. So he made Iraq—and added flies."

Very timely and worthy of careful perusal, is the article by Captain R. G. Williams on *The Value of a Study of Campaigns Prior to the World War*. The idea that a study of the Great War, for the reason that it is the most recent war, must necessarily be of greater benefit to the military student than a study of earlier campaigns, is, according to Captain Williams, obviously unsound. Using as a basis for his argument the views of many great soldiers and a number of trite historical examples, the author succeeds in proving his case. As a preliminary proposition, he states: "If science and invention progress to the same extent in the next decade as they have in the last, then it is fairly safe to conclude that the next war will be as different, in its actual conduct, from the Great War as the Great War was from the one before it. So far as minor tactics of future wars are concerned, therefore, the Great War is unlikely to furnish us with much useful information. So far as strategy and grand tactics are concerned its study, even with the data at present available, must be of certain benefit. The risk of making incorrect deductions will not, however, be completely avoided until full official records are accessible and the war as a whole can be viewed in its proper perspective. Apart from any other reason this lack of complete information seems to make the study of the Great War, by itself an unsound basis for the purpose of learning the true meaning of the principles of war and their application."

Revue de Cavalerie (France) January-February, 1922

Reviewed by Captain W. E. Shipp, 13th Cavalry

The Maneuver of the Polish Cavalry in 1925, by Lt. Col. Ducasse. In 1925 under the direction of General Rozwadowski, Inspector General of Cavalry, the maneuvers of the Polish cavalry took place in Wolhynie in the region of Dubno—Brody,—a region celebrated as a battleground since the days of King John Casimir; and in which, in 1920, the 2d Polish Army (Raszewski) fought the battles of Dubno and Brody against Budienny's Red Cavalry. The terrain in this region is quite varied, being cut up with obstacles, marshes, rivers, forests, orchards, and valleys. Roads are so poor that night marches are very difficult.

The maneuvers were based on the 1920 campaign. The Reds were assumed to have broken through the Blue front and latter were in retreat, fighting delaying actions until reinforced. The Blue forces consisted at first of the 6th Cavalry Brigade (3 regiments and a group of horse artillery); a battalion of light infantry, a machine gun battalion; and 2 battalions of frontier-guards. Later they were reinforced by 2 regiments of infantry and 3 artillery groups of the 5th Division.

The Red forces were composed of the 4th Cavalry Division (6 regiments and 2 groups of horse artillery), reinforced by a battalion of light infantry and the 2d Cavalry Brigade, and had the mission of preventing reinforcements from arriving to assist the Blues and of engaging and driving back the defeated Blues.

The air services of both sides were very active, but that of the Blues had the superiority. It cooperated closely with the cavalry by distant reconnaissance and by delaying the Red columns by bombing and machine gun fire. The planes flew at very low altitudes, often being only 100 meters above the ground. The maneuvers illustrated very strongly the development of aviation and its cooperation with cavalry as well as the value of cavalry.

One day the Reds marched more than 50 kilometers; while during an approach march they marched only 10 kilometers in 3 hours, due to the delaying actions of armored cars and of attack aviation.

Coordination with supporting infantry units was rendered difficult by the fact that the larger cavalry units had been incorporated into divisions for only a short time. The author concludes, however, that the maneuvers showed conclusively the advantage of having infantry units as organic parts of cavalry divisions.

The maneuvers are described in great detail, and the author points out the errors committed by both sides. The Blues in their delaying actions failed to delay the Reds in successive positions, and to make use of their mobility, as they renounced all maneuvers and resisted to the limit in one position. The Reds, however, failed to carry out their mission on account of their failure to defeat the Blues before they were reinforced, and to retake important heights.

The maneuver showed the fallacy of obtaining surprise by suppressing or limiting patrols, as surprise can best be obtained by marching quickly and well guarded in order to arrive in time to attack the enemy before he is fully prepared.

During this maneuver, great facility in taking up dismounted combat and breaking it off quickly was shown. The necessity of designating instantly the elements which remain mounted, either as patrols, or connecting groups, or reserves, and of distributing the led horses in such a manner as to afford them protection was also demonstrated.

The Polish cavalry has vigorous, supple, and well trained horsemen, mounts in excellent condition, and good equipment. It can fight either mounted or dismounted with skill and audacity, it has learned to combine fire and movement, and it knows how to use machine guns in both the attack and the defense.

In 1925, Poland made a considerable effort in instructing her reservists as 300,000 of them were called to colors during 5 training periods of from 15 to 20 days each. Their excellent spirit and their resistance to fatigue was as good as existed in the regular forces.

The author concludes with the encomium: "Poland has an army—Proud of her past, ardent, like all young armies, it works, instructs itself, and improves every day."

Revue de Cavalerie (France) March-April, 1926

Cavalry in Syria. Deliverance of Rachaya and Capture of Hasbaya. The 6th Spahis immediately after their debarkation at Beyrouth in November, 1925, were sent to relieve the hard-pressed garrison at Rachaya, which was surrounded by Druses and was almost without either rations or ammunition. By an audacious forced day and night march in the middle of very hostile country under a very severe sun, the regiment arrived in time to save the garrison. A battalion of infantry which made the same march arrived in time for the action but were too exhausted to take part in it.

A few days later the 6th Spahis brilliantly participated in the capture of Hasbaya, forming almost entirely dismounted one of the wings of the attack and gaining its objectives after a hard fight over very rocky and difficult terrain.

Sporting Chronicle: Horse Shows of Toronto, New York and Chicago. In this very frank article the participation of the French and Belgian teams in the Toronto, New York, and Chicago horse shows is fully discussed. Warm praise is given to the Royal Canadian Dragoons, but little was found in the United States which merited any praise, except the riding of Captain Waters and of American women. The other members of the American team had much trouble in riding the very good horses placed at their disposal. The Italian influence in the riding of the American team was noticed.

At New York it was observed that there was no method of conducting the horse over the jumps as the rôle of the rider consisted solely in slowing up the gait of his horse during turns and placing him in position to take the next jump. This was rendered difficult by the fact that all horses rushed the jumps. The system of counting only tips is not considered very sound or practicable as it requires an almost impossible attention on the part of the judges and does not give the public an idea of the real merit of the contenders.

The New York public which had applauded courteously the individual victories of the French officers received very coldly the victory of the French team in the International Cup. The American officers who were spectators, in particular, seemed to be astonished, mortified, and even indignant by the defeat of their team. They seemed to say that the defeat of an American team in America by a European was hardly possible.

At Chicago, the team was much impressed by the five gaited classes as a relic of a past age. The public here received the French victory in the event for International Army Officers with courtesy. The system of jumping off ties was criticised as being too hard on the horses. The article ends with the observation that it seems to be proved that for 1925 the American team was not the best in the world, contrary to the prognostications of the American press.

As, of course, the main reason for the participation of the European teams in the American horse shows was to promote International harmony, it is to be regretted that the French team formed so unfavorable an opinion of American sportsmanship and courtesy during their visit to this country.

Regimental Notes

THIRD CAVALRY (less 1st Squadron)—Fort Myer, Virginia Colonel H. S. Hawkins, Commanding

The spring has furnished busy months for the Squadron on account of the many drills, exhibitions, demonstrations, etc., that it has been called upon to give.

On March 9th a composite war strength troop from the three troops in the Squadron and the Headquarters Troop, commanded by Captain V. L. Padgett, gave a demonstration for the benefit of the student officers from the Engineer School at Fort Humphreys, Va.

On the 15th of March a composite peace strength troop gave an exhibition and demonstration to the officers detailed to make the inspection for the selection of distinguished colleges and honor military schools.

The last regular Friday afternoon drill was given on March 26th. At this drill a new feature was introduced, a demonstration of fancy driving by "Mule Skinners", from the Service Troop, 3d Cavalry.

On March 27th the troops gave an exhibition to the Boy Scouts of America. It was a great success, and will no doubt be long remembered by the Scouts present.

The members of the Pan-American Journal Conference came out to see the ride given for their benefit, on April 9th. They seemed to be greatly impressed by it.

The athletic fund of the Squadron and also the polo fund have been greatly improved by the receipts from the Society Circus, given on May 1st. The circus was a great success and both performances were well attended.

On May 11th the Squadron competed for the Colonel Hawkins' Saber Cup, over a regulation saber course, the conditions being that each troop was to run a platoon of twenty-seven men and one officer over a strange course in the minimum time of one minute and twenty seconds, the platoon making the highest score winning the cup. Troop G won the cup with the score of 1976 points. Troop E was second with a score of 1736 points, and Troop F was third with a score of 1596 points.

Cadet Hamilton S. Hawkins, Jr., the son of the Regimental Commander, died at West Point May 15th as a result of a polo accident incurred on the previous day.

Cadet Hawkins was born on November 7th, 1904, and was the only son of Colonel and Mrs. Hawkins. He was to have graduated from West Point in June and it had been his ambition to follow in his father's footsteps and serve in the cavalry.

The Regiment shares with Colonel and Mrs. Hawkins in their great loss.

The Squadron during the National Capital Horseshow, May 14-18, was unfortunate in having lost the services of two of its best horses, *Tango Dance* and *Fire Jump*, but in spite of that it was able to win several ribbons.

On May 19th Troop G left for Philadelphia by marching, to participate in the Sesqui-centennial Exposition to be given there.

FIRST SQUADRON, THIRD CAVALRY—Fort Ethan Allen, Vermont Lieutenant Colonel F. D. Griffith, Jr., Commanding

The Squadron started dismounted pistol firing April 19, 1926, and finished April 27, 1926. During the month of May the forenoons were spent in rifle firing and the afternoons in mounted pistol firing. The record firing mounted pistol was completed May 27, 1926.

A competition was held within each troop to determine the best trained rifle squad. The best squad from each troop was judged by a board of officers to determine the best squad in the Squadron. The contest was won by the First Squad, Troop C, under Corporal Claude W. Sharkey.

A team of 4 officers and 13 horses from Fort Ethan Allen took part in the New Haven and Hartford horse shows, April 29th to May 1st, and May 6th to 8th. The

Squadron was represented by Major Frederick Herr, Captain Alfred J. deLorimier, and 1st Lieut. Charles R. Chase, and 8 horses. The team made an excellent showing. At New Haven it won 14 ribbons,—three blue, four red, four yellow, and three white.

At the Hartford show it won 21 ribbons,—five blue, four red, six yellow, and six white. The Champion Jumping Stake in both shows was won by *Aeroplane*, Troop C, ridden by Lieutenant Chase. This horse made a clean performance in both events and was easily the outstanding jumper of the shows.

On May 19th the Squadron celebrated 3rd Cavalry Organization Day. The day was started with a mounted parade. The Squadron Commander gave a short talk after which a brief history of the 3rd Cavalry was read by the Adjutant. The parade was followed by an impromptu dismounted field day in which Troop A won the cup for the highest number of points. A picnic lunch was served at 1 o'clock to the members of the 1st Squadron, their families and other guests. Following the lunch, the bachelors of the squadron defeated the married men at baseball.

FOURTH CAVALRY (Less 1st Squadron)—Fort D. A. Russell, Wyo. Colonel Osman Latrobe, Commanding

The Regiment celebrated the seventy-first anniversary of its organization on March 3d. The morning was devoted to a horse show, which was participated in with enthusiasm by both officers and enlisted men of the regiment, and by the officers of the post. The program was interesting and entertaining, and the show was a marked success. The winners of first place in the various events were as follows:

Officers' Charger	Capt. Dobyns on <i>Deeces</i>
Enlisted Men's Equitation.....	Cpl. Long, Tr. G, on <i>Lunger</i>
Enlisted Men's Jumping.....	Cpl. Jones, Tr. F, on <i>Harry</i>
Officers' Jumping.....	1st Lieut. Febiger, 13th Cav., on <i>Royal</i>
Musical Chair Race	Pvt. Miller, Hq. Tr.
Escort Wagon Class	Pvt. Hokit, Ser. Tr.
Novice Polo Ponies.....	Capt. Cannon on <i>Sailor</i>
Enlisted Men Remounts.....	Cpl. York, Tr. F, on <i>Jupiter</i>
Recruits, Field Equipment	Pvt. Shadbolt, Hq. Tr.

Headquarters Troop won the cup on total points scored, with a total score of fifteen.

A dinner and dance were held at the Fourth Cavalry Club on the evening of organization day, attended by officers and ladies of the Fourth Cavalry and guests.

The regiment has been busily occupied with saber and pistol practice, which is now nearly completed. Work is being started on rifle practice by several of the troops.

Looking forward to the summer's activities, troops are training for the C. M. T. Camps, and for special events at the Cheyenne Frontier Days celebration and the Wyoming State Fair at Douglas, Wyo., to which the regiment will march in September. En route to Douglas, a visit may also be paid to the fair at Torrington, Wyo.

Troop F, the Black Horse Troop of the Regiment, will give its musical drill at Colorado Springs in August. This drill was very highly applauded at the Douglas State Fairs last September.

Captain Cannon, Lieutenant Febiger and Lieutenant Hodes have left with the Post Polo Team for the 9th Corps Area Tournament at Boise, Idaho.

A series of Polo games has been contemplated with the First Squadron, stationed at Ft. Meade, S. D. The Annual Fort D. A. Russell Tournament will also be held at this post in August.

FIRST SQUADRON, FOURTH CAVALRY—Fort Meade, S. Dakota Lieutenant Colonel R. W. Walker, Commanding

On May 18th, 1926 this post was visited by the Chief of Cavalry on his annual inspection tour of all cavalry posts. General Crosby was especially interested in

Fort Meade as it was his first station in the Army, he having joined the 8th Cavalry here as a 2nd Lieutenant fresh from West Point in 1893. The General visited many of his old haunts, including his favorite trout stream, and seemed to enjoy himself immensely.

Polo at Fort Meade is in full swing and formal games are played every Sunday before a large number of spectators. On May 16th, a very interesting game was played with Hot Springs and a return game will probably be played at Hot Springs on June 6th. An invitation has been received from the Pierre Polo Club, Pierre, S. D. for a series of games to be played there in the later part of June. The team is now making preparations to attend the Rocky Mountain Circuit Tournament at Fort Leavenworth, Kansas.

The Squadron is now making preparations for its annual field maneuvers, to be held during the period June 2-14, 1926. Five Reserve Officers of the 66th Cavalry Division have been ordered to Fort Meade for their annual active duty training, and will accompany the Squadron on Maneuvers.

The boxing meet held May 19th was very successful. A total of 250 people from the Black Hills witnessed the affair. In the final bout Ted Brown of Rapid City knocked out Corporal Hendricks of Troop B, in 47 seconds. The four preliminary bouts were all hard fought. Only one resulted in a knockout.

An account of the Black Hills Endurance Ride appears elsewhere in this issue.

FIFTH CAVALRY—Fort Clark, Texas Colonel W. B. Scales, Commanding

Preparations are under way for the training of a large contingent of R. O. T. C. students. The parent organization method of training will be applied, the Second Squadron having been designated as the parent organization for the entire number. Schools from which the students will attend are: Texas A. & M. College; the University of New Mexico; and the University of Arizona. It is estimated that 130 students will attend.

Colonel Wallace B. Scales will leave on a four months' leave some time in August. Colonel Scales accompanied by his family will visit China while on leave.

Major Edwin O'Connor has received orders to attend the Staff and Command School, Fort Leavenworth, Kansas, for the fall and winter term.

Captain Philip C. Clayton has left for Fort Riley, Kansas, where he will attend the Troop Officers' School.

Second Lieutenant Charles H. Valentine has joined the regiment coming to us from Air Service.

The regiment has received forty-nine recruits who are now in their fourth week of recruit training. The new arrivals are responding to methods of training in an exceptional manner.

On May 5th representatives from the regiment participated in a horse show at Del Rio, Texas, and took an active part in the festivities staged, celebrating Cinco de Mayo, a local holiday.

Mixed games of polo are being played regularly with green ponies showing good form and giving promise for future matches.

The results of the regular target season have not been 100% qualification owing to the cut in the ammunition allowance for this year.

SIXTH CAVALRY—Fort Oglethorpe, Georgia Colonel G. C. Barnhardt, Commanding

During the current quarter while the Second Squadron and Service Troop have been completing record firing with the rifle and automatic rifle, the First Squadron and Headquarters Troop were conducting their annual practice with pistol and saber

A compilation of the results obtained follows:

Org.	% Qualified			Org.	% Qualified	
	Saber	Pistol M.	Pistol D.		Rifle	Auto Rifle
Hq. Troop	100.	98.4	93.3	Ser. Troop	93.5	.....
Troop A	97.6	97.7	75.	Troop E	92.7	75.
Troop B	95.6	100.	76.5	Troop F	100.	83.3
Troop C	94.5	100.	100.0	Troop G	90.2	66.7
Hq. Det. 1st Sq.	83.3	100.	.....	Hq. Det. 2d Sq.	91.7	.....

The annual benefits for the Army Relief Association were held at this station on the evenings of March the third and fifth. For the officers' party, "A Night in Juarez," the hop hall was arranged to represent an old time border saloon. The long mahogany bar, roulette and chuck-a-luck games, ballerinas, vaqueros, and cow punchers furnishing local color and western atmosphere. A number of our friends from Chattanooga and vicinity attended and were most generous in their support. \$480.57 was cleared. The enlisted men conducted a carnival in the Post gymnasium. Their committee worked hard and is deserving of much credit for the financial and recreational success of the affair. The fish pond, restaurant, nickel dancing, country store and bar were features. They turned in a \$358.79 profit.

The inter-troop basketball league, which has been progressing throughout the winter, was brought to a close with the combined 1st and 2d Squadron Headquarters Detachments team in first place, and the A Troop team a close second. The baseball season is now well under way, with all organizations striving for the cup.

Perhaps the most noteworthy event of the past three months was the Polo tournament held at Fort Oglethorpe during the period May 1st to 9th, to decide two championships, namely, the Southern Circuit and the Fourth Corps Area. There were four teams competing, three being eligible for the Southern Circuit Championship and all for the Corps Area Championship, as follows: "Fort Benning, Georgia", "The Governor's Horse Guards" (Georgia National Guard, Atlanta, Georgia), "The Sixth Cavalry" team and "The Freebooters." The last mentioned team was composed of officers of the Sixth Cavalry and from Chattanooga.

In the first event, the Southern Circuit played on a handicap basis, Fort Benning (including 3 goal handicap) eliminated the Freebooters in a close, hard game, 9 to 7. In the final game, the Sixth Cavalry after giving away a three goal handicap carried away the Southern Circuit honors by scoring five goals in the eighth period, and winning from Fort Benning by the score, 12 to 10. The outstanding feature of the tournament was the final period of this game. The score, including handicap at the close of the seventh period, was 10-7 in favor of Fort Benning. The Sixth Cavalry Four came through in a fast finish in the eighth period with five rapid goals. Major Hardy had to retire from the game during the sixth period on account of an injury received on May 2d. Captain Harmon replaced Major Hardy as No. 2 and finished the match.

In the opening game of the Fourth Corps Area (non-handicap) tournament, the Freebooters won from Fort Benning in a very close and exciting game, 7 to 6. The Sixth Cavalry team then defeated the Governor's Horse Guards, 14 to 3; and in the final game, the Sixth Cavalry captured the Corps Area Championship from the Freebooters by the score, 8 to 6.

Upon the conclusion of this game Major General Johnson Hagood, Commander of the Fourth Corps Area, presented the trophies to, and congratulated the Sixth Cavalry team upon their double victory.

The Sixth Cavalry team consisted of: No. 1—Lt. Donaldson, No. 2—Maj. Hardy (team captain), No. 3—Lt. Dewey, No. 4—Capt. Meador. Substitute—Capt. Harmon. The Fort Oglethorpe Freebooters' line up was: No. 1—Lt. Ladue, No. 2—Lt. Culton, No. 3—Capt. DeLangton, No. 4—Col. Kimball (team captain). Substitute—Capt. Hurt.

Tuesday, May the fourth, Sixth Cavalry Organization Day, was fittingly celebrated. In the forenoon all organizations took part in a mounted field day, the honors going to Troop A with 20 points. The nearest competitor was Headquarters Troop with 12 points. Upon completion of the field day the regiment was paraded and listened to the reading of the regimental history. In the evening a masquerade ball was held in the Post gymnasium for all enlisted men and their friends.

SEVENTH CAVALRY—Fort Bliss, Texas
Colonel Fitzhugh Lee, Commanding

Preliminary rifle instruction and firing for record were completed during the quarter. Of the 456 who fired, the following results were attained: Experts, 26; sharpshooters, 69; marksmen, 300; unqualified, 61. Regimental percentage, 86.14. This percentage was attained under the new regulations curtailing the ammunition allowance. The course was fired over the new target range northwest of the Post. At the beginning of the quarter, pistol practice, mounted and dismounted, was finished for the season with (mounted) 294 experts, 37 sharpshooters, 6 marksmen, and 3 unqualified; and (dismounted) 122 experts, 166 sharpshooters, 153 marksmen, and 8 unqualified. The regimental percentage for the course dismounted was 97.37—average per man, 74.62; and for the course mounted, 99.11—average per man, 89.22. The saber course results were: Experts, 62; excellent swordsmen, 135; swordsmen, 11; unqualified, 3. The regimental percentage was 98.57. During the quarter the usual drill schedule was also followed. From May 10 to 15 the Regiment engaged in combat firing and proficiency tests on terrain east of the Post. Results were very satisfactory.

In April the Regiment with other troops of the Post was inspected by the 8th Corps Area Inspector, Lt. Col. Daniel D. Tompkins. In May the Regiment was visited and inspected by Maj. Gen. Herbert B. Crosby, the new Chief of Cavalry.

Captain D. S. Wood and 1st Lieutenant Carleton Burgess recently returned from the Pacific Coast, where they made a creditable record as members of the Fort Bliss Polo Team in the West Coast Polo Tournament. At Coronado the Fort Bliss Team won the Joseph Jessop Challenge Cup from the 10th Cavalry Team. Army and civilian teams played in the tournament. The Regimental Polo team played the usual schedule of polo between the different units of the Post throughout the winter.

The Inter-troop baseball league got under way on April 4. Service Troop is leading with F Troop a close second, and A Troop third. Many of the veteran players are still with the Regiment; hence a strong regimental team will enter the Post League. The Post pennant has been won by the Seventh for the past three consecutive years. Two handsome trophies have been put up by El Paso merchants, the Shelton-Payne Arms Co. and Charles Aronson, for the winners in the Inter-troop league of the Regiment.

Through the courtesy of the National Custer Memorial Association arrangements have been made for a part of the Regiment to participate in the ceremonies in observance of the semi-centennial of the Battle of the Little Big Horn, June 25, 26, 27. The memorial ceremonies will be held on the battlefield. Under command of Colonel Lee, a picked squadron and the Regimental Band will journey to Montana for the occasion. This is a singular honor which makes every one proud of the history of the Seventh Horse.

EIGHTH CAVALRY—Fort Bliss, Texas
Colonel S. McP. Rutherford, Commanding

Our new Division Commander, Brigadier General E. B. Winans, arrived April 3rd. It is needless to say that we were all glad to welcome him.

The topic of all-absorbing interest to the officers of Fort Bliss, during April and May, has been the horse races which have been held at Juarez. The combination of

the age-old gambling instinct and the love for real thoroughbreds which is inherent in a true cavalryman proved too much for all. Almost every afternoon—and especially the week-ends—saw a large attendance from the post. And in addition, there was the lure of the four Army races which were held on successive Sundays as the feature events of the day. In these the Eighth Cavalry horses were consistent winners as *Easterday*, owned by Captain McComb, Regimental Veterinarian, took two firsts and one second, while *Poacher*, owned by Lieut. Colonel Keyes, finished with one first and two seconds, and *Soldier-Boy*, owned by Lieut. Frierson, ran third on two occasions. Now that the meet is over every one is looking forward to the fifty day meet promised for next fall.

The inter-troop baseball schedule was run off very smoothly in the early part of March and was won by Headquarters Troop. It is now being supplemented by a short season in May preliminary to the opening game of the post league in the latter part of June. In addition to being very enjoyable to the men of the regiment, the inter-troop league served as a basis for the formation of a strong regimental team under the direction of Lieut. Howze. This team has so far defeated a number of outfits from El Paso and has high hopes of making a good showing in the coming post league.

In the middle of February a polo team representing the First Cavalry Division and Captained by Major Harry D. Chamberlin, Eighth Cavalry, left here to participate in the opening tournaments on the West Coast. This team lost but one game while on the trip and that to the strong Midwick Country Club team. On the other hand they won three of the four tournaments they entered as a team and Captain Wood and Major Chamberlin helped the Del Monte Freebooters to win over the famous Midwick Big Four team for the Pacific High Goal Championship. In this way they upheld the reputation that previous Fort Bliss polo teams have made on foreign fields, both as a team and when playing individually. Increased interest is being developed in polo. There is a system of rotation in effect which gives every team in the Post games with all other teams and insures at least two games per week to each team. Many good players and horses are being developed and this insures that the fall tournaments will be hard fought and full of interest.

Within the last few months the regiment has been engaged and rather successfully, too, in pistol, rifle, and saber work on the record courses, and in combat firing. This was varied slightly by reviews and inspections for the Corps Area Inspector and the Chief of Cavalry. During the latter part of May the regiment will complete its work with the new Browning Machine Rifle and then be ready for the summer's work on training camps and field exercises.

NINTH CAVALRY—Fort Riley, Kansas
Lieutenant Colonel W. J. Scott, Commanding

Private First Class Berry Abbott, 9th Cavalry, chief operator of the telephone service at Fort Riley, received the following mention in the Annual Report of the Seventh Corps Area Telephone Inspector, as follows: "Telephone service at this station is thought to be very efficient and above the average, much credit for which is due Private Abbott, assigned from the 9th Cavalry, for the efficient service rendered by him. It is the opinion of the undersigned that he is well worthy of recommendation for promotion."

On May 12th a Regimental Field and Track Meet was held. It was won by Headquarters & Service Troop. The results were as follows:

100 Yard Dash—(1) Pvt. Jackson, Hq. & Serv. Troop; (2) Cpl. Trueitt, Hq. & Serv. Troop; (3) Pvt. Harrison, Troop G. Time, 10 seconds.

Shot Put—(1) Cpl. Trueitt, Hq. & Serv. Troop; (2) Pfc. Jones, Troop F; (3) Pvt. Everett, Troop E. Distance, 36 feet 1 inch.

Discus Throw—(1) Pfc. Jones, Troop F; (2) Pvt. McIntyre, Troop A; (3) Pvt. Everett, Troop E. Distance, 98 feet 3½ inches.

220 Yard Dash—(1) Pvt. Jackson, Hq. & Serv. Troop; (2) Cpl. Curtis, Troop C; (3) Pvt. Wilson, Hq. & Serv. Troop. Time, 22 3/5 seconds.

Polo Vault—(1) Pvt. Hall, Troop E; (2) Pvt. Buford, Troop E; (3) Pvt. Reed, Troop C. Height, 9 feet.

Broad Jump—(1) Cpl. Trueitt, Hq. & Serv. Troop; (2) Pvt. Porch, Troop E; (3) Pvt. Frazier, Troop A. Distance, 18 feet 8 1/4 inches.

High Jump—(1) Pvt. Scott, Troop F; (2) Pvt. Jones, Troop E; (3) Pvt. Harrison, Troop G. Height, 5 feet.

Relay Race—(1) Hq. & Serv. Troop; (2) Troop C; (3) Troop A.

Mile Run—(1) Pfc. Cavil, Troop E; (2) Cpl. Parker, Hq. & Serv. Tr.; (3) Pvt. Lamb, Troop A. Time, 5 minutes 47 seconds.

The regimental baseball team under the leadership of Captain J. V. McDowell has fine prospects for a most successful season. After a bad start, in which they were beaten by the Kansas City Monarchs, one of the best professional colored baseball teams in the country, the team has won five out of six games, played at Milford, Hope, Concordia, and Junction City, Kansas.

TENTH CAVALRY—Fort Huachuca, Arizona Lieutenant Colonel George Grunert, Commanding

Situated in the hills of Arizona one would think that the post of Fort Huachuca, the home of the Tenth Cavalry would be dead; but such has been far from the case. The regiment is one of the most active in the Army.

Target season started much earlier this year and was finished by May 1st. The regiment made an excellent showing when taking into consideration that there are a large number of recruits in the regiment, some 150 having been assigned within the past eight months. Troop G lead the regiment with 100 per cent. No other troop lost over two men. Corporal Douglas of Troop B won the Chief of Cavalry's medal for high score for the enlisted men, making 327 on the record course. The months of January and February were taken up with completing the record courses of pistol mounted and dismounted and saber. C Troop lead in saber, qualifying more experts than any other troop.

On April 27th the regiment held its final parade and review for Colonel James C. Rhea, who has been ordered to Boston for duty with the 1st Army Corps. Master Sergeant George Johnson, who retired on April 20th also reviewed the regiment with Colonel Rhea. After the review Colonel Rhea presented 1st Sergeant Joe Sharp, Troop E, with the Chief of Cavalry's medal for the year 1925, and the mounted pistol team of Troop A with medals offered by the War Department for high score in the mounted pistol matches held in the cavalry for 1925. Following these presentations the Colors of the Regiment were escorted from the quarters of Colonel Rhea to those of Colonel Grunert. This was one of the most impressive ceremonies ever held at this post.

On May 8th and 9th, the Arizona State Rifle Association held its yearly competitions at the rifle range here. The regiment had three teams entered in the various matches. In the Greenway Trophy Match, which consisted of 13 shots at 1000 yards (3 sighting and 10 record) Private 1st Class Allen, Troop F, won third place.

In the State Adjutant General's Match, the first enlisted men's team won 1st place. This team composed of 1st Sergt. Joe Sharp, Troop E; Sergeant Roberts, Troop G; Corporal Blount, Troop G; Corporal Riley, Troop A; Private 1st Class Tillman, Troop F; and Private 1st Class Allen, Troop F. This team also won the Sexton cup for the highest slow fire score and the Schnable Trophy.

The match for the Rosskrige Trophy was a very exciting one. When the firing at 500 yards slow fire finished, the Cavalry first team was leading; when slow fire at 200 yards finished they were still leading by one point, but they were nosed out

during the rapid fire shooting at two and three hundred yards, by the 25th Infantry team from Nogales. The officers' team consisted of Capt. V. W. Wales, 1st Lieuts. Connor, Broadbuss, Schjerven, and Fake. Captain N. W. Lisle also was entered in the individual matches.

The Band became real cavalymen when they were issued horses on May 5th.

The Inspector General made a visit to the post during the month of April and made a thorough inspection of the regiment. His report was most favorable and complimentary.

The Citizens' Military Training Camp for the cavalry unit of Arizona starts here on July 13th. A large attendance is expected and all indications point to a banner year. The training will be allotted to the 2d Squadron this year, the 1st Squadron having had that duty last year.

The Intertroop baseball season started on May 5th, and a great deal of interest is being manifested by both the men and officers. Troops C and F opened the season, Troop C taking the first game. On May 10th Troop G defeated H. Q. Troop by the score of 12 to 5, and Troop E defeated Troop A in a hotly contested game on May 13th. Troop B won from Troop F on May 15th. The Regimental team defeated the Patagonia team on May 9th by the score of 15 to 2. The regiment has the prospect of an excellent team this year. Games have been scheduled with the Nogales and Douglas teams of the 25th Infantry and effort is being made to take the team to Fort Bliss to play the various regiments there. The 11th Naval District has invited the team to come to San Diego, California, in August. The Phoenix Giants will be met in Phoenix on Emancipation Day, June 19th. The Cannanea, Mexico, team will play here some time during the month of June.

The first horse show of the season will take place on May 22d, when the Captains of the regiment will stage the exhibition. Much is expected of Captain Everett on Morona and Captain Maas on Unk. There are several entries from the non-commissioned officers and a great deal of interest is being shown by them in preparation for the show.

SECOND SQUADRON, TWELFTH CAVALRY—Fort Ringgold, Texas Lieutenant Colonel C. O. Thomas, Jr., Commanding

The command completed record firing of rifle, pistol and automatic rifle in March and turned to other training while the troops from Fort Brown used the range. The First Squadron, in two detachments, marched here, completed range practice and then engaged in maneuvers with this command. The squadrons operated against each other and then combined and maneuvered as a regiment against an outlined enemy. In one of these problems an observation plane, from Fort Sam Houston, operated with the ground troops with very gratifying results.

The Fort Ringgold Athletic and Jockey Club has furnished the necessary percentage of amusement to go along with the routine training. February seventh, racing silks passed the judges stand in a card of fast events, while between races the Purple and Green Polo teams fought for honors on the inclosed polo field.

A horse show on the night of February twenty-seventh filled the grand stand, and the training of remounts, jumpers and hacks was demonstrated to the satisfaction of all concerned.

Cinco de Mayo, the Independence Day of our southern neighbor, was also a day of festivity for this locality. Baseball, horse show and polo teams from Fort Brown and Fort McIntosh started a "free for all" for places in various events. McIntosh trimmed Ringgold and Fort Brown won from the Artillery four in polo, while both Cavalry outfits fell before the baseball barrage of the "mountain guns."

A boxing card of eighteen rounds of flying leather, dripping gore and nimble feet distributed honors almost equally among the three commands interested and

also resulted in the issuing of challenges which it is hoped may result in further combat.

Our new jumping park got its share of punishment when the enlisted man and officers from Fort Brown and this station put their mounts over, under or through a series of jumps from three to four feet high.

The principal event of interest was the winning of the first two places in the open jumping, a course of nine jumps of four feet, by Miss Blink Thomas and Mrs. Margaret Creel. Quite a field of officers were in the class of "Also Jumped." Lieut. Greenhalgh qualified for membership in the local chapter of the Prince of Wales Club, when he took number seven without his mount.

While all our visitors were still present, Mother's Day Service, for the entire command, was held on the lawn at the Commanding Officers' quarters. Post Chaplain A. K. Mathews made an address after appropriate remarks by Colonel Thomas.

THIRTEENTH CAVALRY—Fort D. A. Russell, Wyoming Colonel H. R. Richmond, Commanding

The regiment fittingly celebrated its twenty-fifth birthday, which was on May 1st, by activities in which a large number of the officers and enlisted men participated. May 1st being "pay-day," Friday, April 30th, was declared a holiday, and only holiday calls were sounded.

In the morning, at 7:30 o'clock, the band paraded the regimental area. At 10:30 o'clock, the regiment was reviewed mounted by Brigadier General John M. Jenkins, commanding Fort D. A. Russell, on the new regimental parade ground. The review was followed by a buffet luncheon at the Officers' Club, at which about fifty officers, ladies, and guests were present.

At 1:30 o'clock a crowd of enthusiastic lovers of horses gathered at the post riding hall and witnessed what all adjudged to be one of the best horse shows presented on the post in years. Enlisted men and officers of the regiment, and other officers and ladies of the post participated. The events included a remount class for enlisted men, a privates' jumping class, a non-commissioned officers' jumping class, an escort wagon class (Service Troop), a troop wagon class, and officers' jumping, ladies' jumping, ladies' saddle, officers' charger, and pair jumping classes. Handsome cups, cash prizes, and ribbons were presented to the winners of each event.

Friday evening a dance was held at the ball-room, post headquarters, for the enlisted men of the regiment and their guests. The regimental orchestra furnished delightful music and very pleasing refreshments were served. An enthusiastic crowd of about four hundred attended.

On Saturday evening, May 1st, there was a dinner dance at the Plains Hotel, in Cheyenne, for the officers of the regiment, their families, and guests, which was greatly enjoyed by all who attended. The following morning the officers and ladies gathered at the Officers' Club for a controlled gallop over the post "Russian Ride" course, which was followed by a "hunt breakfast" at the Club at 11:30.

On Saturday, May 15th, the Chief of Cavalry, Major General H. B. Crosby, made his annual visit to Fort D. A. Russell, to inspect the two cavalry regiments stationed here. A review of the cavalry on the post was tendered him that morning by General Jenkins. The afternoon was spent by General Crosby in visiting barracks and stables, and observing activities as they normally functioned. That evening a formal reception and dance was held in the ball-room at post headquarters, in General Crosby's honor. Sunday afternoon there was a polo game and tea at the 13th Cavalry Polo Field. Monday morning the Chief of Cavalry talked briefly to the cavalry officers of the post, and at noon was given a luncheon by the 13th Cavalry at the Officers' Club. General Crosby left in the early afternoon.

An inter-troop baseball league has been organized in the regiment. The games

have aroused a great deal of interest, and are well supported. To date, Service, Headquarters and "A" Troops are in a close race for first position in the league.

In polo this spring, the regiment has contributed two players and twelve horses to the post team, which is now at Boise, Idaho, taking part in a tournament for the Ninth Corps Area and Northwestern championships. To date this team has won both of the two games it has played, and is considered a favorite to win the tournament. In spite of the temporary absence of these officers, there is sufficient enthusiasm about the game, and enough officers turning out, to have polo three times a week on the regimental field.

FOURTEENTH CAVALRY (less 1st Squadron)—Fort Des Moines, Iowa Colonel J. R. Lindsey, Commanding

On April 5th, 6th and 7th, Fort Des Moines was the scene of one of the most successful horse shows ever staged in this section of the country. Besides the usual military classes, a large number of classes for civilians were provided, which brought out a very gratifying number of civilian entries. Among them W. F. Miller's *Mahogany Lad*, a five gaited gelding, the winner of the 1926 Championship at Denver, Colorado and Fort Worth Horse shows. The show was under the management of Captain Orland S. Peabody. The judges were Dean C. F. Curtiss, Iowa State College, Ames, Iowa; Major B. T. Merchant, Ft. Riley, Kansas; and Major I. P. Swift, Ft. Leavenworth, Kansas. A great deal of the credit for the success of the show must go to the judges for the efficient and impartial decisions rendered. The riding hall was freshly painted and decorated for the occasion with bunting and flags secured from army posts of the Corps Area and Great Lakes Naval Training Station. Des Moines citizens took a keen interest in the show and turned out in most gratifying numbers. By holding the preliminaries in the afternoons, the number of contestants in the finals, which were held evenings, was reduced to ten, which did much to keep the show from dragging. Headquarters Troop secured the greatest number of points. During the horse show, numerous social events took place in honor of the visitors; chief of which was a hunt breakfast given by Colonel Lindsey in honor of Major General and Mrs. Poore, who came up for the show.

The winter equitation classes and the post schools closed March 31st. Sergeant Albert Sanders of Headquarters Troop won the Commanding Officer's trophy for the best trained remount. The period between the horse show and the opening of the target season, May 1st, was devoted to outdoor drill and practice marches. The target season opened May 1st and has been completed with very satisfactory results. Pistol and saber practice is now in progress.

Polo prospects for the coming year are very bright with a large number of officers turning out. The first match game was played April 26th between Fort Des Moines and the Wakonda Country Club. Sunday, Tuesday and Thursday afternoons have been set aside for polo between the first and second strings and the Wakonda Country Club. Large numbers of civilians turn out for the games.

Through arrangements with the Bankers Life Company of Des Moines, Iowa, (the owners of radio station W-H-O) the post has been wired for broadcasting by remote control, so it is now possible to pick up and broadcast a program from practically any part of the post. In addition to the regular Sunday night band concert, which is broadcast each Sunday, several polo games and reviews have been broadcast and have met with enthusiastic response from listeners all over the country.

On Mothers' Day, May 9th, the entire command assembled on the polo field in front of the marquée, which was reserved for the mothers, to listen to a mothers' day program, consisting of addresses by the Commanding Officer, the Chaplain, vocal music by Mrs. C. L. Miller, and music by the band.

The Sunday morning rides, at which the officers and ladies of the post are hosts to the reserve officers and invited guests from Des Moines, continue to hold their popularity. Since spring, the rides have gradually been lengthened. There are many beautiful rides in the vicinity of the post; and besides the enjoyment derived, the officers are absorbing an increased knowledge of the country here-a-bouts.

FIRST SQUADRON, FOURTEENTH CAVALRY—Fort Sheridan, Ill.

Major W. W. West, Commanding

Record practice with the rifle and automatic rifle will be completed on or about May 31, 1926. It is estimated that 85% of the enlisted men of this squadron will qualify under the new qualification standards. High score for the rifle in this squadron is held by Private Hass, Troop A, with a score of 333. The squadron is almost assured of a member on the Chief of Cavalry's Rifle Team for 1926.

Preliminary instructions with the pistol, mounted and dismounted, will be started on or about June 1st, 1926.

The Fort Sheridan Horse Show Association will hold a horse show sometime in July. Mounts are now being trained for this event, and the squadron hopes to repeat their performance of last fall.

Troop A participated in the Northwestern University Circus on April 30th and May 1st, 1926. For their excellent performance the troop received a beautiful silver loving cup.

FIRST MACHINE GUN SQUADRON—Fort Clark, Texas

Major Francis C. V. Crowley, Commanding

At the present time we are well along in the target season and expect to entirely complete all firing by the first of July. Results so far have been very satisfactory indeed, far better in fact than we believed possible with the radically reduced ammunition allowance. Probably the machine gun firing has suffered the most from the reductions, but so far our scores have been satisfactory.

Several of our officers have received orders to leave us this year. Major Crowley will leave for duty on the Cavalry board at Fort Riley Kansas the last of May. Captain Berg joins the Second Cavalry at Fort Riley the middle of June. Captain Tallant is to improve his general knowledge of the Cavalry as student officer at the Cavalry School in the class of 1926-7. We have also heard semi-officially that Lieutenant Sheehan is to be assigned to the Sixth Cavalry. Under any circumstances we can expect several new officers to be added to our roster.

Polo has been progressing very satisfactorily in the Squadron and we have all been very busy working on our remounts that were received last year, with a view to making polo ponies of them. At the present time we have enough remounts to nearly mount our team. We have recently completed a tournament between the various teams in the post with great success. The final incident was a dinner at Piedras Negras presented by the two losing teams to the two victors. A good time was had by all.

SECOND MACHINE GUN SQUADRON—Fort Bliss, Texas

Major Vaughn W. Cooper, Commanding

The Squadron left for the Dona Ana Target Range, New Mexico, (29 miles from Fort Bliss) on April 12 for its machine gun and rifle season. It returned on May 2nd to Fort Bliss. Over 97% qualified with the machine gun. Course "C" was fired by personnel armed with the rifle.

At present the Squadron is confining itself to combat exercises and training in indirect fire.

The baseball team, under Capt. Haldeman, has shown considerable strength in its practice games and will be one of the strongest contenders for the Post Championship.

ESTABLISHED 1918
Brooks Brothers
CLOTHING
Gentlemen's Furnishing Goods.
MADISON AVENUE COR. FORTY-FOURTH STREET
NEW YORK



Officers' Uniforms

Agents in the United States
for the

"Woodrow" Cap

and

Messrs. Peal & Co.'s

"Sam Browne" Belt

Send for Circular

BOSTON PALM BEACH NEWPORT
LITTLE BUILDING PLAZA BUILDING AUDRAN BUILDING
Twenty-sixth Street C O R S E S 222 Broadway Avenue

BROOKS BROTHERS'
Building, convenient
to Grand Central, Subway,
and to many of the lead-
ing Hotels and Clubs

THE DARDANELLES EXPEDITION

By CAPTAIN W. D. PULESTON, U. S. NAVY

68 Illustrations by Lt. Col. G. L. McEntee, General Staff, U. S. Army

AN ACCURATE ACCOUNT OF AN AMPHIBIOUS ADVENTURE

Price \$2.00 to officers and Government Departments.

Address: U. S. Naval Institute, Annapolis, Md.

MUSKETRY RULE

This instrument enables a rifleman to determine with reasonable accuracy the range at any long distance and to set his sight accordingly. It is an invaluable aid to a hunter who is compelled to make long shots and was successfully used by the riflemen of the American Army in France in 1917-1918. Every rifleman should have one.

Price \$1.00 Each

We pay postage.
Money back if unsatisfactory.

PIONEER EQUIPMENT CO.

244 Lafayette Street New York City

Military
Leggings
and
Sam Browne Belts

Made to Order

Measurement blanks
and catalogue for Belts
and Leggings submit-
ted on request. Mail
orders carefully filled.



The Reveille Legging Co.
Leavenworth, Kansas



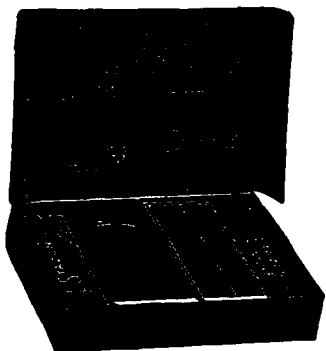
ARMS AND THE MAN

It is the human element that counts—the same weapon in the hands of two different men will give widely divergent results. The good shooter takes the utmost care of his arms; he probably uses Chloroil. Chloroil Solvent is the only sure preventor of after-corrosion; because it is scientifically designed to do that very thing. Since it is chemically correct, only one application is necessary for a thorough cleaning and there is no "sweating out." It is harmless and can be left on indefinitely.

Chloroil comes packaged in the attractive Stazon Kit with Stazon Gun Oil, Stazon Gun Grease and Stazon-Rustoff. Everything necessary for the complete care and cleaning in one handy kit. At Post Exchanges or send \$1.00 for the Kit (\$35 for Chloroil alone) direct to

Gun Cleaning Headquarters

Conversion Products Corp.
618 S. Delaware Ave., Phila., Pa.



New Service Uniforms

SWATCHES
and
PRICES
UPON REQUEST

**SIGMUND
EISNER
COMPANY**

Main Office
Red Bank, N. J.



Branch Offices:
126 5th Ave., New York City
451 Mission St., San Francisco
507 Medinah Bldg., Chicago

HORSE-SENSE and HORSEMANSHIP OF TODAY

By
Geoffrey Brooke, D. S. O., M. C.
Lieut. Colonel 16th/5th Lancers

The Journal of The United Service
Institution says of this book:

"This book is wonderful because from cover to cover, it is full of good meat easily digestible without a superfluous word. The photographs are excellent and deserve careful study."

Should be owned by all men who hunt, or play polo, or take any active interest in horses.

Price \$5.00
Book Department
**U. S. Cavalry
Association**
1624 H Street, N. W.
Washington, D. C.

A British Riding Boot For the Service

Created by Master craftsmen, who are trained in the west end of London, the home of the finest riding boot makers in England.

\$35.00

(by Parcel Post prepaid)



which is considerably less per pair than imported custom boots of equal merit.

Hollow trees, \$25.00

LOUIS MARK
143 South Broad Street
PHILADELPHIA, PA.

"Charge It To My Account"

What a satisfaction to be able to
give such a command.

You may do so if you have
established a satisfactory
relationship with a strong
bank. ☞ ☞ ☞

The Riggs National Bank

OF WASHINGTON, D. C.

Resources, Over \$40,000,000

TEITZEL MADE Is Custom Made

Sam
Browne
Belts of
Quality
made from
any of our
leathers to
match your
boots or
puttees
in
Standard
Royal
or
Elite
Hardware



TEITZEL-JONES-DEHNER
BOOT CO., Inc.
WICHITA, KANSAS

Dondero Insignia the Best

Manufacturers
of

MILITARY INSIGNIA
COAT OF ARMS INSIGNIA
CAMPAIGN RIBBONS
MINIATURE MEDALS

Our insignia are plated in 14K Gold
and will stand an acid test.

A. H. DONDERO, INC.
730 Seventeenth Street, N. W.
WASHINGTON, D. C.

This
Checked
Head
Our
Trade
Mark

CAPEWELL HORSE NAILS

Made in all patterns and sizes

Whether you need a Regular,
City, Ice Head—or some other
style—you can find just the nail
you require in the Capewell line.

And Besides

you will find something else
which will please you—Capewell
DRIVING and HOLDING qual-
ities.

There's but one quality in Cape-
well nails whatever size or style
you use and that is—the BEST.

Made by The Leading Horse
Nail Makers of the World

THE
CAPEWELL HORSE NAIL CO.
Hartford, Conn., U. S. A.

POLO GOODS
MALLETS BALLS SADDLES
1925 Catalogue with latest Rules on Request
CHAS. MEURISSE & CO.
4821-23 COTTAGE GROVE AVE.
CHICAGO, ILL.
MEURISSE

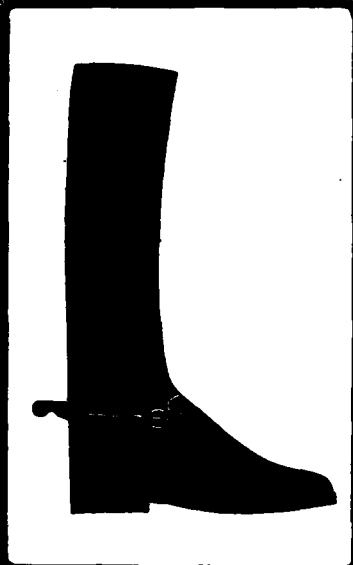
ARABIAN SADDLE HORSES

Suitable for Riding, Driving, Cavalry
With Beauty, Gentleness, Endurance



Year	Entries All Breeds	Distance in Miles	Test	Pounds Carried	Time Hrs. Min.	Prizes Awarded Maynesboro
1913	9	154	Continuous	180	30 40	1st, 3rd, 4th
1914	4	40	"	200	3 38	Stable Test
1918	2	162	"	200	31 5	Stable Test
1919	18	306	Five Days	200	51 26	1st, 3d, 4th
1920	27	306	"	245	52 47	2d, 5th
1921	17	310	"	245	49 4	1st, 3d, 5th
1922	22	300	"	225	45 20	4th
1923	23	300	"	225	45 0	1st, 6th

Winning U. S. Mounted Service Cup
Registered Gen. S. B.: Am. S. B.: Arab S. B.
At Stud Exportable duty free For Sale
MAYNESBORO ARABIAN STUD - Berlin, N.H., U.S.A.



MILITARY
HOLD
HUNTING
HOCKEY
STOCKS
WHIPS
CROPS
KIT BAGS
&
CASES
REPAIRS
ITINERARY
OF U.S.A.
SENT ON
REQUEST

DEANE & CO.
170 N. 2ND ST.
ST. LOUIS, MO.
LONDON, ENGL.

Representatives visit principal Cities and Army Stations.
Itinerary sent on request.

AUTOMOBILE INSURANCE

"For Officers, Warrant Officers, ACTIVE AND RETIRED, and Field Clerks, of the United States Services". Application blanks may be obtained from U. S. Cavalry Association, or

WRITE FOR PARTICULARS

(giving description of your car)

If application sent, enclose \$5.00 Membership Fee to apply on premium. Coverage at cost.

UNITED SERVICES AUTOMOBILE ASSOCIATION

(Formerly U. S. Army Auto Ins. Ass'n)
FORT SAM HOUSTON, TEXAS

Frank J. Krupp

Successor to

Henry Schick & Co.

Army and Navy
Uniforms

1421 F STREET NORTHWEST

Washington, D. C.

CIVILIAN DRESS A SPECIALTY

Instructions in Learning Accurate Pistol Shooting Illustrated

Adopted by the U. S. Marine Corps, 1922

Covers the fundamentals of pistol shooting in concise form and in the Shooters language; points on coaching men; technical description of the Colt's Automatic Pistol, caliber .45, Model of 1911 and a table of percentages for the quick and accurate recording of scores. Single copy, 50 cents.

Ten per cent reduction on ten copies; twenty per cent reduction on twenty-five copies; thirty per cent reduction on fifty copies.

Address your orders to
GY.-SGT. JOHN M. THOMAS
Rifle Range, M.B., Parris Island, S. C.

VOLUME XXXV

OCTOBER 1926

NUMBER 145

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Devoted to the Interests of the Cavalry,
to the Professional Improvement of Its
Officers and Men, and to the Advance-
ment of the Mounted Service Generally

EDITOR

Lieutenant-Colonel W. V. MORRIS, Cavalry

Copyright, 1926, by

The United States Cavalry Association

Published quarterly by the United States Cavalry Association. Editor, Lieutenant-Colonel W. V. Morris, Cavalry. Entered as second-class matter at the post-offices at Washington, D. C., and Baltimore, Md., under the Act of March 3, 1879. Acceptance for mailing at special rate of postage provided for in section 1103, Act of October 3, 1917, authorized May 29, 1920.

Office of Publication, Baltimore, Md. Editorial Office, Washington, D. C.
\$2.50 per year; single copy, 65c. Foreign Postage, 25c Additional

FURTHER BIG REDUCTION

IN PRICES OF STANDARD MILITARY WORKS

We are going out of the book publishing business entirely and must clear our shelves of books on hand.

The following list of books—all in good condition—when exhausted, will be out of print and unobtainable. "A History of Cavalry", especially, is a bargain and a book of lasting value.

The extremely low prices are due to the following grouping, representing odd lots which must be moved regardless of original cost.

GROUP I

TACTICS, Volume I—Infantry
Balck

**CRITICAL STUDY OF GERMAN
TACTICS**
de Pardieu

**INDIVIDUAL AND COMBINED
MILITARY SKETCHING**
Cole and Stuart

AS TO MILITARY TRAINING
Wall

A HISTORY OF CAVALRY
Denison

NIGHT MOVEMENTS
Burnett

MESS OFFICERS ASSISTANT
Holbrook

Regular Retail Price \$12.10
Special price to You \$5.00
Postpaid

GROUP II

TACTICS, Volume I—Infantry
Balck

**CRITICAL STUDY OF GERMAN
TACTICS**

**INDIVIDUAL AND COMBINED
MILITARY SKETCHING**

AS TO MILITARY TRAINING

Regular Retail Price \$5.90

Special Price to You \$2.50
Postpaid

GROUP III

A HISTORY OF CAVALRY

NIGHT MOVEMENTS

MESS OFFICERS ASSISTANT

Regular Retail Price \$6.20

Special Price to You \$3.50
Postpaid

The U. S. Cavalry Association
1624 H Street, N. W.,
Washington, D. C.

Please send Groupto the address below. Check for \$.....
enclosed (or) Request that cost be charged to my account.

CONTENTS FOR OCTOBER, 1926

VOL. XXXV, No. 145

	Page
THE IMPORTANCE OF MODERN CAVALRY AND ITS ROLE AS AFFECTED BY DEVELOPMENTS IN AIRPLANE AND TANK WARFARE.....	487
Colonel H. S. Hawkins (Cavalry), G. S. C.	
WITH THE INDIAN AND THE BUFFALO IN MONTANA.....	500
Brigadier-General Edward J. McClernand.	
CAVALRY IN THE SYRIAN CAMPAIGN.....	512
Transcription from <i>Revue de Cavalerie</i> .	
Captain Royden Williamson, Cavalry.	
A PSYCHOLOGICAL ANALYSIS OF ECCENTRICITY IN ITS EFFECT ON LEADERSHIP AND MORALE.....	522
Major Bertram F. Duckwall, Medical Corps.	
CAVALRY IN MOROCCO.....	531
Lieutenant-Colonel N. E. Margetts (F. A.), G. S. C.	
GAITS OF HORSES.....	538
Captain Fenton S. Jacobs, Cavalry.	
THE SEVENTH CAVALRY AT THE FIFTIETH ANNIVERSARY OF THE BATTLE OF THE LITTLE BIG HORN.....	543
Chaplain George J. McMurphy, 7th Cavalry.	
MILITARY PERSONNEL IN STATE COURTS.....	553
Captain Elbridge Colby, Infantry.	
THE JUNIOR POLO CHAMPIONSHIP.....	559
Major K. S. Bradford.	
MOUNTED MESSENGER RELAYS.....	568
First Lieutenant M. F. Sullivan, Cavalry, D. O. L.	
A SUMMARY OF UNINTELLIGENCE.....	573
EDITORIAL COMMENT.....	577
ARMY POLO—ENDURANCE RIDE—TRAINING COMPETITIONS.	
TOPICS OF THE DAY.....	579
CAVALRY RADIO COMMUNICATION—HORSES FOR PHILIPPINE SERVICE—CAV- ALRY COMBAT PRINCIPLES—ARMY AND NAVY CLUB OF PHILADELPHIA.	
FOREIGN MILITARY NOTES.....	583
THE NATIONAL GUARD.....	585
THE ORGANIZED RESERVES.....	587
NEW BOOKS REVIEWED.....	592
FOREIGN MILITARY JOURNALS.....	595
REGIMENTAL NOTES AND ROSTERS.....	600

The United States Cavalry Association

DESIGN

1. The aim and purpose of the Association shall be to disseminate knowledge of the military art and science, to promote the professional improvement of its members, and to preserve and foster the spirit, the traditions, and the solidarity of the Cavalry of the Army of the United States.

ARTICLE III of the Constitution.

Organized November 9, 1885

OFFICERS

President

Major General MALIN CRAIG

Vice-President

Colonel HAMILTON S. HAWKINS, 3d Cavalry.

Secretary and Treasurer

Lieutenant Colonel W. V. MORRIS, Cavalry.

EXECUTIVE COUNCIL

Colonel F. S. FOLTZ, U. S. A. Retired
Colonel T. A. ROBERTS, Cavalry
Colonel L. B. BALLANTYNE, 102d Cavalry
Colonel W. M. CONNELL, (Cavalry) G. S. C.
Colonel JOHN PHILIP HILL, Cavalry Reserve
Lt. Col. DANIEL VAN VOORHIS, Cavalry
Lt. Col. A. B. COXE, Cavalry
Major A. R. CHAFFEE, 3d Cavalry

MEMBERSHIP AND SUBSCRIPTION TO THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Membership shall be of three classes, which, together with the conditions of eligibility therefor, are as follows:

- (1) Active, for which all general officers of the Army of the United States and all commissioned officers of the Cavalry of the Army of the United States shall be eligible.
- (2) Associate, for which all present and former commissioned, warrant, and non-commissioned officers of honorable record of the military or naval services of the United States not included in class I shall be eligible.
- (3) Honorary.

Application for membership, showing present or former military status, should be addressed to the Secretary, U. S. Cavalry Association, 1624 H Street N. W., Washington, D. C., and be accompanied by remittance of dues for one year.

There is no initiation fee. Annual dues, payable in advance, \$2.50, which includes subscription to the Cavalry Journal, 60% thereof being so designated.

Any person or organization not eligible for membership may subscribe for the JOURNAL at the regular subscription rates of \$2.50 per year. Canadian and foreign postage, 25 cents additional.

Members and subscribers are requested to give prompt notice in advance of change of address.



MAJOR-GENERAL GEORGE STONEMAN, U. S. V.

General Stoneman was the third Chief of Cavalry, having been appointed Chief of the Cavalry Bureau in Washington on July 28, 1863, and relieved therefrom January 2, 1864. He was succeeded by General James H. Wilson. The Bureau was abolished in 1866, from which time the Cavalry was without a Chief until the appointment of Major-General W. A. Holbrook in 1920.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Vol. XXXV

OCTOBER, 1926

No. 145

The Importance of Modern Cavalry and Its Role as Affected by Developments in Airplane and Tank Warfare

By

Colonel H. S. HAWKINS (Cavalry), G. S. C.

AT the present time a renewed interest in national defense has been excited throughout the country and manifested by the press by reason of the questions under investigation in connection with the Air Services of the Army and Navy.

In the course of these investigations a great deal has been said about the various arms of the service in addition to the air service. The infantry, the artillery, the engineers, the chemical warfare service, and those auxiliaries to infantry and cavalry—the tanks and the armored cars.

During the past ten years all new inventions and modern appliances of a mechanical nature have been given much publicity, and the modern boy in playing at soldiers is more likely to think of airplanes and tanks than of the old reliables, infantry, cavalry and artillery.

The people like novelties and fanciful toys, especially those of a mechanical nature. They like to think of armies made up of such. But we venture to predict that the fighting man, not the fighting machine, will always continue to be the principal means of making warfare.

During the great war so much was written about the new and mechanical weapons and the modern electrical and other appliances that if a man had awakened from a long sleep like Rip Van Winkle and had then read in amazement of the war's going on, he might readily have believed that the war was fought by the fliers in the air and the switch-board operators on the ground, the old-fashioned fighting man being entirely absent. Yet the old-fashioned fighting man, fighting with weapons in his hands, was and ever will be the chief and dominant factor.

The ordinary novelist of today when endowing his hero with especially attractive and manly qualities, including that of having fought for his country during the great war, invariably selects the air service, and

lets us know that the wonderful young man was an aviator. Nothing less. To describe his part in the war as having been an infantry lieutenant commanding a platoon would not suit the author at all. It is not spectacular enough. It does not excite the imagination of either the author or the reading public. Plain soldiers do not appeal. We must have something more novel. Our young person must be more in the limelight, and incidentally must gain his notoriety by more spectacular if much cheaper means.

Personally, the writer has always regarded the infantry platoon commander, representing a class, as the real hero of the war on the western front. The air man went out alone or possibly with several others to make a dash, with no responsibility for the lives of others nor for their success in accomplishing perilous and important tasks, and then returned to a luxurious bath, a good meal on a white table cloth and a clean, warm bed. But the infantry platoon commander held the lives of forty or fifty men in his hand. He was responsible for their instruction, their discipline, their physical welfare, their spirit and courage and cheerfulness under incessant strain, in the presence of death and mutilation, for every moment of many hours, days and weeks at a time. He was their leader in long exhausting marches, in every enterprise, and finally in battle where all eyes were upon him and where his leadership meant life or death, success or failure. Truly, no young man could have had more intoxicating moments, more thrills or more satisfaction in the leadership of men. We refer of course to the competent platoon commander. Without him no battles could be won, no enterprise successful. He was and will ever be the real soldier. His sacrifices were greater than those made by any other class. He was the greatest hero in the army. His exploits were unheralded and no publicity was given to his name, nor was he ever known as an "ace."

There is no position in the army that demands so much of a young officer as that of a lieutenant of the line who has the supreme experience of commanding a platoon of soldiers in training and in battle.

The public interest is now centered on the air service. Some enthusiasts expect airplanes to take the place of several of the older branches of the army. It has been stated that, among these, the cavalry is to be supplanted by airplanes.

Now, the importance of aircraft in our national defense is admitted by all. It is only its relative degree of importance, what it can or cannot do, whether it should replace this or that arm, etc., that is argued and made a subject of contention.

This article is written on the subject of cavalry, and has nothing to do with the arguments about the air service, except in so far as to explain that the air service and the cavalry do not conflict. Neither is trying to assume the role of the other.

The statements recently made to the effect that airplanes would take over the role of cavalry, because airplanes instead of cavalry have become the eyes and ears of an army, are misleading and must be corrected.

It is true that airplanes are now depended upon for the greater part of distant reconnaissance. But cavalry must do the close reconnaissance. And even in distant reconnaissance the cavalry must take its share, because reconnaissance from the air cannot be depended upon when visibility is poor, or during night movements, or to obtain negative information, or to gain information by taking prisoners, or to ascertain the real strength of enemy troops in wooded or mountainous country. Cavalry, unfortunately, must still be used for these fatiguing tasks, though airplanes may assist it or take over the task entirely when conditions are favorable. This is well understood in the air service and in the cavalry. The more of this work done by the air service the better for the cavalry, which can be thus spared for its principal role.

Even if we suppose that airplanes are to take the place of cavalry in reconnaissance, which as shown above is not the case, the air service would not on that account usurp the principal role of cavalry. Reconnaissance is a role of secondary importance. It is a very important use of cavalry, but not the most important.

Before describing the way in which cavalry is put to its most useful purpose and some of its secondary roles, let us make the following brief statement.

Cavalry thought, study, discovery and invention, has kept abreast of the times in this country, and there are some developments in this line as well as in the air service or other new organizations.

There are several fallacies commonly existing about cavalry. A very common idea is that cavalry of today fights and maneuvers as the cavalry of yesterday. The average person visualizes a cavalry attack as a charge in close ranks, men riding knee to knee, sabers and lances flashing and rank succeeding rank in solid array. Such formations are naturally knocked to pieces by rifle and machine gun fire. We do not use them. The cavalry of today is as heavily armed with machine guns and automatic weapons as any other branch of the service. Instead of the lance the mounted trooper carries an automatic pistol, and the ease with which he is taught to shoot from a horse at close range is amazing. The saber is used if the pistol goes dry. Mounted advances against the enemy are supported in the most modern way by machine guns and artillery. The troopers in a mounted attack ride as skirmishers and not in the old way pictured in old prints and paintings. The amazing invulnerability of mounted skirmishers, especially when supported by fire, will be referred to later on. As far as European cavalry is concerned it is a new idea.

What then is this principal role of cavalry? The answer is to par-

ticipate in battle with the other arms. The skilful general will hold the greater part of his cavalry to strike at the sensitive point of the enemy when the right moment arrives. All other roles are secondary to this. It was thus that Frederick the Great and Napoleon used their cavalry. Since the time of Napoleon great changes have taken place in the means by which attacks are made. But the principle remains the same. Every campaign wherein this principle has been forgotten marks a decline in the history of cavalry.

The secondary or minor roles of cavalry are: Reconnaissance, counter reconnaissance or screening, covering other forces from surprises or annoyance, filling gaps in battle lines between large units, seizing and holding important points until they can be occupied in force by infantry, delaying actions and harassing the enemy columns, assisting retreating and hard pressed infantry to extricate itself (as the British cavalry did so well during the retreat from Mons), raids and pursuits.

The air service assists the cavalry in the performance of these missions. But, in none of them, including reconnaissance, can the airplanes replace cavalry. However, as before stated, what is known as distant exploration in reconnaissance is to be largely taken over by aviation, thus relieving cavalry of that duty which has always been so exhausting and saving it for its more important work in battle.

To return to the great and most important role of cavalry. We shall imagine the general commanding an army holding his cavalry as a mobile reserve, ready to be flung into the battle at a well judged moment. What are the situations which would justify this use of cavalry in battle? And how can cavalry advance in the face of the modern rapid fire weapons?

We shall answer the former question first, and then explain why we believe that cavalry can perform these roles under modern conditions.

There are several situations in which the cavalry can be used in its greatest role. One of them is where the ground and other conditions offer the opportunity to attack the enemy in flank or rear at the moment when he is most heavily engaged. It may be when our attack is being pushed the hardest, or when, on the other hand, the enemy's attack is launched in full force against us. In either case an unexpected blow delivered by a large mass of cavalry in flank or rear may turn a stubborn resistance or attack on the part of the enemy into a disastrous defeat or even a rout. Just as a little break in the bank of a river in flood may widen with startling rapidity and loose the whole devastating flood upon the farms and towns nearby, so the cavalry attack may start the giving way of a small part of the enemy line and cause a small local success to widen into a great victory.

Of course every army attempts to guard itself against such an attack. This is often done by the opposing cavalry. In the great retreat

from Mons by the French and British armies, the Germans attempted to use their cavalry in this way. But it was prevented by two causes. First, the British cavalry protected the retreating infantry and frustrated such attempts as the Germans made. Second, the German cavalry was not massed properly for this role and was not, moreover, trained to perform it. It must be understood that by the term *masses of cavalry* we do not mean cavalry drawn up in solid masses with closed ranks and men riding knee to knee to the charge. Mounted attacks can no longer be made in that way. Such tactics had become useless as much as sixty years ago. But, an attack formed by deployed lines of mounted skirmishers, wave following upon wave, and supported and accompanied by machine guns and artillery, is a most terrible and disconcerting thing to face, especially if it comes in flank and by surprise. The German cavalry never attempted such an attack. They had never conceived of such a thing. And their mounted troops were armed only with lances or swords and not with the murderous automatic pistols that our men carry and are trained to use.

By masses of cavalry we simply mean cavalry in great and important numbers led by one commander and ready to strike at the vulnerable point.

Another situation wherein a mass of cavalry may be used for its principal role is found in the break-through, or hole, that may be made in the enemy's lines by the attacks of our infantry and other forces. The opportunity then exists to exploit the success by pushing all available troops into the hole and widening the breach just as the waters of a raging river pour through and widen a small breach in the dam or levee and cause a devastating flood. A large mass of cavalry is here indispensable if a real success is to be made.

When the Germans made their great attack in March and April of 1918, and succeeded in causing a great hole in the Allied lines, separating the British and French armies, this so-called break-through had been effected, and it only needed more troops to pour through to widen the breach and turn the success into a decisive victory. But the effort had used up most of their available infantry, and before reserves could be found and brought up to push into the breach, it had been closed by the arrival of French and British infantry and cavalry. Had the Germans had at Ludendorf's disposal a cavalry corps, properly led, equipped as cavalry is now equipped with artillery and numerous machine guns, tanks and airplanes, and trained in making mounted attacks in extended order, it could have swept into this breach, overcoming all the small resistances that fragments of the British army were organizing, and turned the victory into a rout or at least a permanent separation of the Allied armies. The French re-enforcements that were coming to close the breach could have been attacked at the heads of their columns; their truck trains and railroad trains, loaded with soldiers, could have been stopped or checked at an appreciable distance from their destination; the Germans could have

been afforded the time to gather reserve infantry and bring it up to fill the breach; consternation, dismay and demoralization might have ensued, and the American army might have found itself in France too late. Such a cavalry corps would have been worth its weight in gold to the German army. It did not exist because the war had already lasted a long time, horses had become scarce in Germany, cavalymen had been turned into infantry to man the trenches, and all the remaining cavalry was being used to hold the extended eastern front.

In contrast to this, General Allenby with an army of approximately seven infantry and four cavalry divisions in Palestine had effected a similar breach in the Turkish lines, and then poured his cavalry through and brought about the most effective, decisive and complete victory that is recorded of modern armies of such magnitude.

Still another situation indicating the use of cavalry in its principal role may be found as follows. Let us suppose our army finds itself opposed by an enemy who has taken position on rising ground, with flanks protected, and a foreground that is flat and devoid of cover for advancing foot troops. To attack such a position will cause ruinous losses to the foot troops exposed, while moving slowly forward, to the fire of artillery and machine guns over a long period of time, and with no shelter of any kind afforded by the ground. The general now decides to employ his cavalry by surprise. He selects a key point or a point in the enemy lines where he believes a successful attack will cause the whole line to crumble. He brings up a large cavalry force, deploys it as mounted skirmishers in three or four successive lines, about 200 yards distance between lines, hides it behind his infantry as long as possible, perhaps using the cover of darkness for this purpose. Artillery and machine guns fire upon the hostile position as in an infantry attack. Then, when the enemy is expecting an infantry advance, instead comes these thin lines of swiftly galloping horsemen, armed with automatic pistols, sabers and rifles, and accompanied by machine guns to hold the captured ground until the infantry can be brought up to take it over.

The open ground is crossed in a few minutes, fifteen to twenty times as fast as the foot troops would have done it. The position is overwhelmed by the flood of horsemen, some leaping to the ground to come to grips with the enemy at close quarters, using pistols against enemy bayonets, some galloping on to the enemy rear and his artillery positions. In the meantime the infantry has started its advance as soon as the tails of the horses of the rear wave of cavalymen have passed them. They arrive in the position and take it over to defend it or to push on as circumstances may dictate.

Such a position may sometimes be taken in this way with only a small fraction of the losses that would have been incurred by the infantry acting alone. It is here a case of surprise, rapidity of action and co-

operation with infantry, and, of course, with the support of artillery and machine guns.

Of course, other means of attack may also have been employed, such as tanks and airplanes. The co-operation of these instruments of war with cavalry will be referred to later.

It must be remembered also that cavalry can fight dismounted. Whenever (after a mounted advance has brought the troops to a covered position as far forward as possible), the ground or accessory defences of the enemy, such as wire entanglements, prevent the further advance of mounted troops, the cavalry dismounts and continues the attack by the same means and weapons that are employed by infantry. But, as General Allenby points out, it has usually been found by experience that a dismounted fire fight is more costly than a well timed mounted attack, even over serious obstacles.

Now, to answer the second question. How can cavalry attack mounted in the face of modern fire?

In the first place, it has already been pointed out that cavalry no longer attacks by means of the old-fashioned charge in close ranks. This kind of a charge may, however, be employed in sudden meetings with the enemy by small units of cavalry having only a short distance to charge. Or, again, it may be employed in the pursuit of routed and demoralized enemy troops. So it is still practiced by small units such as squadrons, troops, platoons and squads.

But, for the most part, mounted attacks are practiced only in extended order, in successive waves, and with the support of machine guns and artillery and perhaps co-operating infantry with all their means of fire. This supporting fire holds down the enemy fire, and the swift moving lines of horsemen close rapidly with the enemy from a direction at a considerable angle from the line of fire of the supporting troops. Having arrived at grips with the enemy the horsemen fight mounted or leap to earth and engage the hostile troops in hand to hand combat. Wave upon wave follow until the enemy is overcome or assistance comes from other supporting troops.

It is a notable fact that no mounted attack made in this way failed during the World War. The losses were sometimes great, but never as great as might have been expected in a dismounted attack under the same conditions. That such an attack can fail is, of course, conceded. But any other form of attack can fail. The recorded failures of cavalry attacks are all conspicuous examples of the futility of the old-fashioned form of charge. It was only the British cavalry that during the war discovered these principles. In Palestine and Mesopotamia such forms of attack were uniformly successful. In France also, notable examples are found, but it was only toward the close of the war, especially during the great German break-through of 1918. Not until that time, and then only

in small units and apparently by accident, did the British cavalry in France learn to properly handle their opportunities. The great cavalry service of General Allenby's cavalry in the first months of the war in France was of a different nature to that under discussion, and principally in the minor roles already mentioned and referred to as delaying actions and assisting infantry to extricate itself when hard pressed. This service was, however, very important and is referred to by Marshal French as having saved the army.

But the ability of cavalry to advance in several lines of mounted skirmishers in the face of modern fire, and to overthrow the hostile foot troops, at least for the moment, was amply demonstrated. The immunity from great losses astounded those who had believed that a horseman could not live under modern fire. A great mass of evidence to this fact has been collected and is available to anyone who wishes to examine it and to know the truth regarding cavalry action during the war. It is still disputed by opponents of the cavalry arm, but in no case by those who have taken the trouble to inform themselves and wish to take an unprejudiced view. We are all very much swayed in our opinions by preconceived notions or ideas or old impressions or teachings. Our minds repulse new truths even when they are presented to us in unmistakable and convincing forms. But it should be obvious to all that mounted skirmishers galloping at the rate, say of eighteen to twenty miles per hour, will suffer exposure to a far lesser number of bullets in passing over an exposed piece of ground than a dismounted skirmisher, weighted down with pack and ammunition and rifle, and moving at the rate of one mile an hour. And such has been found in fact to be the case.

The great role of cavalry is, therefore, to act in special situations at special moments in battle to carry a position, or make a penetration or hole for much tried infantry, or to help the infantry in the exploitation of a break-through that it has already made. Co-operation with infantry is the key note. No great and decisive victory can be won without this co-operation of cavalry with infantry.

Amongst the new implements of war none are more interesting than tanks and armored cars. There are some tank enthusiasts who believe that a great tank corps should be organized and that it will become a dominant arm, gradually replacing infantry. But, as in the case of airplanes, there are limitations to what tanks can do, and nothing has been developed yet to lead any thoughtful and fair-minded student of war to doubt that the foot soldier, the fighting "doughboy," will be, for some time to come, the main reliance of this country in war on land.

The primary use of tanks is to precede infantry in the attack or difficult and well fortified positions. Great holes are made in the enemy wire entanglements through which the infantry can follow. Hostile machine gun emplacements or nests are discovered and the guns silenced.

The infantry following is thus able to advance, mop up the position and hold it.

But, if the tanks can advance ahead of the infantry, why cannot they do the job alone? First, because if there was no infantry following the tanks, the enemy would run forward a lot of cannon to fire by direct fire at close range at the tanks which would be very vulnerable to this fire. But if we have infantry following the tanks these enemy guns would be subject to capture and would be too far forward to be able to fire effectively on the advancing infantry. Again, without supporting infantry the hostile infantry could crouch in its cover till the tanks arrived and then put into action numerous small cannon like the 37 mm. or one-pounders. But if our infantry follows our tanks the hostile infantry cannot do this, and is approached under cover of the tanks and then overcome in close combat.

Second, the tanks cannot hold the captured ground. Because, after their attack is over and they cease to move, the enemy artillery would soon destroy them. That is one reason why troops with rifles and machine guns that are able to dig in and protect themselves against fire are necessary.

So it is that tanks cannot be used alone. They must have infantry or cavalry to support them. In reality they assist the other troops in getting forward. That is their role. And they, as well as other troops, must be supported by artillery.

Then, also, tanks have their mechanical limitations. Over rough ground they frequently break down. The supply of water, gas and oil necessary for an attack over a comparatively short distance is enormous, and is a serious limitation to their prolonged action in battle. The strain on the men operating the tanks and suffering the concussions from their own guns, as well as from those fired at them, is very severe, and cannot be suffered for long periods of time. Therefore, tanks must be followed by troops.

Tanks can be used in front of cavalry as they are in front of infantry. In front of cavalry they can move faster and will not be subject so long to the hostile fire of cannon and other heavy caliber weapons. But tanks do not replace cavalry. They assist.

Now, the tanks have already been shown to be intended primarily for the duty of preceding infantry or cavalry. Why, then, cannot they perform this duty in the case described instead of cavalry? Well, in trench warfare situations with ground long occupied and torn up with shell holes, and with all sorts of accessory defenses, such as barbed wire, and if the distance to be traversed is short, tanks would do better than cavalry. But there is a difference in situations.

One situation may demand tanks and another cavalry for this duty. Cavalry is used for this role only when the infantry cannot get forward

without this help in addition to the help from any available tanks. Tanks preceding infantry must lead it by only a few yards and hold their speed down to the rate of the infantry advance. Otherwise the shelter and fire support provided by the tanks is lost to the infantry and the support of the infantry is lost to the tanks. Cavalry will move much faster, go farther ahead of the infantry and hold the captured ground much longer. Cavalry is thus not tied so closely to the infantry, and is used in those situations where a longer advance and a more rapid progress are necessary and desirable. If tanks are available they may sometimes be used in such cases to precede the cavalry.

Tanks operate with cavalry on other cavalry missions. When they are available they may have important work assigned to them, such as attacking and furnishing fire support along one line of direction while the cavalry attacks in another; opposing enemy tanks that may attack the cavalry in awkward situations; or preceding cavalry as already described.

Certainly, if we imagine a regiment of infantry or cavalry marching along a road, and a hostile tank suddenly emerging from cover and bearing down on the regiment, the regiment will, if armed with nothing but rifles and machine guns, be routed or forced to disperse. But, of course, we do not propose to let regiments of troops move about where they are likely to encounter tanks without adequate heavy caliber weapons for their protection. Infantry regiments are now equipped with certain forms of light cannon to use against tanks or hostile machine gun emplacements. Cavalry will also have some light guns for this purpose, and the ability of cavalry to disperse rapidly into small groups and re-assemble at another point will often aid cavalry to avoid the attacks of hostile tanks if the heavy caliber weapons supplied for this purpose should prove inadequate in any special situation. Sometimes the protection against enemy tanks will lie in our having tanks of our own to oppose them.

But tanks alone cannot replace infantry for combat purposes, nor cavalry for that or any other of the numerous services expected of this arm. Tanks are a new and additional means of attack. They assist, but do not replace.

It is obvious that armored cars can be of immense service to cavalry in reconnaissance and with advance guards. But good roads are necessary for their employment. They were employed during the great war and their role with cavalry is pretty well understood now. Unfortunately, we are not developing any improved types. At least we are doing it very slowly on account of the great cost of such vehicles.

But now, to return to airplanes, General Weygand, famous in France as Foch's chief of staff and as one of the most brilliant soldiers of Europe, is quoted recently as having said that the marriage (as he called it) of aviation and cavalry would bring forth very important and brilliant re-

sults. General Allenby, the very brilliant commander of British forces of all arms in France and Palestine, has said, "the value of cavalry increases with the breadth of vision bestowed by air craft." In other words, with the help of the information given to the cavalry by means of airplanes, cavalry will know more surely where to go, will not follow so many blind trails, and will be able to plan more definitely how to strike by surprise.

When it comes to the great role of cavalry, to strike at the opportune moment at the sensitive point of the enemy in a battle of combined arms, the aviation that is assigned to large cavalry units can be of the utmost importance. Not only will its vision guide the cavalry in its route to a line of departure, that is, a jump off line, but also, during the attack, the airplanes will bombard the enemy from overhead, thus helping the supporting fire elements in distracting the attention of the enemy and keeping him crouching in his cover while the thin lines of horsemen are galloping towards him. In order to obtain that desirable combination of dismounted fire action with mounted advance, it is necessary to have the direction of fire as nearly as possible at right angles to the line of direction of the mounted attack. This is sometimes difficult; but with airplanes this support by fire can come from overhead. Great assistance may be rendered in this way to the cavalry attack, its measure being dependent upon how well the combination between cavalry and airplanes is worked out. Of course, cavalry can be aided greatly in its minor roles as well as in its principal roles. And it is obvious that of these minor roles reconnaissance is that one which derives the most benefit from the assistance of aircraft.

It must be understood that aircraft units must be assigned to large cavalry units for use in the cavalry missions, and these are different and under different control from those independent aircraft units sent out by army headquarters for purposes of exploration or for any other employment.

Quite contrary to a very popular misconception, cavalry was used extensively on every front during the great war. Just before the great Russian debacle the Russian army was employing 50 cavalry divisions on the Eastern front. Germany and Austria had on this same front 20 cavalry divisions. And in other theaters of war the British employed 7 cavalry divisions, the Belgians 2, the French 10, the Bulgarians 2, the Rumanians 2, the Serbians 1, the Italians 4, and the Turks several. In addition to cavalry organized in divisions there were numerous cavalry brigades, regiments and squadrons employed in every army as divisional and corps cavalry. France and Germany alone had more than 600 squadrons employed outside of cavalry divisions.

It is remarkable to note the assurance with which some persons (who should be better informed) have disparaged the work of cavalry during the great war or freely predict the decline of its usefulness in future. It

came to the writer's attention that one of these persons recently had stated in a lecture that in the last one hundred years there was not a case of a successful mounted attack by cavalry against foot troops. Whereas, the writer could name more than forty cases (in the latest and greatest of wars) of successful mounted attacks against foot troops in which cavalry commands consisting of from one squadron to a brigade have been engaged. Indeed, there were not more than six or eight cases of failure, a truly remarkable fact.

And when we consider the fact that cavalry can fight dismounted as well as mounted, that its mounted maneuvers may place it in advantageous places to employ its fire power, that its mounted attacks (not boot-to-boot charges) have proved so successful and promise with the proper employment of modern fire power to be even more so, its future usefulness should be almost unbounded. Provided, however, that we see clearly and provide our army with a cavalry numerous and well trained.

Every great general of the war has expressed his belief in the future brilliant role of cavalry. It is only the lesser individuals who refuse to be informed, close their eyes and choose to doubt.

No longer ago than September, 1925, the Bolshevik Russian Government mobilized four armies for maneuvers. They have had great experience of war, and to our astonishment we find that each of the four armies, as they called them, was composed of approximately one or two infantry divisions and four cavalry divisions.

Among the many instances of cavalry action during the war which are convincing as to the value of cavalry and the feasibility and possibilities of the mounted attack under modern conditions, is the attack on Beersheba in Palestine, October 31, 1917. The Turks were entrenched around Beersheba with its water supply, and it was necessary to the British attacking force that they enter the town that day because they had no water after their long march of approach across the desert. Unless the attack had succeeded that day it would have been necessary to have retraced their march in search of water, and this would have amounted to a disaster. Without water they could not have waited for the morrow to resume the attack with the chance of still further delay and utter prostration of thirsty men and animals.

The infantry division in front of the town succeeded in carrying the outer defenses, and then was held up under fire. It could do no more that day. A cavalry brigade attacked dismounted against the rear of the town and after some progress was held up by the fire of machine guns and artillery. The 4th Australian Light Horse Brigade found itself between the infantry division on its left and the dismounted cavalry brigade on its right, both unable to advance farther. It was growing late. Something had to be done. Orders were received for the brigade to attack. The brigadier in command was reminded of the water situation and the im-

perative necessity of entering the town before nightfall. He was convinced that a dismounted attack would be held up as the others had been. He decided to attack mounted in three lines of mounted skirmishers. Although opposed by artillery and machine guns and infantry in trenches, the attack was successful, and with very little loss the troopers, supported by fire of their own machine guns, galloped over the Turks and their trenches and into the town to the amazement of both the enemy and their own supporting troops. The leading lines of horsemen had galloped through and over the first lines of defense and attacked the enemy reserves. The succeeding lines on reaching the trenches had leaped from their horses to the ground and fought and overcome the Turks with their rifles. A reserve regiment followed and galloped into the town and secured the wells. The mounted attack had taken the town and its water supply, captured more than 50 officers and more than 1,000 men, a number of field artillery guns and machine guns, a quantity of supplies; and the brigade then held the town against counter attack that night until relieved early in the morning by the infantry and cavalry that had been attacking in front and rear during the day.

This is only one of many examples of the use of cavalry in its principal role—to participate in battle with the other arms. On a greater scale could be cited the work of the four British cavalry divisions in Palestine in September, 1918, or the Italian cavalry in the battle of Vittorio Veneto in October, 1918, or the Polish and Bolshevik cavalry in 1920.

But the action of cavalry is so varied and the instances so numerous that it would take volumes to describe them. Cavalry is of no value in those situations of stabilized positions, stalemate and trench warfare that prevailed for three years on the Western Front. But the moment a great rupture is made by one or the other of the opponents and movement commences, that army which has failed to provide itself with and to maintain a numerous cavalry is certain to regret it.

We can never hope to terminate a campaign by reason of a great and decisive victory without the aid of a numerous cavalry. Cavalry more than ever before is indispensable. Machine guns aid cavalry. Tanks aid cavalry. Airplanes aid cavalry. Trucks aid cavalry. And these modern appliances in the hands of our enemies will make our quickly moving cavalry more necessary than ever before on the battlefield. The supporting fire of modern quick firing weapons has made it possible to do things with cavalry that were not dreamed of a few years ago.

The combination of airplanes, tanks and cavalry will give to our leaders of the future the greatest opportunity for the employment of genius.

With The Indian and The Buffalo In Montana

By

Brigadier-General EDWARD J. MCCLERNAND

IN the autumn of 1870 I joined the Second Cavalry as a graduate from West Point, and in compliance with the provisions of the order assigning the members of my class to their several regiments, I reported at the Headquarters of mine, then at Omaha Barracks, Nebraska.

While the Headquarters and two battalions, as the squadrons were then called, were thus located within, or near, the confines of civilization, the third was serving at Fort Ellis in far-off Montana, where I was directed to report. Two classmates, Schofield and Jerome, en route to Ellis, met me at Omaha.

Quite a number of the members of our class had already passed through Omaha, en route to their various stations, and had been cordially entertained by the late Captain William P. Clark, who was then adjutant of the Second Cavalry, and by other gay spirits of the same regiment and the Ninth Infantry. The hospitality inaugurated for our preceding classmates continued to flow in our honor, and the post was indeed a merry place. I am inclined to think the Department Commander, General Augur, who resided at the Barracks, thought the feasting and good cheer for the class of '70 was continuing too long, for one day when we had proceeded to join, and gotten only as far as the town, we met the General on the street, whereupon he said he supposed we intended to start that day, and

Brigadier-General Edward J. McClernand, retired, who died February 9, 1926, was born at Jacksonville, Illinois, December 29, 1848. He was the son of Major-General John A. McClernand, who commanded the 13th Army Corps in the Civil War.

General McClernand entered West Point in 1866, and upon graduation was assigned to the Second Cavalry. He served with great distinction during the Indian campaigns of the "Seventies," and was brevetted a First Lieutenant "For gallantry in pursuit of Indians, and in actions against them at Bear Paw Mountains, Montana, September 30, 1877," and received the Congressional Medal of Honor "For most distinguished gallantry in action against Nez Perce Indians."

1898 he was in Cuba, serving as Adjutant-General to General Shafter in the Santiago Campaign, and was recommended for a brevet "For gallantry in action against the Spanish forces at Santiago, Cuba, July 1, 1898," for which deed he later received the Silver Star Citation.

After the Santiago Campaign, General McClernand served in the Philippines as Colonel of the 44th U. S. Infantry, volunteers. He was Chief-of-Staff of the Department of the Missouri at Omaha, Nebraska, in March, 1906, and later the same year was on duty as military attache with the Japanese Army.

In 1906 he commanded the 1st Cavalry at Fort Clark, Texas. He then served at Rock Island Arsenal, Illinois, as President of the Cavalry Equipment Board. He was retired as Brigadier-General in December, 1912.

bade us good-bye. We replied that such had been our intention, but there was not sufficient time to make the necessary preparations. We were then five blocks from our hotel, which was as far from the depot. The General drew his watch and very politely, but with much positiveness, said, "Young gentlemen, you have an abundance of time, you have an hour." The hint was taken, our trunks packed with more haste than care and the depot was reached none too soon.



A Group at Fort Laramie, Wyoming, in 1866.

General Augur, Department Commander when the author reported at Omaha Barracks, is at the right. Others from left to right are: Generals A. H. Terry, W. S. Harney (whose discipline is referred to by General McClernand), W. T. Sherman, a Sioux squaw, Generals N. G. Taylor and S. F. Tappan. This was a commission sent from Washington to secure from Red Cloud's Indians the authority to construct three forts, i. e. Connor, Phil Kearny and C. F. Smith. Although Red Cloud refused permission for the latter two, the government built them. The result was the Fetterman Massacre, which took place outside Fort Phil Kearny, in December, 1866, in which 81 whites were killed. Before two years had passed, Indian activities led to the abandonment of all three forts by the government.

Many of our newly made friends accompanied us to the train. To these we said good-bye, and turned our faces and our thoughts to our future and unknown home. When I say unknown, I mean not only to ourselves, but nearly so to our friends at Omaha Barracks. No map could be found showing the location of Fort Ellis, which was generally,

and properly, supposed to be near the headwaters of the Missouri River. No one offered any more definite information, and with this we were forced to be content.

Our journey along the Union Pacific Railroad to Ogden, its western terminus, was novel and interesting. The army officers whom we met at the different stations thought we were en route to a wild and mysterious land, roamed over by numerous savage tribes of Indians. In the possession of youth and health, this ignorance of Montana only increased our desire to reach it.

A Stage Coach Journey

Thirty miles northwest of Ogden at a place called Corinne, a station on the Central Pacific Railroad, we left the railway intending to take a stage-coach on the following day, and late in the afternoon saw the Montana coach arrive. It turned the corner near our hotel with the horses at a full gallop, and the air made merry with the crack of the driver's whip. I learned afterwards that this speed was attained only while passing through a village. Doubtless the autocrat of the ribbons imagined he increased his importance thereby among the villagers.

Corinne, in the days of which we speak, was not a pretty town, but it was a lively one; made so by drivers called bull-whackers, or mule-skinners, according as they blistered with the long whips they carried, the hide of the bull or the mule, and by gamblers and toughs generally. All night the noise of merrymaking as well as of quarrelling went on; still further enlivened every little while by some rowdy practicing with his revolver. As the walls of my hotel were only thin pine boards, I managed to while away part of a nearly sleepless night by calculating the chances of a bullet's coming in my direction.

The morning found us up bright and early, making our final preparations for a stage ride of more than five hundred miles. Observing, with some displeasure, that the coach had not been dusted out since its arrival on the previous evening, I called the attention of one of the guards to the supposed omission, when he turned upon me with a look of profound contempt and muttering something about my being the worst "tenderfoot" (a name given on the Plains to newcomers from the East) he ever saw, quietly entered the stage and, with his ugly, sawed off, double-barreled shot-gun, placed himself so as to occupy the entire front seat, usually considered the best. It was my first lesson in frontier life, but it began to dawn upon me that my ways were not those of the far west, and as the people there seemed to be rather set in their manners and customs, I concluded it would be the part of wisdom to somewhat alter my own. Fortunately, the coach was not crowded; the pompous driver, three bragging guardsmen and three "tenderfeet" constituting the crew and passenger list.

The road through Idaho was dusty, and the country uninviting, but

on crossing from the west to the east, the main range of the Rocky Mountains at a point called Pleasant Valley, owing to a depression on the mountain top, we beheld the grass covered hills and fertile valleys of Montana. Passing here on another occasion, I was amused by a fellow-passenger, a Jew, who, all the way up the mountain kept urging the driver to "whoop 'em up," referring to the horses, while we continued at a snail's pace the long ascent. After reaching the summit the horses were given their heads and the whip and we descended the steep grade at a furious gait, whereupon the Jew, clinging as best he could to the sides of the coach, called out, "Hold up, driver, hold up!" "Why," replied the latter, "I thought you told me to 'whoop 'em up'?" "So I did," said the Jew, "but I didn't say to whoop them down."

No account of the stage ride from Corinne to Montana in 1870 would be complete without a word about the relay and eating stations. The four horses were changed every ten or fifteen miles, the distance between stations varying somewhat with the nature of the road, and the location of water. The buildings were nearly all constructed of rough logs, and erected in the most primitive way. Where food was served, one end of the cabin was assigned as a kitchen and eating room, while the other was used as a stable, the dividing wall between the two being of the most flimsy material. Meals were served three times a day, and a half hour allowed for each. The breakfast hour varied from 5 to 9 A. M. and supper from 5 to 10 P. M., according to the location of the particular station, with dinner sandwiched in between without any apparent endeavor to divide the hours equally. The menu was simple, but not good. The frying pan seemed to be a favorite utensil with every cook, while the amount of grease supplied was enough to eat up all the profits derived from economies practiced elsewhere. Perhaps my experience on one occasion will suffice to give a general idea of the food furnished. We arrived at the supper station with our lips, nostrils and throats sore and feverish from alkaline dust; everyone wishing for something cool and refreshing. The food put before us was, as usual, swimming in grease and most uninviting, but at the end of the meal our hopes were raised by the waitress asking me if I would have some fruit. "Fruit," said I, "have you fruit?" "Oh, yes," replied the haughty damsel who condescended to serve us, "we have dried peaches."

Travelling, as we did, day and night, we caught on the morning of the fifth day our first glimpse of Helena, containing at that time about four thousand inhabitants. Having passed but few houses since leaving Corinne, other than the aforescribed station huts, a town was a welcome sight. On entering the village the driver applied the whip unmercifully, frightening the broken-down horses into a gallop; we dashed through the streets in becoming style, to the great delight of numerous small boys. It was a repetition of the grand entree into Corinne.

At Helena, Lieutenant Schofield and I received orders to join our companies (as "troops" were then named), then in camp near Fort Shaw on the Sun River, while the third member of our party, Lieutenant Jerome, was to continue his journey to Fort Ellis.

Taking another stage-coach, Schofield and I reached Fort Shaw in about eighteen hours, and reported at camp.

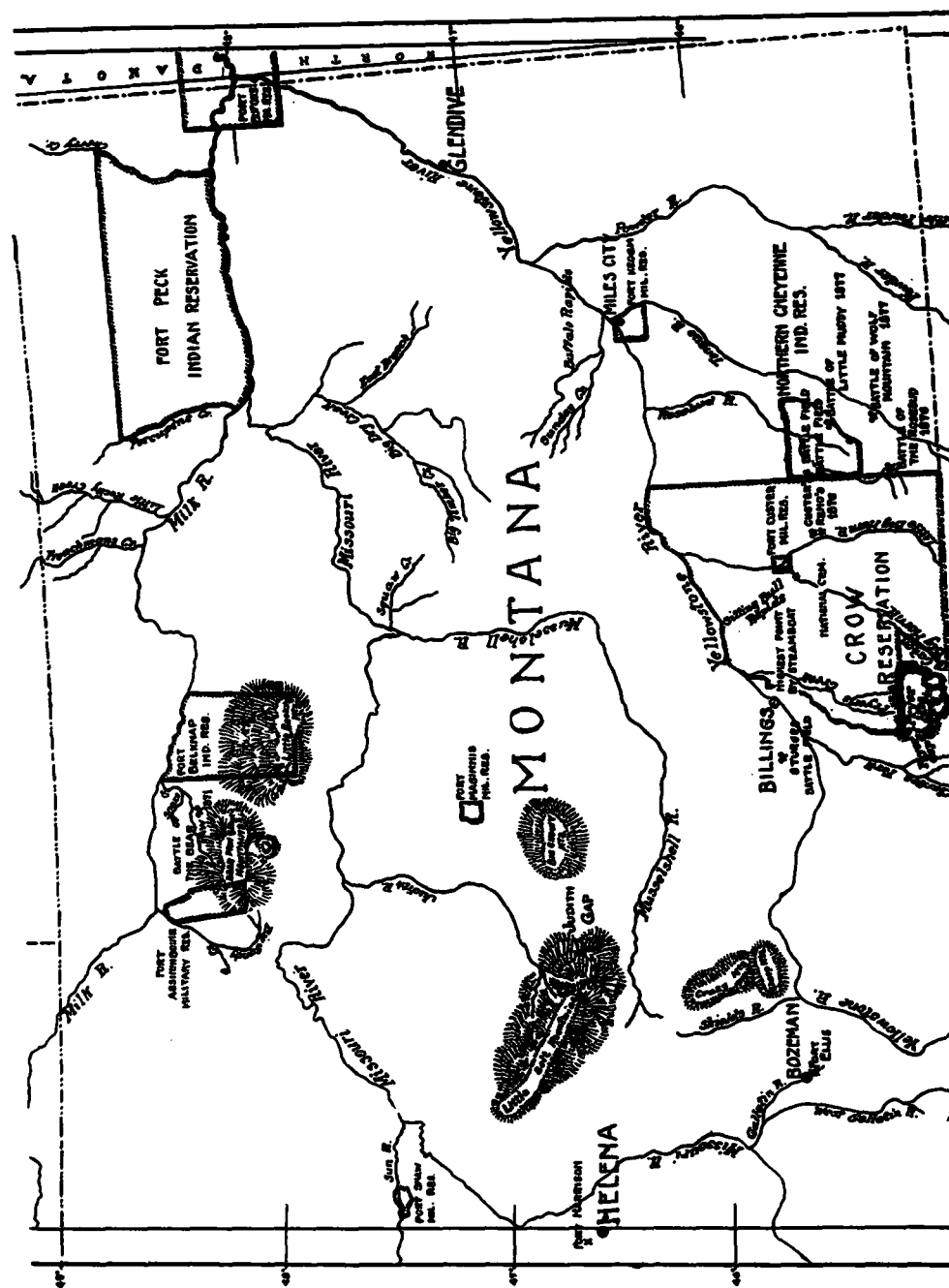
Reporting for Duty

Presumably all young officers are rather green on joining. I know we were. Having no clothing suitable for the field, the captain in command of our battalion, or squadron, as we will call it frequently hereafter, took us to the Quartermaster's store-house and fitted us out in the clothing of a private. In those days but slight attention was given to the cut of the enlisted man's clothing, and it must be admitted we did not present a very officer-like appearance. In this garb, however, we were taken to report to the Post Commander, General Gibbon, who received us cordially until informed that we came to report for duty, whereupon he directed us to first don a proper uniform and then report without delay. Somewhat crestfallen, we went back to camp, a mile away, and returned in full uniform in a mist that was almost a rain. At the time, we thought the General's idea of discipline was only equalled by that which tradition credited to old Harney.

In a few days, some time in the latter part of November, our squadron received orders to return to Fort Ellis, distant one hundred and eighty miles. The weather was cold, frequent snow storms were encountered, and the nights were particularly severe. Schofield and I were poorly equipped for such a march, and at several camps we slept but little.

After our long and weary journey to reach Ellis, my friend and I were not a little disappointed to find the post was a collection of log houses, with dirt roofs covered with boards. On the northwest and southeast corners there were block-houses, through the portholes of which an effective rifle fire could be delivered. The fort served to protect the extreme eastern settlements of Montana. To the westward, scattered over a large area were twenty-five or thirty thousand settlers, while to the east, if we except the buildings at the Crow Indian Agency, there was not a house for many hundreds of miles. On the latter side, that is to the east, the Crows were our nearest red neighbors, while beyond them, down the Yellowstone Valley, were the favorite hunting grounds of the Sioux, the Cheyennes and the Arapahoes, three of the most warlike and powerful Indian tribes.

Fort Ellis was located in the upper end of the beautiful Gallatin Valley, three miles from the little town of Bozeman, and on the east fork of the Gallatin River, a clear and sparkling trout stream. The valley is thirty-three miles long and from five to fifteen wide. Mountains from



seven to eight thousand feet high nearly surround it and in summer it is a lovely spot. At its lower end three rivers, the Jefferson, Madison and Gallatin unite and form the Missouri. A few settlers were scattered through the valley, which on the east, was open to invasion by the Indians through three passes. The first, near Fort Ellis, is Bozeman Pass; the second, a narrow gorge about twenty miles north, is named Flathead; and the third, Blackfoot Pass, ten miles north of the second. Through these passes the Indians made several raids upon the settlements, and did considerable damage. The presence of the troops at Ellis undoubtedly materially contributed to diminish the number of such incursions, although it was exceedingly difficult to intercept a war party after it had stolen unobserved into the valley; for the redskins, their mischief once accomplished, would dash away with the speed of the wind and be many miles on their retreat before news of their invasion reached the garrison.

All this made hard work for the troops, keeping the junior officers in the saddle almost constantly, and yet it was an exciting and invigorating labor. The country was beautiful and full of game, while the element of danger always present, added a charm for the younger officers and men.

Caught In a Blizzard

In the summer of '71, two troops were sent down the Yellowstone Valley as an escort to the surveyors for the proposed Northern Pacific Railroad. The survey was discontinued for the season in the early part of November of the same year, at a point one hundred and fifty miles from Ellis. One night on the return march a tent caught fire during a high wind; this quickly kindled the grass and in an incredibly short time the camp was destroyed. To add to the misfortunes of the detachment, the weather became stormy and the snow fell to great depth. This was followed by intense cold. The situation was reported by courier and food and additional clothing were sent from Ellis by the troop to which I belonged, and of which I was in temporary command. On the mountains immediately east of the post, that are now pierced by a tunnel and called the "Snowy Range" by the officials of the Northern Pacific Railroad, the deep snow greatly impeded our progress. Frequently it was necessary to dig out a horse or pack-mule that had sunken to his back, and in spite of our earnest efforts all day, night overtook us when only eight miles out; utterly worn out, we went into camp in a little grove of pines just below the summit of the divide. After many efforts a fire was started, but constant attention was required to prevent its being extinguished by the drifting snow. That night the thermometer at Ellis, a thousand or more feet below us, fell to forty-eight degrees below zero, and the wind blew a gale. The cold was intense and sleep out of the question; even the animals huddled around the fire in seeking protection from the bitter blasts.

At daybreak we broke camp, if it may properly be called such, and started on, more weary, if that were possible, than when the previous night had overtaken us, but mercifully the weather moderated a little during the forenoon.

About 2 P. M. the returning escort was met near the "great bend" of the Yellowstone River and both commands turned towards Ellis, intending to camp among some cottonwood trees about five miles ahead. After marching two miles a blizzard struck us, and the howling wind drove the coarse snow, hard and cutting as grains of sand, straight into our faces. In a few minutes all land marks were obscured and the trail recently made obliterated. As the rapidly drifting snow quickly filled the eyes of anyone peering into the storm, each officer took his turn in leading the column and forcing his horse to advance against the gale. It grew suddenly colder, and after two hours of this desperate struggle it was ascertained that we had been travelling in a circle. The sensations produced by such a discovery can be appreciated only by one who has been lost on the prairie in the midst of one of those terrible storms.

Many troopers became numb, and a few threw themselves from their saddles and had to be lifted back and forced to follow. It was impossible to adjust the loads on the pack-mules, and conditions going from bad to worse, all efforts to drive these animals along were abandoned. Some men wept and begged to be permitted to lie down and die; others wandered from the column and were forced to return by those who kept their heads. Cries that feet, hands and parts of the face were freezing were heard on all sides. Our weary horses seemed unable to continue the unequal struggle and were unmercifully spurred to keep them up to their work. There was great confusion; for a time it looked as if all discipline would be lost, and the command scattered in every direction upon the boundless prairie. To keep moving was our only hope, and the cooler heads fairly drove the others before them.

After five hours of this life and death struggle, we stumbled on the timber we had been seeking. Trumpeter Page, brave fellow that he was, seized his trumpet and sounded the "Rally," and never did a call sound sweeter. It meant life. Six years later Page, then a sergeant, fell, shot through the forehead at the battle of the Big Hole, where General Gibbon attacked the Nez Percé Indians under Chief Joseph.

It was fortunate indeed that a thick growth of willows grew among the trees in which we had taken shelter; they helped to break the wind and made it possible to start fires, for no human being could have lived that night out in the open. As it was, fifty-three men out of the one hundred and fifty in the command had their extremities frozen, many of them severely.

About the same time a detachment of sixty-five men of the Seventh

Infantry, in the field near Fort Shaw, had a similar experience, resulting, as I was told, in twenty-two amputations.

August, 1872, found us again on the banks of the Yellowstone, escorting the surveyors of the proposed Northern Pacific Railroad. The escort consisted of four companies of the Seventh Infantry and four troops of the Second Cavalry, all commanded by Major Eugene M. Baker of the latter regiment, who a few years before had given the Piegans such a trouncing, and thereby earned the soubriquet of Piegan Baker.

A Buffalo Hunt

It was while on this duty that I engaged in my first buffalo chase. We were in the Valley of the Yellowstone, nearly opposite the mouth of Clark's Fork, when a herd of about one hundred buffaloes emerged from the cottonwood trees along the river, and passed at a full run in front of our moving column. Along with a number of others, I received permission to give chase, and started off at a furious pace, thoroughly excited and oblivious to danger from my horse's stepping in a gopher hole or stumbling on rough ground.

On we went, every leap of my good steed bringing me closer to the now hardly pressed herd. Rifles and pistols commenced to crack, and candor compels me to confess I was nearly wild from excitement. As I drew alongside of my first buffalo, I was amazed at his great size, and as his rapid motion shook the dust from his thick hair, thereby giving it a grayish tinge, I was impressed by his resemblance to an elephant, or so it seemed to me.

I was well armed, but in my agitation did poor shooting. In after years I learned how to gallop alongside of a buffalo and to send a bullet straight to his heart. However, in my first chase, which covered four miles, I killed four and naturally felt highly elated. The fourth was a huge old fellow; a pistol shot brought him to his knees, when I rode off to what seemed to be a safe distance, intending to dismount and finish him with my rifle, but my foot had but touched the ground when he staggered to his feet and charged. This frightened my horse and he tried to break away; had he succeeded, the situation would have been critical, for a charging buffalo is a dangerous foe. Moreover, I had lost sight of my comrades and was practically alone in an Indian country. I have never been able to explain, even to myself, how I managed to reach the saddle just in time to escape the horns of the infuriated bull, but when I next dismounted it was necessary to employ long-range fire.

An Indian Fight

On the 13th of August, 1872, camp was pitched on the left bank of the Yellowstone not far below the mouth of Pryor's Creek within a slough that, with the river, entirely surrounded the camp grounds. This slough was fringed with large cottonwoods and at the lower end, extending some seventy-five yards from the river, there was also a thick growth

of tall willow brush. Pickets were posted along the slough, and the wagons, perhaps a hundred in number, were parked in the form of an ellipse, with one end open, so as to form a corral into which the wagon^s, mules, left out to graze during the night, could be driven if necessary.

The night was dark and about three o'clock on the 14th a few Indians succeeded in passing through the picket line unobserved, but while they were trying to turn the loose mules in a convenient direction to start them into a run for the hills, their presence was discovered by our herders. The darkness prevented the Indians from distinguishing the herders as white men, and the latter guided the head of the herd into the corral, so that when the rush came the mules in rear, following those in advance, ran in among the wagons and were secured. At this moment the red men were seen and fired upon by a member of the inner guard. This shot



A Sioux Village in the "Seventies"

was quickly followed by others, and cries of, "Indians, here they come!" were heard on all sides as officers and men were awakened and sprang to arms.

At first the confusion was great, owing to the difficulty of distinguishing friend from foe. Some people thought the pickets were deceived as to the presence of Indians, and that they were firing at imaginary redskins, but a volley from the latter, together with their demoniacal yells and war-whoops, did away with that belief. The darkness prevented the enemy's taking full advantage of the surprise given us, and a volley from our infantry directed at the willows at the lower end of camp, where most of the Indians had posted themselves, promptly drove them from that point of vantage.

We soon pressed forward and regained the timber along the slough, from which the pickets had retired. The Indians did not try to hold it, as might have been expected; they were, perhaps, surprised in their turn at the promptness and vigor of our defense. The semi-circle once more in our possession, we felt comparatively safe.

The savages, dashing about on their ponies in our immediate front, kept up an unearthly and diabolical noise, but as it grew lighter they retired to the bluffs. These enclosed the valley on two sides of the camp, starting about four hundred yards above the latter and gradually receding to a rocky point a thousand yards away. From the top of these bluffs the Indians tried to pick off our men as the latter dodged from tree to tree. Occasionally a daring warrior would dash down from the hills and ride his pony at full speed along our front. I do not recall seeing any killed, but several were wounded. One pony was killed; his rider being picked up by two braves dashing along in rear, and by them carried away, one on either side of the dismounted warrior.

At half past six A. M. the Indians drew off and disappeared down the valley. Captain Ball, with two troops, was sent to observe the retreating enemy, but the latter rode rapidly and were soon lost to sight. Our loss was two killed and five wounded, with fifteen or twenty horses killed, wounded or missing. In addition, twenty-five beeves, intended for food, were driven into the hills and slaughtered.

This engagement caused much controversy, and the commanding officer was criticised by many, but in my opinion this criticism was largely unjust. The critics charged, with other censure, that bad judgment was shown in the selection of the camp ground. With that view I distinctly disagreed.

The Indians left two dead on the field, and later admitted a loss of eleven killed and wounded. They had eleven hundred warriors present, while our command numbered a little less than five hundred. The losses on each side undoubtedly would have been greater but for the darkness during the early part of the fight, which made accurate shooting impossible. The site of the engagement has since been known as Baker's Battleground.

At 10 A. M. the survey was resumed, but under conditions that did not inspire confidence. The fact was realized that the strength of the escort was not sufficient to guard the moving trains or the camp, if established, and at the same time give proper protection to the surveyors, who frequently were strung out for two or three miles. As a result the chief engineer, three days later, decided to discontinue the survey along the Yellowstone, and asked to be escorted across country to the Musselshell River, to run a line along that stream and over the intervening hills to the Missouri. This was done.

During our survey along the Musselshell, a man who used a surveyor's

compass fell ill, and as his absence materially lessened our daily progress, the chief engineer asked me to replace him. As I had not been out of West Point long enough to grow rusty in such work, I consented and assisted in that way for perhaps ten days. Then the chief, himself, was taken, and he further requested that I replace him in selecting the line. While I felt considerable misgivings as to my qualifications, I again consented, and selected the line for the surveyors to follow for the next two or three days. As a reward for this assistance, the chief promised a life-long pass, but he did not foresee the early failure of Jay Cooke and Company, who were financing the enterprise; the long delay that followed in prosecuting the surveys, and the creation of a new company under which the road was built some years later. To date I have received no pass.

In the early seventies, the Musselshell country abounded with elk, and one evening a band of perhaps five hundred trotted by us just as the sun was sinking behind the Judith Mountains. They presented a beautiful sight as they disappeared over the rolling hills with their long antlers waving like so many plumes.

We reached Fort Ellis on September 30th, after an absence of about two months, and nearly four years passed before the white man again penetrated from the West into the Yellowstone Valley. The Indians loved their hunting grounds there, and many a brave soldier fell before they yielded them.

Although the years between 1872 and 1876 often saw the troops from Ellis in the field, the length of this paper will not permit us to dwell upon them. It may be permissible, however, to speak of an incident that occurred in 1873, while scouting through Blackfoot Pass, as it was a long time before I heard the last of it. With my horse, rifle and a young greyhound, in training to run jack rabbits and coyotes, I was off alone trying to find a bear, and while ascending a long and gentle sloping mountain, I espied one. The country was too open to permit me to get within fair rifle range without being seen, so I put spurs to my horse and quickly overhauled him. My dog, nevertheless, reached him first, and from his speed while in pursuit, it seemed as if he intended to make short work of the bear, but as the latter rose on his hind legs and growled, the greyhound turned and darted down the mountain like a shot. On returning to camp I related my experience to Captain Thompson, whereupon he drew two pictures, one of which he entitled, "McClermand after the Bear," in which I was depicted as in mad pursuit, and the other as "The Bear after McClermand," wherein I was represented as descending the mountain at a speed closely approximating that of the greyhound. Thompson sent the pictures to our friends at the post, and it was a long time before I could convince them that the drawings really represented Thompson's sense of humor and not my actual agility.

Cavalry In The Syrian Campaign

A Transcription

By

Captain ROYDEN WILLIAMSON, Cavalry, D. O. L.

AS particulars emerge from Syria of the French operations against the rebel Druse tribes, they bring new evidence of the utility of cavalry in present-day warfare. In the March-April number of *La Revue de Cavalerie*, General Gamelin gives an illuminating account of the achievements of the 6th Regiment of Spahis in two actions in the last months of 1925, which effectively restored French prestige in the Near East and largely contributed to the pacification, now all but accomplished, of that turbulent region.

These accomplishments were the relief of the besieged garrison in the citadel of Rachaya and the capture of Hasbaya. Fought in country resembling our own southwest, these operations afford in their tactical details instructive lessons for American students of the cavalry arm, at the same time proclaiming anew the uncertainty of mechanical substitutes for horses in situations of difficult terrain, especially where mobility and speed are essential to successful issues.

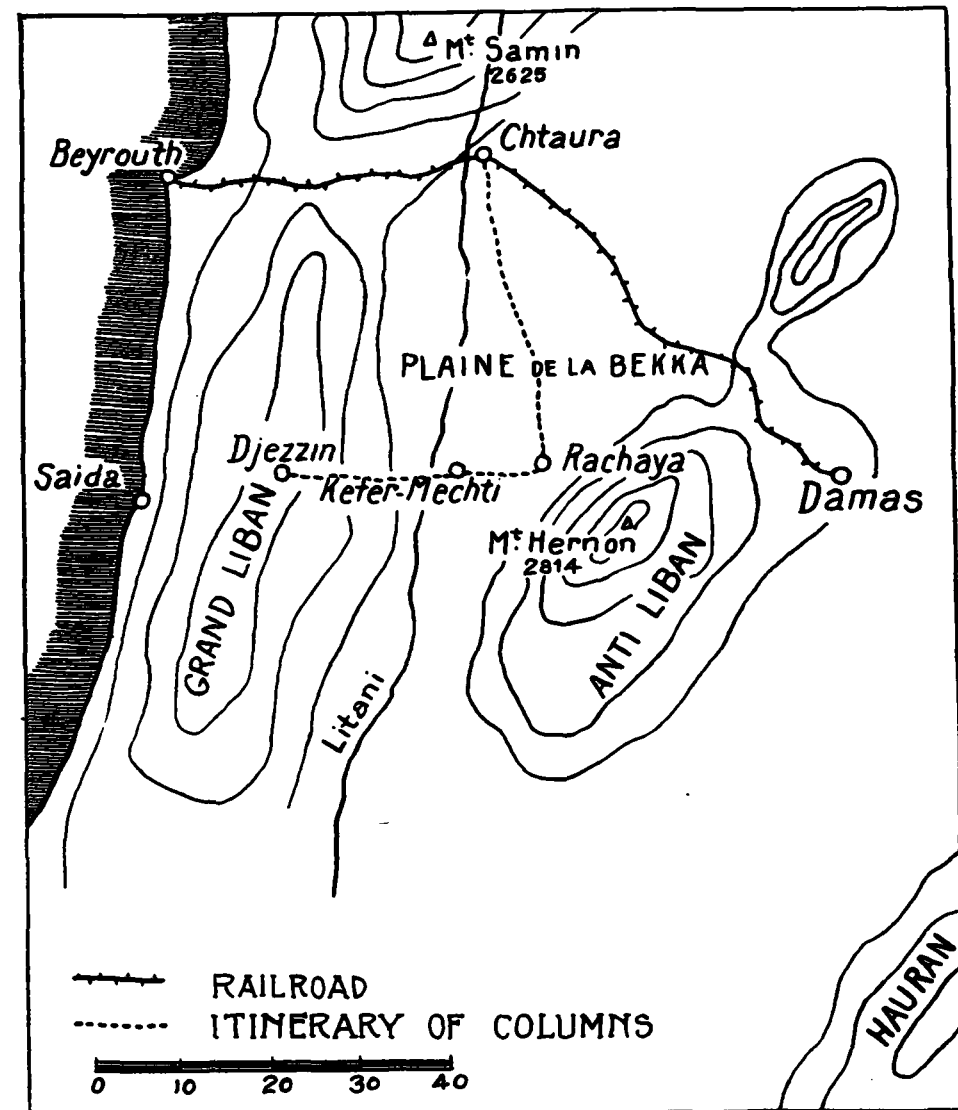
The campaign, as General Gamelin relates it, was as follows:

I. The Relief of Rachaya

The 6th Spahis, after two and a half months in the field in the Riff, was suddenly called to Syria. Sailing from Oran on November 8 and 9, 1925, the regiment disembarked at Beyrouth on the 19th, 20th and 21st. The seriousness of the situation required that it march immediately upon landing, as the besieged garrison at Rachaya, consisting of one squadron of the Foreign Legion and one of the 12th Spahis, had reached the end of its endurance, and the High Command had resolved to move to its relief as rapidly as possible all available troops capable of reaching it with the least possible delay. The fall of this garrison would result in such an effect upon the insurgents as to be extremely pernicious.

Accordingly, the 6th Spahis received orders to entrain on the 21st, to reach Chtaura by the narrow gauge railway and, detraining there, arrive before Rachaya on the 24th. Entraining was completed by the 22nd and at 8.00 A. M. of the 23rd the march from Chtaura began.

The troops forming the expedition, in addition to the cavalry, were the 3rd battalion, 4th Colonial Tirailleurs (Commandant Durlot), which was transported by rail from Homs to Rayack; one section of 75's of the 8th Artillery (Lieutenant Lalande); and one section of 65's, originally di-



rected to Djezzin (40 kilometers south-southeast of Beyrouth). The entire command was placed under the orders of Colonel Lobez, 6th Spahis.

At 9.30 A. M. of the 23rd the Tirailleurs and the 75 battery joined the regiment, but the convoy, which had been obliged to make a detour by Chtaura while the troops used the direct route from Rayack, was still in the rear. It was necessary to wait for it, the troops profiting by the pause to water their animals. At 1.00 P. M. the convoy arrived, rested for one hour and at 2.00 P. M. the column departed, leaving the Damas Road to take the trail for Rachaya. As this route led for a time through a narrow pass bordered by steep heights, said to be infested with Druse bands, it was important not to advance except with forces concentrated and with the convoy enclosed in the column.

Two hours were required to reach the water hole of Saouri, where the command was to bivouac that night. At 3.00 P. M. Colonel Lobez received by airplane a dropped message that indicated the condition of the beleaguered garrison as very precarious. The Druses had penetrated into the citadel and although they had been almost completely ejected, ammunition was nearly spent. A rapid intervention by the relieving troops was urgent if a catastrophe was to be averted. Colonel Lobez decided, therefore, to march until nightfall, so as to be able to attack at the earliest moment in the morning.

Half an hour later a second message was dropped from a plane, reporting the situation as critical in the extreme.

"The garrison of Rachaya, which has been violently attacked for three days," it said, "is in a desperate situation. Out of three captains, one has been lost, half the officers are wounded and out of 240 men, 30 are killed and 40 wounded. Nearly all the horses and mules are killed or wounded. There is no more ammunition or rations. Half of the citadel the French are defending has been taken by the Druses, fighting is from court to court with bayonet and grenade and part of the structures is in flames."

The commander asked for immediate succor by a battalion in trucks or else by a force of cavalry, otherwise he would be compelled to attempt a sortie.

In the face of this tragic circumstance, Colonel Lobez, assembling his superior officers, laid the facts before them. After a brief study of the situation, he decided to risk everything in an attempt to save the garrison.

The following dispositions were made: The Durlot battalion, notwithstanding its great fatigue, would continue to march with the convoy until night, resuming at 5.00 A. M. the next day its march to rejoin the Spahis and the artillery. These, meanwhile, would push on to Rachaya immediately.

Without doubt the risks were great, since one could not attack in a country infested with Druse forces in the middle of the night, but to act at once was imperative, since every moment lost might be fatal to the

besieged, while an attack launched upon arrival would probably have the advantage of surprise. At all events, the French in the citadel and the rebel Druses would soon hear close at hand the sound of the guns and the moral effect of this would be considerable.

This decision was promptly communicated to all echelons and the 6th Spahis, followed by the section of 75's, took the road to Rachaya. The approach was without incident, for the Druses, believing their prey was in their grasp, had assembled their entire force around the citadel. Thus it was possible to reach in the night the hills three kilometers northwest of Rachaya.

Suddenly all eyes were struck by a grand though terrible spectacle. Before them, on a steep height surrounded by a considerable village, stood the citadel in flames. The view was an appalling one.

Immediately on a neighboring hill a fire glowed. This without doubt was a signal, a Druse observation post warning the besiegers of the French approach.

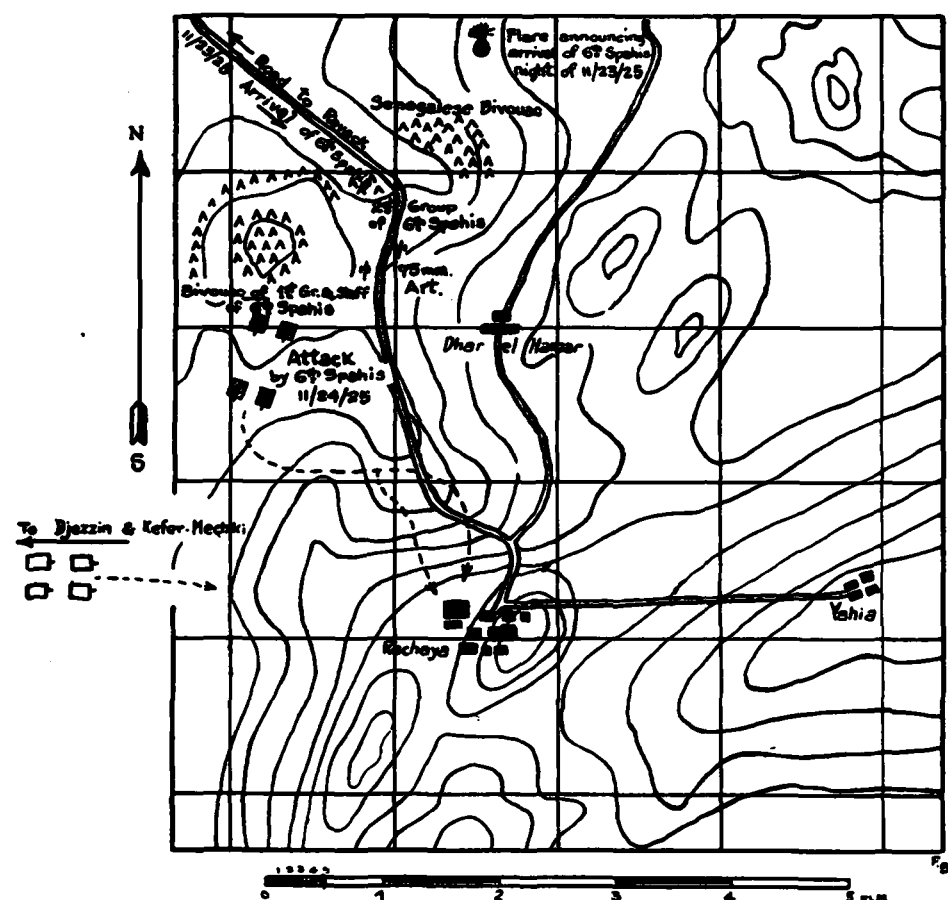
In an instant a platoon of Spahis, flinging themselves from their horses, fixed bayonets and dashed for the height where the signal fire was burning, but at the first shot the enemy, abandoning the place, fled. What was to be done? The march having been discovered, surprise was now impossible. An attack by the cavalry alone over broken ground was sure to be checked, as the guns in the obscurity could not effectively support it. It was decided to fire the field pieces to tell the defenders of the arrival of help, then to put the regiment in bivouac on either side of the trail, leaving the guns in battery, since owing to the ground it was impossible to move them.

With the first cannon shot the garrison sent up a rocket and soon, in spite of the smoke, liaison was established. A pathetic dialogue ensued.

"Come quickly," they said. "Tomorrow morning," was replied.

At such an answer everyone's heart grieved, but no other decision was possible. If the least chance for success in an immediate attack had offered, not a man would have hesitated, but there was no chance, and a check at this time would have been deplorable, perhaps compromising the action of the morrow.

All through the night the 75 section, avoiding the citadel, kept up harassing fire, the moral effect of which was important. The enemy, feeling the menace of an attack behind him, relaxed the vigor of his assaults. The defenders, on the other hand, took hope as they felt their chances of succor grow. This fire had another appreciable result; it was heard by the Loynet battalion coming from Djezzin and due at Rachaya during the course of the 24th. Upon hearing the guns, Commandant Loynet decided to make a night march in the indicated direction. At 11.30 P. M. the North African Tirailleurs reached Kefer-Mechki, where they camped and there a patrol of the 6th Spahis met them.



Operation Against Rachaya.

Colonel Lobez issued at once his orders for the attack. It was to be executed by the Loynet battalion and the section of 65's in an easterly direction, supported from the north by the first group of Spahi squadrons, the second group being held in reserve; the assembled Spahis to be under the command of Lieutenant-Colonel de Reals. This order was transmitted to the west column.

Toward 10.00 A. M., as the 75 section opened fire on the slopes southwest of Rachaya, the Durlot battalion arrived, but the men were so extenuated that they were not able to take part in the action and were held as an eventual reserve, so the 6th Spahis attacked in two echelons.

The first half-regiment, commanded by Commandant Gremaud, left

camp mounted about 11.00 A. M., direction: the heights 1,500 meters northwest of Rachaya. Colonel Lobez accompanied the second echelon. At 11.30 A. M. liaison, fortunately, was established with the left company of the west column moving toward the heights dominating Rachaya on the southwest.

The Spahis mounted gained their first objective rapidly and from there, across a deep valley, on the slopes of which the trail winds from Chtaura into Rachaya, the entire village could be seen. Dismounting to fight on foot was done behind the crest; front of attack, 800 meters; first objective, the section of the trail crossing the ravine north of Rachaya; second objective, the citadel, H-hour, 12.15 P. M.

The attack started as scheduled. The squadrons, without regard to the steepness of the slopes which resemble those along the Rhine, climbed to the assault. The artillery, in battery on the camp road, meanwhile plastered the eastern part of the village.

Frantically cheered by the defenders mounted on the walls, the Stoeckle squadron at 1.45 P. M. was the first to reach the citadel. As Captain Stoeckle, leading the way, entered, he fell into the arms of Captain Landriot, commander of the squadron of the Legion. Joy knew no bounds, the Legionnaires surrounding Lieutenant Joly and wringing his hands.

The 2nd Squadron, under Captain Proust, reached the village farther to the left and notwithstanding the fire of the enemy who, profiting by the labyrinth of streets, offered a stiff resistance, succeeded in dislodging them. At the head of the 3rd Squadron, Lieutenant-Colonel de Reals made his way into the citadel where he was joined by Colonel Lobez, who had left the 4th Squadron half way up the slope and had come to congratulate the defenders and his troops.

Commandant Loynet's battalion, its advance elements having established contact with the cavalry, entered Rachaya by the extremity of the defile. It was now about 3.00 P. M., and this battalion had accomplished an exceedingly trying march, not only on account of the difficulty of the country, but because of the fire of the Druses, who had concentrated an important part of their forces on this side of the village. Yet such was the spirit of the battalion's assault elements that they broke all opposition.

To the troops engaged this splendid feat of arms was highly creditable. The garrison of two squadrons, with ammunition and rations exhausted, had held out heroically for four days, having reached the limit of its force. The citadel, half destroyed, was littered with the bodies of dead Druses and horses. As for the Tirailleurs, their endurance was beyond praise, while the 6th Spahis, by rapid marching and their resolute attack, had played the leading part in the work of rescue.

II. The Capture of Hashaya

Following the relief of Rachaya and in order to exploit the demorali-

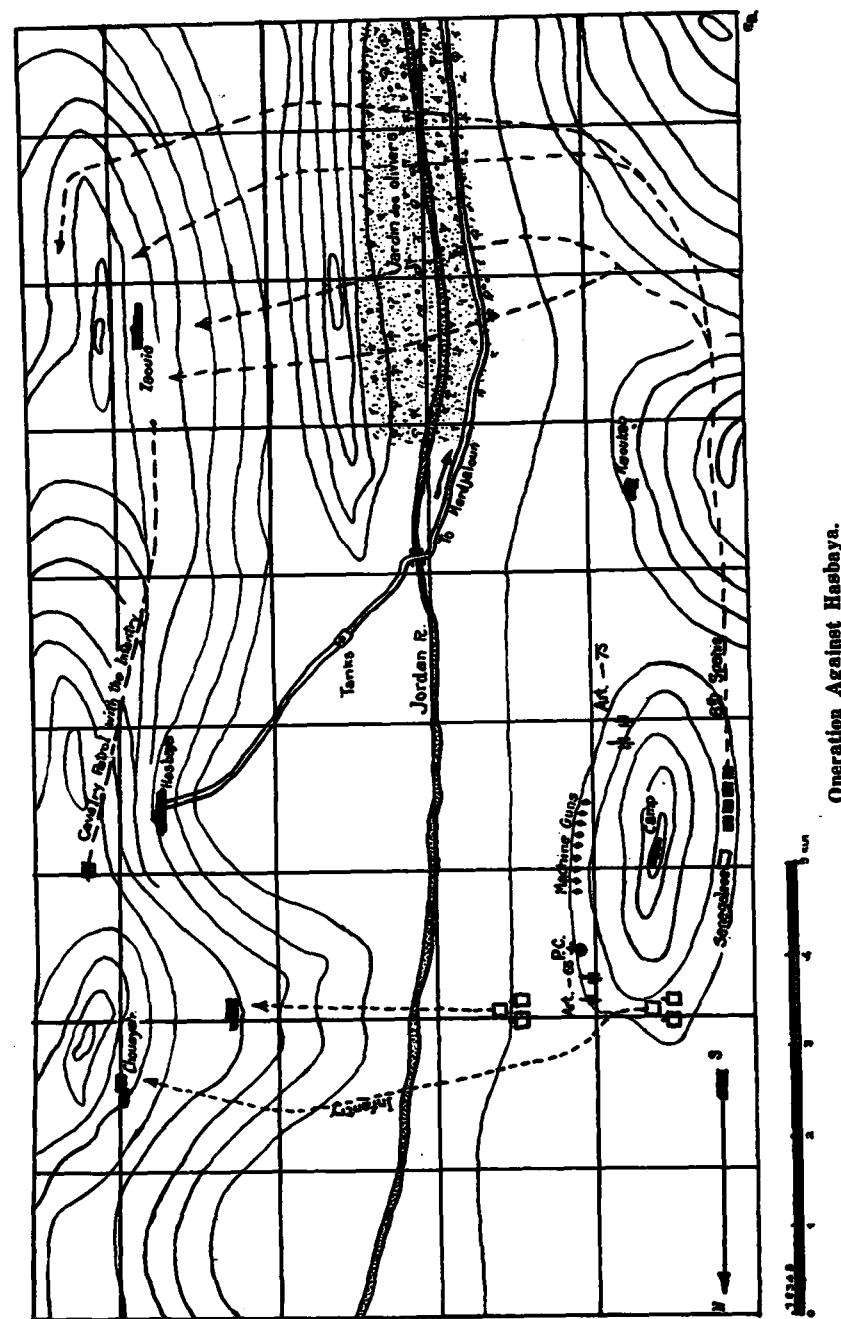
zation of the Druses resulting from this important success, the Lobeze column received orders to proceed as soon as possible to attack Hasbaya. This attack would be made after junction had been effected with a group under Lieutenant-Colonel Clement-Grancourt, coming from Merdjayoune, the combined force then to be under the command of Colonel Lobeze.

The north group (Lobeze column) started at 6.00 A. M., December 1st, and marched via Kefer-Mechki, Libbaya and Kaoubab, where the junction with the south group (Clement-Grancourt column) was to be made. The march was extremely hard, due to lack of a trail, want of water and the chaotic condition of the terrain. Camp that evening was pitched between Libbaya and Youmhour and during the night a strong Druse force attacked it. This raid was repulsed, but the 6th Spahis suffered one man wounded and ten horses killed or wounded.

On December 2nd the march was resumed and at Kaoubab junction with the south group was accomplished. In consequence of the difficulties encountered during the march by the 75 section and the munitions wagons, however, the attack was postponed until noon of the 4th, when the infantry would attack by the north, the cavalry by the south.

The plan of attack was as follows: The two battalions of North African Tirailleurs, under Commandant Loynet, with the 21st Battalion in the lead, were to cross the Jordan and take, as their first objective, Chouayet, where the leading battalion would leave an element. Then, encircling Hasbaya by the heights of the ridge, they would move on Zaiouda de Kalhouet-el-Biad, situated on the same ridge. The attack was to be supported by all the artillery (one section of 75's, one section of 65's and all the accompanying mortars) protected by three companies of Senegalais. The 6th Spahis was to cross the Jordan below and move toward the ridge ahead of the infantry. Once the ridge was gained, the cavalry would face north so as to assist the advance of the infantry by fire on La Zaiouda and bar the escape of fugitives. This attack was to be supported by tanks from Merdjayoune which would cross the Jordan covered by the Spahis, then, taking the road from Herzaion to Hasbaya, clean up the locality.

Under Lieutenant-Colonel de Reals, the 6th Spahis left camp at noon. The command was formed in half-regiments closed up, the first toward the left, the second toward the right, the left echelon forming the reserve. In this formation the regiment moved down the Kaoubab slope to cross the Jordan and take as its first objective the crest of the slope running along the hills southwest of Hasbaya. The difficulty of the terrain almost at once forced the troops to dismount. Their movement was continued on foot, and at 1.30 P. M., in spite of a lively fusilade by Druse sharpshooters hidden in an olive grove, the river was crossed and the olive grove taken. The first objective was gained at 2.00 P. M.



Operation Against Hasbaya.

At this moment the tanks from Merdjayoune arrived. They had been delayed, and owing to this circumstance, mistook the Spahis advancing through the olive grove for Druses and fired in their direction. The error cost three Spahis wounded. The tanks advanced no farther that day.

The 6th Spahis now took up its advance toward its second objective. It was now about 3.30 P. M. Commandant Loynet's infantry column, moving over very difficult ground, was advancing laboriously, and it was evident that the operation could not be completed before nightfall. Colonel Lobeze therefore suspended it, directing the two Tirailleur battalions to bivouac in place while the cavalry, after covering the withdrawal of the tanks, would return to camp on foot, its led horses having already been taken there. Some of these animals, while re-ascending the slope, had been killed by Druse fire.

At 6.00 A. M. the next morning the attack was resumed. To facilitate freedom of movement and in order to place as many rifles as possible on the firing line, permission was given to leave mounts behind.

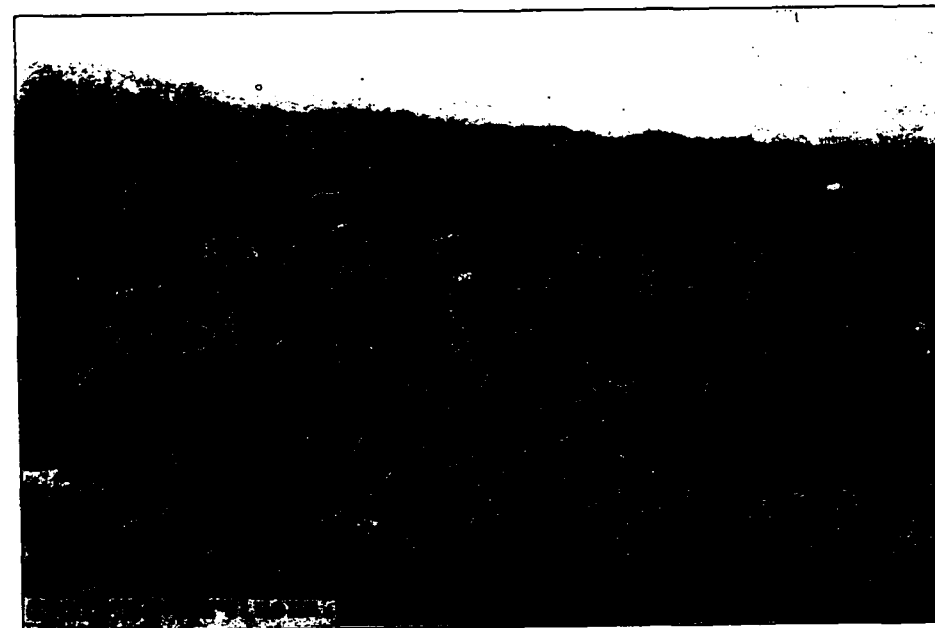
The Jordan was crossed at 7.00 A. M. and at 7.46 A. M. the first position was taken. The movement toward the second position began immediately. The Proust squadron led the way in the direction of La Zaiouda. A quarter of an hour later the second half-regiment, at the order of Lieutenant-Colonel de Reals, launched its attack in support of the first. In the several echelons, machine guns, guarded by a platoon, supported the attack elements. The Chabard squadron covered the movement toward the crest on the right, while the Senegalais, in echelon to the north, covered it on the left.

Steep slopes and ground strewn with enormous rocks made the advance extraordinarily wearisome and trying. Moreover, the Reals' force could depend only on machine gun support, as all the artillery was concentrating its fire ahead of the Loynet battalion, which also was encountering difficulty.

With consummate dash, nevertheless, the several elements of Spahis progressed without stopping, gained the dead spaces at the double to take shelter from the fire of the defenders on La Zaiouda, and at 9.30 A. M. seized the crest. The 2nd and 3rd Squadrons, exceeding all hopes, took La Zaiouda, which they at once organized for defense against Druse counter-attacks. The infantry continued its painful advance, but not until 3.00 P. M. did it effect contact with the cavalry.

The Tunisian battalions relieved the Spahis at La Zaiouda at 6.30 P. M. and the troopers returned to their camp, after adding two and a half hours of marching to their advance and attack of the morning. Yet to their already glorious laurels they had added another brilliant day. For these two operations the regiment was cited in army orders and decorated with the Croix-de-Guerre.

Save through the meager and often erroneous accounts of correspondents and news agencies, the public has heard little of these actions. Official reports, now becoming available, credit the 6th Spahis with having restored a very grave situation, while the French High Commissioner to Syria, M. de Jouvenel, has acknowledged that it was due in great measure to the action of this cavalry force that the fortunate change in Syrian affairs was effected in 1925.



A Group of Partisans in the Rif.

A Psychological Analysis of Eccentricity in Its Effect on Leadership and Morale

By

Major BERTRAM F. DUCKWALL, Medical Corps, U. S. A.

DURING the winter of 1924-25, the Surgeon at Fort Howard, Maryland, Major Edgar S. Linthicum, Medical Corps, wrote a special report to the Surgeon-General on conditions in the army affecting the morale of officers and men. Among other things this report stated: "For the past seven years the army has gone through a period of driving energy which it is believed has eliminated the weaklings. . . . With a sum of total endeavors we have overreached and approached the limit of endurance physical and mental. We are driving under our own mental duress in an effort to keep apace, yet unable to accomplish all in our average day, no part of which seems available for physical exercise. Night work is the rule and a present-day necessity."

While the report mentioned most of the factors which are concerned in the state of affairs described, I am of the opinion that one matter deserving of special attention should have been considered, and that is the question of eccentricity among officers. As all officers are leaders, and, as the opportunity comes sooner or later to all to indulge their peculiarities, it seems to me appropriate to examine the subject of eccentricity as a factor affecting true leadership with the attendant reaction on the morale of subordinate officers or soldiers.

During my service I have observed that it is really not so much the amount of actual work which breaks down morale and makes for difficulties, but it is the atmosphere in which such work is performed. The easiest situation from the point of view of labor expended, becomes the hardest if there is an air of indecision, hard driving tactics, antagonism, and the curtailment of privileges to no purpose by those charged with administration.

We are all familiar with accounts of real or fancied ill treatment of subordinates at the hands of their superiors. In nearly every gathering, many officers' names will be mentioned, and there are always some who will classify them in terms of opprobrium. Graduates of the service schools will characterize some instructors as "beyond the pale," "inhuman" or "despicable." On the other hand when certain other officers' names are under discussion the very opposite picture is drawn. They are "good scouts," "square," "approachable," "a peach of a C. O." In the course of this article I want to analyze in a limited way some of the causes

of such opinions, and to indicate my conception of the remedy which cannot fail sooner or later of application in the army, if real progress is to ensue.

The New Psychology

The cause of very general adverse criticism may be expressed in the word: ECCENTRICITY. At this point I must digress in order to explain some of the latest developments in psychology so that readers who are not familiar with the subject may gain an idea of what we know of mental mechanisms. The foundations of what may be properly called the *New Psychology* were laid down in Vienna in 1890 by Dr. Sigmund Freud, a neurologist. This investigator may be said to deserve as important a place in the field of psychology as did Darwin in that of biology. His principles have found such a wide application that they bid fair to become a complete philosophy of life, and to be of far more value than all previous philosophies. To Freud belongs the credit of the discovery of that portion of the mind by him called the Unconscious, and to his patience and perseverance must be ascribed the instrument of precision by which this region is explored, namely, psychoanalysis.

The Unconscious

In the study of mental operations it is seen that there is a mass of material which is not in the consciousness at all times, but may be summoned to appear before consciousness: in other words, there are facts, memories, mental images which we can recall when we desire to do so. The name applied to that part of the mind in which such ideas, facts and images are stored is the *Fore-conscious*. But there is another mass of material which cannot readily be recalled, in fact, cannot be recalled at all without the instrument of psycho-analysis. From the time of birth and even before, all experiences, not only those of recent date, but everything that has ever happened, have made some impression on the mind. A gradual process of forgetting has taken place and finally we are unable to remember a vast amount of past experiences. The store-house of this material is designated by the new school of psychologists as the *Unconscious*. The Unconscious is not to be regarded as the unknowing part of the mind, but only as that which is unknown without special analysis. All during life there are sinking into the realm of the Unconscious all sorts of perceptions and sensations which cannot be recovered by conscious effort.

Modern mental science has made the discovery that the combined mental and physical organism is in a large degree under the control of the Unconscious, that conscious acts are determined in the Unconscious. A classical illustration of the action of the Unconscious as a determinant of conscious action is furnished by the power of the hypnotist over a subject. The hypnotist tells one who is in the trance that when he awakens, he will take a chair from the floor and set it upon a table. Later after consciousness is fully regained, at the proper time, the subject carries

out the directions of the hypnotist. An interesting point about the matter is that if asked why he does this, he gives some plausible reason, such as that the chair was in the way, but fails entirely to connect up his action with the power exerted over him during the hypnotic trance. The lesson to be drawn from this illustration is that everyone is in the same situation in everyday life. The hypnotist in reality is a part of the self, the Unconscious, and the subject is the small division of the mind known as the consciousness. We are motivated by processes which are not apparent to us, however much we may imagine we know exactly what caused us to perform certain actions. The real causes are hidden from us and the assigned motives are mere pretexts. From certain mental diseases, from dreams, from mistakes in reading, speaking and writing and from other actions, we deduce unconscious ideas and wishes, which we never directly experience as such, but whose effects on our behavior are clearly demonstrable.

The Censor

It is a characteristic of the Unconscious that it represents archaic or a social material which would come into conflict with civilized modes of thought and action. The force or desire behind human behavior is spoken of by Freud as the *Libido*. The elements of this driving force are the desire for life, love and action. The effect of the libido is to cause the archaic impulses of the Unconscious to attempt to enter consciousness, but they only do so in a symbolic form which does not place the ego in conflict with society. This transformation is accomplished by a power which seems to operate between the field of the Unconscious and that of the consciousness, which, for want of a better name, Freud has called the *Censor*. The censor reviews the ideas and material constantly struggling to enter the consciousness from the hidden regions of the Unconscious and prevents them from entering except in such a way as to become acceptable to consciousness.

There is a reason why the material stored in the Unconscious never enters consciousness in its true form. The reason assigned for such inhibition is called repression, or the attempt to eradicate such thoughts from the mind. Repression is determined by the sense of intolerability which ideas or experiences have awakened. The Unconscious represses what seems intolerable to it, the standard of tolerability being different in different individuals. So changed are the final products due to the censor that they appear in consciousness as symptoms or symbols, the original unconscious determinants being completely disguised. For example there exists in the Unconscious of some people the desire to inflict pain on others. This is known as *sadism*. This archaic method of obtaining pleasure may break through into consciousness in the form of teasing others, but the individual does not know the source of his pleasure, as thus symbolized.

Dreams

The greatest degree of symbolization occurs in dreams. According to Freud, dreams represent the fulfillment of unconscious wishes, wishes

which because of conflicts, or their manifest impropriety, or a social tendency, are sternly repressed from consciousness and buried in the depths of the Unconscious. Lay* relates an example of a dream with its interpretation: "A man dreams that a burglar enters his room and that he fires a pistol at the intruder again and again, and the bullets hit the burglar every time, but do not kill him. After telling me this very brief dream the dreamer asked me what I could make out of it. I told him that the complete analysis of any dream would take hours of study even a dream so short as this. But I pointed out to him that the evident wish in this dream was to accomplish something the real doing of which was in some way frustrated. I asked him if he had not been dissatisfied with the quality of some of his performances. He admitted with an expression of much regret that he was wasting a great deal of his time which should have been more profitably employed. He read reams of novels which he forgot as soon as he had read them."

Complexes

A brief survey of what are known as *complexes* will complete this hasty review of the principal aspects of the new psychology. The term *complex* is given to an idea or a group of ideas with which is associated a painful or unpleasant feeling, on account of which an attempt is made to repress it into the Unconscious. The diagnosis of a complex rests on the emotional disturbance connected with it. For example, the ordinary person maintains a somewhat unaffected attitude toward the employment of animals for experimental purposes, but the antivivisectionist shows an intense emotional reaction, indicating that buried in his Unconscious is a painful association of ideas on this or a related subject. It is natural to remember pleasant and to forget painful occurrences. A complex buried in the Unconscious associates itself with a number of other ideas, all of which take on the unpleasant quality. The person in whose mind complexes are forming will not, without an effort, be able to remember these ideas when he wants them. The complexes will detach from the foreground, where are stored the ideas which are subject to voluntary recall, one person's name, another person's address, another's occupation, and drag them down towards the Unconscious. It is evident from this that all during life, from infancy on, complexes and associated painful ideas have been forming in the Unconscious. The complexes continue to develop and to attach more and more ideas to themselves until finally our minds, even those who are completely normal, are made up of an overwhelming amount of forgotten or repressed matter. The most successful men, therefore, will have the fullest memories, will be able to converse most entertainingly, for they will have the fewest complexes as inhibitions on their mental life, whether that mental life be expressed in words or action.

* Wilfrid Lay: Man's Unconscious Conflict.

Definition of Eccentricity

With this information in mind I believe the following definition of eccentricity will be acceptable: *Eccentricity is that form of behavior beyond the limits of normal variation in the reaction to unconscious complexes.* As an example may be mentioned the case of an officer who has an inferiority complex (which is described below) with a partial realization of the trouble. He may have enough force of will to combat the feeling of insecurity which arises within his breast, and though in command of troops, does not become a hard driver. When, however, an officer fails to conquer the urge of the complex in that he goes beyond the limit of normal behavior, it may be said he is eccentric.

Types of Eccentricity

From the experiences detailed by many officers and from my own observations, I have selected six types of eccentricity, which, to my mind, do much to undermine morale among associates and subordinates. They are as follows:

(1) *The explosive type.* The picture is that of an officer who takes advantage of his rank in relieving nervous tensions. He will exhibit intense anger at the errors of others, although in many cases the errors are the result of his own faulty instructions. That makes little difference, however. He endeavors to inspire in those about him a fear of his power, and by no means takes into account the reactions of the officers and men under him to such a course of conduct. He will brook no comment and will receive no suggestions. He constantly appeals to the disciplinary powers of the service. He reminds his subordinates that he "makes out efficiency reports," and has the power of preferring charges against those who do not obey the letter of the law.

Man's natural disposition is sensitive, and any situation which tends to detract from his self-respect, or from the self-regarding instinct, produces conscious and unconscious resentment, thereby detracting from the efficiency of his work. Hence, officers of the explosive type are surrounded by antagonism; errors tend to become multiplied and soon a vicious circle is formed; the more intolerant the officer and the more frequent his rages, the greater the number of errors.

The new psychology explains the regression to anger so common among the explosive type of individuals as a byway of the libido due to the thwarting of an unconscious wish. Errors or faults of associates or subordinates merely furnish excuses for the relief of a tension which has resulted from repression of an asocial desire. Notwithstanding the conscious excuses such a person may find in justification of his course of conduct, at bottom there is the persistence of an infantile sadistic wish, or the desire to gain pleasure by inflicting pain on others. This unconscious determinant is plainly indicated by the verbal castigation meted out to offenders. Since actual physical cruelty cannot be resorted to in

these civilized days, a substitution is made in the form of words. If officers, who find it extremely satisfying to themselves to become angry and sarcastic, would attempt to control such outbursts, not only would the service gain much, but the individual himself would be in far better position to cope with the situation.

(2) *The busy body.* This is an officer who apparently has more work than he can do. He complains that there are not enough hours in the day for him to accomplish his tasks. He is never satisfied with the work of subordinates, and is constantly revising, editing, or changing their results. As would be expected, this type is soon doing all the work and the subordinates very little. Real efficiency suffers and the output is below normal. The busy body type of officer is under the domination of a complex termed by Adler the *Inferiority complex*. As has been noted the Unconscious thinks in an archaic or elemental way, and is satisfied with broad and primal gratifications. It gets great satisfaction from a feeling of superiority, or greater strength or power, when comparing itself with other individuals. Any feeling of inferiority is too painful for contemplation, hence, in most persons there is a defense reaction against the slightest suggestion of inferiority which usually consists in emphasizing whatever of superiority the Unconscious can grasp in any situation.

The origin of the inferiority complex dates back to childhood when the young child is bewildered by the manifoldness and apparent chaos of reality. With inadequate ability to grasp the significance of the environment, the mind adopts the simplest conceptions, among which antithesis is the easiest. One of the most primitive of these conceptions is the antithesis, up-down or below-above, which is implanted in the child mind by the action of gravity and the power of man to stand erect, reinforced by the falling connected with weakness and death, and the increased resistance to gravity as the child grows. This conception is extended to nearly every human relationship, the "upper" position becoming the goal of effort, and symbolizing all that is desirable in life. The persistence of the sense of inferiority in the Unconscious of the adult is the cause of the most uneasy attitude of mind, of a sense of fear of the unknown. The defense is often manifested by an effort to keep in touch with the enemy (i. e., the environment). The individual is always on the alert to avoid surprise; he is continually engaged in exploration; always testing and retesting the surroundings. All this tends to exaggeration and there develops ultra-consciousness (so often mistakenly praised as a model for others), a love of detail for its own sake, and generally an incapacity for decision. Violent assertions of superiority manifest themselves and there is a demand for praise or flattery, as this is somewhat of an antidote for the innate feeling of inferiority.

In the attempt to become superior to others and to the environment, persons dominated by an inferiority complex exercise a petty tyranny

over subordinates and others; they search for the mistakes of others and make "mountains of mole-hills," so that by demonstrating their own superiority in given situations they may satisfy the unconscious by masquerading as superior individuals. As the inferiority complex cannot be overcome by such measures, and as such persons tend to exhibit "nervous breakdowns" sooner or later, a psychoanalysis is indicated, so that every effort may be concentrated in banishing groundless fears.

(3) *The hypocritical type.* Officers who may be properly classified under this head generally pose as geniality itself. They promise everything. Their whole attitude is apparently a desire to please others. They usually promise so much that they are unable to fulfill even a small part of their promises. Fear of censure from higher authority causes them to use some secret method of defeating the desires of subordinates. In time the character of such officers becomes known, and they lose what popularity they have attained, and worse, they lose the respect and confidence of their subordinates. Such a course of conduct is another aspect of the *inferiority complex*. It is the result of a failure on the part of the adult to overcome a feeling of inferiority implanted in childhood by an overbearing and egotistical parent. It is a great wrong for parents to maintain that the child knows nothing and to emphasize his inferior position. It is a terrific handicap for any child to be brought up to fear authority to such an extent that the self-abasement instinct becomes overdeveloped, as is the case in persons described under the hypocritical type.

(4) *The inattentive type.* Under this caption may be classed officers who pay very little attention to their organizations. They adopt no policies, but allow everything to be done by subordinates. The result is a lack of co-ordination with the consequent feeling of dissatisfaction among subordinates. Some strong junior may assume the function of administration and the organization may operate satisfactorily, but the service is thereby burdened by a supernumerary who acts as nothing but a dead weight. The majority of officers of the inattentive type, finding that someone else is able to assume the helm, relapse into a state of inertia, giving themselves up almost wholly to unconscious wish fulfillment, or day dreaming, or perhaps infantile pleasures of other sorts. In many such minds there are intense conflicts, thereby making it practically impossible for the person to devote attention to reality. Hence, the phantasy state is the result.

(5) *The stereotyped class.* Officers who fall into this category are those described by Trotter as the *stable-minded*. The picture is that of the typical herd man, full of energy and activity, and of strong will, but relatively resistant to the effects of experience. He develops fixed opinions and is immune to argument. He is usually of a contented or placid disposition. Whatever complexes he may possess are locked within logic tight compartments of his mind, and he never permits one compartment

to come into conflict with another. An officer of this type requires all sorts of regulations and precedents for his actions. He has no imagination, no vision. He will tolerate no opinions which conflict with his rigid ideas. He resembles plaster-of-paris which has set in a particular mold and cannot be changed. While there is a smoothness and ease of operation in his organization, there is no real progress, no expression of individuality, no new ideas. The quality of the work is machine-like.

(6) *Mixed types.* The foregoing types have been as clear-cut as I could make them in an attempt to classify eccentricities psychologically. That there are officers who do not fit into any of these types distantly must be patent to all. Certain mixed types do occur. The *explosive* and the *busy body*; the *hypocritical* and the *inattentive*; the *busy body* and the *stereotype* are common examples.

The Indices of Eccentricity

With our increasing understanding of the mechanisms of mental action, it is a foregone conclusion that more attention will be paid to types of officers selected for various posts. The ideal mind for leadership is that described by Tansley as combining the flexibility of intellect and the readiness to be taught by experience of the unstable mind with the resolution and persistence of the stable mind. Heretofore, there has been little attention given to the indices of various types of eccentricity, nor do I believe at the present time much can be stated positively on this point. Occasionally, when it is well known that in some indefinable way a certain officer will ruin an organization, such an officer is assigned to some duty in keeping with his fitness psychologically. I do believe, however, that there are two sources from which some idea may be gathered as to eccentric behavior among officers: (1) From the number of desertions in an organization as compared with other organizations under similar circumstances; from the number of absences without leave; from the resignations of subordinates; from numerous requests for transfers away from an organization or station; from *sub rosa* reports, particularly from large numbers of people; and (2) from a study of the efficiency reports, particularly those made by a single officer on a large number of juniors. It is recognized among psychologists of the new school that persons are notoriously intolerant in others of deficiencies which they possess themselves. Hence, reports from a particular officer which continually recognize and exaggerate certain short-comings in others, in all probability indicate the existence of the same defects in the reporting officer.

Remedial Measures

It is my opinion that more and more study of the psychology of officers is bound to be made in the future. With the selection of appropriate positions for the various types, or the psychoanalysis of such as appear to warrant it in order to reveal to them their complexes, a much higher degree of morale is certain to follow. The individual with an in-

feriority complex may be shown that his fears are based on a childish conception, and that he is not really inferior (in many cases) to others. He should perceive that there is no necessity to feel uneasy all the time, and he may be taught to battle with the complex. The officer who permits his sadistic tendencies to have full sway will realize that there is really no excuse for the display of such infantility, that men work better for a man who regards them as men, and who endeavors to familiarize himself with the capabilities of those under him, to the end that he may pick appropriate positions for them. It is perhaps a difficult matter to determine to what extent eccentricities undermine morale, but it has always seemed to me that an organization reflects in a material way the attitude of mind of the officer who has charge of it.

References

- TANSLEY: The New Psychology and Its Relation to Life.
 FREUD: Psychopathology of Everyday Life. Translated by Brill.
 LAY: Man's Unconscious Conflict.
 MARTIN: Psychology.
 MCDOUGALL: Social Psychology.
 SEABURY: Unmasking Our Minds.
 TROTTER: Instincts of the Herd in Peace and War.
 HITSCHMANN: Freud's Theories of the Neuroses. Translated by Payne.



Sioux Indians in Camp.

Cavalry In Morocco

By

Lieutenant-Colonel N. E. MARGETTS (Field Artillery), G. S. C.

DURING the active operations in Morocco, extending over the period from April 12, 1925, when Abd-el-Krim launched his attack against the French, until November 15, 1925, when the French had recovered all territory lost and had reorganized their front for stabilization during the rainy season, the cavalry did not play a very important part in the offensive or defensive operations.

The reason for this can be given in a few words: The Riffian fears the cavalry and will not meet it in open country; the nature of the terrain where the Riffian resists is such as will not permit the cavalry to act with its principal elements, speed and mobility; on the other hand, it affords excellent targets to the concealed Riff rifleman, who is expert in the art of taking cover and in the use of his rifle.

In the mountainous country, during the advance of a column, cavalry cannot precede the column in reconnaissance. Usually it is even difficult to accompany the foot troops, because of the rough terrain and absence of roads and even trails. In such cases only small detachments are utilized, and these employed as couriers only.

During the period of operations referred to above, some forty squadrons of cavalry were assembled by the French and distributed generally across the entire front. This cavalry was entirely colonial, consisting of Algerian and Moroccan Spahis, and a few Chasseurs d'Afrique. No European cavalry was employed.

The Spahis are mounted on small ponies, of the Barbe type, which have great powers of endurance and are peculiarly fitted for this nature of warfare. They average about 14-3 hands; weigh around 800 or 900 pounds; and only stallions are used in the service as individual mounts. The Spahi loves his horse. He is taught as a child that first consideration must be given his horse. He will work him to the limit during times of necessity, but when the day's work is done and camp is made, he treats his mount as a mother does her child. Following is the nature of the equipment carried:

Six half-inch felt pads. These are placed one on top of the other and form the saddle pad. At the end of each day the pad that has rested next to the back is dried and carefully cleaned and takes its place on top when the saddle is put on next day. This insures a clean, smooth pad next to the back each day. On this pad is placed the usual large, cumbersome Arab saddle, well formed to fit the back (similar to our stock saddle).

The stirrup is large and wide of tread. Spurs are not worn, except by officers and N. C. O.'s.

The bridle carries blinders and the bit is a curb, with very high port, with a ring attached, which is slipped over the lower jaw, serving as a curb chain. It is horribly brutal and it is not an uncommon sight to see many bloody mouths at the close of the day.

A carbine is carried, slung across the rider's back, with bayonet at his side.

Sabre carried on horse.

Belt carrying ammunition slung around horse's neck.

Such meagre equipment is carried for the rider, and in addition nose bag, with grain, and chain halter shank and hobble, all evenly distributed over the horse. When the halt for the day is made, the men dismount and



Algerian Cavalry on Their Way to the Front.

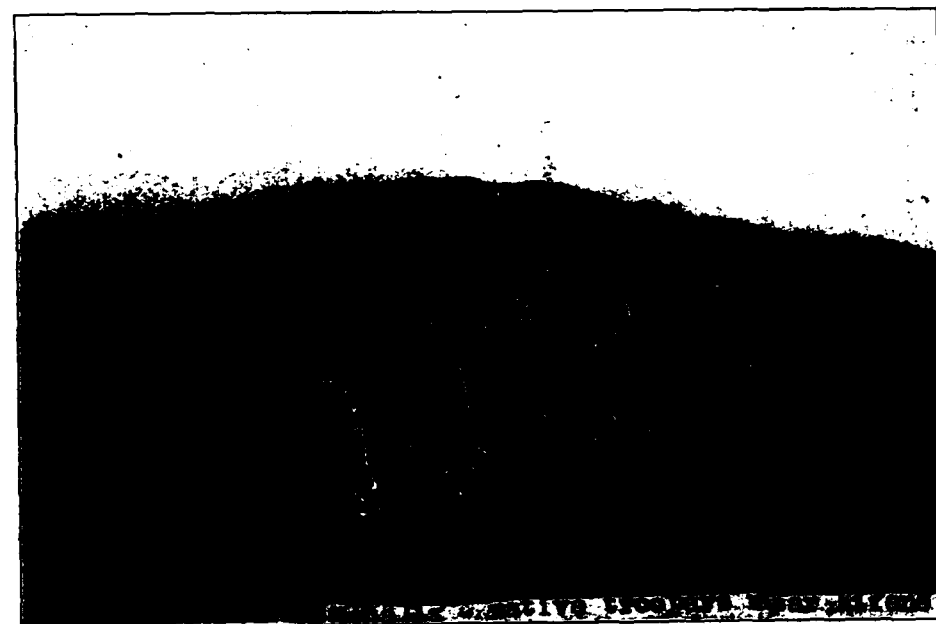
loosen cinches. After fifteen or twenty minutes the saddle and equipment are removed and carefully placed in front of picket line, opposite horse. The pads remain for another fifteen minutes, while the picket line, which consists of chain halter shanks secured together and held to the ground by iron pickets driven deeply, is being placed. Each horse is then secured to the picket line by a hobble around the left pastern. The chain shanks carried by the men are then attached to the halter of the horse on the left and on the right. Thus secured, the horse cannot rear because of the hobble and cannot fight the horse on the left or right because he is pulled by attachment to horse on either side.

The pads are removed and the backs massaged, after which each

man begins to clean his equipment and gets it ready to be put on at a moment's notice. After this each horse receives a good grooming, is watered, and is fed grain, and hay when the latter is procurable.

I inspected several picket lines after a hard day's march and only one small swelling was found. This created some excitement and much humiliation on the part of the man who was the cause of it.

As all ponies used by the Spahis are stallions, one must always be on guard against attack from them, especially during feeding out after the halt. They fight like wild beasts even after a hard and trying day.



A Column of Mehallas.

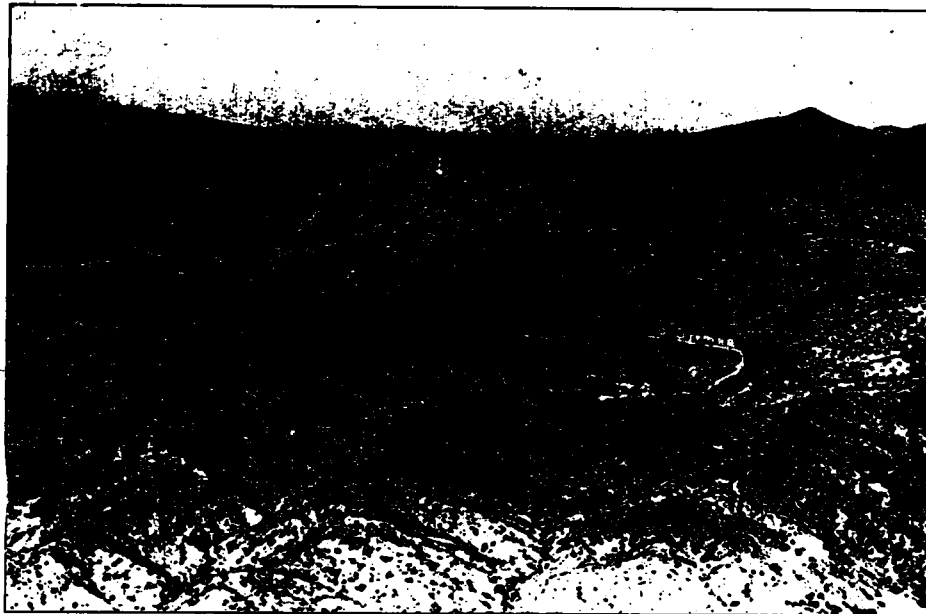
On one occasion, while the officer in charge of the detachment was in the act of piling the scattered hay in front of a horse, he was grabbed by the shoulder and badly injured.

During an operation which covered a period of seven days, three of which included an advance into the enemy country and four in camp, the following observations were made on the tactical employment of the cavalry attached to the column:

First day, September 10. Troops moved out from advance base, with a view to occupying positions for the jump-off next day. A squadron of Spahis covered the right and left flanks during the march, distributed along the column, individually and in small detachments.

Second day, September 11. After the artillery preparation and the advance against the enemy had progressed to include the capture of the first objectives, detachments of Spahis (about 30 men) were thrown out on the right flank to secure this flank from harassing fire and to establish contact with another column advancing well to the right.

On the left flank, which was more exposed, a detachment of Mehalla (about 100 strong) moved out after the infantry had reached the second objective. The country was somewhat open, although very irregular as

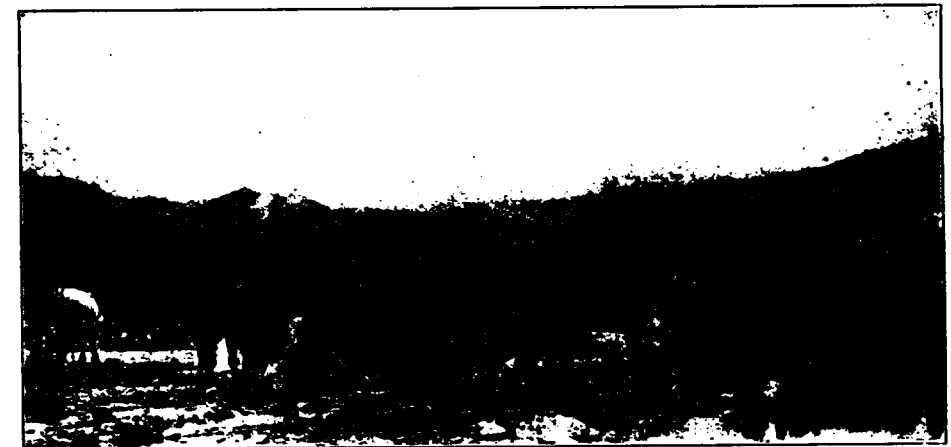


Some Typical Terrain.

to cuts and ravines. A mounted skirmish line preceded the main body by about 500 yards and moved forward rapidly at a gallop from crest to crest, under a harassing fire. The main body followed at a walk and trot, formed in two platoons, with an interval of about 100 yards. It was an inspiring sight to see these cavalymen, mounted on their small ponies, moving forward at a gallop over rough and uncertain terrain, their long blue capes flowing out behind and their white turbans reflecting the sun's rays. There was no hesitation and this flank was well secured where the terrain was open and the Mehalla was able to advance. The loss during this day was eight horses and six men. As a rule no spare horses accompany the cavalry. Where a horse is killed, he is left, but his saddle and equipment are transferred to another horse, while the man mounts double until camp is reached or a convoy encountered.

During this night of September 11-12, the cavalry was sheltered behind a hill, but no water was available for the animals. They were fed grain and did not seem to suffer from lack of water.

During the advance of the 12th the cavalry was assigned to the security of the left flank, which was open. Similar tactics were followed as on the preceding day. Small groups galloped rapidly from hill to hill, dismounted under cover and moved cautiously to the crest to reconnoiter. Upon signal, those in the rear mounted and moved forward rapidly to the next hill. This procedure was followed until the day's objective was reached, the cavalry remaining out until the positions were organized for the night; then they would return within the lines and prepare camp for the night. Cavalry was not used on outpost duty.



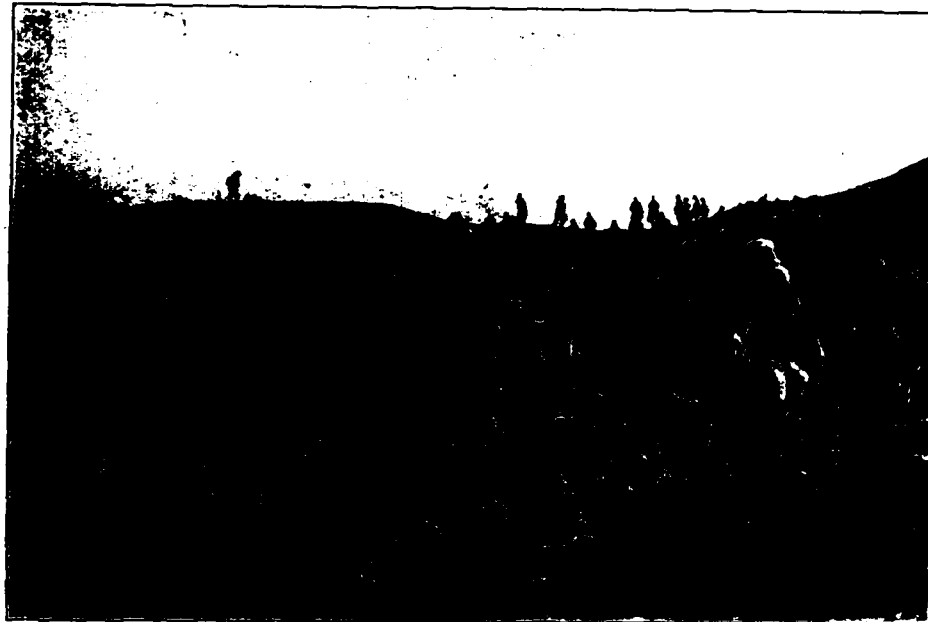
Algerian Cavalry Halting for a Rest.

The advance on this day was made with more precaution than on the preceding days, due to the fact that this country had not been invaded before.

The cavalry remained in camp next day, the men caring for animals and equipment. On the 14th all cavalry was relieved and moved to the rear, where better facilities for water and forage were found. Only a small detachment of about twenty-five men remained to act as couriers. This was the limit of the advance and no further use was to be made of the cavalry, except as couriers.

On only one occasion in 1925 operations was a large concentration of cavalry attempted. On the east front, extending west from Afso, Hassi-Ouenzga and Hassi Medlam is a large plain, extending almost to the Kert River. It is a terrain suitable for cavalry operations during the dry season. On October 5, 1925, the French concentrated one brigade of two

regiments of Spahis and 2,500 Goumiers, mostly from Algeria, in the vicinity of Hassi Ouenzga. In addition, there were infantry units, tanks, artillery and armoured cars. The purpose of this concentration was to make a cavalry dash across the great plain, clearing up the country to the Kert River, and if conditions were favorable, the cavalry was not to be limited in its advance. The reinforced brigade was to follow on and establish a permanent post on the Kert River near Si Bou Roukba, thus shortening the defensive line between Tizi Ouisla and the Spanish at Azib de Medar. Unfortunately, the night of October 5 it rained hard and the



A Group of Mehallas.

cavalry jump-off planned for daylight on the 6th could not be carried out, due to the muddy condition of the terrain. As water was scarce at this point, it was necessary to send all the Algerian Goums some twenty-five kilometers to the rear, where water could be had. On the morning of the 6th, the reinforced brigade, preceded by the brigade of Spahis, advanced via Zag to Sk. el Sept, where contact was gained with the Spaniards at Syah. The advance was continued to Si Bou Roukba, without much resistance. Beyond this point the cavalry, in traversing difficult terrain, met with severe resistance, were forced to fall back on the infantry, and in doing so suffered a reported loss of two hundred horses from the Riffian attacks. This cavalry withdrawal forced the infantry to fall back on Sk. el Sept, also suffering losses from the ferocious attacks of the Riffians

This ended what was intended to be the biggest cavalry operation attempted in 1925.

As illustrating the type of horses most frequently met with in Morocco, the following translation of an extract from *Annuaire Economique et Financier*, Gouvernement Cherifien, Protectorat Francais au Maroc, for 1924, is of interest.

The great majority of the horses found in Morocco belong to the native breed, that is, the Barbary breed.

The Moroccan horse is of medium height (1.45 m. to 1.56 m.) and likewise of average proportions. It has an arched, rounded forehead, convex on all sides, prolonged by a narrow face, and contracted around the side portions of the forehead; the eye-sockets are inconspicuous. The chest is rounded, the withers prominent, the back slightly arched, the rump inclined "like a desk." The thighs are flat, fine, thin and tapering, and tail is attached low, the belly is small, the chest high, the side flattened a little, the limbs delicate and compact, the hocks bent, the hoofs narrow and high. The ears are small and wide. The coat is generally dark gray or bay. On the whole, it is a rather common horse, stockier than the Algerian barb. It has neither the blood, the elegance nor the distinction of the Arab; it is not very brilliant or energetic, but it is sturdy and strong, admirably adapted to its surroundings, its climate, the dry growths of its soil and not very abundant feed. The best types of horses are found in general in the Dukkala and the Sus.



Gaits of Horses

By

Captain FENTON S. JACOBS, Cavalry

THE gaits (manner of moving on foot) of horses may be classified as: The natural gaits and the artificial (acquired). *Natural*, when they are executed in a spontaneous and instinctive manner without any special education. Example: The walk, trot and gallop. Infrequently the pace and running walk are considered natural. Domestication has modified these primitive gaits as it has originated modes of progression which are in reality mere variations of the preceding—therefore, gaits are called *artificial* when they result from special education. Example: The pace or amble, rack or single foot, running walk or fox-trot, canter and racing gallop, infrequently the trot, and the various exercises in the domain of *High School* or rhythmical movements, comparable to dancing as performed by man. Gaits may be further classified as the *diagonal* and *lateral* gaits. Diagonal, when the right fore and left hind feet move simultaneously or consecutively alternating with the left fore and right hind. Example: The walk, trot and gallop. Lateral, when the right fore and right hind feet move simultaneously or consecutively, alternating with the left fore and left hind legs. Example: The pace and rack.

As on other points involving the horse, there are wide differences of opinion between well recognized authorities relative to the so-called artificial gaits. The following discussion, therefore, is based on what is believed to be the opinions of the majority of authorities and the terms most commonly used throughout the United States.

Dictionaries have caused some confusion in this regard by describing the gaits in general terms rather than by using specific terms. As an example: Webster's New International Dictionary, revised to 1921, page 883, under "gait," shows the single foot, rack and amble as synonymous. And the pace, rack and amble as synonymous. Amble, to go easily; canter, a moderate and easy gallop-like gait, such as was supposed to have been used by pilgrims riding to Canterbury, England, to visit the shrine of Thomas á Becket.

There is abundant evidence that the American "pace" of today is the "amble" of Europeans of the last century and earlier.

The U. S. Army Training Regulations 50-45 par. 75, in substance gives the following: *The Walk* is marked by four beats (the sound produced by foot or feet coming in contact with the ground), to the stride. The feet are raised successively and planted in the order in which raised;

for example: right fore, left hind, left fore, right hind (a diagonal gait). The rate of speed of four miles per hour is considered the regulation walk.

Funk and Wagnalls, new standard dictionary, under "movement" (see plate, movement of the horse), shows the walk as a lateral gait. This seeming inconsistency is caused by the fact that twice during the course of a stride the horse at the walk is supported by diagonal legs and twice by lateral legs. In counting the beats should one begin with the fore foot, it is diagonal, should one begin with the hind foot, it is lateral. It is believed, however, that the walk should be considered as a diagonal gait.

Halt. When the speed of the walk is reduced to a complete standstill, it is considered the *Halt*.

Backing is the walk executed backwards; by superior training, horses have been known to trot and gallop backwards.

The Trot, when at eight miles per hour, is called the square trot or regulation trot. "The trot is marked by two beats and a period of suspension. The horse springs from one pair of diagonally disposed feet to the other; between the beats all four feet are in the air. The right fore and left hind are together, called the Right Diagonal pair; the left fore and right hind, the Left Diagonal pair."

Incidentally, it may be interesting to note that because of a \$25,000 bet, between James R. Keene, a famous horse owner, and Senator Leland Stanford, as to whether or not a horse trotting "leaves the ground" during the course of a stride, motion pictures were invented in 1877 by D. Isaacs, retired consulting engineer for the Southern Pacific Company. Leland Stanford, believing the affirmative, won the bet.

The Slow Trot

When the trot is reduced in rate of speed to six miles per hour it is called the slow trot, or the *school trot*. It is used for instruction in equitation, and the rider should "sit the saddle," when at the square trot he should "rise at the trot," which also is sometimes called "posting" at the trot.

The Flying Trot (or Broken Trot)

When the speed of the square trot, of two beats, is increased beyond a certain degree, instead of the diagonal feet being placed simultaneously, the time of suspension becomes greater, and the gait becomes a fast diagonal four-beat gait. Example: Right hind, left fore, left hind, right fore.

Some authorities consider this fast broken trot a "rack," but the majority declare that the rack is a four-beat lateral gait, and the four-beat diagonal gait, as just described, is the *flying trot*.

A few claim the flying trot to be a *single foot*, since dictionaries again confuse us when they describe in general terms the *single foot*, which is a specific gait, as any gait wherein the feet are placed upon the ground separately such as the rack—in other words, any four-beat gait. Stillman,

in his "The Horse in Motion," page 117, describes the *single foot* as follows:

"*Single foot* is an irregular gait rather rare and distinguished by the hind legs moving in the order of a fast walk and the fore legs in that of a slow trot. The mixed gaits are quite compatible, as they are of the same kind and move in the same diagonal order."

As a matter of fact, the *single foot* is so closely related to the fast *running walk* that for practical purposes, I, with many, claim there is no difference.

The Gallop

The Regulation or Maneuvering Gallop is twelve miles per hour. The gallop, like the trot, is *leaped*, but is marked by three beats and a period of *suspension*. Thus, for example, if the horse be galloping with the *right lead*, suspended, the first beat is marked by the left hind foot; the second, by the nearly simultaneous placing of the right hind and left fore, and the third beat, by the placing of the right fore.

A horse is said to gallop with the *right lead* when the right fore is planted later and more advanced than his left fore; and the right hind, later and more advanced than the left hind. When the feet are planted in the inverse order, the horse is said to gallop with the *left lead*. It is a diagonal gait.

A horse gallops "true" when he gallops with the right lead in turning to the right and with the left lead in turning to the left. He gallops "false" when he gallops with the left lead in turning to the right, or conversely.

A horse is said to be *disunited* (a lateral gait) when he gallops with the right lead, with his fore foot and with the left lead, with his hind foot, or conversely. The rider should not permit his horse to gallop disunited.

The Extended Gallop or Running Gallop (the gallop of the race course)

The speed of the cavalry charge is about 16 miles per hour. When the ordinary, three-beat gallop exceeds a certain velocity, about 14 miles per hour, the simultaneous beats of the second contact, of a fore and hind foot, begin to be disassociated, therefore, making four distinct beats and at the same time this gait insensibly passes into a new one, which has received the name of *Running Gallop*. Example: Galloping with the left lead—suspended—the feet are placed in the following order: Right hind, left hind, right fore, left fore.

The Canter

Goubeaux and Barrier, "The Exterior of the Horse," page 527, state in substance:

"The *canter*, closely akin to the gallop, is a diagonal four-beat gait of transition which the trotter assumes temporarily, and in which he gallops on one of his bipeds (fore or hind) while he continues to trot on the other. Should the trotting biped gallop, the gait would then be gradually realized

as the normal gallop. It furnishes little more speed than the trot. Nevertheless, the horse which canters ordinarily suffers in some region of the cantering biped, most often the feet. Under other circumstances it is an index of weakness, of indolence or exhaustion."

The *canter*, as described by the majority of authorities, and as commonly known throughout the United States and the Cavalry, is considered as an eight-mile gallop—a "lope." When the ordinary three-beat, 12-mile gallop is retarded to the speed of eight miles per hour, the horse needs the support of his lateral fore foot during the period of suspension, before the diagonal hind foot reaches the ground, the simultaneous beat of the second contact of a fore and hind foot begins to be dissociated, therefore, making four distinct beats, and which may be described as a four-beat, lateral, leaping gait, with a period of suspension.

The Slow Gallop, of Ancient Horsemanship

This gait, with four beats, is completely rejected today as a true gait. It implied one foot always on the ground and was executed almost *upon place*, being more like a riding school or circus exhibition—"prancing."

The "Pace" or Amble

The *pace* is a natural or an acquired gait, in which the lateral feet (i. e., right fore—right hind) rise and reach the ground simultaneously. As in the trot—a diagonal gait—two beats only are, therefore, heard in the complete stride of the pacing horse. Pacing horses are excluded from the services of the army and the riding school because of the difficulty they experience in passing from this gait into another. The lateral action being very low, is not as well adapted to rough going as the diagonal action. The *pace* is not peculiar to the horse; other animals as the camel, giraffe, ox and dog employ it naturally.

The *Rack* (Roberts, "The Horse," page 93, and Stillman, "The Horse in Motion," page 113, in substance)

"The *Rack* is a modified pace in which the hind foot touches the ground before the leading forefoot. It has a wide range of speed from four to twenty miles per hour."

The Broken Pace or Broken Amble

A variety of the *pace* with four beats. M. Lenoble du Teil, "Etude sur la locomotion des cheval," calls it the "Broken Walk." In reality it is a lateral walk as compared to the natural *diagonal* walk. When the broken amble exceeds the speed of four miles per hour it would appear that it becomes the "Rack."

The Running Walk (Roberts, "The horse," page 93)

This gait should be placed between the trot and the walk, because it establishes very well the transition or the passage from the one to the other. It resembles the walk in that it is marked by four diagonal beats. It is a "walk on the run" if such a thing is possible. The head is usually carried higher than at the walk. It simulates the walk by its slowness;

to the contrary, it is a short broken trot in the last degree, as well as a very accelerated walk in which the horse is at the point of passing into the slow trot. The diagonal hind foot touches the ground just in advance of the diagonal fore foot.

The Fox Trot (Jigging, commonly affected by cowboys using the Stockman's Saddle)

The only text that could be found which attempted to differentiate between a *Fox Trot* and a *Running Walk* was Roberts, "The Horse," page 92.

"The *Fox Trot* is a broken gait corresponding in action to the *Running Walk*. It has the slowest limits of the artificial gaits and can be kept up all day. It has four to six miles per hour rate. A loose rein is always used and the horse is apt to carry his head low."

Five-Gaited Horses (The American Saddle Horse Breeders' Registry, Vol 7, page 5)

"The three-gaited horses should go plain walk, briskly with speed equal to 4 miles per hour; trot steady, straight and true: action enough to be attractive, about 8 miles per hour; and gallop, well balanced with speed equal to 12 miles per hour. Added to the foregoing the five-gaited horse should go running walk or fox trot or slow pace equal to 6 miles per hour. Rack easily without being forced, with speed equal to 12 miles per hour. Must stand quietly, back readily and lead in either foot in the gallop from a halt."



The Seventh Cavalry At The Fiftieth Anniversary of The Battle of The Little Big Horn

By

Captain GEORGE J. McMURRY, Chaplain, 7th Cavalry

PERHAPS the most interesting and historic of peace-time missions was that of the Seventh Cavalry's participation in the Fiftieth Anniversary of the Battle of the Little Big Horn, observed upon the actual soil of the battlefield hallowed by General George A. Custer and his valiant troopers. The fitting memorial observance was initiated and fostered by the National Custer Memorial Association, comprising leading citizens of Montana, Wyoming and South Dakota. In addition to the Regimental Headquarters, Band and Provisional Squadron of the Seventh Cavalry, the Sioux and Cheyenne Indians, the Crow Indians and the veterans of the Indian Wars, contributed to the proper observance and success of the occasion which extended over three days: June 24, 25 and 26.

Despite inclement weather on the day of arrival by special train at the Crow Agency, June 20th, the troops rapidly prepared a model camp on the allotted site at the east end of the village on the bank of the Little Big Horn River. The Provisional Squadron was composed of Troops C, E and F; since these were the now active troops of the five, C, E, F, I and L, which were with General Custer. The guidons of the inactive troops were carried that these three troops might be expanded into the five original lettered troops for the ceremonies. The silk guidons of the twelve lettered troops of the old Seventh were displayed on staffs on the right and left of Colonel Fitzhugh Lee's tent. Each guidon bore a cavalry yellow silk streamer bearing the name of the officer who actually commanded the troop in the battle.

On the Regimental Standard among the battle streamers was a streamer carrying the notation, "George Armstrong Custer—June 25, 1876." These guidons were an object of interest to every visitor, and many veterans rallied about the guidon of their old troop. The camp proved a point of interest and a mecca for a great host of visitors during the Anniversary.

In the evening of the first day the strains of martial music wafted across the hills and echoed among the far-flung ravines as the sun slowly sank behind the Montana hills—for the first time in fifty years the Seventh was standing retreat in the shadow of Custer Ridge. It was a solemn, impressive moment, laden with profound emotions and vivid memories of

the past. Out beyond the camp, across the immortal battlefield, echoed the martial notes, penetrating the appalling silence where

"Glory guards with silent round,
The bivouac of the dead."

On the morrow the Squadron visited the Custer Battlefield, where Colonel Lee and Major A. D. Surles graphically told the officers and enlisted men the story of the battle. The troopers manifested a keen interest in the narrative and asked many pertinent questions.

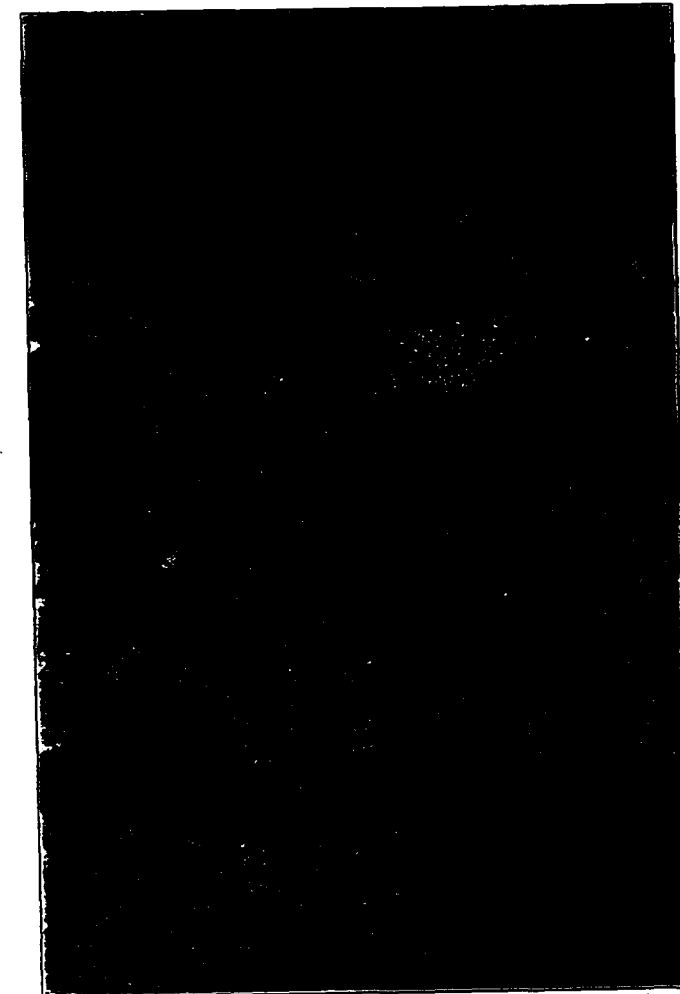


Group of Sioux Who Fought Custer.

Photo by E. A. Brininstool.

Chief White Bull, standing on right holding stone tomahawk, was a sub-chieftan under Gall.

Another event of interest on this day was the visit, late in the evening, of a group of Cheyenne Indians. The warriors, headed by their Chief, Little Wolf, were practically all veterans of the battle and enemies of General Custer. Through the interpreter, Charlie Bent Shoulder Blade, they gave the Indian version of the fight. In the course of the conversation, Colonel Lee mentioned that we were now all friends come to participate in the memorial services, whereupon, led by Little Wolf, the



White-Man-Runs-Him in War Regalia.

Cheyennes broke into a chorus of "hows" in approval, and crowded about the Colonel to shake his hand. They were not very communicative; only occasionally nodding and uttering an "Ugh." This meeting, however, as Colonel Lee remarked, was impressive; since we were probably looking into the faces of some of the very men who annihilated General Custer and his gallant troopers.

An incident of unusual interest and color occurred on the following

morning, when Russell White Bear, a Crow Indian, presented to the Regiment a large, well-drawn and beautifully colored, handsomely framed picture map of Custer's Last Fight, portraying the Indian version. Colonel Lee, standing before the standards and the twelve lettered guidons, formally accepted the descriptive map from the hand of Eloise White Bear,

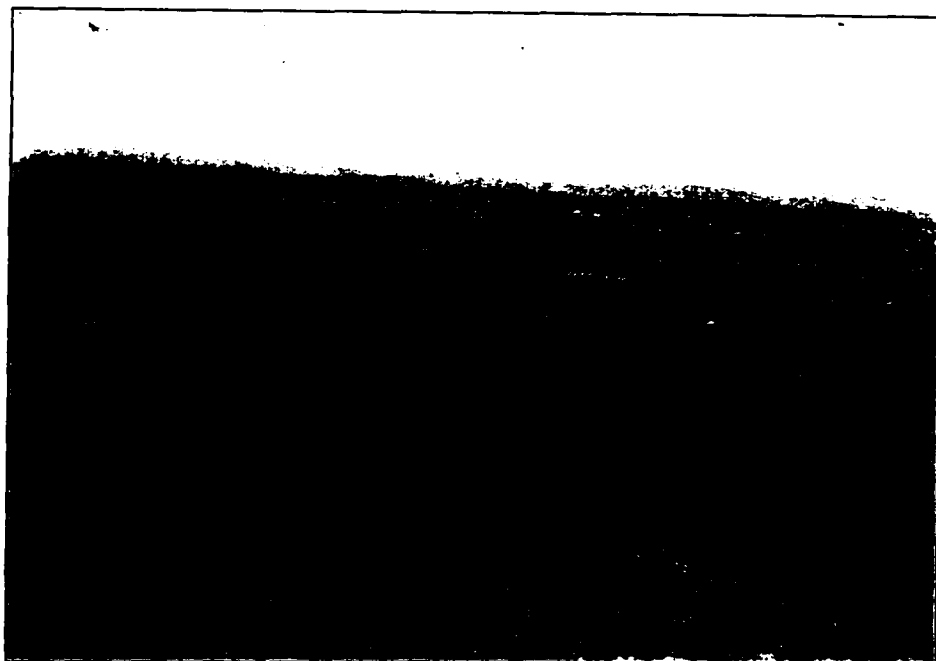


Photo by E. A. Brininstool.

Part of Seventh Cavalry Column Crossing Custer Battlefield.

eight-year-old daughter of Russell White Bear, on behalf of the Regiment. In accordance with Indian custom, the gift was presented by the child of the author and donor. A personal gift, a Hudson Bay blanket, was also made to Colonel Lee by Mr. Jim Shoemaker, Secretary of the National Custer Memorial Association, on behalf of the Association. On the heels of this ceremony came an impressive and historic scene. Came the Cheyenne warriors, bedecked in all their native finery of feathers and war paint, to pay a formal call on the Commanding Officer. After a few compliments and remarks by Colonel Lee, appeared White-Man-Runs-Him, a Crow Indian, 71 years of age, the only surviving scout of General Custer's command, garbed in his full native dress and war paint. He sedately approached Chief Little Wolf, looked at him a few seconds and then prof-

ferred his hand and said "How." The old Cheyenne glared at the Crow for a second or two, slowly extended his hand and said "How." It was a tense moment; for the first time two representatives of the warring tribes, enemies from time immemorial, shook hands as friends. Colonel Lee stood between these two warriors as the movie cameras clicked to record the historic event.

The next day was marked by the visit to the camp of the Indian War



Photo by C. C. Demmer.

An Historic Scene.

Representatives of two tribes that have been foes since time immemorial "bury the hatchet." Chief Little Wolf (on the right), Northern Cheyenne, shaking hands with White-Man-Runs-Him, only surviving Crow Scout of General Custer's command.

Veterans, commanded by John H. Brandt, National Commander, and the arrival of Brigadier-General Edward S. Godfrey (retired), who commanded Troop K in the battle. Among the Veterans formed before Colonel Lee's tent were a good many former Seventh cavalymen, a few of whom, Theodore W. Goldin, Troop G; W. C. Slaper, Troop M; D. J. Newell, Troop H; W. E. Morris, Troop M; Charles Windolph, Troop H; Fremont Kipp, Troop D, were in the battle of the Little Big Horn with Major Reno.

After being greeted with "Garry Owen" by the band, General Godfrey gave a short talk to the Veterans. Colonel Lee made a brief talk and presented each former trooper of the Seventh with a Garry Owen (regimental) insignia.

The following day, June 24, ushered in the three-day Anniversary program, which formally opened in the forenoon with a flying exhibition by Army and Marine Corps flyers, and a parade by the Seventh Cavalry and the Sioux, Cheyenne and Crow Indians. This latter was a resplendent feature. The Seventh headed the column, composed of troopers and warriors in their full war regalia, a host of former enemies, now friends, come to pay tribute to white and red heroes, who died in battle fifty years ago, and to honor the memory of General Custer, Chief "Long Hair." The column passed the reviewing stand where, with pride and a tearful eye, stood General Godfrey and Mrs. Godfrey, Mrs. May Custer Elmer, grandniece of General Custer, Mrs. Nina Sturgis Dousman, daughter of Colonel Samuel Sturgis, Commanding Officer of the Seventh during General Custer's time, Colonel and Mrs. Herbert Slocum, formerly of the 7th Cavalry, Mrs. Mary Roberts Rinehart, G. L. Yates, son of Captain George W. Yates, killed with General Custer, members of the National Custer Memorial Association and the Indian War Veterans. At the close of the parade the Squadron staged a spectacular charge over a high, steep bank into and across the Little Big Horn River near the village. This was a thrilling scene with real action. The troopers hit the water at the extended gallop, driving water and spray in every direction. One woman fainted when she saw some of the troopers and horses fall and roll in the water and mud.

This day was also marked by the visit to the Reno-Benteen Battlefield by General Godfrey, Colonel Lee, E. A. Brininstool, author of "A Trooper with Custer," W. C. Slaper, Theodore Goldin, Daniel Newell and other distinguished visitors and veterans. General Godfrey pointed out the disposition of the troops on Reno Hill and indicated where his Troop (K) was located during the siege. Slaper and Goldin showed where Major Reno crossed the river and encountered the Indians, where Reno made his second stand at the river after which, driven by a merciless fire from overwhelming numbers, they hurriedly and in some confusion, forded the river and fell back upon the heights above the fording point. Deep emotions registered on the faces of those old troopers as they stood on the hill and identified and pointed out each spot of interest. There was the ravine up which they clambered in retreat, and there, further to the southward, was the ravine used by the famous water-carrier detail of which Slaper and Goldin were heroic members on an errand of mercy. Down there, on the east bank, poor Lieutenant Hodgson fell after having desperately tried to save himself, although wounded and unseated in mid-stream. Beyond, out there in the flat, Lieutenant McIntosh of G Troop

was killed. To the north of him, about 700 yards, Charlie Reynolds, the Chief of Scouts, was found. In that wood at the river Turley of M Troop was found with a butcher knife buried to the handle in his right eye. "Right here on the edge of that jutting ridge I passed Dr. DeWolf's body as I came up," said Slaper. Referring to the water-carrying, Slaper remarked to Daniel Newell: "Dan, you remember; you were in the hospital.

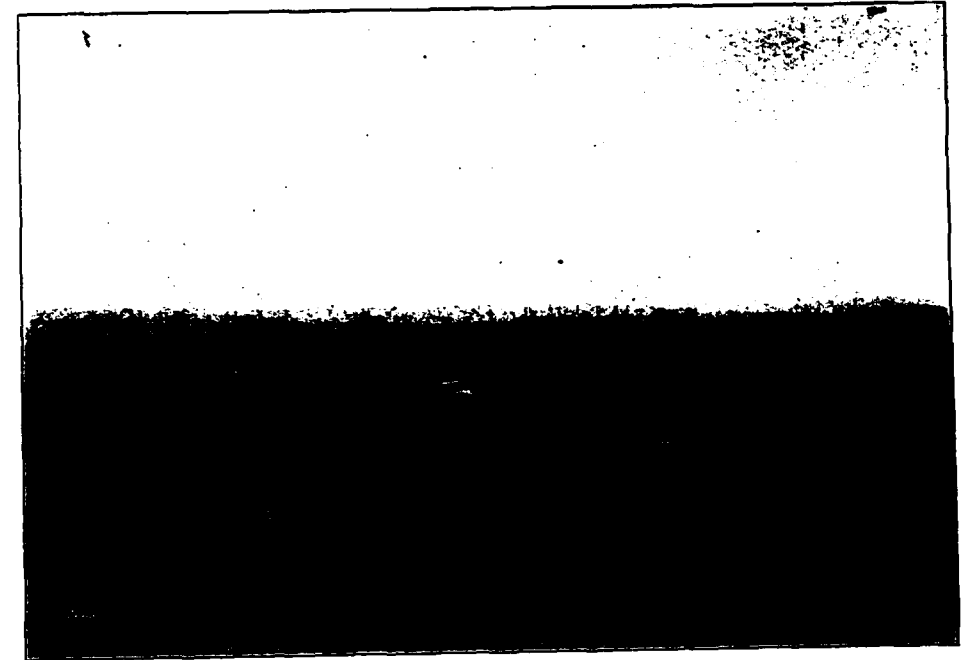


Photo by E. A. Brininstool.

An Historic Spot.

Ravine down which water carriers went from Reno's position on morning of June 26, 1876. Indian village occupied the entire valley. Reno's first position extended across valley from wood in middle distance to line of trees beyond; his second position was in the wood.

I gave the water first to B—because he was my bunkie, and then to you." Mr. Slaper was also one of the detail which buried General Custer.

And then dawned Memorial Day of the Anniversary: June 25. The details of the day's program were arranged by Mrs. Rinehart, Mr. Shoemaker and Lieutenant R. L. Freeman, 7th Cavalry, who had arrived in advance to complete arrangements. The Squadron, representing the five troops, C, E, F, I and L, which rode with General Custer, headed by General Godfrey, Colonel Lee and White-Man-Runs-Him, the Crow scout, proceeded up Custer Ridge from the south while the Sioux and Cheyenne war-

rriors, garbed in their war regalia and led by White Bull, a Sioux subchieftan under Chief Gall, the genius of the battle, approached from the north. The heads of the columns met at the Custer Monument and General Godfrey and White Bull exchanged peace signs and clasped hands in token of friendship. General Godfrey presented the Chief with a mounted flag and then White Bull reciprocated with a white Hudson Bay blanket.



Photo by E. A. Brininstool.

A Pledge of Amity.

General E. S. Godfrey, Chief White Bull (Sioux), and Colonel Fitzhugh Lee on Custer Ridge, June 25, 1926. General Godfrey and White Bull shaking hands in recognition of peace and amity between Red Men and White.

Following this part of the ceremony, a designated troop fired three volleys over the grave markers on the eastern slope of the ridge. After the crash of the volleys, the thousands who thronged the ridge uncovered and bowed their heads in silence as "Taps" echoed and re-echoed among those

historic hills and ravines, hallowed by Custer and his heroic troopers. Everyone felt the significance of that "farewell," the soldier's requiem. Fifty years ago General Custer and five gallant troops were riding to this spot—and to their glorious death. At the conclusion of "Taps" the troopers of the new Seventh and the old warriors rode down from the historic ridge in column of twos—an Indian on the right and a trooper on the left—friends. This was a scene which will never be again enacted: it is with the ages now.

The last day was marked by the burial of the Unknown Trooper, whose bones were found by some road workmen near the river between Major Reno's first and second lines of defense. The Trooper was accorded full military honors. Six sergeants of the Seventh were active pallbearers, while some of his former comrades of the old Seventh acted as honorary pallbearers. The funeral cortege proceeded from the Crow Agency to the National Custer Memorial plot on the Custer Battlefield Highway opposite the railroad station of Garry Owen. A simple interment service was conducted at the grave, consisting of a brief eulogy and the committal service in which dust from the bank of the Little Big Horn River was used. The service was largely attended by visitors, the Indian War Veterans, the Sioux and Cheyenne Indians and General Godfrey. The flag which covered the casket was given to General Godfrey and the wreath for the occasion was presented to the Regiment by the Memorial Association. In the crypt of the monument to mark the grave was placed a collection of photographs of General Custer, of former officers, and of Fort Abraham Lincoln; a Garry Owen insignia; a Montana edition of the Garry Owen Trumpeter, and Chief White Bull's tomahawk. The Chief explained that he wished "to show in that way that enmity between the Red Man and the White was at an end." On this afternoon the site on Reno's Hill for a proposed monument was also indicated by the Veterans. A white wooden cross marks the spot.

In the afternoon the Seventh in a fitting way rounded out its participation in the Anniversary with a review to General Godfrey, the Veterans and the distinguished visitors. The guests were then delighted with some exhibition drills and a flank attack in which a saber charge and airplanes were featured. Amid plaudits and praises, and as good wishes of the great throng rang in the ears of the troopers, the Seventh left the field—perhaps never to meet again. Then came the saddest moment of all: saying "goodbye" to the Veterans, the sturdy winners of the rugged West.

In conclusion, a word should be said in recognition of the Regimental Band and the Rough-Riding Squad, and of the courtesy of the press and motion-picture men, and of the National Custer Memorial Association.

The band played frequently in addition to a series of concerts given in the plaza at the Crow Agency. In several of their concerts they fea-

tured "Custer's Last Stand," the musical interpretation of Custer's last fight, "The Black Hills March," by John Burri, a former chief trumpeter of the old Seventh Cavalry, and "Garry Owen."

The Regimental Rough-Riding Squad appeared on the program in connection with the Crow Indian rodeo, and thrilled the visitors with their spectacular and dare-devil riding. They featured Roman riding, pyramid riding at a gallop, dead man's fall, hurdles, tail drag, rescue riding, riding backward, Indian riding, individual riding stunts and the leap through a ring of fire.

We are very grateful to the National Custer Memorial Association in general, and to Mr. J. A. Shoemaker and Mr. Jacob Marquisee in particular, for the whole-hearted hospitality accorded us, and for the colossal task of arranging the details of the Anniversary program and entertaining the great host of visitors which was estimated at more than 100,000 for the three days.

Surely every officer, soldier and civilian spectator will carry in his memory always the picturesque setting and impressiveness of this remarkable peace-time mission and the incidents of that week on the Little Big Horn Battlefield.



Military Personnel In State Courts

By

Captain ELBRIDGE COLBY, Infantry

A FEDERAL statute declares that when any revenue officer finds himself faced by a civil suit or criminal prosecution in any State court for "any act done under color of his office . . . the said suit may, at any time before the trial or hearing thereof, be removed for trial into the Circuit Court next to be holden" in the Federal district where the suit is pending, simply upon the petition of the defendant to the Circuit Court (Sec. 67, Act of July 13, 1866; 14 Stat. 171 (R. S. 643)).

The days of State Sovereignities were passed. The Civil War was over. The Federal Government had been proved supreme. The days of the *Worcester v. Georgia* (6 Peters 534) decision of John Marshall unenforced by the Chief Executive were done and gone. Federal revenue agents were penetrating the mountainous regions where moonshine is in the woods as well as in the sky. If these Federal Officers got into trouble, they could not expect fair trials from folk who considered them meddling "foreigners." The authorized officers of the Washington government had to be sustained and protected, in enforcing revenue laws just as well as nowadays in enforcing prohibition laws. (See "Double Jeopardy and Prohibition," by E. Colby, in *The American Review*, 643). And as a matter of fact, today this protection is extended them by the simple process of giving prohibition enforcement agents commissions as internal revenue officers.

Before long the matter came to an issue. A "revenuer," who had killed a man in Tennessee, was charged with murder under the laws of that State. His petition for removal of the case to the Circuit Court went eventually to the Supreme Court of the United States, where the constitutionality of the statute was upheld in the year 1879. (*Tennessee v. Davis*, 100 U. S. 257). In this, the leading case, Mr. Justice Strong included in his opinion the following passages:

"As was said in *Martin v. Hunter* (1 Wheat. 363), 'the general government must cease to exist whenever it loses the power of protecting itself in the exercise of its constitutional powers.' It can act only through its officers and agents, and they must act within the States. If, when thus acting, and within the scope of their authority, those officers can be arrested and brought to trial in a State court, for an alleged offense against the law of the State, yet warranted by the Federal authority they possess, and if the general government is powerless to interfere at once

for their protection,—if their protection must be left to the action of the State court,—the operations of the general government may at any time be arrested at the will of one of its members. . . . We do not think such an element of weakness is to be found in the constitution. The United States is a government with authority extending over the whole territory of the Union, acting upon the States and upon the people of the States. While it is limited in the number of its powers, so far as its sovereignty extends it is supreme."

The problem which then arises is whether or not this protection of Federal officers against local prejudices is extended to others than the revenue agents. Are not others who hold their special status as employees of the Washington government equally liable to suffer at the hands of local sentiment as reflected in a local sheriff, local prosecuting attorney, and local jury?

In Nebraska, some years ago, a prisoner escaped from the guard house at Fort Crook and was only caught up with when some three miles off the military reservation. Members of the guard pursuing him under orders, called to him to halt, and when he failed to obey, shot him dead. The two soldiers were tried by court-martial for manslaughter and acquitted. The civilian county sheriff thereupon seized them on the charge of murder. The plea of previous trial was swept aside on the ground of separate jurisdictions. (*Moore v. Illinois*, 14 How. 13; *U. S. v. Clark*, 31 Fed. 710; *State v. Rankin*, 4 Cold. (Tenn.), 145; *Coleman v. Tennessee*, 97 U. S. 506; Bennett, *Military Law and Courts Martial*, pp. 100-102). But the Circuit Court for the District of Nebraska granted the petition for the release of the two soldiers of the guard (*In re Fair*, 100 Fed. 149), saying that "an act done by an officer or agent of the United States in and about a matter solely within federal control, and in pursuance of an authority given by the laws of the United States, is not an offense against the laws of the State." (Citing *Tennessee v. Davis*, 100 U. S. 257, and *In re Neagle*, 135 U. S. 1).

The court added: "Neither can it be denied that, when an officer or agent of the United States is held in custody by the process of a state court for an act done within the authority conferred upon him by the laws of the United States, the United States government may protect itself by procuring the release of such officer through its judicial department." (*In re Fair*, 100 Fed. 149).

It was later said, in another case, "a court or judge of the United States has power to issue a writ of habeas corpus on petition of the United States for the purpose of an inquiry into the cause of detention of a prisoner held by a State to answer to a criminal charge, where it is alleged by the petitioner that the act charged as a crime was committed by the prisoner in the performance of his duty as a soldier of the United States; and it has authority to determine summarily as a fact whether or not such allegation is true, and, if found to be true, to discharge the

prisoner on the ground that the State is without jurisdiction to try him for such act." (*U. S. v. Lipsett, ex parte Gillette*, 156 Fed. 65.)

The tendency all the time was to secure simple justice, to protect the federal government in the enforcement of its laws through its officers, and to protect those officers from local prejudices. Statutory enactments gave temporary relief and certain summary rights. (R. S. 752, 753, 761.) But it took a serious revision of military law to give a general and correct protection.

This principle enunciated by Judge Munger in the *Fair* case has been adopted into statutory enactments, and it is now provided that any civil or criminal case commenced in a State Court "against any officer, soldier or other person in the military service, on account of any act done under color of his official status, or in respect of which he claims any right, title or authority under any law of the United States" may be removed for trial into the United States District of that region. (Article of War No. 117; Act of August 29, 1916, 39 Stat. 619; Act of June 4, 1920, 41 Stat. 759.)

Sometimes statutes precede the court decisions which make the law certain, as in the Tennessee case of the revenueur (*Tennessee v. Davis*, 100 U. S. 257). Sometimes the court paves the way by establishing the needed principle (*In re Fair*, 100 Fed. 149, and Article of War No. 117, ut supra), or indicates the need of general or special legislation. (Cf. *Regina v. Keyn*, L. R. (1905), 2 K. B. 391, with 41 and 42 Vict. c. 73. Cf. *People v. McLead*, 25 Wend. 483, 26 Wend. 663, with Act of August 29, 1842, R. S. 7534, 2 Moore's *Digest of International Law*, 24-30. Cf. *The Charming Betsy*, 2 Cranch, 64, with Act of January 31, 1805, 6 Stat. 56. See also *The Mentor*, 1 C. Rob. 179, and *The Acteon*, 2 Roscoe, 209, 211.) Sometimes the court stretches statutes and treaties to the limit in order to do substantial justice. (*Techt v. Hughes*, 229 N. Y. 222.) But often the court is powerless in the absence of statute (*Regina v. Keyn*, L. R. (1905), 2 K. B. 391), or in the face of statute. (*ex parte Larrucea*, 249 Fed. 961.)

The object always is to do justice. The object of legislation and of court proceedings is just that. The *Fair* and the *Tennessee v. Davis* cases indicate the liability of friction between local community opinion and persons connected with the federal government. A federal judge in California was publicly threatened. A deputy marshal assigned to protect him shot and killed the sworn enemy when that enemy in the presence of the judge reached into a bit of luggage where a loaded pistol or revolver lay ready to hand. And the federal government offered removal. A colored soldier in the regular army was shot and killed in a southern town and the white slayer was rapidly freed in court proceedings marked by many references to the years from 1861 to 1865 and to "our sainted and beloved commander, General Robert E. Lee."

There are many vicinities where the uniform of the United States Army is anathema to the civil populace, and feeling runs as bitter as between town and gown in mediaeval university days.

As far as the interests of real justice are concerned, what difference does it make who is the defendant and who the accuser, soldier or civilian. The same community sentiment, governed by right in some cases, and swayed by prejudice in others, rules the psychology of the court room and the jury box. It is submitted that the right of removal should apply equally whether the matter at issue arise from an official or from a personal act—provided it be grave enough—and whether the soldier or the civilian be the defendant.

There has been in years past a tendency to attempt to throw a mantle of protection about soldiers of the nation somewhat similar to the right of trial by ecclesiastical court once provided for members of the clergy. It has been felt that the apparent "double jeopardy" involved in the possibility of two trials for the same act as offenses against two separate jurisdictions (*Moore v. Illinois*, 14 How. 13; *U. S. v. Clark*, 31 Fed. 710; *Coleman v. Tennessee*, 97 U. S. 506; *In re Stubbs*, 33 Fed. 1012; *In re Fair*, 100 Fed. 149; 3 Op. Atty. Gen. 749; 6 Op. Atty. Gen. 413; Dig. Op. J. A. G., ed. 1912, pp. 168-169) should be done away with. In the Philippine Islands a soldier on sentry duty shot and killed a civilian. After trial and acquittal by court-martial, he was brought before a civil court on the charge of murder. The case went to the Supreme Court of the United States, boosted along through voluntary contributions for counsel and court fees made by army personnel. The soldier was freed by the Supreme Court on the plea of previous trial, because the Philippine Court and the court-martial derived from the same jurisdiction, that of the federal government, through legislative acts of the same body, the Congress of the United States. (*Grafton v. U. S.*, 206 U. S. 333.) Such was the point upon which the case turned. It was stated in addition, however, that had the two courts been one a court-martial and one a State court within the Continental limits of the country, the plea would have been denied and that a soldier can be tried by both state and military courts for the same act. (In line with *Moore v. Illinois*, and other cases mentioned *supra*.) This, of course, was *dictum* in this particular case, sound though it might be in general. The re-statement of the principle, however, had the effect of checking for a time the agitation for the creation of special military privilege.

It had been felt that since members of the army are subject to trial by court-martial with a personal rather than a territorial jurisdiction over persons in the service (Dig. Op. J. A. G., 1912, pp. 510, 1072), the army should be left to discipline its own members, even for non-military offenses. Its members have a peculiar and different status from ordinary citizens. (*In re Morrissey*, 137 U. S. 157; *In re Grimley*, 137

U. S. 147.) Its courts-martial are lawful tribunals. (*Grafton v. U. S.*, 206 U. S. 333, 347.) "The whole proceeding from its inception is judicial. The trial, findings and sentence are the solemn acts of a court organized and conducted under the authority and according to the prescribed forms of law. It sits to pass upon the most sacred questions of human right that are ever placed on trial in a court of justice; rights which, in the very nature of things, can neither be exposed to danger nor entitled to protection from the uncontrolled will of any man, but which must be judged according to law. And the act of the officer who reviews the proceedings of the court, whether he be the commander or the president, and without whose approval the sentence cannot be executed, is as much a part of this judgment, according to law, as is the trial or the sentence." (11 Ops. Atty. Gen., 19, 21.)

The military service is very jealous of its good name and of the good name of its members. It tries officers and soldiers for conduct unbecoming an officer and a gentleman and for conduct of a nature to bring discredit upon the military service, even so trying retired officers and soldiers. (Articles of War No. 95 and No. 96; Manual for Courts-Martial, U. S. Army, 1921, p. 462.) It is a matter of common practice to prefer charges under these heads against military personnel who may have been arrested, tried and convicted by civilian authorities for "downtown" offenses of a non-military nature. There exists a tendency in the army to attach as promptly as possible in any cases where the military and the civilian law might have concurrent jurisdiction. (Dig. Ops. J. A. G., ed. 1912, p. 170.) It is desired that in general army men should be tried by army courts.

In cases arising in which soldiers and civilians are concerned, the army—with its perfectly valid courts and its deeper understanding of soldier psychology—would wish to have exclusive jurisdiction. Under existing legislation (Article of War No. 117, cited above), it is only possible to secure removal from State to Federal jurisdiction. It is also not possible to try civilian defendants by courts-martial except in a limited class of cases concerned with persons connected with the army or involved in war offenses such as spying. (Morgan, *Jurisdiction Over Non-Military Persons*, in 4 Minnesota Law Review, 79.)

It has been suggested that all cases arising between soldiers and civilians, whoever might be the defendant, should be transferred to courts-martial just as the revenue officer cases may be transferred to federal district courts. Such a procedure, however, would probably be as unfair to the civilians as a trial before a prejudiced jury would be today to a soldier. The civilian would not be acquainted with military court procedure. And it might seem as if the soldier were trying to secure trial for himself before his friends.

Justice is all that is desired. Justice would be secured by removal to a "neutral" court, by the removal of all cases in which soldiers and

civilians are concerned to the federal district courts, whoever might be the defendant. Such removal to a federal court would carry with it the right of transfer from one federal district to another, and the assurance of an absolutely fair judgment. Such a right of transfer now exists by virtue of statute in cases where the military man is the defendant. It does not exist where the military is involved, but the defendant is a civilian. Yet, when prejudice arises between town and fort, between soldiers and adjacent civilian communities, it really makes no difference as far as real justice is concerned which one may be the defendant. Equally, the removal would be desirable. Such removal cannot now be effected under existing law. The problem is not one for the courts, but rather one which as the legal man would say, "must be left to the determination of the political departments of the government." New legislation will be necessary. And such legislation would plainly be in the interests of justice for those citizens who have taken solemn oaths to support the Constitution and to defend the nation.

If such legislation were enacted, it would not be abused. The present statute giving the right of removal when the military man is the defendant is but rarely invoked. It is only called into play when the possibility of a fair trial seems but slight in the state courts. The army would not wish to antagonize the people, dependent upon them as it is for financial support through legislative appropriations, and would only invoke the force of a statute in cases where a civilian is defendant for a tort or a crime against a soldier in which it palpably appears to the responsible military officials that justice may not be easy of attainment.



The Junior Polo Championship

By

Major K. S. BRADFORD, Cavalry

THE Junior Polo Championship of the United States was played on the fine new field of the Westchester-Biltmore Country Club at Rye, New York, between four teams, representing the United States Army, Meadow Brook, Bryn Mawr and Greenwich.

This event is second in importance only to the open championship. It is limited to teams carrying not more than 20 goals handicap and to individuals carrying not more than 6 goals. Its purpose is to develop players for the open championship, as Eric Pedley of the Midwick Team of California was developed, or rather discovered, to Eastern polo in 1924.

No attempt was made by the Army this year to tour the country for material, as was done by Major Beard two years ago and last year, due probably to lack of appropriations this year. Lieutenant-Colonel Brown, chairman of the War Department Polo Committee, however, selected six players who reported at Mitchel Field, Long Island, about three weeks before the tournament, for preliminary training.

Major Chamberlin, appointed captain of the team, had been captain of the Fort Bliss team which won the National 12-Goal Intercircuit Tournament last year. He is an experienced player and all-around horseman, having been an instructor in horsemanship at the Cavalry School. He is also a graduate of the foreign schools at Saumur and Tor di Quinto. Captain Gerhardt, the only veteran of last year's Army Team, has also been an instructor in horsemanship at the Cavalry School. His rise in polo has been remarkably rapid. Lieutenant Benson, a young player, is a product of regimental polo, as is also Lieutenant Larry Smith (not Lieutenant John Smith of last year's team). Major Greenwald is an experienced player, but this is his first trip to a major tournament. Major J. K. Brown has been director of horsemanship at the Cavalry School and is a graduate of Saumur. He reported late for training and did not get into any of the championship games.

A nucleus of ponies was available from last year's team, which was supplemented by the private ponies of the members of the team. It is safe to say that this year's team was the best mounted that the Army ever put in the field.

The three weeks prior to the games were taken up in training and playing practice games against progressively stronger teams on the fields around Meadow Brook, Long Island. These were considerably curtailed by rainy weather.

First Game

The first game was played on Monday, July 31st, between Bryn Mawr

and Greenwich, thus changing the Army's first opponent from the weakest entry to the strongest, based on handicap ratings.

The Bryn Mawr team lined up in exactly the reverse order from that expected, No. 1 and back, and No. 2 and No. 3, exchanging positions. The change was justified by the result of the game, which was won by Bryn Mawr, 19 to 4. This team was better mounted, showed better team-work and was in every way more experienced than its opponent.

Mr. Earle at No. 1 was a steady, accurate hitter, who scored most of his team's goals and failed only in rare instances to convert his opportunities into points. Mr. McFadden at No. 2 played a good, all-around game, being constantly on the ball and feeding his No. 1 exceptionally well, without any tendency whatsoever toward a selfish desire to score himself. Mr. Gatins, No. 3, supported his No. 2 strongly and scored at several opportune moments. As the score indicates, there was very little defensive work to be done, but what little existed was creditably performed by Mr. Belmont at back, who also came through twice to score. Bryn Mawr's team-work was good. The players coached each other, "left" or "took" the ball, backed each other up and interchanged positions almost instinctively.

For Greenwich, Mr. Bontecou and Mr. Platt, at No. 1 and No. 2, had few opportunities to score, but the former succeeded once and the latter twice, Mr. Bontecou scoring after a long run and Mr. Platt the first time by a gentle tap of the ball accurately placed in front of the goal by Mr. Bontecou. Mr. Barrett and R. S. Allison, the latter the professional for Greenwich, were not equal defensively to stemming the tide of Bryn Mawr's goals. Mr. Barrett is a long, but inaccurate, hitter. Allison, trying to play more than his own position on an inexperienced team, worked hard, but in so doing, allowed the opposing No. 1 too free a rein, with disastrous results. Greenwich might have done better had they played a purely defensive game, each man guarding his opponent closely throughout, with little or no thought of scoring themselves.

The Greenwich team, carrying only a 12-goal handicap, deserves great credit for entering a flat tournament for 20-goal teams, with defeat their almost certain portion. Their good sportsmanship is sure to pay high dividends in experience and pave the way to future victories. They held a potentially much stronger team to a close score until half time, out-scored them in the fifth chukker, and only thereafter succumbed to the inevitable, still fighting hard at the last whistle.

SUMMARY

Bryn Mawr—19

No. 1 Mr. Earle
No. 2 Mr. McFadden
No. 3 Mr. Gatins
Back Mr. Belmont

Greenwich—4

No. 1 Mr. Bontecou
No. 2 Mr. Platt
No. 3 Mr. Barrett
Back R. S. Allison

Goals

Bryn Mawr: Mr. Earle, 13; Mr. McFadden, 1; Mr. Gatins, 3 (1 by foul); Mr. Belmont, 2.

Greenwich: Mr. Bontecou, 1; Mr. Platt, 2; R. S. Allison, 1 (by foul).

Score by Chukkers	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	Total
Bryn Mawr	1	3	1	1	1	4	5	3	19
Greenwich	0	0	0	1	2	1	0	0	4

Second Game

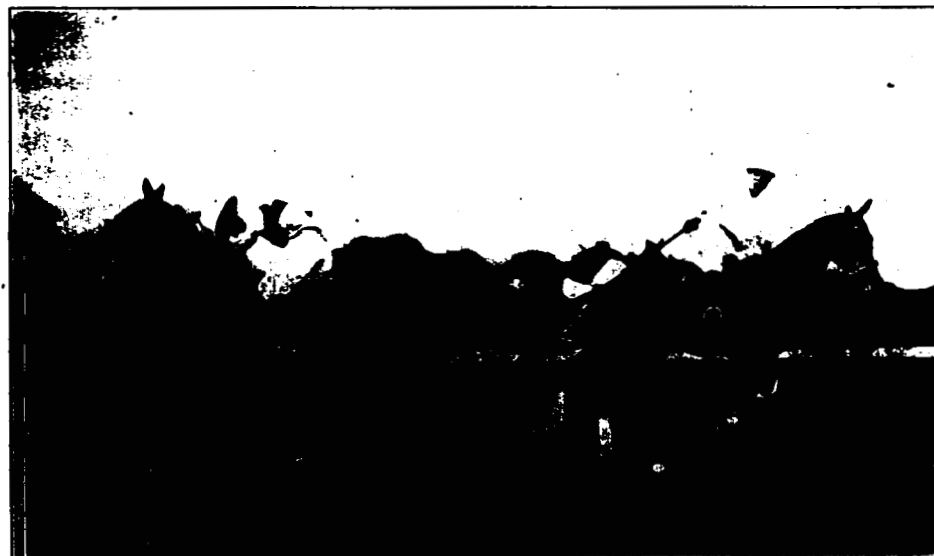
Wednesday, August 4th, was one of the most sweltering days of the summer. Score: Army, 8; Meadow Brook, 7. The game was as hard fought and tense as the one point victory indicates. Good sportsmanship predominating, the rival captains agreed to call time for falls, broken equipment and other accidents.

Play started slowly, over-anxiety on the part of the players resulting in considerable missing and bunching up. In the first chukker each team made a goal from scrimmage near their opponent's goal, Lieutenant Benson scoring for the Army, Mr. Roe for Meadow Brook. In the second chukker, the play began to stretch out, the Army, however, still having difficulty lengthening out their shots, many of which hit their ponies' legs. Another goal for each team, this time after pretty runs down the field, Major Greenwald counting for Army, Mr. Wanamaker for Meadow Brook. From then on the pace became exceedingly fast. Army broke the tie with a two-goal lead; the first being scored by Lieutenant Benson, after Captain Gerhardt had retrieved the ball from a rush by Meadow Brook, the second by Major Chamberlin, who stopped a Meadow Brook shot with his pony. Half time was reached without further scoring, although the ball was continually rushed from the vicinity of one goal to the other. The backs on both teams were fighting desperately to stave off these rushes. Captain Gerhardt saved a sure Meadow Brook goal when he backed a hard hit ball out of danger, which was only inches short of the goal and immediately between the posts.

After Meadow Brook had missed a free shot, the result of an Army safety, Mr. Roe made a very pretty goal for his team. Both teams rode their opponents hard. A long run by Meadow Brook failed of conversion. Lieutenant Benson took the ball in his own territory and after a long run, in which he was never headed, evened the count for the chukker. In the sixth, Lieutenant Benson carried the ball to the corner of the field, extricated it from dead territory and scored from scrimmage near the goal. Mr. Talbot missed a close shot for Meadow Brook and Major Chamberlin scored from scrimmage, after a run to the Meadow Brook goal. At the beginning of the seventh chukker, Captain Gerhardt captured the ball, dribbled, turned, carried it to goal and scored unaided.

The score was now 8 to 3 in favor of the Army, and it looked as though the game was about over. But Meadow Brook had only begun to

fight, and now made a gallant uphill bid for victory, which was destined to fall only one point short of sending the game into extra periods. Mr. Wanamaker rushed the ball to the goal, where Mr. Talbot scored. The latter just missed an easy goal a moment later, but soon retrieved himself by making his second goal of the chukker, after a run down the field by his team. The covering was so close at this point that three pairs of opponents successively rode over a dead ball without a single stroke being made, before Mr. Talbot was able to turn and pick it up. It was exactly



Army-Meadow Brook Game.

Major Chamberlin and Mr. R. Wanamaker, 2nd, after the ball.

like a position diagram in the books on polo. Lieutenant Benson then made a long unassisted run to goal, but missed. Meadow Brook followed with a long run, converted by Mr. Roe. Another long run went astray, but Mr. Talbot scored from scrimmage, Mr. Wanamaker hit the ball from the center of the field almost to the goal, where Mr. Talbot missed as the final whistle blew.

For the Army, Captain Gerhardt, at No. 2, and Major Chamberlin, at No. 3, played great polo. The former is a finished hitter, follows the ball like a hawk and keeps his No. 1 busy picking up his passes forward. The latter is a steady, dependable pivot man, who supports equally well his forwards and his back. He makes a fine team captain. Lieutenant Benson, at No. 1, is brilliant at times, but has a tendency to get too much into the game, which sometimes results in lost opportunities. Major Green-

wald is a hard fighting, determined back, who never concedes an opponent's goal until it is through the posts.

For Meadow Brook, Mr. Smith, Mr. Talbot and Mr. Roe fought hard for scores. They are longer hitters than the Army players and never failed to try the shot at goal from any reasonable distance. Had their long shots carried a little better direction, the result of the game might have been very different. Mr. Wanamaker is one of the longest hitters in polo; on one knock-in, his ball went over the heads of all the players to rest almost in the exact center of the field. He played a strong game, with the handicap of a sprained ankle.

The teams were about evenly mounted, the Army ponies suffered perhaps a bare shade in speed. Neither team made a goal from foul, of which latter a number were made by each. Proficiency in this respect would have won the game for either.

SUMMARY

Army—8

No. 1 Lieutenant Benson
No. 2 Captain Gerhardt
No. 3 Major Chamberlin
Back Major Greenwald

Meadow Brook—7

No. 1 Mr. Smith
No. 2 Mr. Talbot
No. 3 Mr. Roe
Back Mr. Wanamaker

Goals

Army: Lieutenant Benson, 4; Captain Gerhardt, 1; Major Chamberlin, 2; Major Greenwald, 1.

Meadow Brook: Mr. Talbot, 3; Mr. Roe, 3; Mr. Wanamaker, 1.

Score by Chukkers

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	Total
Army	1	1	2	0	1	2	1	0	8
Meadow Brook	1	1	0	0	1	0	2	2	7

Third Game

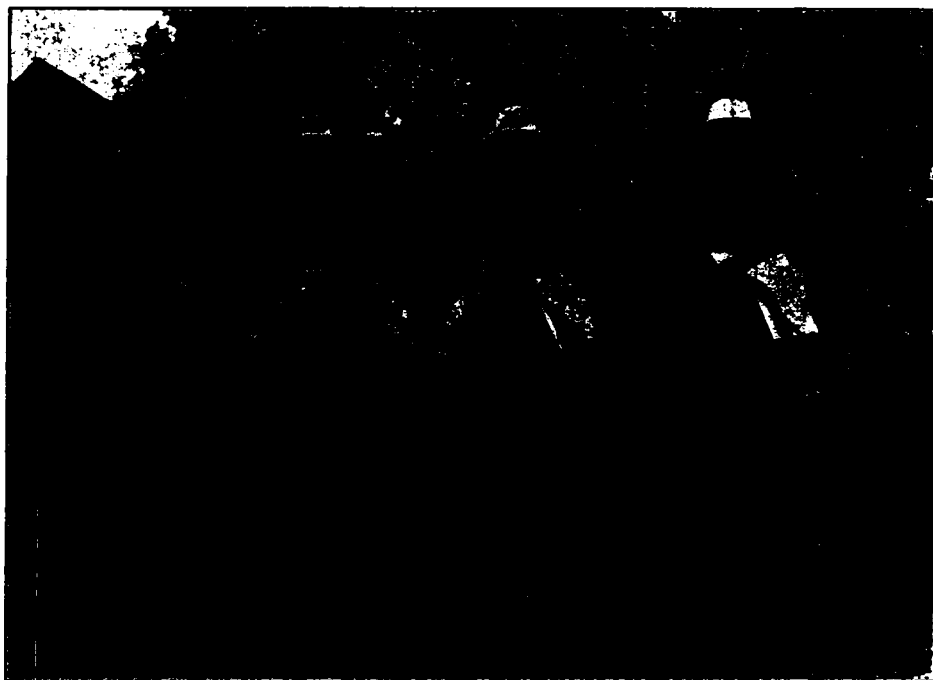
The final game was played between the Army and Bryn Mawr on Saturday, August 7th. The Army won the game, 16 to 6, and with it the championship.

It rained slightly before the game and the field was slow and wet at the beginning, resulting in a rather slow pace and some missing in the earlier chukkers.

Bryn Mawr drew first blood, after a run of Mr. Earle's, on a near side shot of Mr. McFadden's. Lieutenant Benson evened the score, on a pass from Captain Gerhardt. Major Chamberlin was hitting well in this period. The second chukker saw the Army gain a two-goal lead, both points being scored by Captain Gerhardt. Mr. Belmont saved a goal in this chukker and later made a fine run and pass to Mr. Earle, who missed the goal. In the third chukker, Mr. Belmont made a goal, after two ineffectual runs of the Army. Mr. Gatins made a safety and Captain Gerhardt placed Major Greenwald's good free shot between the posts. The same player, who was now hitting everything in sight, then made a fine run and goal.

Each team scored one more goal before half time, Mr. Earle counting for Bryn Mawr from scrimmage and Major Greenwald for Army on a Bryn Mawr foul.

Major Chamberlin made a pretty goal from scrimmage soon after the start of the second half. Major Greenwald broke up a run of Mr. Earle's and returned the ball to Lieutenant Benson, who scored. Mr. McFadden scored from scrimmage. Bryn Mawr had several chances to



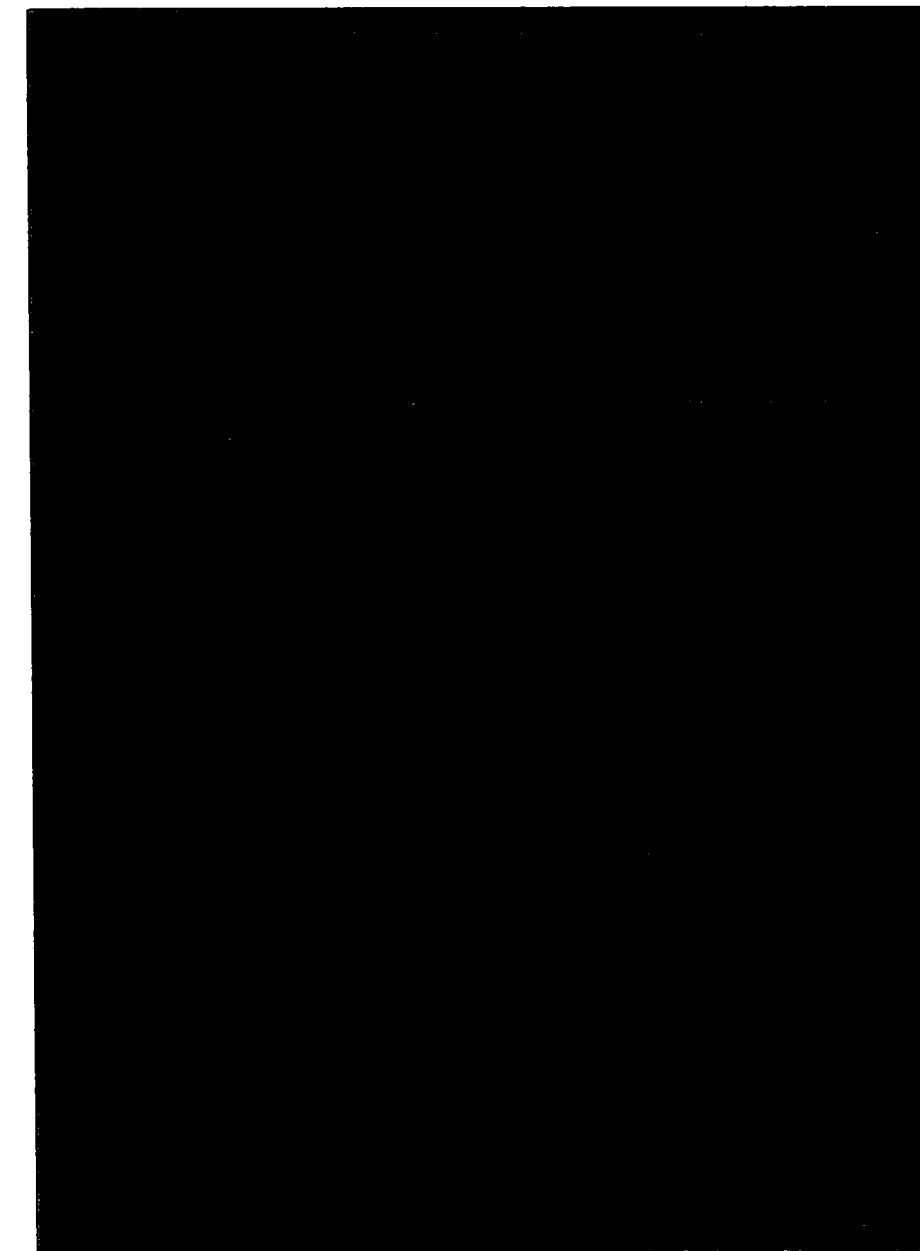
Courtesy of Freudy—N. Y. Herald-Tribune.

The Army Team.

Left to right: Lieutenant Benson, Captain Gerhardt, Major Chamberlin and Major Greenwald.

score before the end of the chukker, but each attempt went astray. In the sixth there were several good runs by each team, ending in a goal by Lieutenant Benson. Major Chamberlin and Mr. Earle each scored in the same period. In the seventh, Captain Gerhardt scored after a run by Major Greenwald. Mr. Gatins made a goal, followed by another by Captain Gerhardt, on a pass from Major Chamberlin.

The last chukker was all Army, Bryn Mawr failing to stage a rally similar to Meadow Brook's in the second game. In addition to three knocks over the back line during the period, the Army made four goals;



Top—Liggett, owned by U. S. Government; played by Major Chamberlin. Ch. Gelding; 15-½; 12 years. Sired by Fiume (T. B.). Has been on Army string for last six years.

Middle—Peg, owned by U. S. Government; played by Captain C. H. Gerhardt. Brown Mare; 15-0; 10 years.

Bottom—Quinnie, owned and played by Captain C. H. Gerhardt. Bay Mare; 15-1; aged; imported by Fred Post from Canada.

the first a fine one by Captain Gerhardt on two long shots from near the center of the field; Lieutenant Benson made a pretty near side shot to score after a knock-in; Captain Gerhardt tallied on a pass from Lieutenant Benson on the next throw-in; and Major Chamberlin ended the scoring with a great cut shot for goal, after a pretty run of Lieutenant Benson's.

The Army playing was an improvement over that against Meadow Brook, although the opposition was not so stiff. Lieutenant Benson played farther out of the game. He was thus in position to score, or ride off the Bryn Mawr back and allow Captain Gerhardt to shoot the goals, which the latter did with great brilliancy. With the exception of the first chukker, Captain Gerhardt's hitting was of international caliber. Army's defensive players effectually smothered Mr. Earle, whose accuracy suffered heavily as a result.

Captain Holman refereed all the games in a most satisfactory manner, attaining just the right compromise between too many fouls for speed in play and not enough for safety.

SUMMARY

Army—16

No. 1 Lieutenant Benson
No. 2 Captain Gerhardt
No. 3 Major Chamberlin
Back Major Greenwald

Bryn Mawr—6

No. 1 Mr. Earle
No. 2 Mr. McFadden
No. 3 Mr. Gatins
Back Mr. Belmont

Goals

Army: Lieutenant Benson, 4; Captain Gerhardt, 8; Major Chamberlin, 3; Major Greenwald, 1 (by foul).

Bryn Mawr: Mr. Earle, 2; Mr. McFadden, 2; Mr. Gatins, 1; Mr. Belmont, 1.

Score by Chukkers

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	Total
Army	1	2	2	1	2	2	2	4	16
Bryn Mawr	1	0	1	1	1	1	1	0	6

Comments

As a result of their fine play in this and last year's tournaments, Captain Gerhardt and Captain Rodes were selected to play on a team in the open championship with Mr. Webb and Mr. Milburn, internationalists. This is the highest place yet reached by the Army in American polo, and may lead eventually to Army representation on the international four.

The most characteristic features of high-class polo, as played in the junior and open championships as distinguished from that played in regimental polo in the Army, seem to be about as follows:

1. Riding well forward in the stirrups to keep the weight off the horse's loins, making him easier to stop and the ball easier to hit.

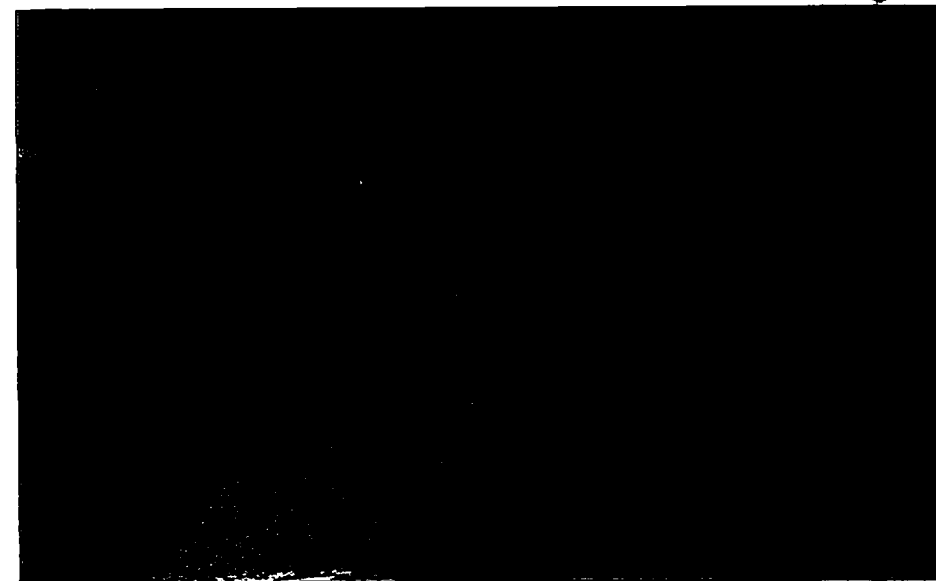
2. Hitting the ball with a sharp wrist snap, the mallet head attaining its greatest speed at the moment of impact with the ball, rather than

taking the ball with a long, slow sweep of the mallet. Long hitting results.

3. More accurate hitting due to much practice in this element of the game and to better, truer fields.

4. Greater speed, obtained by riding at the fastest pace of which the pony is capable, whenever moving from one place to another on the field. No cantering or slow galloping.

5. Better team and position play, due principally to ability, inherent or developed, to anticipate the next shot and ride for it, rather than blindly following the ball or the play.



Krim's House Being Bombed from the Air During the Recent Russian War.

Mounted Messenger Relays

By

First Lieutenant MORTIMER F. SULLIVAN, Cavalry, D. O. L.

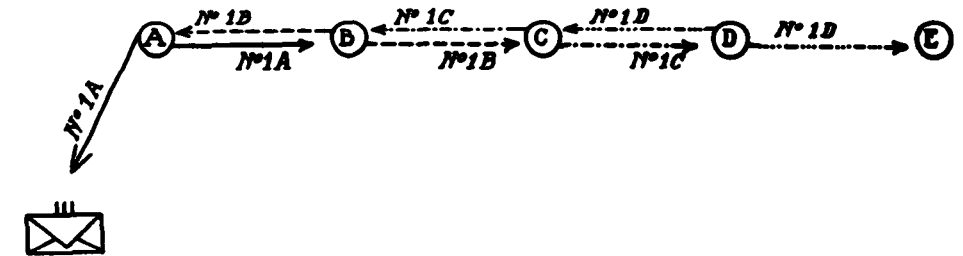
WHILE the electrical agencies of communication have made great strides forward, they have not as yet reached the point of perfection where they will always fulfill the needs of cavalry. The speed of movement of cavalry troops demands some agency of communication that will supplement the electrical means when they fail to function or are unable to do so owing to the speed of movement of cavalry troops. Mounted messenger is the first solution that comes to ones mind, but here the objection arises that mounted messengers are slow, comparatively speaking, and due to the human element entering so strongly where this method is used, they are in no way a sure means of communication. Some scheme is needed to facilitate the handling of messages where the electrical agencies can not work and this means must be speedy, safe and sure. The relay system seems to satisfy the above requirements. With small legs of about a mile for each messenger to travel, information goes back from ten to eighteen miles per hour, depending on terrain, tactical situation, day or night, etc. Since the men work over a definite course, they are reasonably sure of reaching their objectives. With an idea of testing out the relay system and providing a definite method of procedure to follow when this agency is used, the following scheme was devised. Following is the description in brief of the types of relays, the ways they are posted, and some of the considerations that are involved in selecting the type to be used.

a. Types of Relays.

(1). *Single Post Relays*: Under this system one man works both ways; that is, he carries messages to the post in rear and to the post in front of his own station.

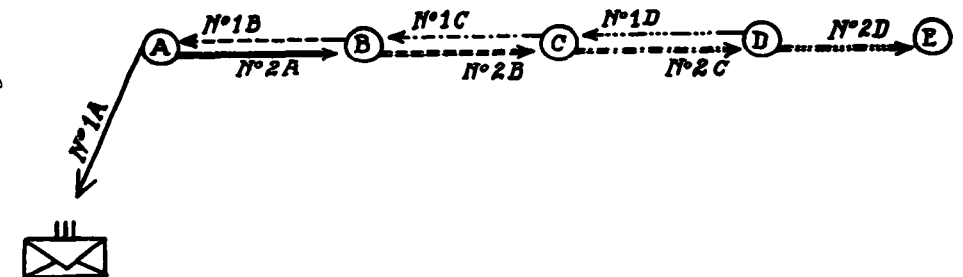
(a). *Posting the Single Post Relay*: The messengers at each post must be shown the location of his own post and then taken on to the next station in advance to find out its location. He was present while the post in rear was posted so he now knows the exact location of his own post, the one ahead, and the one in rear. After he has the above information, he goes to his own post and carries all messages that come to his station from the front or rear. It is essential that each messenger know the exact location not only of his own post, but the post ahead and in rear of his own. It will often happen that a messenger will arrive at a post when the man posted there is out on a mission. Unless he knows the exact location of the post in question he is very apt to get confused and lost, thus breaking the relay chain.

(2). *Double Post Relays*: Where this type of relay is used two men are placed at each post, one to carry messages forward and one to carry them to the rear.



Single Post Relay System.

- No. 1-A Messenger works from A to B and A to Message Center.
- No. 1-B Messenger works from B to A and B to C.
- No. 1-C Messenger works from C to B and C to D.
- No. 1-D Messenger works from D to C and D to E.

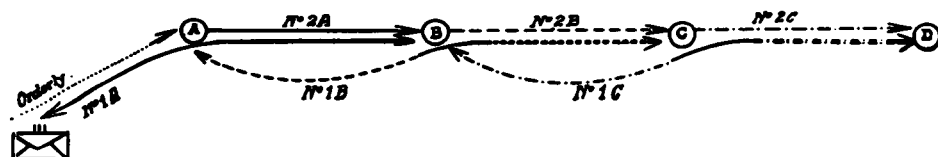


Double Post Relay System

- No. 1-A Messenger works from A to Message Center.
- No. 2-A Messenger works from A to B.
- No. 1-B Messenger works from B to A.
- No. 2-B Messenger works from B to C.
- No. 1-C Messenger works from C to B.
- No. 2-C Messenger works from C to D.
- No. 1-D Messenger works from D to C.
- No. 2-D Messenger works from D to E.

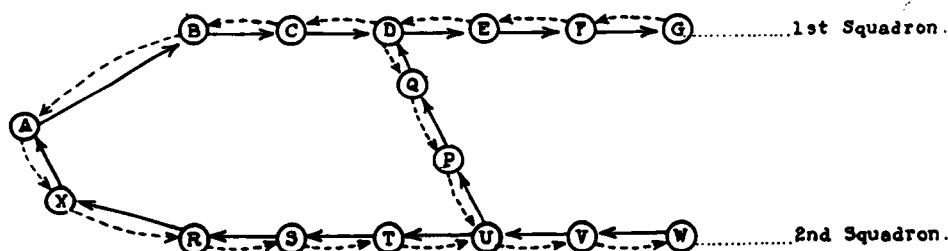
(a). *Posting the Double Posts Relay*: One man is left at the post with instructions to carry all messages that come from the front going to the rear. The other man does not drop off at this post, but goes on to the next post forward, finds its location, and then goes back to his own post. He carries all messages that come from the rear going to the front. As a usual thing, one of the two men stationed at any particular post will be there most of the time.

(b). A second method of posting the double post relay is used in enemy country or where the traffic is extremely heavy. Under this method both men at a post go forward to locate the next post ahead. As soon as it is located one returns while the other waits at forward post until the two men at the forward post return from the second post ahead



Posting Double Post Relay—2nd Method

Orderly from Message Center goes to A until A Messengers return from locating B.
 No. 1-A and No. 2-A Messengers go to B to locate B Station and return to A.
 No. 1-A works from A to Message Center.
 No. 2-A works from A to B.
 No. 1-B and No. 2-B Messengers go to C to locate C Station and return to B.
 No. 1-B works from B to A.
 No. 2-B works from B to C.
 No. 1-C and No. 2-C Messengers go to D to locate D and return to C.
 No. 1-C works from C to B.
 No. 2-C works from C to D.



A Relay System of Two Legs.

X-C.P. of both commands, two squadrons of cavalry at start of march, 8.00 A. M.
 D-C.P. of 1st Squadron at 9.00 A. M.
 U-C.P. of 2nd Squadron at 9.00 A. M.
 D-Q-F-U is lateral opened at 9.00 A. M. by right column.
 Relay leg. D-C-B-A-X-R-S-T-U closed by order of C.O. 2nd Squadron.
 N.C.O. 1 at X gathers men R-S-T and joins 2nd Squadron.
 N.C.O. 2 at X gathers men A-B-C and joins 1st Squadron.
 Note: Both N.C.O.'s must be instructed as to exactly what men they are to pick up.

when he goes back to his own post. Under this scheme both men know the location of the post ahead and in rear of their own. The reason one man stays at the forward post until the men stationed there return from locating the post ahead of them is to prevent the post being vacant for any appreciable time.

(3). The following factors must be considered under both methods in determining the distance between posts.

- (a) The number of men available.
- (b) The amount of traffic to be handled.
- (c) Whether the relay is to work by day, by night, or both.
- (d) The kind of terrain, whether flat, hilly, woody, etc.
- (e) The condition of horses.
- (f) Whether the territory is friendly or enemy.
- (g) The weather, in as far as it affects roads, and marching conditions.
- (h) Whether or not territory is known, and accuracy of maps.
- (i) In general, in the majority of cases, a mile between stations seems to be quite satisfactory over territory that is known or well mapped.

(4). The factors that govern the type of relay to be used are:

- (a) Amount of traffic to be handled.
- (b) Number of men available.
- (c) In enemy territory the double post system must be used.

b. Relays can be operated on either of the following plans:

(1) *Directed*: Under this plan the first leg of the relay system is closed by order as soon as the commanding officer is informed that the second leg is in operation. Communication is much surer when this plan is adopted, but there is the disadvantage that a long time is required for the man at the first post (usually a N. C. O. or trusted private, first class) to gather up his relay and rejoin the column after he gets the order, the transmission of which in itself takes considerable time. Under the directed system a leg is usually three to five miles long. Messengers can travel at six miles per hour in catching up with a column, so the required time for the relay leg to catch up can be calculated.

(2) *Time Controlled*: Under this plan the first leg of the relay is closed automatically at a definite hour, and the N. C. O. or man posted at the first post gathers up his leg and rejoins the column. This system has the disadvantage that communication may be broken for a period of time in event that the second leg is not promptly established. Under this system a leg is usually from five to ten miles long.

(3) *Effect of Tactical Considerations on Kind of Relay; i. e.,*

Directed or Time Controlled.

(a) In general, the directed relay system is the more satisfactory under the following conditions:

1. Where the relay operates between two moving columns, for example, two columns moving on parallel roads.
 2. In enemy territory, or where it is not certain the successive new C. P.'s will open at the place and hour stated.
 3. Where plenty of men are available for use on relay posts.
 4. Between two stationary commands.
- (b) The time controlled system is the more satisfactory:
1. Where there is a shortage of messenger personnel.
 2. Over long distances.
 3. Over known territory where it is reasonably sure that the new C. P.'s will open at the time and place stated.

(c) *Responsibility for Laterals and Closing of Relay Systems.*

The general scheme of communication applies as far as establishing laterals and closing legs of a relay system, that is, the responsibility for establishing the lateral and closing the legs of a relay system is with the higher unit. Where neither unit can be classed as the higher the responsibility for the above rests with the commander of the unit on the right.

A Summary of Unintelligence

THE following satire on "Intelligence" was composed in France just prior to the Armistice, by some humorists of the First Army, when the memories of such official documents were fresh in the minds of those who were on duty at the various headquarters. It is believed that it will be perused appreciatively by those of our readers, who, in the field or elsewhere, have had to labor in the preparation of Summaries of Intelligence, as well as by those who have been compelled to study the results of such labors.

Confidential and Secret

For Distribution by Aeroplane

SUMMARY OF UNINTELLIGENCE

November 10, 1918

I. GENERAL DEPRESSIONS OF THE DAY

The enemy reacted violently all over the sector. Strong attacks west of the Meuse were thrown back easily by us. Small local attacks by our troops succeeded in driving the enemy from his positions. During the afternoon, violent counter attacks appear to have caused us to readjust our lines slightly to a depth of ten kilometers.

The day was quiet. Otherwise there was nothing to report.

The enemy appears to place his main reliance on machine guns, infantry, artillery and aeroplanes to resist our attack. This is taken as an indication of something very significant, namely, the tremendous shortage among the enemy of all other branches. Otherwise there is nothing to report.

Two men were seen entering a ravine near (CHRIELEY?). This conforms prisoner's statements of a general withdrawal to the Fridge-Stellung.

On the right, the enemy are extremely nervous. They showed their nervousness by raiding our trenches and throwing hand grenades at us.

II. ENEMY FRONT LINE

The enemy line follows ours in a general way, except in one or two places where it runs south of it. East of the MEUSE it runs in an easterly direction to the left (inclusive). W. of the MEUSE it runs in the opposite direction (exclusive). Thence it runs in a N. E. direction (inclusive), turning due N. for 200 M. Thence due S. for 200 M. From here on there is no change. This has not been confirmed.

III. ENEMY DISORDER OF BATTLE

(a) *Identifications*

12th Meulskinners—A prisoner of the 12th Meulskinners recently confirms the belief that this is not the 12th Meulskinners at all, but the 115th Schutzenfests. Order of battle confirmed.

11th Jaeger Wullens—A prisoner from this division captured between 3 hrs. Wednesday, states that this regiment was recently

disbanded and transformed into the 10th Flanelraper Battalion. Order of battle confirmed.

3.33 KUKS—The 3.33 KUKS have been replaced by the 17th KAKS. Order of battle confirmed.

449th Gesundheits—The 944th Butterbrots have been identified as the 449th Gesundheits. They recently came from the Uskub front. Order of battle confirmed.

(b) *Presumed Enemy Order of Battle*

The efforts of the enemy to fill the gaps in his line appear to have resulted in a confused order of battle. There are divisions on the right and left. Apparently some are in the rear. Others are on the roads between these points. Several prisoners recently captured state that they have no idea what the enemy order of battle is. This shows the extreme confusion in the enemy ranks.

(c) *Comment on Enemy Units*

42nd Landwhere Balloon Kumpanie—A prisoner from the Kumpanie states that when our attack started they were 40 kilometers to the north. When the news of the attack reached them, however, they came down immediately.

Prisoners report that the 402nd Landsakes Division now opposite our front is composed entirely of one-legged men impressed into the service from the great Sauer Kraut Factories at ESSEN. This and other documentary evidence indicates the terrible internal disorders in Germany.

(d) *Enemy Intentions*

That there is great indecision on the part of the German General Staff as to the point to which the line will be withdrawn is indicated by the statement of a prisoner of the 77th Krapshooter Battalion. When questioned on this point he replied significantly, "I don't know."

It is generally supposed that the enemy will fall back first into the Katzundjammer Stellung (from a captured map dated April, 1918). From here he may fall back into the Meuse. There is every indication that a stand will be taken at La Trine.

IV. **ENEMY INFANTRY ACTIVITY**

The enemy infantry were extremely active during the day, jumping up and down and climbing trees. A number of nests have been observed in the BOIS DE BANDYLEGS. Perhaps it is safe to venture the assumption that these were made by machine guns. A counter attack during the morning succeeded in establishing a deep pocket in our lines in the region of HULLABELLO BOIS Woods. Later in the day our troops turned this pocket inside out.

V. **ENEMY ARTILLERY ACTIVITY**

The artillery now opposite our front readily lends itself into two main groupings: (1) The East Meuse Grouping; (2) the West Meuse Grouping. It is very significant that since the beginning of the attacks all batteries reported in action have been in one of these two groups.

A careful study of the terrain shows the river MEUSE separating the country on the right of it from the country on the left of it. The country varies from hilly to flat with woods and open spaces. Roads run between the towns. All conditions make the

country ideal for the artillery which we are safe in presuming to assume is there.

During the day (and night) the firing all appeared to come from a northerly direction. The preponderance of fire was from 77s, 105s and 155s. Gas, H. E. and shrapnel were chiefly used.

A battery J 0000 was reported by a prisoner. This was confirmed by photographs, which show nothing at this point.

MANGY-ANNE was shelled with duds during the afternoon. Battery J 7.11 was immediately counter-battered. This was apparently effective for toward morning the shelling stopped.

Our artillery successfully counter-battered 17 batteries (enemy) during the day (and night).

Two batteries were reported in action: J O.780 and J 096.7. Upon reference to the Plain Directeur one of these appears to be in the middle of the MEUSE River. Our only explanation of this is that the enemy must be using torpedo boats.

VI. **ENEMY MOVEMENTS**

Visibility: Poor and intermittent during the night.

Railways: No unusual activity observed. Most of the railroads seemed to remain in the same place during the day.

Roads: An old man in a wheel chair going from BAR-DEVANT-MEUSE to BAR-DERRIERE-MEUSE tends to confirm the belief that the enemy is retreating.

At 12.64, 600 men were seen going from VANDYANNE to ANDY-VANNE. At 12.74, 600 men were seen going from ANDYVANNE to VANDYANNE. It is thought that this move was made by the enemy with a view to increasing the circulation of his troops.

During the day an old man was seen sitting outside a house in VINGT-ET-UN. No other unusual activity was observed around the town.

At 15.02, 12 wagons, believed to be a battery, were seen on the ANCY-BUZANCY Road going in both directions.

Two men were seen to come down the HARRICOURT-BARRICOURT Road and enter a small wooden hut at 322x11. This is thought to indicate a relief.

VII. **ENEMY WORKS**

Fox holes and occasional rat holes have been observed in front of the BOIS DE BOIS Woods.

A captured German map has been found showing a new Stellung. This Stellung is indicated by a line scratched across it in pencil. This is undoubtedly the point on which the enemy will fall back Thursday. The map fails to show the Stellung east of the river. We have drawn in the missing portion on the attached map.

A study of recent photographs confirms the presence of the MEUSE River as shown on the Plain Directeur.

A STUDY OF THE MEUSE

Photographs show that the MEUSE River runs in a northerly direction to STENAY. From here it turns in a westerly direction. This tends to confirm the Plain Directeur. There are no unusual bridges between the towns and many of those have been destroyed. No photographs north of this point are available, but there is every reason to suppose that the river does not end here.

VIII. ENEMY AERIAL ACTIVITY

The enemy was very active during the period, particularly on the right and left and in the center. Most of the enemy planes crashed. Otherwise there was nothing to report.

Enemy balloons were observed north of VERDUN, west of SOUILLY and east of BAR-LE-DUC.

IX. MISCELLANEOUS

Extract from a captured German Document:

"I received your letter and was glad to hear that you are sending down an extra pair of knitted socks. Since I put on the last pair you sent me, six months ago, I have never been without them."

(Signed) WILHELM.

This is undoubtedly a message in code from the Kaiser and is thought to contain the order to fall back on the KURZUNDLANG-STELLUNG, thus confirming our previous assumption. Order of battle confirmed.

X. ACTIVITY OF OUR OWN TROOPS

Our troops spent the day tightening their lines and improving their positions, which were very awkward.

XI. OUR AERIAL ACTIVITY

The dampness made the day impossible for flying. In spite of this, our planes were up in great numbers, destroying numerous enemy planes and taking dozens of photographs in spite of the dense fog which rendered visibility impossible.

Our scout patrol of three planes met 20 Fokkers. The Fokkers immediately burst into flames and crashed.

The ceiling was so low that at times our planes were forced to run along the ground. In spite of this, we penetrated deeply into the enemy's territory, bringing back invaluable information as to the location of towns, rivers and roads behind the lines.

Lieut. Cholmondelay Brown destroyed three enemy balloons in their beds by descending upon them so suddenly that they became tangled in the bed clothes and were unable to escape.

Lieut. Dunwiddy brought down a balloon at dawn. Owing to the darkness, Lieut. Dunwiddy brought down one of our own balloons. Luckily it was an old one. The observer jumped, but was not seen to land. Confirmation is requested.

Editorial Comment

ARMY POLO

THE winning of the 20-goal Junior Championship this year by the Army Team was followed by the victory in the 12-goal Inter-Circuit Championship of the Fort Leavenworth Team under the able leadership of Major I. P. Swift. In these two events the Army has to compete with the best civilian teams within the limits of the prescribed handicaps.

The fact that both events have been won by the Army for two successive years is a hopeful sign for Army polo. It means that not only is the quality of play improving, but that under great disadvantages the quality of Army polo mounts is getting better and better. As a matter of fact, the quality of play is dependent upon the excellence of the mounts, for no player can learn superior polo on an inferior mount. Mediocre mounts and slow fields have held back Army polo for many years, and while our fields are as yet not commensurate with the mounts available, it is hoped that this condition may be remedied in the near future.

The credit for the fine showing made by Army poloists during the last few years is distributed among many agencies. Supplementing the favorable attitude of the War Department, the Remount Service, Quartermaster Corps, by acquiring many horses conforming to the requirements for the mounted service and at the same time suitable for polo, has done a world of good.

Officers who have devoted their money and time to the training of private mounts deserve much commendation. Civilians, individually and through their clubs, by their advice, encouragement and assistance, have done much to bring nearer the day when the Army will be represented on the team playing for the blue ribbon of polo, the International Cup.

ENDURANCE RIDES

THE Endurance Rides are to be held as usual this year. The Eastern Ride will take place at Brandon, Vermont, October 11-16. The Colorado Ride at Colorado Springs will be held September 13-18.

These two events, while they receive a moderate amount of attention from the public press, do not obtain the publicity that is warranted by their importance. Aside from their claims as sporting events of the first class, their influence on the improvement of the quality of horses raised in this country is worthy of attention.

Endurance rides are not patronized by the thousands that attend baseball games or witness prize fights, but those who do follow them are thoughtful and enthusiastic horsemen who are quick to put into practice and disseminate the lessons learned in regard to types and breeds, training and conditioning.

The contributing sponsors of the Eastern Ride are: The American Re-

mount Association, Arabian Horse Club of America, Horse Association of America, The Kentucky Jockey Club, Thoroughbred Horse Association, The Morgan Horse Club, and the U. S. Cavalry Association.

TRAINING COMPETITIONS

THIS autumn, through the generosity of two friends of the mounted service, there will be held two competitions which will do more to promote the efficiency of cavalry troops and platoons along certain lines than many pages of training directives, programs and schedules. While the provisions of these very important documents are generally conscientiously carried out, the spirit of competition which will be engendered by the events above referred to, has always caused individuals and organizations to rise to greater heights in preparation and performance, than has any other source of inspiration.

The troop competition is open to all regular cavalry regiments stationed in the continental limits of the United States. One troop from each regiment and detached squadron will be selected as entries, with the condition that the troop selected has, on September 1st, the highest general average proficiency rating for the period of the preceding nine months in the following: (a) Training as prescribed by Cavalry Memorandum No. 3, W. D., 1921—Standards of Proficiency. (b) Use of rifle, pistol, saber and machine rifle (automatic rifle). (c) Combat firing. (d) Care and condition of animals and equipment. (e) Interior economy.

The test will be held between September 15th and October 15th at the stations of the respective troops, and will consist of four phases, testing the proficiency of each troop in mobility, fire power, shock and interior economy. The winning troop will receive a trophy of a probable value of two thousand dollars.

The platoon competition is designed primarily to encourage and test the training, courage and physical development of the individual and his mount, and the combat efficiency of small units. It will be in two phases, individual and leadership.

This year the contest will be held at Fort Riley, Kansas, and one rifle platoon from each rifle troop of the Second Cavalry will be eligible to compete. The contest will be open to all lieutenants of the same regiment.

One thousand dollars is available for providing a trophy for the commander of the winning platoon and the distribution of money prizes to each enlisted man.

After this year it is planned to hold this test at such a point as will permit of the participation of the greatest number of organizations.

The rewards, both tangible and intangible, for success in these competitions will be such that every individual and organization participating may be depended upon to be a finished product along the lines of training involved.

Topics of The Day

CAVALRY RADIO COMMUNICATION

THE following interesting comments are from a report by Lieutenant C. Knudsen, Brigade Signal Officer, on radio activities during recent airplane maneuvers in the First Cavalry Brigade at Fort Clark, Texas:

During the recent airplane maneuvers held in connection with the troops of this command, we had in use an SCR-109 radio set, which provides for reception and transmission by voice. This set was shipped here especially for these maneuvers and is not issued to cavalry troops. Therefore, we had only a limited time in which to familiarize ourselves with its use. Prior to using it with the airplanes we used it in our combined exercises for about two weeks as a replacement for the SCR-130 with the Brigade radio truck and we found its use limited, due to its low wave length and the rather high wave length of the SCR-127 set used by the cavalry. It was found almost impossible to tune it in on more than one set at a time closer than a mile apart, due to the regeneration of each set causing a great deal of distortion in the other sets. However, by putting a rheostat in series with the filament and tuning only one set at a time, we arrived at fair results. But we were limited to but one wave length, which was the maximum of the SCR-109 and very near the minimum of the SCR-127.

In the tests with the airplane prior to the actual maneuvers, it was found that the airplane set, the SCR-134, was easily picked up on 500 meters by the SCR-109 and the SCR-127, while the SCR-109 was not only weak on the SCR-127, but also came in weak on the SCR-134. This leads to the conclusion that the microphone furnished with the SCR-109, which was of an old type, was inferior, since our output registered about 1.5 amps. at all times. Although our signal strength was weak, our modulation was excellent, so that our messages were able to be understood. We used the regular V-antenna for this work.

On the first day's maneuver, communication with the airplane by voice was seriously handicapped by excessive static, preventing our signals getting through to the airplane. We could pick up the airplane, but were limited to 500 meters and since WOAI in San Antonio was broadcasting at that time on a wave length very near ours, we sometimes received concert music and messages at the same time, due to the broad tuning of the SCR-109.

The new panel code was found to be elastic, easily and quickly displayed and satisfactory communication was had by this means. Although our training in pyrotechnics has been limited, we found no difficulty in their use and two-way pyrotechnic communication was satisfactorily maintained.

A demonstration of two-way telephone communication between ground and airplane was given for the troops and the R. O. T. C. students. Panels and pyrotechnics were used as auxiliaries. By using an ordinary Baldwin loudspeaker, which is not issued, and a home-made power amplifier, we

were able to demonstrate this type of communication to a large assembled group outdoors.

From a tactical communication viewpoint, these maneuvers served to illustrate again the difficulties attached to radio communication over short distances for units in fast movement. The sending of radio messages in a net as large as a brigade involves considerable radio procedure in order to insure correct delivery, and this procedure takes time. All our messages were handled in the clear and, had it been necessary to encode and decode them, considerably more time would have been necessary before a message could have been delivered. Therefore, to cite a case in point, it is thought to be beyond the scope of radio communication to adequately perform the mission of reporting the progress of squadron columns in movement to regimental headquarters in a problem which starts at 3:15 P. M. and ends at approximately 4:00 P. M., especially if these messages have to be in code as is required of all radio messages on maneuvers or in time of war.

HORSES FOR PHILIPPINE SERVICE

THE article by Lieutenant F. B. Butler, Corps of Engineers, in the July CAVALRY JOURNAL on the China Pony and its suitability as a remount for the Philippines has elicited the following letter from Major C. L. Scott, Remount Service, Q. M. C.

Editor of The Cavalry Journal—

I note a very interesting article in the July issue of THE CAVALRY JOURNAL on the subject of the Chinese pony, but I would like to call your attention to the following facts in connection with the supply of riding horses to our troops in the Philippine Islands, which make it most inadvisable to substitute the Chinese pony for the present type of horse that is being issued to troops in the Philippines:

First, the Remount Service, Q. M. C., is now buying small horses for the Philippine Department, which, according to specifications, run in height from 14-2 to 15 hands and weigh from 800 to 950 pounds each. The price paid for these small horses is \$90 per head. Shipments of all animals to the Philippine Islands are made from the United States to the Philippines by the Government Transport MEIGS. This boat has a capacity of 10,000 tons, and makes three or four trips a year as a regular cargo vessel. This boat can carry 286 head of animals, and when carrying this number of animals it also carries about 8,000 tons of other necessary cargo. In other words, 286 animals takes up a cargo space of 2,000 tons, or one-fifth of the boat. A round trip of the MEIGS costs \$70,000; but this boat on its return trip brings coal to Hawaii, which must be delivered to that place. For this reason, only the trip to Manila should be charged to out-going cargo. Figured on this basis, to deliver 286 animals to the Philippine Islands would cost \$7,000, or \$24.44 per head. The total cost, therefore, of delivering small horses to the Philippine Islands is \$114.40 per head, which is practically the same as it would cost to deliver Chinese ponies to the Islands.

Second, the small horses purchased in the United States can be selected from hundreds of thousands of such horses raised in this country. They are well-bred, handy, and of a willing disposition, and far exceed the

Chinese pony in all of these characteristics. They are better balanced than the Chinese pony, more pleasant to ride, and for fast work in maneuvers and combat, because of their larger size and weight, are much superior as a cavalry mount to the Chinese pony. While the Chinese pony is a wonderful little animal for its size and weight, when packed with full cavalry equipment, because of its size, the cavalry loses much of its mobility; the American horses of the size mentioned above can do superior work, particularly in maneuver and in combat.

Third, in this age of motorization, and in view of the fact that our Tables of Organization (Engineers included) require hundreds of thousands of horses in a major mobilization, it would be well to consider in our peace-time work our source of supply for horses and to encourage production wherever practicable by furnishing a market. The principle of patronizing home markets wherever possible would therefore certainly apply to the horse game in the Army. The horse breeders of the United States do not care to be taxed to support horse breeders in foreign countries, and Congress expects the money it appropriates annually for horses and mules to be spent in home markets, unless it specifically authorizes purchases elsewhere. No authority would ever be given to secure abroad an inferior horse at practically the same cost as that of our native horse.

C. L. SCOTT.

CAVALRY COMBAT PRINCIPLES

THE following translation from the Combat Regulations of the Hungarian Army, gives the combat principles governing the tactical and strategical use of cavalry:

Cavalry reconnoitres, veils the movements of our troops, and represents the mobile element of the security service; in combat, she cooperates with the other arms, especially utilizing their results in pursuit.

Cavalry is characterized by mobility, speed, and plentiful equipment with all sorts of firearms (carbine, machine gun, automatic rifle, hand grenade, and—in larger units—artillery).

On account of these characteristics, cavalry may concentrate quickly a strong fire against the more vulnerable parts of the enemy (wings, flanks, etc.).

The great strategical importance of cavalry is based, beside her reconnaissance activity, chiefly on this characteristic, which can be utilized best in a proper open terrain, and cavalry becomes indispensable in comparison to all other arms in pursuit aimed at the annihilation of the shattered enemy.

In larger units, the combat method of cavalry is: The utilization of her mobility as far as possible on horseback, and the execution of the fight dismounted, with firearms. Even in cases of successful surprises, larger cavalry units will employ both mounted attack and their firearms.

In smaller units, cavalry will attack with the sabre on horseback under favorable conditions, such as an unexpected encounter with enemy cavalry, or against a demoralized infantry in retreat.

Cavalry is a vulnerable arm: it will be used up soon; and is hard to replace.

In the employment of cavalry, the limitations of the strength of the horse have to be considered, for only thus may we expect to have cavalry available in decisive moments. We should try to employ cavalry always in a well-rested condition, and give it tasks of a short duration.

Impatience should not lead us to employ cavalry under conditions that do not permit the utilization of her special abilities.

The dismounted employment of cavalry for a longer period of time (as in stationary warfare) destroys its value as cavalry.

The main task of *divisional cavalry* is short-range reconnaissance and the security service.

The tasks of *large cavalry units*, acting under orders of General Headquarters, army or independent corps commanders, are: cooperation with the air service in long-range reconnaissance, veiling or simulating actions covering large territories, enterprises in the back or the flanks of the enemy, pursuit or the prevention of pursuit by the enemy. The tactical unit of divisional cavalry is the *cavalry troop*. The strategical unit of larger cavalry bodies is the *cavalry division*.

ARMY AND NAVY CLUB OF PHILADELPHIA

THE Army and Navy Club of Philadelphia, located at 313 South Broad Street, has been successfully launched by an informal reception tendered by the officers and directors to the members on Tuesday evening, June 15.

The charter object of the Club is as follows:

"A military organization, in which the members, having served in the armed forces of the United States, or her Allies, during the World War, may preserve their associations and memories, as well as the traditions of the service and join with others, who believe in adequate national defense, in such study of our national history and the science of war, as will fit them to perform their duties as citizens or soldiers in the event of a national emergency."

Its officers are: *President*, General William G. Price, Jr. (General Price commands the 28th Division, P.N.G.); *First Vice-President*, Colonel John C. Groome; *Second Vice-President*, Major Joseph H. Bromley, Jr.; *Treasurer*, Major Edgar S. Gardner, and *Secretary*, Colonel Edgar J. Pershing.

Officers of the regular establishments, when visiting Philadelphia, are invited to identify themselves and receive guest cards. The Club service consists of reading rooms, lounge, dining room, billiards and pool room, and an Information Bureau through which it hopes to facilitate service and ex-service men in procuring suitable accommodations for residence in the city. A limited number of bedrooms are available in the club house upon reservation.

Foreign Military Notes

FURNISHED BY THE MILITARY INFORMATION DIVISION, G. S.

RUSSIA

Foreign Legion In the Red Army

The organization of a Foreign Legion in the Red Army is progressing rapidly. The center of the formation is at Tula, to which place approximately 12,000 foreigners have been transferred from the Red Army. Temporarily the Foreign Legion is headed by an officer of Polish nationality, whose name is Gajewicz. The position of Chief of Staff of the Foreign Legion is occupied by a Czech, named Kryga. The formations organized at Tula are composed mostly of Czechs, Latvians and Poles, who have previously belonged to divisional detachments which are being organized.

In addition to five regular battalions, a foreign school for non-commissioned officers and one Artillery Division have been formed at Tula.

In Perm cavalry detachments are formed which are equipped with arms of Polish type. In Orenburg cavalry detachments are formed composed exclusively of foreigners of the Mohammedan religion. The citizens of the Baltic States form a separate regiment. Another infantry regiment is formed by citizens of Finland; two brigades are formed of Ukrainians coming from Eastern Galicia.

After the organization is completed it is planned to transfer all Foreign Legions toward the Asiatic frontiers of Russia and station them in the Turkestan.

JAPAN

Spring Meeting of the Riding Association

As a general rule we are not accustomed to thinking of the Japanese as experienced horsemen participating in the strenuous riding events affected by the mounted services of western nations.

A brief description, therefore, of the spring meeting of the Riding Association held at Narashino under the auspices of the Cavalry School may prove interesting.

The military attache attended the Spring Meeting of the Riding Association held under the auspices of the Army Cavalry School at Narashino on April 11, 1926. This Association is sponsored by the Cavalry School, its main purpose being the encouragement of horseback riding and interest in the horse and the Cavalry School in general. For this purpose the military authorities are very generous in their loan of horses and equipment and in providing facilities for all civilians who desire to enter the

various competitions. Prizes are given for each class, for the most part contributed by civilians.

Quite an event is made of this meeting, it being attended by members of the diplomatic corps, high army officers and influential civilians, who are interested in horseback riding. A large crowd attended the meet, and the program presented was such as to interest greatly the people who attended.

Instructors and special students from the Cavalry School participated in the various exhibition events, and in a few cases officers contested with a small group of special civilians, who own their own horses, in riding events.

The exhibitions of these officers and special civilians were of a very high order, and showed excellent training of both the horse and rider. The program was along the usual lines of horse show events, and included some very excellent exhibitions by the instructors and other graduates of the School.

To show the interest taken by civilians in the meet, it may be noted that there were more than 200 entries of civilians in a six kilometer paper chase, troop horses being used. In the civilian special class jump there were 21 entries; for gentlemen civilian jump, 95 entries; for student and riding club jump competition, 51 entries; for the musical chair ride, 94 entries (civilians), and for the ladies' jump, 9 entries. In all these cases army horses were used, except in the case of special class civilian jump, where private horses only were used.

For the officers' race, a course of 14 jumps was laid out, the hurdles averaging one meter in height with several of 1.30 meters. The obstacles varied from the single brush fence to a triple jump of .90 meters with 4.50 meters between hurdles.

The Association is making a success of encouraging good horsemanship in the cavalry service.

The National Guard

NOTES ON TRAINING

THE following extracts from General Orders No. 9, War Department, May 15, 1926, entitled, "Notes on Training," will be of much interest to all National Guardsmen:

General Observations.—After several years of development and improvement a definite training system for the Army of the United States was established in the calendar year 1925. The marked advance evidenced in this system is being accomplished, first, by development between local commanders and their surrounding communities, as well as between all elements of the Army of the United States, a better understanding of our national defense problems, the national defense obligations of each element, and a co-operative desire to meet these obligations; and, second, by decentralizing training responsibilities. This decentralization should develop junior officers with initiative, resourcefulness and leadership, and should fit them to understand the economic administration of their units as well as their efficient conduct in combat. With stabilization in the system progressive improvement in detailed accomplishments may be expected.

A distinct improvement was made in the training of the National Guard. Better understanding was evidenced in the methods of leadership training in the lower echelons, and with this has come an improvement in the application of combat principles in the platoon and company organizations. Progressive and more advanced training for the senior officers of the National Guard requires further attention.

One of the outstanding features of the year was the affiliation of the National Guard and the Organized Reserves.

A noticeable improvement in troop leadership in the platoon and company units was observed. Special emphasis during armory training season should be given to training in leadership in the lower echelons in order to develop further the platoon combat teams, and also to rifle marksmanship, so as to make available the maximum amount of time for field training during summer training camps.

The experiment of instructing recruits in regimental recruit detachments at summer camps was so successful that this system warrants general application throughout the National Guard.

There is a necessity for more progressive and advanced training of field officers. At every camp where a regiment or larger unit of the National Guard is present, three or four terrain exercises should be conducted with the command and communications net. A special effort should be made in each National Guard division to assemble the entire division staff for training. Instruction should be centered on the war-time duties of a division headquarters. Administrative routine should be reduced to a minimum.

AN APPRECIATION OF CAVALRY

THE following, giving the views on Cavalry of Major-General W. H. Haskell, commanding the New York National Guard, is from the *New York National Guardsman*.

There has been a lot of thoughtless talk by civilians and even by those who should know better about the Cavalry being finished as one of the important components of the army.

Since the great war many have contended that the role of Cavalry, in any, in future wars would be a minor one. With this I disagree, and I am glad to note that European Armies are giving much care to the development of their Cavalry. This would not be done (in view of the expensive upkeep of Cavalry) were it not for the firm belief of its importance and necessity in future wars.

Nations do not maintain useless defense measures through sentiment. In considering the present and future value of Cavalry in combat we must not for a moment assume that the Great War set the type of combat for the future. As a matter of fact, even the Great War was won by open warfare. During that struggle it was only by the most dogged determination that the American Army was able to pursue its training in mobile or open warfare.

It was well that General Pershing stuck to it and was ready when the time came to get out of the trenches and move on with our Allies to final victory.

How many people know that Cavalry was used at St. Mihiel?

We all know that infantry is the arm that wins the battle and that the rest of the team assists it to move forward and capture, or destroy, the enemy; but let us not overlook the Cavalry.

The great value of Cavalry is its mobility. On this continent it will always be first in demand. No line of trenches will stretch across this great country nor protect either frontier. In large forces also the possession of a large mobile mass of Cavalry, trained in fire action that can promptly fill a gap in the line, can turn a flank, wreck communications or rout a beaten enemy, would be of enormous value to any commander.

Our New York Cavalry is in excellent condition as demonstrated at Pine Camp this year. Our Cavalry can ride and is well trained with rifle, pistol and saber. The horses are well gaited, the equipment is well kept, the officers and non-coms are competent. The details of messing and stable management are not neglected even though the cavalymen have extra work in caring for horse and horse equipment. Any member of the guard who could have the privilege of seeing as I did our Cavalry at work in camp would have a just pride in them.

As for being a passé arm—well, do not let anyone fool you. The role of the Cavalry is as important today as ever, if not more so, and it gives me pleasure to be able to tell you that "They are all right!"

The Organized Reserves

POLICIES RECOMMENDED

THE following resolution was among those adopted by the Reserve Officers of the Fifth Corps Area, at Camp Knox, Kentucky, August, 1926:

Be It Further Resolved that it is our united opinion that the following policies, if adopted by the War Department, would be desirable:

(1) In all camps, whether ordered or contact, forage for private mounts, and oil and gas for private cars used in training, should be sold by the Quartermaster Department, to Reserve Officers at cost.

(2) Reserve Officers, who during a five (5) year period, do no active duty, attend no contact camp, convention or assembly of Reserve Officers, take no correspondence course, purchase no uniforms or equipment, subscribe to no service periodicals, purchase no technical military publications, are not members of, or contributors to the Reserve Officers' Association or the Association of the Army of the United States, assist in no way the recruiting of the Regular Army, the National Guard or the Citizens' Military Training Camps, make no efforts to advance preparedness, or combat sovietism and pacifism, and do not answer military correspondence, are essentially civilians, and their identification with the Corps tends to weaken it, dissipate the voluntarily contributed funds of the Reserve Officers' Association in sending circulars and notices, and lowers the morale of the Corps. The commissions of such officers should never be renewed, and the Corps and the promotions therein strictly limited to those who regard themselves and their commissions seriously.

(3) The commissioning of individuals in the technical branches of the service in the higher grades from civil life, without previous service, because of their standing as surgeons, civil or electrical engineers, commercial, industrial or railway executive, lawyers or bankers, over the heads of officers of the Reserve of long service in peace or war, or both, is fundamentally an error.

The intended value of these men to the Corps growing out of their high standing in the community is rarely in evidence in experience, such persons very rarely paying attention to the Corps after entry therein, and the discouragement of junior officers by such action far outweighs the benefit contemplated.

(4) That it is the eternal duty of Reserve Officers to support the War Department, the Regular Army, the National Guard, and all policies issuing from competent authority and that competent authority having determined a policy such support should be unswerving loyal. That abundant support should be given to all service periodicals, the R. O. Association, the Association of the Army of the United States, and the various

patriotic societies and especially the Military Order of the World War, the American Legion, the Military Order of Foreign Wars, and the Veterans of Foreign Wars, and allied societies.

(5) *Be It Further Resolved* that we commend the members of our Corps, who are also members of Congress, for their support of the policies of the War Department, and urge on them and all other members of Congress the extreme necessity of more liberal appropriations for the Army in general, and as *res inter alia* for the distribution of technical books and papers to Reserve Officers making special application therefor.

FURTHER RECOMMENDATIONS

A COMMITTEE of twenty-four Reserve officers, representing all corps areas, convened by the G-2 Section of the War Department General Staff, has also submitted opinions of interest to the Reserves. Summarized, they are as follows:

1. That the War Department should co-operate in an endeavor to stimulate enrollment in the Reserve Officers' Association.

2. That increase of travel allowance be made to Regular Army officers on duty with Organized Reserves in order that closer and continuous contact may be established.

3. That the Regular Army personnel, on duty with the Organized Reserves, be selected with great care and with a view, especially as to their qualifications, to interest the civilian population in support of the national defense act through the Reserve component of the Army, and that they be charged with this duty; that when so selected and tested, and having proved their qualifications by producing results, should be changed with less frequency.

4. That it is vitally important to the proper development of the Reserve, and is indeed essential to its very life, that an office be established at the War Department to co-ordinate with the other branches of the service, and speak as the responsible head of the Reserve upon all matters of its concern.

5. That credit in time in grade should be given for attending camps, schools, and other tours of duty on an inactive status and for completing Army correspondence courses.

6. That adequate space in Government buildings, wherever practicable, now and in those to be used or constructed should be set aside for offices suitable to quarter Reserve units and comporting with the dignity of this branch of the service.

7. That funds appropriated should be made available for an 18-month period so that an unexpended balance will not lapse at the end of the fiscal year, and that the distribution of such allotments should be made flexible and interchangeable.

8. That promotions be not dependent upon vacancies in the corps area

allotments, but that units be developed in so far as their officer personnel is concerned in unit areas.

9. That great care be used in the elimination of "dead wood," but the organization should, as rapidly as possible, be stripped of all material which is not now, and never can be, used.

STRENGTH OF THE OFFICERS RESERVE CORPS

On June 30, 1926, a total of 103,829 officers were commissioned in the Reserve Corps. Of these, 64,656, or 62.3 per cent., were in the combatant branches, and 39,173, or 37.7 per cent., were in the non-combatant branches. At the head of the combatant group was the infantry with a total of 30,143 officers, or 29.1 per cent. of the total. The field artillery was second with 10,230, or 9.9 per cent. of the total. The air corps and engineer corps came next with 6,985 and 6,780, respectively. The cavalry had 3,771. Of the non-combatants, the quartermaster corps had 11,000 and the medical corps 10,790.

By grades the reserve officers were distributed as follows: Colonel, 530 combatant and 574 non-combatant; lieutenant-colonel, 1,240 combatant and 1,845 non-combatant; major, 3,682 combatant and 6,259 non-combatant; captain, 10,647 combatant and 9,737 non-combatant; first lieutenant, 12,994 combatant and 11,955 non-combatant; second lieutenant, 35,479 combatant and 8,770 non-combatant.

305TH CAVALRY—Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Colonel Jean H. A. Day, Commanding

In the retirement of Colonel John C. Groome, who was transferred to the Auxiliary Reserves, having reached the age of 64 years on May 31st, the Reserve Corps loses one of its most active and excellent colonels. What his loss will mean to the regiment cannot be expressed in words. Colonel Groome saw active service in the Spanish-American War and World War, and his fine record shows the type of man who organized and trained the 305th Cavalry from its beginning.

By his wonderful personality and leadership he has won the respect and love of every member of the regiment. In fact, in Philadelphia, the 305th Cavalry is known as "Johnny Groome's Regiment." Colonel Groome is at present in Europe, and the entertainment committee is making plans for a dinner to be given in his honor on his return.

Inactive Training

The 1925-26 inactive training period for the regiment closed on May 30th and was most successful. The officers who regularly attended displayed the keenest interest and enthusiasm in the equitation, tactical problems, conferences and tactical rides.

All officers with 60 per cent. attendance and over will receive certificates showing they completed the inactive training for the period 1925-26. The regiment is indebted to Lieutenant L. N. D. Mitchell for furnishing these certificates, which are beautifully engraved in regimental colors. The regiment is also indebted to Lieutenant Mitchell for his kindness in donating the fine ribbons and programs for the regimental horse show May 21, 1926. The regiment is greatly indebted to Colonel Colahan, Commanding Officer, 103rd Cavalry, Pennsylvania National Guard, and to Captain Wood, Commanding First City Troop of Philadelphia, for their kindness in allowing the regiment

to use the Armory and horses. The inactive training for the year 1925-26 could not have been successfully carried out without their co-operation and kindness.

Preparatory Training for Active Duty

During the summer months a course of training was carried out in preparation for the active duty with the Pennsylvania National Guard at Mt. Gretna. With this end in view a schedule was prepared covering the months of June, July and the first two weeks in August, and called for weekly conferences on Wednesdays at Regimental Headquarters during the noon hour and practical work in pistol firing at the 103rd Cavalry indoor range. These activities were attended by all officers and enlisted men of the regiment in Philadelphia, who had signed up for active duty, and they showed fine spirit in giving their noon hour to this training.

From June 16 to August 11 weekly conferences and quizzes were held on the following subjects: Military Courtesy and Customs of the Service; Cavalry Drill; Guard Duty and Guard Mounting; Cavalry Drill (the platoon) T. R. 425-30; Ceremonies; Combat Orders; Cavalry Weapons; Combat Principles; Cavalry Marches, Camps and Camping.

Practically all of the above subjects had been covered in the regimental school during the inactive training period, and this course was in the nature of a refresher.

Horse Shows

In the Devon Horse Show on May 26, 27 and 28, the regiment had five entries in the Military Class and Military Jumping. The first and second places in this event were won by such notable performers in previous shows as the *Grey Parson* and *The Rambler*, winners of many blue ribbons. The 305th Cavalry was the donor of the prize in this event, a silver cocktail shaker, appropriately engraved. The performance of Captain Brogden in this event was especially meritorious. His riding was a perfect performance in every respect. From a spirit of sportsmanship, members of the 305th Cavalry were not eligible to receive the trophy awarded.

The Regimental Horse Show Committee is busy arranging regimental entries in the Whitemarsh Horse Show on September 15, 16 and 17, and the Bryn Mawr Show on September 25, 26 and 27.

C. M. T. C. Activities

All officers and enlisted men of the regiment did their bit in the C. M. T. C. drive in Philadelphia. Major R. R. D. McCullough, Commanding the 1st Squadron, sent two candidates to the Cavalry Camp at Fort Myer. The excellent talks of Major J. S. S. Richardson, Commanding the 2nd Squadron; Captain E. P. Rutan, Commanding Troop C, and Lieutenant R. Adams, Plans and Training, 2nd Squadron, urging young men to attend these camps, were broadcasted over the radio.

The flag donated by the 305th Cavalry to the Citizens' Military Training Camp Association to be presented to the school in Philadelphia having the largest number of students attending C. M. T. C. this year was won by St. Joseph's Catholic High School. It was through the efforts and kindness of Major Edgar S. Gardner, 305th Cavalry, that the regiment was able to donate this flag to stimulate recruiting for C. M. T. C. candidates.

Regimental Dinner

A regimental dinner was held at the "Lilacs" Club on the Schuylkill River on July 29 with an attendance of 25 officers. The object of the dinner was to talk over regimental affairs and active duty training. A good time was had by all. The dinner was enlivened by interesting talks and the singing of army songs.

Certificates of Capacity

The following named officers have completed their examinations and practical tests for certificates of capacity in the next higher grade: Lieutenant-Colonel William I. Forbes, Second Lieutenant Robert Adams, Jr., Second Lieutenant John D. Grannis, Jr., and Second Lieutenant Horace P. Kirk.

Active Duty Training with P. N. G.

The active duty training of the Regiment was held at Mt. Gretna, Pa., from August 14 to 28, the twenty-two officers attending being attached to the 104th Cavalry, Pennsylvania National Guard.

In this training the officers were assigned to units appropriate to their grades, and were in active command of these units during the full period of training. Upon the completion of this training all the officers of the 305th Cavalry were unanimous in their expressions of the fine spirit of the 104th Cavalry, the courtesy extended to them by all the officers and men and all hoped to again have the pleasure of serving with that regiment at some future time. Colonel Jean H. A. Day, commanding the 305th Cavalry at this camp, personally extended his thanks in behalf of the whole regiment to the officers of the 104th Cavalry for the many kindnesses extended to his regiment.

At the final Brigade formation a cup was presented by the officers of the 305th Cavalry to the troop in the 104th Cavalry which had the highest rating in troop kitchens. This cup was won by the Headquarters Troop, commanded by Captain Cowan.

Pistol practice was held at the 103rd Cavalry Armory indoor range on July 14th and 28th from 5.30 to 7.30 P. M. The 103rd Cavalry kindly allowed the regiment to use their pistols and supplied the ammunition for this practice. Lieutenant Kirk won the shoot on July 14th with a score of 92, and Lieutenant Town won on July 28th with a score of 94. Much interest was displayed at both these shoots, a marked improvement being noted at the second.

The following named officers of the regiment were qualified in Pistol Marksmanship as follows:

Experts: Colonel Day, Captain Vannan, Lieutenants Bitler, Johnson, Gardiner, McKinley, Town.

Sharpshooters: Captains Bell, Easby, Livingston.

Marksman: Lieutenant Wirth.

The following named officers of the regiment were qualified in the Saber Course as follows:

Experts: Captains Vannan, Bell, Lieutenants Bitler, Gardiner, Town.

Excellent Swordsman: Lieutenant Johnson.

Considering the handicaps the above named officers were under in the weather conditions and the track conditions, the above was very creditable. The track was knee deep in mud and very slippery, and the horses had great difficulty in making the required time.

New Books Reviewed

The Dardanelles' Expedition A Condensed Study By CAPTAIN W. D. PULESTON,
U. S. Navy

The Collegiate Press, George Banta Publishing Company, Menasha, Wisconsin
154 pages

The study is illustrated by sixty-seven plates, prepared by the author and Lieutenant-Colonel G. L. McIntee, G. S., U. S. A. These plates show the situation from day to day and are so placed as to enable the reader to follow the narrative with the greatest ease.

Captain Puleston is a graduate of the Army War College as well as of the Naval War College and, hence, is especially qualified to undertake the study of an amphibious campaign.

In this book he has shown with clarity and brevity the events leading up to this ill-fated expedition which was originally conceived by a civilian minister as "a Naval Expedition to bombard and take the Gallipoli Peninsula with Constantinople as its objective." These events furnish for us but another example of the danger of interference of civilians, with only a smattering of military knowledge, in the details of war plans. Captain Puleston believes that it is doubtful if even Great Britain could survive another World War and another Churchill.

The naval operations preceding and accompanying the landing of troops are shown in such simplicity and fullness that they are easily followed by a landsman.

The book emphasizes the necessity of a single command in joint operations. It brings out the thorough understanding of the capabilities and limitations of ships and troops must exist, not only in the War and Navy Departments for the preparation of startegical plans, but also in the command and general staffs of quite small units who may be called upon to prepare and execute the tactical operations.

The study gives much food for thought to officers of the army along the lines of the preparations which are necessary to secure landings upon a hostile shore, the tactics of these landings and the rapid expansion of beach heads. Interesting supply and communication problems are presented.

The book should be in the library of all officers who have reached the grade where, in the event of war, they may find themselves in the command or general staff of a unit engaged in an oversea campaign.

ADNA R. CHAFFEE.

Four Years Beneath the Crescent By RAPHAEL DE NOGALES, Charles Scribner's
Sons, New York (Price, \$3.50)

The extraordinary experiences of a soldier of fortune, who offered his sword in turn to each of the Allied nations, without acceptance unless with the prohibitive condition of loss of citizenship, and then engaged in service under the Turkish flag, are described in this narrative of four years' service under the Crescent.

Born a Venezuelan, Nogales had spent his childhood in Germany and had received most of his education there. The World War, therefore, brought to him a conflict of sympathies with the result that by reason of his Latin birth he first turned to the side of the Allies.

Nogales Bey tells a remarkable story of his services in many capacities, as he was shifted from place to place in Asia Minor at the behest of the Turkish authorities.

His first assignment was in Armenia, where he had first-hand acquaintance with the Armenian massacres, several of which he witnessed. His comments on these massacres leave little to the imagination. His knowledge of them, as a Christian, led to the Turks making several attempts to get rid of him.

Notwithstanding this uneasiness of the Turks at a foreign Christian's knowledge of these outrages, Nogales Bey was given many military positions of importance and responsibility in various parts of the Eastern theater of war from Constantinople to Ezerum on the east, and to Kut el Amara and the Sinai Peninsula on the south. He participated in many operations, and his description of these alone make this a book of remarkable adventure.

He was sent to the Palestine front late in 1916 and participated in the operations on this front until the Armistice. We have had many accounts of Allenby's Palestine Campaign from the British view-point, and it is interesting as well as illuminating to view the events of that campaign as seen from the other side.

Nogales was intimately associated with many German, as well as Turkish leaders, and his characterizations of both are interesting. It is very easy to understand why the Germans had so much difficulty with their Oriental ally.

Being known to the Turks as a foreign Christian, having knowledge of the massacres, it is not surprising that at the same time that they were assigning Nogales to important military tasks, they were much concerned in assuring themselves that he should not get out of the country alive. The incongruity of such a situation is an interesting commentary on Turkish psychology.

The military student will not find this volume of any special value as a tactical or strategical study, but as a personal narrative of adventures in war, it will be much enjoyed.

History of Fort Leavenworth By MAJOR ELVID HUNT, Infantry The General
Service Schools' Press

For many years the Fort Leavenworth has been so intimately associated with the General Service Schools that it seldom occurs to one that the post has had a long and illustrious history, first as an outpost on our western frontier, and later as a great supply and starting point for military expeditions during the Mexican and Civil Wars.

Mayor Hunt, in his interesting book, brings out in a vivid manner the early history of the Post which begins with the establishment of a cantonment by Colonel Henry Leavenworth in 1827. For a time its main function was that of an outpost on the western frontier during the great western migration of Indians, resulting from the creation by Congress in 1830 of an Indian country, which included all of western Kansas. Later, during the Mexican War, Leavenworth was a great assembly and outfitting point for military expeditions to the southwest, the most famous of which was the Doniphan Expedition. In the Fifties it was the general depot from which supplies were sent to all military posts, camps and stations in the Great West, from the Missouri River, north, south and west to the Pacific Ocean. It was in the midst of the pre-Civil War turmoil following the establishment as territories of Kansas and Nebraska, which left the question of slavery to be settled by the people. It maintained its importance as a supply point throughout the Civil War which followed.

With the establishment at Fort Leavenworth in 1881 of a School of Application for Infantry and Cavalry, began its history in connection with education in the army, with the later developments of which we are all familiar.

Training Horses for Races By CAPTAIN G. W. L. MEREDITH, Chas. Scribner's Sons,
New York (Price \$1.25)

This little book gives many instructive and valuable hints on the subject of training horses for races, with special reference to steeplechasing and cross-country racing.

The training period is divided into three parts—the bodily health stage, the

muscling period and the respiratory stage. Feeding, conditioning and schooling in each of these periods are thoroughly discussed. As Lieutenant-Colonel Geoffrey Brooke, D. S. O., the well-known author of *Horse Sense and Horsemanship of Today*, states: "Officers and others who are interested in training their own horses will, if they carefully study the book, be working on sound lines and correct principles."

The Modern Horse Series Forster Groom & Co., By MAJOR R. S. TIMMIS, D. S. O. Ltd., London (Price \$2.50 the set)

Major R. S. Timmis, D. S. O., the well-known authority on all matters concerning the horse, and the author of *Modern Horse Management*, has for the benefit of those wishing more detailed and specialized information than can be included in a single volume, prepared five handy volumes with the following titles: *Notes on Horsemanship*, an admirable little book dealing with the humane management and right treatment of the horse and abounding in practical suggestions and instructions; *Notes on Riding and Driving*, a most useful text-book to any man or woman who owns a horse; *Lameness in Horses and Treatment of Injuries*, a very comprehensive work and will be most useful and very helpful in the care of horses; *Veterinary Notes*, a very condensed and very useful handbook of reference; *Appointments and Conformation of the Horse*; *Judging and Breeding*, a mine of sound and useful information.

Not the least recommendation of these books is their handy pocket size, their lateral dimensions being about the same as those of the old Cavalry Drill Regulations. Many clear illustrations add materially to their value. Every officer having anything to do with horses will find this series by Major Timmis exceedingly useful.



Easter Day.

Captain R. P. McComb, Vet. Corps, owner and rider. Winner of Chief of Cavalry's Handicap, Juarez, Mexico, May 2, 1926. This event was for officers' mounts to be ridden by owners in uniform and was in honor of the visit of Major-General H. B. Crosby, Chief of Cavalry.

Foreign Military Journals

The Cavalry Journal (Great Britain) July, 1926

Major Oskar Teichman, D.S.O., M.C., T.D., in his article in this number on *General de Zeiten*, Frederick the Great's famous cavalry leader, gives us an interesting view of the career of this "stormy petrel" of the German Cavalry.

Notwithstanding frequent quarrels and occasional duels with his superiors, resulting at times in the forced retirement from active service, he many times made up for these lapses by brilliant services in the field. The descriptions given of several of his exploits demonstrate that de Zeiten possessed many, if not all, of the qualifications of a great cavalry leader. This article is well worth reading and furnishes a number of historical examples of clever cavalry work.

Hyder Ally—the *Lion of Mysore*—whose career is discussed by Colonel Wyllie, C.B., seems to have been a military genius of the first water and an outstanding figure among the warriors of British India. At all events, he made much trouble for the British during the latter half of the 18th century.

His armies were characterized by their great strength in cavalry. He excelled in cavalry tactics, and seemed to possess by intuition the knowledge of how to launch his horsemen in such a manner as to give the greatest effect upon the enemy. Many of his victories were due to the celerity with which he made forced marches on various occasions.

The Journal of the United Service Institution of India, July, 1926

The Co-operation of the Mechanical Arms with Cavalry in the Mobile Detachments of a Modern Army, by Major E. G. Hume. The author, in this interesting article, concurs to a great extent in the conclusions reached by Colonel Hawkins in his article in this number of the CAVALRY JOURNAL, in regard to the co-operation of aircraft; armored cars and tanks with cavalry.

He concludes that armored cars fitted with wireless and armed with an anti-tank gun, as well as machine guns, would be invaluable in helping cavalry:

- (a) By carrying out rapid reconnaissances far ahead, establishing whether or not certain places are held.
- (b) In supporting cavalry reconnoitring detachments and helping them along when held up by machine guns.
- (c) To warn cavalry of gas areas the enemy may have made.
- (d) To protect cavalry against enemy armored cars and tanks.
- (e) To take cavalry or other commanders rapidly forward for personal reconnaissance.
- (f) To capture important features or bridge-heads before the cavalry can come up, thus being in time to deny them to the enemy.
- (g) Above all, with their wireless and mobility to keep all parts of a cavalry force in communication with each other and with the air force who are co-operating with them.

Tanks are considered as a sledge-hammer, which can be directed to a useful purpose by the quick, all-round consciousness of cavalry assisted by aircraft and armored cars, but are not suitable for extended independent missions.

Revue de Cavalerie (France) May-June, 1926

Reviewed by Captain W. E. Shipp, Cavalry, D. O. L.

The Cavalry in the Northern Maneuvers, by Major F. Picard. Attacking an automobile transport and outflanking a hostile force: such were the missions of a large unit of French cavalry in the Northern Maneuvers in 1925. From his observations of these maneuvers the author concludes that the French cavalry does not possess the

suppleness of former times, due to its methods of training. Cavalry is not only a group of mounted combatants, for it should also be characterized by the abundance and quality of its lower ranks. With only two lieutenants in a squadron, few old N. C. O.'s, and most N. C. O.'s and privates with but five months of actual training, not much more can be expected. After five months of service, each cavalryman is armed with a hammer, an insect bellows, or a fountain pen, and this is called 18 months' training! Officers can have but little interest in these skeleton units in which the men pass by as in a kaleidoscope. To remedy these evils, in each regiment there should be formed the administrative units that are needed for war time expansion, and the other men should be assigned to training units.

During the maneuvers there was a constant tendency to forget maneuver and to seek every opportunity to fight on foot, resulting in that instead of the cavalry's being able to hold the enemy and seek to outflank him, it fixed itself on foot, often on unfavorable terrain.

The maneuvers showed very clearly the utility of cavalry in covering the flanks. In the hands of a capable commander, it is the arm of movement par excellence, and it has the power of movement on great fronts without being riveted to the ground. The need for cavalry in the next great war will be even more than in the past, and the proportion of this arm that should be maintained constantly instructed in peace time is greater than ever before.

The two qualities of cavalry—value of the cadres and tradition—can only be maintained by instruction. Each soldier should be able to work when alone, and the ability to do so is developed, not in maneuvers or in barracks, but in individual training in the open. Instructed soldiers are much, but not all, for each cavalryman must understand the basic doctrines of the employment of his arm. Today cavalry has not found its equilibrium. There is no longer any discussion as to fighting mounted or dismounted as every one believes in the latter, but there is much confusion about the mounted maneuvers which precede and follow combat. The cavalry must be ever watchful or else it will become merely mounted infantry.

In the present French cavalry division there are only 48 machine guns and 300 machine rifles. The former should be increased to at least 40 per regiment or 240 per division. With such an equipment, cavalry could act at great distances and operate efficiently in surprise attacks, the machine rifles serving only for close combat and for covering the machine guns.

Cavalrymen are wrong in considering themselves the last of a vanishing race, for cavalry still has a large place in the theatre of operations, if not on the field of battle, where, substituted for infantry, it is used only in the hour of supreme sacrifice. One must remember that the past history of French arms, however, has enough pages of victories so that one should not think too much about such sad moments. The needs of the future call for a numerous, young cavalry, full of spirit and animated with the true cavalry spirit which guided it in its successes in the field of operations. The author ends with some glorious and familiar examples of the employment of cavalry.

The author of this article is not ashamed of his branch, and his faith in it has been again justified by the maneuvers he describes.

La Cooperazione Delle Armi (Italy) January, 1926

Reviewed by Captain W. E. Shipp, Cav. D. O. L.

The Austro-Hungary Cavalry During the World War—By Lieutenant of Cavalry Roberto Chastel. It was generally presumed before 1914 that in case of war between Austro-Hungary and Russia that hostilities would commence with great cavalry actions which would have a capital influence on the first phases of the campaign if not on the entire campaign. The nature of the zone of the frontier which by its vastness permitted liberty of movement indispensable for the employment of a large mass of cavalry, the deficiency or scarcity of roads, and the presumed slowness of the Russian

mobilization were expected to give the Austrian Supreme Command an opportunity to use its excellent and numerous cavalry (trained for both mounted and dismounted action) for covering the advance of its armies.

In reality, events took place differently on account of two reasons: First, the relatively rapid Russian mobilization, by which the Austro-Hungarian cavalry encountered almost at once great masses almost compact; and second, on account of the training and formations used in the Austro-Hungarian cavalry itself.

In general, the Austro-Hungarian cavalry was considered to be among the finest in Europe, both on account of the quality and quantity of its horses and on account of the cavalry attributes of its soldiers.

Before the declaration of war, the Austro-Hungarian cavalry was largely used in protection of the frontier, both to protect the mobilization and to prevent Russian incursions. This hard service did much to wear its strength. After hostilities commenced, it was sent to the frontier, but except in the western sector, where the Russians cleared part of Poland, it did not advance very much. Russian mobilization proceeded with unexpected celerity and their forces pushed to the frontier covered by cavalry corps. Assisted by their infantry, the Russian cavalry prevented the Austrian cavalry from making raids longer than a day's march. During this period there were frequent encounters between the opposing cavalry forces, such as the one at Kielce.

The only encounters between large forces of cavalry known are those at Gorodok (August 17, 1914) and at Jaroslavice (August 21, 1914). At Gorodok, after dispersing some "sotnie," the 5th Austrian Cavalry Division, reinforced by a brigade of the 8th, after dispersing several "sotnie," made a gallant but costly charge against infantry intrenched behind wire, and were finally driven back by a flank attack by Russian cavalry. Jaroslavice was also a Russian victory, in which the tide was finally turned against the Austrians on account of the separation of their units and also by the effective use of the Russian artillery.

In the autumn of 1914 the Austrian cavalry was used principally as a mobile reserve. Most of its action was on foot. In the battle of Lemberg a provisional cavalry corps was used to stop a gap made by the advancing Russians. At Chyrow (October 20, 1924) a division was similarly used. In December of the same year the 10th and 11th Austrian Cavalry Divisions were employed in preventing a flank attack by Brussilow on the Roth Group and, although successful, they suffered a 60 per cent. loss.

At the end of 1914 there was no idea as to the duration of the war, and as war of movement had been succeeded by war of position, there was little use for cavalry in its old form; consequently, the Austrian cavalry was gradually dismounted. In July, 1915, there were 30 squadrons dismounted and 395 mounted, but by July, 1917, there were 400 squadrons dismounted and only 84 mounted, and the number of machine-gun sections had been increased to 100. In the year 1915 cavalry was used only once by the Austrians, when at Rowno a cavalry corps (General Berndt) counter attacked the Russians after a surprise attack. In 1916 the Austrian cavalry, assisted by German cavalry, was employed in June in stopping a breach made by Brussilow. In October of the same year the Austrian cavalry was used for the first time in its divisional organization in Transylvania as a mobile reserve at Gyergy, where a provisional cavalry corps successfully closed a breach and held off the Russians until the arrival of reinforcements.

The author concludes that the Austrian cavalry was not prepared in peace for the exigencies of war, and the strict co-operation between the cavalry and the other arms, so vital to success, was not inculcated into it in its training. Moreover, it lacked sufficient artillery, machine guns, technical troops, cyclists and light infantry to follow up its advance. Its equipment was too heavy. In its training the charge was almost the

only form of action taught, and it was burdened with an excessively offensive spirit which made it waste its resources in brave but futile attacks, as at Gorodok. The Russians were much better instructed in using dismounted action. During mobilization the Austrian cavalry was excessively engaged in distant reconnaissance and wasted its strength in useless marches; consequently, at the declaration of war it had already begun to decay. Insufficient use was made of the air corps for distant reconnaissance and of radio in communication, thereby burdening the cavalry with needless tasks. Due to the stabilization of the fronts, the cavalry was unwisely dismounted, resulting in the dissipation of a valuable mobile reserve. It is obvious how valuable cavalry would have been to Austria on the Italian front in October and November, 1917, if one remembers the prodigious tasks of the Italian cavalry brigades.

During the war the Austrian cavalry constituted magnificent elements for morale, tenacity and valor, but it was not prepared for modern war, and its formations did not fit in with modern plans. By its inopportune use it was too often needlessly sacrificed. It suffered from too much rigidity in its peace-time training, and it failed to adapt itself to the evolution of the methods of warfare.

The author concludes with the observation that, since all wars must begin and end with movement, the cavalry still has important tasks in war, and he cited familiar examples of its use to prove the point.

La Cooperazione Delle Armi (Italy) April, 1926

Cavalry Cooperation, by Colonel of Cavalry Aldo Aymonino. It is unquestionable that there exists today in many minds a great uncertainty as to the proper use of cavalry, and that often its true value and its relation to the other arms is not understood or appreciated, and this uncertainty has resulted from the destruction in the last war of the old cavalry doctrines and from the failure to create new ones. The false doctrines which so handicapped cavalry during the war came into being shortly after the campaign of 1870-1871. Cooperation between cavalry and the other arms was practically destroyed by the conception of "independent cavalry," which had almost complete liberty of action and of movement, was widely separated from the armies it covered, and was taught that its principal tasks were the destruction of the hostile cavalry and obtaining information. The other ways in which the arm could be used were slighted. Thus handicapped by being alienated from the family of the arms, cavalry became the victim of stereotyped doctrines and atrophied.

Infantry is, of course, the basic arm; consequently, the other arms have value in proportion to their ability to aid the infantry. Cavalry is its principal auxiliary during movement, and artillery during combat. Cavalry facilitates and assures the way for infantry masses on the march, and artillery for masses in combat. The greatest lesson of the last war was the necessity for cooperation between infantry and artillery, but cooperation between the former and cavalry is no less necessary. Cavalry has actions corresponding to barrage, counter-battery, interdiction, destruction. All the vast, varied and powerful cooperation that artillery gives infantry during combat should be emulated by cavalry in the maneuvers which precede and follow combat. Just as artillery has need of projectiles to carry out its missions, cavalry has need of space to carry out its missions, for mobility is its watchword, and its greatest arm is the spirit of maneuver. The value of artillery and infantry action can be largely measured by the enemy's losses, but cavalry can achieve its missions by the moral effects of rear and flank attacks.

Retreat and pursuit—the epilogue of combat—when the victory is affirmed or becomes sterile afford the cavalry its greatest opportunity for use in the strategic or parallel pursuit. The rapidity of cavalry action does not allow lasting success unless it is followed up by infantry, as its success is transient and empty unless consolidated by infantry. Infantry not only supports by fire, but also by maneuver, morale and

material. Just as the hunter has a slower velocity than his dog but their actions must be coordinated, so must there be an intimate cooperation between infantry and cavalry.

Once short battles were the culmination of long campaigns of maneuver, but today the positions are reversed, and the short hours or days of maneuver are the epilogue of the long battles preceding them. In this short period of maneuver there must be every means available to make it effective. Then the cavalry plays its great role by reaping the fruits of victory or by preventing the enemy from doing so. Free terrain for maneuver is just as necessary for cavalry as air is for aviation, and as tempests limit the actions of the latter, so does mountainous terrain limit the actions of the former. However, no great nation will ever wage a great war principally in the mountains.

This is a very graphic and interesting article, abounding in striking analogies. *Memorial de Caballeria (Spain) May, 1926*

Reviewed by Major Harold Thompson, Cavalry

Cavalry Maneuvers of Autumn, 1925, is the title of a short article by an officer of the Prince's Lancers, one of the regiments participating.

Much is said by way of introduction of the way the cavalry communications functioned with the aviation. As the officer writer was present at the critiques, he supplements the ideas expressed by the pilot and observer reports with his own. From his own account, he was continually with either a flank or advance guard unit, and stresses the importance of the air service reconnaissance overlapping that of the cavalry reconnaissance units, and the feeling of security that he and other officers in charge of reconnaissance patrols had, in knowing that the aviation, during the brief spells of good weather, would by its greater "reach," supplement his own knowledge of what took place in his immediate front; with what transpired farther toward the enemy main forces. Again and again during rain squalls and poor visibility, the cavalry proved able to get negative information.

Great difficulties are spoken of, relative to supplying reconnaissance troops with rations and forage. This was due to several reasons. In first place, with contact imminent, reconnaissance troops keep off the well-known roads in advancing and consequently away from their trains, however small they may be. Air observation made this difficult, too, as villages would be closely scrutinized by the observers, especially along the lines of advance. By using pack mules and light trucks, coupled with open purchases in the country traversed, the troops fared passably, but none too well. Reference is made, too, of the necessity of evacuation, and in this case men had to be left in out-of-the-way granges, distant from assembly points for the motor ambulance companies, which followed the main bodies along the best roads.

Regimental Notes

SECOND CAVALRY—Fort Riley, Kansas

Colonel Llewellyn W. Oliver, Commanding

Lieut.-Colonel George T. Bowman	Captain Floyd M. Hyndman
Major Edgar M. Whiting	Captain Thomas A. Bryant
Major Elkin L. Franklin	First Lieut. Clyde B. Bell
Captain Robert W. Grow	First Lieut. Albert W. Johnson
Captain Terrill E. Price	First Lieut. James H. Phillips
Captain John W. McDonald	First Lieut. John W. Wofford
Captain Louis LeR. Martin	First Lieut. Paul MacK. Martin
Captain James T. Menzie	Second Lieut. Walter F. Jennings, Jr.
Captain Harry A. Buckley	Second Lieut. Gordon S. Armes
Captain William T. Hamilton	Second Lieut. Daniel DeBardeleben
Captain Rufus S. Ramey	Second Lieut. Walter Burnside
Captain Harold deB. Bruck	Second Lieut. Kevin O'Shea
Captain Joe C. Rogers	Second Lieut. Roland A. Brown
Captain Sexton Berg	Second Lieut. John N. DePew
Captain John B. Casseday	Second Lieut. Raymond M. Barton

The entire Regiment joined in the farewell to Colonel and Mrs. George Williams, all expressing sincere regret at this loss. A regimental dinner was given in honor of Colonel and Mrs. Williams, at which Lieut.-Colonel Bowman, toastmaster, ably expressed the sentiments of those present at the parting. On the morning of the departure all the officers of the regiment, with Troop B, escorted the Colonel's car out of the post along the Golden Belt Highway, which was lined by the remainder of the regiment with sabers at the present. Colonel Williams will be a member of the 1927 Class at the Command and General Staff School at Fort Leavenworth.

Colonel Llewellyn W. Oliver, our Regimental Commander, with Mrs. Oliver, arrived in the post on July 23rd, after driving overland from Washington, D. C., where Colonel Oliver has been attending the Army War College. The officers and ladies of the Regiment tendered Colonel and Mrs. Oliver a reception and dance on the evening of July 30th. Colonel Oliver again returns to the Cavalry School after completing a tour of duty as Instructor and Assistant Commandant.

Captain Delmore S. Wood, attached to the Regiment for the summer, assisted us considerably in polo, playing on the Regimental Team in the Tournament at Fort D. A. Russell, Wyo. Captain Wood will be a member of the 1927 Troop Officers' Class at the Cavalry School.

Captain A. G. Olsen was tendered a farewell reception and dance on his departure from the Regiment August 9th. Captain Olsen had been with the Regiment since 1922, and at Fort Riley the year prior to this attending the Cavalry School. Called on unexpectedly for a speech, during the course of the evening, Captain Olsen responded heartily and at great length, much to the surprise of his many friends. There was a large gathering at the station to bid Captain Olsen farewell; the Regimental Band tendered a concert.

First Lieut. W. H. W. Reinburg will be a member of the 1927 Special Advance Equitation Class at the Cavalry School, at present Lieutenant Reinburg is on the eastern trip with the Cavalry School Horseshow Team.

First Lieut. Thomas T. Thornburgh, after over four years with the Regiment, leaves us to enter the 1927 Special Advanced Equitation Class at the Cavalry School.

Lieutenant Thornburgh will be greatly missed in more ways than one, the least of which certainly will not be polo.

Troop E, Captain Hyndman commanding, left for Fort Leavenworth, July 19th, where he is now on duty with the C. M. T. Camps. Lieutenants Armes and Bridgeman are on duty with Troop E.

The Regiment has been represented in Fort D. A. Russell Polo Tournament by a team, which although heavily handicapped, won the tournament. The members of the team were Captains J. C. Rogers, J. C. Cunningham, H. A. Buckley, D. S. Wood and Lieutenant T. T. Thornburgh.

Among the several officers who have recently joined the Regiment, Major Elkin Franklin has been designated polo representative, and Captain Rogers captain of the team.

The Regiment held a Field and Track Meet in June, which was a great success, both from the standpoint of pleasure to the spectators and keen competition for the contestants. Winners of the track events were: 100-yard dash, Sergeant Kenneth Moore, Troop C; 880-yard run, Private Jens Lerdrup, Troop G; 220-yard dash, Private Chester Garber, Headquarters Troop; 440-yard dash, Private Findley, Troop A; one-mile run, Private Vernon Richardson, Troop A. One-mile relay won by Troop G. The field events went to the following: High jump, Corporal Towe, Troop C; discus throw, Private Delbert Fleek, Troop F; broad jump, Private Chester Garber, Headquarters Troop; shot-put, Private Chester Garber, Headquarters Troop; javelin throw, Private Delbert Fleek, Troop F. Special event winners were: Tug-of-war, Headquarters Troop; three-legged race, Troop B; shoe race, Corporal William Senker, Troop G. Headquarters Troop was the high point winner and consequently won the cup presented for the championship of the Regiment.

THIRD CAVALRY (Less 1st Squadron)—Fort Myer, Va.

Colonel William J. Glasgow, Commanding

Colonel Francis LeJ. Parker (attached)	First Lieut. Charles V. Barnum
Major Adna R. Chaffee	First Lieut. John B. Cooley
Captain Henry T. Allen, Jr.	First Lieut. George G. Elms
Captain Jess G. Boykin	First Lieut. Alexander George
Captain James R. Finley	First Lieut. George B. Hudson
Captain John S. Irving	First Lieut. Paul McD. Robinett
Captain Vernon L. Padgett	First Lieut. Samuel P. Walker
Captain James M. Shelton	First Lieut. Thomas E. Whitehead
Captain John A. Weeks	Second Lieut. Carl W. A. Raguse

During the month of May the Squadron completed dismounted pistol practice for qualification.

On June 18th the R. O. T. C. students reported for a course of six weeks' instruction. The Squadron furnished all of the horses and equipment for these men, as well as being responsible for their instruction.

On July 18th the C. M. T. Camp opened with a hundred and sixty-two students. The students were split up into three troops, and were officered by the troop commanders of the three line troops. This training lasted until August 6th, and during this period the regular troops had very little time for their own instruction.

Nevertheless a recruit squad was kept at work as the command has received in the neighborhood of seventy recruits during the summer months.

On the morning of August 5th the cavalry command as a whole turned out to bid farewell to Colonel H. S. Hawkins, and to escort him and his family out of the post. It was with a heavy heart that the officers and men came to a present sabers for the last time before the Colonel left.

Major Adna R. Chaffee was in command of the post for the major part of August.

On August 15th the Reserve Officers of the 306th and 307th Reserve Regiments, numbering about forty-four, reported at Fort Myer for their two weeks' period of active duty. It was with great pleasure that the Second Squadron took up their instruction, consisting of one week in the post and one week in the field.

Colonel Glasgow came out to see his command on the evening of August 20th, and a reception and dance was given in his honor, and in honor of the 306th and 307th Reserve Regiments.

On Saturday, August 28th, the Squadron and the Regimental Headquarters turned out in a Garrison Review, in honor of Brigadier-General S. D. Rockenbach, the district commander.

On September 7th the Squadron left for the target range at Camp Sims, to complete its rifle firing and mounted pistol course.

FIRST SQUADRON, THIRD CAVALRY—Fort Ethan Allen, Vermont

Lieutenant-Colonel F. D. Griffith, Jr., Commanding

Major Frederick Herr	First Lieut. Charles R. Chase
Captain Harry H. Dunn	Second Lieut. Dana G. McBride
Captain Charles J. Booth	Second Lieut. Lawrence R. Dewey
Captain George A. O'Donnell	Second Lieut. Irving A. Duffy
Captain Alfred J. deLorimier	Second Lieut. Harry W. Johnson
First Lieut. Rossiter H. Garity	

The squadron started target practice on May 14, 1926, and finished on June 30, 1926. It then entered upon the usual duties in connection with the training of the civilian components of the Army ordered to this Post for the annual summer training.

About 200 Cavalry Reserve Officers received their 15 days' training here during the period, June 13-July 31, the following units being represented: 301st Cavalry, 302nd Cavalry, 303rd Cavalry, 304th Cavalry, 315th Cavalry, 316th Cavalry, 158th M. G. Squadron and Headquarters 61st Cavalry Division.

Cavalry Reserve Officers' Training Corps units underwent training with the squadron during the period June 18th to July 29th, 1926; Major N. Butler Briscoe, Cavalry, was the senior instructor. Units trained were from Norwich University at Northfield, Vermont, and the Massachusetts Agricultural College, at Amherst, Mass.

August 2nd found the squadron busily engaged in absorbing 320 trainees allotted to the cavalry branch of the Citizens' Military Training Camp. This number comprised trainees from both the First and Second Corps Areas. Each troop in the squadron received over 100 trainees who were formed into C. M. T. C. platoons. All trainees were quartered under canvas this year, and were messed in two detachments in kitchens and mess halls of vacant barracks adjacent to the camp sites.

The colleges of the State of Vermont donated a trophy to be awarded to the C. M. T. C. troop or battery at this Post winning the greatest number of points in athletics. The competition for the cup included baseball, boxing, field and track events and other forms of athletics. Great interest was shown and competition was keen between the three troops and two batteries. Battery CX was the winner.

Troop B, Captain A. J. deLorimier, Commanding, left the Post on July 1st on a march to Richford, Vermont, to participate in a celebration on the 4th of July; it returned to the Post on July 7th.

FOURTH CAVALRY (Less First Squadron)—Fort D. A. Russell, Wyoming

Colonel Osmun Latrobe, Commanding

Lieut.-Colonel William W. Edwards	First Lieut. Robert J. Merrick
-----------------------------------	--------------------------------

Major Otto Wagner
 Captain Thomas A. Dobyns
 Captain Charles W. Burkett
 Captain C. C. Strawn
 Captain Richard W. Atwell
 Captain Edwin W. Godbold
 Captain Henry H. Cameron

First Lieut. Earle E. Cox
 First Lieut. Henry I. Hodes
 Second Lieut. Frank H. Bunnell
 Second Lieut. Charles V. Bromley
 Second Lieut. Ralph M. Neal
 Second Lieut. Harrison W. Davison
 Second Lieut. Gustavus W. West

Since the publication of the July CAVALRY JOURNAL the officer personnel of the Regiment has changed about fifty per cent. as will be seen by glancing at the roster.

Our polo captain, Captain Cannon, is on leave prior to taking the Troop Officers' Course at the Cavalry School, and Lieutenant Hammond left the Regiment about August 1st for duty at Cornell University. Our polo team feels greatly the loss of these two officers. Captain Gibbon and Captain Thomas are both on leave prior to taking the Troop Officers' Course at the Cavalry School. Lieutenant-Colonel Edwards, Major Wagner, Captains Cameron and Strawn have recently joined.

The target season this year has been a very successful one; each organization having qualified a high percentage, with two organizations having qualified 100 per cent. with the rifle.

The Fourth Cavalry Baseball Team, under the captaincy of First Sergeant Wertz, won the Post baseball series besides several outside games, losing only two games during the season. The competition in the Post, especially, was strong; the other teams being the Thirteenth Cavalry, the Seventy-sixth Field Artillery and the Staff.

The Post Polo Team, of which three Fourth Cavalry officers were members, won both the Northwestern Championship and the Ninth Corps Area Championship at Boise, Idaho.

The Cheyenne Frontier Days, held the last five days in July, were full of color and action, and practically all members of the command attended several, if not all, of the performances. Troop F, the Black Horse Troop, gave its musical drill daily.

The Fourth Cavalry Band has spent the summer on detached service. In June it marched to Fort Logan, Denver, Colorado, 110 miles, to take part in the Citizens' Military Training Camp there. After completing that work they took part in the fiftieth anniversary of the founding of Denver. About August 1st they were sent to Colorado Springs, Colorado, as guests of the Broadmoor Hotel to play during the opening of the Cheyenne Mountain Road.

August 14th the Band and the Black Horse Troop (Troop F) went to Colorado Springs by rail to give the musical drill at the Pikes Peak Rodeo, coming back to the Post on the 20th. This was by far the most pleasant trip of the year.

The entire regiment (less First Squadron) will leave August 28th and march to Torrington, Wyoming, arriving there about September 1st, to attend the Goshen County Fair. While there we will be entered in rescue races, Roman races, flat races, radio demonstrations and jumping, besides the musical drill at a gallop and a fast troop drill. Leaving Torrington about September 5th we will march to Douglas, Wyoming, arriving there about September 8th to attend the Wyoming State Fair, and to give practically the same exhibition there as at Torrington. The regiment will arrive back in the Post about September 25th, after having covered almost four hundred miles.

FIRST SQUADRON, FOURTH CAVALRY—Fort Meade, S. Dakota

Lieutenant-Colonel R. W. Walker, Commanding

Captain Norman E. Fiske	1st Lieut. John I. Gregg
Captain Rohland A. Isker	1st Lieut. John T. Ward

Captain Conrad G. Wall

1st Lieut. John K. Sells

1st Lieut. Leroy M. Wightman

2nd Lieut. Walter L. Weinaug

The Squadron has just completed rifle, sabre and pistol, mounted and dismounted, practice with very gratifying results. Qualifications are as follows:

	Rifle	Sabre	Pistol	Pistol
	Per Cent.	Per Cent.	(mtd.)	(dismtd.)
	Per Cent.	Per Cent.	Per Cent.	Per Cent.
Troop A	94.5	97.4	100	100
Troop B	97.3	92.3	100	90
Troop C	100	97.3	100	86.4
Hq. Det.	100	93.8	75	100
Ser. Det.	100			100

The annual Squadron two-sided maneuver was held June 1st to June 14th. Six days of this period was spent in problems around Sylvan Lake, a picturesque territory and excellent ground for tactical exercises. As a whole, the maneuver was a great success, although several hardships presented themselves in the form of heavy rains and rough going. The entire march was through the Black Hills.

The polo squad has been very active during June, July and August. They attended the intercircuit tournament at Fort Leavenworth in the early part of June, a tournament at Pierre, S. D., June 28th, 29th and 30th, and one at Fort D. A. Russell, which has not been completed to date. At Fort Leavenworth the 4th Cavalry was eliminated in the semi-finals by the Fort Riley team. In the first round a close and exciting game was won from the Kansas City team, 10-9. At Pierre two games were played. In the first game the Civilians were victorious, 7 to 1; in the second, the 147th Field Artillery was defeated, 8 to 5. In the game with the Civilians the Fort Meade players used the Field Artillery ponies, and in the second game we used the Civilian ponies. The Civilian ponies were far superior to those of the Field Artillery. At Fort D. A. Russell the team has been very successful to date, winning their first game from the 2nd Squadron, 4th Cavalry, by a 10-to-9 score. The winning goal was made less than a minute before the end of the game.

In the second game we won from the 13th Cavalry, 13 to 9. For the finals a series of two best games out of three is to be played with the Fort Riley team. Two games have been played with the Hot Springs Polo Club, each team winning a game. However, the score by which we won was much larger than the score of their victory.

The First Annual Fort Meade Horse Show was held July 25th and proved a great success. Silver trophies were awarded the winners in each event. Places in each event are as follows:

Military Jumping for Enlisted Men—1st, *Billy*, Pvt. Garrison, Tr. B; 2nd, *Skinney*, Corp. Perry, Tr. B; 3rd, *Highball*, Sgt. Loughney.

Experienced Polo Ponies—1st, *Contact*, Capt. Fiske; 2nd, *Ike*, Pvt. Johnson; 3rd, *Recruit*, Sgt. Krokoski.

Stake Driving Contest—1st, Grey Team, Pvt. Mallard, Ser. Det.; 2nd, Black Team, Corp. Barnett, Ser. Det.

Officers' Chargers—1st, *Pedro*, Capt. Renshaw; 2nd, *Tidal Wave*, Capt. Fiske; 3rd, *Walter*, Capt. Isker.

Stick and Ball Race—1st, Lieut. Ward, on *Jiggs*; 2nd, Lieut. Gregg, on *Bill Hart*; 3rd, Capt. Fiske, on *Contact*.

Hunters—1st, *Stella*, Sgt. Krokoski, Tr. C; 2nd, *Rowdy*, Lieut. Ward; 3rd, *Highball*, Capt. Wall.

Mule Polo Game (two periods)—Won by the Service Detachment.

Green Polo Ponies—1st, *Impulse*, Lieut. Weinaug; 2nd, *Hi Brown Gal*, Lieut. Sells; 3rd, *Gyp*, Capt. Wall.

Musical Chair Race—1st, Corp. Perry, Tr. B; 2nd, Pvt. Jordan, Tr. A.

Polo Bending Race—1st, *Hap Gay*, Capt. Fiske; 2nd, *Monkey*, Pvt. Covington, Tr. C; 3rd, *Bud*, Pvt. Jordan, Tr. A.

Cow Ponies—1st, *Buckaroo*, Bert Thraikill; 2nd, *Wildcat*, Gentry Smith; 3rd, *Dakota Bill*, Rolly Tanners.

Polo Pony Race—1st, *Tidal Wave*, Capt. Fiske; 2nd, *Rabbit*, Lieut. Gregg; 3rd, *Princess*, Pvt. Garrison, Tr. B.

Doughnut Race—1st, Roy Sparks, Sturgis, S. D.; 2nd, Frank Glover, Vale, S. D.; 3rd, Corp. Perry, Tr. B, 4th Cavalry.

Open Jumping—1st, *Stella*, Sgt. Krokoski; 2nd, *Tidal Wave*, Capt. Fiske; 3rd, *Ajax*, Sgt. Wilson, Tr. A.

The baseball team has been winning the majority of its games this summer, Custer, Hill City, Faith and the Indian School being among the victims. Our last game was lost to the strong Alladin (Wyoming) team. A game has been scheduled with the Sioux City team, which is touring the Black Hills, during the latter part of August.

FIFTH CAVALRY—Fort Clark, Texas

Colonel Wallace B. Scales, Commanding

Major Walton Goodwin, Jr.
 Captain Joseph M. Tully
 Captain William H. Kasten
 Captain Richard L. Creed
 Captain John T. Pierce, Jr.
 Captain Frank H. Barnhart
 Captain William O. Johnson
 Captain Roscoe S. Parker
 Captain Alfred L. Baylies
 Captain Lloyd W. Biggs
 Captain Joseph Yuditsky
 Captain Charles Cramer
 First Lieut. Frank L. Carr

First Lieut. John N. Greene
 First Lieut. Roy C. Wells
 First Lieut. Harry Knight
 First Lieut. James B. Edmunds
 First Lieut. John E. Leahy
 Second Lieut. Carl D. Silverthorne
 Second Lieut. Henry S. Jernigan
 Second Lieut. William L. Howarth
 Second Lieut. John H. Stadler
 Second Lieut. William J. Bradley
 Second Lieut. Hubert W. Ketchum, Jr.
 Second Lieut. Charles H. Valentine
 Second Lieut. Egon R. Tausch

At this writing figures for the qualification of the arms are not available, but the close of the year will find the regiment having qualified about 95 per cent. in the rifle, saber, pistol and machine rifle. A large number of recruits were received last fall and winter, and this fall we will receive another consignment, so that the regiment will be filled up to the full authorized strength.

Under the direction of Captain Creed, polo in the regiment has improved a great deal during the past year. All players have a better knowledge of the game, and teamwork has been improved, so that with a number of new mounts the teams are expected to make an excellent showing in the fall tournaments. In the Division tournaments the regiment will enter two teams, consisting of the following officers: Captains Creed, Tully, Pierce, Barnhardt, Maylies, and Lieutenants Knight, Edmunds, Stadler and Jernigan.

Major O'Connor has been ordered to the Command and General Staff School at Fort Leavenworth. Captain Scanlan has been transferred to the 12th Cavalry, and First Lieutenant A. W. Johnson to the 2nd Cavalry. Second Lieutenant Fraser has been transferred to the 11th Cavalry and put on special duty with the 9th Corps Area

football team. Among the newcomers who will join the regiment shortly are Major John A. Robinson and Captains Pierce and Barnhart.

Lieutenant Carr and several officers have been training horses for entries in the Division Horse Show to be held this fall. No riders have as yet been selected, but the regiment will be fully represented in all events.

In conjunction with the other units at Fort Clark, a three-quarter mile race track has been constructed near the Aviation Hangar and adjacent to the polo fields. The track has a quarter mile straight-way and experts who are supposed to know say that the track is one of the fastest in the southwest. A most successful race meet was held last July and another one will be held in November. A great deal of interest has been shown, not only among the Post personnel, but among the ranches and civilians from miles around. Those interested in details should subscribe to the Fort Clark "Pilot," our breezy publication which is published each week under the guidance of First Lieutenant James B. Edmunds.

After several weeks of wild rumors and much speculation the 5th Cavalry and the 1st Machine Gun Squadron, on August 12th, marched to San Antonio to join the 1st Cavalry and to assist the Famous Players Lasky Corporation in making the picture, "The Rough Riders." The whole brigade is now camped on a wonderful site about five miles from town near the old Fair Grounds. The Lasky people prepared the camp site and fitted it up with shower baths, electric lights, etc. Officers and men are enjoying the bright lights of the city, some of them for the first time in many years. About the middle of September the whole brigade marches to Camp Stanley for ten days' maneuvers, inspections, etc. The 5th Cavalry will march from there directly to Fort Clark, while the 1st Cavalry will return to San Antonio to entrain again for Marfa.

SEVENTH CAVALRY—Fort Bliss, Texas

Colonel Fitzhugh Lee, Commanding

Lieut.-Colonel Howard R. Smalley	First Lieut. Robert L. Freeman
Major Alexander D. Surles	First Lieut. Roy L. Speck
Captain Roderick R. Allen	First Lieut. Willard G. Wyman
Captain George A. Moore	Second Lieut. James A. Whelen, Jr.
Captain Clyde D. Garrison	Second Lieut. Frank J. Thompson
Captain Harry C. Kaefring	Second Lieut. Murray B. Crandall
Captain Harry L. Branson	Second Lieut. Zachery W. Moores
Captain Paul L. Singer	Second Lieut. Peter C. Hains, 3rd
Captain Harry E. Dodge	Second Lieut. Frank G. Trew
Captain Ceylon O. Griffin	Second Lieut. Thomas L. Harrold
Captain John M. Lile	Second Lieut. William H. Nutter
Captain George P. Cummings	Second Lieut. Donald H. Bratton
First Lieut. Carleton Burgess	Second Lieut. August W. Farwick

The outstanding event of the quarter was the Seventh Cavalry's trip to Crow Agency, Montana, to participate in the 50th Anniversary of the Battle of the Little Big Horn, a fitting observance of that memorable battle and noble sacrifice promoted by the National Custer Memorial Association. A picked body of troops and officers were selected for the occasion. The Provisional Squadron was comprised of provisional Troops C, E and F, Headquarters Detachment, the Regimental Band, the Base Ball Team and the Garry Owen Rough-riding Squad. En route to Crow Agency and return the band played concerts at various points along the route, and the ball team played several games with the local teams where long stops were made to water and feed the stock, and came away victors in each instance. The lettered Troops C, E and F

were selected because these are the active troops of the five original lettered Troops C, E, F, I and L, which rode with the gallant General Custer (the Seventh's participation in the three-day program at the Custer Battlefield is fully related elsewhere in this issue).

The early part of June was devoted to drill and preparation for the trip to Montana. The troops entrained on June 16 and returned to Fort Bliss on July 1st. Shortly after the return from Montana the Regiment was inspected by the Second Cavalry Brigade Commander, Colonel Samuel McP. Rutherford, assisted by Major Herman Kobbe and Captain W. T. Bals. Results were announced as being very satisfactory. Following the inspection the First Squadron had to turn its attention to preparing for its duties as parent organization for the C. M. T. C., while the Second Squadron engaged in Troop and Squadron problems.

From July 22 to August 21 the First Squadron was engaged in training the citizen soldiers at the C. M. T. C., Fort Bliss. During the same period the Second Squadron was busy laying concrete floors in some of the barracks. The Headquarters Troop spent the period in signal problems, having three each week. Two of them were Division signal problems and one was a Brigade problem.

At the close of the C. M. T. C., the Regiment began preparations for taking the field on a two-day maneuver of the Second Cavalry Brigade, commanded by Brigadier-General Charles J. Symmonds, and auxiliary troops on August 26-27. The troops will maneuver in the vicinity of Courchesne Bridge, northwest of El Paso. During the maneuver Brigadier-General Edwin B. Winans, commanding the First Cavalry Division, will make his annual tactical inspection of the Second Cavalry Brigade.

On August 18 the Regimental baseball team played their deciding game in the Post League series, and defeated the 82nd Field Artillery, 17 to 0, thus distinguishing themselves as the pennant winners of the Post for the fourth consecutive year. In a previous game the Artillerymen had scored on the Garry Owens to the tune of 8 to 6. Corporal Riley Champion of the Garry Owens starred in the final game by allowing the invaders only two hits. And the cavalrymen stuck closely together, ably supported Champion and played phenomenal ball. During the season to date the team has played thirteen games and lost only one, that to the 82nd Field Artillery.

EIGHTH CAVALRY—Fort Bliss, Texas

Colonel S. McP. Rutherford, Commanding

Major A. G. Hixson	1st Lieut. J. H. Collier
Major J. K. Brown	2nd Lieut. E. F. Thomson
Major J. C. F. Tillson, Jr.	2nd Lieut. C. H. Reed
Captain P. H. Sherwood	2nd Lieut. L. M. Grener
Captain N. M. Imboden	2nd Lieut. C. J. Harrold
Captain W. C. Merkel	2nd Lieut. A. A. Frierson
Captain H. W. Forster	2nd Lieut. C. W. Bennett
Captain C. E. Davis	2nd Lieut. W. J. Reardon
Captain P. C. Berlin	2nd Lieut. J. W. Bowman
Captain I. H. Zeliff	2nd Lieut. R. L. Howze, Jr.
Captain E. D. Campbell	2nd Lieut. R. A. Gardner
Captain H. L. Jackson	2nd Lieut. M. H. Matteson
Captain A. H. Norton	2nd Lieut. H. R. Westphalinger
1st Lieut. O. W. Koch	2nd Lieut. W. A. Fuller

The regular 1926 rifle season terminated during the latter part of May, and the regiment finished with a final qualification of eighty-one per cent. (81%). Service

Troop, Capt. H. L. Jackson, commanding, finished with the high percentage of qualification, having ninety-two and seven-tenths per cent. (92.7%).

With the arrival of the summer months, the regiment has been preparing for an active period of training and athletics. Prior to the opening of the regular post baseball league, an inter-troop league was organized in order to limber up the oldtimers and bring out all the new material for the regimental team. The inter-troop league was divided into two phases, each troop playing around twice. Headquarters Troop won the regimental championship, winning both series. Two beautifully engraved silver cups were awarded the champions. The post league opened on July 4th, and to date the regimental team has been close contenders for the post pennant.

The 111th New Mexico National Guard, Colonel King, commanding, was attached to the regiment for fourteen (14) days' training. The two weeks spent with the regiment proved to be very profitable and the Guard left with the feeling that their summer's training was a big step toward the realization of a crack cavalry regiment.

On July 2nd the Headquarters Troop, Captain Paul C. Berlin, commanding, and the Service Troop, Captain Herbert L. Jackson, commanding, went on a combined practice march across the Rio Grande River, to the vicinity of Noria, New Mexico. The Service Troop acting as a convoy and the Headquarters Troop establishing and maintaining radio communication continuously with the post, messages being sent at regular and frequent intervals. The march was conducted with the idea of impressing upon the troops the importance of their technical training.

On July 19th the regimental band accompanied a delegation of El Pasoans to the Pecos Valley celebration. Their presence at the celebration added materially to the occasion, as was evidenced by a communication to that effect from the Chamber of Commerce, Pecos Valley.

On August 7th a Regimental Horse Show was held, in preparation for the Division Horse Show which will be held during the latter part of October. Much new material among the remounts was brought out, and the regimental prospects for the coming show look very favorable. Winners in all events follow:

Best Turned Out Enlisted Men's Mount—Pvt. Steves, Hq. Tr., on *Elmo*.
 Best Cavalry Horse—Sgt. Thompson, Hq. Tr., on *Mike*.
 Auto. Rifle Pack—Pvt. Hill, Troop C.
 Radio Section—1st Squadron Detach., Sgt. Kwak.
 Enlisted Men's Jumping—Pvt. Lusk, Tr. C, on *Poncho*.
 Three Men Team—Sgt. Morris on *Filly*, Corp. Wells on *Bob*, Corp. McDaris on *Poncho*, all of Troop F.
 Pair Jumping—Corp. Wells on *Bob*, Corp. Tittle on *Easy Money*, Troop F.
 Recruits (less than 6 months' service)—Pvt. Bailey, Hq. Troop.
 Recruits (between 6 months and 1 year service)—Corp. Boyatt, Tr. E.
 Enlisted Men's Mounts (N. C. O.'s only)—Sgt. White, Tr. A, on *Red*.
 Enlisted Men's Mounts (other than N. C. O.'s)—Pvt. Lock, Tr. B, on *Jimmie*.

The Division polo tournament will be held this year in connection with the Horse Show, and the regimental polo team is hard at work, looking forward to another year of victory. Games are being played daily with other organizations on the post, and the mounts as well as all players are rapidly rounding out in form.

NINTH CAVALRY—Fort Riley, Kansas

Lieutenant-Colonel Kerr T. Riggs, Commanding

Major William C. Christy
 Major Richard D. Newman
 Major John F. Stevens

Captain James C. Short
 Captain James T. Duke
 Captain William B. Bradford

Major Frederic W. Boye
 Captain Harold C. Mandell
 Captain Donald S. Perry
 Captain Harold B. Gibson
 Captain Louis G. Gibney
 Captain Francis H. Waters
 Captain Charles Wharton

Captain Murray H. Ellis
 Captain Gustav B. Guenther
 Captain James V. McDowell
 Captain Harold G. Holt
 Captain Ray T. Maddocks
 Captain Hobart R. Gay
 Captain Delmore A. Wood

On August 28th the Regiment celebrated the completion of its longest and most successful target season, June 15-August 28. The last group completed record firing in the afternoon, and that evening the entire Regiment assembled at the Ninth Cavalry Camp on the rifle range for supper. Much beer and many watermelons were consumed with the accompaniment of band music and extemporaneous speeches. The Regiment qualified well over the required 80 per cent.

Since June 1st, 1926, the following old-timers have left the Regiment by retirement: First Sergeant Randall Ephraim, Sergeant Mack Senor, Sergeant Joseph Randolph and Sergeant Daniel Brown.

On August 19th, 1926, Lieutenant-Colonel Walter J. Scott turned over the command of the Ninth Cavalry to Lieutenant-Colonel Kerr T. Riggs. Colonel Scott had been detailed for duty with the General Staff, and ordered to Governors' Island, New York.

ELEVENTH CAVALRY—Presidio of Monterey, California

Colonel Leon B. Kromer, Commanding

Lieut.-Colonel Oliver P. M. Hazzard
 Major Sloan Doak
 Major William W. Erwin
 Captain Rinaldo C. Coe
 Captain John L. Rice
 Captain Otto B. Trigg
 Captain Wallace J. Redner
 Captain Donald C. Hawley
 Captain Roy E. Blount
 Captain Fenton S. Jacobs
 Captain Raymond C. Gibbs
 Captain James M. Adamson, Jr.
 Captain Alexander B. McNabb
 Captain Lawrence S. Patterson
 Captain Roy E. Craig

First Lieut. Russell C. Winchester
 First Lieut. Joseph I. Lambert
 First Lieut. Mark A. Devine, Jr.
 First Lieut. George F. Stutsman, Jr.
 First Lieut. Benner B. Vail
 First Lieut. Martin A. Fennell
 First Lieut. George W. Read, Jr.
 First Lieut. Harold O. Sand
 Second Lieut. Donald H. Galloway
 Second Lieut. John H. Riepe
 Second Lieut. Charles G. Meehan
 Second Lieut. Clark L. Ruffner
 Second Lieut. Frank G. Fraser
 Second Lieut. Conrad S. Babcock, Jr.

During the month of July the Eleventh Cavalry was employed in connection with the C. M. T. Camp, at Del Monte, where the Cavalry course is becoming more popular each year. A squadron of three troops, each of 60 candidates, was trained this year, and as many more were refused admittance on account of lack of facilities. A number of the young men were eager to enroll at once for the next cavalry camp. The work of the C. M. T. C. Cavalry Squadron was very favorably commented upon by the Corps Area and Camp Commanders at the close of the camp.

Upon return from the C. M. T. Camp the regiment at once devoted its energies to the instruction of the reserve officers of the 323rd Cavalry, the 162nd M. G. Squadron and IXth Corps Wagon Train and Remount Troop. Troops A, C, E and G were used in the instruction of the 22 officers of the 323rd Cavalry; Troop F worked with the 13 officers of the 162nd M. G. Squadron and the Service Troop was placed at the disposal of the nine officers of the IXth Corps Wagon Train. Instruction, which was

practical throughout, lectures and indoor work being reduced to the minimum, culminated in a two-day march and maneuver in which the regular troops became for the time the 323rd Cavalry and 162nd M. G. Squadron. All supplies were hauled by the IXth Corps Wagon Train.

General Booth, Commandant of the Cavalry School, spent a short time with the regiment during the opening days of the Reserve Officers' Camp. His talks to the reserve and regular officers were interesting and instructive. The General outlined the changes made in recent years and invited suggestions from graduates as to means for the improvement of the course.

Our Regimental Polo Team, composed of Major Erwin, Captain Craig, Lieutenants Read, Galloway and Withers, departed for the East to compete in the National Inter-circuit event at Narragansett Pier, R. I., having returned winners from the Pacific Coast Circuit Championship held in March at Midwick. The team was handicapped as regards proper mounts, but the best of our string was put at their disposal, and with private mounts belonging to players, we now feel that they have been fairly mounted.

The ponies were shipped by express, arriving at Narragansett Pier the first of August. The 11th Cavalry Polo Club provided the necessary funds for express shipment and grooms, in order that the ponies might be in the best possible shape for play. After a few practice games, the team met Rumson in the preliminary round of the National Championship, and at the final bell were at the long end of a 15-to-8 score, qualifying for the semi-finals.

At this writing word has been received that our team was defeated in the semi-finals by the fast Rockaway four, 11 to 6. Upon conclusion of the tournament the team, with the exception of Lieutenant Withers, will return to this station. Lieutenant Withers has been relieved from duty with the regiment and reports to West Point for duty as an instructor.

Polo is being played at the post under difficulties on account of reduced personnel, shortage of ponies and the lack of a suitable field. However, we are able to turn out about twelve players during the absence of our team, and are having weekly work-outs on the practice field at the Hotel Del Monte. It is the regimental policy to spend as much time as possible in developing young ponies and players and to encourage officers to play privately owned mounts. This provides a greater reserve of ponies, thus enabling our regiment to put at least two strong and well balanced teams in the field. At present twenty-one trained and green ponies are owned by the officers.

The Hotel Del Monte is now constructing an additional polo field, which, when completed, will give three full sized and one practice field. A winter tournament will be held at the hotel during the latter part of November. As a number of high goal players have been invited to play, it is expected that the members of the regiment will get an opportunity to compete against some of the best players in this country.

Eighty-eight remounts have been received recently, and are now being conditioned for training. As a whole, they are of excellent type with a large percentage of thoroughbred blood. The conditioning has gone along slowly and progressively.

The regiment is taking part August 23-25 in the filming for Warner Brothers, Inc., of a picture entitled, "Across the Pacific." In this picture the men are representing United States soldiers of the Philippine Campaign days. Much interest is being displayed in getting the proper atmosphere, and all the old-timers are explaining just how it was really done. Obsolete equipment is being eagerly resurrected from forgotten storehouses, and the regiment expects to have a lot of enjoyment during the filming.

The regiment has completed qualification with all arms for the year 1926, with the following results:

	<i>Percentage Qualified</i>	<i>Average Score</i>
Rifle.....	95.1	282.2
Sabre.....	97.4	83.5
Automatic Rifle.....	90.4	516.6
Pistol Mounted.....	98.1	82.9
Pistol Dismounted.....	88.5	71.1

Troop B, Captain James M. Adamson, Jr., in command, is still stationed at Camp L. J. Hearn, a short distance from San Diego and the Mexican Border.

Lieutenant Sands has been relieved from assignment at Camp Hearn and reports for duty at Michigan State College of Agriculture and Applied Science.

TWELFTH CAVALRY (Less 2nd Squadron)—Fort Brown, Texas

Colonel William T. Johnston, Commanding

Lieut.-Colonel Charles McH. Eby	Captain John N. Merrill
Captain Wharton G. Ingram	First Lieut. Marcellus L. Stockton, Jr.
Captain Herman F. Rathjen	First Lieut. Clifford I. Hunn
Captain Erskine A. Franklin	Second Lieut. Wendell Blanchard
Captain Clyde M. Austin	Second Lieut. Clyde Massey
Captain Abraham W. Williams	Second Lieut. John H. Claybrook, Jr.
Captain Vernon M. Shell	Second Lieut. John P. Willey
Captain Charles S. Miller	Second Lieut. Ralph T. Garver
Captain Herbert V. Scanlan	Second Lieut. George P. Berilla, Jr.
Captain Ernest F. Dukes	

On April 5th, 1926, the 1st Squadron, 12th Cavalry (less Troop A) with detachments from Service Troop and Medical Detachment, returned to Fort Brown, Texas, from Fort Ringgold, Texas, where they had been engaged in their annual rifle practice. Almost immediately after their return Headquarters Troop and Troop A, with detachments departed for Fort Ringgold by marching for the same purpose. Record practice of the latter troops was completed on May 3rd and they arrived back at Fort Brown on May 10th.

From the period May 10th to June 28th, Headquarters Troop and 1st Squadron concentrated upon their garrison and field training. On Friday of each week a tactical problem involving the entire command was worked out.

In addition to drill and tactical instructions during this period a great deal has been accomplished toward beautifying the post, in the way of improvements to lawns, flower plots and clearing of areas adjoining the post. The post, serving as it does as a park for Brownsville, is visited daily by a great number of townspeople, as well as by tourists in large numbers, who are visiting the Rio Grande Valley. Compliments have been heard on every hand on its appearance. There is scarcely a season when flowers are not blooming on every lawn.

A happy break occurred in the training period on June 29 when the regiment celebrated its twenty-fifth birthday. The schedule for the day included a horse show in the forenoon, with a polo game in the afternoon between the Fort Brown and Fort Ringgold teams, and a dance for the officers and ladies in the evening. Horse show results follow:

Officers' Chargers: First, Captain Buckner M. Creel; second, Captain Charles S. Miller; third, First Lieutenant Marcellus L. Stockton, Jr.

Best Trained Troopers' Mount: First, Private Jacob J. Tokash, Troop C; second, Private Franck Moreyra, Troop B; third, Private Edgar A. Walton, Troop C.

Horses Suitable to Become Polo Ponies: First, *Grandpa* (1st Squadron); second, *Cowita* (2nd Squadron); third, *Red Feather* (Captain Nye, V. C.).

Best Trained N. C. O.'s Mount: First, Sergeant Edmund J. Trottier, Service Troop; second, Sergeant Otto Cornde, Troop C; third, Sergeant Samuel Cleveland, Headquarters Troop.

Officers' Jumping: First, Lieutenant Marcellus L. Stockton, Jr.; second, First Lieutenant Fred L. Hamilton (2nd Squadron); third, First Lieutenant Daniel P. Buckland (2nd Squadron).

Best Turned Out Troopers' Mount: First, Private George Pare, Troop B; second, Private John C. Moore, Troop C; third, Corporal Otto Smith, Troop E.

Enlisted Men's Jumping: First, Private Thomas J. Collins, Troop F; second, Sergeant Otto Cornde, Troop C; third, Corporal Otto Smith, Troop E.

Enlisted Men's Jumping in Pairs: First, Sergeant Otto Cornde and Private James Holmes, Troop C; second, Corporal Elmer Manske and Private Jacob J. To-kash, Troop C; third, Sergeant Queen and Sergeant Edmund J. Trottier, Service Troop.

Enlisted Men's Novice Jumping: First, Private James Holmes, Troop C; second, Corporal Otto Smith, Troop E; third, Corporal Elmer Manske, Troop C.

Best Trained Remounts: First, Private James Holmes, Troop C; second, Sergeant Floyd S. Brown, Troop A; third, Sergeant Charles B. Hosea, Troop B.

Officers' Bending Race: First, First Lieutenant Fred L. Hamilton; second, First Lieutenant Marcellus L. Stockton, Jr.; third, Captain Elwood L. Nye, Vet'y.

Best Light Wagon: First, Private Thomas J. McCormick, Headquarters Troop; second, Private Anton Jurgaitis, Service Troop; third, Private Lucas Teabout, Troop C.

Best Escort Wagon: First, Private William M. Mierhoff, Service Troop; second, Private Adolph Doucet, Service Troop; third, Private Joseph Zylinski, Service Troop.

Officers' Pair Jumping: First, Captain Erskine A. Franklin and Second Lieutenant John P. Willey; second, First Lieutenant Marcellus L. Stockton, Jr., and Second Lieutenant John P. Willey; third, Captain John N. Merrill and Second Lieutenant Clyde Massey.

Three polo games were scheduled to be played between Fort Brown and Fort Ringgold on June 27th, 29th and July 3rd respectively. In the game played June 27th, the Fort Ringgold team defeated the Fort Brown "four" with a score of 7 goals to 4. The line-ups of the teams were:

Fort Ringgold—Captain Wilkie C. Burt, First Lieutenant James S. Rodwell, First Lieutenant Fred L. Hamilton, First Lieutenant Fraser Richardson.

Fort Brown—Captain Ernest F. Dukes, Captain Erskine A. Franklin, Captain Buckner M. Creel, First Lieutenant Marcellus L. Stockton, Jr.

Unfortunately a heavy shower intervened at noon on June 29th, preventing the completion of the horse-show program and necessitating the postponement of the polo game. Due to bad weather it was impossible to play the polo game until July 7th, when the final phase of the horse show was completed as well, the team captains having agreed on two games deciding the informal tournament instead of three as first planned. The latter game resulted in a victory for Fort Brown with a score of five to four, but Fort Ringgold was declared the winner of the tournament in point of goals made.

During July in addition to field training the 1st Squadron and Service Troop completed their annual record saber practice with very satisfactory results.

On August 24th the Headquarters and Service Troop and 1st Squadron proceeded to Fort Ringgold by marching, to participate in combined maneuvers with the 2nd Squadron, 12th Cavalry and with the 4th Field Artillery (mountain), (less 1st Battalion), from August 28th to September 9th. On September 7th-10th the Commanding General, 8th Corps Area, will make his annual tactical and training inspection of the 12th Cavalry and 4th Field Artillery (mountain) (less 1st Battalion).

The transiency of our life in the army is again impressed on us by the summer "moving day."

During the months of July and August an informal dance was held for the officers and ladies of the garrison on Wednesday evening of each week. These have been well attended by the younger set of Brownsville and the Valley towns, and have served as an enjoyable social diversion.

SECOND SQUADRON, TWELFTH CAVALRY—Fort Ringgold, Texas

Lieutenant-Colonel C. O. Thomas, Jr., Commanding

Major Levi G. Brown	1st Lieut. James S. Rodwell
Captain Raymond C. Blatt	1st Lieut. Fraser Richardson
Captain Wilkie C. Burt	1st Lieut. Daniel P. Buckland
Captain Edward M. Fickett	2nd Lieut. Richard B. Evans
Captain William Tussey	2nd Lieut. Augustine D. Dugan
Captain John P. Scott	2nd Lieut. Paul R. Greenhalgh

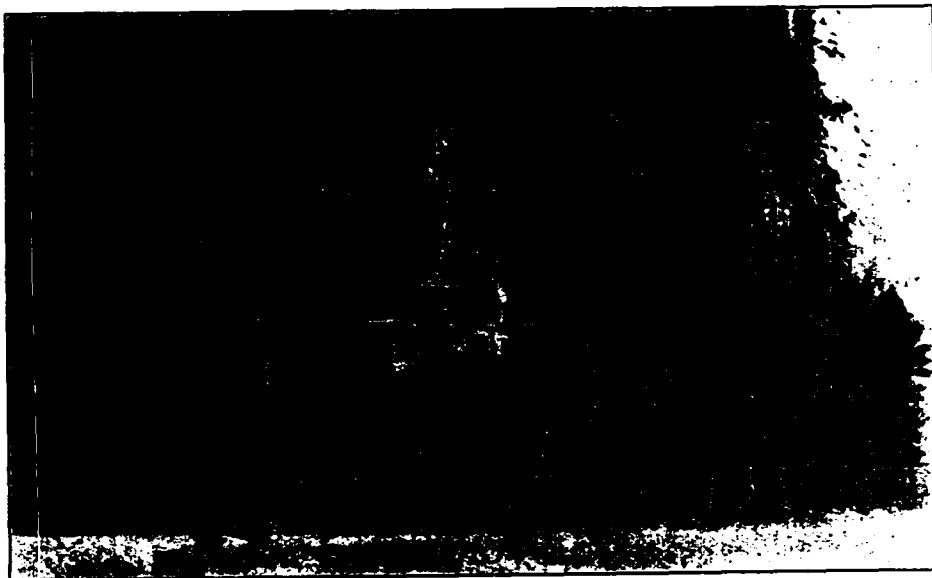
Spring and summer training at this station has been somewhat impaired due to the large amount of salvage work performed by the troops at Camp Sam Fordyce, Texas. Although unaccustomed to work of this nature, the Squadron salvaged, in good shape, all the buildings and pipe lines in approximately three months. Troop G bore the brunt of the work, being stationed at Sam Fordyce for two months, and Troops E and F one month. The project was entered into with all the vim for which the Squadron is noted.

On June 9th a rifle team composed of First Sergeant August G. Hendricks and Sergeant Jim Adams, Troop E; Sergeant Joseph B. Royal, Troop G, and Sergeant Charles J. Rowe, Troop F, was sent to Austin, Texas, to represent Fort Ringgold in the annual shoot of the Texas Rifle Association on June 15th, 16th and 17th. They brought home the bacon. Sergeant Hendricks won the 1,000-yard open competition trophy, presented by Albert and Ernest Steves of San Antonio, Texas, valued at \$800.00, with a score of 97. Some shooting, we call it! This trophy has never left Austin since the Texas Rifle Association was organized some five years ago, and we do not intend to let it leave Fort Ringgold for the next five years, if then. During the time that this trophy has been shot for, only one score has equaled Sergeant Hendrick's. Sergeant Royal won the individual short-range offhand match, claiming the Toepperwein Trophy with a score of 90. Which also is not bad shooting. In addition to these two trophies numerous medals were brought home, Sergeants Rowe and Royal having won many Tyro Medals. The team placed second in the grand aggregate, being only three points behind the winners.

The Regiment celebrated its organization day on June 29, 1926, at Fort Brown, Texas, with a horse show and field and track events. The Second Squadron was represented in these events by their polo team and a jumping team. With the four horses composing the jumping team a first, second and third place was won. We do not consider that a bad showing when it is taken into consideration that there were some forty horses competing. Our polo team had no difficulty in disposing of the Fort Brown team, winning the series handily.

On July 3rd First Sergeant Hendricks and Sergeant Jim Adams, Troop E, went to San Antonio to compete in the annual pistol shoot of the Texas Rifle Association. Sergeant Hendricks placed second in the grand aggregate and Sergeant Adams placed fourth, which was creditable, considering the large number of professionals entered against them.

A track and field meet was held on July 4th with very satisfactory results, considering the small amount of training which the participants had. Although no world



Second Squadron, 12th Cavalry Rifle Team at the Texas Rifle Association Shoot, held at Austin, Texas, June 15, 16 and 17, 1926.

From left to right: First Sergeant A. C. Hendricks, Sergeant J. B. Royal, Sergeant C. J. Rowe and Sergeant J. Adams. Sergeant Hendricks won the \$800 cup in the center.

records were broken, a great deal of promising material was brought to light, and it is believed that we have the nucleus for an excellent track team. Troops F and G were tied for first honors, with Troop E one point behind.

The Athletic and Jockey Club staged a very successful racing card on July 18th. The pari-mutuels were going great guns. Betting was brisk and afforded lots of amusement. Long shots romped home regularly, to the sorrow of the majority, but everyone was well pleased with their experiments. A feature of this program was a machine rifle race, with teams from Troops E, F and G. Each team consisted of four men. The conditions were: Squad mounted, at the signal squad to ride 100 yards, dismount, remove rifle from pack, field strip and reassemble rifle, replace on pack, mount and ride back to starting point. The stripping of the rifle complied with the method outlined in Training Regulations. This event was bitterly contested, but due to the fact that the squad representing Troop F failed to secure their rifle on the pack, first place was awarded to Troop G, whose score was 99 per cent. A pool of \$200.00 was made up between the participating troops for the winner of this event.

The monthly dance sponsored by the Athletic and Jockey Club continues to add

to the contentment of the members of this organization. Members of the fairer sex make the trip from Mercedes, fifty miles away, regularly on the 29th of each month.

THIRTEENTH CAVALRY—Fort D. A. Russell, Wyoming

Colonel H. R. Richmond, Commanding

Lieut.-Colonel Sidney D. Maize
Major Joseph Plassmeyer
Major John B. Thompson
Captain Anthony J. Kirst
Captain William R. Irvin
Captain Guy D. Thompson
Captain Hans E. Klopfer
Captain Lawrence B. Wyant
Captain Thurlby M. Rundel
Captain Hans C. Minuth
Captain Hurley O. Richardson
Captain Alberto E. Merrill
Captain Curtis L. Stafford

Captain Gene R. Mauger
First Lieut. William N. Todd, Jr.
First Lieut. Frederick Murphy
First Lieut. Leighton N. Smith
First Lieut. Robert Edwards
First Lieut. Charles P. Amazeen
First Lieut. Hayden A. Sears
First Lieut. Snowden Ager
Second Lieut. Wilbur K. Noel
Second Lieut. Harry D. Eckert
Second Lieut. Ronald M. Shaw
Second Lieut. Harold M. Forde
Second Lieut. Theodore C. Wenzlaff

In the annual training program of the Thirteenth Cavalry, it is provided that the period, November 1st to March 31st, shall be devoted chiefly to individual training, that is, to the conduct of the regiment unit schools for all grades; April 1st to June 30th, to unit training, that is, the instruction and training of squads, platoons, troops, squadrons and the regiment, as units, in preparation for field service at Pole Mountain Military Reservation in connection with the summer active training period of the National Guard and Organized Reserves; July 1st to 31st, participation in instruction, exercises and maneuvers at Pole Mountain, and in "Frontier Days Celebration" at Cheyenne; August 1st to October 15th, regular annual record practice with rifle, pistol and saber; October 15th to 31st, musketry; combat exercises.

The above program has been carried out as prescribed; during the winter period, regimental unit schools were given priority over all other forms of training; during the spring period, unit training priority over all other forms of training; the July period was carried out as prescribed; record practice in the use of arms is now in progress; combat exercises will be carried out within the time allotted therefor; and individual training in unit schools will again commence on November 1st.

During the period of the Summer Training Camp for Organized Reserve at Pole Mountain, Wyoming, July 4th-18th, 1926, inclusive, twenty officers of the 324th Cavalry Organized Reserves, three unassigned officers, Organized Reserves and one enlisted man, 324th Cavalry were given training.

The Thirteenth Cavalry, with reserve officers attached and assigned to duty with appropriate units of the regiment, left Fort D. A. Russell, July 6th, at 1.30 P. M.; bivouaced for the night at Gilchrist's Ranch; marched the following morning to Camp Young; in camp from noon July 7th until morning of 15th; marched for Fort D. A. Russell, at 1.30 A. M., July 15th, arriving 2.30 P. M. same day; turned in property and settled accounts, etc., on July 16th, upon completion of which reserve officers were at liberty to comply with Corps Area orders for return to their homes so as to arrive by midnight of July 18th.

Types of training given included practical field training; a continuous field maneuver involving the solution and practical execution of all the special situations arising thereunder from day to day; requiring the command and employment of platoons, troops, squadrons and the regiment, by the reserve officers regularly attached thereto, with unit commanders and staff, Thirteenth Cavalry, as advisors and instructors. In

the general situation the regiment was attached to and covered the advance of a larger force advancing on Laramie from the east and south. The special mission of the regiment was to secure Cheyenne Pass, pending the arrival there of a supporting infantry division. The regiment was opposed by a weaker enemy cavalry regiment, withdrawing from vicinity of Cheyenne towards its own supporting troops at Laramie.

Remarks: The tactical exercises and maneuvers took place along the northern half of the Pole Mountain Reservation, from east to west, with the Old Telephone Road as the axis of movement. The terrain was admirably adapted to the object in view. Situations normally occurring from time to time were carefully explained to the enlisted men. Officers and men alike understood the duty to be performed by their own units and what relation such action bore to the action of the regiment as a whole. The terrain was rolling, with ample stream lines and woods to provide the desired concealment from view, protection from enemy fire and covered routes of approach to assembly positions and to selected lines of departure preliminary to an attack. The ground over which attacks were delivered was rough, but not so rough as to preclude mounted action.

Positions selected for enemy resistance and defense were strong as regards location of main line of resistance and flanks.

Requirements as to "decisions" of commanders; "detailed plans of action" for carrying out decisions; verbal or written orders of commanders; appropriate formations of the various elements of the command; the transmission of orders; the personal reconnaissance of commanders of all units, including the medical units and trains; all the nomenclature and method of arriving at decisions and issuing orders and their subsequent execution by every subordinate command,—all these things were gone into thoroughly, where all those concerned could see and understand, on ground well suited therefor.

The fullest explanations were given on the spot. In addition, each exercise of the day was followed immediately by a critique, instructional and explanatory in character and emphasizing mistakes where made, and the violation of principles, or their proper application, as actually occurred.

In the afternoon and evenings short lectures and talks were given covering in a general way the exercises scheduled for the next day, followed by consultation and asking of advice and information pertinent to individual assignments probable or actually in view.

In addition to commanding the units of the regiment to which assigned, in combat, the reserve officers also commanded them in camp, supervising and directing in a normal way all the routine activities of the camp and attending all calls and formations. In this they were advised and instructed by the appropriate regular officers of the regiment pertaining to the unit concerned. The senior reserve officer commanded the regiment; the colors were placed at his tent and the regular commander's tent was separate and apart, a sufficient distance away for proper control and supervision, but not so near as by his presence to unduly interfere.

The regular officers of the regiment carried out their part in good spirit and exceedingly well. They commanded the good will of reserve officers by their tactful helpfulness and advice, and their admiration and respect due to their ready grasp of the tactical principles involved and the fulness and clarity of their personal explanations and varied instruction in the form of short talks and lectures given by direction of the camp commander at stated times.

The enlisted men of the regiment carried out in a most commendable manner the spirit of the plan. The non-commissioned officers played the game with dignity, loyalty and all good faith and respect, in their relations with their temporary commanders, and the specialists and privates throughout the regiment acted in the same way with

the same spirit and thoroughness. There was no infraction of discipline of any mount, no untoward incident of any kind to mar the pleasure or to detract from the interest of the camp.

The work of each reserve officer was, from the start, characterized by good-humored energy and zeal to carry out each in his place the part assigned him, to the very best of his ability. If they did not know they asked freely how and what to do; if they knew, they went about their routine duties in a normal, natural manner. Their relations with the regular officers of the regiment, and with the non-commissioned officers and men, were all that could possibly be expected or desired.

It is believed the camp was a success, in that it increased the efficiency and advanced the professional knowledge and experience not only of the reserve officers present, but also of all the regular personnel; and, in addition, it provided equally for all concerned an enjoyable period of open air recreation and healthful exercise in a very beautiful and inspiring mountain region admirably suited in every respect therefor.

Recommendations: (a) That this form of active duty training for reserve officers be repeated at Pole Mountain next year.

(b) That an increased number of reserve officers be sent to the camp next year, to include an appropriate number of artillery, machine gun, medical officers, etc., with the view to the organization of a provisional re-inforced cavalry brigade, in order that the fullest advantage may be taken of the facilities here afforded for tactical training under field conditions.

(c) That regular officers attached to duty with reserve organizations be sent with such organizations to camp.

(d) That the date of the camp be fixed so that it shall end on the day just preceding the opening of "Frontier Days" at Cheyenne.

(e) That steps be taken well in advance for the supply of sufficient trucks for the transportation from Fort D. A. Russell to the camp, of the forage, tentage, fresh meat, etc., essential to the proper comfort and regular supply of the camp.

FOURTEENTH CAVALRY—Fort Des Moines, Iowa

Colonel J. R. Lindsey, Commanding

Lieut.-Colonel D. H. Biddle
Major E. P. Pierson
Captain F. E. Duggan
Captain John H. Maher
Captain Wm. F. Saportas
Captain H. J. Fitzgerald
Captain H. S. Beecher
Captain F. M. Harshberger
Captain O. S. Peabody

First Lieut. H. L. Kinnison, Jr.
First Lieut. H. Engerud
Second Lieut. Jas. L. Lake
Second Lieut. A. N. Willis
Second Lieut. I. D. White
Second Lieut. N. F. McCurdy
Second Lieut. C. A. Thorp
Second Lieut. Geo. A. Busbey

Upon the completion of rifle target practice, the troops devoted the remainder of the period until June 16th in completing mounted and dismounted pistol practice and saber practice. During the period from June 16th to 30th, the squadron completed the first period of the training cycle with maneuvers of the squadron in advance guard, rear guard, outpost, screening and other combat exercises.

On June 16th, the Chief of Cavalry visited the Post and reviewed and inspected the regiment. General Crosby, having been stationed in Des Moines during the early part of the war, enjoyed renewing the acquaintanceship of many of his friends. On June 23rd, the second battalion of the 17th Infantry arrived at the Post for permanent station. Fort Des Moines now has three branches of the service represented in the personnel of the Post, i. e. cavalry, artillery and infantry.

The month of July was devoted to conducting camps of instruction for the reserve officers of the vicinity, and preparation for the C. M. T. Camps, which opened on August 1st. During this month the troops were inspected by Bridagier-General B. A. Poore, commanding the 7th Corps area. The Communications Platoon of Headquarters Troop spent several days at Camp Dodge, Iowa, where they installed communications and operated the message center during a command post exercise of the National Guard at that camp. Troop G, under command of Captain Wm. Saportas, left July 10th for Fort Snelling, Minn., where they are to assist in the C. M. T. C. at that station. En route they spent July 13th to 15th at Fort Dodge, where they took part in an old settlers' celebration. Their exhibition drills and riding elicited much favorable comment.

On August 1st, Troop E, Captain O. S. Peabody commanding, left for Cedar Rapids, Iowa, where they remained until the 10th, taking part in a Rodeo. They were accompanied by the band.

The Citizen's Military Training Camp opened on August 1st with approximately 1,500 in attendance. Troop F went into camp and furnished the overhead and nucleus for one C. M. T. C. troop. The C. M. T. Camp was a success in every way. During the camp, the 14th Cavalry Band formed the nucleus of a 125-piece band, which furnished splendid music on all occasions. During the camp the post was visited by numerous notables.

Polo has been played three times a week throughout the summer, on Sundays, Tuesdays and Thursdays. A polo tournament was played the week of July 11th to 18th, Fort Leavenworth, Wakonda and the Fourteenth Cavalry teams participating. The tournament was a decided success from the standpoints of both play and attendance. The scores were:

July 11th—Fort Leavenworth, 12; Wakonda, 8.
 July 13th—Fort Leavenworth, 17; Fourteenth Cavalry, 16.
 July 15th—Fort Leavenworth, 12; Fourteenth Cavalry, 15.
 July 18th—Fort Leavenworth, 21; Wakonda, 10.

On August 8th, the 14th Cavalry, in a spirited game against Wakonda, succeeded in gaining permanent possession of the Wakonda trophy. The score being 14 to 10. The cup being awarded to the team winning in three out of five years.

With the close of the C. M. T. C. the regiment is devoting its time to preparation for the annual tactical inspection, which will take place October 11th.

FIRST SQUADRON, FOURTEENTH CAVALRY—Fort Sheridan, Illinois

Lieutenant-Colonel Ben Lear, Jr., Commanding

Captain Edmund M. Barnum	1st Lieut. Richard H. Darrell
Captain Thomas W. Ligon	2nd Lieut. Perley B. Sancomb
Captain Norman N. Rogers	2nd Lieut. Thomas J. Randolph
1st Lieut. Benjamin H. Graban	2nd Lieut. Clyde A. Burcham
	2nd Lieut. Mitchell A. Giddens

During the month of July, 1926, in addition to its usual garrison and summer camp duties, the Squadron furnished horses and equipment for the R.O.T.C., O.R.C. and E.R.C.

Twenty-eight reserve officers and five enlisted reservists of the 320th Cavalry (assigned and attached) were superimposed upon the Squadron from July 4th to 18th, inclusive, and fourteen reserve officers and one enlisted reservist from July 25th to August 8th, 1926. Test mobilizations were accompanied for these reserve units with satisfactory results.

The annual Fort Sheridan Horse Show was held on July 16th and 17th, the proceeds of which are to be applied to various Army charities and post activities. The show was pronounced a huge success, and was considered one of the best ever staged in the community. One of the interesting features of the show was the performance of stunt riding by Troop A, 14th Cavalry. Several very difficult feats never before attempted were successfully accomplished by the famous Black Horse Troop. The spectators were greatly impressed by their stunts—especially by the flaming hurdle.

The Squadron won a good share of the trophies and ribbons awarded. The various troops placed as follows:

Troop A—Five 1sts, four 2nds, three 3rds and two 4ths.

Troop B—Two 1sts and one 2nd.

Troop C—Two 1sts, three 2nds and two 3rds.

Most of the Squadron officers placed in some event. Captain Van Ingen captured four 1sts, three 2nds and one 3rd place. As a very good attendance was had, it is thought the show was an improvement financially over that of last year.

The C.M.T. Camp was officially opened on August 3, 1926. This Squadron received 469 students in various courses for training during the month of August. Demobilization of the C.M.T.C. was effected on September 3, 1926. Although handicapped by the shortage of Regular Army personnel, a very successful summer camp was experienced.

SECOND MACHINE GUN SQUADRON—Fort Bliss, Texas

Major John B. Johnson, Commanding

Captain John C. Daly	First Lieut. F. W. Fenn
Captain L. C. Frizzell	Second Lieut. W. P. Campbell
Captain I. G. Walker	Second Lieut. Gilman C. Mudgett
Captain Wm. T. Haldeman	Second Lieut. Joseph Smith
First Lieut. T. J. Heavey	

The Squadron has recently completed its tour of duty with the C. M. T. C. camp. At the same time reserve officers from the 156th Machine Gun Squadron were attached for training. For the next month Division and Brigade problems are scheduled in preparation for the Corps Area Commander's inspection.

During the month of August slow polo was played with the green ponies and the string has been materially increased.

Brigade Headquarters has combined with the Squadron for polo, and the playing members are Captain Finley and Lieutenant Koester.

ESTABLISHED 1818
Brooks Brothers,
CLOTHING,
 Gentlemen's Furnishing Goods,
 MADISON AVENUE COR. FORTY-FOURTH STREET
 NEW YORK

Officers' Uniforms

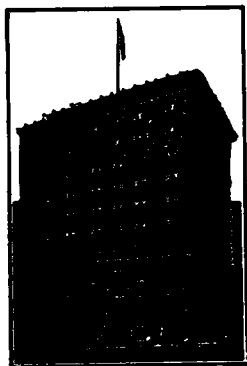
Agents in the United States
 for the

"Woodrow" Cap
 and

Messrs. Peal & Co.'s
 "Sam Browne" Belt

Send for Circular

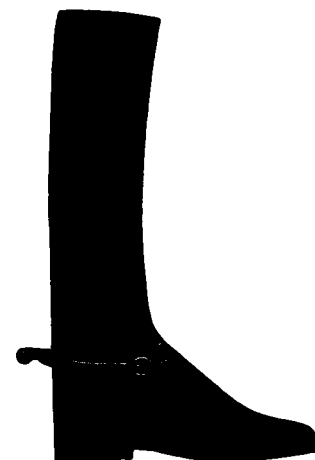
BOSTON PALM BEACH NEWPORT
 LITTLE BUILDING PLAZA BUILDING AUSTRALIAN BUILDING
 Twenty-sixth Street 6000 11th Street 250 Broadway Avenue



BROOKS BROTHERS'
 Building, convenient
 to Grand Central, Subway,
 and to many of the lead-
 ing Hotels and Clubs



PEAL & Co.
 487 OXFORD ST.
 LONDON
 ENGLAND.



TEITZEL MADE MILITARY Boots—Belts—Putts



New
 Equipped
 To Make
 Hollow
 Boot Trees
 To Fit
 Our Boots

THE
TEITZEL-JONES-DEHNER
BOOT CO., Inc.
 WICHITA KANSAS

The Riggs National Bank

OF WASHINGTON, D. C.

Every Modern Banking Service

COMMERCIAL—TRUST—SAFE DEPOSIT—
 FOREIGN EXCHANGE—SAVINGS

FIVE CONVENIENT LOCATIONS
 Main Office: 1503 Pennsylvania Ave.

Branches:

1913 Massachusetts Ave.
 18th St. and Columbia Road
 14th St. and Park Road
 7th and Eye Sts., N. W.

Resources, Over \$45,000,000

Hotel Astor NEW YORK

*One of America's
 great hotels - and,
 surrounding it,
 the city's famous
 shops, theatres
 and business*

• • ARMY • •
HEADQUARTERS

*Officers receive
 25% Discount on Rooms*

F.A. Muschenheim

TIMES SQUARE
 BROADWAY 44 ST. - 45 ST.

OUR
 PRODUCTS
 EXCEL



Leggings and Sam Browne Belts
 Made to Measure
 Mail orders carefully filled
 Catalogue submitted on request
The REVILLE LEGGING CO.
 LEAVENWORTH, KANSAS

New Service Uniforms

SWATCHES
and
PRICES
UPON REQUEST

**SIGMUND
EISNER
COMPANY**

Main Office
Red Bank, N. J.



Branch Offices:
126 5th Ave., New York City
451 Mission St., San Francisco
507 Medinah Bldg., Chicago

A British Riding Boot For the Service

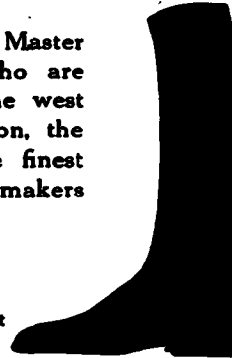
Created by Master craftsmen, who are trained in the west end of London, the home of the finest riding boot makers in England,

\$30.00

(by Parcel Post prepaid)

which is considerably less per pair than imported custom boots of equal merit.
Hollow trees, \$19.00.

LOUIS MARK
143 South Broad Street
Philadelphia, Pa.



The Right Way is the Only Way



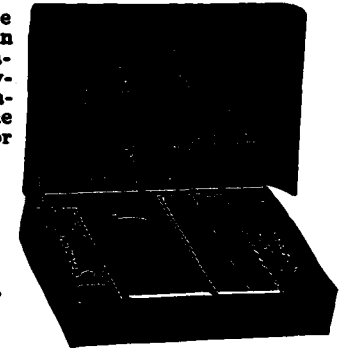

The right way to prevent after-corrosion, the most deadly enemy of modern firearms, is to use a solvent which has been scientifically designed for that purpose. Chloroil Solvent dissolves the potassium chloride (salt) residue of the primer. These salts attract moisture and cause after-corrosion. One application is sufficient and there is no sweating out. Chloroil is harmless and can be left on indefinitely if desired.

Chloroil comes packed in the Stazon Gun Kit with Stazon Gun Oil, Stazon Gun Grease and Stazon-Rustoff. This handy little kit contains everything necessary for the complete care and preservation of your small arms. If not obtainable at the Post Exchange, send \$1.00 for the Kit (\$0.35 for Chloroil alone) direct to

Gun Cleaning Headquarters

CONVERSION PRODUCTS CORP.

618 S. Delaware Ave. Phila., Pa.

POLO GOODS
MALLETS BALLS SADDLES
1925 Catalogue with latest Rules on Request
CHAS. MEURISSE & CO.
4821-23 COTTAGE GROVE AVE.
CHICAGO, ILL.
MEURISSE

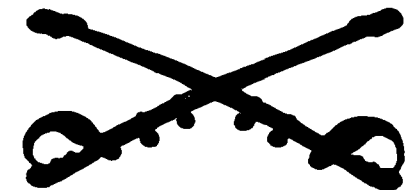
Frank J. Krupp

Successor to
Henry Schick & Co.

**Army and Navy
Uniforms**

1421 F STREET NORTHWEST
Washington, D. C.
CIVILIAN DRESS A SPECIALTY

**DONDERO MILITARY
INSIGNA**



COATS OF ARMS
CAMPAIGN RIBBONS
MINIATURE MEDALS

*Our insignia are plated in 14 K gold
and will stand an acid test.*

A. H. DONDERO, Inc.
730 Seventeenth Street, N. W.
Washington, D. C.

The Cavalry Journal

PUBLISHED BY THE UNITED STATES
CAVALRY ASSOCIATION

Contents of Volume XXXVI, Numbers 146-149 January,-April-July-October, 1927

NO. 146

	Page
With Indian and Buffalo in Montana	7
Brigadier General E. J. McClernand	
The Race to the Sea	55
Transcription from <i>Revue de Cavalerie</i>	
Captain Royden Williamson, Cavalry	
Chinese Cavalry Produce a Decisive Victory	64
Brigadier General Henry J. Reilly, O. R. C.	
The 1926 Cavalry Leadership Tests for Small Units	77
Captain W. B. Bradford, Cavalry	
The Cavalry's Cavalry	90
Major Paul R. Davison, Cavalry	
The 1926 Endurance Ride	86
Captain John A. Weeks, 3d Cavalry	
Annual Report of Chief of Cavalry	105
Improvised Radio Equipment for National Guard Cavalry	109
Captain Kramer Thomas, Cavalry	
The Cavalry School Hunt Race Meeting	113
Major E. M. Whiting, 2d Cavalry	
The National Western Endurance Ride	118
Colonel H. R. Richmond, 13th Cavalry	
Editorial Comment	122
Major General Robert Lee Howze—The Study of Languages—Help our International Rifle Team—A Membership Record—Winner of Goodrich Trophy.	
Topics of the Day	126
The Cavalry School Hunt Race Meeting—Cavalry Board Notes.	
Foreign Military Notes	130
Horse Shows	132
First Cavalry Division Horse Show—Chattanooga—Sixth Cavalry Horse Show—Army Team at Fall Horse Shows—The National Horse Show.	
The National Guard	147
Notes on Visits to National Guard Cavalry Camps	
Lieut. Colonel A. F. Commiskey, Cavalry	
The Organized Reserves	151
Notes on a Reserve Training Camp	
Lieut. Claude F. Baker, 324th Cavalry	
New Books Reviewed	160
Foreign Military Journals	163
Cavalry School Notes	165
Regimental Notes	166

NO. 147

	Page
With Indian and Buffalo in Montana	161
Brigadier General E. J. McClernand	
The Principle of Mass	208
Captain W. F. Pride, Cavalry	
General William Woods Averell	215
Brigadier General C. D. Rhodes	

Training	220
Major F. W. Boye, Cavalry	
Faith in, and a Doctrine for, the Cavalry Service	227
"One of the Faithful"	
A Glimpse of the Mexican Cavalry	232
Major Stephen M. Walmsley, Signal Corps	
✓ The Fight at Volchkovtsy	244
General N. N. Golovine	
Co-operation Between the National Guard and Organized Reserves	256
Colonel Guy S. Norvell, Cavalry	
Eighteenth Century Equestrian	261
A Record Ride	274
Major General Charles F. Roe	
The Race to the Sea	279
Transcription from <i>Revue de Cavalerie</i>	
Captain Royden Williamson, Cavalry	
Economy in the Maintenance of Mounted Units	286
Major C. L. Scott, Remount Service, Q. M. C.	
A Cavalryman's Legacy	290
Communication—Ground to Plane	291
Lieutenant John H. Stodter, Cavalry	
Tactical Use of Mounted Relays	295
Lieutenant Mortimer F. Sullivan, Cavalry	
Property Accountability, or Why is a Survey	298
Captain Franklin E. Spohn, 103d Cavalry	
Maneuvers	301
Lieutenant Lowell M. Limpus, 303d Cavalry	
Topics of the Day	304
Italian Equestrian—Cavalry Board Notes—Eastern Endurance Rides Discontinued—	
Grooming Machines—Machine Gun Anti-Aircraft Modification—Back Numbers	
Wanted—Santiago Souvenir Book.	
Foreign Military Notes	311
The National Guard	314
The Organized Reserves	320
Horse Shows	325
Polo	326
New Books Reviewed	328
Foreign Military Journals	333
Cavalry School Notes	334
Regimental Notes and Rosters	335
Proceedings Annual Meeting, U. S. Cavalry Association	351

NO. 148

The Indian Policy of the Army, 1860-1870	Page 367
Raymond L. Welty, Ph. D.	
The Punitive Expedition of 1916	382
Colonel Samuel F. Dallam, Cavalry	
The Twenty-sixth Cavalry (PS) in Annual Maneuvers of the Philippine Division	399
Captain W. F. Pride, Cavalry	
✓ Seat and Hands in Horse Show Jumping	405
Major E. W. Taulbee, Cavalry	
Some Reminiscences	417
Brigadier General E. S. Godfrey	
The Chinese Cavalry	426
Captains S. V. Constant and J. W. Carroll, Cavalry	
The Machine Rifle	433
Major John T. McLane, Cavalry	
On Horses	437
Lieut. Commander H. H. Frost, U. S. Navy	
The Army Horse Show Team	445
Captain W. B. Bradford, Cavalry	
Use of the Polo Mallet	454
Arthur H. Perkins	
Endurance Ride Results	458
W. E. Brown	
The Race to the Sea	464
Transcription from <i>Revue de Cavalerie</i>	
Captain Royden Williamson, Cavalry	

The Death of General Custer	469
Brigadier General E. S. Godfrey	
Rational Biting	472
Lieut. Colonel Edmund A. Buchanan, Cavalry	
Topics of the Day	477
Cavalry Board Notes—Reorganization of the British Cavalry—French Cavalry	
Doctrine—Cavalry Rifle and Pistol Team—Spring Race Meeting at Fort	
Riley—Second Cavalry Midwinter Horse Show—National Defense Maga-	
zine—Heavy Anti-Aircraft Modification for Browning Machine Gun—The	
Jockey Box.	
Polo	492
Horse Shows	498
The National Guard	501
The Organized Reserves	504
New Books Reviewed	507
Foreign Military Journals	511
Cavalry School Notes	513
Regimental Notes	514

NO. 149

Cavalry of Today	Page Frontispiece
Major General H. B. Crosby	
Russian Cavalry in East Prussia	531
General L. Radus-Zenkavicius	
The Army Polo Team	547
Captain Charles H. Gerhardt	
A Day with an Italian Cavalry Regiment	552
Major Robert C. Richardson, Jr., G. S.	
Joint Cavalry and Air Corps Training	560
Major George Dillman, G. S. C.	
Marksmanship and Musketry	568
Captain W. F. Pride, Cavalry	
✓ The Fight at Volchkovtsy	575
General N. N. Golovine	
A Remarkable Ride	582
A Cavalry Officer	
The Daily Life of a Frontier Soldier	584
Raymond L. Welty, Ph. D.	
Machine Gun Marksmanship Training	595
1st Lieutenant W. P. Campbell, Cavalry	
The French Ecole Supérieure de Guerre	599
Major R. C. Richardson, G. S.	
Russian Cavalry in East Prussia (Conclusion)	608
General L. Radus-Zenkavicius	
Official Report of a Cavalry Practice March and Maneuver	624
Topics of the Day	626
Colonel "Tommy" Retires—The Nice Horseshow—Chiswell Killed—The Retiring	
Secretary-Treasurer-Editor—American Legion Convention at Fort Riley—	
The Japanese Olympic Team—Support of the Association—A Saddle Box—	
Machine Rifle Compensator.	
Cavalry Activities	637
Cavalry Divisions and Corps—March and Reorganization of the Thirteenth	
Cavalry—First Cavalry Division Maneuvers—51st Cavalry Brigade at Pine	
Camp—March of the Fourth Cavalry from Fort P. A. Russell to Fort	
Meade—Aerial Experience for Cavalry Officers—Squadron Marches in the	
Philippines—Summer Training by Seventh Cavalry—Marksmanship in the	
Twenty-sixth Cavalry—Cavalry Try-outs for Army Horse Show Team—Sixth	
Cavalry Southern Circuit Polo Champions—Correction—Summer Camps at	
Fort Myer—The Eighth Cavalry Polo Team—Athletic Games at Fort Ring-	
gold—Mounted Sports, Second Cavalry—Fort Sheridan Horse Show—Racing	
in the Fourteenth Cavalry—Mounted Sports, Twenty-sixth Cavalry—Chicago	
Military Tournament.	
Book and Magazine Reviews	654
Roster of Regular Cavalry Officers on Duty with Troops	663